

Free Component Library (FCL):
Reference guide.

Reference guide for FCL units.
Document version 3.2.4
januari 2026

Michaël Van Canneyt

Contents

0.1	Overview	154
1	Reference for unit 'AdvancedIPC'	155
1.1	Used units	155
1.2	Overview	155
1.3	Constants, types and variables	155
1.3.1	Resource strings	155
1.3.2	Constants	156
1.3.3	Types	156
1.4	TMessageHeader	156
1.5	EICPEException	156
1.5.1	Description	156
1.6	TIPCBase	157
1.6.1	Description	157
1.6.2	Method overview	157
1.6.3	Property overview	157
1.6.4	TIPCBase.FindRunningServers	157
1.6.5	TIPCBase.ServerRunning	157
1.6.6	TIPCBase.ServerID	158
1.6.7	TIPCBase.Global	158
1.6.8	TIPCBase.MessageVersion	158
1.7	TIPCCClient	158
1.7.1	Description	158
1.7.2	Method overview	159
1.7.3	TIPCCClient.Create	159
1.7.4	TIPCCClient.PostRequest	159
1.7.5	TIPCCClient.SendRequest	159
1.7.6	TIPCCClient.PeekResponse	160
1.7.7	TIPCCClient.DeleteRequest	160
1.7.8	TIPCCClient.ServerRunning	160
1.8	TIPCServer	161

1.8.1	Description	161
1.8.2	Method overview	161
1.8.3	Property overview	161
1.8.4	TIPCServer.Create	161
1.8.5	TIPCServer.Destroy	161
1.8.6	TIPCServer.PeekRequest	162
1.8.7	TIPCServer.ReadRequest	162
1.8.8	TIPCServer.DeleteRequest	162
1.8.9	TIPCServer.PostResponse	163
1.8.10	TIPCServer.FindHighestPendingRequestId	163
1.8.11	TIPCServer.GetPendingRequestCount	163
1.8.12	TIPCServer.StartServer	163
1.8.13	TIPCServer.StopServer	164
1.8.14	TIPCServer.DeletePendingRequests	164
1.8.15	TIPCServer.Active	164
1.9	TReleaseHandleStream	164
1.9.1	Description	164
1.9.2	Method overview	164
1.9.3	TReleaseHandleStream.Destroy	165
2	Reference for unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'	166
2.1	Used units	166
2.2	Overview	166
2.3	Constants, types and variables	166
2.3.1	Types	166
2.4	TAdvancedSingleInstance	167
2.4.1	Description	167
2.4.2	Method overview	167
2.4.3	Property overview	167
2.4.4	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Create	167
2.4.5	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start	168
2.4.6	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop	168
2.4.7	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages	168
2.4.8	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams	168
2.4.9	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest	169
2.4.10	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest	169
2.4.11	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse	169
2.4.12	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse	170
2.4.13	TAdvancedSingleInstance.ID	170
2.4.14	TAdvancedSingleInstance.Global	170

2.4.15	TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest	170
3	Reference for unit 'ascii85'	171
3.1	Used units	171
3.2	Overview	171
3.3	Constants, types and variables	171
3.3.1	Types	171
3.4	TASCII85DecoderStream	172
3.4.1	Description	172
3.4.2	Method overview	172
3.4.3	Property overview	172
3.4.4	TASCII85DecoderStream.Create	172
3.4.5	TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode	173
3.4.6	TASCII85DecoderStream.Close	173
3.4.7	TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP	173
3.4.8	TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy	173
3.4.9	TASCII85DecoderStream.Read	174
3.4.10	TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek	174
3.4.11	TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary	174
3.5	TASCII85EncoderStream	174
3.5.1	Description	174
3.5.2	Method overview	175
3.5.3	Property overview	175
3.5.4	TASCII85EncoderStream.Create	175
3.5.5	TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy	175
3.5.6	TASCII85EncoderStream.Write	175
3.5.7	TASCII85EncoderStream.Width	176
3.5.8	TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary	176
3.6	TASCII85RingBuffer	176
3.6.1	Description	176
3.6.2	Method overview	176
3.6.3	Property overview	176
3.6.4	TASCII85RingBuffer.Write	177
3.6.5	TASCII85RingBuffer.Read	177
3.6.6	TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount	177
3.6.7	TASCII85RingBuffer.Size	177
4	Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'	178
4.1	Used units	178
4.2	Overview	178
4.3	Constants, types and variables	178

4.3.1	Types	178
4.3.2	Variables	179
4.4	TAVLTree	179
4.4.1	Description	179
4.4.2	Method overview	180
4.4.3	Property overview	181
4.4.4	TAVLTree.Create	181
4.4.5	TAVLTree.CreateObjectCompare	181
4.4.6	TAVLTree.Destroy	181
4.4.7	TAVLTree.SetNodeManager	181
4.4.8	TAVLTree.NewNode	182
4.4.9	TAVLTree.DisposeNode	182
4.4.10	TAVLTree.Add	182
4.4.11	TAVLTree.AddAscendingSequence	183
4.4.12	TAVLTree.Delete	183
4.4.13	TAVLTree.Remove	183
4.4.14	TAVLTree.RemovePointer	184
4.4.15	TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost	184
4.4.16	TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost	184
4.4.17	TAVLTree.Clear	184
4.4.18	TAVLTree.FreeAndClear	185
4.4.19	TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete	185
4.4.20	TAVLTree.Equals	185
4.4.21	TAVLTree.IsEqual	185
4.4.22	TAVLTree.Assign	186
4.4.23	TAVLTree.Compare	186
4.4.24	TAVLTree.Find	186
4.4.25	TAVLTree.FindKey	186
4.4.26	TAVLTree.FindNearestKey	187
4.4.27	TAVLTree.FindSuccessor	187
4.4.28	TAVLTree.FindPrecessor	187
4.4.29	TAVLTree.FindLowest	188
4.4.30	TAVLTree.FindHighest	188
4.4.31	TAVLTree.FindNearest	188
4.4.32	TAVLTree.FindPointer	188
4.4.33	TAVLTree.FindLeftMost	189
4.4.34	TAVLTree.FindRightMost	189
4.4.35	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey	189
4.4.36	TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey	189
4.4.37	TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey	190

4.4.38	TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey	190
4.4.39	TAVLTree.GetEnumerator	190
4.4.40	TAVLTree.GetEnumeratorHighToLow	190
4.4.41	TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck	191
4.4.42	TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream	191
4.4.43	TAVLTree.NodeToReportStr	191
4.4.44	TAVLTree.ReportAsString	191
4.4.45	TAVLTree.OnCompare	192
4.4.46	TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare	192
4.4.47	TAVLTree.NodeClass	192
4.4.48	TAVLTree.Root	192
4.4.49	TAVLTree.Count	193
4.5	TAVLTreeNode	193
4.5.1	Description	193
4.5.2	Method overview	193
4.5.3	TAVLTreeNode.Successor	193
4.5.4	TAVLTreeNode.Precessor	193
4.5.5	TAVLTreeNode.Clear	194
4.5.6	TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth	194
4.5.7	TAVLTreeNode.ConsistencyCheck	194
4.5.8	TAVLTreeNode.GetCount	194
4.6	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator	194
4.6.1	Description	194
4.6.2	Method overview	195
4.6.3	Property overview	195
4.6.4	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create	195
4.6.5	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.GetEnumerator	195
4.6.6	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext	195
4.6.7	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current	195
4.6.8	TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.LowToHigh	196
4.7	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager	196
4.7.1	Description	196
4.7.2	Method overview	196
4.7.3	Property overview	196
4.7.4	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode	196
4.7.5	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode	197
4.7.6	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear	197
4.7.7	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create	197
4.7.8	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy	197
4.7.9	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode	198

4.7.10	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio	198
4.7.11	TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count	198
4.8	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager	198
4.8.1	Description	198
4.8.2	Method overview	199
4.8.3	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode	199
4.8.4	TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode	199
5	Reference for unit 'base64'	200
5.1	Used units	200
5.2	Overview	200
5.3	Constants, types and variables	200
5.3.1	Types	200
5.4	Procedures and functions	201
5.4.1	DecodeStringBase64	201
5.4.2	EncodeStringBase64	201
5.5	EBase64DecodingException	201
5.5.1	Description	201
5.6	TBase64DecodingStream	202
5.6.1	Description	202
5.6.2	Method overview	202
5.6.3	Property overview	202
5.6.4	TBase64DecodingStream.Create	202
5.6.5	TBase64DecodingStream.Reset	202
5.6.6	TBase64DecodingStream.Read	203
5.6.7	TBase64DecodingStream.Seek	203
5.6.8	TBase64DecodingStream.EOF	203
5.6.9	TBase64DecodingStream.Mode	203
5.7	TBase64EncodingStream	204
5.7.1	Description	204
5.7.2	Method overview	204
5.7.3	TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy	204
5.7.4	TBase64EncodingStream.Flush	204
5.7.5	TBase64EncodingStream.Write	205
5.7.6	TBase64EncodingStream.Seek	205
6	Reference for unit 'BlowFish'	206
6.1	Used units	206
6.2	Overview	206
6.3	Constants, types and variables	206
6.3.1	Constants	206

6.3.2	Types	206
6.4	EBlowFishError	207
6.4.1	Description	207
6.5	TBlowFish	207
6.5.1	Description	207
6.5.2	Method overview	207
6.5.3	TBlowFish.Create	207
6.5.4	TBlowFish.Encrypt	208
6.5.5	TBlowFish.Decrypt	208
6.6	TBlowFishDeCryptStream	208
6.6.1	Description	208
6.6.2	Method overview	208
6.6.3	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Create	208
6.6.4	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read	209
6.6.5	TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek	209
6.7	TBlowFishEncryptStream	209
6.7.1	Description	209
6.7.2	Method overview	210
6.7.3	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy	210
6.7.4	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write	210
6.7.5	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek	210
6.7.6	TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush	211
6.8	TBlowFishStream	211
6.8.1	Description	211
6.8.2	Method overview	211
6.8.3	Property overview	211
6.8.4	TBlowFishStream.Create	211
6.8.5	TBlowFishStream.Destroy	212
6.8.6	TBlowFishStream.BlowFish	212
7	Reference for unit 'BufDataset'	213
7.1	Used units	213
7.2	Overview	213
7.3	Constants, types and variables	213
7.3.1	Types	213
7.4	Procedures and functions	216
7.4.1	RegisterDatapacketReader	216
7.5	TApplyRecUpdateResult	217
7.6	TBlobBuffer	217
7.7	TBufBlobField	217

7.8	TBufBookmark	217
7.9	TBufRecLinkItem	218
7.10	TDBCompareRec	218
7.11	TRecUpdateBuffer	218
7.12	TArrayBufIndex	219
7.12.1	Description	219
7.12.2	Method overview	219
7.12.3	TArrayBufIndex.Create	219
7.12.4	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollBackward	219
7.12.5	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollForward	220
7.12.6	TArrayBufIndex.GetCurrent	220
7.12.7	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollFirst	220
7.12.8	TArrayBufIndex.ScrollLast	220
7.12.9	TArrayBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	220
7.12.10	TArrayBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	220
7.12.11	TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	220
7.12.12	TArrayBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	221
7.12.13	TArrayBufIndex.CanScrollForward	221
7.12.14	TArrayBufIndex.DoScrollForward	221
7.12.15	TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	221
7.12.16	TArrayBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	221
7.12.17	TArrayBufIndex.GotoBookmark	221
7.12.18	TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	221
7.12.19	TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	222
7.12.20	TArrayBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	222
7.12.21	TArrayBufIndex.BeginUpdate	222
7.12.22	TArrayBufIndex.AddRecord	222
7.12.23	TArrayBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	222
7.12.24	TArrayBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	222
7.12.25	TArrayBufIndex.EndUpdate	222
7.13	TBufBlobStream	223
7.13.1	Description	223
7.13.2	Method overview	223
7.13.3	TBufBlobStream.Create	223
7.13.4	TBufBlobStream.Destroy	223
7.14	TBufDataset	223
7.14.1	Description	223
7.14.2	Property overview	224
7.14.3	TBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount	224
7.14.4	TBufDataset.FieldDefs	224

7.14.5	TBufDataset.Active	225
7.14.6	TBufDataset.AutoCalcFields	225
7.14.7	TBufDataset.Filter	225
7.14.8	TBufDataset.Filtered	225
7.14.9	TBufDataset.ReadOnly	225
7.14.10	TBufDataset.AfterCancel	225
7.14.11	TBufDataset.AfterClose	226
7.14.12	TBufDataset.AfterDelete	226
7.14.13	TBufDataset.AfterEdit	226
7.14.14	TBufDataset.AfterInsert	226
7.14.15	TBufDataset.AfterOpen	226
7.14.16	TBufDataset.AfterPost	226
7.14.17	TBufDataset.AfterScroll	226
7.14.18	TBufDataset.BeforeCancel	227
7.14.19	TBufDataset.BeforeClose	227
7.14.20	TBufDataset.BeforeDelete	227
7.14.21	TBufDataset.BeforeEdit	227
7.14.22	TBufDataset.BeforeInsert	227
7.14.23	TBufDataset.BeforeOpen	227
7.14.24	TBufDataset.BeforePost	227
7.14.25	TBufDataset.BeforeScroll	228
7.14.26	TBufDataset.OnCalcFields	228
7.14.27	TBufDataset.OnDeleteError	228
7.14.28	TBufDataset.OnEditError	228
7.14.29	TBufDataset.OnFilterRecord	228
7.14.30	TBufDataset.OnNewRecord	228
7.14.31	TBufDataset.OnPostError	228
7.14.32	TBufDataset.CancelChangesOnRefresh	229
7.15	TBufIndex	229
7.15.1	Description	229
7.15.2	Method overview	230
7.15.3	Property overview	230
7.15.4	TBufIndex.Create	231
7.15.5	TBufIndex.ScrollBackward	231
7.15.6	TBufIndex.ScrollForward	231
7.15.7	TBufIndex.GetCurrent	231
7.15.8	TBufIndex.ScrollFirst	231
7.15.9	TBufIndex.ScrollLast	231
7.15.10	TBufIndex.GetRecord	232
7.15.11	TBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	232

7.15.12	TBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	232
7.15.13	TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	232
7.15.14	TBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	232
7.15.15	TBufIndex.CanScrollForward	232
7.15.16	TBufIndex.DoScrollForward	233
7.15.17	TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	233
7.15.18	TBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	233
7.15.19	TBufIndex.GotoBookmark	233
7.15.20	TBufIndex.BookmarkValid	233
7.15.21	TBufIndex.CompareBookmarks	233
7.15.22	TBufIndex.SameBookmarks	234
7.15.23	TBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	234
7.15.24	TBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	234
7.15.25	TBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	234
7.15.26	TBufIndex.BeginUpdate	234
7.15.27	TBufIndex.AddRecord	235
7.15.28	TBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	235
7.15.29	TBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	235
7.15.30	TBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	235
7.15.31	TBufIndex.EndUpdate	235
7.15.32	TBufIndex.SpareRecord	236
7.15.33	TBufIndex.SpareBuffer	236
7.15.34	TBufIndex.CurrentRecord	236
7.15.35	TBufIndex.CurrentBuffer	236
7.15.36	TBufIndex.IsInitialized	236
7.15.37	TBufIndex.BookmarkSize	237
7.15.38	TBufIndex.RecNo	237
7.16	TCustomBufDataset	237
7.16.1	Description	237
7.16.2	Method overview	238
7.16.3	Property overview	239
7.16.4	TCustomBufDataset.Create	239
7.16.5	TCustomBufDataset.GetFieldData	240
7.16.6	TCustomBufDataset.SetFieldData	240
7.16.7	TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates	240
7.16.8	TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog	241
7.16.9	TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord	241
7.16.10	TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates	241
7.16.11	TCustomBufDataset.Destroy	241
7.16.12	TCustomBufDataset.Locate	242

7.16.13 TCustomBufDataset.Lookup	242
7.16.14 TCustomBufDataset.UpdateStatus	243
7.16.15 TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream	244
7.16.16 TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex	244
7.16.17 TCustomBufDataset.ClearIndexes	245
7.16.18 TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket	245
7.16.19 TCustomBufDataset.GetDatasetPacket	245
7.16.20 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream	246
7.16.21 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream	246
7.16.22 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile	247
7.16.23 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile	247
7.16.24 TCustomBufDataset.CreateDataset	248
7.16.25 TCustomBufDataset.Clear	248
7.16.26 TCustomBufDataset.BookmarkValid	249
7.16.27 TCustomBufDataset.CompareBookmarks	249
7.16.28 TCustomBufDataset.CopyFromDataset	249
7.16.29 TCustomBufDataset.ChangeCount	250
7.16.30 TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount	250
7.16.31 TCustomBufDataset.ReadOnly	251
7.16.32 TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog	251
7.16.33 TCustomBufDataset.FileName	251
7.16.34 TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords	252
7.16.35 TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError	252
7.16.36 TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs	253
7.16.37 TCustomBufDataset.IndexName	253
7.16.38 TCustomBufDataset.IndexFieldNames	253
7.16.39 TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional	254
7.17 TDataPacketHandler	254
7.17.1 Method overview	254
7.17.2 TDataPacketHandler.Create	255
7.17.3 TDataPacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs	255
7.17.4 TDataPacketHandler.InitLoadRecords	255
7.17.5 TDataPacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord	255
7.17.6 TDataPacketHandler.GetRecordRowState	255
7.17.7 TDataPacketHandler.RestoreRecord	255
7.17.8 TDataPacketHandler.GotoNextRecord	255
7.17.9 TDataPacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs	255
7.17.10 TDataPacketHandler.StoreRecord	256
7.17.11 TDataPacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords	256
7.17.12 TDataPacketHandler.RecognizeStream	256

7.18	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex	256
7.18.1	Description	256
7.18.2	Method overview	257
7.18.3	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollBackward	257
7.18.4	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollForward	257
7.18.5	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetCurrent	257
7.18.6	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollFirst	258
7.18.7	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollLast	258
7.18.8	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetRecord	258
7.18.9	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	258
7.18.10	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	258
7.18.11	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	258
7.18.12	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	259
7.18.13	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CanScrollForward	259
7.18.14	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.DoScrollForward	259
7.18.15	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	259
7.18.16	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	259
7.18.17	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GotoBookmark	259
7.18.18	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CompareBookmarks	260
7.18.19	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SameBookmarks	260
7.18.20	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	260
7.18.21	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	260
7.18.22	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	260
7.18.23	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.BeginUpdate	260
7.18.24	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.AddRecord	261
7.18.25	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	261
7.18.26	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	261
7.18.27	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	261
7.18.28	TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.EndUpdate	261
7.19	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler	262
7.19.1	Method overview	262
7.19.2	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.Create	262
7.19.3	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs	262
7.19.4	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs	262
7.19.5	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.InitLoadRecords	262
7.19.6	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord	262
7.19.7	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetRecordRowState	262
7.19.8	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RestoreRecord	263
7.19.9	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GotoNextRecord	263
7.19.10	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreRecord	263

7.19.11	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords	263
7.19.12	TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RecognizeStream	263
7.20	TUniDirectionalBufIndex	263
7.20.1	Description	263
7.20.2	Method overview	264
7.20.3	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollBackward	264
7.20.4	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollForward	264
7.20.5	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GetCurrent	264
7.20.6	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollFirst	264
7.20.7	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollLast	265
7.20.8	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord	265
7.20.9	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.SetToLastRecord	265
7.20.10	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord	265
7.20.11	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord	265
7.20.12	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.CanScrollForward	265
7.20.13	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.DoScrollForward	266
7.20.14	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	266
7.20.15	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	266
7.20.16	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GotoBookmark	266
7.20.17	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InitialiseIndex	266
7.20.18	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord	266
7.20.19	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord	266
7.20.20	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.BeginUpdate	267
7.20.21	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.AddRecord	267
7.20.22	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	267
7.20.23	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex	267
7.20.24	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord	267
7.20.25	TUniDirectionalBufIndex.EndUpdate	267
8	Reference for unit 'bufstream'	268
8.1	Used units	268
8.2	Overview	268
8.3	Constants, types and variables	268
8.3.1	Constants	268
8.4	TBufferedFileStream	269
8.4.1	Description	269
8.4.2	Method overview	269
8.4.3	TBufferedFileStream.Create	269
8.4.4	TBufferedFileStream.Destroy	270
8.4.5	TBufferedFileStream.Seek	270

8.4.6	TBufferedFileStream.Read	271
8.4.7	TBufferedFileStream.Write	271
8.4.8	TBufferedFileStream.Flush	272
8.4.9	TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache	272
8.5	TBufStream	272
8.5.1	Description	272
8.5.2	Method overview	273
8.5.3	Property overview	273
8.5.4	TBufStream.Create	273
8.5.5	TBufStream.Destroy	273
8.5.6	TBufStream.Buffer	273
8.5.7	TBufStream.Capacity	274
8.5.8	TBufStream.BufferPos	274
8.5.9	TBufStream.BufferSize	274
8.6	TReadBufStream	274
8.6.1	Description	274
8.6.2	Method overview	275
8.6.3	TReadBufStream.Seek	275
8.6.4	TReadBufStream.Read	275
8.7	TWriteBufStream	275
8.7.1	Description	275
8.7.2	Method overview	275
8.7.3	TWriteBufStream.Destroy	276
8.7.4	TWriteBufStream.Seek	276
8.7.5	TWriteBufStream.Write	276
9	Reference for unit 'CacheCls'	277
9.1	Used units	277
9.2	Overview	277
9.3	Constants, types and variables	277
9.3.1	Resource strings	277
9.3.2	Types	277
9.4	TCacheSlot	278
9.5	ECacheError	278
9.5.1	Description	278
9.6	TCache	278
9.6.1	Description	278
9.6.2	Method overview	279
9.6.3	Property overview	279
9.6.4	TCache.Create	279

9.6.5	TCache.Destroy	279
9.6.6	TCache.Add	280
9.6.7	TCache.AddNew	280
9.6.8	TCache.FindSlot	280
9.6.9	TCache.IndexOf	281
9.6.10	TCache.Remove	281
9.6.11	TCache.Data	281
9.6.12	TCache.MRUSlot	282
9.6.13	TCache.LRUSlot	282
9.6.14	TCache.SlotCount	282
9.6.15	TCache.Slots	282
9.6.16	TCache.OnIsDataEqual	283
9.6.17	TCache.OnFreeSlot	283
10	Reference for unit 'Contnrs'	284
10.1	Used units	284
10.2	Overview	284
10.3	Constants, types and variables	284
10.3.1	Constants	284
10.3.2	Types	285
10.4	Procedures and functions	288
10.4.1	RSHash	288
10.4.2	ViDataSize	288
10.4.3	ViGet	288
10.4.4	ViSet	289
10.5	TBucket	289
10.6	TBucketItem	289
10.7	TFPHashListItem	289
10.8	EDuplicate	289
10.8.1	Description	289
10.9	EKeyNotFound	290
10.9.1	Description	290
10.10	TBucketList	290
10.10.1	Description	290
10.10.2	Method overview	290
10.10.3	TBucketList.Create	290
10.11	TClassList	290
10.11.1	Description	290
10.11.2	Method overview	291
10.11.3	Property overview	291

10.11.4 TClassList.Add	291
10.11.5 TClassList.Extract	291
10.11.6 TClassList.Remove	291
10.11.7 TClassList.IndexOf	292
10.11.8 TClassList.First	292
10.11.9 TClassList.Last	292
10.11.10 TClassList.Insert	292
10.11.11 TClassList.Items	293
10.12 TComponentList	293
10.12.1 Description	293
10.12.2 Method overview	293
10.12.3 Property overview	293
10.12.4 TComponentList.Destroy	294
10.12.5 TComponentList.Add	294
10.12.6 TComponentList.Extract	294
10.12.7 TComponentList.Remove	294
10.12.8 TComponentList.IndexOf	295
10.12.9 TComponentList.First	295
10.12.10 TComponentList.Last	295
10.12.11 TComponentList.Insert	296
10.12.12 TComponentList.Items	296
10.13 TCustomBucketList	296
10.13.1 Description	296
10.13.2 Method overview	297
10.13.3 Property overview	297
10.13.4 TCustomBucketList.Destroy	297
10.13.5 TCustomBucketList.Clear	297
10.13.6 TCustomBucketList.Add	297
10.13.7 TCustomBucketList.Assign	298
10.13.8 TCustomBucketList.Exists	298
10.13.9 TCustomBucketList.Find	298
10.13.10 TCustomBucketList.ForEach	298
10.13.11 TCustomBucketList.Remove	299
10.13.12 TCustomBucketList.Data	299
10.14 TFPCustomHashTable	299
10.14.1 Description	299
10.14.2 Method overview	300
10.14.3 Property overview	300
10.14.4 TFPCustomHashTable.Create	300
10.14.5 TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith	300

10.14.6	TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy	301
10.14.7	TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize	301
10.14.8	TFPCustomHashTable.Clear	301
10.14.9	TFPCustomHashTable.Delete	301
10.14.10	TFPCustomHashTable.Find	302
10.14.11	TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty	302
10.14.12	TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction	302
10.14.13	TFPCustomHashTable.Count	302
10.14.14	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize	303
10.14.15	TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable	303
10.14.16	TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots	303
10.14.17	TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor	303
10.14.18	TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen	304
10.14.19	TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength	304
10.14.20	TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions	304
10.14.21	TFPCustomHashTable.Density	305
10.15	TFPDataHashTable	305
10.15.1	Description	305
10.15.2	Method overview	305
10.15.3	Property overview	305
10.15.4	TFPDataHashTable.Iterate	305
10.15.5	TFPDataHashTable.Add	306
10.15.6	TFPDataHashTable.Items	306
10.16	TFPHashList	306
10.16.1	Description	306
10.16.2	Method overview	307
10.16.3	Property overview	307
10.16.4	TFPHashList.Create	307
10.16.5	TFPHashList.Destroy	307
10.16.6	TFPHashList.Add	308
10.16.7	TFPHashList.Clear	308
10.16.8	TFPHashList.NameOfIndex	308
10.16.9	TFPHashList.HashOfIndex	308
10.16.10	TFPHashList.GetNextCollision	309
10.16.11	TFPHashList.Delete	309
10.16.12	TFPHashList.Error	309
10.16.13	TFPHashList.Extract	309
10.16.14	TFPHashList.IndexOf	309
10.16.15	TFPHashList.Find	310
10.16.16	TFPHashList.FindIndexOf	310

10.16.17	TFPHashList.FindWithHash	310
10.16.18	TFPHashList.Rename	311
10.16.19	TFPHashList.Remove	311
10.16.20	TFPHashList.Pack	311
10.16.21	TFPHashList.ForEachCall	311
10.16.22	TFPHashList.Count	311
10.16.23	TFPHashList.Capacity	312
10.16.24	TFPHashList.Items	312
10.16.25	TFPHashList.List	312
10.17	TFPHashObject	313
10.17.1	Description	313
10.17.2	Method overview	313
10.17.3	Property overview	313
10.17.4	TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned	313
10.17.5	TFPHashObject.Create	313
10.17.6	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner	314
10.17.7	TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName	314
10.17.8	TFPHashObject.Rename	314
10.17.9	TFPHashObject.Name	314
10.17.10	TFPHashObject.Hash	315
10.17.11	TFPHashObject.OwnerList	315
10.18	TFPHashObjectList	315
10.18.1	Method overview	315
10.18.2	Property overview	315
10.18.3	TFPHashObjectList.Create	316
10.18.4	TFPHashObjectList.Destroy	316
10.18.5	TFPHashObjectList.Clear	316
10.18.6	TFPHashObjectList.Add	316
10.18.7	TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex	317
10.18.8	TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex	317
10.18.9	TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision	317
10.18.10	TFPHashObjectList.Delete	317
10.18.11	TFPHashObjectList.Extract	318
10.18.12	TFPHashObjectList.Remove	318
10.18.13	TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf	318
10.18.14	TFPHashObjectList.Find	318
10.18.15	TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf	319
10.18.16	TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash	319
10.18.17	TFPHashObjectList.Rename	319
10.18.18	TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf	319

10.18.1	TFPHashObjectList.Pack	320
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall	320
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.Capacity	320
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.Count	320
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects	321
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.Items	321
10.18.2	TFPHashObjectList.List	321
10.19	TFPObjectHashTable	321
10.19.1	Description	321
10.19.2	Method overview	322
10.19.3	Property overview	322
10.19.4	TFPObjectHashTable.Create	322
10.19.5	TFPObjectHashTable.CreateWith	322
10.19.6	TFPObjectHashTable.Iterate	323
10.19.7	TFPObjectHashTable.Add	323
10.19.8	TFPObjectHashTable.Items	323
10.19.9	TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects	323
10.20	TFPObjectList	324
10.20.1	Description	324
10.20.2	Method overview	324
10.20.3	Property overview	324
10.20.4	TFPObjectList.Create	324
10.20.5	TFPObjectList.Destroy	325
10.20.6	TFPObjectList.Clear	325
10.20.7	TFPObjectList.Add	325
10.20.8	TFPObjectList.Delete	325
10.20.9	TFPObjectList.Exchange	326
10.20.10	TFPObjectList.Expand	326
10.20.11	TFPObjectList.Extract	326
10.20.12	TFPObjectList.Remove	327
10.20.13	TFPObjectList.IndexOf	327
10.20.14	TFPObjectList.FindInstanceOf	327
10.20.15	TFPObjectList.Insert	328
10.20.16	TFPObjectList.First	328
10.20.17	TFPObjectList.Last	328
10.20.18	TFPObjectList.Move	328
10.20.19	TFPObjectList.Assign	329
10.20.20	TFPObjectList.Pack	329
10.20.21	TFPObjectList.Sort	329
10.20.22	TFPObjectList.ForEachCall	330

10.20.23	TFPObjectList.Capacity	330
10.20.24	TFPObjectList.Count	330
10.20.25	TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects	330
10.20.26	TFPObjectList.Items	331
10.20.27	TFPObjectList.List	331
10.21	TFPStringHashTable	331
10.21.1	Description	331
10.21.2	Method overview	331
10.21.3	Property overview	332
10.21.4	TFPStringHashTable.Iterate	332
10.21.5	TFPStringHashTable.Add	332
10.21.6	TFPStringHashTable.Items	332
10.22	THTCustomNode	332
10.22.1	Description	332
10.22.2	Method overview	333
10.22.3	Property overview	333
10.22.4	THTCustomNode.CreateWith	333
10.22.5	THTCustomNode.HasKey	333
10.22.6	THTCustomNode.Key	333
10.23	THTDataNode	334
10.23.1	Description	334
10.23.2	Property overview	334
10.23.3	THTDataNode.Data	334
10.24	THTObjectNode	334
10.24.1	Description	334
10.24.2	Property overview	334
10.24.3	THTObjectNode.Data	334
10.25	THTOwnedObjectNode	335
10.25.1	Description	335
10.25.2	Method overview	335
10.25.3	THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy	335
10.26	THTStringNode	335
10.26.1	Description	335
10.26.2	Property overview	335
10.26.3	THTStringNode.Data	335
10.27	TObjectBucketList	336
10.27.1	Description	336
10.27.2	Method overview	336
10.27.3	Property overview	336
10.27.4	TObjectBucketList.Add	336

10.27.5 TObjectBucketList.Remove	336
10.27.6 TObjectBucketList.Data	337
10.28TObjectList	337
10.28.1 Description	337
10.28.2 Method overview	337
10.28.3 Property overview	337
10.28.4 TObjectList.Create	337
10.28.5 TObjectList.Add	338
10.28.6 TObjectList.Extract	338
10.28.7 TObjectList.Remove	338
10.28.8 TObjectList.IndexOf	339
10.28.9 TObjectList.FindInstanceOf	339
10.28.10TObjectList.Insert	339
10.28.11TObjectList.First	339
10.28.12TObjectList.Last	340
10.28.13TObjectList.OwnsObjects	340
10.28.14TObjectList.Items	340
10.29TObjectQueue	340
10.29.1 Method overview	340
10.29.2 TObjectQueue.Push	341
10.29.3 TObjectQueue.Pop	341
10.29.4 TObjectQueue.Peek	341
10.30TObjectStack	341
10.30.1 Description	341
10.30.2 Method overview	342
10.30.3 TObjectStack.Push	342
10.30.4 TObjectStack.Pop	342
10.30.5 TObjectStack.Peek	342
10.31TOrderedList	343
10.31.1 Description	343
10.31.2 Method overview	343
10.31.3 TOrderedList.Create	343
10.31.4 TOrderedList.Destroy	343
10.31.5 TOrderedList.Count	344
10.31.6 TOrderedList.AtLeast	344
10.31.7 TOrderedList.Push	344
10.31.8 TOrderedList.Pop	344
10.31.9 TOrderedList.Peek	345
10.32TQueue	345
10.32.1 Description	345

10.33 TStack	345
10.33.1 Description	345
11 Reference for unit 'csvdocument'	346
11.1 Used units	346
11.2 Overview	346
11.3 Constants, types and variables	346
11.3.1 Types	346
11.4 TCSVDocument	347
11.4.1 Description	347
11.4.2 Method overview	347
11.4.3 Property overview	347
11.4.4 TCSVDocument.Create	347
11.4.5 TCSVDocument.Destroy	348
11.4.6 TCSVDocument.LoadFromFile	348
11.4.7 TCSVDocument.LoadFromStream	348
11.4.8 TCSVDocument.SaveToFile	349
11.4.9 TCSVDocument.SaveToStream	349
11.4.10 TCSVDocument.AddRow	349
11.4.11 TCSVDocument.AddCell	349
11.4.12 TCSVDocument.InsertRow	350
11.4.13 TCSVDocument.InsertCell	350
11.4.14 TCSVDocument.RemoveRow	350
11.4.15 TCSVDocument.RemoveCell	350
11.4.16 TCSVDocument.HasRow	351
11.4.17 TCSVDocument.HasCell	351
11.4.18 TCSVDocument.IndexOfCol	351
11.4.19 TCSVDocument.IndexOfRow	351
11.4.20 TCSVDocument.Clear	352
11.4.21 TCSVDocument.CloneRow	352
11.4.22 TCSVDocument.ExchangeRows	352
11.4.23 TCSVDocument.UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings	352
11.4.24 TCSVDocument.RemoveTrailingEmptyCells	352
11.4.25 TCSVDocument.DetectBOM	353
11.4.26 TCSVDocument.Cells	353
11.4.27 TCSVDocument.RowCount	353
11.4.28 TCSVDocument.ColCount	353
11.4.29 TCSVDocument.MaxColCount	354
11.4.30 TCSVDocument.CSVText	354
12 Reference for unit 'csvreadwrite'	355

12.1	Used units	355
12.2	Overview	355
12.3	Constants, types and variables	355
12.3.1	Types	355
12.4	Procedures and functions	356
12.4.1	ChangeLineEndings	356
12.5	TCSVBuilder	356
12.5.1	Description	356
12.5.2	Method overview	356
12.5.3	Property overview	357
12.5.4	TCSVBuilder.Create	357
12.5.5	TCSVBuilder.Destroy	357
12.5.6	TCSVBuilder.SetOutput	357
12.5.7	TCSVBuilder.ResetBuilder	357
12.5.8	TCSVBuilder.AppendCell	358
12.5.9	TCSVBuilder.AppendRow	358
12.5.10	TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutput	358
12.5.11	TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutputAsString	358
12.6	TCSVHandler	359
12.6.1	Description	359
12.6.2	Method overview	359
12.6.3	Property overview	359
12.6.4	TCSVHandler.Create	359
12.6.5	TCSVHandler.Assign	359
12.6.6	TCSVHandler.AssignCSVProperties	360
12.6.7	TCSVHandler.Delimiter	360
12.6.8	TCSVHandler.QuoteChar	360
12.6.9	TCSVHandler.LineEnding	360
12.6.10	TCSVHandler.IgnoreOuterWhitespace	361
12.6.11	TCSVHandler.QuoteOuterWhitespace	361
12.6.12	TCSVHandler.EqualColCountPerRow	361
12.7	TCSVParser	361
12.7.1	Description	361
12.7.2	Method overview	362
12.7.3	Property overview	362
12.7.4	TCSVParser.Create	362
12.7.5	TCSVParser.Destroy	362
12.7.6	TCSVParser.SetSource	363
12.7.7	TCSVParser.ResetParser	363
12.7.8	TCSVParser.ParseNextCell	363

12.7.9 TCSVParser.CurrentRow	363
12.7.10 TCSVParser.CurrentCol	364
12.7.11 TCSVParser.CurrentCellText	364
12.7.12 TCSVParser.MaxColCount	364
12.7.13 TCSVParser.FreeStream	365
12.7.14 TCSVParser.BOM	365
12.7.15 TCSVParser.DetectBOM	365
13 Reference for unit 'CustApp'	366
13.1 Used units	366
13.2 Overview	366
13.3 Constants, types and variables	366
13.3.1 Types	366
13.3.2 Variables	367
13.4 TCustomApplication	367
13.4.1 Description	367
13.4.2 Method overview	368
13.4.3 Property overview	368
13.4.4 TCustomApplication.Create	368
13.4.5 TCustomApplication.Destroy	369
13.4.6 TCustomApplication.HandleException	369
13.4.7 TCustomApplication.Initialize	369
13.4.8 TCustomApplication.Run	370
13.4.9 TCustomApplication.ShowException	370
13.4.10 TCustomApplication.Terminate	370
13.4.11 TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex	371
13.4.12 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue	371
13.4.13 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues	372
13.4.14 TCustomApplication.HasOption	372
13.4.15 TCustomApplication.CheckOptions	372
13.4.16 TCustomApplication.GetNonOptions	373
13.4.17 TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList	374
13.4.18 TCustomApplication.Log	374
13.4.19 TCustomApplication.ExeName	374
13.4.20 TCustomApplication.HelpFile	375
13.4.21 TCustomApplication.Terminated	375
13.4.22 TCustomApplication.Title	375
13.4.23 TCustomApplication.OnException	375
13.4.24 TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication	376
13.4.25 TCustomApplication.Location	376

13.4.26 TCustomApplication.Params	376
13.4.27 TCustomApplication.ParamCount	377
13.4.28 TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable	377
13.4.29 TCustomApplication.OptionChar	377
13.4.30 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions	377
13.4.31 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveShortOptions	378
13.4.32 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveLongOptions	378
13.4.33 TCustomApplication.StopOnException	378
13.4.34 TCustomApplication.ExceptionExitCode	378
13.4.35 TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter	379
13.4.36 TCustomApplication.SingleInstance	379
13.4.37 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass	379
13.4.38 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled	379
14 Reference for unit 'custweb'	381
14.1 Used units	381
14.2 Overview	381
14.3 Constants, types and variables	381
14.3.1 Types	381
14.4 Procedures and functions	382
14.4.1 ExceptionToHTML	382
14.5 EFPWebError	382
14.5.1 Description	382
14.6 TCustomWebApplication	383
14.6.1 Description	383
14.6.2 Method overview	383
14.6.3 Property overview	383
14.6.4 TCustomWebApplication.Create	383
14.6.5 TCustomWebApplication.Destroy	384
14.6.6 TCustomWebApplication.CreateForm	384
14.6.7 TCustomWebApplication.Initialize	384
14.6.8 TCustomWebApplication.Terminate	385
14.6.9 TCustomWebApplication.HandleGetOnPost	385
14.6.10 TCustomWebApplication.RedirectOnError	385
14.6.11 TCustomWebApplication.RedirectOnErrorURL	385
14.6.12 TCustomWebApplication.ApplicationURL	386
14.6.13 TCustomWebApplication.AllowDefaultModule	386
14.6.14 TCustomWebApplication.DefaultModuleName	386
14.6.15 TCustomWebApplication.ModuleVariable	386
14.6.16 TCustomWebApplication.OnGetModule	387

14.6.17 TCustomWebApplication.Email	387
14.6.18 TCustomWebApplication.Administrator	387
14.6.19 TCustomWebApplication.OnShowRequestException	387
14.6.20 TCustomWebApplication.OnUnknownRequestEncoding	388
14.6.21 TCustomWebApplication.EventLog	388
14.6.22 TCustomWebApplication.PreferModuleName	388
14.6.23 TCustomWebApplication.LegacyRouting	388
14.7 TWebHandler	389
14.7.1 Description	389
14.7.2 Method overview	389
14.7.3 Property overview	390
14.7.4 TWebHandler.Create	390
14.7.5 TWebHandler.Destroy	390
14.7.6 TWebHandler.Run	391
14.7.7 TWebHandler.Log	391
14.7.8 TWebHandler.DoHandleRequest	391
14.7.9 TWebHandler.HandleRequest	392
14.7.10 TWebHandler.HandleGetOnPost	392
14.7.11 TWebHandler.RedirectOnError	392
14.7.12 TWebHandler.RedirectOnErrorURL	392
14.7.13 TWebHandler.ApplicationURL	393
14.7.14 TWebHandler.AllowDefaultModule	393
14.7.15 TWebHandler.DefaultModuleName	393
14.7.16 TWebHandler.ModuleVariable	393
14.7.17 TWebHandler.OnGetModule	394
14.7.18 TWebHandler.Email	394
14.7.19 TWebHandler.Title	394
14.7.20 TWebHandler.Administrator	394
14.7.21 TWebHandler.OnShowRequestException	395
14.7.22 TWebHandler.OnIdle	395
14.7.23 TWebHandler.OnLog	395
14.7.24 TWebHandler.OnUnknownRequestEncoding	395
14.7.25 TWebHandler.OnInitModule	396
14.7.26 TWebHandler.PreferModuleName	396
14.7.27 TWebHandler.LegacyRouting	396
15 Reference for unit 'daemonapp'	397
15.1 Used units	397
15.2 Overview	397
15.3 Constants, types and variables	398

15.3.1	Resource strings	398
15.3.2	Types	399
15.3.3	Variables	403
15.4	Procedures and functions	403
15.4.1	Application	403
15.4.2	DaemonError	404
15.4.3	RegisterDaemonApplicationClass	404
15.4.4	RegisterDaemonClass	404
15.4.5	RegisterDaemonMapper	404
15.5	EDaemon	405
15.5.1	Description	405
15.6	TCustomDaemon	405
15.6.1	Description	405
15.6.2	Method overview	405
15.6.3	Property overview	405
15.6.4	TCustomDaemon.CheckControlMessages	405
15.6.5	TCustomDaemon.LogMessage	405
15.6.6	TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus	406
15.6.7	TCustomDaemon.Definition	406
15.6.8	TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread	406
15.6.9	TCustomDaemon.Controller	407
15.6.10	TCustomDaemon.Status	407
15.6.11	TCustomDaemon.Logger	407
15.7	TCustomDaemonApplication	408
15.7.1	Description	408
15.7.2	Method overview	408
15.7.3	Property overview	408
15.7.4	TCustomDaemonApplication.Create	408
15.7.5	TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy	408
15.7.6	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException	409
15.7.7	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon	409
15.7.8	TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons	409
15.7.9	TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons	409
15.7.10	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons	410
15.7.11	TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons	410
15.7.12	TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp	410
15.7.13	TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm	410
15.7.14	TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun	411
15.7.15	TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog	411
15.7.16	TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop	411

15.7.17	TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle	412
15.7.18	TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode	412
15.7.19	TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile	412
15.8	TCustomDaemonMapper	412
15.8.1	Description	412
15.8.2	Method overview	413
15.8.3	Property overview	413
15.8.4	TCustomDaemonMapper.Create	413
15.8.5	TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy	413
15.8.6	TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs	414
15.8.7	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate	414
15.8.8	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy	414
15.8.9	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun	414
15.8.10	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall	415
15.8.11	TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall	415
15.9	TDaemon	415
15.9.1	Description	415
15.9.2	Property overview	416
15.9.3	TDaemon.Definition	416
15.9.4	TDaemon.Status	416
15.9.5	TDaemon.OnStart	416
15.9.6	TDaemon.OnStop	417
15.9.7	TDaemon.OnPause	417
15.9.8	TDaemon.OnContinue	417
15.9.9	TDaemon.OnShutDown	418
15.9.10	TDaemon.OnExecute	418
15.9.11	TDaemon.BeforeInstall	418
15.9.12	TDaemon.AfterInstall	419
15.9.13	TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall	419
15.9.14	TDaemon.AfterUnInstall	419
15.9.15	TDaemon.OnControlCode	419
15.9.16	TDaemon.OnControlCodeEvent	420
15.10	TDaemonApplication	420
15.10.1	Description	420
15.11	TDaemonController	420
15.11.1	Description	420
15.11.2	Method overview	420
15.11.3	Property overview	420
15.11.4	TDaemonController.Create	421
15.11.5	TDaemonController.Destroy	421

15.11.6 TDaemonController.StartService	421
15.11.7 TDaemonController.Main	421
15.11.8 TDaemonController.Controller	422
15.11.9 TDaemonController.ReportStatus	422
15.11.10 TDaemonController.Daemon	422
15.11.11 TDaemonController.Params	422
15.11.12 TDaemonController.LastStatus	423
15.11.13 TDaemonController.CheckPoint	423
15.12 TDaemonDef	423
15.12.1 Description	423
15.12.2 Method overview	423
15.12.3 Property overview	424
15.12.4 TDaemonDef.Create	424
15.12.5 TDaemonDef.Destroy	424
15.12.6 TDaemonDef.DaemonClass	424
15.12.7 TDaemonDef.Instance	425
15.12.8 TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName	425
15.12.9 TDaemonDef.Name	425
15.12.10 TDaemonDef.Description	425
15.12.11 TDaemonDef.DisplayName	426
15.12.12 TDaemonDef.RunArguments	426
15.12.13 TDaemonDef.Options	426
15.12.14 TDaemonDef.Enabled	426
15.12.15 TDaemonDef.WinBindings	427
15.12.16 TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance	427
15.12.17 TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport	427
15.13 TDaemonDefs	427
15.13.1 Description	427
15.13.2 Method overview	428
15.13.3 Property overview	428
15.13.4 TDaemonDefs.Create	428
15.13.5 TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef	428
15.13.6 TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef	428
15.13.7 TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName	429
15.13.8 TDaemonDefs.Daemons	429
15.14 TDaemonMapper	429
15.14.1 Description	429
15.14.2 Method overview	429
15.14.3 TDaemonMapper.Create	430
15.14.4 TDaemonMapper.CreateNew	430

15.15	TDaemonThread	430
15.15.1	Description	430
15.15.2	Method overview	430
15.15.3	Property overview	430
15.15.4	TDaemonThread.Create	431
15.15.5	TDaemonThread.Execute	431
15.15.6	TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage	431
15.15.7	TDaemonThread.StopDaemon	431
15.15.8	TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon	432
15.15.9	TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon	432
15.15.10	TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon	432
15.15.11	TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon	432
15.15.12	TDaemonThread.Daemon	433
15.16	TDependencies	433
15.16.1	Description	433
15.16.2	Method overview	433
15.16.3	Property overview	433
15.16.4	TDependencies.Create	433
15.16.5	TDependencies.Items	433
15.17	TDependency	434
15.17.1	Description	434
15.17.2	Method overview	434
15.17.3	Property overview	434
15.17.4	TDependency.Assign	434
15.17.5	TDependency.Name	434
15.17.6	TDependency.IsGroup	434
15.18	TWinBindings	435
15.18.1	Description	435
15.18.2	Method overview	435
15.18.3	Property overview	435
15.18.4	TWinBindings.Create	435
15.18.5	TWinBindings.Destroy	435
15.18.6	TWinBindings.Assign	436
15.18.7	TWinBindings.ErrCode	436
15.18.8	TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode	436
15.18.9	TWinBindings.Dependencies	436
15.18.10	TWinBindings.GroupName	437
15.18.11	TWinBindings.Password	437
15.18.12	TWinBindings.UserName	437
15.18.13	TWinBindings.StartType	437

15.18.14	TWinBindings.WaitHint	438
15.18.15	TWinBindings.IDTag	438
15.18.16	TWinBindings.ServiceType	438
15.18.17	TWinBindings.ErrorSeverity	438
15.18.18	TWinBindings.AcceptedCodes	439
16	Reference for unit 'DB'	440
16.1	Used units	440
16.2	Overview	440
16.3	Constants, types and variables	440
16.3.1	Constants	440
16.3.2	Types	442
16.3.3	Variables	457
16.4	Procedures and functions	458
16.4.1	BuffersEqual	458
16.4.2	DatabaseError	458
16.4.3	DatabaseErrorFmt	458
16.4.4	DateTimeRecToDateTime	459
16.4.5	DateTimeToDateTimeRec	459
16.4.6	DisposeMem	459
16.4.7	enumerator(TDataSet):TDataSetEnumerator	459
16.4.8	ExtractFieldName	460
16.4.9	SkipComments	460
16.5	TLookupListRec	460
16.6	EDatabaseError	460
16.6.1	Description	460
16.7	EUpdateError	461
16.7.1	Description	461
16.7.2	Method overview	461
16.7.3	Property overview	461
16.7.4	EUpdateError.Create	461
16.7.5	EUpdateError.Destroy	461
16.7.6	EUpdateError.Context	462
16.7.7	EUpdateError.ErrorCode	462
16.7.8	EUpdateError.OriginalException	462
16.7.9	EUpdateError.PreviousError	462
16.8	IProviderSupport	463
16.8.1	Description	463
16.8.2	Method overview	463
16.8.3	IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction	463

16.8.4	IProviderSupport.PSExecute	463
16.8.5	IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement	464
16.8.6	IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes	464
16.8.7	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText	464
16.8.8	IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType	465
16.8.9	IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder	465
16.8.10	IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs	465
16.8.11	IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields	465
16.8.12	IProviderSupport.PSGetParams	466
16.8.13	IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar	466
16.8.14	IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName	466
16.8.15	IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException	466
16.8.16	IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction	467
16.8.17	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased	467
16.8.18	IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported	467
16.8.19	IProviderSupport.PSReset	467
16.8.20	IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText	468
16.8.21	IProviderSupport.PSSetParams	468
16.8.22	IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction	468
16.8.23	IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord	468
16.9	TArrayField	469
16.9.1	Method overview	469
16.9.2	TArrayField.Create	469
16.10	TAutoIncField	469
16.10.1	Description	469
16.10.2	Method overview	469
16.10.3	TAutoIncField.Create	469
16.11	TBCDField	469
16.11.1	Description	469
16.11.2	Method overview	470
16.11.3	Property overview	470
16.11.4	TBCDField.Create	470
16.11.5	TBCDField.CheckRange	470
16.11.6	TBCDField.Value	471
16.11.7	TBCDField.Precision	471
16.11.8	TBCDField.Currency	471
16.11.9	TBCDField.MaxValue	471
16.11.10	TBCDField.MinValue	472
16.11.11	TBCDField.Size	472
16.12	TBinaryField	472

16.12.1 Description	472
16.12.2 Method overview	473
16.12.3 Property overview	473
16.12.4 TBinaryField.Create	473
16.12.5 TBinaryField.Size	473
16.13 TBlobField	473
16.13.1 Description	473
16.13.2 Method overview	474
16.13.3 Property overview	474
16.13.4 TBlobField.Create	474
16.13.5 TBlobField.Clear	474
16.13.6 TBlobField.IsBlob	474
16.13.7 TBlobField.LoadFromFile	475
16.13.8 TBlobField.LoadFromStream	475
16.13.9 TBlobField.SaveToFile	475
16.13.10 TBlobField.SaveToStream	476
16.13.11 TBlobField.SetFieldType	476
16.13.12 TBlobField.BlobSize	476
16.13.13 TBlobField.Modified	476
16.13.14 TBlobField.Value	477
16.13.15 TBlobField.Transliterate	477
16.13.16 TBlobField.BlobType	477
16.13.17 TBlobField.Size	477
16.14 TBooleanField	478
16.14.1 Description	478
16.14.2 Method overview	478
16.14.3 Property overview	478
16.14.4 TBooleanField.Create	478
16.14.5 TBooleanField.Value	478
16.14.6 TBooleanField.DisplayValues	479
16.15 TByteField	479
16.15.1 Description	479
16.15.2 Method overview	479
16.15.3 TByteField.Create	479
16.16 TBytesField	480
16.16.1 Description	480
16.16.2 Method overview	480
16.16.3 TBytesField.Create	480
16.17 TCheckConstraint	480
16.17.1 Description	480

16.17.2 Method overview	480
16.17.3 Property overview	481
16.17.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign	481
16.17.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint	481
16.17.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage	481
16.17.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary	482
16.17.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint	482
16.18 TCheckConstraints	482
16.18.1 Description	482
16.18.2 Method overview	482
16.18.3 Property overview	482
16.18.4 TCheckConstraints.Create	483
16.18.5 TCheckConstraints.Add	483
16.18.6 TCheckConstraints.Items	483
16.19 TCurrencyField	483
16.19.1 Description	483
16.19.2 Method overview	484
16.19.3 Property overview	484
16.19.4 TCurrencyField.Create	484
16.19.5 TCurrencyField.Currency	484
16.20 TCustomConnection	484
16.20.1 Description	484
16.20.2 Method overview	484
16.20.3 Property overview	485
16.20.4 TCustomConnection.Close	485
16.20.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy	485
16.20.6 TCustomConnection.Open	485
16.20.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount	486
16.20.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets	486
16.20.9 TCustomConnection.Connected	486
16.20.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt	487
16.20.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect	487
16.20.12 TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect	487
16.20.13 TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect	488
16.20.14 TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect	488
16.20.15 TCustomConnection.OnLogin	488
16.20.16 TCustomConnection.OnCloseError	488
16.21 TDatabase	489
16.21.1 Description	489
16.21.2 Method overview	489

16.21.3 Property overview	489
16.21.4 TDatabase.Create	489
16.21.5 TDatabase.Destroy	490
16.21.6 TDatabase.CloseDataSets	490
16.21.7 TDatabase.CloseTransactions	490
16.21.8 TDatabase.StartTransaction	490
16.21.9 TDatabase.EndTransaction	491
16.21.10 TDatabase.TransactionCount	491
16.21.11 TDatabase.Transactions	491
16.21.12 TDatabase.Directory	491
16.21.13 TDatabase.IsSQLBased	492
16.21.14 TDatabase.Connected	492
16.21.15 TDatabase.DatabaseName	492
16.21.16 TDatabase.KeepConnection	492
16.21.17 TDatabase.Params	493
16.22 TDataLink	493
16.22.1 Description	493
16.22.2 Method overview	493
16.22.3 Property overview	494
16.22.4 TDataLink.Create	494
16.22.5 TDataLink.Destroy	494
16.22.6 TDataLink.Edit	494
16.22.7 TDataLink.UpdateRecord	495
16.22.8 TDataLink.ExecuteAction	495
16.22.9 TDataLink.UpdateAction	495
16.22.10 TDataLink.Active	495
16.22.11 TDataLink.ActiveRecord	496
16.22.12 TDataLink.BOF	496
16.22.13 TDataLink.BufferCount	496
16.22.14 TDataLink.DataSet	497
16.22.15 TDataLink.DataSource	497
16.22.16 TDataLink.DataSourceFixed	497
16.22.17 TDataLink.Editing	497
16.22.18 TDataLink.Eof	498
16.22.19 TDataLink.ReadOnly	498
16.22.20 TDataLink.RecordCount	498
16.23 TDataSet	498
16.23.1 Description	498
16.23.2 Method overview	501
16.23.3 Property overview	503

16.23.4 TDataSet.Create	504
16.23.5 TDataSet.Destroy	504
16.23.6 TDataSet.ActiveBuffer	504
16.23.7 TDataSet.GetFieldData	504
16.23.8 TDataSet.SetFieldData	505
16.23.9 TDataSet.Append	505
16.23.10 TDataSet.AppendRecord	505
16.23.11 TDataSet.BookmarkValid	506
16.23.12 TDataSet.Cancel	506
16.23.13 TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode	506
16.23.14 TDataSet.ClearFields	506
16.23.15 TDataSet.Close	507
16.23.16 TDataSet.ControlsDisabled	507
16.23.17 TDataSet.CompareBookmarks	507
16.23.18 TDataSet.CreateBlobStream	508
16.23.19 TDataSet.CursorPosChanged	508
16.23.20 TDataSet.DataConvert	508
16.23.21 TDataSet.Delete	508
16.23.22 TDataSet.DisableControls	509
16.23.23 TDataSet.Edit	509
16.23.24 TDataSet.EnableControls	510
16.23.25 TDataSet.FieldByName	510
16.23.26 TDataSet.FindField	510
16.23.27 TDataSet.FindFirst	511
16.23.28 TDataSet.FindLast	511
16.23.29 TDataSet.FindNext	511
16.23.30 TDataSet.FindPrior	511
16.23.31 TDataSet.First	512
16.23.32 TDataSet.FreeBookmark	512
16.23.33 TDataSet.GetBookmark	512
16.23.34 TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord	513
16.23.35 TDataSet.GetFieldList	513
16.23.36 TDataSet.GetFieldNames	513
16.23.37 TDataSet.GotoBookmark	513
16.23.38 TDataSet.Insert	514
16.23.39 TDataSet.InsertRecord	514
16.23.40 TDataSet.IsEmpty	514
16.23.41 TDataSet.IsLinkedTo	514
16.23.42 TDataSet.IsSequenced	515
16.23.43 TDataSet.Last	515

16.23.44	DataSet.Locate	515
16.23.45	DataSet.Lookup	516
16.23.46	DataSet.MoveBy	516
16.23.47	DataSet.Next	516
16.23.48	DataSet.Open	517
16.23.49	DataSet.Post	517
16.23.50	DataSet.Prior	518
16.23.51	DataSet.Refresh	518
16.23.52	DataSet.Resync	518
16.23.53	DataSet.SetFields	518
16.23.54	DataSet.Translate	519
16.23.55	DataSet.UpdateCursorPos	519
16.23.56	DataSet.UpdateRecord	519
16.23.57	DataSet.UpdateStatus	520
16.23.58	DataSet.BlockReadSize	520
16.23.59	DataSet.BOF	520
16.23.60	DataSet.Bookmark	520
16.23.61	DataSet.CanModify	521
16.23.62	DataSet.DataSource	522
16.23.63	DataSet.DefaultFields	522
16.23.64	DataSet.EOF	522
16.23.65	DataSet.FieldCount	523
16.23.66	DataSet.FieldDefs	523
16.23.67	DataSet.Found	524
16.23.68	DataSet.Modified	524
16.23.69	DataSet.IsUniDirectional	524
16.23.70	DataSet.RecordCount	525
16.23.71	DataSet.RecNo	525
16.23.72	DataSet.RecordSize	525
16.23.73	DataSet.SparseArrays	526
16.23.74	DataSet.State	526
16.23.75	DataSet.Fields	526
16.23.76	DataSet.FieldValues	527
16.23.77	DataSet.Filter	527
16.23.78	DataSet.Filtered	527
16.23.79	DataSet.FilterOptions	528
16.23.80	DataSet.Active	528
16.23.81	DataSet.AutoCalcFields	528
16.23.82	DataSet.BeforeOpen	529
16.23.83	DataSet.AfterOpen	529

16.23.84	TDataset.BeforeClose	529
16.23.85	TDataset.AfterClose	529
16.23.86	TDataset.BeforeInsert	530
16.23.87	TDataset.AfterInsert	530
16.23.88	TDataset.BeforeEdit	530
16.23.89	TDataset.AfterEdit	531
16.23.90	TDataset.BeforePost	531
16.23.91	TDataset.AfterPost	531
16.23.92	TDataset.BeforeCancel	532
16.23.93	TDataset.AfterCancel	532
16.23.94	TDataset.BeforeDelete	532
16.23.95	TDataset.AfterDelete	533
16.23.96	TDataset.BeforeScroll	533
16.23.97	TDataset.AfterScroll	533
16.23.98	TDataset.BeforeRefresh	534
16.23.99	TDataset.AfterRefresh	534
16.23.100	TDataset.OnCalcFields	534
16.23.101	TDataset.OnDeleteError	535
16.23.102	TDataset.OnEditError	535
16.23.103	TDataset.OnFilterRecord	536
16.23.104	TDataset.OnNewRecord	536
16.23.105	TDataset.OnPostError	536
16.24	TDatasetEnumerator	537
16.24.1	Description	537
16.24.2	Method overview	537
16.24.3	Property overview	537
16.24.4	TDatasetEnumerator.Create	537
16.24.5	TDatasetEnumerator.MoveNext	537
16.24.6	TDatasetEnumerator.Current	538
16.25	TDatasource	538
16.25.1	Description	538
16.25.2	Method overview	538
16.25.3	Property overview	538
16.25.4	TDatasource.Create	539
16.25.5	TDatasource.Destroy	539
16.25.6	TDatasource.Edit	539
16.25.7	TDatasource.IsLinkedTo	539
16.25.8	TDatasource.State	540
16.25.9	TDatasource.AutoEdit	540
16.25.10	TDatasource.DatasSet	540

16.25.1	IFDataSource.Enabled	541
16.25.12	TDataSource.OnStateChange	541
16.25.13	TDataSource.OnDataChange	541
16.25.14	TDataSource.OnUpdateData	542
16.26	TDateField	542
16.26.1	Description	542
16.26.2	Method overview	542
16.26.3	TDateField.Create	542
16.27	TDateTimeField	542
16.27.1	Description	542
16.27.2	Method overview	543
16.27.3	Property overview	543
16.27.4	TDateTimeField.Create	543
16.27.5	TDateTimeField.Value	543
16.27.6	TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat	543
16.27.7	TDateTimeField.EditMask	544
16.28	TDBDataset	544
16.28.1	Description	544
16.28.2	Method overview	544
16.28.3	Property overview	544
16.28.4	TDBDataset.destroy	545
16.28.5	TDBDataset.DataBase	545
16.28.6	TDBDataset.Transaction	545
16.29	TDBTransaction	545
16.29.1	Description	545
16.29.2	Method overview	546
16.29.3	Property overview	546
16.29.4	TDBTransaction.Create	546
16.29.5	TDBTransaction.Destroy	546
16.29.6	TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets	546
16.29.7	TDBTransaction.DataBase	547
16.29.8	TDBTransaction.Active	547
16.30	TDefCollection	547
16.30.1	Description	547
16.30.2	Method overview	547
16.30.3	Property overview	547
16.30.4	TDefCollection.create	548
16.30.5	TDefCollection.Find	548
16.30.6	TDefCollection.GetItemNames	548
16.30.7	TDefCollection.IndexOf	548

16.30.8 TDefCollection.Dataset	549
16.30.9 TDefCollection.Updated	549
16.31 TDetailDataLink	549
16.31.1 Description	549
16.31.2 Property overview	549
16.31.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet	549
16.32 TExtendedField	550
16.32.1 Method overview	550
16.32.2 Property overview	550
16.32.3 TExtendedField.Create	550
16.32.4 TExtendedField.CheckRange	550
16.32.5 TExtendedField.Value	550
16.32.6 TExtendedField.Currency	550
16.32.7 TExtendedField.MaxValue	550
16.32.8 TExtendedField.MinValue	551
16.32.9 TExtendedField.Precision	551
16.33 TField	551
16.33.1 Description	551
16.33.2 Method overview	551
16.33.3 Property overview	553
16.33.4 TField.Create	554
16.33.5 TField.Destroy	554
16.33.6 TField.Assign	554
16.33.7 TField.AssignValue	554
16.33.8 TField.Clear	555
16.33.9 TField.FocusControl	555
16.33.10 TField.GetData	555
16.33.11 TField.IsBlob	556
16.33.12 TField.IsValidChar	556
16.33.13 TField.RefreshLookupList	556
16.33.14 TField.SetData	556
16.33.15 TField.SetFieldType	557
16.33.16 TField.Validate	557
16.33.17 TField.AsBCD	557
16.33.18 TField.AsBoolean	558
16.33.19 TField.AsBytes	558
16.33.20 TField.AsCurrency	558
16.33.21 TField.AsDateTime	559
16.33.22 TField.AsExtended	559
16.33.23 TField.AsFloat	559

16.33.24	Field.AsLongint	559
16.33.25	Field.AsLongWord	560
16.33.26	Field.AsLargeInt	560
16.33.27	Field.AsInteger	560
16.33.28	Field.AsSingle	561
16.33.29	Field.AsString	561
16.33.30	Field.AsAnsiString	561
16.33.31	Field.AsUnicodeString	562
16.33.32	Field.AsUTF8String	562
16.33.33	Field.AsWideString	562
16.33.34	Field.AsVariant	563
16.33.35	Field.AttributeSet	563
16.33.36	Field.Calculated	563
16.33.37	Field.CanModify	563
16.33.38	Field.CurValue	564
16.33.39	Field.DataSet	564
16.33.40	Field.DataSize	564
16.33.41	Field.DataType	564
16.33.42	Field.DisplayName	565
16.33.43	Field.DisplayText	565
16.33.44	Field.EditMask	565
16.33.45	Field.EditMaskPtr	566
16.33.46	Field.FieldNo	566
16.33.47	Field.IsIndexField	566
16.33.48	Field.IsNull	566
16.33.49	Field.NewValue	567
16.33.50	Field.Offset	567
16.33.51	Field.Size	567
16.33.52	Field.Text	567
16.33.53	Field.ValidChars	568
16.33.54	Field.Value	568
16.33.55	Field.OldValue	568
16.33.56	Field.LookupList	569
16.33.57	Field.FieldDef	569
16.33.58	Field.Alignment	569
16.33.59	Field.CustomConstraint	570
16.33.60	Field.ConstraintErrorMessage	570
16.33.61	Field.DefaultExpression	570
16.33.62	Field.DisplayLabel	571
16.33.63	Field.DisplayWidth	571

16.33.64	Field.FieldKind	571
16.33.65	Field.FieldName	571
16.33.66	Field.HasConstraints	572
16.33.67	Field.Index	572
16.33.68	Field.ImportedConstraint	572
16.33.69	Field.KeyFields	573
16.33.70	Field.LookupCache	573
16.33.71	Field.LookupDataSet	573
16.33.72	Field.LookupKeyFields	573
16.33.73	Field.LookupResultField	574
16.33.74	Field.Lookup	574
16.33.75	Field.Origin	574
16.33.76	Field.ParentField	574
16.33.77	Field.ProviderFlags	575
16.33.78	Field.ReadOnly	575
16.33.79	Field.Required	575
16.33.80	Field.Visible	576
16.33.81	Field.OnChange	576
16.33.82	Field.OnGetText	576
16.33.83	Field.OnSetText	576
16.33.84	Field.OnValidate	577
16.34	TFieldDef	577
16.34.1	Description	577
16.34.2	Method overview	577
16.34.3	Property overview	578
16.34.4	TFieldDef.Create	578
16.34.5	TFieldDef.Destroy	578
16.34.6	TFieldDef.AddChild	579
16.34.7	TFieldDef.Assign	579
16.34.8	TFieldDef.CreateField	579
16.34.9	TFieldDef.HasChildDefs	579
16.34.10	TFieldDef.FieldClass	579
16.34.11	TFieldDef.FieldNo	580
16.34.12	TFieldDef.CharSize	580
16.34.13	TFieldDef.InternalCalcField	580
16.34.14	TFieldDef.ParentDef	581
16.34.15	TFieldDef.Required	581
16.34.16	TFieldDef.Codepage	581
16.34.17	TFieldDef.Attributes	581
16.34.18	TFieldDef.DataType	582

16.34.19 TFieldDef.ChildDefs	582
16.34.20 TFieldDef.Precision	582
16.34.21 TFieldDef.Size	582
16.35 TFieldDefs	583
16.35.1 Description	583
16.35.2 Method overview	583
16.35.3 Property overview	583
16.35.4 TFieldDefs.Create	583
16.35.5 TFieldDefs.Add	583
16.35.6 TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef	584
16.35.7 TFieldDefs.Assign	584
16.35.8 TFieldDefs.Find	584
16.35.9 TFieldDefs.Update	585
16.35.10 TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique	585
16.35.11 TFieldDefs.HiddenFields	585
16.35.12 TFieldDefs.Items	585
16.35.13 TFieldDefs.ParentDef	586
16.36 TFields	586
16.36.1 Description	586
16.36.2 Method overview	586
16.36.3 Property overview	586
16.36.4 TFields.Create	586
16.36.5 TFields.Destroy	587
16.36.6 TFields.Add	587
16.36.7 TFields.CheckFieldName	587
16.36.8 TFields.CheckFieldNames	587
16.36.9 TFields.Clear	588
16.36.10 TFields.FindField	588
16.36.11 TFields.FieldByName	588
16.36.12 TFields.FieldByNumber	588
16.36.13 TFields.GetEnumerator	589
16.36.14 TFields.GetFieldNames	589
16.36.15 TFields.IndexOf	589
16.36.16 TFields.Remove	589
16.36.17 TFields.Count	590
16.36.18 TFields.Dataset	590
16.36.19 TFields.Fields	590
16.37 TFieldsEnumerator	590
16.37.1 Description	590
16.37.2 Method overview	591

16.37.3 Property overview	591
16.37.4 TFieldsEnumerator.Create	591
16.37.5 TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext	591
16.37.6 TFieldsEnumerator.Current	592
16.38 TFloatField	592
16.38.1 Description	592
16.38.2 Method overview	592
16.38.3 Property overview	592
16.38.4 TFloatField.Create	592
16.38.5 TFloatField.CheckRange	593
16.38.6 TFloatField.Value	593
16.38.7 TFloatField.Currency	593
16.38.8 TFloatField.MaxValue	593
16.38.9 TFloatField.MinValue	594
16.38.10 TFloatField.Precision	594
16.39 TFMTBCDField	594
16.39.1 Description	594
16.39.2 Method overview	595
16.39.3 Property overview	595
16.39.4 TFMTBCDField.Create	595
16.39.5 TFMTBCDField.CheckRange	595
16.39.6 TFMTBCDField.Value	595
16.39.7 TFMTBCDField.Precision	596
16.39.8 TFMTBCDField.Currency	596
16.39.9 TFMTBCDField.MaxValue	596
16.39.10 TFMTBCDField.MinValue	596
16.39.11 TFMTBCDField.Size	597
16.40 TGraphicField	597
16.40.1 Description	597
16.40.2 Method overview	597
16.40.3 TGraphicField.Create	597
16.41 TGuidField	597
16.41.1 Description	597
16.41.2 Method overview	598
16.41.3 Property overview	598
16.41.4 TGuidField.Create	598
16.41.5 TGuidField.AsGuid	598
16.42 TIndexDef	598
16.42.1 Description	598
16.42.2 Method overview	599

16.42.3 Property overview	599
16.42.4 TIndexDef.Create	599
16.42.5 TIndexDef.Expression	599
16.42.6 TIndexDef.Fields	599
16.42.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields	600
16.42.8 TIndexDef.DescFields	600
16.42.9 TIndexDef.Options	600
16.42.10 TIndexDef.Source	601
16.43 TIndexDefs	601
16.43.1 Description	601
16.43.2 Method overview	601
16.43.3 Property overview	601
16.43.4 TIndexDefs.Create	601
16.43.5 TIndexDefs.Add	602
16.43.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef	602
16.43.7 TIndexDefs.Find	602
16.43.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields	602
16.43.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields	603
16.43.10 TIndexDefs.Update	603
16.43.11 TIndexDefs.Items	603
16.44 TIntegerField	603
16.44.1 Description	603
16.45 TLargeintField	603
16.45.1 Description	603
16.45.2 Method overview	604
16.45.3 Property overview	604
16.45.4 TLargeintField.Create	604
16.45.5 TLargeintField.CheckRange	604
16.45.6 TLargeintField.Value	604
16.45.7 TLargeintField.MaxValue	605
16.45.8 TLargeintField.MinValue	605
16.46 TLongintField	605
16.46.1 Description	605
16.46.2 Method overview	606
16.46.3 Property overview	606
16.46.4 TLongintField.Create	606
16.46.5 TLongintField.CheckRange	606
16.46.6 TLongintField.Value	606
16.46.7 TLongintField.MaxValue	607
16.46.8 TLongintField.MinValue	607

16.47	TLongWordField	607
16.47.1	Description	607
16.47.2	Method overview	607
16.47.3	Property overview	607
16.47.4	TLongWordField.Create	608
16.47.5	TLongWordField.CheckRange	608
16.47.6	TLongWordField.Value	608
16.47.7	TLongWordField.MaxValue	608
16.47.8	TLongWordField.MinValue	609
16.48	TLookupList	609
16.48.1	Description	609
16.48.2	Method overview	609
16.48.3	TLookupList.Create	609
16.48.4	TLookupList.Destroy	609
16.48.5	TLookupList.Add	610
16.48.6	TLookupList.Clear	610
16.48.7	TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue	610
16.48.8	TLookupList.ValueOfKey	610
16.48.9	TLookupList.ValuesToStrings	611
16.49	TMasterDataLink	611
16.49.1	Description	611
16.49.2	Method overview	611
16.49.3	Property overview	611
16.49.4	TMasterDataLink.Create	611
16.49.5	TMasterDataLink.Destroy	612
16.49.6	TMasterDataLink.FieldNames	612
16.49.7	TMasterDataLink.Fields	612
16.49.8	TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange	612
16.49.9	TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable	613
16.50	TMasterParamsDataLink	613
16.50.1	Description	613
16.50.2	Method overview	613
16.50.3	Property overview	613
16.50.4	TMasterParamsDataLink.Create	613
16.50.5	TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames	614
16.50.6	TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster	614
16.50.7	TMasterParamsDataLink.Params	614
16.51	TMemoField	614
16.51.1	Description	614
16.51.2	Method overview	615

16.51.3 Property overview	615
16.51.4 TMemoField.Create	615
16.51.5 TMemoField.CodePage	615
16.51.6 TMemoField.Transliterate	615
16.52 TNamedItem	616
16.52.1 Description	616
16.52.2 Property overview	616
16.52.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName	616
16.52.4 TNamedItem.Name	616
16.53 TNumericField	616
16.53.1 Description	616
16.53.2 Method overview	617
16.53.3 Property overview	617
16.53.4 TNumericField.Create	617
16.53.5 TNumericField.Alignment	617
16.53.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat	617
16.53.7 TNumericField.EditFormat	618
16.54 TObjectField	618
16.54.1 Property overview	618
16.54.2 TObjectField.FieldCount	618
16.54.3 TObjectField.Fields	618
16.54.4 TObjectField.FieldValues	618
16.54.5 TObjectField.UnNamed	619
16.54.6 TObjectField.ObjectType	619
16.55 TParam	619
16.55.1 Description	619
16.55.2 Method overview	619
16.55.3 Property overview	620
16.55.4 TParam.Create	620
16.55.5 TParam.Assign	621
16.55.6 TParam.AssignField	621
16.55.7 TParam.AssignToField	621
16.55.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue	621
16.55.9 TParam.AssignFromField	622
16.55.10 TParam.Clear	622
16.55.11 TParam.GetData	622
16.55.12 TParam.GetDataSize	622
16.55.13 TParam.LoadFromFile	623
16.55.14 TParam.LoadFromStream	623
16.55.15 TParam.SetBlobData	623

16.55.16	Param.SetData	623
16.55.17	Param.AsBCD	624
16.55.18	Param.AsBlob	624
16.55.19	Param.AsBoolean	624
16.55.20	Param.AsByte	625
16.55.21	Param.AsBytes	625
16.55.22	Param.AsCurrency	625
16.55.23	Param.AsDate	625
16.55.24	Param.AsDateTime	626
16.55.25	Param.AsFloat	626
16.55.26	Param.AsInteger	626
16.55.27	Param.AsLargeInt	626
16.55.28	Param.AsLongWord	627
16.55.29	Param.AsMemo	627
16.55.30	Param.AsShortInt	627
16.55.31	Param.AsSingle	627
16.55.32	Param.AsSmallInt	627
16.55.33	Param.AsString	628
16.55.34	Param.AsAnsiString	628
16.55.35	Param.AsUTF8String	628
16.55.36	Param.AsUnicodeString	629
16.55.37	Param.AsTime	629
16.55.38	Param.AsWord	629
16.55.39	Param.AsFmtBCD	629
16.55.40	Param.Bound	630
16.55.41	Param.Dataset	630
16.55.42	Param.IsNull	630
16.55.43	Param.NativeStr	630
16.55.44	Param.Text	631
16.55.45	Param.AsWideString	631
16.55.46	Param.DataType	631
16.55.47	Param.Name	631
16.55.48	Param.NumericScale	632
16.55.49	Param.ParamType	632
16.55.50	Param.Precision	632
16.55.51	Param.Size	633
16.55.52	Param.Value	633
16.56	TParams	633
16.56.1	Description	633
16.56.2	Method overview	634

16.56.3 Property overview	634
16.56.4 TParams.Create	634
16.56.5 TParams.AddParam	634
16.56.6 TParams.AssignValues	635
16.56.7 TParams.CreateParam	635
16.56.8 TParams.FindParam	635
16.56.9 TParams.GetParamList	635
16.56.10 TParams.IsEqual	636
16.56.11 TParams.GetEnumerator	636
16.56.12 TParams.ParamByName	636
16.56.13 TParams.ParseSQL	636
16.56.14 TParams.RemoveParam	637
16.56.15 TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset	638
16.56.16 TParams.Dataset	638
16.56.17 TParams.Items	638
16.56.18 TParams.ParamValues	638
16.57 TParamsEnumerator	639
16.57.1 Description	639
16.57.2 Method overview	639
16.57.3 Property overview	639
16.57.4 TParamsEnumerator.Create	639
16.57.5 TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext	639
16.57.6 TParamsEnumerator.Current	640
16.58 TShortintField	640
16.58.1 Description	640
16.58.2 Method overview	640
16.58.3 TShortintField.Create	640
16.59 TSingleField	640
16.59.1 Method overview	640
16.59.2 Property overview	641
16.59.3 TSingleField.Create	641
16.59.4 TSingleField.CheckRange	641
16.59.5 TSingleField.Value	641
16.59.6 TSingleField.Currency	641
16.59.7 TSingleField.MaxValue	641
16.59.8 TSingleField.MinValue	641
16.59.9 TSingleField.Precision	642
16.60 TSmallintField	642
16.60.1 Description	642
16.60.2 Method overview	642

16.60.3 TSmallintField.Create	642
16.61 TStringField	642
16.61.1 Description	642
16.61.2 Method overview	643
16.61.3 Property overview	643
16.61.4 TStringField.Create	643
16.61.5 TStringField.SetFieldType	643
16.61.6 TStringField.CodePage	643
16.61.7 TStringField.FixedChar	644
16.61.8 TStringField.Transliterate	644
16.61.9 TStringField.Value	644
16.61.10 TStringField.EditMask	644
16.61.11 TStringField.Size	645
16.62 TTimeField	645
16.62.1 Description	645
16.62.2 Method overview	645
16.62.3 TTimeField.Create	645
16.63 TVarBytesField	646
16.63.1 Description	646
16.63.2 Method overview	646
16.63.3 TVarBytesField.Create	646
16.64 TVariantField	646
16.64.1 Description	646
16.64.2 Method overview	646
16.64.3 TVariantField.Create	647
16.65 TWideMemoField	647
16.65.1 Description	647
16.65.2 Method overview	647
16.65.3 Property overview	647
16.65.4 TWideMemoField.Create	647
16.65.5 TWideMemoField.Value	648
16.66 TWideStringField	648
16.66.1 Description	648
16.66.2 Method overview	648
16.66.3 Property overview	648
16.66.4 TWideStringField.Create	648
16.66.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType	648
16.66.6 TWideStringField.Value	649
16.67 TWordField	649
16.67.1 Description	649

16.67.2 Method overview	649
16.67.3 TWordField.Create	649
17 Reference for unit 'dbugintf'	650
17.1 Used units	650
17.2 Overview	650
17.3 Writing a debug server.	650
17.4 Constants, types and variables	651
17.4.1 Resource strings	651
17.4.2 Types	651
17.4.3 Variables	651
17.5 Procedures and functions	652
17.5.1 FreeDebugClient	652
17.5.2 GetDebuggingEnabled	652
17.5.3 InitDebugClient	652
17.5.4 SendBoolean	653
17.5.5 SendDateTime	653
17.5.6 SendDebug	653
17.5.7 SendDebugEx	653
17.5.8 SendDebugFmt	654
17.5.9 SendDebugFmtEx	654
17.5.10 SendInteger	654
17.5.11 SendMethodEnter	655
17.5.12 SendMethodExit	655
17.5.13 SendPointer	655
17.5.14 SendSeparator	656
17.5.15 SetDebuggingEnabled	656
17.5.16 StartDebugServer	656
18 Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'	657
18.1 Used units	657
18.2 Overview	657
18.3 Constants, types and variables	657
18.3.1 Constants	657
18.3.2 Types	658
18.4 Procedures and functions	658
18.4.1 DebugMessageName	658
18.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream	658
18.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream	658
18.5 TDebugMessage	659

19 Reference for unit 'eventlog'	660
19.1 Used units	660
19.2 Overview	660
19.3 Constants, types and variables	660
19.3.1 Resource strings	660
19.3.2 Constants	661
19.3.3 Types	661
19.4 ELogError	662
19.4.1 Description	662
19.5 TEventLog	662
19.5.1 Description	662
19.5.2 Method overview	662
19.5.3 Property overview	663
19.5.4 TEventLog.Create	663
19.5.5 TEventLog.Destroy	663
19.5.6 TEventLog.EventTypeToString	663
19.5.7 TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile	664
19.5.8 TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile	664
19.5.9 TEventLog.Pause	665
19.5.10 TEventLog.Resume	665
19.5.11 TEventLog.Log	665
19.5.12 TEventLog.Warning	665
19.5.13 TEventLog.Error	666
19.5.14 TEventLog.Debug	666
19.5.15 TEventLog.Info	666
19.5.16 TEventLog.AppendContent	666
19.5.17 TEventLog.Identification	667
19.5.18 TEventLog.EventFilter	667
19.5.19 TEventLog.LogType	667
19.5.20 TEventLog.Active	667
19.5.21 TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError	668
19.5.22 TEventLog.DefaultEventType	668
19.5.23 TEventLog.FileName	668
19.5.24 TEventLog.TimeStampFormat	669
19.5.25 TEventLog.CustomLogType	669
19.5.26 TEventLog.EventIDOffset	669
19.5.27 TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory	670
19.5.28 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID	670
19.5.29 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent	670
19.5.30 TEventLog.OnLogMessage	670

19.5.31 TEEventLog.Paused	671
20 Reference for unit 'ezcgi'	672
20.1 Used units	672
20.2 Overview	672
20.3 Constants, types and variables	672
20.3.1 Constants	672
20.4 ECGIException	672
20.4.1 Description	672
20.5 TEZcgi	673
20.5.1 Description	673
20.5.2 Method overview	673
20.5.3 Property overview	673
20.5.4 TEZcgi.Create	673
20.5.5 TEZcgi.Destroy	673
20.5.6 TEZcgi.Run	674
20.5.7 TEZcgi.WriteContent	674
20.5.8 TEZcgi.PutLine	674
20.5.9 TEZcgi.GetValue	675
20.5.10 TEZcgi.DoPost	675
20.5.11 TEZcgi.DoGet	675
20.5.12 TEZcgi.Values	675
20.5.13 TEZcgi.Names	676
20.5.14 TEZcgi.Variables	676
20.5.15 TEZcgi.VariableCount	677
20.5.16 TEZcgi.Name	677
20.5.17 TEZcgi.Email	677
21 Reference for unit 'FileInfo'	678
21.1 Used units	678
21.2 Overview	678
21.3 Constants, types and variables	678
21.3.1 Types	678
21.4 Procedures and functions	679
21.4.1 assign(TProgramVersion):TVersionQuad	679
21.4.2 assign(TVersionQuad):TProgramVersion	679
21.4.3 CompareProgramVersion	679
21.4.4 CompareVersionQuads	680
21.4.5 GetProgramVersion	680
21.4.6 NewerVersion	680
21.4.7 ProgramVersionToStr	680

21.4.8	StrToProgramVersion	681
21.4.9	StrToVersionQuad	681
21.4.10	TryStrToProgramVersion	681
21.4.11	TryStrToVersionQuad	681
21.4.12	VersionQuadToStr	682
21.5	TProgramVersion	682
21.6	EVersionInfo	682
21.6.1	Description	682
21.7	TFileVersionInfo	682
21.7.1	Description	682
21.7.2	Method overview	682
21.7.3	Property overview	683
21.7.4	TFileVersionInfo.Create	683
21.7.5	TFileVersionInfo.Destroy	683
21.7.6	TFileVersionInfo.Loaded	683
21.7.7	TFileVersionInfo.ReadFileInfo	683
21.7.8	TFileVersionInfo.Enabled	684
21.7.9	TFileVersionInfo.FileName	684
21.7.10	TFileVersionInfo.VersionStrings	684
21.7.11	TFileVersionInfo.Filter	685
21.7.12	TFileVersionInfo.Translation	685
21.7.13	TFileVersionInfo.TranslationOnly	685
21.8	TVersionInfo	685
21.8.1	Description	685
21.8.2	Method overview	686
21.8.3	Property overview	686
21.8.4	TVersionInfo.Create	686
21.8.5	TVersionInfo.Destroy	686
21.8.6	TVersionInfo.Load	686
21.8.7	TVersionInfo.FixedInfo	687
21.8.8	TVersionInfo.StringFileInfo	687
21.8.9	TVersionInfo.VarFileInfo	687
22	Reference for unit 'fpexprpars'	688
22.1	Used units	688
22.2	Overview	688
22.3	Constants, types and variables	689
22.3.1	Constants	689
22.3.2	Types	689
22.4	Procedures and functions	696

22.4.1	ArgToFloat	696
22.4.2	BuiltinIdentifiers	696
22.4.3	CharToResultType	696
22.4.4	RegisterStdBuiltins	697
22.4.5	ResultTypeName	697
22.4.6	TokenName	697
22.5	TFPExpressionResult	697
22.6	EExprParser	698
22.6.1	Description	698
22.7	EExprScanner	698
22.7.1	Description	698
22.8	TAAggregateAvg	699
22.8.1	Description	699
22.8.2	Method overview	699
22.8.3	TAAggregateAvg.InitAggregate	699
22.8.4	TAAggregateAvg.UpdateAggregate	700
22.8.5	TAAggregateAvg.GetNodeValue	700
22.9	TAAggregateCount	700
22.9.1	Description	700
22.9.2	Method overview	700
22.9.3	TAAggregateCount.InitAggregate	701
22.9.4	TAAggregateCount.UpdateAggregate	701
22.10	TAAggregateExpr	701
22.10.1	Description	701
22.10.2	Method overview	701
22.10.3	TAAggregateExpr.IsAggregate	702
22.10.4	TAAggregateExpr.GetNodeValue	702
22.11	TAAggregateMax	702
22.11.1	Description	702
22.11.2	Method overview	702
22.11.3	TAAggregateMax.InitAggregate	703
22.11.4	TAAggregateMax.UpdateAggregate	703
22.12	TAAggregateMin	703
22.12.1	Description	703
22.12.2	Method overview	703
22.12.3	TAAggregateMin.InitAggregate	704
22.12.4	TAAggregateMin.UpdateAggregate	704
22.13	TAAggregateSum	704
22.13.1	Description	704
22.13.2	Method overview	704

22.13.3 TAggregateSum.ConvertArgument	705
22.13.4 TAggregateSum.InitAggregate	705
22.13.5 TAggregateSum.UpdateAggregate	705
22.14 TCaseOperation	705
22.14.1 Description	705
22.14.2 Method overview	706
22.14.3 Property overview	706
22.14.4 TCaseOperation.Check	706
22.14.5 TCaseOperation.InitAggregate	706
22.14.6 TCaseOperation.UpdateAggregate	707
22.14.7 TCaseOperation.HasAggregate	707
22.14.8 TCaseOperation.NodeType	707
22.14.9 TCaseOperation.Create	707
22.14.10 TCaseOperation.destroy	708
22.14.11 TCaseOperation.AsString	708
22.14.12 TCaseOperation.Condition	708
22.15 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode	709
22.15.1 Description	709
22.15.2 Method overview	709
22.15.3 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.Check	709
22.15.4 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.NodeType	709
22.15.5 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue	710
22.16 TCurrencyToFloatNode	710
22.16.1 Description	710
22.16.2 Method overview	710
22.16.3 TCurrencyToFloatNode.Check	710
22.16.4 TCurrencyToFloatNode.NodeType	710
22.16.5 TCurrencyToFloatNode.GetNodeValue	711
22.17 TExprBuiltInManager	711
22.17.1 Description	711
22.17.2 Method overview	711
22.17.3 Property overview	711
22.17.4 TExprBuiltInManager.Create	712
22.17.5 TExprBuiltInManager.Destroy	712
22.17.6 TExprBuiltInManager.IndexOfIdentifier	712
22.17.7 TExprBuiltInManager.FindIdentifier	712
22.17.8 TExprBuiltInManager.IdentifierByName	712
22.17.9 TExprBuiltInManager.AddVariable	713
22.17.10 TExprBuiltInManager.AddBooleanVariable	713
22.17.11 TExprBuiltInManager.AddIntegerVariable	713

22.17.12	TExprBuiltInManager.AddFloatVariable	713
22.17.13	TExprBuiltInManager.AddCurrencyVariable	714
22.17.14	TExprBuiltInManager.AddStringVariable	714
22.17.15	TExprBuiltInManager.AddDateTimeVariable	714
22.17.16	TExprBuiltInManager.AddFunction	714
22.17.17	TExprBuiltInManager.Delete	715
22.17.18	TExprBuiltInManager.Remove	715
22.17.19	TExprBuiltInManager.IdentifierCount	715
22.17.20	TExprBuiltInManager.Identifiers	715
22.18	TFloatToCurrencyNode	716
22.18.1	Description	716
22.18.2	Method overview	716
22.18.3	TFloatToCurrencyNode.Check	716
22.18.4	TFloatToCurrencyNode.NodeType	716
22.18.5	TFloatToCurrencyNode.GetNodeValue	717
22.19	TFloatToDateTimeNode	717
22.19.1	Description	717
22.19.2	Method overview	717
22.19.3	TFloatToDateTimeNode.Check	717
22.19.4	TFloatToDateTimeNode.NodeType	717
22.19.5	TFloatToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue	718
22.20	TFPAddOperation	718
22.20.1	Description	718
22.20.2	Method overview	718
22.20.3	TFPAddOperation.AsString	718
22.21	TFPBinaryAndOperation	719
22.21.1	Description	719
22.21.2	Method overview	719
22.21.3	TFPBinaryAndOperation.AsString	719
22.22	TFPBinaryOperation	719
22.22.1	Description	719
22.22.2	Method overview	720
22.22.3	Property overview	720
22.22.4	TFPBinaryOperation.Create	720
22.22.5	TFPBinaryOperation.Destroy	720
22.22.6	TFPBinaryOperation.InitAggregate	720
22.22.7	TFPBinaryOperation.UpdateAggregate	721
22.22.8	TFPBinaryOperation.HasAggregate	721
22.22.9	TFPBinaryOperation.Check	721
22.22.10	TFPBinaryOperation.left	721

22.22.1 IIFPBinaryOperation.Right	722
22.23TFPBinaryOrOperation	722
22.23.1 Description	722
22.23.2 Method overview	722
22.23.3 TFPBinaryOrOperation.AsString	722
22.24TFPBinaryXOrOperation	723
22.24.1 Description	723
22.24.2 Method overview	723
22.24.3 TFPBinaryXOrOperation.AsString	723
22.25TFPBooleanOperation	723
22.25.1 Description	723
22.25.2 Method overview	724
22.25.3 TFPBooleanOperation.Check	724
22.25.4 TFPBooleanOperation.NodeType	724
22.26TFPBooleanResultOperation	724
22.26.1 Description	724
22.26.2 Method overview	725
22.26.3 TFPBooleanResultOperation.Check	725
22.26.4 TFPBooleanResultOperation.NodeType	725
22.27TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef	725
22.27.1 Description	725
22.27.2 Method overview	725
22.27.3 Property overview	725
22.27.4 TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef.Assign	726
22.27.5 TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef.Category	726
22.28TFPConstExpression	726
22.28.1 Description	726
22.28.2 Method overview	726
22.28.3 Property overview	727
22.28.4 TFPConstExpression.CreateString	727
22.28.5 TFPConstExpression.CreateInteger	727
22.28.6 TFPConstExpression.CreateDateTime	727
22.28.7 TFPConstExpression.CreateFloat	727
22.28.8 TFPConstExpression.CreateBoolean	728
22.28.9 TFPConstExpression.CreateCurrency	728
22.28.10TFPConstExpression.Check	728
22.28.11TFPConstExpression.NodeType	728
22.28.12TFPConstExpression.GetNodeValue	728
22.28.13TFPConstExpression.AsString	729
22.28.14TFPConstExpression.ConstValue	729

22.29TFPConvertNode	729
22.29.1 Description	729
22.29.2 Method overview	729
22.29.3 TFPConvertNode.AsString	729
22.30TFPDivideOperation	730
22.30.1 Description	730
22.30.2 Method overview	730
22.30.3 TFPDivideOperation.Check	730
22.30.4 TFPDivideOperation.AsString	730
22.30.5 TFPDivideOperation.NodeType	730
22.30.6 TFPDivideOperation.GetNodeValue	731
22.31TFPEqualOperation	731
22.31.1 Description	731
22.31.2 Method overview	731
22.31.3 TFPEqualOperation.AsString	731
22.32TFPExpressionParser	731
22.32.1 Description	731
22.32.2 Method overview	732
22.32.3 Property overview	732
22.32.4 TFPExpressionParser.Create	732
22.32.5 TFPExpressionParser.Destroy	732
22.32.6 TFPExpressionParser.IdentifierByName	733
22.32.7 TFPExpressionParser.Clear	733
22.32.8 TFPExpressionParser.EvaluateExpression	733
22.32.9 TFPExpressionParser.ExtractIdentifierNames	733
22.32.10TFPExpressionParser.ExtractNode	733
22.32.11TFPExpressionParser.Evaluate	734
22.32.12TFPExpressionParser.ResultType	734
22.32.13TFPExpressionParser.HasAggregate	734
22.32.14TFPExpressionParser.InitAggregate	734
22.32.15TFPExpressionParser.UpdateAggregate	735
22.32.16TFPExpressionParser.AsFloat	735
22.32.17TFPExpressionParser.AsCurrency	735
22.32.18TFPExpressionParser.AsInteger	735
22.32.19TFPExpressionParser.AsString	736
22.32.20TFPExpressionParser.AsBoolean	736
22.32.21TFPExpressionParser.AsDateTime	736
22.32.22TFPExpressionParser.Expression	736
22.32.23TFPExpressionParser.Identifiers	737
22.32.24TFPExpressionParser.BuiltIns	737

22.33	TFPEXpressionScanner	737
22.33.1	Description	737
22.33.2	Method overview	737
22.33.3	Property overview	738
22.33.4	TFPEXpressionScanner.Create	738
22.33.5	TFPEXpressionScanner.GetToken	738
22.33.6	TFPEXpressionScanner.Token	738
22.33.7	TFPEXpressionScanner.TokenType	738
22.33.8	TFPEXpressionScanner.Source	739
22.33.9	TFPEXpressionScanner.Pos	739
22.33.10	TFPEXpressionScanner.CurrentChar	739
22.34	TFPEXprFunction	740
22.34.1	Description	740
22.34.2	Method overview	740
22.34.3	Property overview	740
22.34.4	TFPEXprFunction.Check	740
22.34.5	TFPEXprFunction.CreateFunction	740
22.34.6	TFPEXprFunction.Destroy	741
22.34.7	TFPEXprFunction.InitAggregate	741
22.34.8	TFPEXprFunction.UpdateAggregate	741
22.34.9	TFPEXprFunction.HasAggregate	741
22.34.10	TFPEXprFunction.AsString	742
22.34.11	TFPEXprFunction.ArgumentNodes	742
22.34.12	TFPEXprFunction.ArgumentParams	742
22.35	TFPEXprIdentifierDef	742
22.35.1	Description	742
22.35.2	Method overview	742
22.35.3	Property overview	743
22.35.4	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.ArgumentCount	743
22.35.5	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.Assign	743
22.35.6	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.EventBasedVariable	743
22.35.7	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsFloat	744
22.35.8	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsCurrency	744
22.35.9	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsInteger	744
22.35.10	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsString	744
22.35.11	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsBoolean	745
22.35.12	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.AsDateTime	745
22.35.13	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.OnGetFunctionValueCallBack	745
22.35.14	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.OnGetVariableValueCallBack	745
22.35.15	TFPEXprIdentifierDef.IdentifierType	746

22.35.16	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.Name	746
22.35.17	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.Value	746
22.35.18	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.ParameterTypes	746
22.35.19	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.ResultType	747
22.35.20	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.OnGetFunctionValue	747
22.35.21	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.OnGetVariableValue	747
22.35.22	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.NodeType	747
22.35.23	TFPEExprIdentifierDef.VariableArgumentCount	748
22.36	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs	748
22.36.1	Description	748
22.36.2	Method overview	748
22.36.3	Property overview	748
22.36.4	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.IndexOfIdentifier	748
22.36.5	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.FindIdentifier	749
22.36.6	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.IdentifierByName	749
22.36.7	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddVariable	749
22.36.8	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddBooleanVariable	749
22.36.9	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddIntegerVariable	750
22.36.10	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddFloatVariable	750
22.36.11	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddCurrencyVariable	750
22.36.12	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddStringVariable	750
22.36.13	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddDateTimeVariable	751
22.36.14	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.AddFunction	751
22.36.15	TFPEExprIdentifierDefs.Identifiers	751
22.37	TFPEExprIdentifierNode	752
22.37.1	Description	752
22.37.2	Method overview	752
22.37.3	Property overview	752
22.37.4	TFPEExprIdentifierNode.CreateIdentifier	752
22.37.5	TFPEExprIdentifierNode.NodeType	752
22.37.6	TFPEExprIdentifierNode.GetNodeValue	753
22.37.7	TFPEExprIdentifierNode.Identifier	753
22.38	TFPEExprNode	753
22.38.1	Description	753
22.38.2	Method overview	753
22.38.3	TFPEExprNode.Check	754
22.38.4	TFPEExprNode.InitAggregate	754
22.38.5	TFPEExprNode.UpdateAggregate	754
22.38.6	TFPEExprNode.IsAggregate	754
22.38.7	TFPEExprNode.HasAggregate	755

22.38.8 TFPEExprNode.NodeType	755
22.38.9 TFPEExprNode.NodeValue	755
22.38.10 TFPEExprNode.AsString	756
22.39 TFPEExprVariable	756
22.39.1 Description	756
22.39.2 Method overview	756
22.39.3 TFPEExprVariable.Check	756
22.39.4 TFPEExprVariable.AsString	757
22.40 TFPFFunctionCallBack	757
22.40.1 Description	757
22.40.2 Method overview	757
22.40.3 Property overview	757
22.40.4 TFPFunctionCallBack.CreateFunction	757
22.40.5 TFPFunctionCallBack.GetNodeValue	758
22.40.6 TFPFunctionCallBack.CallBack	758
22.41 TFPFunctionEventHandler	758
22.41.1 Description	758
22.41.2 Method overview	758
22.41.3 Property overview	758
22.41.4 TFPFunctionEventHandler.CreateFunction	758
22.41.5 TFPFunctionEventHandler.GetNodeValue	759
22.41.6 TFPFunctionEventHandler.CallBack	759
22.42 TFPGreaterThanEqualOperation	759
22.42.1 Description	759
22.42.2 Method overview	759
22.42.3 TFPGreaterThanEqualOperation.AsString	760
22.43 TFPGreaterThanOperation	760
22.43.1 Description	760
22.43.2 Method overview	760
22.43.3 TFPGreaterThanOperation.AsString	760
22.44 TFPLessThanEqualOperation	761
22.44.1 Description	761
22.44.2 Method overview	761
22.44.3 TFPLessThanEqualOperation.AsString	761
22.45 TFPLessThanOperation	761
22.45.1 Description	761
22.45.2 Method overview	762
22.45.3 TFPLessThanOperation.AsString	762
22.46 TFPModuloOperation	762
22.46.1 Description	762

22.46.2 Method overview	762
22.46.3 TFPM moduloOperation.Check	762
22.46.4 TFPM moduloOperation.AsString	762
22.46.5 TFPM moduloOperation.NodeType	763
22.46.6 TFPM moduloOperation.GetNodeValue	763
22.47TFPMultiplyOperation	763
22.47.1 Description	763
22.47.2 Method overview	763
22.47.3 TFPMultiplyOperation.check	763
22.47.4 TFPMultiplyOperation.AsString	764
22.47.5 TFPMultiplyOperation.GetNodeValue	764
22.48TFPNegateOperation	764
22.48.1 Description	764
22.48.2 Method overview	764
22.48.3 TFPNegateOperation.Check	764
22.48.4 TFPNegateOperation.NodeType	765
22.48.5 TFPNegateOperation.GetNodeValue	765
22.48.6 TFPNegateOperation.AsString	765
22.49TFPNotNode	765
22.49.1 Description	765
22.49.2 Method overview	766
22.49.3 TFPNotNode.Check	766
22.49.4 TFPNotNode.NodeType	766
22.49.5 TFPNotNode.GetNodeValue	766
22.49.6 TFPNotNode.AsString	766
22.50TFPOrderingOperation	767
22.50.1 Description	767
22.50.2 Method overview	767
22.50.3 TFPOrderingOperation.Check	767
22.51TFPPowerOperation	767
22.51.1 Description	767
22.51.2 Method overview	768
22.51.3 TFPPowerOperation.Check	768
22.51.4 TFPPowerOperation.AsString	768
22.51.5 TFPPowerOperation.NodeType	768
22.51.6 TFPPowerOperation.GetNodeValue	769
22.52TFPSubtractOperation	769
22.52.1 Description	769
22.52.2 Method overview	769
22.52.3 TFPSubtractOperation.Check	769

22.52.4 TFPSubtractOperation.GetNodeValue	769
22.52.5 TFPSubtractOperation.AsString	770
22.53TFPUnaryOperator	770
22.53.1 Description	770
22.53.2 Method overview	770
22.53.3 Property overview	770
22.53.4 TFPUnaryOperator.Create	770
22.53.5 TFPUnaryOperator.Destroy	771
22.53.6 TFPUnaryOperator.InitAggregate	771
22.53.7 TFPUnaryOperator.UpdateAggregate	771
22.53.8 TFPUnaryOperator.HasAggregate	772
22.53.9 TFPUnaryOperator.Check	772
22.53.10TFPUnaryOperator.Operand	772
22.54TFPUnequalOperation	772
22.54.1 Description	772
22.54.2 Method overview	773
22.54.3 TFPUnequalOperation.AsString	773
22.55TIfOperation	773
22.55.1 Description	773
22.55.2 Method overview	773
22.55.3 Property overview	773
22.55.4 TIfOperation.Check	774
22.55.5 TIfOperation.InitAggregate	774
22.55.6 TIfOperation.UpdateAggregate	774
22.55.7 TIfOperation.HasAggregate	774
22.55.8 TIfOperation.NodeType	775
22.55.9 TIfOperation.Create	775
22.55.10TIfOperation.destroy	775
22.55.11TIfOperation.AsString	775
22.55.12TIfOperation.Condition	776
22.56TIntConvertNode	776
22.56.1 Description	776
22.56.2 Method overview	776
22.56.3 TIntConvertNode.Check	776
22.57TIntToCurrencyNode	777
22.57.1 Description	777
22.57.2 Method overview	777
22.57.3 TIntToCurrencyNode.NodeType	777
22.57.4 TIntToCurrencyNode.GetNodeValue	777
22.58TIntToDateTimeNode	778

22.58.1 Description	778
22.58.2 Method overview	778
22.58.3 TIntToDateTimeNode.NodeType	778
22.58.4 TIntToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue	778
22.59 TIntToFloatNode	778
22.59.1 Description	778
22.59.2 Method overview	779
22.59.3 TIntToFloatNode.NodeType	779
22.59.4 TIntToFloatNode.GetNodeValue	779
22.60 TMathOperation	779
22.60.1 Description	779
22.60.2 Method overview	780
22.60.3 TMathOperation.Check	780
22.60.4 TMathOperation.NodeType	780
23 Reference for unit 'fphttp'	781
23.1 Used units	781
23.2 Overview	781
23.3 Constants, types and variables	781
23.3.1 Resource strings	781
23.3.2 Types	782
23.3.3 Variables	783
23.4 Procedures and functions	783
23.4.1 RegisterHTTPModule	783
23.4.2 SessionFactory	784
23.5 EFPHTTPError	784
23.5.1 Description	784
23.6 EWebSessionError	784
23.6.1 Description	784
23.7 TCustomHTTPModule	784
23.7.1 Description	784
23.7.2 Method overview	784
23.7.3 Property overview	785
23.7.4 TCustomHTTPModule.CreateNew	785
23.7.5 TCustomHTTPModule.RegisterModule	785
23.7.6 TCustomHTTPModule.HandleRequest	785
23.7.7 TCustomHTTPModule.DoAfterInitModule	785
23.7.8 TCustomHTTPModule.Kind	786
23.7.9 TCustomHTTPModule.BaseURL	786
23.7.10 TCustomHTTPModule.AfterInitModule	786

23.8	TCustomWebAction	786
23.8.1	Description	786
23.8.2	Method overview	786
23.8.3	Property overview	787
23.8.4	TCustomWebAction.GetNamePath	787
23.8.5	TCustomWebAction.Name	787
23.8.6	TCustomWebAction.ContentProducer	787
23.8.7	TCustomWebAction.Default	787
23.8.8	TCustomWebAction.BeforeRequest	788
23.8.9	TCustomWebAction.AfterResponse	788
23.9	TCustomWebActions	788
23.9.1	Description	788
23.9.2	Method overview	788
23.9.3	Property overview	788
23.9.4	TCustomWebActions.Create	788
23.9.5	TCustomWebActions.Assign	789
23.9.6	TCustomWebActions.Add	789
23.9.7	TCustomWebActions.ActionByName	789
23.9.8	TCustomWebActions.FindAction	789
23.9.9	TCustomWebActions.IndexOfAction	789
23.9.10	TCustomWebActions.OnGetAction	789
23.9.11	TCustomWebActions.Actions	790
23.9.12	TCustomWebActions.DefActionWhenUnknown	790
23.10	THTTPContentProducer	790
23.10.1	Description	790
23.10.2	Method overview	790
23.10.3	Property overview	790
23.10.4	THTTPContentProducer.HandleRequest	790
23.10.5	THTTPContentProducer.GetContent	791
23.10.6	THTTPContentProducer.HaveContent	791
23.10.7	THTTPContentProducer.ContentToStream	791
23.10.8	THTTPContentProducer.Request	791
23.10.9	THTTPContentProducer.Response	791
23.11	TModuleFactory	792
23.11.1	Description	792
23.11.2	Method overview	792
23.11.3	Property overview	792
23.11.4	TModuleFactory.RegisterHTTPModule	792
23.11.5	TModuleFactory.FindModule	792
23.11.6	TModuleFactory.ModuleByName	792

23.11.7 TModuleFactory.IndexOfModule	793
23.11.8 TModuleFactory.Modules	793
23.11.9 TModuleFactory.OnModuleRequest	793
23.12 TModuleItem	793
23.12.1 Description	793
23.12.2 Interfaces overview	793
23.12.3 Method overview	793
23.12.4 Property overview	793
23.12.5 TModuleItem.Destroy	794
23.12.6 TModuleItem.ModuleClass	794
23.12.7 TModuleItem.ModuleName	794
23.12.8 TModuleItem.SkipStreaming	794
23.13 TSessionFactory	794
23.13.1 Description	794
23.13.2 Method overview	795
23.13.3 Property overview	795
23.13.4 TSessionFactory.CreateSession	795
23.13.5 TSessionFactory.DoneSession	795
23.13.6 TSessionFactory.CleanupSessions	795
23.13.7 TSessionFactory.CleanupInterval	795
23.13.8 TSessionFactory.DefaultTimeOutMinutes	796
23.13.9 TSessionFactory.SessionCookie	796
23.13.10 TSessionFactory.SessionCookiePath	796
23.14 TSessionHTTPModule	796
23.14.1 Description	796
23.14.2 Method overview	796
23.14.3 Property overview	796
23.14.4 TSessionHTTPModule.destroy	797
23.14.5 TSessionHTTPModule.HandleRequest	797
23.14.6 TSessionHTTPModule.CreateSession	797
23.14.7 TSessionHTTPModule.Session	797
23.14.8 TSessionHTTPModule.OnNewSession	797
23.14.9 TSessionHTTPModule.OnSessionExpired	798
24 Reference for unit 'fphttpclient'	799
24.1 Used units	799
24.2 Overview	799
24.3 Advanced TFPHTTPClient Features	799
24.4 File Upload with Local Filename	801
24.5 Form Data and File Upload with fpHttpClient	803

24.6 HTTP Methods with TFPHTTPClient	804
24.7 HTTPS Support in TFPHTTPClient	806
24.8 Using the TFPHTTPClient	807
24.9 Constants, types and variables	808
24.9.1 Constants	808
24.9.2 Types	808
24.10 Procedures and functions	809
24.10.1 DecodeURLElement	809
24.10.2 EncodeURLElement	809
24.11 EHTTPClient	809
24.11.1 Description	809
24.12 TFPCustomHTTPClient	809
24.12.1 Description	809
24.12.2 Method overview	810
24.12.3 Property overview	810
24.12.4 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Create	810
24.12.5 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Destroy	810
24.12.6 TFPCustomHTTPClient.AddHeader	811
24.12.7 TFPCustomHTTPClient.IndexOfHeader	811
24.12.8 TFPCustomHTTPClient.GetHeader	811
24.12.9 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Terminate	812
24.12.10 TFPCustomHTTPClient.HTTPMethod	812
24.12.11 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Get	812
24.12.12 TFPCustomHTTPClient.IsRedirect	812
24.12.13 TFPCustomHTTPClient.RedirectForcesGET	813
24.12.14 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleGet	813
24.12.15 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Post	813
24.12.16 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePost	813
24.12.17 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Put	814
24.12.18 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePut	814
24.12.19 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Delete	814
24.12.20 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleDelete	815
24.12.21 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Patch	815
24.12.22 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePatch	815
24.12.23 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Options	816
24.12.24 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleOptions	816
24.12.25 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Head	816
24.12.26 TFPCustomHTTPClient.FormPost	817
24.12.27 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleFormPost	817
24.12.28 TFPCustomHTTPClient.FileFormPost	818

24.12.29	TFPCustomHTTPClient.StreamFormPost	818
24.12.30	TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleFileFormPost	818
24.12.31	TFPCustomHTTPClient.Terminated	819
24.13	TFPHTTPClient	819
24.13.1	Description	819
24.13.2	Property overview	820
24.13.3	TFPHTTPClient.KeepConnection	820
24.13.4	TFPHTTPClient.Connected	820
24.13.5	TFPHTTPClient.IOTimeout	821
24.13.6	TFPHTTPClient.ConnectTimeout	821
24.13.7	TFPHTTPClient.RequestHeaders	821
24.13.8	TFPHTTPClient.RequestBody	822
24.13.9	TFPHTTPClient.ResponseHeaders	822
24.13.10	TFPHTTPClient.HTTPVersion	822
24.13.11	TFPHTTPClient.ServerHTTPVersion	822
24.13.12	TFPHTTPClient.ResponseStatusCode	823
24.13.13	TFPHTTPClient.ResponseStatusText	823
24.13.14	TFPHTTPClient.Cookies	823
24.13.15	TFPHTTPClient.AllowRedirect	823
24.13.16	TFPHTTPClient.MaxRedirects	824
24.13.17	TFPHTTPClient.OnRedirect	824
24.13.18	TFPHTTPClient.UserName	824
24.13.19	TFPHTTPClient.Password	824
24.13.20	TFPHTTPClient.OnPassword	825
24.13.21	TFPHTTPClient.OnDataReceived	825
24.13.22	TFPHTTPClient.OnHeaders	825
24.13.23	TFPHTTPClient.OnGetSocketHandler	825
24.13.24	TFPHTTPClient.Proxy	826
24.13.25	TFPHTTPClient.VerifySSLCertificate	826
24.13.26	TFPHTTPClient.AfterSocketHandlerCreate	826
24.13.27	TFPHTTPClient.OnVerifySSLCertificate	826
24.14	TProxyData	827
24.14.1	Description	827
24.14.2	Method overview	827
24.14.3	Property overview	827
24.14.4	TProxyData.Assign	827
24.14.5	TProxyData.Host	827
24.14.6	TProxyData.Port	827
24.14.7	TProxyData.UserName	828
24.14.8	TProxyData.Password	828

25 Reference for unit 'fpjson'	829
25.1 Used units	829
25.2 Overview	829
25.3 Constants, types and variables	831
25.3.1 Constants	831
25.3.2 Types	832
25.4 Procedures and functions	836
25.4.1 CreateJSON	836
25.4.2 CreateJSONArray	837
25.4.3 CreateJSONObject	837
25.4.4 GetJSON	837
25.4.5 GetJSONInstanceType	838
25.4.6 GetJSONParserHandler	838
25.4.7 GetJSONStringParserHandler	838
25.4.8 JSONStringToString	838
25.4.9 JSONTypeName	839
25.4.10 SetJSONInstanceType	839
25.4.11 SetJSONParserHandler	839
25.4.12 SetJSONStringParserHandler	840
25.4.13 StringToJSONString	840
25.5 EJJSON	840
25.5.1 Description	840
25.6 TBaseJSONEnumerator	841
25.6.1 Description	841
25.6.2 Method overview	841
25.6.3 Property overview	841
25.6.4 TBaseJSONEnumerator.GetCurrent	841
25.6.5 TBaseJSONEnumerator.MoveNext	841
25.6.6 TBaseJSONEnumerator.Current	841
25.7 TJSONArray	842
25.7.1 Description	842
25.7.2 Method overview	842
25.7.3 Property overview	842
25.7.4 TJSONArray.Create	843
25.7.5 TJSONArray.Destroy	843
25.7.6 TJSONArray.JSONType	843
25.7.7 TJSONArray.Clone	843
25.7.8 TJSONArray.Iterate	844
25.7.9 TJSONArray.IndexOf	844
25.7.10 TJSONArray.GetEnumerator	844

25.7.11	TJJSONArray.Clear	844
25.7.12	TJJSONArray.Add	845
25.7.13	TJJSONArray.Delete	845
25.7.14	TJJSONArray.Exchange	845
25.7.15	TJJSONArray.Extract	846
25.7.16	TJJSONArray.Insert	846
25.7.17	TJJSONArray.Move	846
25.7.18	TJJSONArray.Remove	847
25.7.19	TJJSONArray.Sort	847
25.7.20	TJJSONArray.Items	847
25.7.21	TJJSONArray.Types	847
25.7.22	TJJSONArray.Nulls	848
25.7.23	TJJSONArray.Integers	848
25.7.24	TJJSONArray.Int64s	848
25.7.25	TJJSONArray.LargeInts	849
25.7.26	TJJSONArray.QWords	849
25.7.27	TJJSONArray.UnicodeStrings	849
25.7.28	TJJSONArray.Strings	850
25.7.29	TJJSONArray.Floats	850
25.7.30	TJJSONArray.Booleans	851
25.7.31	TJJSONArray.Arrays	851
25.7.32	TJJSONArray.Objects	851
25.8	TJJSONBoolean	852
25.8.1	Description	852
25.8.2	Method overview	852
25.8.3	TJJSONBoolean.Create	852
25.8.4	TJJSONBoolean.JSONType	852
25.8.5	TJJSONBoolean.Clear	853
25.8.6	TJJSONBoolean.Clone	853
25.9	TJJSONData	853
25.9.1	Description	853
25.9.2	Method overview	854
25.9.3	Property overview	854
25.9.4	TJJSONData.JSONType	854
25.9.5	TJJSONData.Create	854
25.9.6	TJJSONData.Clear	855
25.9.7	TJJSONData.DumpJSON	855
25.9.8	TJJSONData.GetEnumerator	855
25.9.9	TJJSONData.FindPath	855
25.9.10	TJJSONData.GetPath	857

25.9.11 TJSONData.Clone	858
25.9.12 TJSONData.FormatJSON	858
25.9.13 TJSONData.CompressedJSON	858
25.9.14 TJSONData.Count	859
25.9.15 TJSONData.Items	859
25.9.16 TJSONData.Value	859
25.9.17 TJSONData.AsString	859
25.9.18 TJSONData.AsUnicodeString	860
25.9.19 TJSONData.AsInt64	860
25.9.20 TJSONData.AsQWord	860
25.9.21 TJSONData.AsLargeInt	861
25.9.22 TJSONData.AsFloat	861
25.9.23 TJSONData.AsInteger	861
25.9.24 TJSONData.AsBoolean	862
25.9.25 TJSONData.IsNull	862
25.9.26 TJSONData.AsJSON	862
25.10 TJSONFloatNumber	863
25.10.1 Description	863
25.10.2 Method overview	863
25.10.3 TJSONFloatNumber.Create	863
25.10.4 TJSONFloatNumber.NumberType	863
25.10.5 TJSONFloatNumber.Clear	864
25.10.6 TJSONFloatNumber.Clone	864
25.11 TJSONInt64Number	864
25.11.1 Description	864
25.11.2 Method overview	864
25.11.3 TJSONInt64Number.Create	864
25.11.4 TJSONInt64Number.NumberType	865
25.11.5 TJSONInt64Number.Clear	865
25.11.6 TJSONInt64Number.Clone	865
25.12 TJSONIntegerNumber	865
25.12.1 Description	865
25.12.2 Method overview	865
25.12.3 TJSONIntegerNumber.Create	866
25.12.4 TJSONIntegerNumber.NumberType	866
25.12.5 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clear	866
25.12.6 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clone	866
25.13 TJSONNull	866
25.13.1 Description	866
25.13.2 Method overview	867

25.13.3 TJSONNull.JSONType	867
25.13.4 TJSONNull.Clear	867
25.13.5 TJSONNull.Clone	867
25.14 TJSONNumber	867
25.14.1 Description	867
25.14.2 Method overview	868
25.14.3 TJSONNumber.JSONType	868
25.14.4 TJSONNumber.NumberType	868
25.15 TJSONObject	868
25.15.1 Description	868
25.15.2 Method overview	869
25.15.3 Property overview	869
25.15.4 TJSONObject.Create	869
25.15.5 TJSONObject.Destroy	870
25.15.6 TJSONObject.JSONType	870
25.15.7 TJSONObject.Clone	870
25.15.8 TJSONObject.GetEnumerator	871
25.15.9 TJSONObject.Iterate	871
25.15.10 TJSONObject.IndexOf	871
25.15.11 TJSONObject.IndexOfName	871
25.15.12 TJSONObject.Find	872
25.15.13 TJSONObject.Get	872
25.15.14 TJSONObject.Clear	873
25.15.15 TJSONObject.Add	873
25.15.16 TJSONObject.Delete	873
25.15.17 TJSONObject.Remove	874
25.15.18 TJSONObject.Extract	874
25.15.19 TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames	874
25.15.20 TJSONObject.Names	875
25.15.21 TJSONObject.Elements	875
25.15.22 TJSONObject.Types	875
25.15.23 TJSONObject.Nulls	876
25.15.24 TJSONObject.Floats	876
25.15.25 TJSONObject.Integers	876
25.15.26 TJSONObject.Int64s	876
25.15.27 TJSONObject.QWords	877
25.15.28 TJSONObject.LargeInts	877
25.15.29 TJSONObject.UnicodeStrings	877
25.15.30 TJSONObject.Strings	878
25.15.31 TJSONObject.Booleans	878

25.15.32 TJSONObject.Arrays	878
25.15.33 TJSONObject.Objects	879
25.16 TJSONQWordNumber	879
25.16.1 Description	879
25.16.2 Method overview	879
25.16.3 TJSONQWordNumber.Create	879
25.16.4 TJSONQWordNumber.NumberType	879
25.16.5 TJSONQWordNumber.Clear	880
25.16.6 TJSONQWordNumber.Clone	880
25.17 TJSONString	880
25.17.1 Description	880
25.17.2 Method overview	880
25.17.3 TJSONString.Create	880
25.17.4 TJSONString.JSONType	881
25.17.5 TJSONString.Clear	881
25.17.6 TJSONString.Clone	881
26 Reference for unit 'fpjsonapply'	882
26.1 Used units	882
26.2 Overview	882
26.3 Constants, types and variables	882
26.3.1 Types	882
26.4 TJSONApplier	883
26.4.1 Description	883
26.4.2 Method overview	883
26.4.3 Property overview	884
26.4.4 TJSONApplier.destroy	884
26.4.5 TJSONApplier.Execute	884
26.4.6 TJSONApplier.SourceJSON	885
26.4.7 TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON	885
26.4.8 TJSONApplier.DestJSON	885
26.4.9 TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON	886
26.4.10 TJSONApplier.SourceFileName	886
26.4.11 TJSONApplier.SourcePath	886
26.4.12 TJSONApplier.ApplyFileName	887
26.4.13 TJSONApplier.ApplyPath	887
26.4.14 TJSONApplier.DestFileName	887
26.4.15 TJSONApplier.CloneSource	887
26.4.16 TJSONApplier.CaseInsensitive	888
26.4.17 TJSONApplier.ForceCorrectType	888

26.4.18 TJSONApplier.RemoveNonExisting	888
26.4.19 TJSONApplier.Formatted	889
27 Reference for unit 'fpjsontopas'	890
27.1 Used units	890
27.2 Overview	890
27.3 Using fpjsontopas to generate Pascal classes from JSON	890
27.4 Constants, types and variables	892
27.4.1 Types	892
27.5 EJSONToPascal	892
27.5.1 Description	892
27.6 TJSONToPascal	893
27.6.1 Description	893
27.6.2 Method overview	893
27.6.3 Property overview	893
27.6.4 TJSONToPascal.Create	893
27.6.5 TJSONToPascal.Destroy	894
27.6.6 TJSONToPascal.Execute	894
27.6.7 TJSONToPascal.JSONData	894
27.6.8 TJSONToPascal.JSONStream	894
27.6.9 TJSONToPascal.Active	895
27.6.10 TJSONToPascal.Options	895
27.6.11 TJSONToPascal.JSON	895
27.6.12 TJSONToPascal.Code	895
27.6.13 TJSONToPascal.PropertyMap	896
27.6.14 TJSONToPascal.DestUnitName	896
27.6.15 TJSONToPascal.DefaultParentName	896
27.6.16 TJSONToPascal.IndentSize	896
27.6.17 TJSONToPascal.ExtraUnitNames	897
27.6.18 TJSONToPascal.PropertyTypeSuffix	897
27.6.19 TJSONToPascal.FieldPrefix	897
27.6.20 TJSONToPascal.ObjectConstructorArguments	897
27.6.21 TJSONToPascal.ToplevelObjectClassName	898
27.7 TPropertyMap	898
27.7.1 Description	898
27.7.2 Method overview	898
27.7.3 Property overview	898
27.7.4 TPropertyMap.AddPath	898
27.7.5 TPropertyMap.IndexOfPath	898
27.7.6 TPropertyMap.FindPath	899

27.7.7	TPropertyMap.Map	899
27.8	TPropertyMapItem	899
27.8.1	Description	899
27.8.2	Method overview	899
27.8.3	Property overview	899
27.8.4	TPropertyMapItem.Assign	900
27.8.5	TPropertyMapItem.Generated	900
27.8.6	TPropertyMapItem.Path	900
27.8.7	TPropertyMapItem.TypeName	900
27.8.8	TPropertyMapItem.ParentTypeName	900
27.8.9	TPropertyMapItem.PropertyName	901
27.8.10	TPropertyMapItem.JSONType	901
27.8.11	TPropertyMapItem.SkipType	901
28	Reference for unit 'fpmimeTypes'	902
28.1	Used units	902
28.2	Overview	902
28.3	Procedures and functions	902
28.3.1	MimeTypes	902
28.4	TFPMimeTypes	903
28.4.1	Description	903
28.4.2	Method overview	903
28.4.3	TFPMimeTypes.Create	903
28.4.4	TFPMimeTypes.Destroy	903
28.4.5	TFPMimeTypes.Clear	904
28.4.6	TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes	904
28.4.7	TFPMimeTypes.GetNextExtension	904
28.4.8	TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromStream	904
28.4.9	TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile	905
28.4.10	TFPMimeTypes.AddType	905
28.4.11	TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions	905
28.4.12	TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType	905
28.4.13	TFPMimeTypes.GetKnownMimeTypes	906
28.4.14	TFPMimeTypes.GetKnownExtensions	906
28.5	TMimeType	906
28.5.1	Description	906
28.5.2	Method overview	906
28.5.3	Property overview	906
28.5.4	TMimeType.Create	907
28.5.5	TMimeType.MergeExtensions	907

28.5.6	TMimeType.MimeType	907
28.5.7	TMimeType.Extensions	907
29	Reference for unit 'fpmkunit'	908
29.1	Used units	908
29.2	Overview	908
29.3	Usage description	908
29.4	Commandline options	911
29.5	Handling dependencies	913
29.6	Constants, types and variables	914
29.6.1	Constants	914
29.6.2	Types	920
29.6.3	Variables	936
29.7	Procedures and functions	937
29.7.1	AddCustomFpmakeCommandlineOption	937
29.7.2	AddLibraryExtension	938
29.7.3	AddProgramExtension	938
29.7.4	ChangeDir	938
29.7.5	CPUToString	938
29.7.6	CPUToString	939
29.7.7	CurrentCPU	939
29.7.8	CurrentOS	939
29.7.9	FixPath	939
29.7.10	GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue	940
29.7.11	GetDefaultLibGCCDir	940
29.7.12	GetImportLibraryFilename	940
29.7.13	GetPluginManager	940
29.7.14	Installer	941
29.7.15	IsDifferentFromBuild	941
29.7.16	IsRelativePath	941
29.7.17	MakeTargetString	941
29.7.18	ModeToString	942
29.7.19	OSesToString	942
29.7.20	OSToString	942
29.7.21	SearchFiles	942
29.7.22	SplitCommand	943
29.7.23	StringToCPU	943
29.7.24	StringToCPUOS	943
29.7.25	StringToCPUS	943
29.7.26	StringToMode	944

29.7.27 StringToOS	944
29.8 ECollectionError	944
29.8.1 Description	944
29.9 EDictionaryError	944
29.9.1 Description	944
29.10EInstallerError	944
29.10.1 Description	944
29.11TBasicDefaults	945
29.11.1 Description	945
29.12TBasicInstaller	945
29.12.1 Description	945
29.12.2 Method overview	945
29.12.3 TBasicInstaller.Create	945
29.13TBuildEngine	945
29.13.1 Description	945
29.13.2 Method overview	947
29.13.3 Property overview	948
29.13.4 TBuildEngine.Create	948
29.13.5 TBuildEngine.Destroy	948
29.13.6 TBuildEngine.AddPathPrefix	948
29.13.7 TBuildEngine.ResolveFileNames	948
29.13.8 TBuildEngine.ClearResolvedFileNames	949
29.13.9 TBuildEngine.ExecuteCommand	949
29.13.10TBuildEngine.CmdCopyFiles	949
29.13.11TBuildEngine.CmdCreateDir	949
29.13.12TBuildEngine.CmdMoveFiles	950
29.13.13TBuildEngine.CmdDeleteFiles	950
29.13.14TBuildEngine.CmdDeleteDestFiles	950
29.13.15TBuildEngine.CmdArchiveFiles	950
29.13.16TBuildEngine.CmdRenameFile	951
29.13.17TBuildEngine.CmdRemoveDirs	951
29.13.18TBuildEngine.CmdRemoveTrees	951
29.13.19TBuildEngine.ExecuteCommands	951
29.13.20TBuildEngine.DependencyOK	951
29.13.21TBuildEngine.GetCompilerCommand	952
29.13.22TBuildEngine.TargetOK	952
29.13.23TBuildEngine.TargetInstallOK	952
29.13.24TBuildEngine.NeedsCompile	952
29.13.25TBuildEngine.Compile	953
29.13.26TBuildEngine.MaybeCompile	953

29.13.27	BuildEngine.CompileDependencies	953
29.13.28	BuildEngine.PackageOK	953
29.13.29	BuildEngine.DoBeforeCompile	954
29.13.30	BuildEngine.DoAfterCompile	954
29.13.31	BuildEngine.DoBeforeInstall	954
29.13.32	BuildEngine.DoAfterInstall	954
29.13.33	BuildEngine.DoBeforeArchive	955
29.13.34	BuildEngine.DoAfterArchive	955
29.13.35	BuildEngine.DoBeforeClean	955
29.13.36	BuildEngine.DoAfterClean	955
29.13.37	BuildEngine.ReadyToCompile	956
29.13.38	BuildEngine.Install	956
29.13.39	BuildEngine.UnInstall	956
29.13.40	BuildEngine.Archive	957
29.13.41	BuildEngine.PkgList	957
29.13.42	BuildEngine.Clean	957
29.13.43	BuildEngine.CheckDependencies	957
29.13.44	BuildEngine.CheckExternalPackage	958
29.13.45	BuildEngine.CreateOutputDir	958
29.13.46	BuildEngine.ZipInstall	958
29.13.47	BuildEngine.Manifest	959
29.13.48	BuildEngine.FPDocProject	959
29.13.49	BuildEngine.Log	959
29.13.50	BuildEngine.Verbose	959
29.13.51	BuildEngine.Interactive	960
29.13.52	BuildEngine.ListMode	960
29.13.53	BuildEngine.ForceCompile	960
29.13.54	BuildEngine.ExternalPackages	960
29.13.55	BuildEngine.StartDir	961
29.13.56	BuildEngine.NotifyEventCollection	961
29.13.57	BuildEngine.OnLog	961
29.14	TCommand	961
29.14.1	Description	961
29.14.2	Method overview	962
29.14.3	Property overview	962
29.14.4	TCommand.Destroy	962
29.14.5	TCommand.HaveOptions	962
29.14.6	TCommand.CmdLineOptions	962
29.14.7	TCommand.ParseOptions	963
29.14.8	TCommand.SourceFile	963

29.14.9 TCommand.DestFile	963
29.14.10 TCommand.Command	963
29.14.11 TCommand.Options	963
29.14.12 TCommand.At	964
29.14.13 TCommand.IgnoreResult	964
29.14.14 TCommand.BeforeCommand	964
29.14.15 TCommand.AfterCommand	964
29.15 TCommandEnumerator	964
29.15.1 Description	964
29.15.2 Method overview	965
29.15.3 Property overview	965
29.15.4 TCommandEnumerator.GetCurrent	965
29.15.5 TCommandEnumerator.Current	965
29.16 TCommands	965
29.16.1 Description	965
29.16.2 Method overview	965
29.16.3 Property overview	966
29.16.4 TCommands.AddCommand	966
29.16.5 TCommands.GetEnumerator	966
29.16.6 TCommands.CommandItems	966
29.16.7 TCommands.Commands	967
29.16.8 TCommands.DefaultAt	967
29.17 TCompileWorkerThread	967
29.17.1 Description	967
29.17.2 Method overview	967
29.17.3 TCompileWorkerThread.Create	967
29.17.4 TCompileWorkerThread.Destroy	968
29.18 TConditionalDestString	968
29.18.1 Description	968
29.18.2 Property overview	968
29.18.3 TConditionalDestString.DestPath	968
29.19 TConditionalDestStrings	968
29.19.1 Description	968
29.19.2 Method overview	969
29.19.3 Property overview	969
29.19.4 TConditionalDestStrings.Create	969
29.19.5 TConditionalDestStrings.Add	969
29.19.6 TConditionalDestStrings.ConditionalStrings	969
29.20 TConditionalString	970
29.20.1 Description	970

29.20.2 Method overview	970
29.20.3 Property overview	970
29.20.4 TConditionalString.Create	970
29.20.5 TConditionalString.Value	970
29.20.6 TConditionalString.OSes	971
29.20.7 TConditionalString.CPUs	971
29.21 TConditionalStrings	971
29.21.1 Description	971
29.21.2 Method overview	971
29.21.3 Property overview	971
29.21.4 TConditionalStrings.Create	972
29.21.5 TConditionalStrings.Add	972
29.21.6 TConditionalStrings.ConditionalStrings	972
29.22 TCustomDefaults	972
29.22.1 Description	972
29.22.2 Method overview	973
29.22.3 Property overview	974
29.22.4 TCustomDefaults.Create	974
29.22.5 TCustomDefaults.Destroy	975
29.22.6 TCustomDefaults.InitDefaults	975
29.22.7 TCustomDefaults.HaveOptions	975
29.22.8 TCustomDefaults.IsBuildDifferentFromTarget	975
29.22.9 TCustomDefaults.CompilerDefaults	976
29.22.10 TCustomDefaults.LocalInit	976
29.22.11 TCustomDefaults.LoadFromFile	976
29.22.12 TCustomDefaults.SaveToFile	976
29.22.13 TCustomDefaults.SaveToStream	976
29.22.14 TCustomDefaults.LoadFromStream	977
29.22.15 TCustomDefaults.Target	977
29.22.16 TCustomDefaults.OS	977
29.22.17 TCustomDefaults.CPU	977
29.22.18 TCustomDefaults.CompilerVersion	978
29.22.19 TCustomDefaults.ExplicitOSNone	978
29.22.20 TCustomDefaults.BuildString	978
29.22.21 TCustomDefaults.BuildOS	978
29.22.22 TCustomDefaults.BuildCPU	979
29.22.23 TCustomDefaults.Mode	979
29.22.24 TCustomDefaults.UnixPaths	979
29.22.25 TCustomDefaults.Options	979
29.22.26 TCustomDefaults.NoFPCCfg	980

29.22.27	TCustomDefaults.ThreadsAmount	980
29.22.28	TCustomDefaults.LocalUnitDir	980
29.22.29	TCustomDefaults.GlobalUnitDir	980
29.22.30	TCustomDefaults.SearchPath	981
29.22.31	TCustomDefaults.Prefix	981
29.22.32	TCustomDefaults.ZipPrefix	981
29.22.33	TCustomDefaults.BaseInstallDir	981
29.22.34	TCustomDefaults.UnitInstallDir	982
29.22.35	TCustomDefaults.UnitConfigFilesInstallDir	982
29.22.36	TCustomDefaults.BinInstallDir	982
29.22.37	TCustomDefaults.LibInstallDir	982
29.22.38	TCustomDefaults.DocInstallDir	983
29.22.39	TCustomDefaults.ExamplesInstallDir	983
29.22.40	TCustomDefaults.FPDocOutputDir	983
29.22.41	TCustomDefaults.FPDocOptions	983
29.22.42	TCustomDefaults.FPUnitSourcePath	984
29.22.43	TCustomDefaults.Compiler	984
29.22.44	TCustomDefaults.Copy	984
29.22.45	TCustomDefaults.Move	984
29.22.46	TCustomDefaults.Remove	985
29.22.47	TCustomDefaults.RemoveDir	985
29.22.48	TCustomDefaults.RemoveTree	985
29.22.49	TCustomDefaults.MkDir	985
29.22.50	TCustomDefaults.Archive	986
29.22.51	TCustomDefaults.UseEnvironment	986
29.22.52	TCustomDefaults.IgnoreInvalidOptions	986
29.22.53	TCustomDefaults.BuildMode	986
29.22.54	TCustomDefaults.SingleFPDocFile	987
29.22.55	TCustomDefaults.InstallExamples	987
29.22.56	TCustomDefaults.SkipCrossPrograms	987
29.22.57	TCustomDefaults.SkipAllPrograms	987
29.23	TCustomInstaller	988
29.23.1	Description	988
29.23.2	Method overview	988
29.23.3	Property overview	988
29.23.4	TCustomInstaller.Create	988
29.23.5	TCustomInstaller.destroy	989
29.23.6	TCustomInstaller.AddPackage	989
29.23.7	TCustomInstaller.AddPackageVariant	989
29.23.8	TCustomInstaller.Run	989

29.23.9 TCustomInstaller.FPMakeOptionsString	990
29.23.10 TCustomInstaller.BuildEngine	990
29.23.11 TCustomInstaller.Packages	990
29.23.12 TCustomInstaller.RunMode	990
29.23.13 TCustomInstaller.ListMode	991
29.23.14 TCustomInstaller.NotifyEventCollection	991
29.24 TDependencies	991
29.24.1 Description	991
29.24.2 Method overview	991
29.24.3 Property overview	991
29.24.4 TDependencies.GetDependency	992
29.24.5 TDependencies.SetDependency	992
29.24.6 TDependencies.Add	992
29.24.7 TDependencies.AddUnit	992
29.24.8 TDependencies.AddInclude	993
29.24.9 TDependencies.Dependencies	993
29.25 TDependency	993
29.25.1 Description	993
29.25.2 Method overview	993
29.25.3 Property overview	994
29.25.4 TDependency.Create	994
29.25.5 TDependency.Destroy	994
29.25.6 TDependency.Target	994
29.25.7 TDependency.DependencyType	994
29.25.8 TDependency.TargetFileName	995
29.25.9 TDependency.Version	995
29.25.10 TDependency.RequireChecksum	995
29.26 TDictionary	995
29.26.1 Description	995
29.26.2 Method overview	996
29.26.3 TDictionary.Create	996
29.26.4 TDictionary.Destroy	996
29.26.5 TDictionary.AddVariable	996
29.26.6 TDictionary.AddFunction	997
29.26.7 TDictionary.RemoveItem	997
29.26.8 TDictionary.GetValue	997
29.26.9 TDictionary.ReplaceStrings	997
29.26.10 TDictionary.Substitute	998
29.27 TFPCDefaults	998
29.27.1 Description	998

29.27.2 Method overview	998
29.27.3 TFPCDefaults.CompilerDefaults	998
29.28TFPCInstaller	999
29.28.1 Description	999
29.28.2 Method overview	999
29.28.3 TFPCInstaller.Create	999
29.29TfpmPlugin	999
29.29.1 Description	999
29.29.2 Method overview	999
29.29.3 Property overview	999
29.29.4 TfpmPlugin.BeforeResolvePackagePath	1000
29.29.5 TfpmPlugin.ResolvePackagePath	1000
29.29.6 TfpmPlugin.AfterResolvePackagePath	1000
29.29.7 TfpmPlugin.Name	1000
29.30TfpmPluginManager	1001
29.30.1 Description	1001
29.30.2 Method overview	1001
29.30.3 TfpmPluginManager.Destroy	1001
29.30.4 TfpmPluginManager.RegisterPlugin	1001
29.30.5 TfpmPluginManager.BeforeResolvePackagePath	1001
29.30.6 TfpmPluginManager.ResolvePackagePath	1002
29.30.7 TfpmPluginManager.AfterResolvePackagePath	1002
29.31TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin	1002
29.31.1 Description	1002
29.31.2 Method overview	1002
29.31.3 TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin.BeforeResolvePackagePath	1003
29.31.4 TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin.ResolvePackagePath	1003
29.32TFPVersion	1003
29.32.1 Description	1003
29.32.2 Method overview	1003
29.32.3 Property overview	1003
29.32.4 TFPVersion.Clear	1004
29.32.5 TFPVersion.Assign	1004
29.32.6 TFPVersion.CompareVersion	1004
29.32.7 TFPVersion.SameVersion	1004
29.32.8 TFPVersion.AsString	1005
29.32.9 TFPVersion.Empty	1005
29.32.10TFPVersion.Major	1005
29.32.11TFPVersion.Minor	1005
29.32.12TFPVersion.Micro	1006

29.32.13TFPVersion.Build	1006
29.33TFunctionItem	1006
29.33.1 Description	1006
29.33.2 Method overview	1007
29.33.3 TFunctionItem.Create	1007
29.34TNamedCollection	1007
29.34.1 Description	1007
29.34.2 Method overview	1007
29.34.3 Property overview	1007
29.34.4 TNamedCollection.IndexOfName	1007
29.34.5 TNamedCollection.ItemByName	1007
29.34.6 TNamedCollection.UniqueNames	1008
29.34.7 TNamedCollection.Items	1008
29.35TNamedItem	1008
29.35.1 Description	1008
29.35.2 Property overview	1008
29.35.3 TNamedItem.Name	1008
29.36TNamedItemList	1009
29.36.1 Description	1009
29.36.2 Method overview	1009
29.36.3 Property overview	1009
29.36.4 TNamedItemList.IndexOfName	1009
29.36.5 TNamedItemList.ItemByName	1009
29.36.6 TNamedItemList.NamedItems	1009
29.37TNotifyEventCollection	1010
29.37.1 Description	1010
29.37.2 Method overview	1010
29.37.3 TNotifyEventCollection.create	1010
29.37.4 TNotifyEventCollection.GetEnumerator	1010
29.37.5 TNotifyEventCollection.AppendEvent	1010
29.37.6 TNotifyEventCollection.AppendProcEvent	1011
29.37.7 TNotifyEventCollection.CallEvents	1011
29.38TNotifyEventEnumerator	1011
29.38.1 Description	1011
29.38.2 Method overview	1011
29.38.3 Property overview	1011
29.38.4 TNotifyEventEnumerator.GetCurrent	1012
29.38.5 TNotifyEventEnumerator.Current	1012
29.39TNotifyEventItem	1012
29.39.1 Description	1012

29.39.2 Method overview	1012
29.39.3 Property overview	1012
29.39.4 TNotifyEventItem.CallEvent	1013
29.39.5 TNotifyEventItem.OnAction	1013
29.39.6 TNotifyEventItem.OnEvent	1013
29.39.7 TNotifyEventItem.OnProcEvent	1013
29.40TPackage	1014
29.40.1 Description	1014
29.40.2 Method overview	1015
29.40.3 Property overview	1017
29.40.4 TPackage.Create	1018
29.40.5 TPackage.destroy	1018
29.40.6 TPackage.HaveOptions	1018
29.40.7 TPackage.GetUnitsOutputDir	1018
29.40.8 TPackage.GetUnitConfigOutputFilename	1019
29.40.9 TPackage.InheritPackageVariantsFromDependency	1019
29.40.10TPackage.GetPackageVariantsByName	1019
29.40.11TPackage.SetUnitsOutputDir	1019
29.40.12TPackage.GetPackageUnitInstallDir	1019
29.40.13TPackage.SetPackageUnitInstallDir	1020
29.40.14TPackage.GetBinOutputDir	1020
29.40.15TPackage.GetCleanFiles	1020
29.40.16TPackage.GetInstallFiles	1020
29.40.17TPackage.GetInstallSourceFiles	1020
29.40.18TPackage.GetArchiveFiles	1021
29.40.19TPackage.GetArchiveSourceFiles	1021
29.40.20TPackage.GetManifest	1021
29.40.21TPackage.ListPackage	1021
29.40.22TPackage.AddPackageVariant	1022
29.40.23TPackage.ApplyPackageVariantToCompilerOptions	1022
29.40.24TPackage.SetDefaultPackageVariant	1022
29.40.25TPackage.LoadUnitConfigFromFile	1022
29.40.26TPackage.SaveUnitConfigToFile	1022
29.40.27TPackage.EnterResolveDirsCS	1023
29.40.28TPackage.LeaveResolveDirsCS	1023
29.40.29TPackage.Version	1023
29.40.30TPackage.FileName	1023
29.40.31TPackage.ShortName	1024
29.40.32TPackage.HomepageURL	1024
29.40.33TPackage.DownloadURL	1024

29.40.34	Package.Email	1024
29.40.35	Package.Author	1025
29.40.36	Package.License	1025
29.40.37	Package.Directory	1025
29.40.38	Package.Description	1025
29.40.39	Package.DescriptionFile	1026
29.40.40	Package.InstalledChecksum	1026
29.40.41	Package.IsFPMakeAddIn	1026
29.40.42	Package.SupportBuildModes	1026
29.40.43	Package.BuildMode	1027
29.40.44	Package.Flags	1027
29.40.45	Package.PackageVersion	1027
29.40.46	Package.TransmitOptions	1027
29.40.47	Package.OSes	1028
29.40.48	Package.CPUs	1028
29.40.49	Package.NeedLibC	1028
29.40.50	Package.Options	1028
29.40.51	Package.UnitPath	1029
29.40.52	Package.ObjectPath	1029
29.40.53	Package.IncludePath	1029
29.40.54	Package.SourcePath	1029
29.40.55	Package.ExamplePath	1030
29.40.56	Package.TestPath	1030
29.40.57	Package.FPDocFormat	1030
29.40.58	Package.InstallFiles	1030
29.40.59	Package.CleanFiles	1031
29.40.60	Package.Dependencies	1031
29.40.61	Package.Commands	1031
29.40.62	Package.State	1031
29.40.63	Package.Targets	1032
29.40.64	Package.Sources	1032
29.40.65	Package.UnitDir	1032
29.40.66	Package.UnitConfigFileName	1032
29.40.67	Package.BeforeCompile	1033
29.40.68	Package.BeforeCompileProc	1033
29.40.69	Package.AfterCompile	1033
29.40.70	Package.AfterCompileProc	1033
29.40.71	Package.BeforeInstall	1034
29.40.72	Package.BeforeInstallProc	1034
29.40.73	Package.AfterInstall	1034

29.40.74	TPackage.AfterInstallProc	1034
29.40.75	TPackage.BeforeClean	1035
29.40.76	TPackage.BeforeCleanProc	1035
29.40.77	TPackage.AfterClean	1035
29.40.78	TPackage.AfterCleanProc	1035
29.40.79	TPackage.BeforeArchive	1036
29.40.80	TPackage.BeforeArchiveProc	1036
29.40.81	TPackage.AfterArchive	1036
29.40.82	TPackage.AfterArchiveProc	1036
29.40.83	TPackage.BeforeManifest	1037
29.40.84	TPackage.BeforeManifestProc	1037
29.40.85	TPackage.AfterManifest	1037
29.40.86	TPackage.AfterManifestProc	1037
29.40.87	TPackage.BeforePkgList	1038
29.40.88	TPackage.BeforePkgListProc	1038
29.40.89	TPackage.AfterPkgList	1038
29.40.90	TPackage.AfterPkgListProc	1038
29.41	TPackageDictionary	1039
29.41.1	Description	1039
29.41.2	Method overview	1039
29.41.3	Property overview	1039
29.41.4	TPackageDictionary.GetValue	1039
29.41.5	TPackageDictionary.MasterDictionary	1039
29.42	TPackageEnumerator	1040
29.42.1	Description	1040
29.42.2	Method overview	1040
29.42.3	Property overview	1040
29.42.4	TPackageEnumerator.GetCurrent	1040
29.42.5	TPackageEnumerator.Current	1040
29.43	TPackages	1040
29.43.1	Description	1040
29.43.2	Method overview	1041
29.43.3	Property overview	1041
29.43.4	TPackages.AddPackage	1041
29.43.5	TPackages.GetEnumerator	1041
29.43.6	TPackages.Packages	1041
29.43.7	TPackages.PackageItems	1042
29.44	TPackageVariant	1042
29.44.1	Description	1042
29.44.2	Method overview	1042

29.44.3 Property overview	1042
29.44.4 TPackageVariant.Create	1042
29.44.5 TPackageVariant.Destroy	1042
29.44.6 TPackageVariant.Options	1043
29.44.7 TPackageVariant.IncludePath	1043
29.44.8 TPackageVariant.SourcePath	1043
29.44.9 TPackageVariant.Targets	1043
29.45 TPackageVariantEnumerator	1044
29.45.1 Description	1044
29.45.2 Method overview	1044
29.45.3 Property overview	1044
29.45.4 TPackageVariantEnumerator.GetCurrent	1044
29.45.5 TPackageVariantEnumerator.Current	1044
29.46 TPackageVariants	1044
29.46.1 Description	1044
29.46.2 Method overview	1045
29.46.3 Property overview	1045
29.46.4 TPackageVariants.Add	1045
29.46.5 TPackageVariants.GetEnumerator	1045
29.46.6 TPackageVariants.Name	1045
29.46.7 TPackageVariants.MasterPackage	1046
29.46.8 TPackageVariants.DefaultPackageVariant	1046
29.46.9 TPackageVariants.ActivePackageVariant	1046
29.46.10 TPackageVariants.DefaultPackageName	1046
29.46.11 TPackageVariants.ActivePackageName	1047
29.46.12 TPackageVariants.IsInheritable	1047
29.46.13 TPackageVariants.AutoAddToPackage	1047
29.47 TResourceFile	1047
29.47.1 Description	1047
29.48 TResourceFiles	1048
29.48.1 Description	1048
29.48.2 Method overview	1048
29.48.3 TResourceFiles.GetInstallFiles	1048
29.49 TSource	1048
29.49.1 Description	1048
29.49.2 Method overview	1048
29.49.3 Property overview	1048
29.49.4 TSource.Create	1049
29.49.5 TSource.Destroy	1049
29.49.6 TSource.GetInstallFiles	1049

29.49.7 TSource.SourceType	1049
29.49.8 TSource.InstallSourcePath	1050
29.50 TSourceEnumerator	1050
29.50.1 Description	1050
29.50.2 Method overview	1050
29.50.3 Property overview	1050
29.50.4 TSourceEnumerator.GetCurrent	1050
29.50.5 TSourceEnumerator.Current	1050
29.51 TSources	1051
29.51.1 Description	1051
29.51.2 Method overview	1051
29.51.3 Property overview	1051
29.51.4 TSources.AddDoc	1051
29.51.5 TSources.AddSrc	1051
29.51.6 TSources.AddExample	1052
29.51.7 TSources.AddTest	1052
29.51.8 TSources.GetEnumerator	1052
29.51.9 TSources.AddDocFiles	1053
29.51.10 TSources.AddSrcFiles	1053
29.51.11 TSources.AddExampleFiles	1053
29.51.12 TSources.AddTestFiles	1053
29.51.13 TSources.SourceItems	1054
29.52 TTarget	1054
29.52.1 Description	1054
29.52.2 Method overview	1054
29.52.3 Property overview	1055
29.52.4 TTarget.Create	1055
29.52.5 TTarget.Destroy	1055
29.52.6 TTarget.AssignTo	1056
29.52.7 TTarget.GetOutputFileName	1056
29.52.8 TTarget.HaveOptions	1056
29.52.9 TTarget.SetName	1056
29.52.10 TTarget.SetExeName	1056
29.52.11 TTarget.SetXML	1057
29.52.12 TTarget.GetCleanFiles	1057
29.52.13 TTarget.GetInstallFiles	1057
29.52.14 TTarget.GetArchiveFiles	1057
29.52.15 TTarget.Dependencies	1058
29.52.16 TTarget.ResourceFiles	1058
29.52.17 TTarget.Commands	1058

29.52.18	Target.State	1058
29.52.19	Target.TargetType	1059
29.52.20	Target.OSes	1059
29.52.21	Target.CPUs	1059
29.52.22	Target.Mode	1059
29.52.23	Target.Options	1060
29.52.24	Target.SourceFileName	1060
29.52.25	Target.UnitFileName	1060
29.52.26	Target.ObjectFileName	1060
29.52.27	Target.RSTFileName	1061
29.52.28	Target.RSJFileName	1061
29.52.29	Target.FPCTarget	1061
29.52.30	Target.Extension	1061
29.52.31	Target.FileType	1062
29.52.32	Target.Directory	1062
29.52.33	Target.ResourceStrings	1062
29.52.34	Target.Install	1062
29.52.35	Target.TargetSourceFileName	1063
29.52.36	Target.ObjectPath	1063
29.52.37	Target.UnitPath	1063
29.52.38	Target.IncludePath	1063
29.52.39	Target.XML	1064
29.52.40	Target.IsFPMakePlugin	1064
29.52.41	Target.BeforeCompile	1064
29.52.42	Target.AfterCompile	1064
29.52.43	Target.BeforeClean	1065
29.52.44	Target.AfterClean	1065
29.53	TargetEnumerator	1065
29.53.1	Description	1065
29.53.2	Method overview	1065
29.53.3	Property overview	1065
29.53.4	TargetEnumerator.GetCurrent	1065
29.53.5	TargetEnumerator.Current	1066
29.54	Targets	1066
29.54.1	Description	1066
29.54.2	Method overview	1066
29.54.3	Property overview	1066
29.54.4	Targets.AddFPDoc	1066
29.54.5	Targets.AddUnit	1067
29.54.6	Targets.AddImplicitUnit	1067

29.54.7 TTargets.AddProgram	1067
29.54.8 TTargets.AddLibrary	1068
29.54.9 TTargets.AddExampleUnit	1068
29.54.10 TTargets.AddExampleProgram	1068
29.54.11 TTargets.GetEnumerator	1069
29.54.12 TTargets.Targets	1069
29.54.13 TTargets.TargetItems	1069
29.55 TValueItem	1069
29.55.1 Description	1069
29.55.2 Method overview	1070
29.55.3 TValueItem.Create	1070
30 Reference for unit 'fpobserver'	1071
30.1 Used units	1071
30.2 Overview	1071
30.3 Constants, types and variables	1071
30.3.1 Types	1071
30.4 Procedures and functions	1072
30.4.1 MediatorError	1072
30.4.2 MediatorManager	1072
30.5 EMediator	1073
30.5.1 Description	1073
30.6 TBaseListMediator	1073
30.6.1 Description	1073
30.6.2 Method overview	1073
30.6.3 Property overview	1073
30.6.4 TBaseListMediator.Create	1073
30.6.5 TBaseListMediator.Destroy	1073
30.6.6 TBaseListMediator.CompositeMediator	1074
30.6.7 TBaseListMediator.ObservedChanged	1074
30.6.8 TBaseListMediator.SelectedObject	1074
30.6.9 TBaseListMediator.OnBeforeSetupField	1074
30.7 TBaseMediator	1075
30.7.1 Description	1075
30.7.2 Interfaces overview	1075
30.7.3 Method overview	1075
30.7.4 Property overview	1075
30.7.5 TBaseMediator.Destroy	1076
30.7.6 TBaseMediator.ObjectToView	1076
30.7.7 TBaseMediator.ViewToObject	1076

30.7.8	TBaseMediator.ViewClass	1076
30.7.9	TBaseMediator.CompositeMediator	1077
30.7.10	TBaseMediator.Subject	1077
30.7.11	TBaseMediator.View	1077
30.7.12	TBaseMediator.Valuelist	1077
30.7.13	TBaseMediator.SubjectPropertyName	1078
30.7.14	TBaseMediator.Active	1078
30.7.15	TBaseMediator.ReadOnly	1078
30.7.16	TBaseMediator.OnViewToObject	1079
30.7.17	TBaseMediator.OnObjectToView	1079
30.8	TColumnsListItemMediator	1079
30.8.1	Description	1079
30.8.2	Property overview	1079
30.8.3	TColumnsListItemMediator.FieldsInfo	1079
30.9	TColumnsListMediator	1080
30.9.1	Description	1080
30.9.2	Method overview	1080
30.9.3	Property overview	1080
30.9.4	TColumnsListMediator.Create	1080
30.9.5	TColumnsListMediator.Destroy	1080
30.9.6	TColumnsListMediator.DisplayNames	1081
30.9.7	TColumnsListMediator.FieldsInfo	1081
30.10	TComponentMediator	1081
30.10.1	Description	1081
30.10.2	Property overview	1081
30.10.3	TComponentMediator.ViewComponent	1082
30.10.4	TComponentMediator.ViewPropertyName	1082
30.11	TListItemMediator	1082
30.11.1	Description	1082
30.11.2	Interfaces overview	1082
30.11.3	Method overview	1082
30.11.4	Property overview	1083
30.11.5	TListItemMediator.Destroy	1083
30.11.6	TListItemMediator.MaybeObjectToView	1083
30.11.7	TListItemMediator.OnBeforeSetupField	1083
30.11.8	TListItemMediator.Subject	1083
30.11.9	TListItemMediator.Active	1084
30.12	TMediatorDef	1084
30.12.1	Description	1084
30.12.2	Method overview	1084

30.12.3 Property overview	1084
30.12.4 TMediatorDef.Handles	1084
30.12.5 TMediatorDef.BetterMatch	1085
30.12.6 TMediatorDef.MediatorClass	1085
30.12.7 TMediatorDef.MinSubjectClass	1085
30.12.8 TMediatorDef.PropertyTypes	1085
30.12.9 TMediatorDef.PropertyName	1086
30.13 TMediatorDefs	1086
30.13.1 Description	1086
30.13.2 Method overview	1086
30.13.3 Property overview	1086
30.13.4 TMediatorDefs.AddDef	1086
30.13.5 TMediatorDefs.Defs	1086
30.14 TMediatorFieldInfo	1087
30.14.1 Description	1087
30.14.2 Method overview	1087
30.14.3 Property overview	1087
30.14.4 TMediatorFieldInfo.Assign	1087
30.14.5 TMediatorFieldInfo.AsString	1087
30.14.6 TMediatorFieldInfo.Caption	1088
30.14.7 TMediatorFieldInfo.PropertyName	1088
30.14.8 TMediatorFieldInfo.Width	1088
30.14.9 TMediatorFieldInfo.Alignment	1089
30.15 TMediatorFieldInfoList	1089
30.15.1 Description	1089
30.15.2 Method overview	1089
30.15.3 Property overview	1089
30.15.4 TMediatorFieldInfoList.AddFieldInfo	1089
30.15.5 TMediatorFieldInfoList.FieldInfo	1090
30.15.6 TMediatorFieldInfoList.AsString	1090
30.16 TMediatorManager	1090
30.16.1 Description	1090
30.16.2 Method overview	1090
30.16.3 Property overview	1091
30.16.4 TMediatorManager.Create	1091
30.16.5 TMediatorManager.Destroy	1091
30.16.6 TMediatorManager.FindDefFor	1091
30.16.7 TMediatorManager.RegisterMediator	1092
30.16.8 TMediatorManager.Defs	1092
30.17 TObservedHook	1092

30.17.1 Description	1092
30.17.2 Interfaces overview	1092
30.17.3 Method overview	1093
30.17.4 Property overview	1093
30.17.5 TObservedHook.CreateSender	1093
30.17.6 TObservedHook.Destroy	1093
30.17.7 TObservedHook.FPOAttachObserver	1093
30.17.8 TObservedHook.FPODetachObserver	1094
30.17.9 TObservedHook.Changed	1094
30.17.10 TObservedHook.AddItem	1094
30.17.11 TObservedHook.DeleteItem	1094
30.17.12 TObservedHook.CustomNotify	1095
30.17.13 TObservedHook.FPONotifyObservers	1095
30.17.14 TObservedHook.Sender	1095
31 Reference for unit 'fpTemplate'	1096
31.1 Used units	1096
31.2 Overview	1096
31.3 Using templates with parameters	1096
31.4 Basic usage of the template parser	1100
31.5 Constants, types and variables	1103
31.5.1 Constants	1103
31.5.2 Types	1103
31.5.3 Variables	1104
31.6 ETemplateParser	1104
31.6.1 Description	1104
31.7 TFPCustomTemplate	1104
31.7.1 Description	1104
31.7.2 Method overview	1105
31.7.3 Property overview	1105
31.7.4 TFPCustomTemplate.HasContent	1105
31.7.5 TFPCustomTemplate.GetContent	1105
31.7.6 TFPCustomTemplate.Assign	1105
31.7.7 TFPCustomTemplate.StartDelimiter	1106
31.7.8 TFPCustomTemplate.EndDelimiter	1106
31.7.9 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter	1106
31.7.10 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter	1106
31.7.11 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamValueSeparator	1107
31.7.12 TFPCustomTemplate.FileName	1107
31.7.13 TFPCustomTemplate.Template	1107

31.7.14	TFPCustomTemplate.OnGetParam	1107
31.7.15	TFPCustomTemplate.OnReplaceTag	1108
31.7.16	TFPCustomTemplate.AllowTagParams	1108
31.8	TFPTemplate	1108
31.8.1	Description	1108
31.8.2	Property overview	1108
31.8.3	TFPTemplate.FileName	1109
31.8.4	TFPTemplate.Template	1109
31.8.5	TFPTemplate.AllowTagParams	1109
31.8.6	TFPTemplate.OnReplaceTag	1109
31.8.7	TFPTemplate.StartDelimiter	1110
31.8.8	TFPTemplate.EndDelimiter	1110
31.8.9	TFPTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter	1110
31.8.10	TFPTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter	1110
31.8.11	TFPTemplate.ParamValueSeparator	1111
31.8.12	TFPTemplate.OnGetParam	1111
31.9	TTemplateParser	1111
31.9.1	Description	1111
31.9.2	Method overview	1111
31.9.3	Property overview	1112
31.9.4	TTemplateParser.Create	1112
31.9.5	TTemplateParser.Destroy	1112
31.9.6	TTemplateParser.Clear	1112
31.9.7	TTemplateParser.ReplaceTag	1113
31.9.8	TTemplateParser.GetParam	1113
31.9.9	TTemplateParser.GetTagParams	1113
31.9.10	TTemplateParser.ParseString	1113
31.9.11	TTemplateParser.ParseStream	1114
31.9.12	TTemplateParser.ParseStrings	1114
31.9.13	TTemplateParser.ParseFiles	1114
31.9.14	TTemplateParser.OnGetParam	1114
31.9.15	TTemplateParser.OnReplaceTag	1115
31.9.16	TTemplateParser.StartDelimiter	1115
31.9.17	TTemplateParser.EndDelimiter	1115
31.9.18	TTemplateParser.ParamStartDelimiter	1115
31.9.19	TTemplateParser.ParamEndDelimiter	1116
31.9.20	TTemplateParser.ParamValueSeparator	1116
31.9.21	TTemplateParser.Values	1116
31.9.22	TTemplateParser.ValuesByIndex	1116
31.9.23	TTemplateParser.NamesByIndex	1117

31.9.24 TTemplateParser.ValueCount	1117
31.9.25 TTemplateParser.Recursive	1117
31.9.26 TTemplateParser.AllowTagParams	1117
32 Reference for unit 'fpTimer'	1118
32.1 Used units	1118
32.2 Overview	1118
32.3 Constants, types and variables	1118
32.3.1 Types	1118
32.3.2 Variables	1118
32.4 TFPCustomTimer	1119
32.4.1 Description	1119
32.4.2 Method overview	1119
32.4.3 TFPCustomTimer.Create	1119
32.4.4 TFPCustomTimer.Destroy	1119
32.4.5 TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer	1120
32.4.6 TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer	1120
32.5 TFPTimer	1120
32.5.1 Description	1120
32.5.2 Property overview	1120
32.5.3 TFPTimer.Enabled	1120
32.5.4 TFPTimer.Interval	1121
32.5.5 TFPTimer.UseTimerThread	1121
32.5.6 TFPTimer.OnTimer	1121
32.5.7 TFPTimer.OnStartTimer	1121
32.5.8 TFPTimer.OnStopTimer	1122
32.6 TFPTimerDriver	1122
32.6.1 Description	1122
32.6.2 Method overview	1122
32.6.3 Property overview	1122
32.6.4 TFPTimerDriver.Create	1122
32.6.5 TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer	1122
32.6.6 TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer	1123
32.6.7 TFPTimerDriver.Timer	1123
32.6.8 TFPTimerDriver.TimerStarted	1123
33 Reference for unit 'fpWeb'	1124
33.1 Used units	1124
33.2 Overview	1124
33.3 Constants, types and variables	1124
33.3.1 Resource strings	1124

33.3.2	Types	1125
33.4	EFPWebError	1125
33.4.1	Description	1125
33.5	TCustomFPWebModule	1125
33.5.1	Description	1125
33.5.2	Method overview	1125
33.5.3	Property overview	1126
33.5.4	TCustomFPWebModule.CreateNew	1126
33.5.5	TCustomFPWebModule.Destroy	1126
33.5.6	TCustomFPWebModule.HandleRequest	1126
33.5.7	TCustomFPWebModule.Actions	1127
33.5.8	TCustomFPWebModule.ActionVar	1127
33.5.9	TCustomFPWebModule.BeforeRequest	1127
33.5.10	TCustomFPWebModule.OnRequest	1128
33.5.11	TCustomFPWebModule.AfterResponse	1128
33.5.12	TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetAction	1128
33.5.13	TCustomFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown	1128
33.5.14	TCustomFPWebModule.ModuleTemplate	1129
33.5.15	TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetParam	1129
33.5.16	TCustomFPWebModule.OnTemplateContent	1129
33.5.17	TCustomFPWebModule.Request	1129
33.5.18	TCustomFPWebModule.Response	1130
33.6	TFPWebAction	1130
33.6.1	Description	1130
33.6.2	Method overview	1130
33.6.3	Property overview	1130
33.6.4	TFPWebAction.create	1130
33.6.5	TFPWebAction.destroy	1131
33.6.6	TFPWebAction.Assign	1131
33.6.7	TFPWebAction.Contents	1131
33.6.8	TFPWebAction.OnRequest	1131
33.6.9	TFPWebAction.Template	1132
33.7	TFPWebActions	1132
33.7.1	Description	1132
33.7.2	Method overview	1132
33.7.3	Property overview	1132
33.7.4	TFPWebActions.Add	1132
33.7.5	TFPWebActions.ActionByName	1133
33.7.6	TFPWebActions.FindAction	1133
33.7.7	TFPWebActions.FPWebActions	1133

33.7.8	TFPWebActions.ActionVar	1133
33.7.9	TFPWebActions.CurrentAction	1134
33.8	TFPWebModule	1134
33.8.1	Description	1134
33.8.2	Property overview	1134
33.8.3	TFPWebModule.Actions	1134
33.8.4	TFPWebModule.ActionVar	1135
33.8.5	TFPWebModule.BeforeRequest	1135
33.8.6	TFPWebModule.OnRequest	1135
33.8.7	TFPWebModule.AfterResponse	1135
33.8.8	TFPWebModule.OnGetAction	1136
33.8.9	TFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown	1136
33.8.10	TFPWebModule.CreateSession	1136
33.8.11	TFPWebModule.Session	1136
33.8.12	TFPWebModule.Kind	1137
33.8.13	TFPWebModule.OnNewSession	1137
33.8.14	TFPWebModule.OnSessionExpired	1137
33.8.15	TFPWebModule.AfterInitModule	1137
33.8.16	TFPWebModule.CORS	1138
33.9	TTemplateVar	1138
33.9.1	Description	1138
33.9.2	Method overview	1138
33.9.3	Property overview	1138
33.9.4	TTemplateVar.Assign	1138
33.9.5	TTemplateVar.GetDisplayName	1138
33.9.6	TTemplateVar.Name	1139
33.9.7	TTemplateVar.Value	1139
33.10	TTemplateVars	1139
33.10.1	Description	1139
33.10.2	Method overview	1139
33.10.3	Property overview	1139
33.10.4	TTemplateVars.IndexOfVar	1140
33.10.5	TTemplateVars.VarByName	1140
33.10.6	TTemplateVars.FindVar	1140
33.10.7	TTemplateVars.Variables	1140
34	Reference for unit 'gettext'	1141
34.1	Used units	1141
34.2	Overview	1141
34.3	Constants, types and variables	1141

34.3.1	Constants	1141
34.3.2	Types	1141
34.3.3	Variables	1142
34.4	Procedures and functions	1142
34.4.1	GetLanguageIDs	1142
34.4.2	TranslateResourceStrings	1143
34.4.3	TranslateUnitResourceStrings	1143
34.5	TMOFileHeader	1143
34.6	TMOStringInfo	1144
34.7	EMOFileError	1144
34.7.1	Description	1144
34.8	TMOFile	1144
34.8.1	Description	1144
34.8.2	Method overview	1144
34.8.3	TMOFile.Create	1144
34.8.4	TMOFile.Destroy	1145
34.8.5	TMOFile.Translate	1145
35	Reference for unit 'HTTPDefs'	1146
35.1	Used units	1146
35.2	Overview	1146
35.3	Using TRequest and TResponse Classes	1146
35.4	Working with HTTP Cookies	1149
35.5	Understanding TCORSSupport.HandleRequest Return Value	1151
35.6	CORS Support Usage	1153
35.7	Working with HTTP Sessions	1154
35.8	Constants, types and variables	1156
35.8.1	Constants	1156
35.8.2	Types	1163
35.8.3	Variables	1167
35.9	Procedures and functions	1167
35.9.1	HTTPDecode	1167
35.9.2	HTTPEncode	1167
35.9.3	IncludeHTTPathDelimiter	1168
35.10	EHTTP	1168
35.10.1	Description	1168
35.10.2	Property overview	1168
35.10.3	EHTTP.StatusCode	1168
35.10.4	EHTTP.StatusText	1168
35.11	TCookie	1169

35.11.1 Description	1169
35.11.2 Method overview	1169
35.11.3 Property overview	1169
35.11.4 TCookie.Create	1169
35.11.5 TCookie.Assign	1169
35.11.6 TCookie.Expire	1170
35.11.7 TCookie.Name	1170
35.11.8 TCookie.Value	1170
35.11.9 TCookie.Domain	1170
35.11.10 TCookie.Path	1171
35.11.11 TCookie.Expires	1171
35.11.12 TCookie.Secure	1171
35.11.13 TCookie.HttpOnly	1171
35.11.14 TCookie.SameSite	1172
35.11.15 TCookie.AsString	1172
35.12 TCookies	1172
35.12.1 Description	1172
35.12.2 Method overview	1172
35.12.3 Property overview	1172
35.12.4 TCookies.Add	1172
35.12.5 TCookies.CookieByName	1173
35.12.6 TCookies.FindCookie	1173
35.12.7 TCookies.IndexOfCookie	1173
35.12.8 TCookies.Items	1173
35.13 TCORSSupport	1174
35.13.1 Description	1174
35.13.2 Method overview	1174
35.13.3 Property overview	1174
35.13.4 TCORSSupport.Create	1174
35.13.5 TCORSSupport.ResolvedCORSAllowedOrigins	1174
35.13.6 TCORSSupport.HandleRequest	1175
35.13.7 TCORSSupport.Assign	1175
35.13.8 TCORSSupport.Enabled	1175
35.13.9 TCORSSupport.Options	1175
35.13.10 TCORSSupport.AllowedMethods	1175
35.13.11 TCORSSupport.AllowedOrigins	1176
35.13.12 TCORSSupport.AllowedHeaders	1176
35.13.13 TCORSSupport.MaxAge	1176
35.14 TCustomSession	1176
35.14.1 Description	1176

35.14.2 Method overview	1177
35.14.3 Property overview	1177
35.14.4 TCustomSession.Create	1177
35.14.5 TCustomSession.InitSession	1177
35.14.6 TCustomSession.InitResponse	1177
35.14.7 TCustomSession.UpdateResponse	1178
35.14.8 TCustomSession.RemoveVariable	1178
35.14.9 TCustomSession.Terminate	1178
35.14.10 TCustomSession.SessionVariableExists	1178
35.14.11 TCustomSession.TimeOutMinutes	1178
35.14.12 TCustomSession.SessionID	1179
35.14.13 TCustomSession.SessionCookie	1179
35.14.14 TCustomSession.SessionCookiePath	1179
35.14.15 TCustomSession.Variables	1179
35.14.16 TCustomSession.SessionState	1180
35.14.17 TCustomSession.OnSessionStateChange	1180
35.15 THTTPHeader	1180
35.15.1 Description	1180
35.15.2 Method overview	1180
35.15.3 Property overview	1182
35.15.4 THTTPHeader.Create	1183
35.15.5 THTTPHeader.Destroy	1183
35.15.6 THTTPHeader.HeaderIsSet	1183
35.15.7 THTTPHeader.GetHeader	1183
35.15.8 THTTPHeader.SetHeader	1183
35.15.9 THTTPHeader.SetFieldByName	1184
35.15.10 THTTPHeader.GetFieldByName	1184
35.15.11 THTTPHeader.GetVariableHeaderName	1184
35.15.12 THTTPHeader.GetCustomHeader	1184
35.15.13 THTTPHeader.SetCustomHeader	1184
35.15.14 THTTPHeader.LoadFromStream	1185
35.15.15 THTTPHeader.LoadFromStrings	1185
35.15.16 THTTPHeader.FieldCount	1185
35.15.17 THTTPHeader.Fields	1185
35.15.18 THTTPHeader.FieldNames	1185
35.15.19 THTTPHeader.FieldValues	1186
35.15.20 THTTPHeader.Accept	1186
35.15.21 THTTPHeader.AcceptCharset	1186
35.15.22 THTTPHeader.AcceptEncoding	1186
35.15.23 THTTPHeader.AcceptLanguage	1187

35.15.24	HTTPHeader.Authorization	1187
35.15.25	HTTPHeader.Connection	1187
35.15.26	HTTPHeader.ContentEncoding	1187
35.15.27	HTTPHeader.ContentLanguage	1188
35.15.28	HTTPHeader.ContentLength	1188
35.15.29	HTTPHeader.ContentType	1188
35.15.30	HTTPHeader.Date	1188
35.15.31	HTTPHeader.Expires	1189
35.15.32	HTTPHeader.From	1189
35.15.33	HTTPHeader.Host	1189
35.15.34	HTTPHeader.IfModifiedSince	1189
35.15.35	HTTPHeader.LastModified	1190
35.15.36	HTTPHeader.Location	1190
35.15.37	HTTPHeader.Pragma	1190
35.15.38	HTTPHeader.Referer	1190
35.15.39	HTTPHeader.RetryAfter	1191
35.15.40	HTTPHeader.Server	1191
35.15.41	HTTPHeader.UserAgent	1191
35.15.42	HTTPHeader.Warning	1191
35.15.43	HTTPHeader.WWWAuthenticate	1192
35.15.44	HTTPHeader.Via	1192
35.15.45	HTTPHeader.HTTPAccept	1192
35.15.46	HTTPHeader.HTTPAcceptCharset	1192
35.15.47	HTTPHeader.HTTPAcceptEncoding	1193
35.15.48	HTTPHeader.HTTPIfModifiedSince	1193
35.15.49	HTTPHeader.HTTPReferer	1193
35.15.50	HTTPHeader.HTTPUserAgent	1193
35.15.51	HTTPHeader.Cookie	1194
35.15.52	HTTPHeader.SetCookie	1194
35.15.53	HTTPHeader.HTTPXRequestedWith	1194
35.15.54	HTTPHeader.HttpVersion	1194
35.15.55	HTTPHeader.ProtocolVersion	1195
35.15.56	HTTPHeader.PathInfo	1195
35.15.57	HTTPHeader.PathTranslated	1195
35.15.58	HTTPHeader.RemoteAddress	1195
35.15.59	HTTPHeader.RemoteAddr	1196
35.15.60	HTTPHeader.RemoteHost	1196
35.15.61	HTTPHeader.ScriptName	1196
35.15.62	HTTPHeader.ServerPort	1196
35.15.63	HTTPHeader.Method	1197

35.15.64	HTTPHeader.URL	1197
35.15.65	HTTPHeader.Query	1197
35.15.66	HTTPHeader.Content	1197
35.15.67	HTTPHeader.CookieFields	1198
35.15.68	HTTPHeader.ContentFields	1198
35.15.69	HTTPHeader.QueryFields	1198
35.15.70	HTTPHeader.CustomHeaders	1198
35.16	TMimeItem	1198
35.16.1	Description	1198
35.16.2	Method overview	1199
35.16.3	Property overview	1199
35.16.4	TMimeItem.Process	1199
35.16.5	TMimeItem.Data	1199
35.16.6	TMimeItem.Name	1199
35.16.7	TMimeItem.Disposition	1200
35.16.8	TMimeItem.FileName	1200
35.16.9	TMimeItem.ContentType	1200
35.16.10	TMimeItem.Description	1200
35.16.11	TMimeItem.IsFile	1201
35.16.12	TMimeItem.DataSize	1201
35.17	TMimeItems	1201
35.17.1	Description	1201
35.17.2	Method overview	1201
35.17.3	Property overview	1201
35.17.4	TMimeItems.First	1201
35.17.5	TMimeItems.Last	1202
35.17.6	TMimeItems.Parts	1202
35.18	TRequest	1202
35.18.1	Description	1202
35.18.2	Method overview	1202
35.18.3	Property overview	1203
35.18.4	TRequest.Create	1203
35.18.5	TRequest.destroy	1203
35.18.6	TRequest.GetNextPathInfo	1203
35.18.7	TRequest.RouteParams	1204
35.18.8	TRequest.ReturnedPathInfo	1204
35.18.9	TRequest.LocalPathPrefix	1204
35.18.10	TRequest.CommandLine	1204
35.18.11	TRequest.Command	1205
35.18.12	TRequest.URI	1205

35.18.13	Request.QueryString	1205
35.18.14	Request.HeaderLine	1205
35.18.15	Request.Files	1206
35.18.16	Request.HandleGetOnPost	1206
35.18.17	Request.OnUnknownEncoding	1206
35.18.18	Request.IfMatch	1206
35.18.19	Request.IfNoneMatch	1207
35.18.20	Request.IfRange	1207
35.18.21	Request.IfUnModifiedSince	1207
35.18.22	Request.ContentRange	1207
35.18.23	Request.TE	1208
35.18.24	Request.Upgrade	1208
35.19	Response	1208
35.19.1	Description	1208
35.19.2	Method overview	1208
35.19.3	Property overview	1209
35.19.4	Response.Create	1209
35.19.5	Response.destroy	1209
35.19.6	Response.SendContent	1209
35.19.7	Response.SendHeaders	1210
35.19.8	Response.SendResponse	1210
35.19.9	Response.SendRedirect	1210
35.19.10	Response.Request	1210
35.19.11	Response.Code	1210
35.19.12	Response.CodeText	1211
35.19.13	Response.Age	1211
35.19.14	Response.Allow	1211
35.19.15	Response.CacheControl	1211
35.19.16	Response.ContentLocation	1212
35.19.17	Response.ContentMD5	1212
35.19.18	Response.ContentRange	1212
35.19.19	Response.ETag	1212
35.19.20	Response.ProxyAuthenticate	1213
35.19.21	Response.RetryAfter	1213
35.19.22	Response.FirstHeaderLine	1213
35.19.23	Response.ContentStream	1213
35.19.24	Response.Content	1214
35.19.25	Response.Contents	1214
35.19.26	Response.HeadersSent	1214
35.19.27	Response.ContentSent	1214

35.19.28	TResponse.Cookies	1215
35.19.29	TResponse.FreeContentStream	1215
35.20	TUploadedFile	1215
35.20.1	Description	1215
35.20.2	Method overview	1215
35.20.3	Property overview	1215
35.20.4	TUploadedFile.Destroy	1216
35.20.5	TUploadedFile.FieldName	1216
35.20.6	TUploadedFile.FileName	1216
35.20.7	TUploadedFile.Stream	1216
35.20.8	TUploadedFile.Size	1216
35.20.9	TUploadedFile.ContentType	1217
35.20.10	TUploadedFile.Disposition	1217
35.20.11	TUploadedFile.LocalFileName	1217
35.20.12	TUploadedFile.Description	1217
35.21	TUploadedFiles	1217
35.21.1	Description	1217
35.21.2	Method overview	1218
35.21.3	Property overview	1218
35.21.4	TUploadedFiles.First	1218
35.21.5	TUploadedFiles.Last	1218
35.21.6	TUploadedFiles.IndexOfFile	1218
35.21.7	TUploadedFiles.FileByName	1218
35.21.8	TUploadedFiles.FindFile	1219
35.21.9	TUploadedFiles.Files	1219
36	Reference for unit 'httpprotocol'	1220
36.1	Used units	1220
36.2	Overview	1220
36.3	Constants, types and variables	1220
36.3.1	Constants	1220
36.3.2	Types	1226
36.4	Procedures and functions	1228
36.4.1	ExcludeHTTPPathDelimiter	1228
36.4.2	HeaderName	1229
36.4.3	HeaderType	1229
36.4.4	HTTPDecode	1229
36.4.5	HTTPEncode	1229
36.4.6	IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter	1230
37	Reference for unit 'httproute'	1231

37.1 Used units	1231
37.2 Overview	1231
37.3 Advanced HTTP Router Handler Examples	1231
37.4 HTTP Router Methods and RESTful APIs	1233
37.5 HTTP Router Interceptors and Middleware	1234
37.6 HTTP Router Parameterized Routes	1235
37.7 Basic HTTP Router Usage	1236
37.8 HTTP Router Handler Types	1237
37.9 HTTP Router Working Principle	1237
37.10 Constants, types and variables	1238
37.10.1 Constants	1238
37.10.2 Types	1238
37.11 Procedures and functions	1240
37.11.1 HTTPRouter	1240
37.11.2 RouteMethodToString	1240
37.12 EHTTPRoute	1240
37.12.1 Description	1240
37.13 IRouteInterface	1240
37.13.1 Description	1240
37.13.2 Method overview	1240
37.13.3 IRouteInterface.HandleRequest	1241
37.14 THTTPRoute	1241
37.14.1 Description	1241
37.14.2 Method overview	1241
37.14.3 Property overview	1241
37.14.4 THTTPRoute.Destroy	1241
37.14.5 THTTPRoute.HandleRequest	1241
37.14.6 THTTPRoute.Matches	1242
37.14.7 THTTPRoute.MatchPattern	1242
37.14.8 THTTPRoute.MatchMethod	1242
37.14.9 THTTPRoute.Default	1242
37.14.10 THTTPRoute.URLPattern	1243
37.14.11 THTTPRoute.Method	1243
37.15 THTTPRouteCallback	1243
37.15.1 Description	1243
37.15.2 Property overview	1243
37.15.3 THTTPRouteCallback.CallBack	1243
37.16 THTTPRouteCallbackEx	1243
37.16.1 Description	1243
37.16.2 Property overview	1244

37.16.3	THTTPageRouteCallbackEx.Callback	1244
37.16.4	THTTPageRouteCallbackEx.Data	1244
37.17	THTTPageRouteEvent	1244
37.17.1	Description	1244
37.17.2	Property overview	1244
37.17.3	THTTPageRouteEvent.Event	1244
37.18	THTTPageRouteInterface	1245
37.18.1	Description	1245
37.18.2	Property overview	1245
37.18.3	THTTPageRouteInterface.Intf	1245
37.19	THTTPageRouteList	1245
37.19.1	Description	1245
37.19.2	Property overview	1245
37.19.3	THTTPageRouteList.Routes	1245
37.20	THTTPageRouteObject	1246
37.20.1	Description	1246
37.20.2	Property overview	1246
37.20.3	THTTPageRouteObject.ObjectClass	1246
37.21	THTTPageRoute	1246
37.21.1	Description	1246
37.21.2	Method overview	1246
37.21.3	Property overview	1247
37.21.4	THTTPageRoute.Create	1247
37.21.5	THTTPageRoute.Destroy	1247
37.21.6	THTTPageRoute.DeleteRoute	1247
37.21.7	THTTPageRoute.DeleteRouteByID	1247
37.21.8	THTTPageRoute.SanitizeRoute	1248
37.21.9	THTTPageRoute.Service	1248
37.21.10	THTTPageRoute.ServiceClass	1248
37.21.11	THTTPageRoute.SetServiceClass	1248
37.21.12	THTTPageRoute.StringToRouteMethod	1248
37.21.13	THTTPageRoute.RegisterRoute	1249
37.21.14	THTTPageRoute.FindHTTPRoute	1249
37.21.15	THTTPageRoute.GetHTTPRoute	1249
37.21.16	THTTPageRoute.RouteRequest	1250
37.21.17	THTTPageRoute.Routes	1250
37.21.18	THTTPageRoute.RouteCount	1250
37.21.19	THTTPageRoute.BeforeRequest	1250
37.21.20	THTTPageRoute.AfterRequest	1251
37.21.21	THTTPageRoute.RouteOptions	1251

37.22	TRouteObject	1251
37.22.1	Description	1251
37.22.2	Interfaces overview	1251
37.22.3	Method overview	1251
37.22.4	TRouteObject.Create	1251
37.22.5	TRouteObject.HandleRequest	1252
38	Reference for unit 'IBConnection'	1253
38.1	Used units	1253
38.2	Constants, types and variables	1253
38.2.1	Constants	1253
38.2.2	Types	1253
38.3	TDatabaseInfo	1254
38.4	EIBDatabaseError	1254
38.4.1	Description	1254
38.4.2	Property overview	1254
38.4.3	EIBDatabaseError.StatusVector	1254
38.4.4	EIBDatabaseError.GDSErrorCode	1254
38.5	TIBConnection	1255
38.5.1	Description	1255
38.5.2	Method overview	1256
38.5.3	Property overview	1256
38.5.4	TIBConnection.Create	1256
38.5.5	TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo	1256
38.5.6	TIBConnection.CreateDB	1257
38.5.7	TIBConnection.DropDB	1257
38.5.8	TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize	1257
38.5.9	TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion	1258
38.5.10	TIBConnection.DatabaseName	1258
38.5.11	TIBConnection.Dialect	1258
38.5.12	TIBConnection.CheckTransactionParams	1259
38.5.13	TIBConnection.KeepConnection	1259
38.5.14	TIBConnection.LoginPrompt	1259
38.5.15	TIBConnection.Params	1259
38.5.16	TIBConnection.OnLogin	1260
38.5.17	TIBConnection.Port	1260
38.5.18	TIBConnection.UseConnectionCharSetIfNone	1260
38.5.19	TIBConnection.WireCompression	1260
38.6	TIBConnectionDef	1261
38.6.1	Description	1261

38.6.2	Method overview	1261
38.6.3	TIBConnectionDef.TypeName	1261
38.6.4	TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	1261
38.6.5	TIBConnectionDef.Description	1261
38.6.6	TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	1262
38.6.7	TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction	1262
38.6.8	TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	1262
38.6.9	TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	1262
38.7	TIBCursor	1262
38.7.1	Description	1262
38.8	TIBTrans	1263
38.8.1	Description	1263
39	Reference for unit 'idea'	1264
39.1	Used units	1264
39.2	Overview	1264
39.3	Constants, types and variables	1264
39.3.1	Constants	1264
39.3.2	Types	1265
39.4	Procedures and functions	1265
39.4.1	CipherIdea	1265
39.4.2	DeKeyIdea	1265
39.4.3	EnKeyIdea	1266
39.5	EIDEAError	1266
39.5.1	Description	1266
39.6	TIDEADeCryptStream	1266
39.6.1	Description	1266
39.6.2	Method overview	1266
39.6.3	TIDEADeCryptStream.Create	1267
39.6.4	TIDEADeCryptStream.Read	1267
39.6.5	TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek	1267
39.7	TIDEAEncryptStream	1268
39.7.1	Description	1268
39.7.2	Method overview	1268
39.7.3	TIDEAEncryptStream.Create	1268
39.7.4	TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy	1268
39.7.5	TIDEAEncryptStream.Write	1269
39.7.6	TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek	1269
39.7.7	TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush	1269
39.8	TIDEAStream	1269

39.8.1	Description	1269
39.8.2	Method overview	1270
39.8.3	Property overview	1270
39.8.4	TIDEAStream.Create	1270
39.8.5	TIDEAStream.Key	1270
40	Reference for unit 'inicol'	1271
40.1	Used units	1271
40.2	Overview	1271
40.3	Constants, types and variables	1271
40.3.1	Constants	1271
40.4	EIniCol	1272
40.4.1	Description	1272
40.5	TIniCollection	1272
40.5.1	Description	1272
40.5.2	Method overview	1272
40.5.3	Property overview	1272
40.5.4	TIniCollection.Load	1272
40.5.5	TIniCollection.Save	1273
40.5.6	TIniCollection.SaveToIni	1273
40.5.7	TIniCollection.SaveToFile	1273
40.5.8	TIniCollection.LoadFromIni	1274
40.5.9	TIniCollection.LoadFromFile	1274
40.5.10	TIniCollection.Prefix	1274
40.5.11	TIniCollection.SectionPrefix	1275
40.5.12	TIniCollection.FileName	1275
40.5.13	TIniCollection.GlobalSection	1275
40.6	TIniCollectionItem	1276
40.6.1	Description	1276
40.6.2	Method overview	1276
40.6.3	Property overview	1276
40.6.4	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni	1276
40.6.5	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni	1276
40.6.6	TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile	1277
40.6.7	TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile	1277
40.6.8	TIniCollectionItem.SectionName	1277
40.7	TNamedIniCollection	1278
40.7.1	Description	1278
40.7.2	Method overview	1278
40.7.3	Property overview	1278

40.7.4	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData	1278
40.7.5	TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName	1278
40.7.6	TNamedIniCollection.FindByName	1279
40.7.7	TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData	1279
40.7.8	TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems	1279
40.8	TNamedIniCollectionItem	1279
40.8.1	Description	1279
40.8.2	Property overview	1279
40.8.3	TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData	1280
40.8.4	TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name	1280
41	Reference for unit 'IniFiles'	1281
41.1	Used units	1281
41.2	Overview	1281
41.3	Constants, types and variables	1281
41.3.1	Constants	1281
41.3.2	Types	1281
41.4	TCustomIniFile	1283
41.4.1	Description	1283
41.4.2	Method overview	1283
41.4.3	Property overview	1284
41.4.4	TCustomIniFile.Create	1284
41.4.5	TCustomIniFile.Destroy	1285
41.4.6	TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValues	1285
41.4.7	TCustomIniFile.SectionExists	1285
41.4.8	TCustomIniFile.ReadString	1285
41.4.9	TCustomIniFile.WriteString	1286
41.4.10	TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger	1286
41.4.11	TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger	1286
41.4.12	TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64	1286
41.4.13	TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64	1287
41.4.14	TCustomIniFile.ReadBool	1287
41.4.15	TCustomIniFile.WriteBool	1287
41.4.16	TCustomIniFile.ReadDate	1288
41.4.17	TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime	1288
41.4.18	TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat	1288
41.4.19	TCustomIniFile.ReadTime	1288
41.4.20	TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream	1289
41.4.21	TCustomIniFile.WriteDate	1289
41.4.22	TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime	1289

41.4.23 TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat	1290
41.4.24 TCustomIniFile.WriteTime	1290
41.4.25 TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream	1290
41.4.26 TCustomIniFile.ReadSection	1290
41.4.27 TCustomIniFile.ReadSections	1291
41.4.28 TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues	1291
41.4.29 TCustomIniFile.EraseSection	1291
41.4.30 TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey	1292
41.4.31 TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile	1292
41.4.32 TCustomIniFile.ValueExists	1292
41.4.33 TCustomIniFile.Encoding	1292
41.4.34 TCustomIniFile.FileName	1293
41.4.35 TCustomIniFile.Options	1293
41.4.36 TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds	1293
41.4.37 TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive	1293
41.4.38 TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes	1294
41.4.39 TCustomIniFile.FormatSettingsActive	1294
41.4.40 TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings	1294
41.4.41 TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings	1295
41.4.42 TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding	1295
41.5 THashedStringList	1295
41.5.1 Description	1295
41.5.2 Method overview	1295
41.5.3 THashedStringList.Destroy	1295
41.5.4 THashedStringList.IndexOf	1296
41.5.5 THashedStringList.IndexOfName	1296
41.6 TIniFile	1296
41.6.1 Description	1296
41.6.2 Method overview	1296
41.6.3 Property overview	1297
41.6.4 TIniFile.Create	1297
41.6.5 TIniFile.Destroy	1297
41.6.6 TIniFile.ReadString	1297
41.6.7 TIniFile.WriteString	1298
41.6.8 TIniFile.ReadSection	1298
41.6.9 TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw	1298
41.6.10 TIniFile.ReadSections	1298
41.6.11 TIniFile.ReadSectionValues	1299
41.6.12 TIniFile.EraseSection	1299
41.6.13 TIniFile.DeleteKey	1299

41.6.14	TIniFile.UpdateFile	1299
41.6.15	TIniFile.Stream	1300
41.6.16	TIniFile.CacheUpdates	1300
41.6.17	TIniFile.WriteBOM	1300
41.7	TIniFileKey	1301
41.7.1	Description	1301
41.7.2	Method overview	1301
41.7.3	Property overview	1301
41.7.4	TIniFileKey.Create	1301
41.7.5	TIniFileKey.Ident	1301
41.7.6	TIniFileKey.Value	1301
41.8	TIniFileKeyList	1302
41.8.1	Description	1302
41.8.2	Method overview	1302
41.8.3	Property overview	1302
41.8.4	TIniFileKeyList.Destroy	1302
41.8.5	TIniFileKeyList.Clear	1302
41.8.6	TIniFileKeyList.Items	1302
41.9	TIniFileSection	1303
41.9.1	Description	1303
41.9.2	Method overview	1303
41.9.3	Property overview	1303
41.9.4	TIniFileSection.Empty	1303
41.9.5	TIniFileSection.Create	1303
41.9.6	TIniFileSection.Destroy	1304
41.9.7	TIniFileSection.Name	1304
41.9.8	TIniFileSection.KeyList	1304
41.10	TIniFileSectionList	1304
41.10.1	Description	1304
41.10.2	Method overview	1304
41.10.3	Property overview	1305
41.10.4	TIniFileSectionList.Destroy	1305
41.10.5	TIniFileSectionList.Clear	1305
41.10.6	TIniFileSectionList.Items	1305
41.11	TMemIniFile	1305
41.11.1	Description	1305
41.11.2	Method overview	1306
41.11.3	TMemIniFile.Create	1306
41.11.4	TMemIniFile.Clear	1306
41.11.5	TMemIniFile.GetStrings	1306

41.11.6 TMemIniFile.Rename	1307
41.11.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings	1307
41.12 TStringHash	1307
41.12.1 Description	1307
41.12.2 Method overview	1307
41.12.3 Property overview	1307
41.12.4 TStringHash.Create	1308
41.12.5 TStringHash.Destroy	1308
41.12.6 TStringHash.Add	1308
41.12.7 TStringHash.Clear	1308
41.12.8 TStringHash.Modify	1309
41.12.9 TStringHash.Remove	1309
41.12.10 TStringHash.ValueOf	1309
41.12.11 TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting	1309
42 Reference for unit 'iostream'	1310
42.1 Used units	1310
42.2 Overview	1310
42.3 Constants, types and variables	1310
42.3.1 Types	1310
42.4 EIOStreamError	1311
42.4.1 Description	1311
42.5 TIOStream	1311
42.5.1 Description	1311
42.5.2 Method overview	1311
42.5.3 TIOStream.Create	1311
42.5.4 TIOStream.Read	1311
42.5.5 TIOStream.Write	1312
42.5.6 TIOStream.Seek	1312
43 Reference for unit 'jsonini'	1313
43.1 Used units	1313
43.2 Overview	1313
43.3 Basic usage of the JSON ini file class	1313
43.4 TJSONIniFile	1315
43.4.1 Description	1315
43.4.2 Method overview	1316
43.4.3 Property overview	1316
43.4.4 TJSONIniFile.Create	1316
43.4.5 TJSONIniFile.Destroy	1317
43.4.6 TJSONIniFile.ConvertIni	1317

43.4.7	TJSONIniFile.ReadString	1317
43.4.8	TJSONIniFile.ReadInteger	1317
43.4.9	TJSONIniFile.ReadInt64	1318
43.4.10	TJSONIniFile.ReadBool	1318
43.4.11	TJSONIniFile.ReadDate	1318
43.4.12	TJSONIniFile.ReadDateTime	1318
43.4.13	TJSONIniFile.ReadFloat	1319
43.4.14	TJSONIniFile.ReadTime	1319
43.4.15	TJSONIniFile.WriteString	1319
43.4.16	TJSONIniFile.WriteDate	1319
43.4.17	TJSONIniFile.WriteDateTime	1320
43.4.18	TJSONIniFile.WriteFloat	1320
43.4.19	TJSONIniFile.WriteTime	1320
43.4.20	TJSONIniFile.WriteInteger	1320
43.4.21	TJSONIniFile.WriteInt64	1321
43.4.22	TJSONIniFile.WriteBool	1321
43.4.23	TJSONIniFile.ReadSection	1321
43.4.24	TJSONIniFile.ReadSections	1321
43.4.25	TJSONIniFile.ReadSectionValues	1322
43.4.26	TJSONIniFile.EraseSection	1322
43.4.27	TJSONIniFile.DeleteKey	1322
43.4.28	TJSONIniFile.UpdateFile	1322
43.4.29	TJSONIniFile.Stream	1323
43.4.30	TJSONIniFile.CacheUpdates	1323
44	Reference for unit 'jsonparser'	1324
44.1	Used units	1324
44.2	Overview	1324
44.3	Constants, types and variables	1324
44.3.1	Types	1324
44.4	TJSONParser	1324
44.4.1	Description	1324
44.4.2	Method overview	1325
44.4.3	TJSONParser.Parse	1325
45	Reference for unit 'jsonreader'	1326
45.1	Used units	1326
45.2	Overview	1326
45.3	Using JSON readers with streams and files	1326
45.4	Using TJSONConsumerReader with IJSONConsumer interface	1329
45.5	Using TJSONEventReader for event-based JSON parsing	1332

45.6	Constants, types and variables	1334
45.6.1	Types	1334
45.7	EJSONParser	1335
45.7.1	Description	1335
45.8	IJSONConsumer	1335
45.8.1	Description	1335
45.8.2	Method overview	1335
45.8.3	IJSONConsumer.NullValue	1336
45.8.4	IJSONConsumer.BooleanValue	1336
45.8.5	IJSONConsumer.NumberValue	1336
45.8.6	IJSONConsumer.FloatValue	1336
45.8.7	IJSONConsumer.Int64Value	1337
45.8.8	IJSONConsumer.QWordValue	1337
45.8.9	IJSONConsumer.IntegerValue	1337
45.8.10	IJSONConsumer.StringValue	1337
45.8.11	IJSONConsumer.KeyName	1338
45.8.12	IJSONConsumer.StartObject	1338
45.8.13	IJSONConsumer.EndObject	1338
45.8.14	IJSONConsumer.StartArray	1338
45.8.15	IJSONConsumer.EndArray	1339
45.9	TBaseJSONReader	1339
45.9.1	Description	1339
45.9.2	Method overview	1339
45.9.3	Property overview	1339
45.9.4	TBaseJSONReader.Create	1339
45.9.5	TBaseJSONReader.Destroy	1340
45.9.6	TBaseJSONReader.Options	1340
45.10	TJSONConsumerReader	1340
45.10.1	Description	1340
45.10.2	Method overview	1340
45.10.3	Property overview	1341
45.10.4	TJSONConsumerReader.Execute	1341
45.10.5	TJSONConsumerReader.Consumer	1341
45.11	TJSONEventReader	1341
45.11.1	Description	1341
45.11.2	Method overview	1341
45.11.3	Property overview	1342
45.11.4	TJSONEventReader.Execute	1342
45.11.5	TJSONEventReader.OnNullValue	1342
45.11.6	TJSONEventReader.OnBooleanValue	1342

45.11.7 TJSONEventReader.OnNumberValue	1343
45.11.8 TJSONEventReader.OnFloatValue	1343
45.11.9 TJSONEventReader.OnIntegerValue	1343
45.11.10 TJSONEventReader.OnInt64Value	1344
45.11.11 TJSONEventReader.OnQWordValue	1344
45.11.12 TJSONEventReader.OnStringValue	1344
45.11.13 TJSONEventReader.OnKeyName	1344
45.11.14 TJSONEventReader.OnStartObject	1345
45.11.15 TJSONEventReader.OnEndObject	1345
45.11.16 TJSONEventReader.OnStartArray	1345
45.11.17 TJSONEventReader.OnEndArray	1346
46 Reference for unit 'jsonscanner'	1347
46.1 Used units	1347
46.2 Overview	1347
46.3 Constants, types and variables	1347
46.3.1 Resource strings	1347
46.3.2 Constants	1348
46.3.3 Types	1348
46.4 EScannerError	1350
46.4.1 Description	1350
46.5 TJSONScanner	1350
46.5.1 Description	1350
46.5.2 Method overview	1350
46.5.3 Property overview	1350
46.5.4 TJSONScanner.Create	1350
46.5.5 TJSONScanner.FetchToken	1351
46.5.6 TJSONScanner.CurLine	1351
46.5.7 TJSONScanner.CurRow	1351
46.5.8 TJSONScanner.CurColumn	1352
46.5.9 TJSONScanner.CurToken	1352
46.5.10 TJSONScanner.CurTokenString	1352
46.5.11 TJSONScanner.Strict	1352
46.5.12 TJSONScanner.UseUTF8	1353
46.5.13 TJSONScanner.Options	1353
47 Reference for unit 'libtar'	1354
47.1 Used units	1354
47.2 Overview	1354
47.3 Constants, types and variables	1354
47.3.1 Constants	1354

47.3.2	Types	1355
47.4	Procedures and functions	1357
47.4.1	ClearDirRec	1357
47.4.2	ConvertFilename	1357
47.4.3	FileTimeGMT	1358
47.4.4	PermissionString	1358
47.5	TTarArchive	1358
47.5.1	Description	1358
47.5.2	Method overview	1358
47.5.3	TTarArchive.Create	1358
47.5.4	TTarArchive.Destroy	1359
47.5.5	TTarArchive.Reset	1359
47.5.6	TTarArchive.FindNext	1359
47.5.7	TTarArchive.ReadFile	1360
47.5.8	TTarArchive.GetFilePos	1360
47.5.9	TTarArchive.SetFilePos	1360
47.6	TTarWriter	1360
47.6.1	Description	1360
47.6.2	Method overview	1361
47.6.3	Property overview	1361
47.6.4	TTarWriter.Create	1361
47.6.5	TTarWriter.Destroy	1361
47.6.6	TTarWriter.AddFile	1362
47.6.7	TTarWriter.AddStream	1362
47.6.8	TTarWriter.AddString	1362
47.6.9	TTarWriter.AddDir	1363
47.6.10	TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink	1363
47.6.11	TTarWriter.AddLink	1363
47.6.12	TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader	1364
47.6.13	TTarWriter.Finalize	1364
47.6.14	TTarWriter.Permissions	1364
47.6.15	TTarWriter.UID	1364
47.6.16	TTarWriter.GID	1365
47.6.17	TTarWriter.UserName	1365
47.6.18	TTarWriter.GroupName	1365
47.6.19	TTarWriter.Mode	1365
47.6.20	TTarWriter.Magic	1366
48	Reference for unit 'MaskUtils'	1367
48.1	Used units	1367

48.2	Overview	1367
48.3	Constants, types and variables	1367
48.3.1	Types	1367
48.4	Procedures and functions	1369
48.4.1	FormatMaskInput	1369
48.4.2	FormatMaskText	1370
48.4.3	MaskDoFormatText	1370
48.5	TMaskUtils	1370
48.5.1	Description	1370
48.5.2	Method overview	1370
48.5.3	Property overview	1370
48.5.4	TMaskUtils.ValidateInput	1371
48.5.5	TMaskUtils.TryValidateInput	1371
48.5.6	TMaskUtils.Mask	1371
48.5.7	TMaskUtils.Value	1371
48.5.8	TMaskUtils.InputMask	1372
49	Reference for unit 'memds'	1373
49.1	Used units	1373
49.2	Overview	1373
49.3	Constants, types and variables	1373
49.3.1	Constants	1373
49.4	MDSError	1374
49.4.1	Description	1374
49.5	TMemDataset	1375
49.5.1	Description	1375
49.5.2	Method overview	1376
49.5.3	Property overview	1377
49.5.4	TMemDataset.Create	1377
49.5.5	TMemDataset.Destroy	1377
49.5.6	TMemDataset.BookmarkValid	1378
49.5.7	TMemDataset.CompareBookmarks	1378
49.5.8	TMemDataset.CreateBlobStream	1378
49.5.9	TMemDataset.Locate	1379
49.5.10	TMemDataset.Lookup	1379
49.5.11	TMemDataset.CreateTable	1379
49.5.12	TMemDataset.DataSize	1380
49.5.13	TMemDataset.Clear	1380
49.5.14	TMemDataset.SaveToFile	1380
49.5.15	TMemDataset.SaveToStream	1381

49.5.16 TMemDataset.LoadFromStream	1381
49.5.17 TMemDataset.LoadFromFile	1381
49.5.18 TMemDataset.CopyFromDataset	1382
49.5.19 TMemDataset.FileModified	1383
49.5.20 TMemDataset.Filter	1383
49.5.21 TMemDataset.FileName	1383
49.5.22 TMemDataset.Filtered	1384
49.5.23 TMemDataset.Active	1384
49.5.24 TMemDataset.FieldDefs	1384
49.5.25 TMemDataset.BeforeOpen	1384
49.5.26 TMemDataset.AfterOpen	1384
49.5.27 TMemDataset.BeforeClose	1385
49.5.28 TMemDataset.AfterClose	1385
49.5.29 TMemDataset.BeforeInsert	1385
49.5.30 TMemDataset.AfterInsert	1385
49.5.31 TMemDataset.BeforeEdit	1385
49.5.32 TMemDataset.AfterEdit	1385
49.5.33 TMemDataset.BeforePost	1386
49.5.34 TMemDataset.AfterPost	1386
49.5.35 TMemDataset.BeforeCancel	1386
49.5.36 TMemDataset.AfterCancel	1386
49.5.37 TMemDataset.BeforeDelete	1386
49.5.38 TMemDataset.AfterDelete	1386
49.5.39 TMemDataset.BeforeScroll	1387
49.5.40 TMemDataset.AfterScroll	1387
49.5.41 TMemDataset.OnDeleteError	1387
49.5.42 TMemDataset.OnEditError	1387
49.5.43 TMemDataset.OnNewRecord	1387
49.5.44 TMemDataset.OnPostError	1388
49.5.45 TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord	1388
50 Reference for unit 'MSSQLConn'	1389
50.1 Used units	1389
50.2 Overview	1389
50.3 Constants, types and variables	1389
50.3.1 Variables	1389
50.4 EMSSQLDatabaseError	1389
50.4.1 Description	1389
50.4.2 Property overview	1390
50.4.3 EMSSQLDatabaseError.DBErrorCode	1390

50.5	TMSSQLConnection	1390
50.5.1	Description	1390
50.5.2	Method overview	1391
50.5.3	Property overview	1391
50.5.4	TMSSQLConnection.Create	1391
50.5.5	TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	1391
50.5.6	TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB	1391
50.5.7	TMSSQLConnection.DropDB	1392
50.5.8	TMSSQLConnection.Password	1392
50.5.9	TMSSQLConnection.Transaction	1392
50.5.10	TMSSQLConnection.UserName	1392
50.5.11	TMSSQLConnection.CharSet	1393
50.5.12	TMSSQLConnection.HostName	1393
50.5.13	TMSSQLConnection.Connected	1393
50.5.14	TMSSQLConnection.Role	1393
50.5.15	TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName	1394
50.5.16	TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection	1394
50.5.17	TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt	1394
50.5.18	TMSSQLConnection.Params	1394
50.5.19	TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin	1395
50.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef	1395
50.6.1	Description	1395
50.6.2	Method overview	1395
50.6.3	TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName	1395
50.6.4	TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	1395
50.6.5	TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description	1396
50.6.6	TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	1396
50.6.7	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction	1396
50.6.8	TMSSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	1396
50.6.9	TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	1396
50.7	TSybaseConnection	1397
50.7.1	Description	1397
50.7.2	Method overview	1397
50.7.3	TSybaseConnection.Create	1397
50.8	TSybaseConnectionDef	1397
50.8.1	Description	1397
50.8.2	Method overview	1397
50.8.3	TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName	1397
50.8.4	TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	1398
50.8.5	TSybaseConnectionDef.Description	1398

51 Reference for unit 'nullstream'	1399
51.1 Used units	1399
51.2 Overview	1399
51.3 ENullStreamError	1399
51.3.1 Description	1399
51.4 TNullStream	1399
51.4.1 Description	1399
51.4.2 Method overview	1400
51.4.3 TNullStream.Read	1400
51.4.4 TNullStream.Write	1400
51.4.5 TNullStream.Seek	1400
51.4.6 TNullStream.Create	1401
52 Reference for unit 'pascodegen'	1402
52.1 Used units	1402
52.2 Overview	1402
52.3 Constants, types and variables	1402
52.3.1 Types	1402
52.4 TPascalCodeGenerator	1403
52.4.1 Description	1403
52.4.2 Method overview	1404
52.4.3 Property overview	1404
52.4.4 TPascalCodeGenerator.Create	1404
52.4.5 TPascalCodeGenerator.Destroy	1405
52.4.6 TPascalCodeGenerator.EnsureSection	1405
52.4.7 TPascalCodeGenerator.PushSection	1405
52.4.8 TPascalCodeGenerator.PopSection	1405
52.4.9 TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader	1406
52.4.10 TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateUnitClause	1406
52.4.11 TPascalCodeGenerator.Indent	1406
52.4.12 TPascalCodeGenerator.Undent	1406
52.4.13 TPascalCodeGenerator.IsKeyWord	1407
52.4.14 TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord	1407
52.4.15 TPascalCodeGenerator.MakePascalString	1407
52.4.16 TPascalCodeGenerator.PrettyPrint	1407
52.4.17 TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn	1408
52.4.18 TPascalCodeGenerator.Comment	1408
52.4.19 TPascalCodeGenerator.ClassHeader	1408
52.4.20 TPascalCodeGenerator.SimpleMethodBody	1408
52.4.21 TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToStream	1409

52.4.22 TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToFile	1409
52.4.23 TPascalCodeGenerator.Source	1409
52.4.24 TPascalCodeGenerator.CurrentSection	1409
52.4.25 TPascalCodeGenerator.OutputUnitName	1410
52.4.26 TPascalCodeGenerator.ExtraUnits	1410
52.4.27 TPascalCodeGenerator.LicenseText	1410
52.4.28 TPascalCodeGenerator.Switches	1410
52.4.29 TPascalCodeGenerator.OnLog	1411
52.4.30 TPascalCodeGenerator.AddTimeStamp	1411
52.4.31 TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordSuffix	1411
52.4.32 TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordPrefix	1411
53 Reference for unit 'Pipes'	1412
53.1 Used units	1412
53.2 Overview	1412
53.3 Constants, types and variables	1412
53.3.1 Constants	1412
53.4 Procedures and functions	1412
53.4.1 CreatePipeHandles	1412
53.4.2 CreatePipeStreams	1413
53.5 EPipeCreation	1413
53.5.1 Description	1413
53.6 EPipeError	1413
53.6.1 Description	1413
53.7 EPipeSeek	1413
53.7.1 Description	1413
53.8 TInputPipeStream	1414
53.8.1 Description	1414
53.8.2 Method overview	1414
53.8.3 Property overview	1414
53.8.4 TInputPipeStream.Destroy	1414
53.8.5 TInputPipeStream.Write	1414
53.8.6 TInputPipeStream.Seek	1415
53.8.7 TInputPipeStream.Read	1415
53.8.8 TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable	1415
53.9 TOutputPipeStream	1416
53.9.1 Description	1416
53.9.2 Method overview	1416
53.9.3 Property overview	1416
53.9.4 TOutputPipeStream.Destroy	1416

53.9.5	TOutputPipeStream.Seek	1416
53.9.6	TOutputPipeStream.Read	1416
53.9.7	TOutputPipeStream.DontClose	1417
54	Reference for unit 'pooledmm'	1418
54.1	Used units	1418
54.2	Overview	1418
54.3	Constants, types and variables	1418
54.3.1	Types	1418
54.4	TPooledMemManagerItem	1418
54.5	TNonFreePooledMemManager	1419
54.5.1	Description	1419
54.5.2	Method overview	1419
54.5.3	Property overview	1419
54.5.4	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear	1419
54.5.5	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create	1419
54.5.6	TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy	1420
54.5.7	TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem	1420
54.5.8	TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems	1420
54.5.9	TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize	1420
54.6	TPooledMemManager	1421
54.6.1	Description	1421
54.6.2	Method overview	1421
54.6.3	Property overview	1421
54.6.4	TPooledMemManager.Clear	1421
54.6.5	TPooledMemManager.Create	1421
54.6.6	TPooledMemManager.Destroy	1422
54.6.7	TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount	1422
54.6.8	TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio	1422
54.6.9	TPooledMemManager.Count	1422
54.6.10	TPooledMemManager.FreeCount	1423
54.6.11	TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount	1423
54.6.12	TPooledMemManager.FreedCount	1423
55	Reference for unit 'process'	1424
55.1	Used units	1424
55.2	Overview	1424
55.3	Constants, types and variables	1424
55.3.1	Types	1424
55.3.2	Variables	1428
55.4	Procedures and functions	1428

55.4.1	CommandToList	1428
55.4.2	DetectXTerm	1428
55.4.3	RunCommand	1429
55.4.4	RunCommandIndir	1429
55.5	EProcess	1430
55.5.1	Description	1430
55.6	TProcess	1430
55.6.1	Description	1430
55.6.2	Method overview	1431
55.6.3	Property overview	1432
55.6.4	TProcess.Create	1433
55.6.5	TProcess.Destroy	1433
55.6.6	TProcess.Execute	1433
55.6.7	TProcess.CloseInput	1434
55.6.8	TProcess.CloseOutput	1434
55.6.9	TProcess.CloseStderr	1434
55.6.10	TProcess.Resume	1434
55.6.11	TProcess.Suspend	1435
55.6.12	TProcess.Terminate	1435
55.6.13	TProcess.WaitOnExit	1435
55.6.14	TProcess.ReadInputStream	1436
55.6.15	TProcess.RunCommandLoop	1436
55.6.16	TProcess.WindowRect	1436
55.6.17	TProcess.Handle	1437
55.6.18	TProcess.ProcessHandle	1437
55.6.19	TProcess.ThreadHandle	1437
55.6.20	TProcess.ProcessID	1437
55.6.21	TProcess.ThreadID	1438
55.6.22	TProcess.Input	1438
55.6.23	TProcess.Output	1438
55.6.24	TProcess.Stderr	1439
55.6.25	TProcess.ExitStatus	1439
55.6.26	TProcess.ExitCode	1440
55.6.27	TProcess.InheritHandles	1440
55.6.28	TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent	1440
55.6.29	TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime	1440
55.6.30	TProcess.OnForkEvent	1441
55.6.31	TProcess.PipeBufferSize	1441
55.6.32	TProcess.Active	1441
55.6.33	TProcess.ApplicationName	1441

55.6.34 TProcess.CommandLine	1442
55.6.35 TProcess.Executable	1442
55.6.36 TProcess.Parameters	1443
55.6.37 TProcess.ConsoleTitle	1443
55.6.38 TProcess.CurrentDirectory	1444
55.6.39 TProcess.Desktop	1444
55.6.40 TProcess.Environment	1444
55.6.41 TProcess.Options	1445
55.6.42 TProcess.Priority	1445
55.6.43 TProcess.StartupOptions	1446
55.6.44 TProcess.Running	1446
55.6.45 TProcess.ShowWindow	1447
55.6.46 TProcess.WindowColumns	1447
55.6.47 TProcess.WindowHeight	1447
55.6.48 TProcess.WindowLeft	1448
55.6.49 TProcess.WindowRows	1448
55.6.50 TProcess.WindowTop	1448
55.6.51 TProcess.WindowWidth	1449
55.6.52 TProcess.FillAttribute	1449
55.6.53 TProcess.XTermProgram	1449
56 Reference for unit 'RttiUtils'	1450
56.1 Used units	1450
56.2 Overview	1450
56.3 Constants, types and variables	1450
56.3.1 Constants	1450
56.3.2 Types	1450
56.3.3 Variables	1451
56.4 Procedures and functions	1452
56.4.1 CreateStoredItem	1452
56.4.2 ParseStoredItem	1452
56.4.3 UpdateStoredList	1452
56.5 TPropInfoList	1453
56.5.1 Description	1453
56.5.2 Method overview	1453
56.5.3 Property overview	1453
56.5.4 TPropInfoList.Create	1453
56.5.5 TPropInfoList.Destroy	1453
56.5.6 TPropInfoList.Contains	1454
56.5.7 TPropInfoList.Find	1454

56.5.8	TPropInfoList.Delete	1454
56.5.9	TPropInfoList.Intersect	1454
56.5.10	TPropInfoList.Count	1455
56.5.11	TPropInfoList.Items	1455
56.6	TPropsStorage	1455
56.6.1	Description	1455
56.6.2	Method overview	1455
56.6.3	Property overview	1456
56.6.4	TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty	1456
56.6.5	TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty	1456
56.6.6	TPropsStorage.StoreProperties	1456
56.6.7	TPropsStorage.LoadProperties	1457
56.6.8	TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps	1457
56.6.9	TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps	1457
56.6.10	TPropsStorage.Options	1458
56.6.11	TPropsStorage.AObject	1458
56.6.12	TPropsStorage.Prefix	1459
56.6.13	TPropsStorage.Section	1459
56.6.14	TPropsStorage.OnReadString	1459
56.6.15	TPropsStorage.OnWriteString	1459
56.6.16	TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection	1460
57	Reference for unit 'simpleipc'	1461
57.1	Used units	1461
57.2	Overview	1461
57.3	Constants, types and variables	1462
57.3.1	Resource strings	1462
57.3.2	Constants	1462
57.3.3	Types	1462
57.3.4	Variables	1463
57.4	TMsgHeader	1464
57.5	EIPCErrors	1464
57.5.1	Description	1464
57.6	TIPCCClientComm	1464
57.6.1	Description	1464
57.6.2	Method overview	1465
57.6.3	Property overview	1465
57.6.4	TIPCCClientComm.Create	1465
57.6.5	TIPCCClientComm.Connect	1465
57.6.6	TIPCCClientComm.Disconnect	1465

57.6.7	TIPCClientComm.ServerRunning	1466
57.6.8	TIPCClientComm.SendMessage	1466
57.6.9	TIPCClientComm.Owner	1466
57.7	TIPCServerComm	1467
57.7.1	Description	1467
57.7.2	Method overview	1467
57.7.3	Property overview	1467
57.7.4	TIPCServerComm.Create	1467
57.7.5	TIPCServerComm.StartServer	1467
57.7.6	TIPCServerComm.StopServer	1468
57.7.7	TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage	1468
57.7.8	TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage	1468
57.7.9	TIPCServerComm.Owner	1469
57.7.10	TIPCServerComm.InstanceID	1469
57.8	TIPCServerMsg	1469
57.8.1	Description	1469
57.8.2	Method overview	1469
57.8.3	Property overview	1469
57.8.4	TIPCServerMsg.Create	1470
57.8.5	TIPCServerMsg.Destroy	1470
57.8.6	TIPCServerMsg.Stream	1470
57.8.7	TIPCServerMsg.MsgType	1470
57.8.8	TIPCServerMsg.OwnsStream	1471
57.8.9	TIPCServerMsg.StringMessage	1471
57.9	TIPCServerMsgQueue	1471
57.9.1	Description	1471
57.9.2	Method overview	1471
57.9.3	Property overview	1471
57.9.4	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Create	1472
57.9.5	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Destroy	1472
57.9.6	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Clear	1472
57.9.7	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Push	1472
57.9.8	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Pop	1473
57.9.9	TIPCServerMsgQueue.Count	1473
57.9.10	TIPCServerMsgQueue.MaxCount	1473
57.9.11	TIPCServerMsgQueue.MaxAction	1473
57.10	TSimpleIPC	1474
57.10.1	Description	1474
57.10.2	Property overview	1474
57.10.3	TSimpleIPC.Active	1474

57.10.4 TSimpleIPC.ServerID	1474
57.11 TSimpleIPCCClient	1475
57.11.1 Description	1475
57.11.2 Method overview	1475
57.11.3 Property overview	1475
57.11.4 TSimpleIPCCClient.Create	1475
57.11.5 TSimpleIPCCClient.Destroy	1475
57.11.6 TSimpleIPCCClient.Connect	1476
57.11.7 TSimpleIPCCClient.Disconnect	1476
57.11.8 TSimpleIPCCClient.ServerRunning	1476
57.11.9 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendMessage	1477
57.11.10 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendStringMessage	1477
57.11.11 TSimpleIPCCClient.SendStringMessageFmt	1477
57.11.12 TSimpleIPCCClient.ServerInstance	1477
57.12 TSimpleIPCServer	1478
57.12.1 Description	1478
57.12.2 Method overview	1478
57.12.3 Property overview	1478
57.12.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create	1479
57.12.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy	1479
57.12.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer	1479
57.12.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer	1480
57.12.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage	1480
57.12.9 TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage	1480
57.12.10 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData	1480
57.12.11 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage	1481
57.12.12 TSimpleIPCServer.Message	1481
57.12.13 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType	1481
57.12.14 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData	1481
57.12.15 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID	1482
57.12.16 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting	1482
57.12.17 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError	1482
57.12.18 TSimpleIPCServer.Global	1482
57.12.19 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage	1483
57.12.20 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued	1483
57.12.21 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError	1483
57.12.22 TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError	1483
57.12.23 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue	1484
57.12.24 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxAction	1484
57.12.25 TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded	1484

57.12.26	SimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout	1485
57.12.27	SimpleIPCServer.SynchronizeEvents	1485
58	Reference for unit 'singleinstance'	1486
58.1	Used units	1486
58.2	Overview	1486
58.3	Constants, types and variables	1486
58.3.1	Types	1486
58.3.2	Variables	1487
58.4	ESingleInstance	1487
58.4.1	Description	1487
58.5	TBaseSingleInstance	1487
58.5.1	Description	1487
58.5.2	Method overview	1488
58.5.3	Property overview	1488
58.5.4	TBaseSingleInstance.Create	1488
58.5.5	TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy	1488
58.5.6	TBaseSingleInstance.Start	1488
58.5.7	TBaseSingleInstance.Stop	1489
58.5.8	TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages	1489
58.5.9	TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams	1489
58.5.10	TBaseSingleInstance.TimeOutMessages	1490
58.5.11	TBaseSingleInstance.TimeOutWaitForInstances	1490
58.5.12	TBaseSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedParams	1490
58.5.13	TBaseSingleInstance.StartResult	1490
58.5.14	TBaseSingleInstance.IsServer	1491
58.5.15	TBaseSingleInstance.IsClient	1491
59	Reference for unit 'SQLDB'	1492
59.1	Used units	1492
59.2	Overview	1492
59.3	Using SQLDB to access databases.	1493
59.4	Using the universal TSQLConnector type.	1495
59.5	Retrieving Schema Information.	1496
59.6	Automatic generation of update SQL statements.	1496
59.7	Using parameters.	1497
59.8	Constants, types and variables	1498
59.8.1	Constants	1498
59.8.2	Types	1502
59.8.3	Variables	1506
59.9	Procedures and functions	1506

59.9.1	GetConnectionDef	1506
59.9.2	GetConnectionList	1506
59.9.3	RegisterConnection	1506
59.9.4	UnRegisterConnection	1507
59.10	TSQLStatementInfo	1507
59.11	ESQLDatabaseError	1507
59.11.1	Description	1507
59.11.2	Method overview	1508
59.11.3	ESQLDatabaseError.CreateFmt	1508
59.12	TConnectionDef	1508
59.12.1	Description	1508
59.12.2	Method overview	1508
59.12.3	TConnectionDef.TypeName	1508
59.12.4	TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass	1509
59.12.5	TConnectionDef.Description	1509
59.12.6	TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName	1509
59.12.7	TConnectionDef.LoadFunction	1510
59.12.8	TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction	1510
59.12.9	TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName	1510
59.12.10	TConnectionDef.ApplyParams	1510
59.13	TCustomSQLQuery	1511
59.13.1	Description	1511
59.13.2	Method overview	1511
59.13.3	Property overview	1511
59.13.4	TCustomSQLQuery.Create	1511
59.13.5	TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy	1512
59.13.6	TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare	1512
59.13.7	TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare	1512
59.13.8	TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL	1513
59.13.9	TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo	1513
59.13.10	TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected	1513
59.13.11	TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName	1514
59.13.12	TCustomSQLQuery.MacroByName	1514
59.13.13	TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates	1514
59.13.14	TCustomSQLQuery.Post	1515
59.13.15	TCustomSQLQuery.Delete	1515
59.13.16	TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared	1515
59.13.17	TCustomSQLQuery.SQLConnection	1515
59.13.18	TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction	1516
59.14	TCustomSQLStatement	1516

59.14.1 Description	1516
59.14.2 Method overview	1516
59.14.3 Property overview	1516
59.14.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Create	1517
59.14.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy	1517
59.14.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare	1517
59.14.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute	1517
59.14.8 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare	1518
59.14.9 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName	1518
59.14.10 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected	1518
59.14.11 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared	1519
59.15 TServerIndexDefs	1519
59.15.1 Description	1519
59.15.2 Method overview	1519
59.15.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create	1519
59.15.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update	1519
59.16 TSQLConnection	1520
59.16.1 Description	1520
59.16.2 Method overview	1520
59.16.3 Property overview	1521
59.16.4 TSQLConnection.Create	1521
59.16.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy	1521
59.16.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction	1522
59.16.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction	1522
59.16.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect	1522
59.16.9 TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames	1523
59.16.10 TSQLConnection.HasTable	1523
59.16.11 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames	1523
59.16.12 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames	1523
59.16.13 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames	1524
59.16.14 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames	1524
59.16.15 TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames	1524
59.16.16 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo	1524
59.16.17 TSQLConnection.GetStatementInfo	1525
59.16.18 TSQLConnection.CreateDB	1525
59.16.19 TSQLConnection.DropDB	1525
59.16.20 TSQLConnection.GetNextValue	1525
59.16.21 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions	1526
59.16.22 TSQLConnection.Handle	1526
59.16.23 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars	1526

59.16.24	SqlConnection.Password	1527
59.16.25	SqlConnection.Transaction	1527
59.16.26	SqlConnection.UserName	1527
59.16.27	SqlConnection.CharSet	1528
59.16.28	SqlConnection.HostName	1528
59.16.29	SqlConnection.OnLog	1528
59.16.30	SqlConnection.LogEvents	1529
59.16.31	SqlConnection.Options	1529
59.16.32	SqlConnection.Role	1529
59.16.33	SqlConnection.Connected	1530
59.16.34	SqlConnection.DatabaseName	1530
59.16.35	SqlConnection.KeepConnection	1530
59.16.36	SqlConnection.LoginPrompt	1531
59.16.37	SqlConnection.Params	1531
59.16.38	SqlConnection.OnLogin	1531
59.17	TSQLConnector	1531
59.17.1	Description	1531
59.17.2	Property overview	1532
59.17.3	TSQLConnector.ConnectorType	1532
59.17.4	TSQLConnector.Port	1532
59.18	TSQLCursor	1532
59.18.1	Description	1532
59.19	TSQLDBFieldDef	1533
59.19.1	Description	1533
59.19.2	Property overview	1533
59.19.3	TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData	1533
59.20	TSQLDBFieldDefs	1533
59.20.1	Description	1533
59.21	TSQLDBParam	1533
59.21.1	Description	1533
59.21.2	Property overview	1533
59.21.3	TSQLDBParam.FieldDef	1534
59.21.4	TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData	1534
59.22	TSQLDBParams	1534
59.22.1	Description	1534
59.23	TSQLHandle	1534
59.23.1	Description	1534
59.24	TSQLQuery	1535
59.24.1	Description	1535
59.24.2	Property overview	1537

59.24.3 TSQLQuery.SchemaType	1538
59.24.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType	1538
59.24.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount	1538
59.24.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs	1538
59.24.7 TSQLQuery.Active	1539
59.24.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields	1539
59.24.9 TSQLQuery.Filter	1539
59.24.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered	1539
59.24.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel	1539
59.24.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose	1539
59.24.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete	1539
59.24.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit	1540
59.24.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert	1540
59.24.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen	1540
59.24.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost	1540
59.24.18 TSQLQuery.AfterRefresh	1540
59.24.19 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll	1540
59.24.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel	1540
59.24.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose	1541
59.24.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete	1541
59.24.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit	1541
59.24.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert	1541
59.24.25 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen	1541
59.24.26 TSQLQuery.BeforePost	1541
59.24.27 TSQLQuery.BeforeRefresh	1541
59.24.28 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll	1542
59.24.29 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields	1542
59.24.30 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError	1542
59.24.31 TSQLQuery.OnEditError	1542
59.24.32 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord	1542
59.24.33 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord	1542
59.24.34 TSQLQuery.OnPostError	1542
59.24.35 TSQLQuery.Database	1543
59.24.36 TSQLQuery.Transaction	1543
59.24.37 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly	1543
59.24.38 TSQLQuery.SQL	1543
59.24.39 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL	1544
59.24.40 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL	1544
59.24.41 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL	1545
59.24.42 TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL	1545

59.24.43	TSQLQuery.IndexDefs	1545
59.24.44	TSQLQuery.Options	1546
59.24.45	TSQLQuery.Params	1546
59.24.46	TSQLQuery.ParamCheck	1547
59.24.47	TSQLQuery.Macros	1547
59.24.48	TSQLQuery.MacroCheck	1547
59.24.49	TSQLQuery.MacroChar	1547
59.24.50	TSQLQuery.ParseSQL	1548
59.24.51	TSQLQuery.UpdateMode	1548
59.24.52	TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey	1548
59.24.53	TSQLQuery.DataSource	1549
59.24.54	TSQLQuery.Sequence	1549
59.24.55	TSQLQuery.ServerFilter	1550
59.24.56	TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered	1550
59.24.57	TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs	1550
59.25	TSQLScript	1551
59.25.1	Description	1551
59.25.2	Method overview	1551
59.25.3	Property overview	1551
59.25.4	TSQLScript.Create	1551
59.25.5	TSQLScript.Destroy	1552
59.25.6	TSQLScript.Execute	1552
59.25.7	TSQLScript.ExecuteScript	1552
59.25.8	TSQLScript.Aborted	1552
59.25.9	TSQLScript.Line	1553
59.25.10	TSQLScript.DataBase	1553
59.25.11	TSQLScript.Transaction	1553
59.25.12	TSQLScript.OnDirective	1553
59.25.13	TSQLScript.AutoCommit	1554
59.25.14	TSQLScript.UseDollarString	1554
59.25.15	TSQLScript.DollarStrings	1554
59.25.16	TSQLScript.Directives	1555
59.25.17	TSQLScript.Defines	1555
59.25.18	TSQLScript.Script	1555
59.25.19	TSQLScript.Terminator	1556
59.25.20	TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL	1556
59.25.21	TSQLScript.UseSetTerm	1556
59.25.22	TSQLScript.UseCommit	1557
59.25.23	TSQLScript.UseDefines	1557
59.25.24	TSQLScript.OnException	1558

59.26	TSQLSequence	1558
59.26.1	Description	1558
59.26.2	Method overview	1558
59.26.3	Property overview	1558
59.26.4	TSQLSequence.Create	1558
59.26.5	TSQLSequence.Assign	1559
59.26.6	TSQLSequence.Apply	1559
59.26.7	TSQLSequence.GetNextValue	1559
59.26.8	TSQLSequence.FieldName	1559
59.26.9	TSQLSequence.SequenceName	1560
59.26.10	TSQLSequence.IncrementBy	1560
59.26.11	TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent	1560
59.27	TSQLStatement	1560
59.27.1	Description	1560
59.27.2	Property overview	1561
59.27.3	TSQLStatement.Database	1561
59.27.4	TSQLStatement.DataSource	1561
59.27.5	TSQLStatement.ParamCheck	1561
59.27.6	TSQLStatement.Params	1562
59.27.7	TSQLStatement.MacroCheck	1562
59.27.8	TSQLStatement.Macros	1562
59.27.9	TSQLStatement.ParseSQL	1563
59.27.10	TSQLStatement.SQL	1563
59.27.11	TSQLStatement.Transaction	1563
59.28	TSQLTransaction	1564
59.28.1	Description	1564
59.28.2	Method overview	1564
59.28.3	Property overview	1564
59.28.4	TSQLTransaction.Create	1564
59.28.5	TSQLTransaction.Destroy	1564
59.28.6	TSQLTransaction.Commit	1565
59.28.7	TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining	1565
59.28.8	TSQLTransaction.Rollback	1565
59.28.9	TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining	1566
59.28.10	TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction	1566
59.28.11	TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction	1566
59.28.12	TSQLTransaction.Handle	1567
59.28.13	TSQLTransaction.SQLConnection	1567
59.28.14	TSQLTransaction.Action	1567
59.28.15	TSQLTransaction.Database	1567

59.28.16	TSQLTransaction.Params	1568
59.28.17	TSQLTransaction.Options	1568
60	Reference for unit 'SQLTypes'	1569
60.1	Used units	1569
60.2	Constants, types and variables	1569
60.2.1	Types	1569
60.3	TSqlObjectIdentifier	1571
60.3.1	Description	1571
60.3.2	Method overview	1571
60.3.3	Property overview	1571
60.3.4	TSqlObjectIdentifier.Create	1571
60.3.5	TSqlObjectIdentifier.FullName	1572
60.3.6	TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName	1572
60.3.7	TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName	1572
60.4	TSqlObjectIdentifierList	1572
60.4.1	Method overview	1572
60.4.2	Property overview	1573
60.4.3	TSqlObjectIdentifierList.AddIdentifier	1573
60.4.4	TSqlObjectIdentifierList.Identifiers	1573
61	Reference for unit 'streamcoll'	1574
61.1	Used units	1574
61.2	Overview	1574
61.3	Procedures and functions	1574
61.3.1	ColReadBoolean	1574
61.3.2	ColReadCurrency	1575
61.3.3	ColReadDateTime	1575
61.3.4	ColReadFloat	1575
61.3.5	ColReadInteger	1575
61.3.6	ColReadString	1576
61.3.7	ColWriteBoolean	1576
61.3.8	ColWriteCurrency	1576
61.3.9	ColWriteDateTime	1576
61.3.10	ColWriteFloat	1577
61.3.11	ColWriteInteger	1577
61.3.12	ColWriteString	1577
61.4	EStreamColl	1577
61.4.1	Description	1577
61.5	TStreamCollection	1577
61.5.1	Description	1577

61.5.2	Method overview	1578
61.5.3	Property overview	1578
61.5.4	TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream	1578
61.5.5	TStreamCollection.SaveToStream	1578
61.5.6	TStreamCollection.Streaming	1578
61.6	TStreamCollectionItem	1579
61.6.1	Description	1579
62	Reference for unit 'streamex'	1580
62.1	Used units	1580
62.2	Overview	1580
62.3	Constants, types and variables	1580
62.3.1	Constants	1580
62.4	TBidirBinaryObjectReader	1581
62.4.1	Description	1581
62.4.2	Property overview	1581
62.4.3	TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position	1581
62.5	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter	1581
62.5.1	Description	1581
62.5.2	Property overview	1581
62.5.3	TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position	1581
62.6	TDelphiReader	1582
62.6.1	Description	1582
62.6.2	Method overview	1582
62.6.3	Property overview	1582
62.6.4	TDelphiReader.GetDriver	1582
62.6.5	TDelphiReader.ReadStr	1582
62.6.6	TDelphiReader.Read	1583
62.6.7	TDelphiReader.Position	1583
62.7	TDelphiWriter	1583
62.7.1	Description	1583
62.7.2	Method overview	1583
62.7.3	Property overview	1583
62.7.4	TDelphiWriter.GetDriver	1584
62.7.5	TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer	1584
62.7.6	TDelphiWriter.Write	1584
62.7.7	TDelphiWriter.WriteStr	1584
62.7.8	TDelphiWriter.WriteValue	1584
62.7.9	TDelphiWriter.Position	1585
62.8	TFileReader	1585

62.8.1	Description	1585
62.8.2	Method overview	1585
62.8.3	TFileReader.Create	1585
62.8.4	TFileReader.Destroy	1586
62.8.5	TFileReader.Reset	1586
62.8.6	TFileReader.Close	1586
62.8.7	TFileReader.ReadLine	1586
62.9	TStreamHelper	1587
62.9.1	Description	1587
62.9.2	Method overview	1587
62.9.3	TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE	1587
62.9.4	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE	1587
62.9.5	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE	1588
62.9.6	TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE	1588
62.9.7	TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE	1588
62.9.8	TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE	1588
62.9.9	TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE	1589
62.9.10	TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE	1589
62.9.11	TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE	1589
62.9.12	TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE	1589
62.9.13	TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE	1590
62.9.14	TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE	1590
62.9.15	TStreamHelper.ReadSingle	1590
62.9.16	TStreamHelper.ReadDouble	1590
62.9.17	TStreamHelper.WriteSingle	1591
62.9.18	TStreamHelper.WriteDouble	1591
62.10	TStreamReader	1591
62.10.1	Description	1591
62.10.2	Method overview	1591
62.10.3	Property overview	1591
62.10.4	TStreamReader.Create	1592
62.10.5	TStreamReader.Destroy	1592
62.10.6	TStreamReader.Reset	1592
62.10.7	TStreamReader.Close	1593
62.10.8	TStreamReader.ReadLine	1593
62.10.9	TStreamReader.BaseStream	1593
62.10.10	TStreamReader.OwnsStream	1593
62.11	TStreamWriter	1594
62.11.1	Method overview	1594
62.11.2	Property overview	1594

62.11.3 TStreamWriter.Create	1594
62.11.4 TStreamWriter.Destroy	1594
62.11.5 TStreamWriter.Close	1594
62.11.6 TStreamWriter.Flush	1594
62.11.7 TStreamWriter.OwnStream	1595
62.11.8 TStreamWriter.Write	1595
62.11.9 TStreamWriter.WriteLine	1595
62.11.10 TStreamWriter.AutoFlush	1595
62.11.11 TStreamWriter.NewLine	1596
62.11.12 TStreamWriter.Encoding	1596
62.11.13 TStreamWriter.BaseStream	1596
62.12 TStringReader	1596
62.12.1 Description	1596
62.12.2 Method overview	1596
62.12.3 TStringReader.Create	1596
62.12.4 TStringReader.Destroy	1597
62.12.5 TStringReader.Reset	1597
62.12.6 TStringReader.Close	1597
62.12.7 TStringReader.ReadLine	1597
62.13 TStringWriter	1598
62.13.1 Method overview	1598
62.13.2 TStringWriter.Create	1598
62.13.3 TStringWriter.Destroy	1598
62.13.4 TStringWriter.Close	1598
62.13.5 TStringWriter.Flush	1598
62.13.6 TStringWriter.Write	1598
62.13.7 TStringWriter.WriteLine	1599
62.13.8 TStringWriter.ToString	1599
62.14 TTextReader	1599
62.14.1 Description	1599
62.14.2 Method overview	1599
62.14.3 Property overview	1600
62.14.4 TTextReader.Create	1600
62.14.5 TTextReader.Reset	1600
62.14.6 TTextReader.Close	1600
62.14.7 TTextReader.ReadLine	1600
62.14.8 TTextReader.Eof	1601
62.14.9 TTextReader.EndOfStream	1601
62.15 TTextWriter	1601
62.15.1 Method overview	1601

62.15.2 TTextWriter.Close	1601
62.15.3 TTextWriter.Flush	1601
62.15.4 TTextWriter.Write	1601
62.15.5 TTextWriter.WriteLine	1602
62.16 TWindowedStream	1602
62.16.1 Description	1602
62.16.2 Method overview	1603
62.16.3 TWindowedStream.Create	1603
62.16.4 TWindowedStream.Destroy	1603
62.16.5 TWindowedStream.Read	1603
62.16.6 TWindowedStream.Write	1604
62.16.7 TWindowedStream.Seek	1604
63 Reference for unit 'StreamIO'	1605
63.1 Used units	1605
63.2 Overview	1605
63.3 Procedures and functions	1605
63.3.1 AssignStream	1605
63.3.2 GetStream	1606
64 Reference for unit 'syncobjs'	1607
64.1 Used units	1607
64.2 Overview	1607
64.3 Constants, types and variables	1607
64.3.1 Constants	1607
64.3.2 Types	1607
64.4 ELockException	1608
64.4.1 Description	1608
64.5 ELockRecursionException	1608
64.5.1 Description	1608
64.6 ESyncObjectException	1608
64.6.1 Description	1608
64.7 TCriticalSection	1609
64.7.1 Description	1609
64.7.2 Method overview	1609
64.7.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire	1609
64.7.4 TCriticalSection.Release	1609
64.7.5 TCriticalSection.Enter	1610
64.7.6 TCriticalSection.TryEnter	1610
64.7.7 TCriticalSection.Leave	1610
64.7.8 TCriticalSection.Create	1611

64.7.9	TCriticalSection.Destroy	1611
64.8	TEventObject	1611
64.8.1	Description	1611
64.8.2	Method overview	1611
64.8.3	Property overview	1611
64.8.4	TEventObject.Create	1612
64.8.5	TEventObject.ResetEvent	1612
64.8.6	TEventObject.SetEvent	1612
64.8.7	TEventObject.ManualReset	1612
64.9	THandleObject	1613
64.9.1	Description	1613
64.9.2	Method overview	1613
64.9.3	Property overview	1613
64.9.4	THandleObject.Create	1613
64.9.5	THandleObject.Destroy	1613
64.9.6	THandleObject.WaitFor	1613
64.9.7	THandleObject.Handle	1614
64.9.8	THandleObject.LastError	1614
64.10	TSimpleEvent	1614
64.10.1	Description	1614
64.10.2	Method overview	1614
64.10.3	TSimpleEvent.Create	1614
64.11	TSynchroObject	1615
64.11.1	Description	1615
64.11.2	Method overview	1615
64.11.3	TSynchroObject.Acquire	1615
64.11.4	TSynchroObject.Release	1615
65	Reference for unit 'URIParser'	1616
65.1	Used units	1616
65.2	Overview	1616
65.3	Basic usage of URI parsing functions	1616
65.4	Constants, types and variables	1619
65.4.1	Types	1619
65.5	Procedures and functions	1619
65.5.1	EncodeURI	1619
65.5.2	FilenameToURI	1620
65.5.3	IsAbsoluteURI	1620
65.5.4	ParseURI	1620
65.5.5	ResolveRelativeURI	1621

65.5.6	URIToFilename	1621
65.6	TURI	1621
65.6.1	Method overview	1622
65.6.2	TURI.create	1622
65.6.3	TURI.ToString	1622
65.6.4	TURI.URI	1622
65.6.5	TURI.Free	1622
66	Reference for unit 'wformat'	1623
66.1	Used units	1623
66.2	Overview	1623
66.3	Constants, types and variables	1623
66.3.1	Constants	1623
66.3.2	Types	1623
66.4	TFormattingWriter	1624
66.4.1	Description	1624
66.4.2	Method overview	1625
66.4.3	TFormattingWriter.Create	1625
66.4.4	TFormattingWriter.EscapeText	1626
66.4.5	TFormattingWriter.Dump	1626
66.4.6	TFormattingWriter.DumpLn	1626
66.4.7	TFormattingWriter.Write	1626
66.4.8	TFormattingWriter.WriteFmt	1627
66.4.9	TFormattingWriter.DocumentStart	1627
66.4.10	TFormattingWriter.DocumentEnd	1627
66.4.11	TFormattingWriter.Header	1627
66.4.12	TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart	1628
66.4.13	TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd	1628
66.4.14	TFormattingWriter.ParagraphStart	1628
66.4.15	TFormattingWriter.ParagraphEnd	1628
66.4.16	TFormattingWriter.LineBreak	1628
66.4.17	TFormattingWriter.Rule	1629
66.4.18	TFormattingWriter.BoldStart	1629
66.4.19	TFormattingWriter.BoldEnd	1629
66.4.20	TFormattingWriter.ItalicStart	1629
66.4.21	TFormattingWriter.ItalicEnd	1629
66.4.22	TFormattingWriter.UnderlineStart	1630
66.4.23	TFormattingWriter.UnderlineEnd	1630
66.4.24	TFormattingWriter.PreformatStart	1630
66.4.25	TFormattingWriter.PreformatEnd	1630

66.4.26 TFormattingWriter.TableStart	1631
66.4.27 TFormattingWriter.TableEnd	1631
66.4.28 TFormattingWriter.RowStart	1631
66.4.29 TFormattingWriter.RowEnd	1631
66.4.30 TFormattingWriter.RowNext	1632
66.4.31 TFormattingWriter.CellStart	1632
66.4.32 TFormattingWriter.CellEnd	1632
66.4.33 TFormattingWriter.CellNext	1632
66.4.34 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart	1633
66.4.35 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd	1633
66.4.36 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellNext	1633
66.4.37 TFormattingWriter.ListStart	1633
66.4.38 TFormattingWriter.ListEnd	1634
66.4.39 TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart	1634
66.4.40 TFormattingWriter.ListItemEnd	1634
66.4.41 TFormattingWriter.ListItem	1634
66.4.42 TFormattingWriter.DefinitionItem	1635
66.4.43 TFormattingWriter.WriteList	1635
67 Reference for unit 'whtml'	1636
67.1 Used units	1636
67.2 Overview	1636
67.3 Constants, types and variables	1636
67.3.1 Constants	1636
67.4 THTMLWriter	1636
67.4.1 Description	1636
67.4.2 Method overview	1637
67.4.3 THTMLWriter.Create	1638
67.4.4 THTMLWriter.TagStart	1638
67.4.5 THTMLWriter.TagEnd	1638
67.4.6 THTMLWriter.EscapeText	1638
67.4.7 THTMLWriter.DocumentStart	1639
67.4.8 THTMLWriter.DocumentEnd	1639
67.4.9 THTMLWriter.HeaderStart	1639
67.4.10 THTMLWriter.HeaderEnd	1639
67.4.11 THTMLWriter.ParagraphStart	1639
67.4.12 THTMLWriter.ParagraphEnd	1640
67.4.13 THTMLWriter.LineBreak	1640
67.4.14 THTMLWriter.Rule	1640
67.4.15 THTMLWriter.BoldStart	1640

67.4.16 THTMLWriter.BoldEnd	1640
67.4.17 THTMLWriter.ItalicStart	1641
67.4.18 THTMLWriter.ItalicEnd	1641
67.4.19 THTMLWriter.UnderlineStart	1641
67.4.20 THTMLWriter.UnderlineEnd	1641
67.4.21 THTMLWriter.PreformatStart	1641
67.4.22 THTMLWriter.PreformatEnd	1642
67.4.23 THTMLWriter.TableStart	1642
67.4.24 THTMLWriter.TableEnd	1642
67.4.25 THTMLWriter.RowStart	1642
67.4.26 THTMLWriter.RowEnd	1642
67.4.27 THTMLWriter.CellStart	1643
67.4.28 THTMLWriter.CellEnd	1643
67.4.29 THTMLWriter.HeaderCellStart	1643
67.4.30 THTMLWriter.HeaderCellEnd	1643
67.4.31 THTMLWriter.ListStart	1643
67.4.32 THTMLWriter.ListEnd	1644
67.4.33 THTMLWriter.ListItemStart	1644
67.4.34 THTMLWriter.ListItemEnd	1644
67.4.35 THTMLWriter.DefinitionItem	1644
67.4.36 THTMLWriter.FormStart	1645
67.4.37 THTMLWriter.FormEnd	1645
67.4.38 THTMLWriter.EmitInput	1645
67.4.39 THTMLWriter.EmitPasswordInput	1645
67.4.40 THTMLWriter.EmitCheckBox	1646
67.4.41 THTMLWriter.EmitRadioButton	1646
67.4.42 THTMLWriter.EmitArea	1646
67.4.43 THTMLWriter.EmitComboBox	1646
67.4.44 THTMLWriter.EmitButton	1647
67.4.45 THTMLWriter.EmitSubmitButton	1647
67.4.46 THTMLWriter.EmitResetButton	1647
67.4.47 THTMLWriter.EmitHiddenVar	1647
68 Reference for unit 'wtex'	1648
68.1 Used units	1648
68.2 Overview	1648
68.3 Constants, types and variables	1648
68.3.1 Constants	1648
68.4 TTexWriter	1649
68.4.1 Description	1649

68.4.2	Method overview	1649
68.4.3	TTexWriter.ScopeStart	1649
68.4.4	TTexWriter.ScopeEnd	1650
68.4.5	TTexWriter.EnvironmentStart	1650
68.4.6	TTexWriter.EnvironmentEnd	1650
68.4.7	TTexWriter.EscapeText	1650
68.4.8	TTexWriter.DocumentStart	1651
68.4.9	TTexWriter.DocumentEnd	1651
68.4.10	TTexWriter.HeaderStart	1651
68.4.11	TTexWriter.HeaderEnd	1651
68.4.12	TTexWriter.ParagraphEnd	1651
68.4.13	TTexWriter.LineBreak	1652
68.4.14	TTexWriter.Rule	1652
68.4.15	TTexWriter.BoldStart	1652
68.4.16	TTexWriter.BoldEnd	1652
68.4.17	TTexWriter.ItalicStart	1652
68.4.18	TTexWriter.ItalicEnd	1653
68.4.19	TTexWriter.UnderlineStart	1653
68.4.20	TTexWriter.UnderlineEnd	1653
68.4.21	TTexWriter.PreformatStart	1653
68.4.22	TTexWriter.PreformatEnd	1653
68.4.23	TTexWriter.TableStart	1654
68.4.24	TTexWriter.TableEnd	1654
68.4.25	TTexWriter.RowStart	1654
68.4.26	TTexWriter.RowEnd	1654
68.4.27	TTexWriter.CellStart	1654
68.4.28	TTexWriter.HeaderCellStart	1655
68.4.29	TTexWriter.HeaderCellEnd	1655
68.4.30	TTexWriter.ListStart	1655
68.4.31	TTexWriter.ListEnd	1655
68.4.32	TTexWriter.ListItemStart	1656
68.4.33	TTexWriter.DefinitionItem	1656
69	Reference for unit 'Zipper'	1657
69.1	Used units	1657
69.2	Overview	1657
69.3	Constants, types and variables	1657
69.3.1	Constants	1657
69.3.2	Types	1661
69.4	Central_File_Header_Type	1662

69.5 CodeRec	1663
69.6 End_of_Central_Dir_Type	1663
69.7 Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type	1663
69.8 Local_File_Header_Type	1664
69.9 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type	1664
69.10 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type	1664
69.11 Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type	1665
69.12 ZipError	1665
69.12.1 Description	1665
69.13 TCompressor	1665
69.13.1 Description	1665
69.13.2 Method overview	1665
69.13.3 Property overview	1665
69.13.4 TCompressor.Create	1666
69.13.5 TCompressor.Compress	1666
69.13.6 TCompressor.ZipID	1666
69.13.7 TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd	1666
69.13.8 TCompressor.ZipBitFlag	1666
69.13.9 TCompressor.Terminate	1666
69.13.10 TCompressor.BufferSize	1667
69.13.11 TCompressor.OnPercent	1667
69.13.12 TCompressor.OnProgress	1667
69.13.13 TCompressor.Crc32Val	1667
69.13.14 TCompressor.Terminated	1667
69.14 TDeCompressor	1668
69.14.1 Description	1668
69.14.2 Method overview	1668
69.14.3 Property overview	1668
69.14.4 TDeCompressor.Create	1668
69.14.5 TDeCompressor.DeCompress	1668
69.14.6 TDeCompressor.Terminate	1668
69.14.7 TDeCompressor.ZipID	1669
69.14.8 TDeCompressor.BufferSize	1669
69.14.9 TDeCompressor.OnPercent	1669
69.14.10 TDeCompressor.OnProgress	1669
69.14.11 TDeCompressor.OnProgressEx	1669
69.14.12 TDeCompressor.Crc32Val	1669
69.14.13 TDeCompressor.Terminated	1670
69.15 TDeflater	1670
69.15.1 Description	1670

69.15.2 Method overview	1670
69.15.3 Property overview	1670
69.15.4 TDeflater.Create	1670
69.15.5 TDeflater.Compress	1670
69.15.6 TDeflater.ZipID	1671
69.15.7 TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd	1671
69.15.8 TDeflater.ZipBitFlag	1671
69.15.9 TDeflater.CompressionLevel	1671
69.16 TFullZipFileEntries	1672
69.16.1 Description	1672
69.16.2 Property overview	1672
69.16.3 TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries	1672
69.17 TFullZipFileEntry	1672
69.17.1 Description	1672
69.17.2 Property overview	1672
69.17.3 TFullZipFileEntry.BitFlags	1673
69.17.4 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod	1673
69.17.5 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize	1673
69.17.6 TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32	1673
69.18 TInflater	1673
69.18.1 Description	1673
69.18.2 Method overview	1674
69.18.3 TInflater.Create	1674
69.18.4 TInflater.DeCompress	1674
69.18.5 TInflater.ZipID	1674
69.19 TShrinker	1674
69.19.1 Description	1674
69.19.2 Method overview	1674
69.19.3 TShrinker.Create	1675
69.19.4 TShrinker.Destroy	1675
69.19.5 TShrinker.Compress	1675
69.19.6 TShrinker.ZipID	1675
69.19.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd	1675
69.19.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag	1675
69.20 TUnZipper	1676
69.20.1 Description	1676
69.20.2 Method overview	1676
69.20.3 Property overview	1676
69.20.4 TUnZipper.Create	1677
69.20.5 TUnZipper.Destroy	1677

69.20.6 TUnZipper.UnZipOneFile	1677
69.20.7 TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles	1677
69.20.8 TUnZipper.UnZipFile	1678
69.20.9 TUnZipper.UnZipFiles	1678
69.20.10 TUnZipper.Unzip	1678
69.20.11 TUnZipper.Clear	1679
69.20.12 TUnZipper.Examine	1679
69.20.13 TUnZipper.Terminate	1679
69.20.14 TUnZipper.BufferSize	1679
69.20.15 TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream	1679
69.20.16 TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream	1680
69.20.17 TUnZipper.OnCreateStream	1680
69.20.18 TUnZipper.OnDoneStream	1680
69.20.19 TUnZipper.OnPercent	1680
69.20.20 TUnZipper.OnProgress	1680
69.20.21 TUnZipper.OnProgressEx	1681
69.20.22 TUnZipper.OnStartFile	1681
69.20.23 TUnZipper.OnEndFile	1681
69.20.24 TUnZipper.FileName	1681
69.20.25 TUnZipper.OutputPath	1681
69.20.26 TUnZipper.FileComment	1682
69.20.27 TUnZipper.Files	1682
69.20.28 TUnZipper.Entries	1682
69.20.29 TUnZipper.UseUTF8	1682
69.20.30 TUnZipper.Flat	1683
69.20.31 TUnZipper.Terminated	1683
69.21 TZipFileEntries	1683
69.21.1 Description	1683
69.21.2 Method overview	1683
69.21.3 Property overview	1684
69.21.4 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry	1684
69.21.5 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries	1684
69.21.6 TZipFileEntries.Entries	1684
69.22 TZipFileEntry	1685
69.22.1 Description	1685
69.22.2 Method overview	1685
69.22.3 Property overview	1685
69.22.4 TZipFileEntry.Create	1686
69.22.5 TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory	1686
69.22.6 TZipFileEntry.IsLink	1686

69.22.7 TZipFileEntry.Assign	1686
69.22.8 TZipFileEntry.Stream	1686
69.22.9 TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName	1687
69.22.10 TZipFileEntry.UTF8ArchiveFileName	1687
69.22.11 TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName	1687
69.22.12 TZipFileEntry.UTF8DiskFileName	1687
69.22.13 TZipFileEntry.Size	1687
69.22.14 TZipFileEntry.DateTime	1688
69.22.15 TZipFileEntry.OS	1688
69.22.16 TZipFileEntry.Attributes	1688
69.22.17 TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel	1688
69.23 TZipper	1688
69.23.1 Description	1688
69.23.2 Method overview	1689
69.23.3 Property overview	1689
69.23.4 TZipper.Create	1689
69.23.5 TZipper.Destroy	1689
69.23.6 TZipper.ZipAllFiles	1690
69.23.7 TZipper.SaveToFile	1690
69.23.8 TZipper.SaveToStream	1690
69.23.9 TZipper.ZipFile	1691
69.23.10 TZipper.ZipFiles	1691
69.23.11 TZipper.Zip	1691
69.23.12 TZipper.Clear	1692
69.23.13 TZipper.Terminate	1692
69.23.14 TZipper.BufferSize	1692
69.23.15 TZipper.OnPercent	1692
69.23.16 TZipper.OnProgress	1693
69.23.17 TZipper.OnStartFile	1693
69.23.18 TZipper.OnEndFile	1693
69.23.19 TZipper.FileName	1693
69.23.20 TZipper.FileComment	1693
69.23.21 TZipper.Files	1694
69.23.22 TZipper.InMemSize	1694
69.23.23 TZipper.Entries	1694
69.23.24 TZipper.Terminated	1694
69.23.25 TZipper.UseLanguageEncoding	1695
70 Reference for unit 'ZStream'	1696
70.1 Used units	1696

70.2 Overview	1696
70.3 Constants, types and variables	1696
70.3.1 Types	1696
70.4 Ecompressionerror	1697
70.4.1 Description	1697
70.5 Edecompressionerror	1697
70.5.1 Description	1697
70.6 Egzfileerror	1697
70.6.1 Description	1697
70.7 Ezliberror	1697
70.7.1 Description	1697
70.8 Tcompressionstream	1697
70.8.1 Description	1697
70.8.2 Method overview	1698
70.8.3 Property overview	1698
70.8.4 Tcompressionstream.create	1698
70.8.5 Tcompressionstream.destroy	1698
70.8.6 Tcompressionstream.write	1698
70.8.7 Tcompressionstream.flush	1699
70.8.8 Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate	1699
70.8.9 Tcompressionstream.OnProgress	1699
70.9 Tcustomzlibstream	1699
70.9.1 Description	1699
70.9.2 Method overview	1700
70.9.3 Tcustomzlibstream.create	1700
70.9.4 Tcustomzlibstream.destroy	1700
70.10 Tdecompressionstream	1700
70.10.1 Description	1700
70.10.2 Method overview	1700
70.10.3 Property overview	1701
70.10.4 Tdecompressionstream.create	1701
70.10.5 Tdecompressionstream.destroy	1701
70.10.6 Tdecompressionstream.read	1701
70.10.7 Tdecompressionstream.Seek	1702
70.10.8 Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate	1702
70.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress	1702
70.11 TGZFileStream	1703
70.11.1 Description	1703
70.11.2 Method overview	1703
70.11.3 TGZFileStream.create	1703

70.11.4 TGZFileStream.read	1703
70.11.5 TGZFileStream.write	1704
70.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek	1704
70.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy	1704
70.12 TGZipCompressionStream	1704
70.12.1 Method overview	1704
70.12.2 TGZipCompressionStream.Create	1704
70.12.3 TGZipCompressionStream.Destroy	1705
70.12.4 TGZipCompressionStream.Write	1705
70.13 TGZipDecompressionStream	1705
70.13.1 Method overview	1705
70.13.2 TGZipDecompressionStream.Create	1705
70.13.3 TGZipDecompressionStream.Destroy	1705
70.13.4 TGZipDecompressionStream.Read	1705
70.13.5 TGZipDecompressionStream.Seek	1705

About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the FCL (Free Component Library).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

Declaration The exact declaration of the function.

Description What does the procedure exactly do ?

Errors What errors can occur.

See Also Cross references to other related functions/commands.

0.1 Overview

The Free Component Library is a series of units that implement various classes and non-visual components for use with Free Pascal. They are building blocks for non-visual and visual programs, such as designed in Lazarus.

The `TDataSet` descendents have been implemented in a way that makes them compatible to the Delphi implementation of these units. There are other units that have counterparts in Delphi, but most of them are unique to Free Pascal.

Chapter 1

Reference for unit 'AdvancedIPC'

1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'AdvancedIPC'

Name	Page
baseunix	??
Classes	??
singleinstance	1486
System	??
sysutils	??

1.2 Overview

The `AdvancedIPC` unit provides two-way request/response inter-process communication between one server and multiple clients using file-based messaging. The system is non-deterministic - message processing order is not guaranteed. However, `SendRequest` and `PostRequest/PeekResponse` sequences from a single client are processed in correct order.

Because it is file based, it should not be used for intensive messaging, but it is suitable for exchanging small messages at startup, for example to transfer control to another instance. It is implemented using files as this is a common denominator on all platforms.

1.3 Constants, types and variables

1.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrInvalidServerID =  
    'Invalid server ID "%s". Please use only alphanumerical characters and underlines.'
```

The `SErrInvalidServerID` resource string contains the error message displayed when an invalid server ID is specified. Server IDs must contain only alphanumeric characters and underscores.

```
SErrSetGlobalActive =  
    'You cannot change the global property when the server is active.'
```

The `SErrSetGlobalActive` resource string contains the error message displayed when attempting to change the `Global` property while the server is active.

```
SErrSetServerIDActive =
    'You cannot change the server ID when the server is active.'
```

The `SErrSetServerIDActive` resource string contains the error message displayed when attempting to change the `ServerID` property while the server is active.

1.3.2 Constants

```
HEADER_VERSION = 2
```

The `HEADER_VERSION` constant defines the version of the message header format. Currently set to 2. Messages with different header versions cannot be exchanged between clients and servers.

1.3.3 Types

```
TFileHandle = Classes.THandle
```

The `TFileHandle` type is an alias for the platform-specific file handle type from the `Classes` unit. Used internally for file operations in IPC communication.

```
TMessageType = LongInt
```

The `TMessageType` is an alias for `LongInt` used to identify different types of messages in IPC communication. Applications can use different message type values to distinguish between various request and response types.

1.4 TMessageHeader

```
TMessageHeader = packed record
    HeaderVersion : Byte;
    FileLock
    : Byte;
    MsgType : TMessageType;
    MsgLen : Integer;
    MsgVersion
    : Integer;
end
```

The `TMessageHeader` record defines the structure of the message header used in IPC communication. It contains version information, locking state, message type, length, and version compatibility data.

1.5 EICPException

1.5.1 Description

The `EICPException` class represents exceptions that occur during IPC operations. It is raised when invalid server IDs are used or when attempting to change properties while the server is active.

1.6 TIPCBASE

1.6.1 Description

The `TIPCBASE` class provides common functionality for both IPC clients and servers. It handles server identification, global/local communication scope, message versioning, and low-level message operations.

See also: `TIPCCClient` ([158](#)), `TIPCServer` ([161](#))

1.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
157	<code>FindRunningServers</code>	Find all running servers with matching server ID prefix
157	<code>ServerRunning</code>	Check if a server with given ID is running

1.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
158	<code>Global</code>	rw	Communication scope (global or local)
158	<code>MessageVersion</code>	rw	Message version for compatibility checking
158	<code>ServerID</code>	rw	Server identifier for IPC communication

1.6.4 TIPCBASE.FindRunningServers

Synopsis: Find all running servers with matching server ID prefix

Declaration:

```
class procedure FindRunningServers(const aServerIDPrefix: string;
                                   const outServerIDs: TStrings;
                                   const aGlobal: Boolean=False)
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `FindRunningServers` class procedure searches for all currently running IPC servers whose server ID starts with the specified prefix. Results are returned in the `outServerIDs` string list.

See also: `ServerRunning` ([157](#))

1.6.5 TIPCBASE.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if a server with given ID is running

Declaration:

```
class function ServerRunning(const aServerID: string;
                             const aGlobal: Boolean=False) : Boolean
; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `ServerRunning` class function checks whether an IPC server with the specified ID is currently active. Returns `True` if the server is running and accessible.

See also: `FindRunningServers` ([157](#))

1.6.6 TIPCBase.ServerID

Synopsis: Server identifier for IPC communication

Declaration: `Property ServerID : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `ServerID` property specifies the unique identifier for the server. Only alphanumeric characters and underscores are allowed. Clients use this ID to connect to the server.

See also: [Global \(158\)](#)

1.6.7 TIPCBase.Global

Synopsis: Communication scope (global or local)

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `Global` property determines the communication scope. If `True`, processes from different users can communicate. If `False`, only processes from the current user can communicate.

See also: [ServerID \(158\)](#)

1.6.8 TIPCBase.MessageVersion

Synopsis: Message version for compatibility checking

Declaration: `Property MessageVersion : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `MessageVersion` property specifies the message version. Only messages with the same `MessageVersion` can be exchanged between server and client. This ensures compatibility between different versions of applications.

See also: [TMessageHeader \(156\)](#)

1.7 TIPCClient

1.7.1 Description

The `TIPCClient` class provides client-side functionality for inter-process communication. It can send requests to servers and receive responses using either blocking or non-blocking methods.

See also: [TIPCBase \(157\)](#), [TIPCServer \(161\)](#)

1.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
159	Create	Create IPC client instance
160	DeleteRequest	Delete a request from the queue
160	PeekResponse	Retrieve response from server for a request
159	PostRequest	Post request to server without waiting for response
159	SendRequest	Send request to server and wait until processed
160	ServerRunning	Check if the target server is running

1.7.3 TIPCClient.Create

Synopsis: Create IPC client instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Create` constructor initializes a new IPC client instance with default settings.

1.7.4 TIPCClient.PostRequest

Synopsis: Post request to server without waiting for response

Declaration: `function PostRequest(const aMsgType: TMessageType;
const aStream: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: The `PostRequest` function sends a request to the server and returns immediately without waiting for the server to process it. Returns the request ID that can be used to retrieve the response later using `PeekResponse`.

See also: `SendRequest` ([159](#)), `PeekResponse` ([160](#))

1.7.5 TIPCClient.SendRequest

Synopsis: Send request to server and wait until processed

Declaration: `function SendRequest(const aMsgType: TMessageType;
const aStream: TStream; const aTimeout: Integer)
: Boolean
function SendRequest(const aMsgType: TMessageType;
const aStream: TStream; const aTimeout: Integer;
out outRequestID: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `SendRequest` function sends a request to the server and waits until the server has processed it (request file is removed). Returns `True` if the request was processed within the timeout limit.

See also: `PostRequest` ([159](#)), `PeekResponse` ([160](#))

1.7.6 TIPCCClient.PeekResponse

Synopsis: Retrieve response from server for a request

Declaration:

```
function PeekResponse(const aStream: TStream;
                      out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekResponse(const aStream: TStream;
                      out outMsgType: TMessageType;
                      const aTimeOut: Integer) : Boolean; overload
function PeekResponse(const aRequestID: Integer;
                      const aStream: TStream;
                      out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekResponse(const aRequestID: Integer;
                      const aStream: TStream;
                      out outMsgType: TMessageType;
                      const aTimeOut: Integer) : Boolean; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `PeekResponse` function retrieves the server response for a previously sent request. Multiple overloads support immediate checking or waiting with timeout. Can retrieve response for specific request ID or the last request from this client.

See also: [PostRequest \(159\)](#), [SendRequest \(159\)](#)

1.7.7 TIPCCClient.DeleteRequest

Synopsis: Delete a request from the queue

Declaration:

```
function DeleteRequest : Boolean; overload
function DeleteRequest(const aRequestID: Integer) : Boolean; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `DeleteRequest` function removes a request from the server queue. Can delete by request ID or the last request from this client. Returns `True` if the request file existed and was successfully deleted.

See also: [PostRequest \(159\)](#)

1.7.8 TIPCCClient.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the target server is running

Declaration:

```
function ServerRunning : Boolean; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `ServerRunning` function checks whether the server specified by `ServerID` is currently active and available for communication.

See also: [TIPCBase.ServerRunning \(157\)](#)

1.8 TIPCServer

1.8.1 Description

The `TIPCServer` class provides server-side functionality for inter-process communication. It can receive requests from clients, process them, and send back responses. The server must be started to become available for client connections.

See also: `TIPCBase` ([157](#)), `TIPCClient` ([158](#))

1.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
161	<code>Create</code>	Create IPC server instance
164	<code>DeletePendingRequests</code>	Delete all pending requests and responses
162	<code>DeleteRequest</code>	Delete a peeked request
161	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy IPC server instance
163	<code>FindHighestPendingRequestId</code>	Find the highest pending request ID
163	<code>GetPendingRequestCount</code>	Get the number of pending requests
162	<code>PeekRequest</code>	Peek at incoming requests from clients
163	<code>PostResponse</code>	Send response back to client
162	<code>ReadRequest</code>	Read a previously peeked request
163	<code>StartServer</code>	Start the IPC server
164	<code>StopServer</code>	Stop the IPC server

1.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
164	<code>Active</code>	<code>r</code>	Server running state

1.8.4 TIPCServer.Create

Synopsis: Create IPC server instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Create` constructor initializes a new IPC server instance. The server is not active until `StartServer` is called.

See also: `StartServer` ([163](#))

1.8.5 TIPCServer.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy IPC server instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor automatically stops the server if it is active before destroying the instance.

See also: `StopServer` ([164](#))

1.8.6 TIPCServer.PeekRequest

Synopsis: Peek at incoming requests from clients

Declaration:

```
function PeekRequest(const aStream: TStream;
                    out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekRequest(const aStream: TStream; out outRequestID: Integer;
                    out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekRequest(const aStream: TStream; out outRequestID: Integer;
                    out outMsgType: TMessageType;
                    const aTimeOut: Integer) : Boolean; overload
function PeekRequest(out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekRequest(out outRequestID: Integer;
                    out outMsgType: TMessageType) : Boolean; overload
function PeekRequest(out outRequestID: Integer;
                    out outMsgType: TMessageType;
                    const aTimeOut: Integer) : Boolean; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `PeekRequest` function retrieves incoming requests from clients. Multiple overloads support immediate checking or waiting with timeout. Some overloads read the message content directly, others only peek and require `ReadRequest` to get the content.

See also: [ReadRequest \(162\)](#), [PostResponse \(163\)](#)

1.8.7 TIPCServer.ReadRequest

Synopsis: Read a previously peeked request

Declaration:

```
function ReadRequest(const aRequestID: Integer; const aStream: TStream)
                    : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `ReadRequest` function reads the content of a request that was previously peeked using `PeekRequest`. The request must have been peeked but not yet read or deleted.

See also: [PeekRequest \(162\)](#), [DeleteRequest \(162\)](#)

1.8.8 TIPCServer.DeleteRequest

Synopsis: Delete a peeked request

Declaration:

```
function DeleteRequest(const aRequestID: Integer) : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `DeleteRequest` function removes a peeked request from the queue without reading it. Returns `True` if the request existed and was successfully deleted.

See also: [PeekRequest \(162\)](#), [ReadRequest \(162\)](#)

1.8.9 TIPCServer.PostResponse

Synopsis: Send response back to client

Declaration: `procedure PostResponse(const aRequestID: Integer;
const aMsgType: TMessageType;
const aStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `PostResponse` procedure sends a response back to the client for a specific request. The response is identified by the request ID and can be retrieved by the client using `PeekResponse`.

See also: `PeekRequest` ([162](#)), `TIPCClient.PeekResponse` ([160](#))

1.8.10 TIPCServer.FindHighestPendingRequestId

Synopsis: Find the highest pending request ID

Declaration: `function FindHighestPendingRequestId : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: The `FindHighestPendingRequestId` function returns the highest request ID among all pending requests in the server queue. Returns -1 if no pending requests exist.

See also: `GetPendingRequestCount` ([163](#))

1.8.11 TIPCServer.GetPendingRequestCount

Synopsis: Get the number of pending requests

Declaration: `function GetPendingRequestCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetPendingRequestCount` function returns the total number of requests currently waiting in the server queue.

See also: `FindHighestPendingRequestId` ([163](#))

1.8.12 TIPCServer.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the IPC server

Declaration: `function StartServer(const aDeletePendingRequests: Boolean=True)
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `StartServer` function activates the IPC server, making it available for client connections. Returns `True` if the server was successfully started or was already running. Optionally deletes any pending requests from previous sessions.

See also: `StopServer` ([164](#)), `Active` ([164](#))

1.8.13 TIPCServer.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the IPC server

Declaration: `function StopServer(const aDeletePendingRequests: Boolean=True)
: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `StopServer` function deactivates the IPC server, making it unavailable for client connections. Returns `True` if the server was successfully stopped. Optionally deletes any remaining pending requests.

See also: `StartServer` ([163](#)), `Active` ([164](#))

1.8.14 TIPCServer.DeletePendingRequests

Synopsis: Delete all pending requests and responses

Declaration: `procedure DeletePendingRequests`

Visibility: public

Description: The `DeletePendingRequests` procedure removes all pending requests and responses from the server queue. This is useful for cleanup operations during server startup or shutdown.

See also: `StartServer` ([163](#)), `StopServer` ([164](#))

1.8.15 TIPCServer.Active

Synopsis: Server running state

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Active` property indicates whether the IPC server is currently running and available for client connections. `True` if the server has been started, `False` otherwise.

See also: `StartServer` ([163](#)), `StopServer` ([164](#))

1.9 TReleaseHandleStream

1.9.1 Description

The `TReleaseHandleStream` class extends `THandleStream` to automatically close the file handle when the stream is destroyed.

1.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
165	<code>Destroy</code>	Destructor that closes the file handle

1.9.3 TReleaseHandleStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor that closes the file handle

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor closes the file handle before calling the inherited destructor.

Chapter 2

Reference for unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'

2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'AdvancedSingleInstance'

Name	Page
AdvancedIPC	155
Classes	??
singleinstance	1486
System	??
sysutils	??

2.2 Overview

The `AdvancedSingleInstance` unit contains an implementation of the `TBaseSingleInstance` ([1487](#)) class, based on functionality found in the `AdvancedIPC` (??) unit. The class is called `TAdvancedSingleInstance` ([167](#))

2.3 Constants, types and variables

2.3.1 Types

```
TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage = procedure
  (Sender: TBaseSingleInstance;
   MsgID: Integer;
   MsgType: Integer
  ;
   MsgData: TStream
  )
  of object
```

`TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage` is the signature of the `TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest` (170) event. It carries the information received when the server receives a custom message.

2.4 TAdvancedSingleInstance

2.4.1 Description

`TAdvancedSingleInstance` is a `TBaseSingleInstance` (166) descendent. It implements the required functionality using the IPC mechanism of the `advancedipc` (166) unit: it uses files to communicate. This ensures the mechanism works on all platforms.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance` (166), `advancedipc` (166)

2.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
170	<code>ClientPeekCustomResponse</code>	Check whether the server posted a response.
169	<code>ClientPostCustomRequest</code>	Send a custom message to the server.
168	<code>ClientPostParams</code>	Post client command-line parameters to the server.
169	<code>ClientSendCustomRequest</code>	<code>ClientSendCustomRequest</code> .
167	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAdvancedSingleInstance</code> .
168	<code>ServerCheckMessages</code>	Check for incoming messages for the server.
169	<code>ServerPostCustomResponse</code>	Post a server response to the client.
168	<code>Start</code>	Start IPC communication and check the type of the application instance.
168	<code>Stop</code>	End IPC communication.

2.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
170	<code>Global</code>	rw	Is the instance global (for all users) or local (for the current user).
170	<code>ID</code>	rw	The ID of this instance.
170	<code>OnServerReceivedCustomRequest</code>	rw	Server event triggered when a custom request is received.

2.4.4 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAdvancedSingleInstance`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and then constructs the `ID` (166) property which identifies the application.

See also: `ID` (166)

2.4.5 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start

Synopsis: Start IPC communication and check the type of the application instance.

Declaration: `function Start : TSingleInstanceStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Start` implements the abstract `TBaseSingleInstance.Start` (166) call. It initiates the IPC mechanism.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Start` (166), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop` (168)

2.4.6 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop

Synopsis: End IPC communication.

Declaration: `procedure Stop; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Stop` implements the abstract `TBaseSingleInstance.Stop` (166) call. It terminates the IPC mechanism.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Stop` (166), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start` (168)

2.4.7 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages

Synopsis: Check for incoming messages for the server.

Declaration: `procedure ServerCheckMessages; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerCheckMessages` implements `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages` (168) and checks if there are any messages in the message queue using the API of `advancedIPC` (166). If there are messages, it fires the `OnServerReceivedParams` (1486) event.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages` (168), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Start` (168), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.Stop` (168), `OnServerReceivedParams` (1486)

2.4.8 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams

Synopsis: Post client command-line parameters to the server.

Declaration: `procedure ClientPostParams; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClientPostParams` implements `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (168). It sends the command-line parameters using `ClientPostCustomRequest` (169).

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (166) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostParams` (168), `ClientPostCustomRequest` (169)

2.4.9 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest

Synopsis: Send a custom message to the server.

Declaration: `function ClientPostCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientPostCustomRequest` sends the data in `aStream` to the server instance using message type `aMsgType`. It returns the message id.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (166) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest` (169), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (169)

2.4.10 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest

Synopsis: `ClientSendCustomRequest`.

Declaration: `function ClientSendCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream) : Boolean
; overload
function ClientSendCustomRequest(const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream;
out outRequestID: Integer) : Boolean
; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientSendCustomRequest` sends the data in `aStream` to the server instance using message type `aMsgType`. It returns `True` if the message was sent successfully. It returns the message id in `outRequestID`, if supplied.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (166) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest` (169), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (169)

2.4.11 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse

Synopsis: Post a server response to the client.

Declaration: `procedure ServerPostCustomResponse(const aRequestID: Integer;
const aMsgType: Integer;
const aStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ServerPostCustomResponse` sends the data in `aStream` to the client instance using message type `aMsgType`, in response to client message `aRequestID`. The client can check for the response using `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse` (170)

Errors: If this application instance is not a server instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (166) exception is raised.

See also: `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPostCustomRequest` (169), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientSendCustomRequest` (169), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse` (170)

2.4.12 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ClientPeekCustomResponse

Synopsis: Check whether the server posted a response.

Declaration: `function ClientPeekCustomResponse(const aStream: TStream;
out outMsgType: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClientPeekCustomResponse` checks if the server posted any responses. It returns `True` if there was a message, and returns the message type in `outMsgType`, the payload is read into the stream `aStream`. The message timeout `TimeoutMessages` (166) is observed: if no message arrived before the timeout expires the call will return `False`.

Errors: If this application instance is not a client instance, then a `ESingleInstance` (166) exception is raised. The `aStream` must be non-nil, or an access violation will occur.

See also: `TimeoutMessages` (166), `TAdvancedSingleInstance.ServerPostCustomResponse` (169)

2.4.13 TAdvancedSingleInstance.ID

Synopsis: The ID of this instance.

Declaration: `Property ID : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ID` is the unique ID for this application instance.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ID` (166)

2.4.14 TAdvancedSingleInstance.Global

Synopsis: Is the instance global (for all users) or local (for the current user).

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Global` indicates whether the instance is global (for all users) or local (for the current user only). This must be set before `Start` (168) is called.

See also: `Start` (168)

2.4.15 TAdvancedSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedCustomRequest

Synopsis: Server event triggered when a custom request is received.

Declaration: `Property OnServerReceivedCustomRequest : TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnServerReceivedCustomRequest` is triggered when a custom request (i.e. not a command-line parameters request) is received by the server.

See also: `TSingleInstanceReceivedCustomMessage` (166)

Chapter 3

Reference for unit 'ascii85'

3.1 Used units

Table 3.1: Used units by unit 'ascii85'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

3.2 Overview

The `ascii85` provides an ASCII 85 or base 85 decoding algorithm. It is class and stream based: the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#)) stream can be used to decode any stream with ASCII85 encoded data.

Currently, no ASCII85 encoder stream is available.

It's usage and purpose is similar to the IDEA ([1264](#)) or base64 ([200](#)) units.

3.3 Constants, types and variables

3.3.1 Types

```
TASCII85State = (ascInitial, ascOneEncodedChar, ascTwoEncodedChars,  
    ascThreeEncodedChars, ascFourEncodedChars,  
    ascNoEncodedChar, ascPrefix)
```

Table 3.2: Enumeration values for type TASCII85State

Value	Explanation
ascFourEncodedChars	Four encoded characters in buffer.
ascInitial	Initial state.
ascNoEncodedChar	No encoded characters in buffer.
ascOneEncodedChar	One encoded character in buffer.
ascPrefix	Prefix processing.
ascThreeEncodedChars	Three encoded characters in buffer.
ascTwoEncodedChars	Two encoded characters in buffer.

TASCII85State is for internal use, it contains the current state of the decoder.

3.4 TASCII85DecoderStream

3.4.1 Description

TASCII85DecoderStream is a read-only stream: it takes an input stream with ASCII 85 encoded data, and decodes the data as it is read. To this end, it overrides the TStream.Read (??) method.

The stream cannot be written to, trying to write to the stream will result in an exception.

3.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
173	Close	Close decoder.
173	ClosedP	Check if the state is correct.
172	Create	Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream.
173	Decode	Decode source byte.
173	Destroy	Clean up instance.
174	Read	Read data from stream.
174	Seek	Set stream position.

3.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
174	BExpectBoundary	rw	Expect character.

3.4.4 TASCII85DecoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create new ASCII 85 decoder stream.

Declaration: constructor Create(aStream: TStream)

Visibility: published

Description: Create instantiates a new TASCII85DecoderStream instance, and sets aStream as the source stream.

See also: TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy ([173](#))

3.4.5 TASCII85DecoderStream.Decode

Synopsis: Decode source byte.

Declaration: `procedure Decode(aInput: Byte)`

Visibility: `published`

Description: `Decode` decodes a source byte, and transfers it to the buffer. It is an internal routine and should not be used directly.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([173](#))

3.4.6 TASCII85DecoderStream.Close

Synopsis: Close decoder.

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: `published`

Description: `Close` closes the decoder mechanism: it checks if all data was read and performs a check to see whether all input data was consumed.

Errors: If the input stream was invalid, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP` ([173](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` ([174](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy` ([173](#))

3.4.7 TASCII85DecoderStream.ClosedP

Synopsis: Check if the state is correct.

Declaration: `function ClosedP : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Description: `ClosedP` checks if the decoder state is one of `ascInitial`, `ascNoEncodedChar`, `ascPrefix`, and returns `True` if it is.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([173](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary` ([174](#))

3.4.8 TASCII85DecoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` closes the input stream using `Close` ([173](#)) and cleans up the `TASCII85DecoderStream` instance from memory.

Errors: In case the input stream was invalid, an exception may occur.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Close` ([173](#))

3.4.9 TASCII85DecoderStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read attempts to read `aCount` bytes from the stream and places them in `aBuffer`. It reads only as much data as is available. The actual number of read bytes is returned.

The read method reads as much data from the input stream as needed to get to `aCount` bytes, in general this will be `aCount*5/4` bytes.

3.4.10 TASCII85DecoderStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(aOffset: LongInt; aOrigin: Word) : LongInt; override`
`function Seek(const aOffset: Int64; aOrigin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64`
`; override; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Seek sets the stream position. It only allows to set the position to the current position of this file, and returns then the current position. All other arguments will result in an `EReadError` exception.

Errors: In case the arguments are different from `soCurrent` and 0, an `EReadError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream.Read` ([174](#))

3.4.11 TASCII85DecoderStream.BExpectBoundary

Synopsis: Expect character.

Declaration: `Property BExpectBoundary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BExpectBoundary` is `True` if a encoded data boundary is to be expected (">").

See also: `ClosedP` ([173](#))

3.5 TASCII85EncoderStream

3.5.1 Description

`TASCII85EncoderStream` is the counterpart to the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#)) decoder stream: what `TASCII85EncoderStream` encodes, can be decoded by `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#)).

The encoder stream works using a destination stream: whatever data is written to the encoder stream is encoded and written to the destination stream. The stream must be passed on in the constructor.

Note that all encoded data is only written to the destination stream when the encoder stream is destroyed.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.create` ([175](#)), `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#))

3.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
175	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TASCII85EncoderStream</code> .
175	Destroy	Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.
175	Write	Write data encoded to the destination stream.

3.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
176	Boundary	r	Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data.
176	Width	r	Width of the lines written to the data stream.

3.5.4 TASCII85EncoderStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADest: TStream; AWidth: Integer=72; ABoundary: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TASCII85EncoderStream`. It stores `ADest` as the destination stream for the encoded data. The `Width` parameter indicates the width of the lines that are written by the encoder: after this amount of characters, a linefeed is put in the data stream. If `ABoundary` is `True` then a boundary delineator is written to the stream before and after the data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream` ([174](#)), `Width` ([176](#)), `Boundary` ([176](#))

3.5.5 TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flushed the data to the output stream and cleans up the encoder instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` writes the data remaining in the internal buffer to the destination stream (possibly followed by a boundary delineator) and then destroys the encoder instance.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Write` ([175](#)), `TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary` ([176](#))

3.5.6 TASCII85EncoderStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data encoded to the destination stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` encodes the `aCount` bytes of data in `aBuffer` and writes the encoded data to the destination stream.

Not all data is written immediately to the destination stream. Only after the encoding stream is destroyed will the destination stream contain the full data.

See also: `TASCII85EncoderStream.Destroy` ([175](#))

3.5.7 TASCII85EncoderStream.Width

Synopsis: Width of the lines written to the data stream.

Declaration: `Property Width : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Width` is the width of the lines of encoded data written to the stream. After `Width` lines, a line ending will be written to the stream. The value is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed afterwards.

See also: [Boundary \(176\)](#), [Create \(175\)](#)

3.5.8 TASCII85EncoderStream.Boundary

Synopsis: Is a boundary delineator written before and after the data.

Declaration: `Property Boundary : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Boundary` indicates whether the stream will write a boundary delineator before and after the encoded data. It is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed.

See also: [Width \(176\)](#), [Create \(175\)](#)

3.6 TASCII85RingBuffer

3.6.1 Description

`TASCII85RingBuffer` is an internal buffer class: it maintains a memory buffer of 1Kb, for faster reading of the stream. It should not be necessary to instantiate an instance of this class, the `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#)) decoder stream will create an instance of this class automatically.

See also: `TASCII85DecoderStream` ([172](#))

3.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
177	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the internal buffer.
177	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the internal buffer.

3.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
177	<code>FillCount</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of bytes in buffer.
177	<code>Size</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of buffer.

3.6.4 TASCII85RingBuffer.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the internal buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Write(const aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal)`

Visibility: published

Description: `Write` writes `aSize` bytes from `aBuffer` to the internal memory buffer. Only as much bytes are written as will fit in the buffer.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Read` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([177](#))

3.6.5 TASCII85RingBuffer.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the internal buffer.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aSize: Cardinal) : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Description: `Read` will read `aSize` bytes from the internal buffer and writes them to `aBuffer`. If not enough bytes are available, only as much bytes as available will be written. The function returns the number of bytes transferred.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Write` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([177](#))

3.6.6 TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount

Synopsis: Number of bytes in buffer.

Declaration: `Property FillCount : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `FillCount` is the available amount of bytes in the buffer.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.Write` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Read` ([177](#)), `TASCII85RingBuffer.Size` ([177](#))

3.6.7 TASCII85RingBuffer.Size

Synopsis: Size of buffer.

Declaration: `Property Size : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Size` is the total size of the memory buffer. This is currently hardcoded to 1024Kb.

See also: `TASCII85RingBuffer.FillCount` ([177](#))

Chapter 4

Reference for unit 'AVL_Tree'

4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'AVL_Tree'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

4.2 Overview

The `avl_tree` unit implements a general-purpose AVL (balanced) tree class: the `TAVLTree` ([179](#)) class and it's associated data node class `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)).

4.3 Constants, types and variables

4.3.1 Types

`PAVLTreeNode` = `^TAVLTreeNode`

Pointer to `TAVLTreeNode`.

`TAVLTreeClass` = class of `TAVLTree`

`TAVLTreeClass` is the class of `TAVLTree` ([179](#)).

`TAVLTreeNodeClass` = class of `TAVLTreeNode`

`TAVLTreeNodeClass` is the class of `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)). It is the type of the `TAVLTree.NodeClass` ([192](#)) property and determines what class of nodes will be created by the tree.

`TObjectSortCompare` = function(`Tree`: `TAVLTree`; `Data1`: Pointer;
 `Data2`: Pointer) : Integer of object

`TObjectSortCompare` is the prototype for the `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` (192) property. When assigned, it is used to sort the elements in the tree. It provides more information than the standard `TListSortCompare` handler used in `TAVLTree.OnCompare` (192): it also passes the tree to the sort mechanism.

4.3.2 Variables

`NodeMemManager` : `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`

`NodeMemManager` is the default node manager for a new instance of `TAVLTree`.

4.4 TAVLTree

4.4.1 Description

`TAVLTree` maintains a balanced AVL tree. The tree consists of `TAVLTreeNode` (193) nodes, each of which has a `Data` pointer associated with it. The `TAVLTree` component offers methods to balance and search the tree.

By default, the list is searched with a simple pointer comparison algorithm, but a custom search mechanism can be specified in the `OnCompare` (192) property.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` (193)

4.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
182	Add	Add a new node to the tree.
183	AddAscendingSequence	
186	Assign	Assign another tree.
184	Clear	Clears the tree.
186	Compare	Compare 2 nodes.
191	ConsistencyCheck	Check the consistency of the tree.
181	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTree</code> .
181	CreateObjectCompare	Create an instance of the tree with extended compare method.
183	Delete	Delete a node from the tree.
181	Destroy	Destroy the <code>TAVLTree</code> instance.
182	DisposeNode	Dispose of a node outside of the tree.
185	Equals	Check if two trees are equal.
186	Find	Find a data item in the tree.
188	FindHighest	Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.
186	FindKey	Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism.
189	FindLeftMost	Find the node most left to a specified data node.
189	FindLeftMostKey	Find the node most left to a specified key node.
190	FindLeftMostSameKey	Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data.
188	FindLowest	Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.
188	FindNearest	Find the node closest to the data in the tree.
187	FindNearestKey	Find nearest key for a data pointer.
188	FindPointer	Search for a data pointer.
187	FindPrecessor	
189	FindRightMost	Find the node most right to a specified node.
189	FindRightMostKey	Find the node most right to a specified key node.
190	FindRightMostSameKey	Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data.
187	FindSuccessor	Find successor to node.
185	FreeAndClear	Clears the tree and frees nodes.
185	FreeAndDelete	Delete a node from the tree and destroy it.
190	GetEnumerator	Get an enumerator for the tree.
190	GetEnumeratorHighToLow	Return an enumerator that enumerates the tree in reversed order.
185	IsEqual	Check whether 2 tree instances are equal.
184	MoveDataLeftMost	Move data to the nearest left element.
184	MoveDataRightMost	Move data to the nearest right element.
182	NewNode	Create a new tree node.
191	NodeToReportStr	Create a textual dump of the tree.
183	Remove	Remove a data item from the list.
184	RemovePointer	Remove a pointer item from the list.
191	ReportAsString	Return the tree report as a string.
181	SetNodeManager	Set the node instance manager to use.
191	WriteReportToStream	Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream.

4.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
193	Count	r	Number of nodes in the tree.
192	NodeClass	rw	Node class to create.
192	OnCompare	rw	Compare function used when comparing nodes.
192	OnObjectCompare	rw	Compare handler.
192	Root	r	Root node of the tree.

4.4.4 TAVLTree.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAVLTree.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const OnCompareMethod: TListSortCompare)`
`constructor Create`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TAVLTree ([179](#)). An alternate `OnCompare` ([192](#)) can be provided: the default `OnCompare` method compares the 2 data pointers of a node.

See also: `OnCompare` ([192](#))

4.4.5 TAVLTree.CreateObjectCompare

Synopsis: Create an instance of the tree with extended compare method.

Declaration: `constructor CreateObjectCompare`
`(const OnCompareMethod: TObjectSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateObjectCompare` is an alternative constructor that accepts a `TObjectSortCompare` ([179](#)) compare function instead of a regular `TListSortCompare` compare function. The compare function can still be set in the `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` ([192](#)) property.

See also: `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` ([192](#))

4.4.6 TAVLTree.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TAVLTree instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the nodes (the node data is not freed) and then destroys the TAVLTree instance.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` ([184](#)), `TAVLTree.Create` ([181](#))

4.4.7 TAVLTree.SetNodeManager

Synopsis: Set the node instance manager to use.

Declaration: `procedure SetNodeManager(NewMgr: TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager;`
`AutoFree: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetNodeManager` sets the node manager instance used by the tree to `newmgr`. It should be called before any nodes are added to the tree. The `TAVLTree` instance will not destroy the `nodemanager`, thus the same instance of the tree node manager can be used to manager the nodes of multiple `TAVLTree` instances.

By default, a single instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (196) is used to manage the nodes of all `TAVLTree` instances.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` (198), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` (196)

4.4.8 TAVLTree.NewNode

Synopsis: Create a new tree node.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `NewNode` creates a new node, but does not insert it in the tree. It will use the node manager if that is set. If it is not set then the `TAVLTree.NodeClass` (192) class is used to create a new node.

See also: `TAVLTree.NodeClass` (192), `TAVLTree.Add` (182), `TAVLTree.DisposeNode` (182)

4.4.9 TAVLTree.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Dispose of a node outside of the tree.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DisposeNode` disposes of a node outside of the tree. If the node manager is set, the node is returned to the manager, otherwise it is freed. Do not use this on a node that is still in the tree.

Errors: If use on a node in the tree, no error will happen, but the tree will no longer be correct and access violations may happen later on.

See also: `TAVLTree.NewNode` (182)

4.4.10 TAVLTree.Add

Synopsis: Add a new node to the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Add (ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`
`function Add (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds a new `Data` or `Node` to the tree. It inserts the node so that the tree is maximally balanced by rebalancing the tree after the insert. In case a `data` pointer is added to the tree, then the node that was created is returned.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (183), `TAVLTree.Remove` (183)

4.4.11 TAVLTree.AddAscendingSequence

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function AddAscendingSequence(Data: Pointer; LastAdded: TAVLTreeNode;
var Successor: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddAscendingSequence` is an optimized version of `Add` (182) for quickly adding an ascending sequence of nodes. It adds `Data` between `LastAdded` and `Successor` as a state and skips searching for an insert position. For nodes with same value the order of the sequence is kept.

It can be used as follows:

```
LastNode:=nil; // TAVLTreeNode
Successor:=nil; // TAVLTreeNode
for i:=1 to 1000 do
  LastNode:=Tree.AddAscendingSequence(TItem.Create(i), LastNode, Successor);
```

If `LastAdded` is `Nil` a regular add is performed.

Errors: If the nodes are not in ascending order, the tree will not be consistent.

See also: `TAVLTree.Add` (182)

4.4.12 TAVLTree.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the node from the tree. The node is not freed, but is passed to a `TAVLTreeNode-MemManager` (196) instance for future reuse. The data that the node represents is also not freed.

The tree is rebalanced after the node was deleted.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (183), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (184), `TAVLTree.Clear` (184)

4.4.13 TAVLTree.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` finds the node associated with `Data` using `find` (186) and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Delete` (183), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` (184), `TAVLTree.Clear` (184), `TAVLTree.Find` (186)

4.4.14 TAVLTree.RemovePointer

Synopsis: Remove a pointer item from the list.

Declaration: `function RemovePointer(Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` uses `FindPointer` (188) to find the node associated with the pointer `Data` and, if found, deletes it from the tree. Only the first occurrence of `Data` will be removed.

See also: `TAVLTree.Remove` (183), `TAVLTree.Delete` (183), `TAVLTree.Clear` (184)

4.4.15 TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest left element.

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataLeftMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataLeftMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the nearest left location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former left node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the previous element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost` (184)

4.4.16 TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost

Synopsis: Move data to the nearest right element.

Declaration: `procedure MoveDataRightMost(var ANode: TAVLTreeNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveDataRightMost` moves the data from the node `ANode` to the rightmost location relative to `ANode`. It returns the new node where the data is positioned. The data from the former rightmost node will be switched to `ANode`.

This operation corresponds to switching the current with the next element in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost` (184)

4.4.17 TAVLTree.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the tree.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The nodes themselves are not freed, and the data pointer in the nodes is also not freed.

If the node's data must be freed as well, use `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (185) instead.

See also: `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` (185), `TAVLTree.Delete` (183)

4.4.18 TAVLTree.FreeAndClear

Synopsis: Clears the tree and frees nodes.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndClear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeAndClear` deletes all nodes from the tree. The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed prior to deleting the node from the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` ([184](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([183](#)), `TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete` ([185](#))

4.4.19 TAVLTree.FreeAndDelete

Synopsis: Delete a node from the tree and destroy it.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndDelete (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeAndDelete` deletes a node from the tree, and destroys the data pointer: The data pointer in the nodes is assumed to be an object, and is freed by calling its destructor.

See also: `TAVLTree.Clear` ([184](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([183](#)), `TAVLTree.FreeAndClear` ([185](#))

4.4.20 TAVLTree.Equals

Synopsis: Check if two trees are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals (Obj: TObject) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Equals` checks, when passed an `TAVLTree`, whether the tree is equal (using `TAVLTree.IsEqual` ([185](#)), comparing keys only). If another type of object is passed, the inherited `IsEqual` is called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.IsEqual` ([185](#))

4.4.21 TAVLTree.IsEqual

Synopsis: Check whether 2 tree instances are equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqual (aTree: TAVLTree; CheckDataPointer: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsEqual` checks the current tree with `aTree` and checks whether the two trees contain the same data in the same order and whether they use the same compare methods, and node class. If `CheckDataPointer` is `True`, only the data pointers are compared, not the keys.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.Equals` ([185](#))

4.4.22 TAVLTree.Assign

Synopsis: Assign another tree.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(aTree: TAVLTree); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` copies all data from `aTree` to the current tree if they are not equal. The current tree is cleared first. Note that the compare function(s) and class node are not copied, only the data.

Errors: If you pass nil, an exception is raised.

See also: `TAVLTree.IsEqual` (185)

4.4.23 TAVLTree.Compare

Synopsis: Compare 2 nodes.

Declaration: `function Compare(Data1: Pointer; Data2: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Compare` compares the keys from 2 data pointers. It uses the appropriate compare function `TAVLtree.OnCompare` (192) or `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` (192) to do so. The result is

- negative if the first key comes before the second
- 0 when the two keys are equal.
- positive if the second key comes before the first

See also: `TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare` (192), `TAVLtree.OnCompare` (192)

4.4.24 TAVLTree.Find

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree.

Declaration: `function Find(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` uses the default `OnCompare` (192) comparing function to find the `Data` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that results in a successful compare with the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

The default `OnCompare` function compares the actual pointers, which means that by default `Find` will give the same result as `FindPointer` (188).

See also: `OnCompare` (192), `FindKey` (186)

4.4.25 TAVLTree.FindKey

Synopsis: Find a data item in the tree using alternate compare mechanism.

Declaration: `function FindKey(Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindKey` uses the specified `OnCompareKeyWithData` comparing function to find the `Key` pointer in the tree. It returns the `TAVLTreeNode` instance that matches the `Data` pointer, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: `OnCompare` ([192](#)), `Find` ([186](#))

4.4.26 TAVLTree.FindNearestKey

Synopsis: Find nearest key for a data pointer.

Declaration: `function FindNearestKey(Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNearestKey` attempts to find the nearest possible key in the tree using the `OnCompareKeyWithData` function. It returns the closest possible key in the tree.

Errors: None.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindKey` ([186](#))

4.4.27 TAVLTree.FindSuccessor

Synopsis: Find successor to node.

Declaration: `function FindSuccessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindSuccessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the leftmost node in the right subtree, or the leftmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the rightmost position.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindPrecessor` ([187](#)), `TAVLTree.MoveDataRightMost` ([184](#))

4.4.28 TAVLTree.FindPrecessor

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function FindPrecessor(ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPrecessor` returns the successor to `ANode`: this is the rightmost node in the left subtree, or the rightmost node above the node `ANode`. This can of course be `Nil`.

This method is used when a node must be inserted at the leftmost position.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([187](#)), `TAVLTree.MoveDataLeftMost` ([184](#))

4.4.29 TAVLTree.FindLowest

Synopsis: Find the lowest (leftmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindLowest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLowest` returns the leftmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the left (??) subtrees.

See also: `FindHighest` ([188](#))

4.4.30 TAVLTree.FindHighest

Synopsis: Find the highest (rightmost) node in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindHighest : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindHighest` returns the rightmost node in the tree, i.e. the node which is reached when descending from the rootnode via the Right (??) subtrees.

See also: `FindLowest` ([188](#))

4.4.31 TAVLTree.FindNearest

Synopsis: Find the node closest to the data in the tree.

Declaration: `function FindNearest(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNearest` searches the node in the data tree that is closest to the specified `Data`. If `Data` appears in the tree, then its node is returned.

See also: `FindHighest` ([188](#)), `FindLowest` ([188](#)), `Find` ([186](#)), `FindKey` ([186](#))

4.4.32 TAVLTree.FindPointer

Synopsis: Search for a data pointer.

Declaration: `function FindPointer(Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPointer` searches for a node where the actual data pointer equals `Data`. This is a more fine search than `find` ([186](#)), where a custom compare function can be used.

The default `OnCompare` ([192](#)) compares the data pointers, so the default `Find` will return the same node as `FindPointer`

See also: `TAVLTree.Find` ([186](#)), `TAVLTree.FindKey` ([186](#))

4.4.33 TAVLTree.FindLeftMost

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified data node.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLeftMost` finds the node most left from the `Data` node. It starts at the preceding node for `Data` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the previous item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (189), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (189)

4.4.34 TAVLTree.FindRightMost

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified node.

Declaration: `function FindRightMost (Data: Pointer) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindRightMost` finds the node most right from the `Data` node. It starts at the succeeding node for `Data` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

This operation corresponds to finding the next item in a list.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (189), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (189)

4.4.35 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified key node.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLeftMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the preceding node for `Key` and tries to move as far left in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` (189)

4.4.36 TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right to a specified key node.

Declaration: `function FindRightMostKey (Key: Pointer;
const OnCompareKeyWithData: TListSortCompare)
: TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindRightMostKey` finds the node most left from the node associated with `Key`. It starts at the succeeding node for `Key` and tries to move as far right in the tree as possible.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` (189), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` (189)

4.4.37 TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most left to a specified node with the same data.

Declaration: `function FindLeftMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindLeftMostSameKey` finds the node most left from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindLeftMost` ([189](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostKey` ([189](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey` ([190](#))

4.4.38 TAVLTree.FindRightMostSameKey

Synopsis: Find the node most right of a specified node with the same data.

Declaration: `function FindRightMostSameKey (ANode: TAVLTreeNode) : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindRightMostSameKey` finds the node most right from and with the same data as the specified node `ANode`.

See also: `TAVLTree.FindRightMost` ([189](#)), `TAVLTree.FindRightMostKey` ([189](#)), `TAVLTree.FindLeftMostSameKey` ([190](#))

4.4.39 TAVLTree.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an enumerator for the tree.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an instance of the standard tree node enumerator `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` ([194](#)).

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` ([194](#))

4.4.40 TAVLTree.GetEnumeratorHighToLow

Synopsis: Return an enumerator that enumerates the tree in reversed order.

Declaration: `function GetEnumeratorHighToLow : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumeratorHighToLow` returns an enumerator that traverses the tree in reversed order.

See also: `TAVLTree.GetEnumerator` ([190](#))

4.4.41 TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck

Synopsis: Check the consistency of the tree.

Declaration: `procedure ConsistencyCheck; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ConsistencyCheck` checks the correctness of the tree. It returns 0 if the tree is internally consistent, and a negative number if the tree contains an error somewhere.

- 1 The Count property doesn't match the actual node count
- 2 A left node does not point to the correct parent
- 3 A left node is larger than parent node
- 4 A right node does not point to the correct parent
- 5 A right node is less than parent node
- 6 The balance of a node is not calculated correctly

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` ([191](#))

4.4.42 TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream

Synopsis: Write the contents of the tree consistency check to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteReportToStream(s: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteReportToStream` writes a visual representation of the tree to the stream `S`. The total number of written bytes is returned in `StreamSize`. This method is only useful for debugging purposes.

See also: `TAVLTree.ConsistencyCheck` ([191](#))

4.4.43 TAVLTree.NodeToReportStr

Synopsis: Create a textual dump of the tree.

Declaration: `function NodeToReportStr(aNode: TAVLTreeNode) : string; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NodeToReportStr` creates a textual representation of a node. It is called by `TAVLTree.ReportAsString` ([191](#)) for debugging purposes. It prints the data pointer as a hex value. Override this to create a human-readable representation of the data.

See also: `TAVLTree.ReportAsString` ([191](#))

4.4.44 TAVLTree.ReportAsString

Synopsis: Return the tree report as a string.

Declaration: `function ReportAsString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReportAsString` calls `WriteReportToStream` ([191](#)) and returns the stream data as a string.

See also: `TAVLTree.WriteReportToStream` ([191](#))

4.4.45 TAVLTree.OnCompare

Synopsis: Compare function used when comparing nodes.

Declaration: `Property OnCompare : TListSortCompare`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCompare` is the comparing function used when the data of 2 nodes must be compared. By default, the function simply compares the 2 data pointers. A different function can be specified on creation.

See also: `TAVLTree.Create` ([181](#))

4.4.46 TAVLTree.OnObjectCompare

Synopsis: Compare handler.

Declaration: `Property OnObjectCompare : TObjectSortCompare`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnObjectCompare` is used to compare nodes. It is only used if `TAVLTree.OnCompare` ([192](#)) is not set.

See also: `TAVLTree.OnCompare` ([192](#))

4.4.47 TAVLTree.NodeClass

Synopsis: Node class to create.

Declaration: `Property NodeClass : TAVLTreeNodeClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NodeClass` is the class of nodes to create when adding new nodes: `TAVLTree.NewNode` ([182](#)) will use this class when creating a new node. This can be set to a descendent class of `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)), but not if there are already nodes in the tree.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)), `TAVLTree.NewNode` ([182](#))

4.4.48 TAVLTree.Root

Synopsis: Root node of the tree.

Declaration: `Property Root : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Root` is the root node of the tree. It should not be set explicitly, only use the `Add` ([182](#)), `Delete` ([183](#)), `Remove` ([183](#)), `RemovePointer` ([184](#)), or `Clear` ([184](#)) methods to manipulate the items in the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree.Add` ([182](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([183](#)), `TAVLTree.Remove` ([183](#)), `TAVLTree.RemovePointer` ([184](#)), `TAVLTree.Clear` ([184](#))

4.4.49 TAVLTree.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the tree.

Declaration: `Property Count : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of nodes in the tree.

4.5 TAVLTreeNode

4.5.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNode` represents a single node in the AVL tree. It contains references to the other nodes in the tree, and provides a `Data (??)` pointer which can be used to store the data, associated with the node.

See also: `TAVLTree` ([179](#)), `TAVLTreeNode.Data (??)`

4.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
194	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the node's data.
194	<code>ConsistencyCheck</code>	Check consistency of the node and below nodes.
194	<code>GetCount</code>	Get the number of nodes.
193	<code>Precessor</code>	Preceding node in the tree.
193	<code>Successor</code>	Succeeding node in the tree.
194	<code>TreeDepth</code>	Level of the node in the tree below.

4.5.3 TAVLTreeNode.Successor

Synopsis: Succeeding node in the tree.

Declaration: `function Successor : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Successor` calculates and return the succeeding (right) node in the tree. For the last node, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode.Precessor` ([193](#))

4.5.4 TAVLTreeNode.Precessor

Synopsis: Preceding node in the tree.

Declaration: `function Precessor : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Precessor` calculates and return the preceding (left) node in the tree. For the first node, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode.Successor` ([193](#))

4.5.5 TAVLTreeNode.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the node's data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all pointers and references in the node. It does not free the memory pointed to by these references.

4.5.6 TAVLTreeNode.TreeDepth

Synopsis: Level of the node in the tree below.

Declaration: `function TreeDepth : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TreeDepth` is the height of the node: this is the largest height of the left or right nodes, plus 1. If no nodes appear below this node (`left` and `Right` are `Nil`), the depth is 1.

See also: `Balance` (??)

4.5.7 TAVLTreeNode.ConsistencyCheck

Synopsis: Check consistency of the node and below nodes.

Declaration: `procedure ConsistencyCheck (Tree: TAVLTree); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ConsistencyCheck` checks whether the node and nodes below are consistent, i.e. the nodes are still ordered correctly: left nodes are before right nodes.

Errors: If an inconsistency is detected, an exception is raised.

4.5.8 TAVLTreeNode.GetCount

Synopsis: Get the number of nodes.

Declaration: `function GetCount : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCount` returns 1 plus the number of subnodes, if any.

Errors: None.

4.6 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator

4.6.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` is a class which implements the enumerator interface for the `TAVL-Tree` (179). It enumerates all the nodes in the tree.

See also: `TAVLTree` (179)

4.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
195	Create	Create a new instance of TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.
195	GetEnumerator	Returns the enumerator.
195	MoveNext	Move to next node in the tree.

4.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
195	Current	r	Current node in the tree.
196	LowToHigh	r	Should the enumerator return nodes from low to high or high to low.

4.6.4 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Tree: TAVLTree; aLowToHigh: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator` and saves the `Tree` argument for later use in the enumerator.

4.6.5 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Returns the enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns `Self`..

4.6.6 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next node in the tree.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` will return the lowest node in the tree to start with, and for all other calls returns the successor node of the current node with `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([187](#)).

See also: `TAVLTree.FindSuccessor` ([187](#))

4.6.7 TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current node in the tree.

Declaration: `Property Current : TAVLTreeNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` is the current node in the enumeration.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.MoveNext` ([195](#))

4.6.8 `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.LowToHigh`

Synopsis: Should the enumerator return nodes from low to high or high to low.

Declaration: `Property LowToHigh : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `LowToHigh` determines whether the tree is walked from low to high or high to low. It's value is set in the constructor and cannot be changed while enumerating the tree nodes.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeEnumerator.Create` ([195](#))

4.7 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`

4.7.1 Description

`TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` is an internal object used by the `avl_tree` unit. Normally, no instance of this object should be created: An instance is created by the unit initialization code, and freed when the unit is finalized.

See also: `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)), `TAVLTree` ([179](#))

4.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
197	<code>Clear</code>	Frees all unused nodes.
197	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TAVLTreeNodeMemManager</code> .
197	<code>Destroy</code>	
196	<code>DisposeNode</code>	Return a node to the free list.
197	<code>NewNode</code>	Create a new <code>TAVLTreeNode</code> instance.

4.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
198	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of nodes in the list.
198	<code>MaximumFreeNodeRatio</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum amount of free nodes in the list.
198	<code>MinimumFreeNode</code>	<code>rw</code>	Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

4.7.4 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode`

Synopsis: Return a node to the free list.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is used to put the node `ANode` in the list of free nodes, or optionally destroy it if the free list is full. After a call to `DisposeNode`, `ANode` must be considered invalid.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode` ([197](#))

4.7.5 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.NewNode`

Synopsis: Create a new `TAVLTreeNode` instance.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` returns a new `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)) instance. If there is a node in the free list, it is returned. If no more free nodes are present, a new node is created.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.DisposeNode` ([196](#))

4.7.6 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Clear`

Synopsis: Frees all unused nodes.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all unused nodes from the list and frees them.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([198](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([198](#))

4.7.7 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy` ([197](#))

4.7.8 `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Destroy`

Synopsis:

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `clear` to clean up the free node list and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Create` ([197](#))

4.7.9 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode

Synopsis: Minimum amount of free nodes to be kept.

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeNode : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinimumFreeNode` is the minimum amount of nodes that must be kept in the free nodes list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([198](#))

4.7.10 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio

Synopsis: Maximum amount of free nodes in the list.

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeNodeRatio : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` is the maximum amount of free nodes that should be kept in the list: if a node is disposed of, then the ratio of the free nodes versus the total amount of nodes is checked, and if it is less than the `MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ratio but larger than the minimum amount of free nodes, then the node is disposed of instead of added to the free list.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count` ([198](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([198](#))

4.7.11 TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of nodes in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the total number of nodes in the list, used or not.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MinimumFreeNode` ([198](#)), `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager.MaximumFreeNodeRatio` ([198](#))

4.8 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager

4.8.1 Description

`TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager` is an abstract class from which a descendent can be created that manages creating and disposing of tree nodes (instances of `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#))) for a `TAVLTree` ([179](#)) tree instance. No instance of this class should be created, it is a purely abstract class. The default descendant of this class used by an `TAVLTree` instance is `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` ([196](#)).

The `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` ([181](#)) method can be used to set the node manager that a `TAVLTree` instance should use.

See also: `TAVLTreeNodeMemManager` ([196](#)), `TAVLTree.SetNodeManager` ([181](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#))

4.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
199	<code>DisposeNode</code>	Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node.
199	<code>NewNode</code>	Called when the AVL tree needs a new node.

4.8.3 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree no longer needs node.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeNode (ANode: TAVLTreeNode); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DisposeNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([179](#)) when it no longer needs a `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)) instance. The manager may decide to re-use the instance for later use instead of destroying it.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode` ([199](#)), `TAVLTree.Delete` ([183](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#))

4.8.4 TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.NewNode

Synopsis: Called when the AVL tree needs a new node.

Declaration: `function NewNode : TAVLTreeNode; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewNode` is called by `TAVLTree` ([179](#)) when it needs a new node in `TAVLTree.Add` ([182](#)). It must be implemented by descendants to return a new `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#)) instance.

See also: `TBaseAVLTreeNodeManager.DisposeNode` ([199](#)), `TAVLTree.Add` ([182](#)), `TAVLTreeNode` ([193](#))

Chapter 5

Reference for unit 'base64'

5.1 Used units

Table 5.1: Used units by unit 'base64'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

5.2 Overview

`base64` implements base64 encoding (as used for instance in MIME encoding) based on streams. It implements 2 streams which encode or decode anything written or read from it. The source or the destination of the encoded data is another stream. 2 classes are implemented for this: `TBase64EncodingStream` (204) for encoding, and `TBase64DecodingStream` (202) for decoding.

The streams are designed as plug-in streams, which can be placed between other streams, to provide base64 encoding and decoding on-the-fly...

5.3 Constants, types and variables

5.3.1 Types

```
TBase64DecodingMode = (bdmStrict, bdMIME)
```

Table 5.2: Enumeration values for type `TBase64DecodingMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>bdMIME</code>	MIME encoding.
<code>bdmStrict</code>	Strict encoding.

`TBase64DecodingMode` determines the decoding algorithm used by `TBase64DecodingStream` (202). There are 2 modes:

bdmStrict Strict mode, which follows RFC3548 and rejects any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode only up to two '=' characters are accepted at the end. It requires the input to have a Size being a multiple of 4, otherwise an `EBase64DecodingException` (201) exception is raised.

bdmMime MIME mode, which follows RFC2045 and ignores any characters outside of base64 alphabet. In this mode any '=' is seen as the end of string, it handles apparently truncated input streams gracefully.

5.4 Procedures and functions

5.4.1 DecodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Decodes a Base64 encoded string and returns the decoded data as a string.

Declaration: `function DecodeStringBase64(const s: AnsiString; strict: Boolean=False) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeStringBase64` decodes the string `s` (containing Base 64 encoded data) returns the decoded data as a string. It uses a `TBase64DecodingStream` (202) to do this. The `Strict` parameter is passed on to the constructor as `bdmStrict` or `bdmMIME`

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (201), `TBase64DecodingStream` (202)

5.4.2 EncodeStringBase64

Synopsis: Encode a string with Base64 encoding and return the result as a string.

Declaration: `function EncodeStringBase64(const s: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeStringBase64` encodes the string `s` using Base 64 encoding and returns the result. It uses a `TBase64EncodingStream` (204) to do this.

See also: `DecodeStringBase64` (201), `TBase64EncodingStream` (204)

5.5 EBase64DecodingException

5.5.1 Description

`EBase64DecodeException` is raised when the stream contains errors against the encoding format. Whether or not this exception is raised depends on the mode in which the stream is decoded.

5.6 TBase64DecodingStream

5.6.1 Description

`TBase64DecodingStream` can be used to read data from a stream (the source stream) that contains Base64 encoded data. The data is read and decoded on-the-fly.

The decoding stream is read-only, and provides a limited forward-seeking capability.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream` ([204](#))

5.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
202	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBase64DecodingStream</code> class.
203	Read	Read and decrypt data from the source stream.
202	Reset	Reset the stream.
203	Seek	Set stream position.

5.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
203	EOF	r	
203	Mode	rw	Decoding mode.

5.6.4 TBase64DecodingStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ASource: TStream)`
`constructor Create (ASource: TStream; AMode: TBase64DecodingMode)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TBase64DecodingStream` class. It stores the source stream `ASource` for reading the data from.

The optional `AMode` parameter determines the mode in which the decoding will be done. If omitted, `bdmMIME` is used.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream` ([204](#)), `TBase64DecodingMode` ([200](#))

5.6.5 TBase64DecodingStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` resets the data as if it was again on the start of the decoding stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.EOF` ([203](#)), `TBase64DecodingStream.Read` ([203](#))

5.6.6 TBase64DecodingStream.Read

Synopsis: Read and decrypt data from the source stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads encrypted data from the source stream and stores this data in `Buffer`. At most `Count` bytes will be stored in the buffer, but more bytes will be read from the source stream: the encoding algorithm multiplies the number of bytes.

The function returns the number of bytes stored in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs during the read from the source stream, an exception may occur.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Seek` (203), `TStream.Read` (??)

5.6.7 TBase64DecodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position of the stream. In the `TBase64DecodingStream` class, the seek operation is forward only, it does not support backward seeks. The forward seek is emulated by reading and discarding data till the desired position is reached.

For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek` (??)

Errors: In case of an unsupported operation, an `EStreamError` exception is raised.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream.Read` (203), `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` (205), `TStream.Seek` (??)

5.6.8 TBase64DecodingStream.EOF

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description:

5.6.9 TBase64DecodingStream.Mode

Synopsis: Decoding mode.

Declaration: `Property Mode : TBase64DecodingMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Mode` is the mode in which the stream is read. It can be set when creating the stream or at any time afterwards.

See also: `TBase64DecodingStream` (202)

5.7 TBase64EncodingStream

5.7.1 Description

TBase64EncodingStream can be used to encode data using the base64 algorithm. At creation time, a destination stream is specified. Any data written to the TBase64EncodingStream instance will be base64 encoded, and subsequently written to the destination stream.

The TBase64EncodingStream stream is a write-only stream. Obviously it is also not seekable. It is meant to be included in a chain of streams.

By the nature of base64 encoding, when a buffer is written to the stream, the output stream does not yet contain all output: input must be a multiple of 3. In order to be sure that the output contains all encoded bytes, the Flush (204) method can be used. The destructor will automatically call Flush, so all data is written to the destination stream when the decodes is destroyed.

See also: TBase64DecodingStream (202)

5.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
204	Destroy	Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory.
204	Flush	Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.
205	Seek	Position the stream.
205	Write	Write data to the stream.

5.7.3 TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy flushes any remaining output and then removes the TBase64EncodingStream instance from memory by calling the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the destination stream no longer exists or is closed.

5.7.4 TBase64EncodingStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the remaining bytes to the output stream.

Declaration: `function Flush : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Flush writes the remaining bytes from the internal encoding buffer to the output stream and pads the output with "=" signs. It returns True if padding was necessary, and False if not.

See also: TBase64EncodingStream.Destroy (204)

5.7.5 TBase64EncodingStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` encodes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` using the Base64 mechanism, and then writes the encoded data to the destination stream. It returns the number of bytes from `Buffer` that were actually written. Note that this is not the number of bytes written to the destination stream: the base64 mechanism writes more bytes to the destination stream.

Errors: If there is an error writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Seek` ([205](#)), `TStream.Write` (??)

5.7.6 TBase64EncodingStream.Seek

Synopsis: Position the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception unless the arguments it received it don't change the current file pointer position. The encryption stream is not seekable.

Errors: An `EStreamError` error is raised.

See also: `TBase64EncodingStream.Write` ([205](#)), `TStream.Seek` (??)

Chapter 6

Reference for unit 'BlowFish'

6.1 Used units

Table 6.1: Used units by unit 'BlowFish'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

6.2 Overview

The BlowFish implements a class TBlowFish (207) to handle Blowfish encryption/decryption of memory buffers, and 2 TStream (??) descendents TBlowFishDeCryptStream (208) which decrypts any data that is read from it on the fly, as well as TBlowFishEnCryptStream (209) which encrypts the data that is written to it on the fly.

6.3 Constants, types and variables

6.3.1 Constants

BFRounds = 16

Number of rounds in Blowfish encryption.

6.3.2 Types

PBlowFishKey = ^TBlowFishKey

PBlowFishKey is a simple pointer to a TBlowFishKey (207) array.

TBFBlock = Array[0..1] of LongInt

`TBFBlock` is the basic data structure used by the encrypting/decrypting routines in `TBlowFish` (207), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208) and `TBlowFishEnCryptStream` (209). It is the basic encryption/decryption block for all encrypting/decrypting: all encrypting/decrypting happens on a `TBFBlock` structure.

`TBlowFishKey` = `Array[0..55]` of `Byte`

`TBlowFishKey` is a data structure which keeps the encryption or decryption key for the `TBlowFish` (207), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208) and `TBlowFishEnCryptStream` (209) classes. It should be filled with the encryption key and passed to the constructor of one of these classes.

6.4 EBlowFishError

6.4.1 Description

`EBlowFishError` is used by the `TBlowFishStream` (211), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209) and `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (208) classes to report errors.

See also: `TBlowFishStream` (211), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (208)

6.5 TBlowFish

6.5.1 Description

`TBlowFish` is a simple class that can be used to encrypt/decrypt a single `TBFBlock` (207) data block with the `Encrypt` (208) and `Decrypt` (208) calls. It is used internally by the `TBlowFishEnCryptStream` (209) and `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208) classes to encrypt or decrypt the actual data.

See also: `TBlowFishEnCryptStream` (209), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208)

6.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
207	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBlowFish</code> class.
208	Decrypt	Decrypt a block.
208	Encrypt	Encrypt a block.

6.5.3 TBlowFish.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBlowFish` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Key: TBlowFishKey; KeySize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBlowFish` class: it stores the key `Key` in the internal data structures so it can be used in later calls to `Encrypt` (208) and `Decrypt` (208).

See also: `Encrypt` (208), `Decrypt` (208)

6.5.4 TBlowFish.Encrypt

Synopsis: Encrypt a block.

Declaration: `procedure Encrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Encrypt` encrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (207) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (207), `Decrypt` (208), `Create` (207)

6.5.5 TBlowFish.Decrypt

Synopsis: Decrypt a block.

Declaration: `procedure Decrypt (var Block: TBFBlock)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Decrypt` decrypts the data in `Block` (always 8 bytes) using the key (207) specified when the `TBlowFish` instance was created. The data must have been encrypted with the same key and the `Encrypt` (208) call.

See also: `TBlowFishKey` (207), `Encrypt` (208), `Create` (207)

6.6 TBlowFishDeCryptStream

6.6.1 Description

The `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish decryption: all data that is read from the source stream is decrypted before it is placed in the output buffer. The source stream must be specified when the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` instance is created. The Decryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created, and must be the same key as the one used when encrypting the data.

This is a read-only stream: it is seekable only in a forward direction, and data can only be read from it, writing is not possible. For writing data so it is encrypted, the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209) stream must be used.

See also: `Create` (211), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209)

6.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
208	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for the class instance.
209	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream.
209	<code>Seek</code>	Set the stream position.

6.6.3 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (AKey: TBlowFishKey; AKeySize: Byte; Dest: TStream)`
`; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance. It calls the inherited constructor on entry using the values in `AKey`, `AKeySize`, and `Dest` as arguments.

`Create` sets the value in an internal member to the current position in `Dest`. It acts as the relative origin for the `TStream` instance, and is used in the `Seek` method.

See also: `TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read` (209), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek` (209), `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write` (210)

6.6.4 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the source stream, decrypts them using the key provided when the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` instance was created, and writes the decrypted data to `Buffer`.

See also: `Create` (211), `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209)

6.6.5 TBlowFishDeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding data. The discarded data is lost. Since it is a forward seek, this means that only `soFromCurrent` can be specified for `Origin` with a positive (or zero) `Offset` value. All other values will result in an exception. The function returns the new position in the stream.

Errors: If any other combination of `Offset` and `Origin` than the allowed combination is specified, then an `EBlowFishError` (207) exception will be raised.

See also: `Read` (209), `EBlowFishError` (207)

6.7 TBlowFishEncryptStream

6.7.1 Description

The `TBlowFishEncryptStream` provides On-the-fly Blowfish encryption: all data that is written to it is encrypted and then written to a destination stream, which must be specified when the `TBlowFishEncryptStream` instance is created. The encryption key must also be created when the stream instance is created.

This is a write-only stream: it is not seekable, and data can only be written to it, reading is not possible. For reading encrypted data, the `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208) stream must be used.

See also: `Create` (211), `TBlowFishDeCryptStream` (208)

6.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
210	Destroy	Free the TBlowFishEncryptStream.
211	Flush	Flush the encryption buffer.
210	Seek	Set the position in the stream.
210	Write	Write data to the stream.

6.7.3 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TBlowFishEncryptStream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the encryption buffer, and writes it to the destination stream. After that the inherited destructor is called to clean up the TBlowFishEncryptStream instance.

See also: `Flush` ([211](#)), `Create` ([211](#))

6.7.4 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` will encrypt and write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the destination stream. The function returns the actual number of bytes written. The data is not encrypted in-place, but placed in a special buffer for encryption.

Data is always written 4 bytes at a time, since this is the amount of bytes required by the Blowfish algorithm. If no multiple of 4 was written to the destination stream, the `Flush` ([211](#)) mechanism can be used to write the remaining bytes.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Flush` ([211](#))

6.7.5 TBlowFishEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` will raise an `EBlowFishError` exception: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` is a write-only stream, and cannot be positioned.

Errors: Calling this function always results in an `EBlowFishError` ([207](#)) exception.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream.Write` ([210](#))

Do not create an instance of `TBlowFishStream` directly. Instead create one of the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` or `TBlowFishDecryptStream`.

The overloaded version with the `KeyPhrase` string argument is used for easy access: it computes the Blowfish key from the given string.

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (208), `TBlowFish` (207)

6.8.5 `TBlowFishStream.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroy the `TBlowFishStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal `TBlowFish` (207) instance.

See also: `Create` (211), `TBlowFish` (207)

6.8.6 `TBlowFishStream.BlowFish`

Synopsis: Blowfish instance used when encrypting/decrypting.

Declaration: `Property BlowFish : TBlowFish`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BlowFish` is the `TBlowFish` (207) instance which is created when the `TBlowFishStream` class is initialized. Normally it should not be used directly, it's intended for access by the descendent classes `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209) and `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (208).

See also: `TBlowFishEncryptStream` (209), `TBlowFishDecryptStream` (208), `TBlowFish` (207)

Chapter 7

Reference for unit 'BufDataset'

7.1 Used units

Table 7.1: Used units by unit 'BufDataset'

Name	Page
bufdataset_parser	??
Classes	??
DB	440
System	??
sysutils	??

7.2 Overview

Implements a database-aware buffered dataset.

Original Authors: Joost van der Sluis and members of the Free Pascal development team.

7.3 Constants, types and variables

7.3.1 Types

`PBlobBuffer = ^TBlobBuffer`

`PBlobBuffer` is a pointer to the `TBlobBuffer` type. `PBlobBuffer` is used to allocate and access the buffers for Blob fields (Memo or Graphic field types). `PBlobBuffer` is used in `TBufBlobField`, `TBufBlobStream`, and in `TBufDataset` methods which perform record buffer management.

`PBufBlobField = ^TBufBlobField`

Pointer to a `TBufBlobField` type.

`PBufBookmark = ^TBufBookmark`

Pointer to the `TBufBookmark` type.

PBufRecLinkItem = ^TBufRecLinkItem

Pointer to a TBufRecLinkItem type.

```
TCompareFunc = function(subValue: pointer; aValue: pointer;
    size: Integer; options: TLocateOptions) :
    Int64
```

TCompareFunc is an Int64 function type used to compare pointers using the specified locate option values. TCompareFunc is used in the implementation of the TDBCompareRec type.

TDataPacketFormat = (dfBinary, dfXML, dfXMLUTF8, dfAny, dfDefault)

Table 7.2: Enumeration values for type TDataPacketFormat

Value	Explanation
dfAny	Data packets can be in any supported format (detected by the packet reader).
dfBinary	Data packets are in binary format.
dfDefault	Use the default XML format. Same as using dfAny.
dfXML	Data packets are in XML format.
dfXMLUTF8	Data packets are in UTF-8-encoded XML format.

Indicates the format used for data packets in TBufDataset.

TDataPacketHandlerClass = class of TDataPacketHandler

TDataPacketReader = TDataPacketHandler

TDataPacketReader is a TObject descendant which implements a data packet reader for TBufDataset. TDataPacketReader is a concept borrowed from TClientDataset in Delphi. Data packets are used to access the values in its dataset. Data packets can contain field definitions or record data. Data packets can store their values in binary format or as an XML document.

TDataPacketReader provides properties and methods that allow access to the field definitions, field values, and row states for record buffers in its dataset. Methods are provided to load and save field definitions or record data using a stream. Methods are provided to recognize the storage format for the data packets in the stream.

Many of the methods in TDataPacketReader are declared as virtual or abstract. They are implemented in descendent classes that use a specific data packet format, such as TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader or TXMLDatapacketReader (in xmldatapacketreader.pp).

TDataPacketReaderClass = TDataPacketHandlerClass

Class type used to create data packet readers for TBufDataset.

```
TDBCompareStruct = Array of TDBCompareRec = record
    CompareFunc
    : TCompareFunc;
    Off : PtrInt;
```

```

NullBOff : PtrInt;
FieldInd :
LongInt;
Size : Integer;
Options : TLocateOptions;
Desc : Boolean
;
end

```

TDBCompareStruct is an array of TDBCompareRec type used to implement a structure to compare values for a group of fields in TBufDataset. TDBCompareStruct is used in the implementation of TBufIndex and its descendent classes.

TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader = TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler

TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader is a TDatapacketReader descendant that implements a data packet reader using binary data packets. Binary data packets use the following layout:

Table 7.3:

Section	Name	Length	Description
Header	Identification	13 bytes	Contains the value 'B
	Version	1 byte	Version number
	Field Definition Count	2 bytes	Column Layout for fie
Field Definitions	Field Name Length	2 bytes	Section occurs the num
	Field Name	See above	Name of the field in th
	Display Name Length	2 bytes	
	Display Name	See above	Caption for the field
	Data Type	2 bytes	
	Read-Only Attribute	1 byte	0=read/write, 1=read-
	AutoInc Value	4 bytes	Integer value for the a
Parameters	Row Marker	1 byte	Contains the value \$f
Row Header	Row State	1 byte	0=original, 1=deleted
	Update Order	4 bytes	
	Null Bitmap	Variable length.	1 byte required for eig
Row Data	Optional Field Length	4 bytes	Variable-length fields
	Field Data	Bytes values for the field. See Optional Field Length.	Occurs the number of

```

TRecordsUpdateBuffer = Array of TRecUpdateBuffer = record
Processing
: Boolean;
UpdateKind : TUpdateKind;
BookmarkData : TBufBookmark
;
NextBookmarkData : TBufBookmark;
OldValuesBuffer : TRecordBuffer
;
end

```

TRecordsUpdateBuffer is an array of TRecUpdateBuffer type used to implement an array of update buffers for records in TBufDataset.


```
TResolverErrorEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    DataSet: TCustomBufDataset;
    E: EUpdateError;
                                UpdateKind
    : TUpdateKind;
                                var Response: TResolverResponse
    )
                                of object
```

TResolverErrorEvent is an object procedure which defines an event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating a record in TBufDataset. TResolverErrorEvent is the type used for the TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError property. Applications should create a routine which uses the signature for the type to handle the event notification. The routine should update the Response argument to indicate the action taken for the event notification.

```
TRowState = Set of TRowStateValue = (rsvOriginal, rsvDeleted, rsvInserted
    , rsvUpdated,
                                rsvDetailUpdates)
```

TRowState is a set type used to store values from the TRowStateValue enumeration. TRowState is used to indicate the state for records loaded and saved using the data packet handler in TBufDataset.

```
TRowStateValue = (rsvOriginal, rsvDeleted, rsvInserted, rsvUpdated,
    rsvDetailUpdates)
```

Table 7.4: Enumeration values for type TRowStateValue

Value	Explanation
rsvDeleted	Buffer is for a record that will be deleted.
rsvDetailUpdates	Buffer is for updates to a detail (child) dataset.
rsvInserted	Buffer is for a record that will be inserted.
rsvOriginal	Buffer contains the original value(s).
rsvUpdated	Buffer is for a record that will be updated.

TRowStateValue is an enumeration type with values that indicate the state for field values in the row. Values in the enumeration indicate how fields in an update buffer differ from the fields in the original record data. Values from TRowStateValue are stored in the TRowState type, and used in data packet readers for TBufDataset (TDataPacketReader).

7.4 Procedures and functions

7.4.1 RegisterDatapacketReader

Synopsis: Registers a data packet reader using a specific format for TBufDataset.

```
Declaration: procedure RegisterDatapacketReader
                                (ADatapacketReaderClass: TDataPacketReaderClass;
                                AFormat: TDataPacketFormat)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDatapacketReader` is a procedure which registers a class type needed to create data packet readers for a specific format. `ADatapacketReaderClass` is the class type used to create new instances of `TDataPacketReader`. `AFormat` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the format supported for data packets in the reader class.

`RegisterDatapacketReader` accesses a unit variable used to store an array of registered data packet reader classes and their associated formats. `RegisterDatapacketReader` increments the size of the array variable, and stores the values in `ADatapacketReaderClass` and `AFormat` in the `TDatapacketReaderRegistration` type. It does not perform any checks for duplicate entries, so the procedure should be called exactly once for the class type and format combination.

`RegisterDatapacketReader` is normally used in the initialization section of a unit that implements a `TDataPacketReader` descendant for a specific storage format, such as: `xmldatapacketreader.pp`.

See also: `TDataPacketReader` (214), `TDataPacketFormat` (214), `TXMLDatapacketReader` (440)

7.5 TApplyRecUpdateResult

```
TApplyRecUpdateResult = record
  HadError : Boolean;
  Response :
    TResolverResponse;
  Async : Boolean;
end
```

7.6 TBlobBuffer

```
TBlobBuffer = record
  FieldNo : Integer;
  OrgBufID : Integer;
  Buffer : pointer;
  Size : PtrInt;
end
```

`TBlobBuffer` is a record type used to represent a buffer allocated for a Blob field. Pointers to `TBlobBuffer` (`PBlobBuffer`) are used in the implementation of `TBufBlobStream` and `TBufDataset`.

7.7 TBufBlobField

```
TBufBlobField = record
  ConnBlobBuffer : Array[0..11] of Byte;
  BlobBuffer : PBlobBuffer;
end
```

Implements a Blob field for `TBufDataset`.

7.8 TBufBookmark

```
TBufBookmark = record
```

```

BookmarkData : PBufRecLinkItem;
BookmarkInt
: Integer;
BookmarkFlag : TBookmarkFlag;
end

```

TBufBookmark is a record type used to implement a Bookmark for TBufDataset.

7.9 TBufRecLinkItem

```

TBufRecLinkItem = record
  prior : PBufRecLinkItem;
  next : PBufRecLinkItem
;
end

```

Stores bookmarks to the previous and next records in a linked list.

7.10 TDBCompareRec

```

TDBCompareRec = record
  CompareFunc : TCompareFunc;
  Off : PtrInt
;
  NullBOff : PtrInt;
  FieldInd : LongInt;
  Size : Integer;
  Options
: TLocateOptions;
  Desc : Boolean;
end

```

TDBCompareRec is a record type which implements a structure used to compare buffers for fields in TBufDataset. TDBCompareRec is used in the implementation of the TDBCompareStruct type.

7.11 TRecUpdateBuffer

```

TRecUpdateBuffer = record
  Processing : Boolean;
  UpdateKind : TUpdateKind
;
  BookmarkData : TBufBookmark;
  NextBookmarkData : TBufBookmark
;
  OldValuesBuffer : TRecordBuffer;
end

```

Implements a buffer used for record updates in TBufDataset.

7.12 TArrayBufIndex

7.12.1 Description

`TArrayBufIndex` is a `TBufIndex` descendant that implements an index using an array of record buffers. `TArrayBufIndex` uses an internal member with an array of pointers to the `TRecordBuffer` data type used for record buffers in the index. `TArrayBufIndex` provides support for Bookmarks in the dataset using `TBufBookmark`.

See also: `TBufIndex` (229), `TRecordBuffer` (213), `TBufBookmark` (218)

7.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
222	<code>AddRecord</code>	
222	<code>BeginUpdate</code>	
221	<code>CanScrollForward</code>	
219	<code>Create</code>	
221	<code>DoScrollForward</code>	
222	<code>EndUpdate</code>	
220	<code>GetCurrent</code>	
221	<code>GotoBookmark</code>	
221	<code>InitialiseIndex</code>	
222	<code>InitialiseSpareRecord</code>	
222	<code>InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord</code>	
222	<code>ReleaseSpareRecord</code>	
222	<code>RemoveRecordFromIndex</code>	
221	<code>RestoreCurrentRecord</code>	
219	<code>ScrollBackward</code>	
220	<code>ScrollFirst</code>	
220	<code>ScrollForward</code>	
220	<code>ScrollLast</code>	
220	<code>SetToFirstRecord</code>	
220	<code>SetToLastRecord</code>	
221	<code>StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark</code>	
220	<code>StoreCurrentRecord</code>	
221	<code>StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark</code>	

7.12.3 TArrayBufIndex.Create

Synopsis:

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ADataset: TCustomBufDataset); override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.4 TArrayBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.5 TArrayBuflIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.6 TArrayBuflIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.7 TArrayBuflIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.8 TArrayBuflIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ScrollLast; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.9 TArrayBuflIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure SetToFirstRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.10 TArrayBuflIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure SetToLastRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.11 TArrayBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.12 TArrayBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.13 TArrayBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.14 TArrayBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.15 TArrayBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.16 TArrayBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.17 TArrayBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.18 TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.12.19 TArrayBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.20 TArrayBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.21 TArrayBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.22 TArrayBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.23 TArrayBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.24 TArrayBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: public

7.12.25 TArrayBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; override`

Visibility: public

7.13 TBufBlobStream

7.13.1 Description

TBufBlobStream is a TStream descendant which implements a Blob Stream for TBufDataset. TBufBlobStream has members which represent the Dataset and Field for the Blob, its Buffer, and modification flags. TBufBlobStream provides overridden methods used to perform Read, Write, and Seek operations using the buffer allocated for a Blob field.

TBufBlobStream instances are created in the TBufDataset.CreateBlobStream method.

See also: TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream ([244](#))

7.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
223	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
223	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.

7.13.3 TBufBlobStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Field: TBlobField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)`

Visibility: public

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

7.13.4 TBufBlobStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the destructor for the class instance.

7.14 TBufDataset

7.14.1 Description

TBufDataset is a TCustomBufDataset descendant that implements a database-aware buffered dataset. TBufDataset is an in-memory dataset that can be used as a local stand-alone dataset, or it can be used as a local buffer for updates applied to a remote dataset. TBufDataset implements many features similar to those in TClientDataset in Delphi. However, it is **not** meant to be code or function compatible with TClientDataset. It is designed to provide management of the buffers used to access record data, and is used as the ancestor for classes like TSQLQuery and TRESTBufDataset.

As a TDBDataset descendent, it offers access to many of the database features supported in the FCL DB package. As a TDataset descendent, it also offers access to familiar navigation and data handling methods in the ancestor class. TBufDataset has features that allow local storage and retrieval of field definitions and record data. In addition, facilities are provided that allow local indexing of record data

in the dataset. There is a comprehensive parser/expression evaluator available that allows complete support for Filters in the dataset.

TBufDataset sets the visibility for properties and methods defined in the ancestor class.

Additional information about using TBufDataset can be found on the Lazarus Wiki at: [How to write in-memory database applications in Lazarus/FPC \(TBufDataset\)](#).

See also: TCustomBufDataset ([237](#)), TDataset ([498](#)), TDBDataset ([544](#))

7.14.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
225	Active		
225	AfterCancel		
226	AfterClose		
226	AfterDelete		
226	AfterEdit		
226	AfterInsert		
226	AfterOpen		
226	AfterPost		
226	AfterScroll		
225	AutoCalcFields		
227	BeforeCancel		
227	BeforeClose		
227	BeforeDelete		
227	BeforeEdit		
227	BeforeInsert		
227	BeforeOpen		
227	BeforePost		
228	BeforeScroll		
229	CancelChangesOnRefresh	rw	
224	FieldDefs		
225	Filter		
225	Filtered		
224	MaxIndexesCount		
228	OnCalcFields		
228	OnDeleteError		
228	OnEditError		
228	OnFilterRecord		
228	OnNewRecord		
228	OnPostError		
225	ReadOnly		

7.14.3 TBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount

Declaration: Property MaxIndexesCount :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.4 TBufDataset.FieldDefs

Declaration: Property FieldDefs :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.5 TBufDataset.Active

Declaration: Property Active :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.6 TBufDataset.AutoCalcFields

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.7 TBufDataset.Filter

Declaration: Property Filter :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.8 TBufDataset.Filtered

Declaration: Property Filtered :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.9 TBufDataset.ReadOnly

Declaration: Property ReadOnly :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.10 TBufDataset.AfterCancel

Declaration: Property AfterCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.11 TBufDataset.AfterClose

Declaration: `Property AfterClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.12 TBufDataset.AfterDelete

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.13 TBufDataset.AfterEdit

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.14 TBufDataset.AfterInsert

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.15 TBufDataset.AfterOpen

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.16 TBufDataset.AfterPost

Declaration: `Property AfterPost :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.17 TBufDataset.AfterScroll

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.18 TBufDataset.BeforeCancel

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.19 TBufDataset.BeforeClose

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.20 TBufDataset.BeforeDelete

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.21 TBufDataset.BeforeEdit

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.22 TBufDataset.BeforeInsert

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.23 TBufDataset.BeforeOpen

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.24 TBufDataset.BeforePost

Declaration: `Property BeforePost :`

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.25 TBufDataset.BeforeScroll

Declaration: Property BeforeScroll :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.26 TBufDataset.OnCalcFields

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.27 TBufDataset.OnDeleteError

Declaration: Property OnDeleteError :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.28 TBufDataset.OnEditError

Declaration: Property OnEditError :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.29 TBufDataset.OnFilterRecord

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.30 TBufDataset.OnNewRecord

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.31 TBufDataset.OnPostError

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

7.14.32 TBufDataset.CancelChangesOnRefresh

Declaration: Property CancelChangesOnRefresh : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

7.15 TBufIndex

7.15.1 Description

TBufIndex is a TObject descendant which defines the interface used to implement indexes in TBufDataset. TBufIndex provides access to the Dataset with field values for the index, and methods to perform record navigation and index maintenance.

TBufIndex contains many virtual and abstract methods that should be implemented in a descendent class which provides a specific index implementation, such as: TDoubleLinkedBufIndex, TUniDirectionalBufIndex, and TArrayBufIndex.

TBufIndex is the type used for the TBufDataset.BufferIndex property.

See also: TDoubleLinkedBufIndex ([256](#)), TUniDirectionalBufIndex ([263](#)), TArrayBufIndex ([219](#))

7.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
235	AddRecord	Adds a record to the index.
234	BeginUpdate	
233	BookmarkValid	Indicates the specified Bookmark is valid.
232	CanScrollForward	Indicates if the index can be scrolled forward.
233	CompareBookmarks	Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.
231	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
233	DoScrollForward	Implements actions need to scroll forward in the index.
235	EndUpdate	
231	GetCurrent	Gets the record buffer for the current record in the dataset.
232	GetRecord	Gets prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark.
233	GotoBookmark	Moves the index position to the specified Bookmark.
234	InitialiseIndex	Initializes the index.
234	InitialiseSpareRecord	Initializes values in the spare record for the index.
235	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	Inserts a record before the current record in the index order.
235	OrderCurrentRecord	
234	ReleaseSpareRecord	Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.
235	RemoveRecordFromIndex	Remove the record at the specified bookmark from the index.
232	RestoreCurrentRecord	Restores the stored record buiffer to the current record.
234	SameBookmarks	Indicates if the specified Bookmarks are for the same record.
231	ScrollBackward	Moves to the prior record in the index.
231	ScrollFirst	Moves to the first record in the index.
231	ScrollForward	Moves to the next record in the index.
231	ScrollLast	Moves to the last record in the index.
232	SetToFirstRecord	Sets the index to the first record in the index order.
232	SetToLastRecord	Sets the index to the last record in the index order.
233	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
232	StoreCurrentRecord	Stores the record buffer for the current record.
233	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

7.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
237	BookmarkSize	r	Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.
236	CurrentBuffer	r	Current record buffer in the index.
236	CurrentRecord	r	Current record in the index.
236	IsInitialized	r	Indicates if the index has been initialized.
237	RecNo	rw	Active record number in the index.
236	SpareBuffer	r	Spare record buffer for the index.
236	SpareRecord	r	Spare record for the index.

7.15.4 TBufIndex.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const ADataset: TCustomBufDataset); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the class instance. `Create` calls the inherited constructor, and stores the `ADataset` parameter to the internal member used for the `TCustomBufDataset` class instance.

7.15.5 TBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis: Moves to the prior record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ScrollBackward` is a `TGetResult` function used to scrolling to the previous record in the index order. `ScrollBackward` implements the behavior needed to support the `TDataset.MoveBy` method using the index order for the dataset.

`ScrollBackward` is an abstract virtual method method, and must be implemented in a descendent class. The return value is a `TGetResult` enumeration value that indicates the result for the scroll request.

See also: `TGetResult` ([451](#)), `TDataset.MoveBy` ([516](#))

7.15.6 TBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis: Moves to the next record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

7.15.7 TBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets the record buffer for the current record in the dataset.

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TGetResult; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

7.15.8 TBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis: Moves to the first record in the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

7.15.9 TBufIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis: Moves to the last record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure ScrollLast; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

7.15.10 TBufIndex.GetRecord

Synopsis: Gets prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark.

Declaration: `function GetRecord(ABookmark: PBufBookmark; GetMode: TGetMode)
: TGetResult; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetRecord` is used to get the prior/next record relative to the specified bookmark. `GetRecord` is a virtual method that should be overridden in a descendent class; the implementation in `TBufIndex` simply returns the value `grError` as the return value for the method.

Please note that `GetRecord` should **not** change the current record in the dataset on exit.

7.15.11 TBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis: Sets the index to the first record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure SetToFirstRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.12 TBufIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis: Sets the index to the last record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure SetToLastRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.13 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Stores the record buffer for the current record.

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.14 TBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Restores the stored record buiffer to the current record.

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.15 TBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis: Indicates if the index can be scrolled forward.

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.16 TBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis: Implements actions need to scroll forward in the index.

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.17 TBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.18 TBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.19 TBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Moves the index position to the specified Bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); virtual
; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.20 TBufIndex.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Indicates the specified Bookmark is valid.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; virtual`

Visibility: public

7.15.21 TBufIndex.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Integer
; virtual`

Visibility: public

7.15.22 TBufIndex.SameBookmarks

Synopsis: Indicates if the specified Bookmarks are for the same record.

Declaration: `function SameBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; virtual`

Visibility: public

7.15.23 TBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis: Initializes the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes the index.

7.15.24 TBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Initializes values in the spare record for the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes values in the spare record for the index.

7.15.25 TBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Releases resources allocated to the spare record for the index.

7.15.26 TBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

7.15.27 TBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis: Adds a record to the index.

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Adds a record to the end of the index as the new last record (spare record). AddRecord is used in the GetNextPacket method.

7.15.28 TBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Inserts a record before the current record in the index order.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Inserts a record before the current record using the sort order for the active index.

7.15.29 TBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis: Remove the record at the specified bookmark from the index.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark); virtual
; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.15.30 TBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

7.15.31 TBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description:

7.15.32 TBufIndex.SpareRecord

Synopsis: Spare record for the index.

Declaration: `Property SpareRecord : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Spare record for the index.

7.15.33 TBufIndex.SpareBuffer

Synopsis: Spare record buffer for the index.

Declaration: `Property SpareBuffer : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Spare record buffer for the index.

7.15.34 TBufIndex.CurrentRecord

Synopsis: Current record in the index.

Declaration: `Property CurrentRecord : TRecordBuffer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current record in the index.

7.15.35 TBufIndex.CurrentBuffer

Synopsis: Current record buffer in the index.

Declaration: `Property CurrentBuffer : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current record buffer in the index.

7.15.36 TBufIndex.IsInitialized

Synopsis: Indicates if the index has been initialized.

Declaration: `Property IsInitialized : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Indicates if the index has been initialized.

7.15.37 TBufIndex.BookmarkSize

Synopsis: Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.

Declaration: `Property BookmarkSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Size (number of bytes) needed for Bookmarks in the index.

7.15.38 TBufIndex.RecNo

Synopsis: Active record number in the index.

Declaration: `Property RecNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Active record number in the index.

7.16 TCustomBufDataset

7.16.1 Description

`TCustomBufDataset` is a `TDBDataset` descendant that implements the ancestor class for a database-aware buffered dataset. `TCustomBufDataset` is an in-memory dataset that can be used as a local stand-alone dataset, or it can be used as a local buffer for updates applied to a remote dataset. `TCustomBufDataset` implements many features similar to those in `TClientDataset` in Delphi. However, it is **not** meant to be code or function compatible with `TClientDataset`. It is designed to provide management of the buffers used to access record data, and is used as the ancestor for classes like `TSQLQuery` and `TRESTBufDataset`.

As a `TDBDataset` descendant, it offers access to many of the database features supported in the FCL DB package. As a `TDataset` descendant, it also offers access to familiar navigation and data handling methods in the ancestor class. `TCustomBufDataset` has features that allow local storage and retrieval of field definitions and record data. In addition, facilities are provided that allow local indexing of record data in the dataset. There is a comprehensive parser/expression evaluator available that allows complete support for Filters in the dataset.

Do not create instances of `TCustomBufDataset`. Use the `TBufDataset` descendant instead.

Additional information about using `TBufDataset` can be found on the Lazarus Wiki at: [How to write in-memory database applications in Lazarus/FPC \(TBufDataset\)](#).

See also: `TBufDataset` ([223](#)), `TDBDataset` ([544](#)), `TDataset` ([498](#))

7.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
244	AddIndex	Adds an index definition to the dataset.
240	ApplyUpdates	Applies pending updates to the dataset.
249	BookmarkValid	Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid for the dataset.
241	CancelUpdates	Cancels pending updates in the dataset.
248	Clear	Clears the content in the dataset.
245	ClearIndexes	Clears index storage in the dataset.
249	CompareBookmarks	Gets the relative sort order for the specified Bookmarks.
249	CopyFromDataset	Loads field definitions and optional data from another dataset.
239	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
244	CreateBlobStream	Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.
248	CreateDataset	Creates the dataset using its field definitions or bound fields.
241	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
245	GetDatasetPacket	Builds a data packet representing the content in the buffered dataset.
240	GetFieldData	
247	LoadFromFile	Loads the dataset from the specified file using the given format.
246	LoadFromStream	Loads the dataset from the specified stream using the given data format.
242	Locate	Locates the first record with fields having the specified values.
242	Lookup	Gets values from the first record with fields that match the search condition.
241	MergeChangeLog	Frees update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset.
241	RevertRecord	Reverts the current record to its original (un-edited) values.
247	SaveToFile	Saves the dataset to the specified file using the given data format.
246	SaveToStream	Saves the dataset to the specified stream using the given data format.
245	SetDatasetPacket	Retrieves and applies the data packet with the content for the dataset.
240	SetFieldData	
243	UpdateStatus	Gets the update status for the current record in the dataset.

7.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
250	ChangeCount	r	Number of pending changes for the dataset.
251	FileName	rw	File name on the local file system used to load or store the dataset.
253	IndexDefs	r	Index definitions for the dataset.
253	IndexFieldNames	rw	Field names included in the custom index.
253	IndexName	rw	Name of the selected index for the dataset.
251	ManualMergeChangeLog	rw	Indicates if the update change log can be manually merged.
250	MaxIndexesCount	rw	Maximum number of indexes available in the dataset.
252	OnUpdateError	rw	Event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating records.
252	PacketRecords	rw	Number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader.
251	ReadOnly	rw	Indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the dataset.
254	UniDirectional	rw	Indicates if the dataset is for uni-directional navigation only.

7.16.4 TCustomBufDataset.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is an overridden constructor for the class instance. `Create` calls the inherited constructor using the value in `AOwner` as the owner of the class instance. `Create` sets the default value for internal members used in the implementation of the buffered dataset, including:

- Parser for data packets (`Nil`)
- Manual MergeChangeLog handling (**False**)
- Default AutoInc field value (**-1**)
- Update Buffer count (**0**)
- Blob Buffer count (**0**)
- Blob Update Buffer count (**0**)

`Create` sets the value for public and published properties, including:

- MaxIndexesCount (**2**)
- PacketRecords (**10**)

`Create` allocates resources needed for the `BufIndexdefs` and `BufIndexes` properties.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount` ([250](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords` ([252](#))

7.16.5 TCustomBufDataset.GetFieldData

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                                NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean; override
function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean
; override
```

Visibility: public

Description:

7.16.6 TCustomBufDataset.SetFieldData

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                                NativeFormat: Boolean); override
procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer); override
```

Visibility: public

Description:

7.16.7 TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates

Synopsis: Applies pending updates to the dataset.

```
Declaration: procedure ApplyUpdates; virtual; overload
procedure ApplyUpdates(MaxErrors: Integer); virtual; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: `ApplyUpdates` is an overloaded procedure used to apply pending updates for the dataset.

`ApplyUpdates` calls `CheckBrowseMode` and gets a bookmark for the current record in the dataset. The bookmark is used to return the dataset its original record after updates are applied and the dataset has been refreshed.

`MaxErrors` is the threshold where errors encountered in the process cause it to be aborted. The value 0 (zero) indicates no errors are allowed during the apply updates process.

`ApplyUpdates` uses the internal update buffers allocated for the dataset to perform the actions required in the method. The `ApplyRecUpdate` method is called for each of the update buffers. An exception raised in `ApplyRecUpdate` is handled in the method. When the value in `MaxErrors` is exceeded, the process is aborted. Otherwise, the update buffer is skipped. If the `OnUpdateError` exception handler has been assigned, it is signalled using the required arguments and its `Response` value is captured in the method. If the process is to be aborted, an exception is raised to indicate the condition.

When an update buffer is successfully applied, resources allocated to its `OldValuesBuffer`, `Bookmark` data, and the update buffer itself are freed. If all pending updates are applied successfully, and `ManualMergeChangeLog` contains `False`, the `MergeChangeLog` method is called.

`ApplyUpdates` calls `Resync` to fresh the records displayed in the dataset prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([506](#)), `TRecUpdateBuffer` ([218](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError` ([252](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog` ([251](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog` ([241](#)), `TDataset.Resync` ([518](#))

7.16.8 TCustomBufDataset.MergeChangeLog

Synopsis: Frees update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure MergeChangeLog`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MergeChangeLog` is a procedure used to free update buffers and Blob update buffer allocated for the dataset. `MergeChangeLog` is called from the `ApplyUpdates` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` ([240](#))

7.16.9 TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord

Synopsis: Reverts the current record to its original (un-edited) values.

Declaration: `procedure RevertRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RevertRecord` is a procedure used to revert changes in the current record to their original (un-edited) values. `RevertRecord` calls the `CheckBrowseMode` method to ensure that the dataset is Active, and to perform event notifications for a change in dataset state.

`RevertRecord` checks for an update buffer in the current record, and when found calls the `CancelRecordUpdateBuffer` method and removes the update buffer. The `Resync` method is called to refresh the records in the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([506](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([528](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.Resync` ([237](#))

7.16.10 TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates

Synopsis: Cancels pending updates in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CancelUpdates; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CancelUpdates` is a procedure used to cancel pending updates to records in the dataset. `CancelUpdates` calls the `CheckBrowseMode` method to ensure that the dataset is Active, and to perform event notifications for a change in dataset state.

`CancelUpdates` checks for existing update buffers allocated in the dataset. When update buffers exist, the `CancelRecordUpdateBuffer` method is called for the bookmark in each of the update buffers.

`CancelUpdates` restores the record position when able, and calls `Resync` to refresh the records available in the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.CheckBrowseMode` ([506](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([528](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.Resync` ([237](#))

7.16.11 TCustomBufDataset.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` is the overridden destructor for the class instance. `Destroy` calls the `Close` method if the dataset contains `True` in the `Active` property.

`Destroy` frees resources allocated to the internal buffers for records, and `Blob` fields. The `ClearIndexes` method is called to free resources allocated for index storage mechanisms. `Destroy` calls the inherited destructor.

7.16.12 TCustomBufDataset.Locate

Synopsis: Locates the first record with fields having the specified values.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant; Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Locate` is an overridden `Boolean` function used to locate the first record with fields that match the specified search values. `Locate` implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

`KeyFields` is a delimited list of field names searched in the method. The delimiter character is `'` (Semicolon).

`KeyValues` is a `Variant` type with the field values required for the specified `KeyFields`. When `KeyFields` contains a single field name, `KeyValues` can be represented using the same data type as the field value. When `KeyFields` contains more than one field name, it is a `Variant` array.

`Options` is a `TLocateOptions` parameter that indicates the locate options enabled in the method. Options can contain zero (0) or more values from the `TLocateOption` enumeration.

`Locate` calls the inherited method to ensure that the dataset supports bi-directional navigation. An `Exception` is raised if the `UniDirectional` property contains `True`. The value in the `Active` property is checked to ensure that the dataset has been opened. An `Exception` is raised if `Active` contains `False`. No actions are performed in the method when `IsEmpty` returns `True`.

`Locate` initializes an internal `TDBCompareStruct` instance that is used when searching field values using the `SearchFields` and `Options` arguments. The search is performed by using the `Filter` feature; the filter fields are set to the values in `KeyValues`. Each record in the dataset is visited and the `OnFilterRecord` event is signalled to determine if the record meets the `Filter` criteria. The search ends when a record is found that matches the search values.

The record position is changed to the marching record, or positioned at the end-of-file when no matching record is found.

The return value is `True` if a record was located that matched the search values.

See also: `TDataset.Locate` (515), `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (254), `TDataset.Active` (528), `TDataset.Filter` (527), `TDataset.OnFilterRecord` (527), `TLocateOptions` (452), `TDBCompareStruct` (215)

7.16.13 TCustomBufDataset.Lookup

Synopsis: Gets values from the first record with fields that match the search condition.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant; const ResultFields: string) : Variant; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Lookup` is an overridden `Variant` function used to get values from the first record with fields that match the specified search values. `Lookup` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class. `Lookup` allows searching one or more fields for corresponding values, and returning a set of field values from the matching record.

KeyFields is a delimited list of field names searched in the method. The delimiter character is ';' (**Semicolon**). The following example would represent the fields **LASTNAME** and **FIRSTNAME**:

```
'LASTNAME; FIRSTNAME'
```

KeyValues is a Variant type with the field values required for the specified KeyFields. When KeyFields contains a single field name, KeyValues can be represented using the same data type as the field value. When KeyFields contains more than one field name, it is a Variant array. Using the previous values for KeyFields, the following would represent the values for '**JOHN SMITH**':

```
VarArrayOf([ 'SMITH', 'JOHN' ])
```

ResultFields contains one or more field names which determine the field values to include in the return value for the method. Like KeyFields, it is a delimited list of field names using ';' (**Semicolon**) as the delimiter character.

The return value is a Variant type that contains a value for each of the field names specified in the ResultFields argument. When a matching record is located, the return value is a Variant array. The return value is Null if a record is not found matching the specified KeyValues in its KeyFields.

```
var
  AVarValues: Variant;
  ABufDataset: TBufDataset;

// ...

ABufDataset.Lookup('lastname;firstname',
  VarArrayOf(['SMITH', 'JOHN']), 'lastname;firstname;birthdate;emailaddress');

if not VarIsNull(AVarValues) then
  DoSomethingWith(AVarValues)
else
  WriteLn('No records match the search criteria');
```

Lookup does not change the record position in the dataset. A temporary TBookmark is used to record the current record in the dataset. The record position is restored prior to exiting from the method.

Lookup calls the Locate method to search records in the dataset using the KeyFields and KeyValues arguments. The Locate method may raise an Exception if the dataset is configured for UniDirectional access or when it is not Active.

See also: TCustomBufDataset.Locate ([242](#)), TDataset.Active ([528](#)), TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional ([254](#))

7.16.14 TCustomBufDataset.UpdateStatus

Synopsis: Gets the update status for the current record in the dataset.

Declaration: function UpdateStatus : TUpdateStatus; override

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateStatus` is an overridden `TUpdateStatus` function used to get the update status for the current record in the dataset. `UpdateStatus` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class. The return value is a member of the `TUpdateStatus` enumeration, and includes the following values:

usUnmodified Record has not been modified
usModified Record has been modified
usInserted Records was appended or inserted
usDeleted Record has been deleted

`UpdateStatus` calls `GetActiveRecordUpdateBuffer` to get the update buffer for the `ActiveRecord`. When an update buffer exists for the record, its `UpdateKind` property is used as the return value for the method. The return value is `usUnmodified` when an update buffer does not exist for `ActiveRecord`.

See also: `TUpdateStatus` (457), `TDataset.ActiveRecord` (498)

7.16.15 TCustomBufDataset.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)
: TStream; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a Blob stream for the specified field with the given permissions.

See also: `TDataset.CreateBlobStream` (508), `TField` (551), `TBlobStreamMode` (443)

7.16.16 TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex

Synopsis: Adds an index definition to the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure AddIndex(const AName: string; const AFields: string;
AOptions: TIndexOptions;
const ADescFields: string='';
const ACaseInsFields: string=''); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddIndex` is a procedure used to add an index definition to the dataset. `AddIndex` calls `CheckBiDirectional` to ensure that the `UniDirectional` property contains `False`. An exception is raised if `UniDirectional` contains `True`.

`AddIndex` checks for a valid value in the `AFields` argument. An Exception is raised when `AFields` is an empty string ("). In addition, an index added to an Active dataset cannot cause the index count to exceed the value in `MaxIndexesCount`. An Exception is raised if the index count would be larger than the value in `MaxIndexesCount`.

`AddIndex` creates a `TBufDatasetIndex` instance by calling `InternalAddIndex` using the arguments passed to the method. The new index is temporary when the `Active` property contains `True`; it will be discarded when the dataset is closed.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (254), `TDataset.Active` (528), `TBufDatasetIndex` (213)

7.16.17 TCustomBufDataset.ClearIndexes

Synopsis: Clears index storage in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure ClearIndexes`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearIndexes` is a procedure used to clear the storage for all indexes in the dataset. `ClearIndexes` uses the index definitions in the `BufIndexDefs` property and calls the `ClearIndex` method for each of the indexes.

`ClearIndexes` calls `CheckInactive` to ensure that the dataset has its `Active` property set to `False`. Indexes cannot be cleared if the dataset has been opened.

`ClearIndexes` is used when the value in the `UniDirectional` property is changed to `False`, and in the destructor for the class instance.

See also: `TDataset.CheckInactive` ([498](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` ([254](#))

7.16.18 TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket

Synopsis: Retrieves and applies the data packet with the content for the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure SetDatasetPacket (AReader: TDataPacketHandler)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetDatasetPacket` is a procedure used to retrieve and apply the data packet with the content for the dataset.

`AReader` is a `TDataPacketReader` instance that is used to read and apply the content for the buffered dataset. It is temporarily assigned to an internal member in the calls instance.

`SetDatasetPacket` calls the `Open` method to load the field definitions and record data for the dataset.

`SetDatasetPacket` is used in the implementation of the `LoadFromStream` method.

See also: `TDataset.Open` ([517](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream` ([246](#)), `TDataPacketReader` ([214](#))

7.16.19 TCustomBufDataset.GetDatasetPacket

Synopsis: Builds a data packet representing the content in the buffered dataset.

Declaration: `procedure GetDatasetPacket (AWriter: TDataPacketHandler)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDatasetPacket` is a procedure used to build the data packet that represents the content in the buffered dataset. `GetDatasetPacket` ensures that record buffers and update buffers in the dataset are normalized and applied using the data packet handler (n.b. I won't call it a reader if it writes) in `AWriter`.

`GetDatasetPacket` sequentially processes records using the currently selected index for the dataset. Update buffers for a given record are consolidate in the record buffer, and the record buffer is stored to the data packet handler. The current record position is not changed when the process has been completed.

`GetDatasetPacket` stores the current value for an auto-increment field used in the dataset in the `AWriter` argument. The internal data packet handler for the dataset is set to `Nil` when the method is completed.

`GetDatasetPacket` is used in the implementation of the `SaveToStream` method.

See also: `TDataPacketReader` ([214](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream` ([246](#))

7.16.20 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the dataset from the specified stream using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(AStream: TStream;
Format: TDataPacketFormat=dfDefault)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` is a procedure used to load field definitions and record data for the dataset from the specified stream. `LoadFromStream` is an overloaded variant of the method defined in the ancestor class and includes a parameter for the desired data packet format.

`AStream` is a `TStream` descendant with the values to load in the dataset. `Format` indicates the expected format for data packets in the stream. It is a variable argument that can be modified when a packet reader is located for the stream.

`LoadFromStream` calls `CheckBiDirectional` to ensure that the `UniDirectional` property in the dataset is set to `False`. An exception is raised when `UniDirectional` contains `True`. Index creation requires navigating in a non-default record order that would not be supported in a uni-directional dataset.

`LoadFromStream` creates a temporary `TDataPacketReader` class instance using the value specified in the `Format` argument. `Format` is a variable argument and can be modified when `SetDatasetPacket` is used to examine the packet reader and its stream. Calling `SetDatasetPacket` sets in motion a relatively complicated sequence of events that eventually get the field definitions and record data loaded into the dataset. The journey starts with `Open`.

`LoadFromStream` is used in the implementation of the `LoadFromFile` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (254), `TCustomBufDataset.SetDatasetPacket` (245), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile` (247), `TDataset.Open` (517), `TDataPacketFormat` (214)

7.16.21 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Saves the dataset to the specified stream using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream;
Format: TDataPacketFormat=dfBinary)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` is a procedure used to store the content in the buffered dataset to a stream using the specified data format.

`AStream` is a `TStream` descendant where the field definitions and record data in the dataset will be stored.

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the format used to stored dataset values into the stream. The default value is `dfBinary`, and causes the `TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader` to be used to write the content for the dataset. Use another value from the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration to select a different registered data packet handler that handles the associated data format.

`SaveToStream` calls the `CheckBiDirectional` method to ensure that the dataset is opened for bi-directional record navigation. An Exception is raised if the `UniDirectional` property contains `True`. A temporary `TDataPacketReader` instance is created using the specified `Format`. `SaveToStream` calls the `GetDatasetPacket` method using the data packet handler to store the content in the buffered dataset to the stream.

`SaveToStream` is used in the implementation of the `SaveToFile` method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` (254), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile` (247), `TDataPacketFormat` (214), `RegisterDatapacketReader` (216), `TDataPacketReaderClass` (214), `TDataPacketReader` (214)

7.16.22 TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads the dataset from the specified file using the given format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string='';
Format: TDataPacketFormat=dfDefault)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` is a procedure used to load field definitions and record data from a file stored using a given data format.

`AFileName` is a `String` with the name of the file on the local file system. `AFileName` can contain optional path information, and should include the base name and extension for the file. For example:

```
ABufDataset.LoadFromFile('/usr/data/sample.bds');
```

or

```
ABufDataset.LoadFromFile('c:\usr\data\sample.bds');
```

The default value for `AFileName` is an empty string (`''`). When `AFileName` is an empty string, the value in the `FileName` property is used to load the content for the dataset. An `Exception` will be raised if both `AFileName` and `FileName` contain an empty `String` (`''`), or when the file name does not exist on the local file system.

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the storage format used for the content in the file. The default value for `Format` is `dfAny`, and indicates that any registered data packet handler can be used to read the values in the file. Other values in the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration indicate a specific registered data packet handler supporting a specific format should be used.

`LoadFromFile` creates a temporary `TFileStream` instance for the specified file name, and calls the `LoadFromStream` method to load the dataset from the stream using the specified file `Format`.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([251](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromStream` ([246](#))

7.16.23 TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves the dataset to the specified file using the given data format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string='';
Format: TDataPacketFormat=dfBinary)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` is a procedure used to save the content from the buffered dataset to the specified file name using a given data format.

`AFileName` is a `String` with the name of the file on the local file system. `AFileName` can contain optional path information, and should include the base name and extension for the file. For example:

```
ABufDataset.SaveToFile('/usr/data/sample.bds');
```

or


```
ABufDataset.SaveToFile('c:\usr\data\sample.bds');
```

The default value for `AFileName` is an empty string (''). When `AFileName` is omitted, the value in the `FileName` property will be used to save the content for the dataset. An Exception will be raised if both `AFileName` and `FileName` contain an empty String ('').

`Format` is a `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration value that indicates the storage format to use when writing the content for the file. The default value for `Format` is `dfBinary`, and indicates that the `TFpcBinaryDatapacketReader` should be used to write the values in the file. Other values in the `TDataPacketFormat` enumeration indicate a specific registered data packet handler supporting a specific format should be used.

`SaveToFile` creates a temporary `TFileStream` instance for the specified file name, and calls the `SaveToStream` method to store the dataset to the stream in the required `Format`.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([251](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToStream` ([246](#))

7.16.24 TCustomBufDataset.CreateDataset

Synopsis: Creates the dataset using its field definitions or bound fields.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDataset`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateDataset` is a procedure used to create the structure for a buffered dataset using the field definitions or bound fields defined in the class instance. `CreateDataset` calls `CheckInactive` to ensure that the dataset has not been opened. An exception is raised if the `Active` property contains `True`.

`CreateDataset` uses the `FieldDefs` and `Fields` properties to determine which property contains the structure for the dataset.

Preference is given to the `FieldDefs` property; it will be used even when bound fields have been created in the `Fields` property. The `CreateFields` method is called to create a bound field for each of the items in the `FieldDefs` collection.

The `Fields` property is used when there are no field definitions present in the `FieldDefs` property. The `InitFieldDefsFromFields` method is called to create a field definition in `FieldDefs` for each of the items in `Fields` collection. The `BindFields` method is called to link the items in `Fields` to the corresponding field definition in `FieldDefs`.

An exception is raised if both `FieldDefs` and `Fields` are empty.

`CreateDataset` sets the default value for an auto-increment field in the dataset to 1. `CreateDataset` also temporarily clears any value assigned to the `FileName` property; this is done to ensure that fields and record data in an existing file are not loaded when the dataset is `Opened`. The method is designed to create a dataset with field definitions but no record data. The value in `FileName` is restored after `Open` has been called in the method.

See also: `TDataset.Active` ([528](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([523](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([526](#)), `TDataset.Open` ([517](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.FileName` ([251](#))

7.16.25 TCustomBufDataset.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the content in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is a procedure used to remove the content in the buffered dataset. `Clear` calls the `Close` method to ensure that the dataset has set its `Active` property to `False` and removed indexes and their storage. `Clear` removes field definition and bound fields in the `FieldDefs` and `Fields` properties.

See also: `TDataset.Close` ([507](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([523](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([526](#))

7.16.26 TCustomBufDataset.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Determines if the specified `Bookmark` is valid for the dataset.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookmark) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BookmarkValid` is an overridden `Boolean` function used to determine if the `Bookmark` specified in `ABookmark` is valid for the currently selected index in the dataset. `BookmarkValid` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

`BookmarkValid` requires an index be selected and assigned to the `CurrentIndexBuf` property. The return value is `False` when no index is available to validate the bookmark. The return value is `True` when `ABookmark` represents a valid bookmark in the selected index.

See also: `TBufIndex.BookmarkValid` ([233](#))

7.16.27 TCustomBufDataset.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative sort order for the specified `Bookmarks`.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookmark; Bookmark2: TBookmark) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareBookmarks` is an overridden `LongInt` function used to get the relative sort order for the specified `Bookmarks`. `CompareBookmarks` re-implements the method defined in the ancestor class.

The return value indicates the relative sort order for the compared bookmark values, and uses the following values and meanings:

0 Compared bookmarks have the same value

1 `Bookmark1` is not assigned, or `Bookmark1` occurs after `Bookmark2` in the index

-1 `Bookmark2` is not assigned, or the current index has not been assigned (default value), or `Bookmark1` occurs before `Bookmark2` in the index

When the `CurentIndexBuf` property is assigned, its `CompareBookmarks` method is used to compare the bookmarks and get the return value for the method.

See also: `TBufIndex` ([229](#))

7.16.28 TCustomBufDataset.CopyFromDataset

Synopsis: Loads field definitions and optional data from another dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFromDataset(DataSet: TDataSet; CopyData: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyFromDataset` is a procedure used to copy field definitions and optional record data for the dataset specified in the `Dataset` argument. `CopyData` indicates if record data is included in the copy operation. When `CopyData` contains `False`, only the field definitions in `DataSet` are copied to the buffered dataset.

`CopyFromDataset` calls the `Close` method prior to performing actions that clear field definitions and bound fields in the buffered dataset. A field definition is added to `FieldDefs` for each of the fields in `DataSet`. `CreateDataset` is called to bind `Fields` to the new field definitions, and to initialize index storage for the buffered dataset.

When `CopyData` contains `True`, record data from `DataSet` is copied to the class instance on a row-by-row and field-by-field basis. `Append` is called to add a new record. Internal lists with field definitions and bound fields are used to copy field values in the record (including `Blob` fields). Null field values are not copied in the method. The `DataType` for the field is used to read/write the field values. For blob fields, a temporary stream is used to read/write the field value. The `Post` method is called to store appended values in the buffered dataset. If an exception is raised, the `Cancel` method is called to clear the update and the exception is re-raised.

The record position in `DataSet` is restored to its original position prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TDataset.Close` (507), `TDataset.Cancel` (506), `TDataset.FieldDefs` (523)

7.16.29 TCustomBufDataset.ChangeCount

Synopsis: Number of pending changes for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property ChangeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ChangeCount` is a read-only `Integer` property that indicates the number of pending changes in the update buffers allocated for the dataset. Update buffers are maintained in an internal `TRecord-UpdateBuffer` member when methods that add, delete, or modify record data are called.

`ChangeCount` can be used in an application to determine if `ApplyUpdates`, `CancelUpdates`, or `RevertRecord` should be called prior to closing the dataset.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` (240), `TCustomBufDataset.CancelUpdates` (241), `TCustomBufDataset.RevertRecord` (241)

7.16.30 TCustomBufDataset.MaxIndexesCount

Synopsis: Maximum number of indexes available in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property MaxIndexesCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MaxIndexesCount` is an `Integer` property which indicates the maximum number of indexes available in the buffered dataset. The default value for the property is 2; representing the automatically created default index ('`DEFAULT_ORDER`') and custom index ('`CUSTOM_ORDER`').

The value in `MaxIndexesCount` is assigned when the dataset is created, and updated when an index is added using the `AddIndex` method. Setting the value in the `MaxIndexesCount` property requires the dataset to be inactive (`Active` property contains `False`). An exception is raised if the dataset is

Active, or the new value for the property is less than 2. You should not need to directly assign the value for the `MaxIndexesCount` property.

`MaxIndexesCount` is used in the `BufferOffset` method to determine the amount of space reserved for `TBufRecLinkItem` items in a record buffer for the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.Active` ([528](#)), `TCustomBufDataset.AddIndex` ([244](#))

7.16.31 TCustomBufDataset.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReadOnly` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if records can be added, deleted, or modified in the buffered dataset. The default value for the property is `False`.

`ReadOnly` is used, along with `UniDirectional`, when getting the value for the `CanModify` property. The dataset can be modified when both source properties contain the value `False`, which results in setting `CanModify` to `True`. Applications can set the value in `ReadOnly` to `False` to ensure that the dataset is not changeable regardless of the value in the `UniDirectional` property.

Use the items in the `FieldDefs` property to control whether individual fields defined for the dataset include the read-only field attribute. Use the items in the `Fields` property to determine if a field bound to a field definition has its `ReadOnly` property set.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional` ([254](#)), `TDataset.CanModify` ([521](#)), `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([523](#)), `TDataset.Fields` ([526](#))

7.16.32 TCustomBufDataset.ManualMergeChangeLog

Synopsis: Indicates if the update change log can be manually merged.

Declaration: `Property ManualMergeChangeLog : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ManualMergeChangeLog` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if the update change log for the dataset can be manually merged. The default value for the property is `False`.

7.16.33 TCustomBufDataset.FileName

Synopsis: File name on the local file system used to load or store the dataset.

Declaration: `Property FileName : TFileName`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is a `TFileName` property that contains a file name on the local file system used to load and/or store the content for the buffered dataset. `FileName` can contain optional path information needed to access the file, and must contain a valid file name and extension for the local file system. For example:

```
ABufDataset.FileName := '/usr/data/sample.bds';
```

or

```
ABufDataset.FileName := 'c:\usr\data\sample.bds';
```

The value in `FileName` is used in methods which load and/or save field definitions and record data for the dataset, such as `LoadFromFile` and `SaveToFile`. In these methods, `FileName` is used as the default value for an omitted file name argument in the method(s). `FileName` is used in the implementation of other methods such as: `InternalInitFieldDef`, `IntLoadFieldDefsFromFile`, and `InternalOpen`.

`FileName` is also used in the `DoBeforeClose` method called when the value in the `Active` property is changed from `True` to `False`. In this method, `FileName` is passed to `SaveToFile` as an argument prior to exiting from the method.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.LoadFromFile` (247), `TCustomBufDataset.SaveToFile` (247), `TDataset.Open` (517), `TDataset.Close` (507)

7.16.34 TCustomBufDataset.PacketRecords

Synopsis: Number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader.

Declaration: `Property PacketRecords : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PacketRecords` is an `Integer` property that indicates the number of records allowed in a data packet handled by the packet reader. The default value for the property is 10, and is intended to minimize memory and network overhead when processing data packets for the dataset. The value in `PacketRecords` is used in the `FetchAll` and `GetNextPacket` methods.

Additional validation is performed when setting the value for `PacketRecords` to ensure that the new property value is not -1. An exception is raised when -1 is the value for the property.

7.16.35 TCustomBufDataset.OnUpdateError

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an error occurs while updating records.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdateError : TResolverErrorEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUpdateError` is a `TResolverErrorEvent` property that represents the event handler signalled when an error occurs while applying updates to records in the buffered dataset. `OnUpdateError` allows an application to perform actions needed when a database exception occurs in the `ApplyUpdates` method.

Applications can assign a procedure to the event handler that implements the `TResolverErrorEvent` signature to respond to the event notification. The procedure must set the value in its `Response` argument to indicate whether the condition is handled, ignored, or can be re-raised in the calling method.

See also: `TResolverErrorEvent` (216), `TCustomBufDataset.ApplyUpdates` (240)

7.16.36 TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs

Synopsis: Index definitions for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property IndexDefs : TIndexDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `IndexDefs` is a read-only `TIndexDefs` property that contains the index definitions for the buffered dataset. Read access to the property is redirected to an internal `TBufDatasetIndexDefs` member used for the `BufIndexDefs` and `BufIndexes` properties.

See also: `TBufDatasetIndexDefs` ([237](#)), `TIndexDefs` ([601](#))

7.16.37 TCustomBufDataset.IndexName

Synopsis: Name of the selected index for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property IndexName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IndexName` is a `String` property that contains the name for the selected index for the buffered dataset. The value in `IndexName` is read from the corresponding property in `CurrentIndexBuf` (when assigned).

If an empty string (") is assigned to the property, the the default index is selected for the dataset and the property is updated to 'DEFAULT_ORDER'. Any other value assigned to the property is compared to the index definitions for the dataset. If an index cannot be located with the specified name, a Database exception is raised. The index with the specified name (and its storage mechanism) are stored in the `CurrentIndexDef` and `CurrentIndexBuf` properties. If the dataset is Active, the `Resync` method is called to enable the new record order for the dataset.

See also: `TDataset.Active` ([528](#)), `TDataset.Resync` ([518](#))

7.16.38 TCustomBufDataset.IndexFieldNames

Synopsis: Field names included in the custom index.

Declaration: `Property IndexFieldNames : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IndexFieldNames` is a `String` property which contains a delimited list of field names used to construct the custom index for the dataset. Field names are separated by a ';' (Semicolon) delimiter. An optional directive can be included after the field name to indicate that the field should be in descending sort order in the index. For example:

```
ABufDataset.IndexFieldNames := 'LASTNAME; FIRSTNAME; UPDATETS DESC';
```

Please note that the leading Space character before the **DESC** directive is **required**.

When reading the value in `IndexFieldNames`, the current index is examined to determine if any of the field names in the property also appear in the descending fields for the index. The ' DESC' directive is added to the field name to indicate the sort order used in the index.

Setting the value for the property to an empty string (") causes the default index (' DEFAULT_ORDER') to be used as the selected index in the `CurrentIndexDef` property. When the new property value is not an empty string, and the dataset is Active, the `BuildCustomIndex` method is called to populate index storage with values for the specified field names.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.CurrentIndexDef` ([237](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([528](#))

7.16.39 TCustomBufDataset.UniDirectional

Synopsis: Indicates if the dataset is for uni-directional navigation only.

Declaration: `Property UniDirectional : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UniDirectional` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if the dataset is limited to forward navigation through its records. The default value for the property is `False`.

`UniDirectional` is used, along with `ReadOnly`, to determine if the dataset can be modified. When either property contains `True`, the dataset cannot be changed.

`UniDirectional` also affects the index storage mechanisms created when indexes are initialized. When `UniDirectional` is `True`, the `TUniDirectionalBufIndex` type (which omits bookmarks and record numbers) is used for index storage mechanisms. In addition, the custom index (' CUSTOM_ORDER') is skipped for the uni-directional dataset.

Setting the value in `UniDirectional` requires the dataset to be inactive (`Active` contains `False`) to allow existing indexes to be cleared and rebuilt. Use the `Close` method to close the dataset prior to setting the value in the `UniDirectional` property.

See also: `TDataset.ReadOnly` ([498](#)), `TDataset.Active` ([528](#))

7.17 TDataPacketHandler

7.17.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
255	Create	
256	FinalizeStoreRecords	
255	GetCurrentRecord	
255	GetRecordRowState	
255	GotoNextRecord	
255	InitLoadRecords	
255	LoadFieldDefs	
256	RecognizeStream	
255	RestoreRecord	
255	StoreFieldDefs	
256	StoreRecord	

7.17.2 TDataPacketHandler.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(ADataset: TCustomBufDataset; AStream: TStream)
; virtual

Visibility: public

7.17.3 TDataPacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure LoadFieldDefs(var AnAutoIncValue: Integer); virtual
; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.4 TDataPacketHandler.InitLoadRecords

Declaration: procedure InitLoadRecords; virtual; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.5 TDataPacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord

Declaration: function GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; virtual; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.6 TDataPacketHandler.GetRecordRowState

Declaration: function GetRecordRowState(out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState; virtual
; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.7 TDataPacketHandler.RestoreRecord

Declaration: procedure RestoreRecord; virtual; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.8 TDataPacketHandler.GotoNextRecord

Declaration: procedure GotoNextRecord; virtual; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.9 TDataPacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure StoreFieldDefs(AnAutoIncValue: Integer); virtual; abstract

Visibility: public

7.17.10 TDataPacketHandler.StoreRecord

Declaration: `procedure StoreRecord(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder: Integer=0)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.17.11 TDataPacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords

Declaration: `procedure FinalizeStoreRecords; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.17.12 TDataPacketHandler.RecognizeStream

Declaration: `class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) : Boolean; virtual
; abstract`

Visibility: public

7.18 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex

7.18.1 Description

TDoubleLinkedBufIndex is a TBufIndex descendant that implements an index using a doubly-linked list. Nodes in the doubly-linked list are implemented using the TBufRecLinkItem record type and the PBufRecLinkItem pointer type. TDoubleLinkedBufIndex provides two sentinel nodes that represent the first and last items in the linked list.

TDoubleLinkedBufIndex is the type used to implement the default index ('DEFAULT_ORDER') in TBufDataset.

See also: TBufIndex ([229](#)), TBufRecLinkItem ([218](#)), PBufRecLinkItem ([214](#)), TBufDataset ([223](#))

7.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
261	AddRecord	Adds a record to the index.
260	BeginUpdate	
259	CanScrollForward	Indicates if the index can be scrolled towards the end of the index.
260	CompareBookmarks	
259	DoScrollForward	Implements actions needed to scroll forward using the index.
261	EndUpdate	
257	GetCurrent	
258	GetRecord	
259	GotoBookmark	Navigates the index to the specified Bookmark.
260	InitialiseIndex	Initializes the index.
260	InitialiseSpareRecord	Initializes the spare record in the index.
261	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	Inserts a record prior to the current record in the index.
261	OrderCurrentRecord	
260	ReleaseSpareRecord	Releases the spare record in the index.
261	RemoveRecordFromIndex	Removes the record at the specified Bookmark from the index.
259	RestoreCurrentRecord	
260	SameBookmarks	Compares Bookmark values for ordering in the index.
257	ScrollBackward	Scrolls the index toward the beginning of the index.
258	ScrollFirst	Scrolls to the first entry in the index.
257	ScrollForward	Scrolls the index towards the end of the index.
258	ScrollLast	Scrolls to the last entry in the index.
258	SetToFirstRecord	
258	SetToLastRecord	
259	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
258	StoreCurrentRecord	
259	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

7.18.3 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis: Scrolls the index toward the beginning of the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.4 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis: Scrolls the index towards the end of the index.

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.5 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: function GetCurrent : TGetResult; override

Visibility: public

7.18.6 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis: Scrolls to the first entry in the index.

Declaration: function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; override

Visibility: public

7.18.7 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis: Scrolls to the last entry in the index.

Declaration: procedure ScrollLast; override

Visibility: public

7.18.8 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GetRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: function GetRecord(ABookmark: PBufBookmark; GetMode: TGetMode)
: TGetResult; override

Visibility: public

7.18.9 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToFirstRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.18.10 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToLastRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.18.11 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure StoreCurrentRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.18.12 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.13 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis: Indicates if the index can be scrolled towards the end of the index.

Declaration: `function CanScrollForward : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.14 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis: Implements actions needed to scroll forward using the index.

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.15 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.16 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.17 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Navigates the index to the specified Bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.18 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Integer
; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.19 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.SameBookmarks

Synopsis: Compares Bookmark values for ordering in the index.

Declaration: `function SameBookmarks(const ABookmark1: PBufBookmark;
const ABookmark2: PBufBookmark) : Boolean
; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.20 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis: Initializes the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.21 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Initializes the spare record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.22 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis: Releases the spare record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.23 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; override`

Visibility: public

7.18.24 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis: Adds a record to the index.

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.25 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Inserts a record prior to the current record in the index.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.26 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis: Removes the record at the specified Bookmark from the index.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.27 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.18.28 TDoubleLinkedBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.19 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler

7.19.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
262	Create	
263	FinalizeStoreRecords	
262	GetCurrentRecord	
262	GetRecordRowState	
263	GotoNextRecord	
262	InitLoadRecords	
262	LoadFieldDefs	
263	RecognizeStream	
263	RestoreRecord	
262	StoreFieldDefs	
263	StoreRecord	

7.19.2 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.Create

Declaration: constructor Create (ADataSet: TCustomBufDataset; AStream: TStream)
; override

Visibility: public

7.19.3 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.LoadFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure LoadFieldDefs (var AnAutoIncValue: Integer); override

Visibility: public

7.19.4 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreFieldDefs

Declaration: procedure StoreFieldDefs (AnAutoIncValue: Integer); override

Visibility: public

7.19.5 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.InitLoadRecords

Declaration: procedure InitLoadRecords; override

Visibility: public

7.19.6 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetCurrentRecord

Declaration: function GetCurrentRecord : Boolean; override

Visibility: public

7.19.7 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GetRecordRowState

Declaration: function GetRecordRowState (out AUpdOrder: Integer) : TRowState
; override

Visibility: public

7.19.8 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RestoreRecord

Declaration: `procedure RestoreRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.19.9 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.GotoNextRecord

Declaration: `procedure GotoNextRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.19.10 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.StoreRecord

Declaration: `procedure StoreRecord(ARowState: TRowState; AUpdOrder: Integer=0)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.19.11 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.FinalizeStoreRecords

Declaration: `procedure FinalizeStoreRecords; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.19.12 TFpcBinaryDatapacketHandler.RecognizeStream

Declaration: `class function RecognizeStream(AStream: TStream) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20 TUniDirectionalBufIndex

7.20.1 Description

TUniDirectionalBufIndex is a TBufIndex descendant that implements a uni-directional index. TUniDirectionalBufIndex does not require bookmarks used for navigation; it is uni-directional and the next record is always available in the buffers allocated for the index.

See also: TBufIndex ([229](#))

7.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
267	AddRecord	
267	BeginUpdate	
265	CanScrollForward	
266	DoScrollForward	
267	EndUpdate	
264	GetCurrent	
266	GotoBookmark	
266	InitialiseIndex	
266	InitialiseSpareRecord	
267	InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord	
267	OrderCurrentRecord	
266	ReleaseSpareRecord	
267	RemoveRecordFromIndex	
265	RestoreCurrentRecord	
264	ScrollBackward	
264	ScrollFirst	
264	ScrollForward	
265	ScrollLast	
265	SetToFirstRecord	
265	SetToLastRecord	
266	StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark	
265	StoreCurrentRecord	
266	StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark	

7.20.3 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollBackward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollBackward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.4 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ScrollForward : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.5 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.GetCurrent

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TGetResult; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.6 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.ScrollFirst

Synopsis:

Declaration: function ScrollFirst : TGetResult; override

Visibility: public

7.20.7 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.ScrollLast

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure ScrollLast; override

Visibility: public

7.20.8 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.SetToFirstRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToFirstRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.20.9 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.SetToLastRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure SetToLastRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.20.10 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure StoreCurrentRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.20.11 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.RestoreCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure RestoreCurrentRecord; override

Visibility: public

7.20.12 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.CanScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: function CanScrollForward : Boolean; override

Visibility: public

7.20.13 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.DoScrollForward

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure DoScrollForward; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.14 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreCurrentRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.15 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure StoreSpareRecIntoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.16 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.GotoBookmark

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: PBufBookmark); override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.17 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.InitialiseIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseIndex; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.18 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.InitialiseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InitialiseSpareRecord(const ASpareRecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.19 TUniDirectionalBuflIndex.ReleaseSpareRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseSpareRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.20 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.BeginUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.21 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.AddRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure AddRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.22 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecordBeforeCurrentRecord(const ARecord: TRecordBuffer)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.23 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.RemoveRecordFromIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRecordFromIndex(const ABookmark: TBufBookmark)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.24 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.OrderCurrentRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure OrderCurrentRecord; override`

Visibility: `public`

7.20.25 TUniDirectionalBufIndex.EndUpdate

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Chapter 8

Reference for unit 'bufstream'

8.1 Used units

Table 8.1: Used units by unit 'bufstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

8.2 Overview

BufStream implements buffered streams. The streams store all data from (or for) the source stream in a memory buffer, and only flush the buffer when it's full (or refill it when it's empty).

Buffered streams can help in speeding up read or write operations, especially when a lot of small read/write operations are done. They avoid doing a lot of operating system calls.

TReadBufStream (274) is used for reading only, and allows the buffer size to be specified at the time of creation.

TWriteBufStream (275) is used for writing only, and allows the buffer size to be specified at the time of creation.

TBufferedFileStream (269) can be used for reading and writing depending on the file mode specified at the time of creation. By default, it uses an internal buffer with 8 pages using a 4,096 byte page size. Both page count and page size are configurable using methods in the class.

8.3 Constants, types and variables

8.3.1 Constants

`DefaultBufferCapacity : Integer = 16`

If no buffer size is specified when the stream is created, then this size is used.

8.4 TBufferedFileStream

8.4.1 Description

TBufferedFileStream is a TFileStream descendant which implements a buffered file stream. It provides a buffer with multiple pages used for random read / write access in the file stream.

By default, It uses a fixed-size buffer consisting of 8 pages with a 4,096 bytes per page. Both page count and page size configurable using the InitializeCache (272) method in the class. The buffer is automatically maintained when the stream size or position is changed, and when reading or writing content to/from the stream.

Pages which have been modified in the buffer are written to the file stream as needed (all pages are used and a read/write operation is performed), when the Flush method is called, and when the class instance is freed. Thus, the class will never use more than the total size obtained by multiplying the CacheBlockSize and aCacheBlockCount arguments to InitializeCache (272).

This class is suitable when you need to do a lot of random access to a file: hence the use of different pages of configurable size. If you simply wish to speed up sequential reads you better use TReadBufStream (274) or TWriteBufStream (275) for speeding up sequential writes.

See also: TFileStream (??), THandleStream (??), TStream (??), TReadBufStream (274), TWriteBufStream (275)

8.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
269	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
270	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
272	Flush	Flushes modified pages in the buffer to the file stream.
272	InitializeCache	Re-initializes the internal buffer for the buffered file stream.
271	Read	Reads the specified number of bytes into the Buffer parameter.
270	Seek	Moves the position in the buffer relative to the specified origin.
271	Write	Writes the specified number of bytes in Buffer to the internal page buffer(s).

8.4.3 TBufferedFileStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word)`
`constructor Create(const AFileName: string; Mode: Word;`
`Rights: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create is the constructor for the class instance. Overloaded variants are provided to match the constructors used in the ancestor class (TFileStream).

Create ensures that resources are allocated for the internal buffer. By default, the buffer reserves 8 blocks (pages) with 4,096 bytes per block (page). Create calls InitializeCache to allocate resources needed for the internal buffer.

Create calls the inherited constructor using the parameter values passed to the method.

AFileName is the qualified path to the file where the content in the stream is stored.

Mode contains the file mode used for the file handle in the ancestor class. It uses the following file mode constant values:

fmCreate Creates the file if it does not already exist.
fmOpenRead Opens the file for read-only access.
fmOpenWrite Opens the file for write-only access.
fmOpenReadWrite Opens the file for read / write access.

The file mode constants (**except for fmCreate**) can be **OR**'d with sharing mode constants, including:

fmShareCompat Opens the file in DOS-compatibility sharing mode.
fmShareExclusive Locks the file for exclusive use.
fmShareDenyWrite Locks the file and denies write access to other processes.
fmShareDenyRead Locks the file and denies read access to other processes.
fmShareDenyNone Does not lock the file.

Rights contains the value used as the file mode on UNIX-like file systems. It contains a value representing the read, write, execute, sticky-bit, setgid, and setuid flags used on the platform. It is ignored for all other platforms, and is significant only when using **fmCreate** in **Mode**.

The **Size** for the internal buffer is updated to use the length of the file stream.

See also: **TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache** (272), **TBufferedFileStream.Size** (269), **TFileStream.Create** (??), **TFileStream.Size** (??)

8.4.4 TBufferedFileStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: **Destroy** is the overridden destructor for the class instance. **Destroy** ensures that memory allocated to pages in the internal buffer is freed, and that buffer pages are released. **Destroy** calls the inherited destructor prior to exit.

See also: **TFileStream.Destroy** (??)

8.4.5 TBufferedFileStream.Seek

Synopsis: Moves the position in the buffer relative to the specified origin.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; override
; overload
function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; override; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: **Seek** is a method used to change the current position in the buffered file stream by the number of bytes in **Offset** relative to the given **Origin**. Overloaded variants are provided which use **LongInt** or **Int64** types for the **Offset** parameter, and **Word** or **TSeekOrigin** types for the **Origin** parameter.

Seek is overridden to use the size and position in the internal buffer when positioning the buffered file stream.

The return value contains the actual number of bytes the position was moved relative to the **Origin**. As with **TStream**, the return value may contain -1 if the stream position was not moved.

See also: **THandleStream.Seek** (??), **TStream.Seek** (??)

8.4.6 TBufferedFileStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads the specified number of bytes into the `Buffer` parameter.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` is used to read the specified number of bytes in `Count`, and store the values in the `Buffer` parameter. `Read` is overridden to use the internal buffer for the operation instead directly accessing of the underlying file stream. It locates the page in the buffer with the content for the stream position.

`Read` maintains the pages in the buffer as needed for the request. This includes writing and recycling older buffer pages, locating the position in the file stream for a new buffer page, and loading the content for a buffer page from the file stream.

`Buffer` is updated with the values copied from the internal buffer. The return value contains the actual number of bytes read from the internal buffer, or 0 when no content is available in the buffer at the current stream position.

Use `Seek` or `Position` to set the stream position (when needed) prior to calling `Read`.

Errors: `Read` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnexpectedPageDiscard` when a page has been unexpectedly discarded in the buffer.

See also: `THandleStream.Read` (??), `THandleStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Read` (??), `TStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Position` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

8.4.7 TBufferedFileStream.Write

Synopsis: Writes the specified number of bytes in `Buffer` to the internal page buffer(s).

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` is a `LongInt` function used to write byte values in `Buffer` to the current position in the buffered file stream. `Count` contains the number of bytes requested in the write operation.

`Write` is overridden to use the internal buffer in the operation instead of the underlying file stream. It locates the page in the buffer with the content for the buffered stream position.

`Write` maintains the pages in the buffer as needed for the request. This includes recycling older buffer pages, reading values from the stream for a new buffer page, and storing the new content in the internal buffer.

`Buffer` contains the values stored in the internal buffer in the request. The return value contains the actual number of bytes written, or 0 if the write could not be performed.

Use `Seek` or `Position` to set the buffer position (when needed) prior to calling `Write`.

Errors: `Write` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnexpectedPageDiscard` when a page has been unexpectedly discarded in the buffer.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Seek` (270), `TBufferedFileStream.GetPosition` (269), `TBufferedFileStream.SetPosition` (269), `THandleStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Position` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

8.4.8 TBufferedFileStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flushes modified pages in the buffer to the file stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Flush` is used to store modified pages in the internal buffer to the file stream. `Flush` examines the pages in the buffer to determine if any have been modified using `Write`.

When a "dirty" page is found, the inherited `Seek` method is called to position the stream to the location for the modified page. The inherited `Write` method is called to store content in the modified page buffer to the stream, and the modified flag for the buffer page is reset.

Buffer pages which not been modified are not (re-)written to the file stream.

Errors: `Flush` raises an `EStreamError` exception with the message in `SErrCacheUnableToWriteExpected` when the number of bytes written for a page does not match the allocated size for the page.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Write` (271), `THandleStream.Seek` (??), `THandleStream.Write` (??), `TStream.Seek` (??), `TStream.Write` (??), `EStreamError` (??)

8.4.9 TBufferedFileStream.InitializeCache

Synopsis: Re-initializes the internal buffer for the buffered file stream.

Declaration: `procedure InitializeCache(const aCacheBlockSize: Integer;
const aCacheBlockCount: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Re-initializes the internal buffer to use the number of blocks (pages) in `aCacheBlockCount` where each block (page) has the size in `aCacheBlockSize`.

`InitializeCache` checks pages in the internal buffer to see if any have been modified, and writes them to the file stream when needed. Memory allocated to an existing buffer page is freed, and the page is discarded.

Values in `aCacheBlockCount` and `aCacheBlockSize` are stored internally, and the buffer size is updated to use the size from the file stream.

`InitializeCache` re-allocates and zero-fills memory used for each of the pages in the buffer prior to exiting from the method.

`InitializeCache` is called from the `Create` method to allocate buffer pages using the default count and size for the class.

Use `Flush` to write modified values in page buffers to the file stream without re-initializing the internal buffer.

See also: `TBufferedFileStream.Flush` (272), `TBufferedFileStream.Create` (269)

8.5 TBufStream

8.5.1 Description

`TBufStream` is the common ancestor for the `TReadBufStream` (274) and `TWriteBufStream` (275) streams. It completely handles the buffer memory management and position management. An instance of `TBufStream` should never be created directly. It also keeps the instance of the source stream.

See also: `TReadBufStream` (274), `TWriteBufStream` (275)

8.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
273	Create	Create a new <code>TBufStream</code> instance.
273	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TBufStream</code> instance.

8.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
273	Buffer	r	The current buffer.
274	BufferPos	r	Current buffer position.
274	BufferSize	r	Amount of data in the buffer.
274	Capacity	rw	Current buffer capacity.

8.5.4 TBufStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBufStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASource: TStream; ACapacity: Integer)`
`constructor Create(ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TBufStream` instance. A buffer of size `ACapacity` is allocated, and the `ASource` source (or destination) stream is stored. If no capacity is specified, then `DefaultBufferCapacity` ([268](#)) is used as the capacity.

An instance of `TBufStream` should never be instantiated directly. Instead, an instance of `TReadBufStream` ([274](#)) or `TWriteBufStream` ([275](#)) should be created.

Errors: If not enough memory is available for the buffer, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TBufStream.Destroy` ([273](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([274](#)), `TWriteBufStream` ([275](#))

8.5.5 TBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TBufStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the instance of `TBufStream`. It flushes the buffer, deallocates it, and then destroys the `TBufStream` instance.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` ([273](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([274](#)), `TWriteBufStream` ([275](#))

8.5.6 TBufStream.Buffer

Synopsis: The current buffer.

Declaration: `Property Buffer : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Buffer` is a pointer to the actual buffer in use.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` ([273](#)), `TBufStream.Capacity` ([274](#)), `TBufStream.BufferSize` ([274](#))

8.5.7 TBufStream.Capacity

Synopsis: Current buffer capacity.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Capacity` is the amount of memory the buffer occupies. To change the buffer size, the capacity can be set. Note that the capacity cannot be set to a value that is less than the current buffer size, i.e. the current amount of data in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (273), `TBufStream.Buffer` (273), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (274), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (274)

8.5.8 TBufStream.BufferPos

Synopsis: Current buffer position.

Declaration: `Property BufferPos : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BufPos` is the current stream position in the buffer. Depending on whether the stream is used for reading or writing, data will be read from this position, or will be written at this position in the buffer.

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (273), `TBufStream.Buffer` (273), `TBufStream.BufferSize` (274), `TBufStream.Capacity` (274)

8.5.9 TBufStream.BufferSize

Synopsis: Amount of data in the buffer.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BufferSize` is the actual amount of data in the buffer. This is always less than or equal to the `Capacity` (274).

See also: `TBufStream.Create` (273), `TBufStream.Buffer` (273), `TBufStream.BufferPos` (274), `TBufStream.Capacity` (274)

8.6 TReadBufStream

8.6.1 Description

`TReadBufStream` is a read-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to read data from the buffer and fill the buffer with additional data when needed.

The stream provides limited forward-seek possibilities.

See also: `TBufStream` (272), `TWriteBufStream` (275)

8.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
275	Read	Reads data from the stream.
275	Seek	Set location in the buffer.

8.6.3 TReadBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set location in the buffer.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the location in the buffer. Currently, only a forward seek is allowed. It is emulated by reading and discarding data. For an explanation of the parameters, see `TStream.Seek` "(?)".

The seek method needs enhancement to enable it to do a full-featured seek. This may be implemented in a future release of Free Pascal.

Errors: In case an illegal seek operation is attempted, an exception is raised.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` ([276](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([275](#))

8.6.4 TReadBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads at most `ACount` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buffer`. The number of actually read bytes is returned.

`TReadBufStream` first reads whatever data is still available in the buffer, and then refills the buffer, after which it continues to read data from the buffer. This is repeated until `ACount` bytes are read, or no more data is available.

See also: `TReadBufStream.Seek` ([275](#)), `TReadBufStream.Read` ([275](#))

8.7 TWriteBufStream

8.7.1 Description

`TWriteBufStream` is a write-only buffered stream. It implements the needed methods to write data to the buffer and flush the buffer (i.e., write its contents to the source stream) when needed.

See also: `TBufStream` ([272](#)), `TReadBufStream` ([274](#))

8.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
276	Destroy	Remove the <code>TWriteBufStream</code> instance from memory.
276	Seek	Set stream position.
276	Write	Write data to the stream.

8.7.3 TWriteBufStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TWriteBufStream instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the buffer and then calls the inherited `Destroy` ([273](#)).

Errors: If an error occurs during flushing of the buffer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` ([273](#)), `TBufStream.Destroy` ([273](#))

8.7.4 TWriteBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` always raises an `EStreamError` exception, except when the seek operation would not alter the current position.

A later implementation may perform a proper seek operation by flushing the buffer and doing a seek on the source stream.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Write` ([276](#)), `TReadBufStream.Seek` ([275](#))

8.7.5 TWriteBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const ABuffer; ACount: LongInt) : Integer; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes at most `ACount` bytes from `ABuffer` to the stream. The data is written to the internal buffer first. As soon as the internal buffer is full, it is flushed to the destination stream, and the internal buffer is filled again. This process continues till all data is written (or an error occurs).

Errors: An exception may occur if the destination stream has problems writing.

See also: `TWriteBufStream.Seek` ([276](#))

Chapter 9

Reference for unit 'CacheCls'

9.1 Used units

Table 9.1: Used units by unit 'CacheCls'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

9.2 Overview

The `CacheCls` unit implements a caching class: similar to a hash class, it can be used to cache data, associated with string values (keys). The class is called `TCache`

9.3 Constants, types and variables

9.3.1 Resource strings

```
SInvalidIndex = 'Invalid index %i'
```

Message shown when an invalid index is passed.

9.3.2 Types

```
PCacheSlot = ^TCacheSlot
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlot` (278) record.

```
PCacheSlotArray = ^TCacheSlotArray
```

Pointer to `TCacheSlotArray` (278) array.

```
TCacheSlotArray = Array[0..MaxInt div SizeOf(TCacheSlot)-1] of TCacheSlot
```

```

= record
Prev : PCacheSlot;
Next : PCacheSlot;
Data : Pointer
;
Index : Integer;
end

```

TCacheSlotArray is an array of TCacheSlot items. Do not use TCacheSlotArray directly, instead, use PCacheSlotArray (277) and allocate memory dynamically.

```

TOnFreeSlot = procedure(ACache: TCache; SlotIndex: Integer) of
object

```

TOnFreeSlot is a callback prototype used when not enough slots are free, and a slot must be freed.

```

TOnIsDataEqual = function(ACache: TCache; AData1: Pointer;
AData2: Pointer) : Boolean of object

```

TOnIsDataEqual is a callback prototype; It is used by the TCache.Add (280) call to determine whether the item to be added is a new item or not. The function returns True if the 2 data pointers AData1 and AData2 should be considered equal, or False when they are not.

For most purposes, comparing the pointers will be enough, but if the pointers are ansistrings, then the contents should be compared.

9.4 TCacheSlot

```

TCacheSlot = record
Prev : PCacheSlot;
Next : PCacheSlot;
Data
: Pointer;
Index : Integer;
end

```

TCacheSlot is internally used by the TCache (278) class. It represents 1 element in the linked list.

9.5 ECacheError

9.5.1 Description

Exception class used in the cachecls unit.

9.6 TCache

9.6.1 Description

TCache implements a cache class: it is a list-like class, but which uses a counting mechanism, and keeps a Most-Recent-Used list; this list represents the 'cache'. The list is internally kept as a doubly-linked list.

The `Data` (281) property offers indexed access to the array of items. When accessing the array through this property, the `MRUSlot` (282) property is updated.

9.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
280	<code>Add</code>	Add a data element to the list.
280	<code>AddNew</code>	Add a new item to the list.
279	<code>Create</code>	Create a new cache class.
279	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TCache</code> class from memory.
280	<code>FindSlot</code>	Find data pointer in the list.
281	<code>IndexOf</code>	Return index of a data pointer in the list.
281	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a data item from the list.

9.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
281	<code>Data</code>	rw	Indexed access to data items.
282	<code>LRUSlot</code>	r	Last used item.
282	<code>MRUSlot</code>	rw	Most recent item slot.
283	<code>OnFreeSlot</code>	rw	Event called when a slot is freed.
283	<code>OnIsDataEqual</code>	rw	Event to compare 2 items.
282	<code>SlotCount</code>	rw	Number of slots in the list.
282	<code>Slots</code>	r	Indexed array to the slots.

9.6.4 `TCache.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new cache class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ASlotCount: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TCache`. It allocates room for `ASlotCount` entries in the list. The number of slots can be increased later.

See also: `TCache.SlotCount` (282)

9.6.5 `TCache.Destroy`

Synopsis: Free the `TCache` class from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the array for the elements, and calls the inherited `Destroy`. The elements in the array are not freed by this action.

See also: `TCache.Create` (279)

9.6.6 TCache.Add

Synopsis: Add a data element to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` checks whether `AData` is already in the list. If so, the item is added to the top of the MRU list. If the item is not yet in the list, then the item is added to the list and placed at the top of the MRU list using the `AddNew` (280) call.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.AddNew` (280), `TCache.FindSlot` (280), `TCache.IndexOf` (281), `TCache.Data` (281), `TCache.MRUSlot` (282)

9.6.7 TCache.AddNew

Synopsis: Add a new item to the list.

Declaration: `function AddNew(AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddNew` adds a new item to the list: in difference with the `Add` (280) call, no checking is performed to see whether the item is already in the list.

The function returns the index at which the item was added.

If the maximum number of slots is reached, and a new item is being added, the least used item is dropped from the list.

See also: `TCache.Add` (280), `TCache.FindSlot` (280), `TCache.IndexOf` (281), `TCache.Data` (281), `TCache.MRUSlot` (282)

9.6.8 TCache.FindSlot

Synopsis: Find data pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function FindSlot(AData: Pointer) : PCacheSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindSlot` checks all items in the list, and returns the slot which contains a data pointer that matches the pointer `AData`.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `Nil` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (283) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.IndexOf` (281), `TCache.Add` (280), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (283)

9.6.9 TCache.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of a data pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AData: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOF` searches in the list for a slot with data pointer that matches `AData` and returns the index of the slot.

If no item with data pointer that matches `AData` is found, `-1` is returned.

For this function to work correctly, the `OnIsDataEqual` (283) event must be set.

Errors: If `OnIsDataEqual` is not set, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (280), `TCache.Add` (280), `TCache.OnIsDataEqual` (283)

9.6.10 TCache.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a data item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove (AData: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` searches the slot which matches `AData` and if it is found, sets the data pointer to `Nil`, thus effectively removing the pointer from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (280)

9.6.11 TCache.Data

Synopsis: Indexed access to data items.

Declaration: `Property Data [SlotIndex: Integer]: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` offers index-based access to the data pointers in the cache. By accessing an item in the list in this manner, the item is moved to the front of the MRU list, i.e. `MRUSlot` (282) will point to the accessed item. The access is both read and write.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be `SlotCount-1` (282). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `TCache.MRUSlot` (282)

9.6.12 TCache.MRUSlot

Synopsis: Most recent item slot.

Declaration: Property MRUSlot : PCacheSlot

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: MRUSlot points to the most recent used slot. The most recent used slot is updated when the list is accessed through the Data (281) property, or when an item is added to the list with Add (280) or AddNew (280)

See also: TCache.Add (280), TCache.AddNew (280), TCache.Data (281), TCache.LRUSlot (282)

9.6.13 TCache.LRUSlot

Synopsis: Last used item.

Declaration: Property LRUSlot : PCacheSlot

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: LRUSlot points to the least recent used slot. It is the last item in the chain of slots.

See also: TCache.Add (280), TCache.AddNew (280), TCache.Data (281), TCache.MRUSlot (282)

9.6.14 TCache.SlotCount

Synopsis: Number of slots in the list.

Declaration: Property SlotCount : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SlotCount is the number of slots in the list. Its initial value is set when the TCache instance is created, but this can be changed at any time. If items are added to the list and the list is full, then the number of slots is not increased, but the least used item is dropped from the list. In that case OnFreeSlot (283) is called.

See also: TCache.Create (279), TCache.Data (281), TCache.Slots (282)

9.6.15 TCache.Slots

Synopsis: Indexed array to the slots.

Declaration: Property Slots[SlotIndex: Integer]: PCacheSlot

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Slots` provides index-based access to the `TCacheSlot` records in the list. Accessing the records directly does not change their position in the MRU list.

The index is zero-based and can maximally be `SlotCount-1` (282). Providing an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `TCache.Data` (281), `TCache.SlotCount` (282)

9.6.16 `TCache.OnIsDataEqual`

Synopsis: Event to compare 2 items.

Declaration: `Property OnIsDataEqual : TOnIsDataEqual`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnIsDataEqual` is used by `FindSlot` (280) and `IndexOf` (281) to compare items when looking for a particular item. These functions are called by the `Add` (280) method. Failing to set this event will result in an exception. The function should return `True` if the 2 data pointers should be considered equal.

See also: `TCache.FindSlot` (280), `TCache.IndexOf` (281), `TCache.Add` (280)

9.6.17 `TCache.OnFreeSlot`

Synopsis: Event called when a slot is freed.

Declaration: `Property OnFreeSlot : TOnFreeSlot`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnFreeSlot` is called when an item needs to be freed, i.e. when a new item is added to a full list, and the least recent used item needs to be dropped from the list.

The cache class instance and the index of the item to be removed are passed to the callback.

See also: `TCache.Add` (280), `TCache.AddNew` (280), `TCache.SlotCount` (282)

Chapter 10

Reference for unit 'Contrns'

10.1 Used units

Table 10.1: Used units by unit 'Contrns'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

10.2 Overview

The `contrns` unit implements various general-purpose classes:

Object lists lists that manage objects instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose of the objects.

Component lists lists that manage components instead of pointers, and which automatically dispose the components.

Class lists lists that manage class pointers instead of pointers.

Stacks Stack classes to push/pop pointers or objects

Queues Classes to manage a FIFO list of pointers or objects

Hash lists General-purpose Hash lists.

10.3 Constants, types and variables

10.3.1 Constants

`MaxHashListSize = Maxint div 16`

`MaxHashListSize` is the maximum number of elements a hash list can contain.

MaxHashStrSize = Maxint

MaxHashStrSize is the maximum amount of data for the key string values. The key strings are kept in a continuous memory area. This constant determines the maximum size of this memory area.

MaxHashTableSize = Maxint div 4

MaxHashTableSize is the maximum number of elements in the hash.

MaxItemsPerHash = 3

MaxItemsPerHash is the threshold above which the hash is expanded. If the number of elements in a hash bucket becomes larger than this value, the hash size is increased.

ViEmpty = 0

ViRealIndexOffset = 1

10.3.2 Types

PBucket = ^TBucket

Pointer to TBucket (289)" type.

PViHashListItem = ^TFPHashListItem

```
TBucketArray = Array of TBucket = record
  Count : Integer;
  Items
    : TBucketItemArray;
end
```

Array of TBucket (289) records.

```
TBucketItemArray = Array of TBucketItem = record
  Item : Pointer
  ;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

Array of TBucketItem records.

TBucketListSizes = (b12,b14,b18,b116,b132,b164,b1128,b1256)

Table 10.2: Enumeration values for type TBucketListSizes

Value	Explanation
bl128	List with 128 buckets.
bl16	List with 16 buckets.
bl2	List with 2 buckets.
bl256	List with 256 buckets.
bl32	List with 32 buckets.
bl4	List with 4 buckets.
bl64	List with 64 buckets.
bl8	List with 8 buckets.

TBucketListSizes is used to set the bucket list size: It specified the number of buckets created by TBucketList (290).

```
TBucketProc = procedure(AInfo: Pointer; AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer
;
                        out AContinue: Boolean)
```

TBucketProc is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (298) call. It is the plain procedural form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a procedure of object (a method) callback, see the TBucketProcObject (286) prototype.

```
TBucketProcObject = procedure(AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer;
    out AContinue: Boolean) of object
```

TBucketProcObject is the prototype for the TCustomBucketList.Foreach (298) call. It is the method (procedure of object) form. The Continue parameter can be set to False to indicate that the Foreach call should stop the iteration.

For a plain procedural callback, see the TBucketProc (286) prototype.

```
TDataIteratorCallBack = procedure(Item: Pointer; const Key: AnsiString
;
                                var Continue: Boolean)
```

TDataIteratorCallBack is a callback prototype for the TFPDataHashTable.Iterate (305) static CallBack. It is called for each data pointer in the hash list, passing the key (key) and data pointer (item) for each item in the list. If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
TDataIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: Pointer; const Key: AnsiString
;
                                var Continue: Boolean) of
    object
```

TDataIteratorMethod is a callback prototype for the TFPDataHashTable.Iterate (305) method. It is called for each data pointer in the hash list, passing the key (key) and data pointer (item) for each item in the list. If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
THashFunction = function(const S: AnsiString; const TableSize: LongWord
)
                    : LongWord
```

THashFunction is the prototype for a hash calculation function. It should calculate a hash of string S, where the hash table size is TableSize. The return value should be the hash value.

```
THTCustomNodeClass = class of THTCustomNode
```

THTCustomNodeClass was used by TFPCustomHashTable (299) to decide which class should be created for elements in the list.

```
THTNode = THTDataNode
```

THTNode is provided for backwards compatibility.

```
TIteratorMethod = TDataIteratorMethod
```

TIteratorMethod is used in an internal TFPDataHashTable (305) method.

```
TObjectIteratorCallback = procedure(Item: TObject;
    const Key: AnsiString;
    var Continue: Boolean)
```

TObjectIteratorCallback is the iterator callback prototype. It is used to iterate over all items in the hash table, and is called with each key value (Key) and associated object (Item). If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
TObjectIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: TObject; const Key: AnsiString
    ;
                                var Continue: Boolean) of
    object
```

TObjectIteratorMethod is the iterator callback prototype. It is used to iterate over all items in the hash table, and is called with each key value (Key) and associated object (Item). If Continue is set to false, the iteration stops.

```
TObjectListCallback = procedure(data: TObject; arg: pointer) of
    object
```

TObjectListCallback is used as the prototype for the TFPObjectList.ForEachCall (330) link call when a method should be called. The Data argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the Data argument will contain the data passed to the ForEachCall call.

```
TObjectListStaticCallback = procedure(data: TObject; arg: pointer
    )
```

TObjectListCallback is used as the prototype for the TFPObjectList.ForEachCall (330) link call when a plain procedure should be called. The Data argument will contain each of the objects in the list in turn, and the Data argument will contain the data passed to the ForEachCall call.

```
TStringIteratorCallback = procedure(Item: AnsiString;
    const Key: AnsiString;
    var Continue: Boolean)
```


TStringIteratorCallback is the callback prototype for the TFPStringHashTable (332) method. It is called for each element in the hash table, with the string. If Continue is set to False, the iteration stops.

```
TStringIteratorMethod = procedure(Item: AnsiString;
    const Key: AnsiString;
    var Continue: Boolean) of object
```

TStringIteratorMethod is the callback prototype for the TFPStringHashTable (332) method. It is called for each element in the hash table, with the string. If Continue is set to False, the iteration stops.

```
TViRehashMode = (vi_Auto, vi_Tight, vi_Pack)
```

Table 10.3: Enumeration values for type TViRehashMode

Value	Explanation
vi_Auto	
vi_Pack	
vi_Tight	

10.4 Procedures and functions

10.4.1 RSHash

Synopsis: Standard hash value calculating function.

Declaration: `function RSHash(const S: AnsiString; const TableSize: LongWord) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: RSHash is the standard hash calculating function used in the TFPCustomHashTable (299) hash class. It's Robert Sedgwick's "Algorithms in C" hash function.

Errors: None.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable (299)

10.4.2 ViDataSize

Declaration: `function ViDataSize(n: SizeUInt; bitsPerIndex: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

10.4.3 ViGet

Declaration: `function ViGet(data: PSizeUInt; index: SizeUInt; bitsPerIndex: SizeUInt) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

10.4.4 ViSet

Declaration: `procedure ViSet(data: PSizeUInt; index: SizeUInt;
bitsPerIndex: SizeUInt; value: SizeUInt)`

Visibility: default

10.5 TBucket

```
TBucket = record
  Count : Integer;
  Items : TBucketItemArray;
end
```

`TBucket` describes 1 bucket in the `TCustomBucketList` (296) class. It is a container for `TBucketItem` (289) records. It should never be used directly.

10.6 TBucketItem

```
TBucketItem = record
  Item : Pointer;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

`TBucketItem` is a record used for internal use in `TCustomBucketList` (296). It should not be necessary to use it directly.

10.7 TFPHashListItem

```
TFPHashListItem = record
  HashValue : uint32;
  Next : int32;
  Str
  : RawByteString;
  Data : Pointer;
end
```

10.8 EDuplicate

10.8.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is stored twice in a hash table.

10.9 EKeyNotFound

10.9.1 Description

Exception raised when a key is not found.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Delete` ([301](#))

10.10 TBucketList

10.10.1 Description

`TBucketList` is a descendent of `TCustomBucketList` which allows to specify a bucket count which is a multiple of 2, up to 256 buckets. The size is passed to the constructor and cannot be changed in the lifetime of the bucket list instance.

The buckets for an item is determined by looking at the last bits of the item pointer: For 2 buckets, the last bit is examined, for 4 buckets, the last 2 bits are taken and so on. The algorithm takes into account the average granularity (4) of heap pointers.

See also: `TCustomBucketList` ([296](#))

10.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
290	Create	Create a new <code>TBucketList</code> instance.

10.10.3 TBucketList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TBucketList` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ABuckets: TBucketListSizes=bl16)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new bucketlist instance with a number of buckets determined by `ABuckets`. After creation, the number of buckets can no longer be changed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to create the instance, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TBucketListSizes` ([285](#))

10.11 TClassList

10.11.1 Description

`TClassList` is a `Tlist` (??) descendent which stores class references instead of pointers. It introduces no new behaviour other than ensuring all stored pointers are class pointers.

The `OwnsObjects` property as found in `TComponentList` and `TObjectList` is not implemented as there are no actual instances.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tlist` (??), `TComponentList` ([293](#)), `TObjectList` ([337](#))

10.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
291	Add	Add a new class pointer to the list.
291	Extract	Extract a class pointer from the list.
292	First	Returns the first non-nil class pointer.
292	IndexOf	Search for a class pointer in the list.
292	Insert	Insert a new class pointer in the list.
292	Last	Return last non- <code>Nil</code> class pointer.
291	Remove	Remove a class pointer from the list.

10.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
293	Items	rw	Index based access to class pointers.

10.11.4 TClassList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new class pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AClass` to the list, and returns the position at which it was added. It simply overrides the `TList` (??) behaviour, and introduces no new functionality.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TClassList.Extract` ([291](#)), `#rtl.classes.tlist.add` (??)

10.11.5 TClassList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TClass) : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` extracts a class pointer `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the extracted class pointer, or `Nil` if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in `TList` so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.Remove` ([291](#)), `#rtl.classes.Tlist.Extract` (??)

10.11.6 TClassList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a class pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes a class pointer `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns the index of the removed class pointer, or `-1` if the class pointer was not present in the list. It simply overrides the implementation in `TList` so it accepts a class pointer instead of a simple pointer. No new behaviour is introduced.

Errors: None.

See also: `TClassList.Extract` (291), `#rtl.classes.Tlist.Remove` (??)

10.11.7 TClassList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for a class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AClass: TClass) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for `AClass` in the list, and returns its position if it was found, or `-1` if it was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tlist.indexof` (??)

10.11.8 TClassList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil class pointer.

Declaration: `function First : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned. `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TClassList.Last` (292)

10.11.9 TClassList.Last

Synopsis: Return last non-`Nil` class pointer.

Declaration: `function Last : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` class pointer in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TClassList.First` (292)

10.11.10 TClassList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new class pointer in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AClass: TClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a class pointer in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts class pointers. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Insert (??)`, `TClassList.Add (291)`, `TClassList.Remove (291)`

10.11.11 TClassList.Items

Synopsis: Index based access to class pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TClass; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides index-based access to the class pointers in the list. `TClassList` overrides the default `Items` implementation of `TList` so it returns class pointers instead of pointers.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Items (??)`, `#rtl.classes.TList.Count (??)`

10.12 TComponentList

10.12.1 Description

`TComponentList` is a `TObjectList (337)` descendent which has as the default array property `TComponents (??)` instead of objects. It overrides some methods so only components can be added.

In difference with `TObjectList (337)`, `TComponentList` removes any `TComponent` from the list if the `TComponent` instance was freed externally. It uses the `FreeNotification` mechanism for this.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList (??)`, `TFPObjectList (324)`, `TObjectList (337)`, `TClassList (290)`

10.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
294	<code>Add</code>	Add a component to the list.
294	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the instance.
294	<code>Extract</code>	Remove a component from the list without destroying it.
295	<code>First</code>	First non-nil instance in the list.
295	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an instance in the list.
296	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new component in the list.
295	<code>Last</code>	Last non-nil instance in the list.
294	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

10.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
296	<code>Items</code>	rw	Index-based access to the elements in the list.

10.12.4 TComponentList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` unhooks the free notification handler and then calls the inherited `destroy` to clean up the `TComponentList` instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList` (337), `#rtl.classes.TComponent` (??)

10.12.5 TComponentList.Add

Synopsis: Add a component to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` overrides the `Add` operation of it's ancestors, so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

The function returns the index at which the component was added.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` (338)

10.12.6 TComponentList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list without destroying it.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes a component (`Item`) from the list, without destroying it. It overrides the implementation of `TObjectList` (337) so only `TComponent` descendents can be extracted. It introduces no new behaviour.

`Extract` returns the instance that was extracted, or `Nil` if no instance was found.

See also: `TComponentList.Remove` (294), `TObjectList.Extract` (338)

10.12.7 TComponentList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a component from the list, possibly destroying it.

Declaration: `function Remove(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes `item` from the list, and if the list owns it's items, it also destroys it. It returns the index of the item that was removed, or -1 if no item was removed.

`Remove` simply overrides the implementation in `TObjectList` (337) so it only accepts `TComponent` descendents. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Extract` ([294](#)), `TObjectList.Remove` ([338](#))

10.12.8 TComponentList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AComponent: TComponent) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for an instance in the list and returns its position in the list. The position is zero-based. If no instance is found, -1 is returned.

`IndexOf` just overrides the implementation of the parent class so it accepts only `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` ([339](#))

10.12.9 TComponentList.First

Synopsis: First non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` overrides the implementation of its ancestors to return the first non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.Last` ([295](#)), `TObjectList.First` ([339](#))

10.12.10 TComponentList.Last

Synopsis: Last non-nil instance in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` overrides the implementation of its ancestors to return the last non-nil instance of `TComponent` in the list. If no non-nil instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TComponentList.First` ([295](#)), `TObjectList.Last` ([340](#))

10.12.11 TComponentList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new component in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts a `TComponent` instance (`AComponent`) in the list at position `Index`. It simply overrides the parent implementation so it only accepts `TComponent` instances. It introduces no new behaviour.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` (339), `TComponentList.Add` (294), `TComponentList.Remove` (294)

10.12.12 TComponentList.Items

Synopsis: Index-based access to the elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TComponent; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the components in the list using an index. It simply overrides the default property of the parent classes so it returns/accepts `TComponent` instances only. Note that the index is zero based.

See also: `TObjectList.Items` (340)

10.13 TCustomBucketList

10.13.1 Description

`TCustomBucketList` is an associative list using buckets for storage. It scales better than a regular `TList` (??) list class, especially when an item must be searched in the list.

Since the list associates a data pointer with each item pointer, it follows that each item pointer must be unique, and can be added to the list only once.

The `TCustomBucketList` class does not determine the number of buckets or the bucket hash mechanism, this must be done by descendent classes such as `TBucketList` (290). `TCustomBucketList` only takes care of storage and retrieval of items in the various buckets.

Because `TCustomBucketList` is an abstract class - it does not determine the number of buckets - one should never instantiate an instance of `TCustomBucketList`, but always use a descendent class such as `TBucketList` (296).

See also: `TBucketList` (290)

10.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
297	Add	Add an item to the list.
298	Assign	Assign one bucket list to another.
297	Clear	Clear the list.
297	Destroy	Frees the bucketlist from memory.
298	Exists	Check if an item exists in the list.
298	Find	Find an item in the list.
298	ForEach	Loop over all items.
299	Remove	Remove an item from the list.

10.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
299	Data	rw	Associative array for data pointers.

10.13.4 TCustomBucketList.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees the bucketlist from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all storage for the buckets from memory. The items themselves are not freed from memory.

10.13.5 TCustomBucketList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list. The items and their data themselves are not disposed of, this must be done separately. `Clear` only removes all references to the items from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` ([297](#))

10.13.6 TCustomBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an item to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: Pointer; AData: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` with it's associated `AData` to the list and returns `AData`.

Errors: If `AItem` is already in the list, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([298](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` ([297](#))

10.13.7 TCustomBucketList.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one bucket list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (AList: TCustomBucketList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` is implemented by `TCustomBucketList` to copy the contents of another bucket list to the bucket list. It clears the contents prior to the copy operation.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Add` (297), `TCustomBucketList.Clear` (297)

10.13.8 TCustomBucketList.Exists

Synopsis: Check if an item exists in the list.

Declaration: `function Exists (AItem: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exists` searches the list and returns `True` if the `AItem` is already present in the list. If the item is not yet in the list, `False` is returned.

If the data pointer associated with `AItem` is also needed, then it is better to use `Find` (298).

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Find` (298)

10.13.9 TCustomBucketList.Find

Synopsis: Find an item in the list.

Declaration: `function Find (AItem: Pointer; out AData: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for `AItem` in the list and returns the data pointer associated with it in `AData` if the item was found. In that case the return value is `True`. If `AItem` is not found in the list, `False` is returned.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Exists` (298)

10.13.10 TCustomBucketList.ForEach

Synopsis: Loop over all items.

Declaration: `function ForEach (AProc: TBucketProc; AInfo: Pointer=Nil) : Boolean`
`function ForEach (AProc: TBucketProcObject) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEach` loops over all items in the list and calls `AProc`, passing it in turn each item in the list.

`AProc` exists in 2 variants: one which is a simple procedure, and one which is a method. In the case of the simple procedure, the `AInfo` argument is passed as well in each call to `AProc`.

The loop stops when all items have been processed, or when the `AContinue` argument of `AProc` contains `False` on return.

The result of the function is `True` if all items were processed, or `False` if the loop was interrupted with a `AContinue` return of `False`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Data` ([299](#))

10.13.11 `TCustomBucketList.Remove`

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes `AItem` from the list, and returns the associated data pointer of the removed item. If the item was not in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `Find` ([298](#))

10.13.12 `TCustomBucketList.Data`

Synopsis: Associative array for data pointers.

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: Pointer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Data` provides direct access to the `Data` pointers associated with the `AItem` pointers. If `AItem` is not in the list of pointers, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomBucketList.Find` ([298](#)), `TCustomBucketList.Exists` ([298](#))

10.14 `TFPCustomHashTable`

10.14.1 Description

`TFPCustomHashTable` is a general-purpose hashing class. It can store string keys and pointers associated with these strings. The hash mechanism is configurable and can be optionally be specified when a new instance of the class is created; A default hash mechanism is implemented in `RSHash` ([288](#)).

The `TFPHashList` ([306](#)) can also be used when fast lookup of data based on some key is required. It is slightly faster than the `TFPCustomHashTable` implementation, but the keys are limited to a length of 256 characters, and it is not suitable for re-use: it is a one-time fill, many times search object. `TFPCustomHashTable` is slower, but handles re-use better.

See also: `THTCustomNode` ([332](#)), `TFPObjectList` ([324](#)), `RSHash` ([288](#))

10.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
301	<code>ChangeTableSize</code>	Change the table size of the hash table.
301	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the hash table.
300	<code>Create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance using the default hash mechanism.
300	<code>CreateWith</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TFPCustomHashTable</code> instance with given algorithm and size.
301	<code>Delete</code>	Delete a key from the hash list.
301	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the hash table.
302	<code>Find</code>	Search for an item with a certain key value.
302	<code>IsEmpty</code>	Check if the hash table is empty.

10.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
304	<code>AVGChainLen</code>	r	Average chain length.
302	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the hash table.
305	<code>Density</code>	r	Number of filled slots.
302	<code>HashFunction</code>	rw	Hash function currently in use.
303	<code>HashTable</code>	r	Hash table instance.
303	<code>HashTableSize</code>	rw	Size of the hash table.
303	<code>LoadFactor</code>	r	Fraction of count versus size.
304	<code>MaxChainLength</code>	r	Maximum chain length.
304	<code>NumberOfCollisions</code>	r	Number of extra items.
303	<code>VoidSlots</code>	r	Number of empty slots in the hash table.

10.14.4 `TFPCustomHashTable.Create`

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance using the default hash mechanism.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size 196613 and hash algorithm `RSHash` ([288](#))

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CreateWith` ([300](#))

10.14.5 `TFPCustomHashTable.CreateWith`

Synopsis: Instantiate a new `TFPCustomHashTable` instance with given algorithm and size.

Declaration: `constructor CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateWith` creates a new instance of `TFPCustomHashTable` with hash size `AHashTableSize` and hash calculating algorithm `aHashFunc`.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Create` ([300](#))

10.14.6 TFPCustomHashTable.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the hash table.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the hash table from memory. If any data was associated with the keys in the hash table, then this data is not freed. This must be done by the programmer.

See also: `Destroy` ([301](#)), `Create` ([300](#)), `CreateWith` ([300](#))

10.14.7 TFPCustomHashTable.ChangeTableSize

Synopsis: Change the table size of the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeTableSize(const ANewSize: LongWord); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ChangeTableSize` changes the size of the hash table: it recomputes the hash value for all of the keys in the table, so this is an expensive operation.

Errors: If no memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `HashTableSize` ([303](#))

10.14.8 TFPCustomHashTable.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and their associated data from the hash table. The data itself is not freed from memory, this should be done by the programmer.

Errors: None.

See also: `Destroy` ([301](#))

10.14.9 TFPCustomHashTable.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a key from the hash list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(const aKey: AnsiString); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes all keys with value `AKey` from the hash table. It does not free the data associated with key. If `AKey` is not in the list, nothing is removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Find` ([302](#))

10.14.10 TFPCustomHashTable.Find

Synopsis: Search for an item with a certain key value.

Declaration: `function Find(const aKey: AnsiString) : THTCustomNode`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches for the `THTCustomNode` (332) instance with key value equal to `Akey` and if it finds it, it returns the instance. If no matching value is found, `Nil` is returned.

Note that the instance returned by this function cannot be freed; If it should be removed from the hash table, the `Delete` (301) method should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `Delete` (301)

10.14.11 TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the hash table is empty.

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the hash table contains no elements, or `False` if there are still elements in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304)

10.14.12 TFPCustomHashTable.HashFunction

Synopsis: Hash function currently in use.

Declaration: `Property HashFunction : THashFunction`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HashFunction` is the hash function currently in use to calculate hash values from keys. The property can be set, this simply calls `SetHashFunction`. Note that setting the hash function does **NOT** cause the hash value of all keys to be recomputed, so changing the value while there are still keys in the table is not a good idea.

See also: `HashTableSize` (303)

10.14.13 TFPCustomHashTable.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property Count : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the number of items in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304)

10.14.14 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTableSize

Synopsis: Size of the hash table.

Declaration: `Property HashTableSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HashTableSize` is the size of the hash table. It can be set, in which case it will be rounded to the nearest prime number suitable for RSHash.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305)

10.14.15 TFPCustomHashTable.HashTable

Synopsis: Hash table instance.

Declaration: `Property HashTable : TFPObjectList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TFPCustomHashTable` is the internal list object (`TFPObjectList` (324)) used for the hash table. Each element in this table is again a `TFPObjectList` (324) instance or `Nil`.

10.14.16 TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots

Synopsis: Number of empty slots in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property VoidSlots : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `VoidSlots` is the number of empty slots in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (304)

10.14.17 TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor

Synopsis: Fraction of count versus size.

Declaration: `Property LoadFactor : Double`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LoadFactor` is the ratio of elements in the table versus table size. Ideally, this should be as small as possible.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (304)

10.14.18 `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen`

Synopsis: Average chain length.

Declaration: `Property AVGChainLen : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `AVGChainLen` is the average chain length, i.e. the ratio of elements in the table versus the number of filled slots. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (304)

10.14.19 `TFPCustomHashTable.MaxChainLength`

Synopsis: Maximum chain length.

Declaration: `Property MaxChainLength : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxChainLength` is the length of the longest chain in the hash table. Calculating this is an expensive operation.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305), `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions` (304)

10.14.20 `TFPCustomHashTable.NumberOfCollisions`

Synopsis: Number of extra items.

Declaration: `Property NumberOfCollisions : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `NumberOfCollisions` is the number of items which are not the first item in a chain. If this number is too big, the hash size may be too small.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305)

10.14.21 TFPCustomHashTable.Density

Synopsis: Number of filled slots.

Declaration: `Property Density : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Density` is the number of filled slots in the hash table.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable.IsEmpty` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.Count` (302), `TFPCustomHashTable.LoadFactor` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.AVGChainLen` (304), `TFPCustomHashTable.VoidSlots` (303), `TFPCustomHashTable.Density` (305)

10.15 TFpDataHashTable

10.15.1 Description

`TFpDataHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` (299) descendent which stores simple data pointers together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), or for string data, `TFPStringHashTable` (331) is more suitable. The data pointers are exposed with their keys through the `Items` (306) property.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), `TFPStringHashTable` (331), `Items` (306)

10.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
306	<code>Add</code>	Add a data pointer to the list.
305	<code>Iterate</code>	Iterate over the pointers in the hash table.

10.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
306	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Key-based access to the items in the table.

10.15.4 TFpDataHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the pointers in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TDataIteratorMethod) : Pointer; virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TDataIteratorCallBack) : Pointer; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, calling `aMethod` for each pointer, or until the method returns `False` in its `continue` parameter. It returns `Nil` if all elements were processed, or the pointer that was being processed when `aMethod` returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

The `aMethod` callback can be a method of an object, or a normal, static procedure.

10.15.5 TFPDataHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a data pointer to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: AnsiString; AItem: pointer); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Add adds a data pointer (AItem) to the list with key AKey.

Errors: If AKey already exists in the table, an exception is raised.

See also: TFPDataHashTable.Items ([306](#))

10.15.6 TFPDataHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the items in the table.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: AnsiString]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Items provides access to the items in the hash table using their key: the array index Index is the key. A key which is not present will result in an Nil pointer.

See also: TFPStringHashTable.Add ([332](#))

10.16 TFPHashList

10.16.1 Description

TFPHashList implements a fast hash class. The class is built for speed, therefore the key values can be shortstrings only, and the data can only be non-nil pointers.

if a base class for an own hash class is wanted, the TFPCustomHashTable ([299](#)) class can be used. If a hash class for objects is needed instead of pointers, the TFPHashObjectList ([315](#)) class can be used.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable ([299](#)), TFPHashObjectList ([315](#)), TFPDataHashTable ([305](#)), TFPStringHashTable ([331](#))

10.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
308	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list.
308	Clear	Clear the list.
307	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist.
309	Delete	Delete an item from the list.
307	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.
309	Error	Raise an error.
309	Extract	Extract a pointer from the list.
310	Find	Find data associated with key.
310	FindIndexOf	Return index of named item.
310	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value.
311	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each element in the list.
309	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number.
308	HashOfIndex	Return the hash value of an item by index.
309	IndexOf	Return the index of the data pointer.
308	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an item by index.
311	Pack	Remove nil pointers from the list.
311	Remove	Remove first instance of a pointer.
311	Rename	Rename a key.

10.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
312	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
311	Count	r	Current number of elements in the list.
312	Items	rw	Indexed array with pointers.
312	List	r	Low-level hash list.

10.16.4 TFPHashList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

See also: `TFPHashList.Destroy` ([307](#))

10.16.5 TFPHashList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashList` instance from the heap.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashList.Create` ([307](#)), `TFPHashList.Clear` ([308](#))

10.16.6 TFPHashList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: RawByteString; Item: Pointer) : SizeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new data pointer (`Item`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the item in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` (309), `TFPHashList.Remove` (311), `TFPHashList.Delete` (309)

10.16.7 TFPHashList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all items from the list. It does not free the data items themselves. It frees all memory needed to contain the items.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashList.Extract` (309), `TFPHashList.Remove` (311), `TFPHashList.Delete` (309), `TFPHashList.Add` (308)

10.16.8 TFPHashList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an item by index.

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: SizeInt) : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.Find` (310), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (310), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (310)

10.16.9 TFPHashList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an item by index.

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: SizeInt) : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.Find` (310), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (310), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (310)

10.16.10 TFPHashList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number.

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNextCollision` returns the next collision in hash item `Index`. This is the count of items with the same hash.means that the next it

10.16.11 TFPHashList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: SizeInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at position `Index`. The data to which it points is not freed from memory.

Errors: `TFPHashList.Extract` (309)`TFPHashList.Remove` (311)`TFPHashList.Add` (308)

10.16.12 TFPHashList.Error

Synopsis: Raise an error.

Declaration: `class procedure Error(const Msg: AnsiString; Data: PtrInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` exception, with message `Msg`. The `Data` pointer is used to format the message.

10.16.13 TFPHashList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data item from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the pointer if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise.

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` (309), `TFPHashList.Remove` (311), `TFPHashList.Clear` (308)

10.16.14 TFPHashList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the data pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of pointer `Item`. If the item is not in the list, -1 is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.Find` (310), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (310), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (310)

10.16.15 TFPHashList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: RawByteString) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data item associated with item `AName` and returns the data pointer associated with it. If the item is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (309), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (310), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (310)

10.16.16 TFPHashList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named item.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const AName: RawByteString) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key. Note that `Nil` data pointers will result in -1 as well.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (309), `TFPHashList.Find` (310), `TFPHashList.FindWithHash` (310)

10.16.17 TFPHashList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value.

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: RawByteString; AHash: LongWord) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the item with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the item exists, the data pointer is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashList.HashOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.NameOfIndex` (308), `TFPHashList.IndexOf` (309), `TFPHashList.Find` (310), `TFPHashList.FindIndexOf` (310)

10.16.18 TFPHashList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key.

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: RawByteString;
const ANewName: RawByteString) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the item is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an item with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

10.16.19 TFPHashList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first instance of a pointer.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : SizeInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the data pointer `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the removed data pointer, or `Nil` if no data pointer was removed.

See also: `TFPHashList.Delete` (309), `TFPHashList.Clear` (308), `TFPHashList.Extract` (309)

10.16.20 TFPHashList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil pointers from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` items from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashList.Clear` (308)

10.16.21 TFPHashList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each element in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListCallback; arg: pointer)
procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TListStaticCallback; arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the items in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the item and `arg`.

10.16.22 TFPHashList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : int32`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: `Capacity` ([312](#)), `Items` ([312](#))

10.16.23 TFPHashList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : uint32`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: `Count` ([311](#)), `Items` ([312](#))

10.16.24 TFPHashList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: SizeInt]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the pointers, the index runs from 0 to `Count-1` ([311](#)).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `Capacity` ([312](#)), `Count` ([311](#))

10.16.25 TFPHashList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list.

Declaration: `Property List : PViHashListItem`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` exposes the low-level item list ([284](#)). It should not be used directly.

See also: `Strs` ([306](#)), `THashItemList` ([284](#))

10.17 TFPHashObject

10.17.1 Description

TFPHashObject is a TObject descendent which is aware of the TFPHashObjectList (315) class. It has a name property and an owning list: if the name is changed, it will reposition itself in the list which owns it. It offers methods to change the owning list: the object will correctly remove itself from the list which currently owns it, and insert itself in the new list.

See also: TFPHashObject.Name (314), TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner (314), TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName (314)

10.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
314	ChangeOwner	Change the list owning the object.
314	ChangeOwnerAndName	Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.
313	Create	Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.
313	CreateNotOwned	Create an instance not owned by any list.
314	Rename	Rename the object.

10.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
315	Hash	r	Hash value.
314	Name	r	Current name of the object.
315	OwnerList	r	

10.17.4 TFPHashObject.CreateNotOwned

Synopsis: Create an instance not owned by any list.

Declaration: `constructor CreateNotOwned`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateNotOwned` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject` which is not owned by any `TFPHashObjectList` (315) hash list. It also has no name when created in this way.

See also: `TFPHashObject.Name` (314), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (314), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName` (314)

10.17.5 TFPHashObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a named instance, and insert in a hash list.

Declaration: `constructor Create (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates an instance of `TFPHashObject`, gives it the name `S` and inserts it in the hash list `HashObjectList` (315).

See also: `CreateNotOwned` (313), `TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner` (314), `TFPHashObject.Name` (314)

10.17.6 TFPHashObject.ChangeOwner

Synopsis: Change the list owning the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwner (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ChangeOwner` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it, and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList`.

Errors: If an object with the same name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwnerAndName` (314), `Name` (314)

10.17.7 TFPHashObject.ChangeOwnerAndName

Synopsis: Simultaneously change the list owning the object and the name of the object.

Declaration: `procedure ChangeOwnerAndName (HashObjectList: TFPHashObjectList;
const s: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ChangeOwnerAndName` can be used to move the object between hash lists: The object will be removed correctly from the hash list that currently owns it (using the current name), and will be inserted in the list `HashObjectList` with the new name `S`.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the new hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` (314), `Name` (314)

10.17.8 TFPHashObject.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the object.

Declaration: `procedure Rename (const ANewName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` changes the name of the object, and notifies the hash list of this change.

Errors: If the new name already is present in the hash list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `ChangeOwner` (314), `ChangeOwnerAndName` (314), `Name` (314)

10.17.9 TFPHashObject.Name

Synopsis: Current name of the object.

Declaration: `Property Name : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Name` is the name of the object, it is stored in the hash list using this name as the key.

See also: `Rename` (314), `ChangeOwnerAndName` (314)

10.17.10 TFPHashObject.Hash

Synopsis: Hash value.

Declaration: `Property Hash : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Hash is the hash value of the object in the hash list that owns it.

See also: Name ([314](#))

10.17.11 TFPHashObject.OwnerList

Declaration: `Property OwnerList : TFPHashObjectList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

10.18 TFPHashObjectList**10.18.1 Method overview**

Page	Method	Description
316	Add	Add a new key/data pair to the list.
316	Clear	Clear the list.
316	Create	Create a new instance of the hashlist.
317	Delete	Delete an object from the list.
316	Destroy	Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.
318	Extract	Extract a object instance from the list.
318	Find	Find data associated with key.
319	FindIndexOf	Return index of named object.
319	FindInstanceOf	Search an instance of a certain class.
319	FindWithHash	Find first element with given name and hash value.
320	ForEachCall	Call a procedure for each object in the list.
317	GetNextCollision	Get next collision number.
317	HashOfIndex	Return the hash value of an object by index.
318	IndexOf	Return the index of the object instance.
317	NameOfIndex	Returns the key name of an object by index.
320	Pack	Remove nil object instances from the list.
318	Remove	Remove first occurrence of a object instance.
319	Rename	Rename a key.

10.18.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
320	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
320	Count	r	Current number of elements in the list.
321	Items	rw	Indexed array with object instances.
321	List	r	Low-level hash list.
321	OwnsObjects	rw	Does the list own the objects it contains.

10.18.3 TFPHashObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the hashlist.

Declaration: `constructor Create (FreeObjects: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TFPHashObjectList` on the heap and sets the hash capacity to 1.

If `FreeObjects` is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Destroy` (316), `TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects` (321)

10.18.4 TFPHashObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of the hashlist from the heap.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the memory structures maintained by the hashlist and removes the `TFPHashObjectList` instance from the heap. If the list owns its objects, they are freed from memory as well.

`Destroy` should not be called directly, it's better to use `Free` or `FreeAndNil` instead.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Create` (316), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (316)

10.18.5 TFPHashObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all objects from the list. It does not free the objects themselves, unless `OwnsObjects` (321) is `True`. It always frees all memory needed to contain the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (316)

10.18.6 TFPHashObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add a new key/data pair to the list.

Declaration: `function Add (const AName: RawByteString; AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new object instance (`AObject`) with key `AName` to the list. It returns the position of the object in the list.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to hold the key and data, an exception may be raised. If an object with this name already exists in the list, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (317)

10.18.7 TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex

Synopsis: Returns the key name of an object by index.

Declaration: `function NameOfIndex(Index: Integer) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: `NameOfIndex` returns the key name of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (319), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (319)

10.18.8 TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex

Synopsis: Return the hash value of an object by index.

Declaration: `function HashOfIndex(Index: Integer) : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Description: `HashOfIndex` returns the hash value of the object at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is out of the valid range, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (319), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (319)

10.18.9 TFPHashObjectList.GetNextCollision

Synopsis: Get next collision number.

Declaration: `function GetNextCollision(Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Get next collision number.

10.18.10 TFPHashObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an object from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the object at position `Index`. If `OwnsObjects` (321) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Add` (316), `OwnsObjects` (321)

10.18.11 TFPHashObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract a object instance from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the data object from the list, if it is in the list. It returns the object instance if it was removed from the list, `Nil` otherwise. The object is *not* freed from memory, regardless of the value of `OwnsObjects` (321).

`Extract` does a linear search, and is not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Remove` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (316)

10.18.12 TFPHashObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove first occurrence of a object instance.

Declaration: `function Remove (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the first occurrence of the object instance `Item` in the list, if it is present. The return value is the location of the removed object instance, or `-1` if no object instance was removed.

If `OwnsObjects` (321) is `True`, then the object itself is also freed from memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Delete` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` (316), `TFPHashObjectList.Extract` (318)

10.18.13 TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of the object instance.

Declaration: `function IndexOf (AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of the first occurrence of object instance `AObject`. If the object is not in the list, `-1` is returned.

The performed search is linear, and not very efficient.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (319), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (319)

10.18.14 TFPHashObjectList.Find

Synopsis: Find data associated with key.

Declaration: `function Find (const s: RawByteString) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` searches (using the hash) for the data object associated with key `AName` and returns the data object instance associated with it. If the object is not found, `Nil` is returned. It uses the hash value of the key to perform the search.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (319), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (319)

10.18.15 TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of named object.

Declaration: `function FindIndexOf(const s: RawByteString) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexOf` returns the index of the key `AName`, or -1 if the key does not exist in the list. It uses the hash value to search for the key.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash` (319)

10.18.16 TFPHashObjectList.FindWithHash

Synopsis: Find first element with given name and hash value.

Declaration: `function FindWithHash(const AName: RawByteString; AHash: LongWord)
: Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindWithHash` searches for the object with key `AName`. It uses the provided hash value `AHash` to perform the search. If the object exists, the data object instance is returned, if not, the result is `Nil`.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.HashOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.NameOfIndex` (317), `TFPHashObjectList.IndexOf` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.Find` (318), `TFPHashObjectList.FindIndexOf` (319)

10.18.17 TFPHashObjectList.Rename

Synopsis: Rename a key.

Declaration: `function Rename(const AOldName: RawByteString;
const ANewName: RawByteString) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` renames key `AOldname` to `ANewName`. The hash value is recomputed and the object is moved in the list to it's new position.

Errors: If an object with `ANewName` already exists, an exception will be raised.

10.18.18 TFPHashObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` searches the list for an instance of class `AClass`. It starts searching at position `AStartAt`. If `AExact` is `True`, only instances of class `AClass` are considered. If `AExact` is `False`, then descendent classes of `AClass` are also taken into account when searching. If no instance is found, `Nil` is returned.

10.18.19 TFPHashObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove nil object instances from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` objects from the list, and frees all unused memory.

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Clear` ([316](#))

10.18.20 TFPHashObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: Call a procedure for each object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;`
`arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops over the objects in the list and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object and `arg`.

10.18.21 TFPHashObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` returns the current capacity of the list. The capacity is expanded as more elements are added to the list. If a good estimate of the number of elements that will be added to the list, the property can be set to a sufficiently large value to avoid reallocation of memory each time the list needs to grow.

See also: `Count` ([320](#)), `Items` ([321](#))

10.18.22 TFPHashObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the current number of elements in the list.

See also: `Capacity` ([320](#)), `Items` ([321](#))

10.18.23 TFPHashObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the list own the objects it contains.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what to do when an object is removed from the list: if it is `True` (the default), then the list owns the objects: when an object is removed from the list, it is destroyed (freed from memory). Clearing the list will free all objects in the list.

The value of `OwnsObjects` is set when the hash list is created, and may not be changed during the lifetime of the hash list. (The property is made read-only in versions later than 3.0 of Free Pascal).

See also: `TFPHashObjectList.Create` ([316](#))

10.18.24 TFPHashObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array with object instances.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the object instances, the index runs from 0 to `Count-1` ([320](#)).

Errors: Specifying an invalid index will result in an exception.

See also: `Capacity` ([320](#)), `Count` ([320](#))

10.18.25 TFPHashObjectList.List

Synopsis: Low-level hash list.

Declaration: `Property List : TFPHashList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` exposes the low-level hash list ([306](#)). It should not be used directly.

See also: `TFPHashList` ([306](#))

10.19 TFPObjectHashTable

10.19.1 Description

`TFPStringHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` ([299](#)) descendent which stores object instances together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are strings themselves, it's better to use `TFPStringHashTable` ([331](#)), or for arbitrary pointer data, `TFPDataHashTable` ([305](#)) is more suitable. The objects are exposed with their keys through the `Items` ([323](#)) property.

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` ([331](#)), `TFPDataHashTable` ([305](#)), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` ([323](#))

10.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
323	Add	Add a new object to the hash table.
322	Create	Create a new instance of TFPOjectHashTable.
322	CreateWith	Create a new hash table with given size and hash function.
323	Iterate	Iterate over the objects in the hash table.

10.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
323	Items	rw	Key-based access to the objects.
323	OwnsObjects	r	Does the hash table own the objects ?

10.19.4 TFPOjectHashTable.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TFPOjectHashTable.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwnsObjects: Boolean=True)

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TFPOjectHashTable on the heap. It sets the OwnsObjects ([323](#)) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited Create. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: TFPOjectHashTable.OwnsObjects ([323](#)), TFPOjectHashTable.CreateWith ([322](#)), TFPOjectHashTable.Items ([323](#))

10.19.5 TFPOjectHashTable.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new hash table with given size and hash function.

Declaration: constructor CreateWith(AHashTableSize: LongWord;
aHashFunc: THashFunction;
AOwnsObjects: Boolean=True)

Visibility: public

Description: CreateWith sets the OwnsObjects ([323](#)) property to AOwnsObjects, and then calls the inherited CreateWith. If AOwnsObjects is set to True, then the hash table owns the objects: whenever an object is removed from the list, it is automatically freed.

This constructor should be used when a table size and hash algorithm should be specified that differ from the default table size and hash algorithm.

Errors: If not enough memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

See also: TFPOjectHashTable.OwnsObjects ([323](#)), TFPOjectHashTable.Create ([322](#)), TFPOjectHashTable.Items ([323](#))

10.19.6 TFObjectHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the objects in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TObjectIteratorMethod) : TObject; virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TObjectIteratorCallback) : TObject; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, calling `aMethod` for each object, or until the method returns `False` in its `continue` parameter. It returns `Nil` if all elements were processed, or the object that was being processed when `aMethod` returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

10.19.7 TFObjectHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new object to the hash table.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: AnsiString; AItem: TObject); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the object `AItem` to the hash table, and associates it with key `aKey`.

Errors: If the key `aKey` is already in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFObjectHashTable.Items` ([323](#))

10.19.8 TFObjectHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key-based access to the objects.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: Ansistring]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` provides access to the objects in the hash table using their key: the array index `Index` is the key. A key which is not present will result in an `Nil` instance.

See also: `TFObjectHashTable.Add` ([323](#))

10.19.9 TFObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Does the hash table own the objects ?

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines what happens with objects which are removed from the hash table: if `True`, then removing an object from the hash list will free the object. If `False`, the object is not freed. Note that way in which the object is removed is not relevant: be it `Delete`, `Remove` or `Clear`.

See also: `TFObjectHashTable.Create` ([322](#)), `TFObjectHashTable.Items` ([323](#))

10.20 TFPObjectList

10.20.1 Description

`TFPObjectList` is a `TFPList` (??) based list which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TObjectList` (337), `TFPObjectList` offers no notification mechanism of list operations, allowing it to be faster than `TObjectList`. For the same reason, it is also not a descendent of `TFPList` (although it uses one internally).

See also: `#rtl.classes.TFPList` (??), `TObjectList` (337)

10.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
325	Add	Add an object to the list.
329	Assign	Copy the contents of a list.
325	Clear	Clear all elements in the list.
324	Create	Create a new object list.
325	Delete	Delete an element from the list.
325	Destroy	Clears the list and destroys the list instance.
326	Exchange	Exchange the location of two objects.
326	Expand	Expand the capacity of the list.
326	Extract	Extract an object from the list.
327	FindInstanceOf	Search for an instance of a certain class.
328	First	Return the first non-nil object in the list.
330	ForEachCall	For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.
327	IndexOf	Search for an object in the list.
328	Insert	Insert a new object in the list.
328	Last	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
328	Move	Move an object to another location in the list.
329	Pack	Remove all <code>Nil</code> references from the list.
327	Remove	Remove an item from the list.
329	Sort	Sort the list of objects.

10.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
330	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list.
330	Count	rw	Number of elements in the list.
331	Items	rw	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
331	List	r	Internal list used to keep the objects.
330	OwnsObjects	rw	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

10.20.4 TFPObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Destroy` (325), `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (330), `TObjectList` (337)

10.20.5 TFPObjectList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clears the list and destroys the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (330), `TObjectList.Create` (337)

10.20.6 TFPObjectList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear all elements in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: Removes all objects from the list, freeing all objects in the list if `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True`.

10.20.7 TFPObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AObject` to the list and returns the index of the object in the list.

Note that when `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True`, an object should not be added twice to the list: this will result in memory corruption when the object is freed (as it will be freed twice). The `Add` method does not check this, however.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (330), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (325)

10.20.8 TFPObjectList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` removes the object at index `Index` from the list. When `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True`, the object is also freed.

Errors: An access violation may occur when `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True` and either the object was freed externally, or when the same object is in the same list twice.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Remove` (327), `TFPObjectList.Extract` (326), `TFPObjectList.OwnsObjects` (330), `TFPObjectList.Add` (325), `TFPObjectList.Clear` (325)

10.20.9 TFPObjectList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange the location of two objects.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the objects at indexes `Index1` and `Index2` in a direct operation (i.e. no delete/add is performed).

Errors: If either `Index1` or `Index2` is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Add` (325), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (325)

10.20.10 TFPObjectList.Expand

Synopsis: Expand the capacity of the list.

Declaration: `function Expand : TFPObjectList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list. It calls `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??) and then returns a reference to itself.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to expand the list, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Pack` (329), `TFPObjectList.Clear` (325), `#rtl.classes.tfplist.expand` (??)

10.20.11 TFPObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It returns `Item` if it was found, `Nil` if item was not present in the list.

Note that the object is not freed, and that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Pack` (329), `TFPObjectList.Clear` (325), `TFPObjectList.Remove` (327), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (325)

10.20.12 TFObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an item from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` (330) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Pack` (329), `TFObjectList.Clear` (325), `TFObjectList.Delete` (325), `TFObjectList.Extract` (326)

10.20.13 TFObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the presence of `AObject` in the list, and returns the location (index) in the list. The index is 0-based, and -1 is returned if `AObject` was not found in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Items` (331), `TFObjectList.Remove` (327), `TFObjectList.Extract` (326)

10.20.14 TFObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean;
AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the index of the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is `true`, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, -1 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.IndexOf` (327)

10.20.15 TFObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. All elements in the list after this position are shifted. The index is zero based, i.e. an insert at position 0 will insert an object at the first position of the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Add` ([325](#)), `TFObjectList.Delete` ([325](#))

10.20.16 TFObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.Last` ([328](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([329](#))

10.20.17 TFObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFObjectList.First` ([328](#)), `TFObjectList.Pack` ([329](#))

10.20.18 TFObjectList.Move

Synopsis: Move an object to another location in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the object at current location `CurIndex` to location `NewIndex`. Note that the `NewIndex` is determined *after* the object was removed from location `CurIndex`, and can hence be shifted with 1 position if `CurIndex` is less than `NewIndex`.

Contrary to exchange ([326](#)), the move operation is done by extracting the object from it's current location and inserting it at the new location.

Errors: If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is out of range, an exception may occur.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Exchange` ([326](#)), `TFPObjectList.Delete` ([325](#)), `TFPObjectList.Insert` ([328](#))

10.20.19 TFPObjectList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of a list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Obj: TFPObjectList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies the contents of `Obj` if `Obj` is of type `TFPObjectList`

Errors: None.

10.20.20 TFPObjectList.Pack

Synopsis: Remove all `Nil` references from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `Nil` elements from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TFPObjectList.First` ([328](#)), `TFPObjectList.Last` ([328](#))

10.20.21 TFPObjectList.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the list of objects.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` will perform a quick-sort on the list, using `Compare` as the compare algorithm. This function should accept 2 pointers and should return the following result:

less than 0 If the first pointer comes before the second.

equal to 0 If the pointers have the same value.

larger than 0 If the first pointer comes after the second.

The function should be able to deal with `Nil` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Sort` (??)

10.20.22 TFObjectList.ForEachCall

Synopsis: For each object in the list, call a method or procedure, passing it the object.

Declaration: `procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListCallback; arg: pointer)`
`procedure ForEachCall(proc2call: TObjectListStaticCallback;`
`arg: pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ForEachCall` loops through all objects in the list, and calls `proc2call`, passing it the object in the list. Additionally, `arg` is also passed to the procedure. `Proc2call` can be a plain procedure or can be a method of a class.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectListStaticCallback` (287), `TObjectListCallback` (287)

10.20.23 TFObjectList.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Capacity` is the number of elements that the list can contain before it needs to expand itself, i.e., reserve more memory for pointers. It is always equal or larger than `Count` (330).

See also: `TFObjectList.Count` (330)

10.20.24 TFObjectList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Count` is the number of elements in the list. Note that this includes `Nil` elements.

See also: `TFObjectList.Capacity` (330)

10.20.25 TFObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is `True` then they are freed. If the property is `False` the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to `True`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Create` (324), `TFPObjectList.Delete` (325), `TFPObjectList.Remove` (327), `TFPObjectList.Clear` (325)

10.20.26 TFPObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index `Index` is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to `Count-1`.

See also: `TFPObjectList.Count` (330)

10.20.27 TFPObjectList.List

Synopsis: Internal list used to keep the objects.

Declaration: `Property List : TFPList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `List` is a reference to the `TFPList` (??) instance used to manage the elements in the list.

See also: `#rtl.classes.tfplist` (??)

10.21 TFPStringHashTable

10.21.1 Description

`TFPStringHashTable` is a `TFPCustomHashTable` (299) descendent which stores simple strings together with the keys. In case the data associated with the keys are objects, it's better to use `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), or for arbitrary pointer data, `TFPDataHashTable` (305) is more suitable. The strings are exposed with their keys through the `Items` (332) property.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), `TFPDataHashTable` (305), `Items` (332)

10.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
332	Add	Add a new string to the hash list.
332	Iterate	Iterate over the strings in the hash table.

10.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
332	Items	rw	Key based access to the strings in the hash table.

10.21.4 TFPStringHashTable.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over the strings in the hash table.

Declaration: `function Iterate(aMethod: TStringIteratorMethod) : AnsiString; virtual`
`function Iterate(aMethod: TStringIteratorCallback) : AnsiString`
`; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Iterate iterates over all elements in the array, calling aMethod for each string, or until the method returns False in its continue parameter. It returns an empty string if all elements were processed, or the string that was being processed when aMethod returned False in the Continue parameter.

10.21.5 TFPStringHashTable.Add

Synopsis: Add a new string to the hash list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const aKey: AnsiString; const aItem: AnsiString); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new string AItem to the hash list with key AKey.

Errors: If a string with key Akey already exists in the hash table, an exception will be raised.

See also: TFPStringHashTable.Items ([332](#))

10.21.6 TFPStringHashTable.Items

Synopsis: Key based access to the strings in the hash table.

Declaration: `Property Items[index: AnsiString]: AnsiString; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Items provides access to the strings in the hash table using their key: the array index Index is the key. A key which is not present will result in an empty string.

See also: TFPStringHashTable.Add ([332](#))

10.22 THTCustomNode

10.22.1 Description

THTCustomNode is used by the TFPCustomHashTable ([299](#)) class to store the keys and associated values.

See also: TFPCustomHashTable ([299](#))

10.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
333	CreateWith	Create a new instance of <code>THTCustomNode</code> .
333	HasKey	Check whether this node matches the given key.

10.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
333	Key	r	Key value associated with this hash item.

10.22.4 THTCustomNode.CreateWith

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `THTCustomNode`.

Declaration: `constructor CreateWith(const AString: AnsiString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateWith` creates a new instance of `THTCustomNode` and stores the string `AString` in it. It should never be necessary to call this method directly, it will be called by the `TFPCustomHashTable` ([299](#)) class when needed.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TFPCustomHashTable` ([299](#))

10.22.5 THTCustomNode.HasKey

Synopsis: Check whether this node matches the given key.

Declaration: `function HasKey(const AKey: AnsiString) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasKey` checks whether this node matches the given key `AKey`, by comparing it with the stored key. It returns `True` if it does, `False` if not.

Errors: None.

See also: `THTCustomNode.Key` ([333](#))

10.22.6 THTCustomNode.Key

Synopsis: Key value associated with this hash item.

Declaration: `Property Key : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Key` is the key value associated with this hash item. It is stored when the item is created, and is read-only.

See also: `THTCustomNode.CreateWith` ([333](#))

10.23 THTDataNode

10.23.1 Description

THTDataNode is used by TFPDataHashTable (305) to store the hash items in. It simply holds the data pointer.

It should not be necessary to use THTDataNode directly, it's only for inner use by TFPDataHashTable

See also: TFPDataHashTable (305), THTObjectNode (334), THTStringNode (335)

10.23.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
334	Data	rw	Data pointer.

10.23.3 THTDataNode.Data

Synopsis: Data pointer.

Declaration: `Property Data : pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Pointer containing the user data associated with the hash value.

10.24 THTObjectNode

10.24.1 Description

THTObjectNode is a THTCustomNode (332) descendent which holds the data in the TFPObjectHashTable (321) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use THTObjectNode directly, it's only for inner use by TFPObjectHashTable

See also: TFPObjectHashTable (321)

10.24.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
334	Data	rw	Object instance.

10.24.3 THTObjectNode.Data

Synopsis: Object instance.

Declaration: `Property Data : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the object instance associated with the key value. It is exposed in `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` (323)

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), `TFPObjectHashTable.Items` (323), `THTOwnedObjectNode` (335)

10.25 THTOwnedObjectNode

10.25.1 Description

`THTOwnedObjectNode` is used instead of `THTObjectNode` (334) in case `TFPObjectHashTable` (321) owns it's objects. When this object is destroyed, the associated data object is also destroyed.

See also: `TFPObjectHashTable` (321), `THTObjectNode` (334), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` (323)

10.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
335	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the node and the object.

10.25.3 THTOwnedObjectNode.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the node and the object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first frees the data object, and then only frees itself.

See also: `THTOwnedObjectNode` (335), `TFPObjectHashTable.OwnsObjects` (323)

10.26 THTStringNode

10.26.1 Description

`THTStringNode` is a `THTCustomNode` (332) descendent which holds the data in the `TFPStringHashTable` (331) hash table. It exposes a data string.

It should not be necessary to use `THTStringNode` directly, it's only for inner use by `TFPStringHashTable`

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` (331)

10.26.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
335	<code>Data</code>	<code>rw</code>	String data.

10.26.3 THTStringNode.Data

Synopsis: String data.

Declaration: `Property Data : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` is the data of this has node. The data is a string, associated with the key. It is also exposed in `TFPStringHashTable.Items` (332)

See also: `TFPStringHashTable` (331)

10.27 TObjectBucketList

10.27.1 Description

`TObjectBucketList` is a class that redefines the associative `Data` array using `TObject` instead of `Pointer`. It also adds some overloaded versions of the `Add` and `Remove` calls using `TObject` instead of `Pointer` for the argument and result types.

See also: `TObjectBucketList` (336)

10.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
336	<code>Add</code>	Add an object to the list.
336	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an object from the list.

10.27.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
337	<code>Data</code>	rw	Associative array of data items.

10.27.4 TObjectBucketList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AItem: TObject; AData: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds `AItem` to the list and associated `AData` with it.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Data` (337), `TObjectBucketList.Remove` (336)

10.27.5 TObjectBucketList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AItem: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the object `AItem` from the list. It returns the `Data` object which was associated with the item. If `AItem` was not in the list, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (336), `TObjectBucketList.Data` (337)

10.27.6 TObjectBucketList.Data

Synopsis: Associative array of data items.

Declaration: `Property Data[AItem: TObject]: TObject; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Data` provides associative access to the data in the list: it returns the data object associated with the `AItem` object. If the `AItem` object is not in the list, an `EListError` exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectBucketList.Add` (336)

10.28 TObjectList

10.28.1 Description

`TObjectList` is a `TList` (??) descendent which has as the default array property `TObjects` (??) instead of pointers. By default it also manages the objects: when an object is deleted or removed from the list, it is automatically freed. This behaviour can be disabled when the list is created.

In difference with `TFPObjectList` (324), `TObjectList` offers a notification mechanism of list change operations: insert, delete. This slows down bulk operations, so if the notifications are not needed, `TFPObjectList` may be more appropriate.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList` (??), `TFPObjectList` (324), `TComponentList` (293), `TClassList` (290)

10.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
338	<code>Add</code>	Add an object to the list.
337	<code>Create</code>	Create a new object list.
338	<code>Extract</code>	Extract an object from the list.
339	<code>FindInstanceOf</code>	Search for an instance of a certain class.
339	<code>First</code>	Return the first non-nil object in the list.
339	<code>IndexOf</code>	Search for an object in the list.
339	<code>Insert</code>	Insert an object in the list.
340	<code>Last</code>	Return the last non-nil object in the list.
338	<code>Remove</code>	Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

10.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
340	<code>Items</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the elements of the list.
340	<code>OwnsObjects</code>	<code>rw</code>	Should the list free elements when they are removed.

10.28.4 TObjectList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new object list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(FreeObjects: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new object list. The `FreeObjects` parameter determines whether objects that are removed from the list should also be freed from memory. By default this is `True`. This behaviour can be changed after the list was instantiated.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.OwnsObjects` (340), `TFPObjectList` (324)

10.28.5 TObjectList.Add

Synopsis: Add an object to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept objects (`AObject`) instead of pointers.

The function returns the index of the position where the object was added.

Errors: If the list must be expanded, and not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Insert` (339), `#rtl.classes.TList.Delete` (??), `TObjectList.Extract` (338), `TObjectList.Remove` (338)

10.28.6 TObjectList.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an object from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(Item: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the object `Item` from the list if it is present in the list. Contrary to `Remove` (338), `Extract` does not free the extracted element if `OwnsObjects` (340) is `True`

The function returns a reference to the item which was removed from the list, or `Nil` if no element was removed.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Remove` (338)

10.28.7 TObjectList.Remove

Synopsis: Remove (and possibly free) an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `Item` from the list, if it is present in the list. It frees `Item` if `OwnsObjects` (340) is `True`, and returns the index of the object that was found in the list, or -1 if the object was not found.

Note that only the first found object is removed from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Extract` (338)

10.28.8 TObjectList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Search for an object in the list.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(AObject: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `TList` (??) implementation to accept an object instance instead of a pointer.
The function returns the index of the first match for `AObject` in the list, or -1 if no match was found.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.FindInstanceOf` (339)

10.28.9 TObjectList.FindInstanceOf

Synopsis: Search for an instance of a certain class.

Declaration: `function FindInstanceOf(AClass: TClass; AExact: Boolean; AStartAt: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindInstanceOf` will look through the instances in the list and will return the first instance which is a descendent of class `AClass` if `AExact` is `False`. If `AExact` is `true`, then the instance should be of class `AClass`.

If no instance of the requested class is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.IndexOf` (339)

10.28.10 TObjectList.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts `AObject` in the list at position `Index`. The index is zero-based. This method overrides the implementation in `TList` (??) to accept objects instead of pointers.

Errors: If an invalid `Index` is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `TObjectList.Add` (338), `TObjectList.Remove` (338)

10.28.11 TObjectList.First

Synopsis: Return the first non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function First : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns a reference to the first non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.Last` (340)

10.28.12 TObjectList.Last

Synopsis: Return the last non-nil object in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns a reference to the last non-`Nil` element in the list. If no non-`Nil` element is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectList.First` (339)

10.28.13 TObjectList.OwnsObjects

Synopsis: Should the list free elements when they are removed.

Declaration: `Property OwnsObjects : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OwnsObjects` determines whether the objects in the list should be freed when they are removed (not extracted) from the list, or when the list is cleared. If the property is `True` then they are freed. If the property is `False` the elements are not freed.

The value is usually set in the constructor, and is seldom changed during the lifetime of the list. It defaults to `True`.

See also: `TObjectList.Create` (337), `TObjectList.Remove` (338), `TObjectList.Extract` (338)

10.28.14 TObjectList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the elements of the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TObject; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is the default property of the list. It provides indexed access to the elements in the list. The index `Index` is zero based, i.e., runs from 0 (zero) to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TList.Count` (??)

10.29 TObjectQueue

10.29.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
341	<code>Peek</code>	Look at the first object in the queue.
341	<code>Pop</code>	Pop the first element off the queue.
341	<code>Push</code>	Push an object on the queue.

10.29.2 TObjectQueue.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the queue.

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the queue. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TQueue` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the queue, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Pop` ([341](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([341](#))

10.29.3 TObjectQueue.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the first element off the queue.

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Pop` removes the first element in the queue, and returns a reference to the instance. If the queue is empty, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` ([341](#)), `TObjectQueue.Peek` ([341](#))

10.29.4 TObjectQueue.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the first object in the queue.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: public

Description: `Peek` returns the first object in the queue, without removing it from the queue. If there are no more objects in the queue, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectQueue.Push` ([341](#)), `TObjectQueue.Pop` ([341](#))

10.30 TObjectStack

10.30.1 Description

`TObjectStack` is a stack implementation which manages pointers only.

`TObjectStack` introduces no new behaviour, it simply overrides some methods to accept and/or return `TObject` instances instead of pointers.

See also: `TOrderedList` ([343](#)), `TStack` ([345](#)), `TQueue` ([345](#)), `TObjectQueue` ([340](#))

10.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
342	Peek	Look at the top object in the stack.
342	Pop	Pop the top object of the stack.
342	Push	Push an object on the stack.

10.30.3 TObjectStack.Push

Synopsis: Push an object on the stack.

Declaration: `function Push(AObject: TObject) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` pushes another object on the stack. It overrides the `Push` method as implemented in `TStack` so it accepts only objects as arguments.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the stack, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObjectStack.Pop` ([342](#)), `TObjectStack.Peek` ([342](#))

10.30.4 TObjectStack.Pop

Synopsis: Pop the top object of the stack.

Declaration: `function Pop : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` pops the top object of the stack, and returns the object instance. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` ([342](#)), `TObjectStack.Peek` ([342](#))

10.30.5 TObjectStack.Peek

Synopsis: Look at the top object in the stack.

Declaration: `function Peek : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Peek` returns the top object of the stack, without removing it from the stack. If there are no more objects on the stack, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `TObjectStack.Push` ([342](#)), `TObjectStack.Pop` ([342](#))

10.31 TOrderedList

10.31.1 Description

TOrderedList provides the base class for TQueue (345) and TStack (345). It provides an interface for pushing and popping elements on or off the list, and manages the internal list of pointers.

Note that TOrderedList does not manage objects on the stack, i.e. objects are not freed when the ordered list is destroyed.

See also: TQueue (345), TStack (345)

10.31.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
344	AtLeast	Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.
344	Count	Number of elements on the list.
343	Create	Create a new ordered list.
343	Destroy	Free an ordered list.
345	Peek	Return the next element to be popped from the list.
344	Pop	Remove an element from the list.
344	Push	Push another element on the list.

10.31.3 TOrderedList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new ordered list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new ordered list. It initializes the internal pointer list.

Errors: None.

See also: TOrderedList.Destroy (343)

10.31.4 TOrderedList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free an ordered list.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal pointer list, and removes the TOrderedList instance from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: TOrderedList.Create (343)

10.31.5 TOrderedList.Count

Synopsis: Number of elements on the list.

Declaration: `function Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Count` is the number of pointers in the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.AtLeast` ([344](#))

10.31.6 TOrderedList.AtLeast

Synopsis: Check whether the list contains a certain number of elements.

Declaration: `function AtLeast (ACount: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AtLeast` returns `True` if the number of elements in the list is equal to or bigger than `ACount`. It returns `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Count` ([344](#))

10.31.7 TOrderedList.Push

Synopsis: Push another element on the list.

Declaration: `function Push (AItem: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` adds `AItem` to the list, and returns `AItem`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available to expand the list, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` ([344](#)), `TOrderedList.Peek` ([345](#))

10.31.8 TOrderedList.Pop

Synopsis: Remove an element from the list.

Declaration: `function Pop : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes an element from the list, and returns the element that was removed from the list. If no element is on the list, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Peek` ([345](#)), `TOrderedList.Push` ([344](#))

10.31.9 TOrderedList.Peek

Synopsis: Return the next element to be popped from the list.

Declaration: `function Peek : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Peek` returns the element that will be popped from the list at the next call to `Pop` (344), without actually popping it from the list.

Errors: None.

See also: `TOrderedList.Pop` (344), `TOrderedList.Push` (344)

10.32 TQueue

10.32.1 Description

`TQueue` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (343) which implements `Push` (344) and `Pop` (344) behaviour as a queue: what is first pushed on the queue, is popped of first (FIFO: First in, first out).

`TQueue` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (343)

See also: `TOrderedList` (343), `TObjectQueue` (340), `TStack` (345)

10.33 TStack

10.33.1 Description

`TStack` is a descendent of `TOrderedList` (343) which implements `Push` (344) and `Pop` (344) behaviour as a stack: what is last pushed on the stack, is popped of first (LIFO: Last in, first out).

`TStack` offers no new methods, it merely implements some abstract methods introduced by `TOrderedList` (343)

See also: `TOrderedList` (343), `TObjectStack` (341), `TQueue` (345)

Chapter 11

Reference for unit 'csvdocument'

11.1 Used units

Table 11.1: Used units by unit 'csvdocument'

Name	Page
bufstream	268
Classes	??
Contnrs	284
csvreadwrite	355
System	??
sysutils	??

11.2 Overview

The `CSVDocument` unit offers the `TCSVDocument` ([347](#)) class which can be used to read, manipulate and write the contents of a CSV file. It uses the methods of the `#fcl.csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([361](#)) and `#fcl.csvreadwrite.TCSVBuilder` ([356](#)) units to read and write the actual file.

11.3 Constants, types and variables

11.3.1 Types

`TCSVBuilder` = `csvreadwrite.TCSVBuilder`

`TCSVBuilder` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([361](#))

`TCSVChar` = `csvreadwrite.TCSVChar`

`TCSVChar` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVChar` ([356](#))

`TCSVParser` = `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser`

`TCSVParser` is a backwards-compatibility alias for `csvreadwrite.TCSVParser` ([361](#))

11.4 TCSVDocument

11.4.1 Description

`TCSVDocument` can be used to read a CSV file in memory using e.g. `LoadFromFile` (348), manipulate the contents using the `Cells` (353) property. Additional rows can be added using `AddRow` (349), additional cells can be added using `AddCell` (349). After all is done, the `SaveToFile` (349) method can be used to save the new content to file. The various properties introduced in `csvreadwrite.TCSVHandler` (346) can be used to configure the format of the CSV file.

See also: `LoadFromFile` (348), `Cells` (353), `AddRow` (349), `AddCell` (349), `SaveToFile` (349), `csvreadwrite.TCSVHandler` (346)

11.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
349	<code>AddCell</code>	Add a new cell to a row.
349	<code>AddRow</code>	Add a new row to the CSV Data.
352	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all rows.
352	<code>CloneRow</code>	Duplicate a row.
347	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVDocument</code> .
348	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TCSVDocument</code> instance from memory.
352	<code>ExchangeRows</code>	Exchange positions of 2 rows.
351	<code>HasCell</code>	Test if a cell exists.
351	<code>HasRow</code>	Test if a row exists.
351	<code>IndexOfCol</code>	Test whether a value exists at a given row.
351	<code>IndexOfRow</code>	Test whether a value exists at a given column.
350	<code>InsertCell</code>	Insert cell at specified position.
350	<code>InsertRow</code>	Insert row before row number <code>aRow</code> .
348	<code>LoadFromFile</code>	Load a CSV file into the document.
348	<code>LoadFromStream</code>	Load CSV data from a stream.
350	<code>RemoveCell</code>	Remove a cell at a particular row.
350	<code>RemoveRow</code>	Remove a row.
352	<code>RemoveTrailingEmptyCells</code>	Remove empty cells at the end of each row.
349	<code>SaveToFile</code>	Save to file on disk.
349	<code>SaveToStream</code>	Save the CSV data to stream.
352	<code>UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings</code>	Ensures all values have the same line ending/.

11.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
353	<code>Cells</code>	rw	Array access to all cells.
353	<code>ColCount</code>	r	Return the column count for a given row.
354	<code>CSVText</code>	rw	Return the CSV Document as a single CSV text.
353	<code>DetectBOM</code>	rw	
354	<code>MaxColCount</code>	r	Maximum column count.
353	<code>RowCount</code>	r	Number of available rows.

11.4.4 TCSVDocument.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCSVDocument`.

Declaration: `constructor Create;` `override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the data structures for the CSV cells.

See also: Cells ([353](#)), Destroy ([348](#))

11.4.5 TCSVDocument.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCSVDocument` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the data structures for the CSV cells and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: Cells ([353](#)), Create ([347](#))

11.4.6 TCSVDocument.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load a CSV file into the document.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFilename: string); overload`
`procedure LoadFromFile(const AFilename: string; ABufferSize: Integer)`
`; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a file stream using `aFileName` and calls `LoadFromStream` ([348](#)) to read the contents of the file.

The file is read using an internal buffer for efficiency. The size of the buffer can be specified in bytes using `ABufferSize`. If the size is not specified, a default buffer size is used.

Errors: If the file does not exist, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromStream` ([348](#)), `SaveToStream` ([349](#)), `SaveToFile` ([349](#))

11.4.7 TCSVDocument.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load CSV data from a stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the CSV data from the `aStream` stream. It uses the settings introduced in `TCSVHandler` ([359](#)) when determining fields and rows. If `EqualColCountPerRow` ([361](#)) is `True` then it will add empty cells after reading the CSV data, so all rows have an equal count of columns..

See also: `EqualColCountPerRow` ([361](#)), `SaveToStream` ([349](#)), `SaveToFile` ([349](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([348](#)), `TCSVHandler` ([359](#))

11.4.8 TCSVDocument.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save to file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFilename: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates a file stream from `aFileName` and calls `SaveToStream` (349) to actually write the CSV data to the file.

Errors: If the file cannot be created or cannot be written to, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToStream` (349), `LoadFromStream` (348), `LoadFromFile` (348)

11.4.9 TCSVDocument.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the CSV data to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the CSV data to the `aStream` stream. It uses the settings introduced in `TCSVHandler` (359) to apply the correct formatting to fields and rows. If `EqualColCountPerRow` (361) is `True` then it will add empty cells prior to writing, so all rows in the file have an equal count of columns.

Errors: If the stream cannot be written to, an exception will be raised.

See also: `EqualColCountPerRow` (361), `SaveToFile` (349), `LoadFromStream` (348), `LoadFromFile` (348), `TCSVHandler` (359)

11.4.10 TCSVDocument.AddRow

Synopsis: Add a new row to the CSV Data.

Declaration: `procedure AddRow(const AFirstCell: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddRow` appends a new row to collection of rows, and adds 1 cell to this new row with contents `aFirstCell`. If `aFirstCell` is not specified, then an empty cell is added.

See also: `AddCell` (349), `InsertRow` (350), `InsertCell` (350), `RemoveRow` (350)

11.4.11 TCSVDocument.AddCell

Synopsis: Add a new cell to a row.

Declaration: `procedure AddCell(ARow: Integer; const AValue: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddCell` adds a new cell at the end of row `aRow` (zero based) with value `aValue`. If `aValue` is not specified, then an empty cell is added.

If a non-existing row is specified, rows are added till `aRow` is reached.

See also: `AddRow` (349), `InsertRow` (350), `InsertCell` (350), `RemoveCell` (350)

11.4.12 TCSVDocument.InsertRow

Synopsis: Insert row before row number `aRow`.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRow(ARow: Integer; const AFirstCell: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertRow` inserts a new empty row before row number `aRow`, and adds a cell to the new row with contents `aFirstCell`.

If a non-existing row is specified, the row is simply appended after the last row.

See also: `AddRow` (349), `AddCell` (349), `InsertCell` (350), `RemoveRow` (350)

11.4.13 TCSVDocument.InsertCell

Synopsis: Insert cell at specified position.

Declaration: `procedure InsertCell(ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer;
const AValue: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertCell` inserts a new cell before cell `aCol` (zero based) in row `aRow` (zero based) with value `aValue`. If `aValue` is not specified, then an empty cell is inserted.

If a non-existing column is specified, the cell is appended at the end of the row.

If a non-existing row is specified, rows are added till `aRow` is reached.

See also: `AddRow` (349), `InsertRow` (350), `AddCell` (349), `RemoveCell` (350)

11.4.14 TCSVDocument.RemoveRow

Synopsis: Remove a row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveRow(ARow: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveRow` removes row number `aRow` (zero-based) from the list of rows. If a non-existing row index is given, no row is removed.

See also: `AddRow` (349), `RemoveCell` (350)

11.4.15 TCSVDocument.RemoveCell

Synopsis: Remove a cell at a particular row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveCell(ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveCell` removes the cell at index `aCol` (zero-based) in row `aRow` (zero-based). If either of `aCol` or `aRow` are invalid, nothing is removed.

See also: `AddCell` (349), `RemoveRow` (350), `HasCell` (351)

11.4.16 TCSVDocument.HasRow

Synopsis: Test if a row exists.

Declaration: `function HasRow (ARow: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasRow` returns `True` if `aRow` is a valid row index, i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `RowCount` (353).

See also: `RowCount` (353), `HasCell` (351)

11.4.17 TCSVDocument.HasCell

Synopsis: Test if a cell exists.

Declaration: `function HasCell (ACol: Integer; ARow: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasCell` returns `True` if `aRow` is a valid row index, (i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `RowCount` (353)) and `aCol` is a valid column index for that row, i.e. is larger than or equal to 0 (zero) and is strictly less than `ColCount[aRow]` (353) .

See also: `RowCount` (353), `HasRow` (351), `ColCount` (353)

11.4.18 TCSVDocument.IndexOfCol

Synopsis: Test whether a value exists at a given row.

Declaration: `function IndexOfCol (const AString: string; ARow: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfCol` returns the index of the first cell with given value `aString` in row `aRow`. It returns `-1` if row `aRow` does not exist, or if the value does not appear in the given row.

See also: `Cells` (353), `IndexOfRow` (351)

11.4.19 TCSVDocument.IndexOfRow

Synopsis: Test whether a value exists at a given column.

Declaration: `function IndexOfRow (const AString: string; ACol: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfRow` returns the index of the first row with given value `aString` in column `aCol`. It returns `-1` if no such row exists.

See also: `IndexOfCol` (351), `Cells` (353)

11.4.20 TCSVDocument.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all rows.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all rows from the document.

See also: [AddRow \(349\)](#)

11.4.21 TCSVDocument.CloneRow

Synopsis: Duplicate a row.

Declaration: `procedure CloneRow (ARow: Integer; AInsertPos: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloneRow` will insert a row at `aInsertPos` and duplicate all cells of row `aRow` in the new row.

See also: [AddRow \(349\)](#), [InsertRow \(350\)](#), [ExchangeRows \(352\)](#)

11.4.22 TCSVDocument.ExchangeRows

Synopsis: Exchange positions of 2 rows.

Declaration: `procedure ExchangeRows (ARow1: Integer; ARow2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExchangeRows` takes 2 rows with positions `aRow1` and `aRow2`, and exchanges them. if either of the row indexes does not exist, no action is performed.

See also: [AddRow \(349\)](#), [InsertRow \(350\)](#), [CloneRow \(352\)](#)

11.4.23 TCSVDocument.UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings

Synopsis: Ensures all values have the same line ending/.

Declaration: `procedure UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnifyEmbeddedLineEndings` forces the line endings in all cell values to match the `LineEnding (346)` setting. Cell values that do not have a line-endings in them are left untouched.

See also: [LineEnding \(346\)](#), [ChangeLineEndings \(346\)](#)

11.4.24 TCSVDocument.RemoveTrailingEmptyCells

Synopsis: Remove empty cells at the end of each row.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveTrailingEmptyCells`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveTrailingEmptyCells` traverses all rows, and removes all empty cells at the end of the row. The first cell of a row is never removed.

See also: [RemoveCell \(350\)](#)

11.4.25 TCSVDocument.DetectBOM

Declaration: Property DetectBOM : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

11.4.26 TCSVDocument.Cells

Synopsis: Array access to all cells.

Declaration: Property Cells[ACol: Integer;ARow: Integer]: string; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Cells provides read and write access to all the cells in the document using aCol and aRow (both zero-based) as the column and row indexes. If no cell data exists at the location, then reading the value will result in an empty string, and writing will add empty rows and cells so a cell exists at the given position.

See also: AddCell ([349](#)), AddRow ([349](#)), ColCount ([353](#)), RowCount ([353](#))

11.4.27 TCSVDocument.RowCount

Synopsis: Number of available rows.

Declaration: Property RowCount : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: RowCount returns the number of available rows. Valid row indexes are therefor in the range 0 to RowCount-1.

See also: ColCount ([353](#)), Cells ([353](#))

11.4.28 TCSVDocument.ColCount

Synopsis: Return the column count for a given row.

Declaration: Property ColCount[ARow: Integer]: Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: ColCount returns the number of available cells in the indicated row (aRow, zero-based). Valid column indexes are therefor in the range 0 to RowCount[aRow]-1.

See also: RowCount ([353](#)), Cells ([353](#))

11.4.29 TCSVDocument.MaxColCount

Synopsis: Maximum column count.

Declaration: `Property MaxColCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxColCount` scans all rows and returns the largest available `ColCount` (353) value.

See also: `RowCount` (353), `Cells` (353), `ColCount` (353)

11.4.30 TCSVDocument.CSVText

Synopsis: Return the CSV Document as a single CSV text.

Declaration: `Property CSVText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `CSVText` calculates the contents of the CSV file as it would be when written using `SaveToFile` (349) and returns the resulting string.

See also: `SaveToFile` (349), `SaveToStream` (349)

Chapter 12

Reference for unit 'csvreadwrite'

12.1 Used units

Table 12.1: Used units by unit 'csvreadwrite'

Name	Page
Classes	??
strutils	??
System	??
sysutils	??

12.2 Overview

The `csvreadwrite` unit contains a class `TCSVParser` ([361](#)) which allows you to read a CSV file, and `TCSVBuilder` ([356](#)) which allows you to create a CSV file. In both classes, it offers options to handle various kinds of CSV formats. These classes are used in the `TCSVDocument` ([347](#)) class (a class that offers a matrix-like representation of the CVS data) to read and write the CSV file.

12.3 Constants, types and variables

12.3.1 Types

`TCSVByteOrderMark = (bomNone, bomUTF8, bomUTF16LE, bomUTF16BE)`

Table 12.2: Enumeration values for type `TCSVByteOrderMark`

Value	Explanation
<code>bomNone</code>	No BOM marker was read.
<code>bomUTF16BE</code>	The UTF16 big-endian BOM Marker was read.
<code>bomUTF16LE</code>	The UTF16 little-endian BOM Marker was read.
<code>bomUTF8</code>	The UTF8 BOM marker was read.

`TCSVByteOrderMark` is the type of the `TCSVParser.BOM` (365) property. It can have the following values

bomNone No BOM marker was read.

bomUTF8 The UTF8 BOM marker was read.

bomUTF16LE The UTF16 little-endian BOM Marker was read.

bomUTF16BE The UTF16 big-endian BOM Marker was read.

`TCSVChar = char`

`TCSVChar` is an alias type for the basic character used in the CSV file. It is used in `TCSVChar` (356) and its descendents to define the character type read from file.

12.4 Procedures and functions

12.4.1 ChangeLineEndings

Synopsis: Change the line endings in a string.

Declaration: `function ChangeLineEndings(const AString: string;
const ALineEnding: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeLineEndings` is a utility function which changes the line ending characters CR, CR/LF and LF in `AString` to the specified line ending `aLineEnding`. It returns the transformed string.

12.5 TCSVBuilder

12.5.1 Description

`TCSVBuilder` can be used to correctly write a CSV file. To use it, optionally set a stream to which the CSV file will be written using `SetOutput` (357), call `AppendCell` (358) for each cell you wish to write, and call `AppendRow` (358) when you want to start a new line. If you didn't specify an output stream, the output is available in `DefaultOutput` (358) or `DefaultOutputAsString` (358).

See also: `SetOutput` (357), `AppendCell` (358), `AppendRow` (358), `DefaultOutput` (358), `DefaultOutputAsString` (358)

12.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
358	<code>AppendCell</code>	Append a cell to the output.
358	<code>AppendRow</code>	Append a new row.
357	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVBuilder</code> .
357	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TCSVBuilder</code> instance.
357	<code>ResetBuilder</code>	Reset values.
357	<code>SetOutput</code>	Set the output stream to write to.

12.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
358	DefaultOutput	r	Default output as stream.
358	DefaultOutputAsString	r	Default output as string value.

12.5.4 TCSVBuilder.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCSVBuilder`.

Declaration: `constructor Create; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and initializes the default output.

See also: `DefaultOutput` ([358](#)), `DefaultOutputAsString` ([358](#))

12.5.5 TCSVBuilder.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TCSVBuilder` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the default output and calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `DefaultOutput` ([358](#)), `DefaultOutputAsString` ([358](#))

12.5.6 TCSVBuilder.SetOutput

Synopsis: Set the output stream to write to.

Declaration: `procedure SetOutput (AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetOutput` can be used to set the output stream to `aStream`. The use of this is optional, as the output is available by default in `DefaultOutput` ([358](#)) or `DefaultOutputAsString` ([358](#)). Calling `SetOutput` will result in resetting the inner state of the builder using `ResetBuilder` ([357](#)), so it must not be called if you already wrote some data.

See also: `DefaultOutput` ([358](#)), `DefaultOutputAsString` ([358](#)), `ResetBuilder` ([357](#))

12.5.7 TCSVBuilder.ResetBuilder

Synopsis: Reset values.

Declaration: `procedure ResetBuilder`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ResetBuilder` resets the builder state to the initial state, at the beginning of the stream. It is called when `SetOutput` ([357](#)) is called.

See also: `SetOutput` ([357](#))

12.5.8 TCSVBuilder.AppendCell

Synopsis: Append a cell to the output.

Declaration: `procedure AppendCell(const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendCell` appends a cell with content `AValue` to the output; It will quote the value using `QuoteChar` (360) if necessary, and append the necessary `Delimiter` (360) characters. It will not move to the next line, for this `AppendRow` (358) must be called.

See also: `QuoteChar` (360), `Delimiter` (360), `AppendRow` (358)

12.5.9 TCSVBuilder.AppendRow

Synopsis: Append a new row.

Declaration: `procedure AppendRow`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendRow` moves the cell pointer to the new row, i.e. it appends a `LineEnding` (360) character.

See also: `LineEnding` (360), `AppendCell` (358), `EqualColCountPerRow` (361)

12.5.10 TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutput

Synopsis: Default output as stream.

Declaration: `Property DefaultOutput : TMemoryStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DefaultOutput` is a stream to which the output is written if no output stream was specified with the `SetOutput` (357) call.

See also: `SetOutput` (357), `DefaultOutputAsString` (358)

12.5.11 TCSVBuilder.DefaultOutputAsString

Synopsis: Default output as string value.

Declaration: `Property DefaultOutputAsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DefaultOutput` is a string to which the output is written if no output stream was specified with the `SetOutput` (357) call. It is basically the contents of the `DefaultOutput` (358) property as a string.

See also: `SetOutput` (357), `DefaultOutput` (358)

12.6 TCSVHandler

12.6.1 Description

TCSVHandler is the base class for class TCSVParser (361) which allows you to read a CSV file, and class TCSVBuilder (356) which allows you to write a CSV file. It defines some common properties for these classes, mainly to describe the formatting of the CSV file, such as the Delimiter (360) or QuoteChar (360) and LineEnding (360) properties.

Normally you will not create an instance of TCSVHandler, instead you will create a TCSVParser or TCSVBuilder instance.

See also: TCSVParser (361), TCSVBuilder (356), Delimiter (360), QuoteChar (360), LineEnding (360)

12.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
359	Assign	Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.
360	AssignCSVProperties	Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.
359	Create	Create an instance of TCSVHandler.

12.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
360	Delimiter	rw	Field delimiter character.
361	EqualColCountPerRow	rw	Ensure every row has an equal amount of columns.
361	IgnoreOuterWhitespace	rw	Ignore whitespace between delimiters and field data.
360	LineEnding	rw	Line ending character.
360	QuoteChar	rw	Character to quote values.
361	QuoteOuterWhitespace	rw	Write quotes when outer whitespace is found in a value.

12.6.4 TCSVHandler.Create

Synopsis: Create an instance of TCSVHandler.

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and initializes various properties such as `Delimiter` (360), `QuoteChar` (360) and `LineEnding` (360) to their initial values.

See also: `Delimiter` (360), `QuoteChar` (360), `LineEnding` (360)

12.6.5 TCSVHandler.Assign

Synopsis: Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(ASource: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` overrides `TPersistent.Assign` (??) to copy all TCSVHandler properties from the `aSource` instance to the current instance. It calls `AssignCSVProperties` (360) to do the actual copying.

See also: `TPersistent.Assign` (??)

12.6.6 TCSVHandler.AssignCSVProperties

Synopsis: Assign properties from another TCSVHandler instance.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCSVProperties(ASource: TCSVHandler)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AssignCSVProperties` is called by `Assign` (359) to copy all TCSVHandler properties from the `aSource` instance to the current instance.

See also: `Assign` (359)

12.6.7 TCSVHandler.Delimiter

Synopsis: Field delimiter character.

Declaration: `Property Delimiter : TCSVChar`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Delimiter` is the field delimiter character. By default, it is the comma (,). Values that contain a delimiter character must be quoted by the character specified in `QuoteChar` (360).

See also: `QuoteChar` (360), `LineEnding` (360)

12.6.8 TCSVHandler.QuoteChar

Synopsis: Character to quote values.

Declaration: `Property QuoteChar : TCSVChar`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QuoteChar` specifies the character to use when quoting values. Between the quote characters, field delimiter (as set in `Delimiter` (360)) or line ending (as set in `LineEnding` (360)) characters lose their special meaning and are considered part of the value. The default quote character is the double quote (").

See also: `Delimiter` (360), `LineEnding` (360)

12.6.9 TCSVHandler.LineEnding

Synopsis: Line ending character.

Declaration: `Property LineEnding : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LineEnding` specifies the line-ending character. It is initialized with the current system's line ending character - one of CR, CR/LF or LF.

12.6.10 TCSVHandler.IgnoreOuterWhitespace

Synopsis: Ignore whitespace between delimiters and field data.

Declaration: Property IgnoreOuterWhitespace : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: IgnoreOuterWhitespace can be set to True to let the parser ignore any whitespace between the value of a field and the delimiter characters Delimiter (360) when reading data. The default is False

See also: Delimiter (360), QuoteOuterWhitespace (361)

12.6.11 TCSVHandler.QuoteOuterWhitespace

Synopsis: Write quotes when outer whitespace is found in a value.

Declaration: Property QuoteOuterWhitespace : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: QuoteOuterWhitespace can be set to True to let the parser quote values that have whitespace at the beginning or the end of the value. If set to False, there will be whitespace between the value of a field and the delimiter characters Delimiter (360), which can alter the value when reading data depending on the setting of IgnoreOuterWhitespace (361). The default is True.

See also: Delimiter (360), IgnoreOuterWhitespace (361)

12.6.12 TCSVHandler.EqualColCountPerRow

Synopsis: Ensure every row has an equal amount of columns.

Declaration: Property EqualColCountPerRow : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: EqualColCountPerRow must be set to report an equal amount of columns for every row when reading and writing. Empty columns will be reported or added for every row where the number of columns is less than the maximal amount of columns. This property is not used in the TCSVParser (361) or TCSVBuilder (356) classes. It is used in the TCSVDocument (355) class. The default is True.

See also: TCSVParser (361), TCSVBuilder (356), TCSVDocument (355)

12.7 TCSVParser

12.7.1 Description

TCSVParser can be used to read a CSV file. To use it, the stream or string containing the CSV data must be specified with SetSource (363), after which ParseNextCell (363) can be called till it returns

false. The current cell value after `ParseNextCell` returns `True` is available in `CurrentCellText` (364). By tracking `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364) and `MaxColCount` (364), the structure of the CSV file can be determined.

See also: `SetSource` (363), `ParseNextCell` (363), `CurrentCellText` (364), `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364), `MaxColCount` (364)

12.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
362	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCSVParser</code> .
362	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TCSVParser</code> instance.
363	<code>ParseNextCell</code>	Parse the next cell.
363	<code>ResetParser</code>	Reset the parser to its initial state.
363	<code>SetSource</code>	Set the CSV source data.

12.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
365	<code>BOM</code>	r	type of BOM marker found at the start of the data.
364	<code>CurrentCellText</code>	r	Current field value.
364	<code>CurrentCol</code>	r	Column (zero based) of the current field.
363	<code>CurrentRow</code>	r	Row (zero based) of the current field.
365	<code>DetectBOM</code>	rw	Must the parser attempt to read the BOM marker ?
365	<code>FreeStream</code>	rw	Does the parser free the stream when done ?
364	<code>MaxColCount</code>	r	Return the maximum column count encountered till now.

12.7.4 TCSVParser.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCSVParser`.

Declaration: `constructor Create; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TCSVParser` calls the inherited constructor and initializes some internal structures.

See also: `TCSVHandler.Create` (359)

12.7.5 TCSVParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TCSVParser` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TCSVParser` clears the internal data and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TCSVParser.Create` (362)

12.7.6 TCSVParser.SetSource

Synopsis: Set the CSV source data.

Declaration: `procedure SetSource(AStream: TStream); overload`
`procedure SetSource(const AString: string); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetSource` sets the source of the CSV data to `aStream` (a stream) or `aString` (a string). It calls `ResetParser` (363) to reset the parser state. The stream is by default not owned by the parser, i.e. you must free it after it has been used. If `TCSVParser.FreeStream` (365) is `True`, then the stream will be freed by the parser class when it is destroyed, or when a new stream is set.

See also: `FreeStream` (365), `ResetParser` (363)

12.7.7 TCSVParser.ResetParser

Synopsis: Reset the parser to its initial state.

Declaration: `procedure ResetParser`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResetParser` resets the parser to its initial state: `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364) and `MaxColCount` (364) are all set to zero, and the output is cleared. The stream is put at position zero and if `DetectBOM` (365) is `True`, the BOM (365) marker is read.

See also: `SetSource` (363), `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364), `MaxColCount` (364), BOM (365)

12.7.8 TCSVParser.ParseNextCell

Synopsis: Parse the next cell.

Declaration: `function ParseNextCell : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseNextCell` attempts to read the next field in the CSV data, moving to the next row if necessary. It returns `True` if a cell was read successfully, `False` if no more CSV data is available - when the stream has reached EOF. It takes into account the `Delimiter` (360), `QuoteChar` (360) and `LineEnding` (360) properties to determine the field boundaries. When it has returned `True`, the properties `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364), `MaxColCount` (364) and `CurrentCellText` (364) can be used to determine what field was read and what the contents of the field were.

See also: `CurrentRow` (363), `CurrentCol` (364), `MaxColCount` (364), `CurrentCellText` (364), `Delimiter` (360), `QuoteChar` (360), `LineEnding` (360)

12.7.9 TCSVParser.CurrentRow

Synopsis: Row (zero based) of the current field.

Declaration: `Property CurrentRow : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CurrentRow` contains the row number (zero based) of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`.

See also: [ParseNextCell \(363\)](#), [CurrentCol \(364\)](#), [MaxColCount \(364\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(364\)](#)

12.7.10 `TCSVParser.CurrentCol`

Synopsis: Column (zero based) of the current field.

Declaration: `Property CurrentCol : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurrentCol` contains the column number (zero based) of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`.

See also: [CurrentRow \(363\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(363\)](#), [MaxColCount \(364\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(364\)](#)

12.7.11 `TCSVParser.CurrentCellText`

Synopsis: Current field value.

Declaration: `Property CurrentCellText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurrentCellText` contains the value of the current field (cell) in the CSV file. This value is only valid after `ParseNextCell` returns `True`. The value has already been processed according to the `QuoteOuterWhitespace (361)` property.

See also: [CurrentRow \(363\)](#), [CurrentCol \(364\)](#), [MaxColCount \(364\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(363\)](#), [QuoteOuterWhitespace \(361\)](#)

12.7.12 `TCSVParser.MaxColCount`

Synopsis: Return the maximum column count encountered till now.

Declaration: `Property MaxColCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `MaxColCount` contains the maximum column count encountered till now. This value will be updated as `ParseNextCell (363)` is called, and consequently the final value is only available after `ParseNextValue` returned `False`.

See also: [CurrentRow \(363\)](#), [CurrentCol \(364\)](#), [CurrentCellText \(364\)](#), [ParseNextCell \(363\)](#)

12.7.13 TCSVParser.FreeStream

Synopsis: Does the parser free the stream when done ?

Declaration: `Property FreeStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FreeStream` determines whether the parser frees the stream when done or not. The stream is by default not owned by the parser, i.e. you must free it after it has been used. If `FreeStream` is `True`, then the stream will be freed by the parser class when it is destroyed, or when a new stream is set using `SetSource` (363)

See also: `SetSource` (363)

12.7.14 TCSVParser.BOM

Synopsis: type of BOM marker found at the start of the data.

Declaration: `Property BOM : TCSVByteOrderMark`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOM` indicates what Byte Order Marker was found at the beginning of the data. The value is updated as soon as the CSV is set using `TCSVParser.SetSource` (363) and `DetectBOM` (365) is `True`. For a list of possible values, see `TCSVByteOrderMark` (355).

See also: `TCSVByteOrderMark` (355), `TCSVParser.SetSource` (363)

12.7.15 TCSVParser.DetectBOM

Synopsis: Must the parser attempt to read the BOM marker ?

Declaration: `Property DetectBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DetectBOM` can be set to `True` if you want the CSV parser to attempt to detect a BOM marker. If set to `True`, then `ResetParser` (363) will attempt to read the BOM marker when the CSV data is set using `SetSource` (363). The result of the detection is available in the `BOM` (365) property after the source data is set. It follows that `DetectBOM` must be set before calling `SetSource` (363).

See also: `SetSource` (363), `ResetParser` (363), `BOM` (365)

Chapter 13

Reference for unit 'CustApp'

13.1 Used units

Table 13.1: Used units by unit 'CustApp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
singleinstance	1486
System	??
sysutils	??

13.2 Overview

The `CustApp` unit implements the `TCustomApplication` ([367](#)) class, which serves as the common ancestor to many kinds of `TApplication` classes: a GUI application in the LCL, a CGI application in FPCGI, a daemon application in `daemonapp`. It introduces some properties to describe the environment in which the application is running (environment variables, program command-line parameters) and introduces some methods to initialize and run a program, as well as functionality to handle exceptions.

Typical use of a descendent class is to introduce a global variable `Application` and use the following code:

```
Application.Initialize;  
Application.Run;
```

Since normally only a single instance of this class is created, and it is a `TComponent` descendent, it can be used as an owner for many components, doing so will ensure these components will be freed when the application terminates.

13.3 Constants, types and variables

13.3.1 Types

```
TEventLogTypes = Set of TEventType = TEventType
```

`TEventLogTypes` is a set of `TEventType` (??), used in `TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter` (379) to filter events that are sent to the system log.

```
TExceptionEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; E: Exception) of
    object
```

`TExceptionEvent` is the prototype for the exception handling events in `TCustomApplication`.

```
TStringArray = Array of string = string
```

`TStringArray` is an array of strings, used in the `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (372) call.

13.3.2 Variables

```
CustomApplication : TCustomApplication = Nil
```

`CustomApplication` contains the global application instance. All descendents of `TCustomApplication` (367) should, in addition to storing an instance pointer in some variable (most likely called "Application") store the instance pointer in this variable. This ensures that, whatever kind of application is being created, user code can access the application object.

13.4 TCustomApplication

13.4.1 Description

`TCustomApplication` is the ancestor class for classes that wish to implement a global application class instance. It introduces several application-wide functionalities.

- Exception handling in `HandleException` (369), `ShowException` (370), `OnException` (375) and `StopOnException` (378).
- Command-line parameter parsing in `FindOptionIndex` (371), `GetOptionValue` (371), `CheckOptions` (372) and `HasOption` (372)
- Environment variable handling in `GetEnvironmentList` (374) and `EnvironmentVariable` (377).

Descendent classes need to override the `DoRun` protected method to implement the functionality of the program.

13.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
372	CheckOptions	Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.
368	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TCustomApplication</code> class.
369	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TCustomApplication</code> instance.
371	FindOptionIndex	Return the index of an option.
374	GetEnvironmentList	Return a list of environment variables.
373	GetNonOptions	Get all non-switch options.
371	GetOptionValue	Return the value of a command-line option.
372	GetOptionValues	Get the values for an option that may be specified multiple times.
369	HandleException	Handle an exception.
372	HasOption	Check whether an option was specified.
369	Initialize	Initialize the application.
374	Log	Write a message to the event log.
370	Run	Runs the application.
370	ShowException	Show an exception to the user.
370	Terminate	Terminate the application.

13.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
378	CaseSensitiveLongOptions	rw	Are options interpreted case sensitive or not.
377	CaseSensitiveOptions	rw	
378	CaseSensitiveShortOptions	rw	
376	ConsoleApplication	r	Is the application a console application or not.
377	EnvironmentVariable	r	Environment variable access.
379	EventLogFilter	rw	Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log.
378	ExceptionExitCode	rw	ExitCode to use then terminating the program due to an exception.
374	ExeName	r	Name of the executable.
375	HelpFile	rw	Location of the application help file.
376	Location	r	Application location.
375	OnException	rw	Exception handling event.
377	OptionChar	rw	Command-line switch character.
377	ParamCount	r	Number of command-line parameters.
376	Params	r	Command-line parameters.
379	SingleInstance	r	Single instance used to control single application instance behaviour.
379	SingleInstanceClass	rw	Class to use when creating single instance.
379	SingleInstanceEnabled	rw	Enable single application instance control.
378	StopOnException	rw	Should the program loop stop on an exception.
375	Terminated	r	Was <code>Terminate</code> called or not.
375	Title	rw	Application title.

13.4.4 TCustomApplication.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TCustomApplication` class. It sets some defaults for the various properties, and then calls the inherited `Create`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Destroy` (369)

13.4.5 TCustomApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TCustomApplication` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` simply calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Create` (368)

13.4.6 TCustomApplication.HandleException

Synopsis: Handle an exception.

Declaration: `procedure HandleException(Sender: TObject); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HandleException` is called (or can be called) to handle the exception `Sender`. If the exception is not of class `Exception` then the default handling of exceptions in the `SysUtils` unit is called.

If the exception is of class `Exception` and the `OnException` (375) handler is set, the handler is called with the exception object and `Sender` argument.

If the `OnException` handler is not set, then the exception is passed to the `ShowException` (370) routine, which can be overridden by descendent application classes to show the exception in a way that is fit for the particular class of application. (a GUI application might show the exception in a message dialog.

When the exception is handled in the above manner, and the `StopOnException` (378) property is set to `True`, the `Terminated` (375) property is set to `True`, which will cause the `Run` (370) loop to stop, and the application will exit.

See also: `ShowException` (370), `StopOnException` (378), `Terminated` (375), `Run` (370)

13.4.7 TCustomApplication.Initialize

Synopsis: Initialize the application.

Declaration: `procedure Initialize; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Initialize` can be overridden by descendent applications to perform any initialization after the class was created. It can be used to react to properties being set at program startup. End-user code should call `Initialize` prior to calling `Run`

In `TCustomApplication`, `Initialize` sets `Terminated` to `False`.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Run` (370), `TCustomApplication.Terminated` (375)

13.4.8 TCustomApplication.Run

Synopsis: Runs the application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` is the start of the user code: when called, it starts a loop and repeatedly calls `DoRun` until `Terminated` is set to `True`. If an exception is raised during the execution of `DoRun`, it is caught and handled to `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (369). If `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (378) is set to `True` (which is *not* the default), `Run` will exit, and the application will then terminate. The default is to call `DoRun` again, which is useful for applications running a message loop such as services and GUI applications.

See also: `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (369), `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (378)

13.4.9 TCustomApplication.ShowException

Synopsis: Show an exception to the user.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(E: Exception); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowException` should be overridden by descendent classes to show an exception message to the user. The default behaviour is to call the `ShowException` (??) procedure in the `SysUtils` unit.

Descendent classes should do something appropriate for their context: GUI applications can show a message box, daemon applications can write the exception message to the system log, web applications can send a 500 error response code.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShowException` (??), `TCustomApplication.HandleException` (369), `TCustomApplication.StopOnException` (378)

13.4.10 TCustomApplication.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate the application.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate; virtual`
`procedure Terminate(AExitCode: Integer); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Terminate` sets the `Terminated` property to `True`. By itself, this does not terminate the application. Instead, descendent classes should in their `DoRun` method, check the value of the `Terminated` (375) property and properly shut down the application if it is set to `True`.

When `AExitCode` is specified, it will be passed to `System.ExitCode` (366), and when the program is halted, that is the exit code of the program as returned to the OS. If the application is terminated due to an exception, `ExceptionExitCode` (378) will be used as the value for this argument.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Terminated` (375), `TCustomApplication.Run` (370), `ExceptionExitCode` (378), `System.ExitCode` (366)

13.4.11 TCustomApplication.FindOptionIndex

Synopsis: Return the index of an option.

Declaration: `function FindOptionIndex(const S: string; var Longopt: Boolean;
StartAt: Integer=- 1) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindOptionIndex` will return the index of the option `S` or the long option `LongOpt`. Neither of them should include the switch character. If no such option was specified, -1 is returned. If either the long or short option was specified, then the position on the command-line is returned.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (377) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `HasOption` (372), `GetOptionValue` (371), `CheckOptions` (372), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377), `OptionChar` (377)

13.4.12 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a command-line option.

Declaration: `function GetOptionValue(const S: string) : string`
`function GetOptionValue(const C: char; const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetOptionValue` returns the value of an option. Values are specified in the usual GNU option format, either of

`--longopt=Value`

or

`-c Value`

is supported.

The function returns the specified value, or the empty string if none was specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (377) (by default the dash ('-') character).

If an option can appear multiple times, use `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (372) to retrieve all values. This function only returns the value of the first occurrence of an option.

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (371), `HasOption` (372), `CheckOptions` (372), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377), `OptionChar` (377), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (372)

13.4.13 TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues

Synopsis: Get the values for an option that may be specified multiple times.

Declaration: `function GetOptionValues(const C: char; const S: string) : TStringArray`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetOptionValues` returns all values specified by command-line option switches C or S. For each occurrence of the command-line option C or S, the associated value is added to the array.

`TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (371) will only return the first occurrence of a value.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (371)

13.4.14 TCustomApplication.HasOption

Synopsis: Check whether an option was specified.

Declaration: `function HasOption(const S: string) : Boolean`
`function HasOption(const C: char; const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `HasOption` returns `True` if the specified option was given on the command line. Either the short option character C or the long option S may be used. Note that both options (requiring a value) and switches can be specified.

Depending on the value of the `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377) property, the search is performed case sensitive or case insensitive.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (377) (by default the dash ('-') character).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (371), `GetOptionValue` (371), `CheckOptions` (372), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377), `OptionChar` (377)

13.4.15 TCustomApplication.CheckOptions

Synopsis: Check whether all given options on the command-line are valid.

Declaration: `function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
 `const Longopts: TString; Opts: TString;`
 `NonOpts: TString; AllErrors: Boolean=False)`
 `: string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
 `const Longopts: Array of string = string;`
 `Opts: TString; NonOpts: TString;`
 `AllErrors: Boolean=False) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
 `const Longopts: TString; AllErrors: Boolean=False)`
 `: string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
 `const Longopts: Array of string = string;`
 `AllErrors: Boolean=False) : string`
`function CheckOptions(const ShortOptions: string;`
 `const Longopts: string; AllErrors: Boolean=False)`
 `: string`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckOptions` scans the command-line and checks whether the options given are valid options. It also checks whether options that require a value are indeed specified with a value.

The `ShortOptions` contains a string with valid short option characters. Each character in the string is a valid option character. If a character is followed by a colon (:), then a value must be specified. If it is followed by 2 colon characters (::) then the value is optional.

`LongOpts` is a list of strings (which can be specified as an array, a `TStrings` instance or a string with whitespace-separated values) of valid long options.

When the function returns, if `Opts` is non-`Nil`, the `Opts` stringlist is filled with the passed valid options. If `NonOpts` is non-`nil`, it is filled with any non-option strings that were passed on the command-line.

The function returns an empty string if all specified options were valid options, and whether options requiring a value have a value. If an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error.

Options are identified as command-line parameters which start with `OptionChar` (377) (by default the dash ('-') character).

if `AllErrors` is `True` then all errors are returned, separated by a `sLineBreak` (??) character.

Errors: If an error was found during the check, the return value is a string describing the error(s).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (371), `GetOptionValue` (371), `HasOption` (372), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377), `OptionChar` (377)

13.4.16 TCustomApplication.GetNonOptions

Synopsis: Get all non-switch options.

Declaration:

```
function GetNonOptions(const ShortOptions: string;
                      const Longopts: Array of string = string)
                      : TStringArray
procedure GetNonOptions(const ShortOptions: string;
                      const Longopts: Array of string = string;
                      NonOptions: TStrings)
```

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNonOptions` returns the items on the command-line that are not associated with a switch. It checks the command-line for allowed switches as they are indicated by `ShortOptions` and `Longopts`. The format is identical to `TCustomApplication.CheckOptions` (372). This is useful for an application which accepts a command form such as `svn`:

```
svn commit [options] files
```

In the above example, "commit" and "files" would be returned by `GetNonOptions`

The non-options are returned in the form of a string array, or a stringlist instance can be passed in `NonOptions`. Either will be filled with the non-options on return.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCustomApplication.HasOption` (372), `TCustomApplication.CheckOptions` (372), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValue` (371), `TCustomApplication.GetOptionValues` (372)

13.4.17 TCustomApplication.GetEnvironmentList

Synopsis: Return a list of environment variables.

Declaration: `procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings; NamesOnly: Boolean)`
`procedure GetEnvironmentList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnvironmentList` returns a list of environment variables in `List`. They are in the form `Name=Value`, one per item in `list`. If `NamesOnly` is `True`, then only the names are returned.

See also: `EnvironmentVariable` ([377](#))

13.4.18 TCustomApplication.Log

Synopsis: Write a message to the event log.

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)`
`procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Fmt: string;`
`const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Log` is meant for all applications to have a default logging mechanism. By default it does not do anything, descendent classes should override this method to provide appropriate logging: they should write the message `Msg` with type `EventType` to some log mechanism such as `#fcl.eventlog.TEventLog` ([662](#))

The second form using `Fmt` and `Args` will format the message using the provided arguments prior to logging it.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` ([??](#))

13.4.19 TCustomApplication.ExeName

Synopsis: Name of the executable.

Declaration: `Property ExeName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExeName` returns the full name of the executable binary (path+filename). This is equivalent to `ParamStr(0)`

Note that some operating systems do not return the full pathname of the binary.

See also: `ParamStr` ([??](#))

13.4.20 TCustomApplication.HelpFile

Synopsis: Location of the application help file.

Declaration: `Property HelpFile : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HelpFile` is the location of the application help file. It is a simple string property which can be set by an IDE such as Lazarus, and is mainly provided for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Title` ([375](#))

13.4.21 TCustomApplication.Terminated

Synopsis: Was `Terminate` called or not.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Terminated` indicates whether `Terminate` ([370](#)) was called or not. Descendent classes should check `Terminated` at regular intervals in their implementation of `DoRun`, and if it is set to `True`, should exit gracefully the `DoRun` method.

See also: `Terminate` ([370](#))

13.4.22 TCustomApplication.Title

Synopsis: Application title.

Declaration: `Property Title : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Title` is a simple string property which can be set to any string describing the application. It does nothing by itself, and is mainly introduced for compatibility with Delphi's `TApplication` implementation.

See also: `HelpFile` ([375](#))

13.4.23 TCustomApplication.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event.

Declaration: `Property OnException : TExceptionEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnException` can be set to provide custom handling of exceptions, instead of the default action, which is simply to show the exception using `ShowException` (370).

If the event is set, then it is called by the `HandleException` (369) routine. Do not use the `OnException` event directly, instead call `HandleException`.

See also: `ShowException` (370)

13.4.24 `TCustomApplication.ConsoleApplication`

Synopsis: Is the application a console application or not.

Declaration: `Property ConsoleApplication : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ConsoleApplication` returns `True` if the application is compiled as a console application (the default) or `False` if not. The result of this property is determined at compile-time by the settings of the compiler: it returns the value of the `IsConsole` (??) constant.

See also: `IsConsole` (??)

13.4.25 `TCustomApplication.Location`

Synopsis: Application location.

Declaration: `Property Location : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Location` returns the directory part of the application binary. This property works on most platforms, although some platforms do not allow to retrieve this information (Mac OS for example has no reliable way to get this information). See the discussion of `Paramstr` (??) in the RTL documentation.

See also: `Paramstr` (??), `Params` (376)

13.4.26 `TCustomApplication.Params`

Synopsis: Command-line parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Params` gives access to the command-line parameters. They contain the value of the `Index`-th parameter, where `Index` runs from 0 to `ParamCount` (377). It is equivalent to calling `ParamStr` (??).

See also: `ParamCount` (377), `Paramstr` (??)

13.4.27 TCustomApplication.ParamCount

Synopsis: Number of command-line parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ParamCount` returns the number of command-line parameters that were passed to the program. The actual parameters can be retrieved with the `Params` (376) property.

See also: `Params` (376), `Paramstr` (??), `ParamCount` (??)

13.4.28 TCustomApplication.EnvironmentVariable

Synopsis: Environment variable access.

Declaration: `Property EnvironmentVariable[envName: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EnvironmentVariable` gives access to the environment variables of the application: It returns the value of the environment variable `EnvName`, or an empty string if no such value is available.

To use this property, the name of the environment variable must be known. To get a list of available names (and values), `GetEnvironmentList` (374) can be used.

See also: `GetEnvironmentList` (374), `TCustomApplication.Params` (376)

13.4.29 TCustomApplication.OptionChar

Synopsis: Command-line switch character.

Declaration: `Property OptionChar : char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OptionChar` is the character used for command line switches. By default, this is the dash ('-') character, but it can be set to any other non-alphanumerical character (although no check is performed on this).

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (371), `GetOptionValue` (371), `HasOption` (372), `CaseSensitiveOptions` (377), `CheckOptions` (372)

13.4.30 TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveOptions

Synopsis: Are options interpreted case sensitive or not.

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitiveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CaseSensitiveOptions` determines whether `FindOptionIndex` (371) and `CheckOptions` (372) perform searches in a case sensitive manner or not. By default, the search is case-sensitive. Setting this property to `False` makes the search case-insensitive.

See also: `FindOptionIndex` (371), `GetOptionValue` (371), `HasOption` (372), `OptionChar` (377), `CheckOptions` (372)

13.4.31 `TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveShortOptions`

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitiveShortOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

13.4.32 `TCustomApplication.CaseSensitiveLongOptions`

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitiveLongOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

13.4.33 `TCustomApplication.StopOnException`

Synopsis: Should the program loop stop on an exception.

Declaration: `Property StopOnException : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StopOnException` controls the behaviour of the `Run` (370) and `HandleException` (369) procedures in case of an unhandled exception in the `DoRun` code. If `StopOnException` is `True` then `Terminate` (370) will be called after the exception was handled.

See also: `Run` (370), `HandleException` (369), `Terminate` (370)

13.4.34 `TCustomApplication.ExceptionExitCode`

Synopsis: `ExitCode` to use then terminating the program due to an exception.

Declaration: `Property ExceptionExitCode : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ExceptionExitCode` is the exit code that will be passed to `TCustomApplication.Terminate` (370)

13.4.35 TCustomApplication.EventLogFilter

Synopsis: Event to filter events, before they are sent to the system log.

Declaration: `Property EventLogFilter : TEventLogTypes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EventLogFilter` can be set to a set of event types that should be logged to the system log. If the set is empty, all event types are sent to the system log. If the set is non-empty, the `TCustomApplication.Log` (374) routine will check if the log event type is in the set, and if not, will not send the message to the system log.

See also: `TCustomApplication.Log` (374)

13.4.36 TCustomApplication.SingleInstance

Synopsis: Single instance used to control single application instance behaviour.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstance : TBaseSingleInstance`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `SingleInstance` is used when `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled` (379) is set to `True`. It can be used to send a message to an already running instance, or to check for messages if the current instance is the sole ("server") instance running.

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (379), `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled` (379)

13.4.37 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass

Synopsis: Class to use when creating single instance.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstanceClass : TBaseSingleInstanceClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SingleInstanceClass` can be used to set the class used to instantiate `SingleInstance` (379). The default class is determined by the global `singleinstance` default class as specified in `#fcl.singleinstance.DefaultSingleInstanceClass` (1487).

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (379), `DefaultSingleInstanceClass` (1487)

13.4.38 TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceEnabled

Synopsis: Enable single application instance control.

Declaration: `Property SingleInstanceEnabled : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SingleInstanceEnabled` can be set to `true` to start single-instance application control. This will instantiate `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (379) using `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (379) and starts the check to see whether this application is a client or server instance.

See also: `TCustomApplication.SingleInstance` (379), `TCustomApplication.SingleInstanceClass` (379)

Chapter 14

Reference for unit 'custweb'

14.1 Used units

Table 14.1: Used units by unit 'custweb'

Name	Page
Classes	??
CustApp	366
eventlog	660
fphhttp	781
HTTPDefs	1146
System	??
sysutils	??

14.2 Overview

The `custweb` unit provides the base functionality common to all HTTP hosting implementations in Free Pascal: CGI, FastCGI, HTTP server and Apache loadable modules. It contains the foundational classes `TWebHandler` ([389](#)) and `TCustomWebApplication` ([383](#)) that handle HTTP requests and provide web application functionality.

The unit supports module-based request handling, error management, event logging, and various configuration options for different hosting environments. It provides the infrastructure for routing requests to appropriate HTTP modules and managing the complete request-response cycle.

14.3 Constants, types and variables

14.3.1 Types

```
TGetModuleEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest;  
    var ModuleClass: TCustomHTTPModuleClass  
    )  
    of object
```

Event handler type called when the web application needs to determine which HTTP module class to use for handling a specific request. This allows custom logic for module selection based on request properties.

```
TInitModuleEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Module: TCustomHTTPModule
    )
    of object
```

Event handler type called when an HTTP module is initialized before handling a request. Allows custom initialization of module properties and setup.

```
TLogEvent = procedure(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)
    of object
```

Event handler type called when the web application needs to log an event. Allows custom logging implementation for web application events and errors.

```
TOnShowRequestException = procedure(AResponse: TResponse;
    AnException: Exception;
    var handled: Boolean)
```

Event handler type called when an exception occurs during HTTP request processing. Allows custom handling of exceptions before the default error response is generated.

14.4 Procedures and functions

14.4.1 ExceptionToHTML

Synopsis: Utility function to format exceptions as HTML error pages

Declaration: `procedure ExceptionToHTML(S: TStrings; const E: Exception;
 const Title: string; const Email: string;
 const Administrator: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: Formats an exception into a complete HTML error page with stack trace information. Generates a user-friendly error page that includes exception details, stack trace, and administrator contact information.

The generated HTML includes the application title, error message, stack trace with function names, and optional administrator email contact link.

Errors: No specific errors during HTML generation.

See also: `TWebHandler.ShowRequestException` ([389](#))

14.5 EFPWebError

14.5.1 Description

`EFPWebError` is an exception class specifically for web application errors. It extends `EFPHTTPError` to provide HTTP-specific error handling with status codes and status text.

See also: `TWebHandler.DoError` ([389](#))

14.6 TCustomWebApplication

14.6.1 Description

TCustomWebApplication extends TCustomApplication to provide web-specific functionality. It integrates a TWebHandler (389) instance for processing HTTP requests and provides properties for configuring web application behavior.

This class serves as the foundation for all web application implementations including CGI, FastCGI, and other HTTP hosting environments. It handles application lifecycle, event logging, and web handler management.

See also: TWebHandler (389)

14.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
383	Create	Creates and initializes a new web application instance
384	CreateForm	Creates a component instance with the web handler as owner
384	Destroy	Destroys the web application and cleans up resources
384	Initialize	Initializes the web application with error handling enabled
385	Terminate	Terminates the web application and web handler

14.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
387	Administrator	rw	Administrator name for error pages
386	AllowDefaultModule	rw	Controls whether requests without module names use default modules
386	ApplicationURL	rw	Base URL for the web application
386	DefaultModuleName	rw	Name of the default HTTP module
387	Email	rw	Administrator email address for error notifications
388	EventLog	r	Event log instance for logging web application events
385	HandleGetOnPost	rw	Controls whether GET requests are handled by POST handlers
388	LegacyRouting	rw	Controls whether to use legacy request routing
386	ModuleVariable	rw	Query parameter name for specifying HTTP module names
387	OnGetModule	rw	Event for custom module selection logic
387	OnShowRequestException	rw	Event for custom exception handling during request processing
388	OnUnknownRequestEncoding	rw	Event for handling unknown request content encodings
388	PreferModuleName	rw	Controls module name extraction preference
385	RedirectOnError	rw	Controls whether errors trigger HTTP redirects
385	RedirectOnErrorURL	rw	URL template for error redirects

14.6.4 TCustomWebApplication.Create

Synopsis: Creates and initializes a new web application instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new `TCustomWebApplication` instance and initializes the web handler through the abstract `InitializeWebHandler` method. Sets up event handlers for termination and logging.

Errors: May raise exceptions during web handler initialization.

See also: `InitializeWebHandler` ([383](#)), `Destroy` ([384](#))

14.6.5 TCustomWebApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the web application and cleans up resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the web application instance, freeing the web handler and event log resources. Performs proper cleanup of all web application components.

Errors: No specific errors expected during destruction.

See also: `Create` ([383](#))

14.6.6 TCustomWebApplication.CreateForm

Synopsis: Creates a component instance with the web handler as owner

Declaration: `procedure CreateForm(AClass: TComponentClass; out Reference)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates an instance of the specified component class with the web handler as the owner component. Provides a way to create forms and components within the web application context.

Errors: May raise exceptions during component creation.

14.6.7 TCustomWebApplication.Initialize

Synopsis: Initializes the web application with error handling enabled

Declaration: `procedure Initialize; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes the web application and enables `StopOnException` to ensure proper error handling. Calls the inherited initialization from `TCustomApplication`.

Errors: May raise exceptions during application initialization.

14.6.8 TCustomWebApplication.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminates the web application and web handler

Declaration: `procedure Terminate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Terminates the web application by first calling the inherited termination and then terminating the web handler if it's still running. Ensures clean shutdown of the web request processing loop.

Errors: No specific errors expected during termination.

See also: `TWebHandler.Terminate` (389)

14.6.9 TCustomWebApplication.HandleGetOnPost

Synopsis: Controls whether GET requests are handled by POST handlers

Declaration: `Property HandleGetOnPost : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.HandleGetOnPost` (392) property. When `True`, allows POST request handlers to also process GET requests.

See also: `TWebHandler.HandleGetOnPost` (392)

14.6.10 TCustomWebApplication.RedirectOnError

Synopsis: Controls whether errors trigger HTTP redirects

Declaration: `Property RedirectOnError : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.RedirectOnError` (392) property. When `True`, exceptions during request processing cause an HTTP redirect.

See also: `TWebHandler.RedirectOnError` (392)

14.6.11 TCustomWebApplication.RedirectOnErrorURL

Synopsis: URL template for error redirects

Declaration: `Property RedirectOnErrorURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.RedirectOnErrorURL` (392) property. Specifies the URL pattern used for error redirects.

See also: `TWebHandler.RedirectOnErrorURL` (392)

14.6.12 TCustomWebApplication.ApplicationURL

Synopsis: Base URL for the web application

Declaration: `Property ApplicationURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.ApplicationURL` (393) property. Specifies the base URL for the web application.

See also: `TWebHandler.ApplicationURL` (393)

14.6.13 TCustomWebApplication.AllowDefaultModule

Synopsis: Controls whether requests without module names use default modules

Declaration: `Property AllowDefaultModule : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.AllowDefaultModule` (393) property. When `True`, requests without module names use the default module.

See also: `TWebHandler.AllowDefaultModule` (393)

14.6.14 TCustomWebApplication.DefaultModuleName

Synopsis: Name of the default HTTP module

Declaration: `Property DefaultModuleName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.DefaultModuleName` (393) property. Specifies the default HTTP module for requests without explicit module names.

See also: `TWebHandler.DefaultModuleName` (393)

14.6.15 TCustomWebApplication.ModuleVariable

Synopsis: Query parameter name for specifying HTTP module names

Declaration: `Property ModuleVariable : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.ModuleVariable` (393) property. Specifies the query parameter name used to determine module names.

See also: `TWebHandler.ModuleVariable` (393)

14.6.16 TCustomWebApplication.OnGetModule

Synopsis: Event for custom module selection logic

Declaration: `Property OnGetModule : TGetModuleEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.OnGetModule` (394) property. Event called to determine which HTTP module class should handle a request.

See also: `TWebHandler.OnGetModule` (394)

14.6.17 TCustomWebApplication.Email

Synopsis: Administrator email address for error notifications

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.Email` (394) property. Email address displayed in error pages for user contact.

See also: `TWebHandler.Email` (394)

14.6.18 TCustomWebApplication.Administrator

Synopsis: Administrator name for error pages

Declaration: `Property Administrator : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.Administrator` (394) property. Name of the application administrator displayed in error pages.

See also: `TWebHandler.Administrator` (394)

14.6.19 TCustomWebApplication.OnShowRequestException

Synopsis: Event for custom exception handling during request processing

Declaration: `Property OnShowRequestException : TOnShowRequestException`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Delegates to the `TWebHandler.OnShowRequestException` (395) property. Event called when an exception occurs during HTTP request processing.

See also: `TWebHandler.OnShowRequestException` (395)

14.6.20 TCustomWebApplication.OnUnknownRequestEncoding

Synopsis: Event for handling unknown request content encodings

Declaration: Property OnUnknownRequestEncoding : TOnUnknownEncodingEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Delegates to the TWebHandler.OnUnknownRequestEncoding (395) property. Event called when request contains content with unknown encoding.

See also: TWebHandler.OnUnknownRequestEncoding (395)

14.6.21 TCustomWebApplication.EventLog

Synopsis: Event log instance for logging web application events

Declaration: Property EventLog : TEventLog

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Provides access to the event log used by the web application for logging events and errors. The event log is created automatically when first accessed and configured for system logging.

See also: CreateEventLog (383)

14.6.22 TCustomWebApplication.PreferModuleName

Synopsis: Controls module name extraction preference

Declaration: Property PreferModuleName : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Delegates to the TWebHandler.PreferModuleName (396) property. Controls whether module name extraction is preferred over path info parsing.

See also: TWebHandler.PreferModuleName (396)

14.6.23 TCustomWebApplication.LegacyRouting

Synopsis: Controls whether to use legacy request routing

Declaration: Property LegacyRouting : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Delegates to the TWebHandler.LegacyRouting (396) property. When True, uses legacy routing instead of the HTTP router system.

See also: TWebHandler.LegacyRouting (396)

14.7 TWebHandler

14.7.1 Description

`TWebHandler` is the core component that handles HTTP requests in web applications. It provides the framework for routing requests to appropriate HTTP modules, handling errors, and managing the request-response cycle. This class serves as the foundation for all HTTP hosting implementations including CGI, FastCGI, HTTP server and Apache modules.

The handler supports both legacy routing and new HTTP routing systems, module lifecycle management, error handling with custom exception display, and event logging.

See also: `TCustomWebApplication` ([383](#))

14.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
390	Create	Creates a new web handler instance
390	Destroy	Destroys the web handler instance
391	DoHandleRequest	Handles a complete HTTP request with error handling and cleanup
392	HandleRequest	Routes and processes an HTTP request to the appropriate handler
391	Log	Logs an event message using the configured log handler
391	Run	Main request processing loop for the web handler

14.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
394	Administrator	rw	Administrator name for error pages
393	AllowDefaultModule	rw	Controls whether requests without module names use default modules
393	ApplicationURL	rw	Base URL for the web application
393	DefaultModuleName	rw	Name of the default HTTP module for requests without explicit module names
394	Email	rw	Administrator email address for error notifications
392	HandleGetOnPost	rw	Controls whether GET requests are handled by POST handlers
396	LegacyRouting	rw	Controls whether to use legacy request routing instead of HTTP router
393	ModuleVariable	rw	Query parameter name for specifying HTTP module names
394	OnGetModule	rw	Event for custom module selection logic
395	OnIdle	rw	Event triggered when the handler is idle between requests
396	OnInitModule	rw	Event for initializing HTTP modules before request processing
395	OnLog	rw	Event for logging web application events and errors
395	OnShowRequestException	rw	Event for custom exception handling during request processing
395	OnUnknownRequestEncoding	rw	Event for handling unknown request content encodings
396	PreferModuleName	rw	Controls whether module name extraction is preferred over path info parsing
392	RedirectOnError	rw	Controls whether errors trigger HTTP redirects
392	RedirectOnErrorURL	rw	URL template for error redirects
394	Title	rw	Application title displayed in error pages

14.7.4 TWebHandler.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new web handler instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates and initializes a new `TWebHandler` instance with default settings. Sets up default module variable name, enables default module handling, and configures request handling options.

Errors: May raise exceptions during component initialization.

See also: `Destroy` ([390](#))

14.7.5 TWebHandler.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the web handler instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Cleans up resources and destroys the `TWebHandler` instance. Resets module factory event handlers and performs standard component cleanup.

Errors: No specific errors expected during destruction.

See also: [Create \(390\)](#)

14.7.6 TWebHandler.Run

Synopsis: Main request processing loop for the web handler

Declaration: `procedure Run; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Starts the main request processing loop that waits for incoming HTTP requests and handles them. Continues processing until the handler is terminated, calling idle events between requests when available.

Errors: May raise exceptions during request waiting or processing.

See also: [DoHandleRequest \(391\)](#), [OnIdle \(395\)](#)

14.7.7 TWebHandler.Log

Synopsis: Logs an event message using the configured log handler

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Logs an event message with the specified event type if a log event handler is assigned. Provides centralized logging for web application events and errors.

Errors: No specific errors, depends on log handler implementation.

See also: [OnLog \(395\)](#)

14.7.8 TWebHandler.DoHandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles a complete HTTP request with error handling and cleanup

Declaration: `procedure DoHandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)`

Visibility: public

Description: Processes a complete HTTP request including error handling, response sending, and proper cleanup of request and response objects. Ensures content is sent even if not explicitly sent by the handler, and logs any content sending errors.

Errors: Handles and logs content sending errors internally.

See also: [HandleRequest \(392\)](#), [EndRequest \(389\)](#)

14.7.9 TWebHandler.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Routes and processes an HTTP request to the appropriate handler

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest (ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Routes an HTTP request to the appropriate handler using either legacy routing or the HTTP router system. Catches and handles any exceptions that occur during request processing by calling the exception handler.

Errors: Catches all exceptions during request processing and handles them via `ShowRequestException`.

See also: `LegacyRouting` ([396](#)), `ShowRequestException` ([389](#))

14.7.10 TWebHandler.HandleGetOnPost

Synopsis: Controls whether GET requests are handled by POST handlers

Declaration: `Property HandleGetOnPost : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `True`, allows POST request handlers to also process GET requests. This provides flexibility for web applications that need to handle both request types with the same logic.

14.7.11 TWebHandler.RedirectOnError

Synopsis: Controls whether errors trigger HTTP redirects

Declaration: `Property RedirectOnError : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `True`, exceptions during request processing cause an HTTP redirect to the URL specified in `RedirectOnErrorURL` ([392](#)). When `False`, errors are displayed as HTML error pages.

See also: `RedirectOnErrorURL` ([392](#))

14.7.12 TWebHandler.RedirectOnErrorURL

Synopsis: URL template for error redirects

Declaration: `Property RedirectOnErrorURL : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the URL pattern used for error redirects when `RedirectOnError` ([392](#)) is `True`. The URL can contain format specifiers to include error message details in the redirect.

See also: `RedirectOnError` ([392](#))

14.7.13 TWebHandler.ApplicationURL

Synopsis: Base URL for the web application

Declaration: `Property ApplicationURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the base URL for the web application. When empty, the application URL is determined from the request script name. Used for constructing absolute URLs and setting module base URLs.

See also: [SetBaseURL \(389\)](#)

14.7.14 TWebHandler.AllowDefaultModule

Synopsis: Controls whether requests without module names use default modules

Declaration: `Property AllowDefaultModule : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: When `True`, requests that don't specify a module name will use the default module specified in [DefaultModuleName \(393\)](#). When `False`, requests without module names result in an error.

See also: [DefaultModuleName \(393\)](#)

14.7.15 TWebHandler.DefaultModuleName

Synopsis: Name of the default HTTP module for requests without explicit module names

Declaration: `Property DefaultModuleName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies which HTTP module to use when a request doesn't explicitly specify a module name and [AllowDefaultModule \(393\)](#) is `True`. If empty and only one module is registered, that module becomes the default.

See also: [AllowDefaultModule \(393\)](#)

14.7.16 TWebHandler.ModuleVariable

Synopsis: Query parameter name for specifying HTTP module names

Declaration: `Property ModuleVariable : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the name of the query parameter used to determine which HTTP module should handle a request. Defaults to 'Module'. For example, '?Module=MyModule' would route to the MyModule HTTP module.

See also: [GetModuleName \(389\)](#)

14.7.17 TWebHandler.OnGetModule

Synopsis: Event for custom module selection logic

Declaration: `Property OnGetModule : TGetModuleEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event called to determine which HTTP module class should handle a request. Allows custom module selection logic based on request properties, overriding the default module name resolution.

See also: `TGetModuleEvent` ([381](#))

14.7.18 TWebHandler.Email

Synopsis: Administrator email address for error notifications

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Email address displayed in error pages for user contact. Used in HTML error pages to provide a contact point for error reporting.

See also: `Administrator` ([394](#))

14.7.19 TWebHandler.Title

Synopsis: Application title displayed in error pages

Declaration: `Property Title : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Title of the web application used in error page headers and titles. Provides branding and identification in error responses.

See also: `ExceptionToHTML` ([382](#))

14.7.20 TWebHandler.Administrator

Synopsis: Administrator name for error pages

Declaration: `Property Administrator : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Name of the application administrator displayed in error pages. Used together with the email address to provide contact information for error reporting.

See also: `Email` ([394](#))

14.7.21 TWebHandler.OnShowRequestException

Synopsis: Event for custom exception handling during request processing

Declaration: `Property OnShowRequestException : TOnShowRequestException`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event called when an exception occurs during HTTP request processing. Allows custom handling of exceptions before the default error response is generated.

See also: `TOnShowRequestException` ([382](#))

14.7.22 TWebHandler.OnIdle

Synopsis: Event triggered when the handler is idle between requests

Declaration: `Property OnIdle : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event called between request processing cycles when the handler is waiting for new requests. Allows background processing or cleanup tasks during idle periods.

See also: `Run` ([391](#))

14.7.23 TWebHandler.OnLog

Synopsis: Event for logging web application events and errors

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TLogEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event called when the web application needs to log events or errors. Allows custom logging implementation for web application diagnostics.

See also: `TLogEvent` ([382](#)), `Log` ([391](#))

14.7.24 TWebHandler.OnUnknownRequestEncoding

Synopsis: Event for handling unknown request content encodings

Declaration: `Property OnUnknownRequestEncoding : TOnUnknownEncodingEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event called when the HTTP request contains content with an unknown or unsupported encoding. Allows custom handling of request content encoding issues.

14.7.25 TWebHandler.OnInitModule

Synopsis: Event for initializing HTTP modules before request processing

Declaration: `Property OnInitModule : TInitModuleEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Event called when an HTTP module is initialized before processing a request. Allows custom setup and configuration of module properties.

See also: `TInitModuleEvent` ([382](#))

14.7.26 TWebHandler.PreferModuleName

Synopsis: Controls whether module name extraction is preferred over path info parsing

Declaration: `Property PreferModuleName : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: When `True`, the handler prefers extracting module names from path info even when path contains multiple segments. Affects how module names are determined from request URLs.

See also: `GetModuleName` ([389](#))

14.7.27 TWebHandler.LegacyRouting

Synopsis: Controls whether to use legacy request routing instead of HTTP router

Declaration: `Property LegacyRouting : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: When `True`, uses the original request routing mechanism instead of the HTTP router system. Provides backward compatibility with older web applications.

See also: `HandleRequest` ([392](#))

Chapter 15

Reference for unit 'daemonapp'

15.1 Used units

Table 15.1: Used units by unit 'daemonapp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
CustApp	366
eventlog	660
rtlconsts	??
System	??
sysutils	??

15.2 Overview

The `daemonapp` unit implements a `TApplication` class which encapsulates a daemon or service application. It handles installation where this is necessary, and does instantiation of the various daemons where necessary.

The unit consists of 3 separate classes which cooperate tightly:

TDaemon This is a class that implements the daemon's functionality. One or more descendents of this class can be implemented and instantiated in a single daemon application. For more information, see `TDaemon` ([415](#)).

TDaemonApplication This is the actual daemon application class. A global instance of this class is instantiated. It handles the command-line arguments, and instantiates the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonApplication` ([420](#)).

TDaemonDef This class defines the daemon in the operation system. The `TDaemonApplication` class has a collection of `TDaemonDef` instances, which it uses to start the various daemons. For more information, see `TDaemonDef` ([423](#)).

As can be seen, a single application can implement one or more daemons (services). Each daemon will be run in a separate thread which is controlled by the application class.

The classes take care of logging through the `TEventLog` ([662](#)) class.

Many options are needed only to make the application behave as a windows service application on windows. These options are ignored in UNIX-like environment. The documentation will mention this.

15.3 Constants, types and variables

15.3.1 Resource strings

`SControlFailed = 'Control code %s handling failed: %s'`

The control code was not handled correctly.

`SCustomCode = '[Custom code %d]'`

A custom code was received.

`SDaemonStatus = 'Daemon %s current status: %s'`

Daemon status report log message.

`SErrApplicationAlreadyCreated =
'An application instance of class %s was already created.'`

A second application instance is created.

`SErrDaemonStartFailed = 'Failed to start daemon %s : %s'`

The application failed to start the daemon.

`SErrDuplicateName = 'Duplicate daemon name: %s'`

Duplicate service name.

`SErrNoDaemonDefForStatus =
'%s: No daemon definition for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon definition to report status for.

`SErrNoDaemonForStatus = '%s: No daemon for status report'`

Internal error: no daemon to report status for.

`SErrNoServiceMapper = 'No daemon mapper class registered.'`

No service mapper was found.

`SErrNothingToDo = 'No command given, use ''%s -h'' for usage.'`

No operation can be performed.

`SErrOnlyOneMapperAllowed =
'Not changing daemon mapper class %s with %s: Only 1 mapper allowed.'`

An attempt was made to install a second service mapper.

```
SErrServiceManagerStartFailed =  
    'Failed to start service manager: %s'
```

Unable to start or contact the service manager.

```
SErrUnknownDaemonClass = 'Unknown daemon class name: %s'
```

Unknown daemon class requested.

```
SErrWindowClass = 'Could not register window class'
```

Could not register window class.

```
SHelpCommand = 'Where command is one of the following:'
```

Options message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpInstall = 'To install the program as a service'
```

Install option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpRun = 'To run the service'
```

Run option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpUnInstall = 'To uninstall the service'
```

Uninstall option message displayed when writing help to the console.

```
SHelpUsage = 'Usage: %s [command]'
```

Usage message displayed when writing help to the console.

15.3.2 Types

```
TCurrentStatus = (csStopped, csStartPending, csStopPending, csRunning  
,  
                  csContinuePending, csPausePending, csPaused)
```

Table 15.2: Enumeration values for type TCurrentStatus

Value	Explanation
csContinuePending	The daemon is continuing, but not yet running.
csPaused	The daemon is paused: running but not active.
csPausePending	The daemon is about to be paused.
csRunning	The daemon is running (it is operational).
csStartPending	The daemon is starting, but not yet fully running.
csStopped	The daemon is stopped, i.e. inactive.
csStopPending	The daemon is stopping, but not yet fully stopped.

TCurrentStatus indicates the current state of the daemon. It changes from one state to the next during the time the instance is active. The daemon application changes the state of the daemon, depending on signals it gets from the operating system, by calling the appropriate methods.


```
TCustomControlCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon;
  ACode: DWord; var Handled: Boolean
)
    of object
```

In case the system sends a non-standard control code to the daemon, an event handler is executed with this prototype.

```
TCustomControlCodeEvEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon;
  ACode: DWord; AEventType: DWord
;
    AEventData: Pointer;
  var Handled: Boolean) of
  object
```

TCustomControlCodeEvEvent is the type used for the OnControlCodeEvent property in TDaemon.

```
TCustomDaemonApplicationClass = class of TCustomDaemonApplication
```

Class pointer for TCustomDaemonApplication.

```
TCustomDaemonClass = class of TCustomDaemon
```

The class type is needed in the TDaemonDef (423) definition.

```
TCustomDaemonMapperClass = class of TCustomDaemonMapper
```

TCustomDaemonMapperClass is the class of TCustomDaemonMapper. It is used in the RegisterDaemonMapper (404) call.

```
TDaemonClass = class of TDaemon
```

Class type of TDaemon.

```
TDaemonEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon) of object
```

TDaemonEvent is used in event handling. The Sender is the TCustomDaemon (405) instance that has initiated the event.

```
TDaemonOKEvent = procedure(Sender: TCustomDaemon; var OK: Boolean
)
    of object
```

TDaemonOKEvent is used in event handling, when a boolean result must be obtained, for instance, to see if an operation was performed successfully.

```
TDaemonOption = (doAllowStop, doAllowPause, doInteractive)
```

Table 15.3: Enumeration values for type TDaemonOption

Value	Explanation
doAllowPause	The daemon can be paused.
doAllowStop	The daemon can be stopped.
doInteractive	The daemon interacts with the desktop.

Enumerated that enumerates the various daemon operation options.

`TDaemonOptions = Set of TDaemonOption = (doAllowPause, doAllowStop, doInteractive)`

`TDaemonOption` enumerates the various options a daemon can have.

`TDaemonRunMode = (drmUnknown, drmInstall, drmUninstall, drmRun)`

Table 15.4: Enumeration values for type TDaemonRunMode

Value	Explanation
drmInstall	Daemon install mode (windows only).
drmRun	Daemon is running normally.
drmUninstall	Daemon uninstall mode (windows only).
drmUnknown	Unknown mode.

`TDaemonRunMode` indicates in what mode the daemon application (as a whole) is currently running.

`TErrorSeverity = (esIgnore, esNormal, esSevere, esCritical)`

Table 15.5: Enumeration values for type TErrorSeverity

Value	Explanation
esCritical	Error is logged, and startup is stopped if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration.
esIgnore	Ignore startup errors.
esNormal	Error is logged, but startup continues.
esSevere	Error is logged, and startup is continued if last known good configuration is active, or system is restarted using last known good configuration.

`TErrorSeverity` determines what action windows takes when the daemon fails to start. It is used on windows only, and is ignored on other platforms.

`TGuiLoopEvent = procedure of object`

`TGuiLoopEvent` is the main GUI loop event procedure prototype. It is called by the application instance in case the daemon has a visual part, which needs to handle visual events. It is run in the main application thread.

```
TServiceType = (stWin32, stDevice, stFileSystem)
```

Table 15.6: Enumeration values for type TServiceType

Value	Explanation
stDevice	Device driver.
stFileSystem	File system driver.
stWin32	Regular win32 service.

The type of service. This type is used on windows only, to signal the operating system what kind of service is being installed or run.

```
TStartType = (stBoot, stSystem, stAuto, stManual, stDisabled)
```

Table 15.7: Enumeration values for type TStartType

Value	Explanation
stAuto	Started automatically by service manager during system startup.
stBoot	During system boot.
stDisabled	Service is not started, it is disabled.
stManual	Started manually by the user or other processes.
stSystem	During load of device drivers.

TStartType can be used to define when the service must be started on windows. This type is not used on other platforms.

```
TWinControlCode = (wccNetBindChange, wccParamChange, wccPreShutdown
,
wccShutdown, wccHardwareProfileChange, wccPowerEvent
,
wccSessionChange, wccTimeChange, wccTriggerEvent
,
wccUserModeReboot)
```

Table 15.8: Enumeration values for type TWinControlCode

Value	Explanation
wccHardwareProfileChange	
wccNetBindChange	
wccParamChange	
wccPowerEvent	
wccPreShutdown	
wccSessionChange	
wccShutdown	
wccTimeChange	
wccTriggerEvent	
wccUserModeReboot	

```
TWinControlCodes = Set of TWinControlCode = (wccHardwareProfileChange
, wccNetBindChange,
, wccParamChange, wccPowerEvent
, wccPreShutdown,
, wccSessionChange, wccShutdown, wccTimeChange
,
, wccTriggerEvent, wccUserModeReboot)
```

15.3.3 Variables

`AppClass` : TCustomDaemonApplicationClass

`AppClass` can be set to the class of a TCustomDaemonApplication (408) descendant. When the `Application` (403) function needs to create an application instance, this class will be used. If `Application` was already called, the value of `AppClass` will be ignored.

```
CurrentStatusNames : Array[TCurrentStatus] of string = string = ('Stopped'
, 'Start Pending', 'Stop Pending', 'Running', 'Continue Pending',
, 'Pause Pending', 'Paused')
```

Names for various service statuses.

```
DefaultDaemonOptions : TDaemonOptions = [doAllowStop, doAllowPause
]
```

`DefaultDaemonOptions` are the default options with which a daemon definition (TDaemonDef (423)) is created.

```
SStatus : Array[1..5] of string = string = ('Stop', 'Pause', 'Continue'
, 'Interrogate', 'Shutdown')
```

Status message.

15.4 Procedures and functions

15.4.1 Application

Synopsis: Application instance.

Declaration: `function Application` : TCustomDaemonApplication

Visibility: default

Description: `Application` is the TCustomDaemonApplication (408) instance used by this application. The instance is created at the first invocation of this function, so it is possible to use `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (404) to register an alternative TCustomDaemonApplication class to run the application.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (408), RegisterDaemonApplicationClass (404)

15.4.2 DaemonError

Synopsis: Raise an EDaemon exception.

Declaration: `procedure DaemonError(const Msg: string)`
`procedure DaemonError(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaemonError` raises an EDaemon (405) exception with message `Msg` or it formats the message using `Fmt` and `Args`.

See also: EDaemon (405)

15.4.3 RegisterDaemonApplicationClass

Synopsis: Register alternative TCustomDaemonApplication class.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonApplicationClass`
`(AClass: TCustomDaemonApplicationClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` can be used to register an alternative TCustomDaemonApplication (408) descendent which will be used when creating the global Application (403) instance. Only the last registered class pointer will be used.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (408), Application (403)

15.4.4 RegisterDaemonClass

Synopsis: Register daemon.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonClass(AClass: TCustomDaemonClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonClass` must be called for each TCustomDaemon (405) descendent that is used in the class: the class pointer and class name are used by the TCustomDaemonMapperClass (400) class to create a TCustomDaemon instance when a daemon is required.

See also: TCustomDaemonMapperClass (400), TCustomDaemon (405)

15.4.5 RegisterDaemonMapper

Synopsis: Register a daemon mapper class.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterDaemonMapper(AMapperClass: TCustomDaemonMapperClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterDaemonMapper` can be used to register an alternative class for the global daemon-mapper. The daemonmapper will be used only when the application is being run, by the TCustomDaemonApplication (408) code, so registering an alternative mapping class should happen in the initialization section of the application units.

See also: TCustomDaemonApplication (408), TCustomDaemonMapperClass (400)

15.5 EDaemon

15.5.1 Description

EDaemon is the exception class used by all code in the DaemonApp unit.

See also: DaemonError ([404](#))

15.6 TCustomDaemon

15.6.1 Description

TCustomDaemon implements all the basic calls that are needed for a daemon to function. Descendents of TCustomDaemon can override these calls to implement the daemon-specific behaviour.

TCustomDaemon is an abstract class, it should never be instantiated. Either a descendent of it must be created and instantiated, or a descendent of TDaemon ([415](#)) can be designed to implement the behaviour of the daemon.

See also: TDaemon ([415](#)), TDaemonDef ([423](#)), TDaemonController ([420](#)), TDaemonApplication ([420](#))

15.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
405	CheckControlMessages	
405	LogMessage	Log a message to the system log.
406	ReportStatus	Report the current status to the operating system.

15.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
407	Controller	r	TDaemonController instance controlling this daemon instance.
406	DaemonThread	r	Thread in which daemon is running.
406	Definition	r	The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance.
407	Logger	r	TEventLog instance used to send messages to the system log.
407	Status	rw	Current status of the daemon.

15.6.4 TCustomDaemon.CheckControlMessages

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure CheckControlMessages (Wait: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description:

15.6.5 TCustomDaemon.LogMessage

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log.

Declaration: `procedure LogMessage(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LogMessage` can be used to send a message `Msg` to the system log. A `TEventLog` (662) instance is used to actually send messages to the system log.

The message is sent with an 'error' flag (using `TEventLog.Error` (666)).

Errors: None.

See also: `ReportStatus` (406)

15.6.6 TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the current status to the operating system.

Declaration: `procedure ReportStatus`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReportStatus` can be used to report the current status to the operating system. The start and stop or pause and continue operations can be slow to start up. This call can (and should) be used to report the current status to the operating system during such lengthy operations, or else it may conclude that the daemon has died.

This call is mostly important on windows operating systems, to notify the service manager that the operation is still in progress.

The implementation of `ReportStatus` simply calls `ReportStatus` in the controller.

Errors: None.

See also: `LogMessage` (405)

15.6.7 TCustomDaemon.Definition

Synopsis: The definition used to instantiate this daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Definition : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Definition` is the `TDaemonDef` (423) definition that was used to start the daemon instance. It can be used to retrieve additional information about the intended behaviour of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (423)

15.6.8 TCustomDaemon.DaemonThread

Synopsis: Thread in which daemon is running.

Declaration: `Property DaemonThread : TThread`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DaemonThread` is the thread in which the daemon instance is running. Each daemon instance in the application runs in it's own thread, none of which are the main thread of the application. The application main thread is used to handle control messages coming from the operating system.

See also: `Controller` ([407](#))

15.6.9 TCustomDaemon.Controller

Synopsis: `TDaemonController` instance controlling this daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Controller : TDaemonController`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Controller` points to the `TDaemonController` instance that was created by the application instance to control this daemon.

See also: `DaemonThread` ([406](#))

15.6.10 TCustomDaemon.Status

Synopsis: Current status of the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Status : TCurrentStatus`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Status` indicates the current status of the daemon. It is set by the various operations that the controller operates on the daemon, and should not be set manually.

`Status` is the value which `ReportStatus` will send to the operating system.

See also: `ReportStatus` ([406](#))

15.6.11 TCustomDaemon.Logger

Synopsis: `TEventLog` instance used to send messages to the system log.

Declaration: `Property Logger : TEventLog`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Logger` is the `TEventLog` ([662](#)) instance used to send messages to the system log. It is used by the `LogMessage` ([405](#)) call, but is accessible through the `Logger` property in case more configurable logging is needed than offered by `LogMessage`.

See also: `LogMessage` ([405](#)), `TEventLog` ([662](#))

15.7 TCustomDaemonApplication

15.7.1 Description

TCustomDaemonApplication is a TCustomApplication (367) descendent which is the main application instance for a daemon. It handles the command-line and decides what to do when the application is started, depending on the command-line options given to the application, by calling the various methods.

It creates the necessary TDaemon (415) instances by checking the TCustomDaemonMapperClass (400) instance that contains the daemon maps.

See also: TCustomApplication (367), TCustomDaemonMapperClass (400)

15.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
408	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
409	CreateDaemon	Create daemon instance.
410	CreateForm	Create a component.
408	Destroy	Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance.
409	InstallDaemons	Install all daemons.
410	RunDaemons	Run all daemons.
409	ShowException	Show an exception.
410	ShowHelp	Display a help message.
409	StopDaemons	Stop all daemons.
410	UnInstallDaemons	Uninstall all daemons.

15.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
412	AutoRegisterMessageFile	rw	Automatically register the message file.
411	EventLog	r	Event logger instance.
412	GuiHandle	rw	Handle of GUI loop main application window handle.
411	GUIMainLoop	rw	GUI main loop callback.
411	OnRun	rw	Event executed when the daemon is run.
412	RunMode	r	Application mode.

15.7.4 TCustomDaemonApplication.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

15.7.5 TCustomDaemonApplication.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up the TCustomDaemonApplication instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the event log instance and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog` (411)

15.7.6 `TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowException`

Synopsis: Show an exception.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(E: Exception); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ShowException` is overridden by `TCustomDaemonApplication`, it sends the exception message to the system log.

15.7.7 `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon`

Synopsis: Create daemon instance.

Declaration: `function CreateDaemon(DaemonDef: TDaemonDef) : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDaemon` is called whenever a `TCustomDaemon` (405) instance must be created from a `TDaemonDef` (423) daemon definition, passed in `DaemonDef`. It initializes the `TCustomDaemon` instance, and creates a controller instance of type `TDaemonController` (420) to control the daemon. Finally, it assigns the created daemon to the `TDaemonDef.Instance` (425) property.

Errors: In case of an error, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDaemonController` (420), `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TDaemonDef` (423), `TDaemonDef.Instance` (425)

15.7.8 `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons`

Synopsis: Stop all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure StopDaemons(Force: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StopDaemons` sends the `STOP` control code to all daemons, or the `SHUTDOWN` control code in case `Force` is `True`.

See also: `TDaemonController.Controller` (422), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (410), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (410)

15.7.9 `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons`

Synopsis: Install all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure InstallDaemons`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstallDaemons` installs all known daemons, i.e. registers them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-i` or `-install` or `/install` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (410), `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (410), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (409)

15.7.10 `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons`

Synopsis: Run all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure RunDaemons`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RunDaemons` runs (starts) all known daemons. This method is called if the application is run with the `-r` or `-run` methods.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` (410), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (409), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (409)

15.7.11 `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons`

Synopsis: Uninstall all daemons.

Declaration: `procedure UnInstallDaemons`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnInstallDaemons` uninstalls all known daemons, i.e. deregisters them with the service manager on Windows. This method is called if the application is run with the `-u` or `-uninstall` or `/uninstall` command-line option.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` (410), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` (409), `TCustomDaemonApplication.StopDaemons` (409)

15.7.12 `TCustomDaemonApplication.ShowHelp`

Synopsis: Display a help message.

Declaration: `procedure ShowHelp; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ShowHelp` displays a help message explaining the command-line options on standard output.

15.7.13 `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateForm`

Synopsis: Create a component.

Declaration: `procedure CreateForm(InstanceClass: TComponentClass; var Reference)
; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateForm` creates an instance of `InstanceClass` and fills `Reference` with the class instance pointer. It's main purpose is to give an IDE a means of assuring that forms or datamodules are created on application startup: the IDE will generate calls for all modules that are auto-created.

Errors: An exception may arise if the instance wants to stream itself from resources, but no resources are found.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.CreateDaemon` ([409](#))

15.7.14 `TCustomDaemonApplication.OnRun`

Synopsis: Event executed when the daemon is run.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnRun` is triggered when the daemon application is run and no appropriate options (one of install, uninstall or run) was given.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.RunDaemons` ([410](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.InstallDaemons` ([409](#)), `TCustomDaemonApplication.UnInstallDaemons` ([410](#))

15.7.15 `TCustomDaemonApplication.EventLog`

Synopsis: Event logger instance.

Declaration: `Property EventLog : TEventLog`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `EventLog` is the `TEventLog` ([662](#)) instance which is used to log events to the system log. It is created when the application instance is created, and destroyed when the application is destroyed.

See also: `TEventLog` ([662](#))

15.7.16 `TCustomDaemonApplication.GUIMainLoop`

Synopsis: GUI main loop callback.

Declaration: `Property GUIMainLoop : TGuiLoopEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GUIMainLoop` contains a reference to a method that can be called to process a main GUI loop. The procedure should return only when the main GUI has finished and the application should exit. It is called when the daemons are running.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle` ([412](#))

15.7.17 TCustomDaemonApplication.GuiHandle

Synopsis: Handle of GUI loop main application window handle.

Declaration: `Property GuiHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GuiHandle` is the handle of a GUI window which can be used to run a message handling loop on. It is created when no `GUIMainLoop` (411) procedure exists, and the application creates and runs a message loop by itself.

See also: `GUIMainLoop` (411)

15.7.18 TCustomDaemonApplication.RunMode

Synopsis: Application mode.

Declaration: `Property RunMode : TDaemonRunMode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RunMode` indicates in which mode the application is running currently. It is set automatically by examining the command-line, and when set, one of `InstallDaemons` (409), `RunDaemons` (410) or `UnInstallDaemons` (410) is called.

See also: `InstallDaemons` (409), `RunDaemons` (410), `UnInstallDaemons` (410)

15.7.19 TCustomDaemonApplication.AutoRegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Automatically register the message file.

Declaration: `Property AutoRegisterMessageFile : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AutoRegisterMessageFile` can be set to `True` to automatically register the service binary as the source of resource strings for the event viewer.

The event log mechanism uses several resource strings in the `fclel.res` file. These resource strings must be registered in the windows event viewer. Setting this property to `True` takes care of this registration when the program is started.

15.8 TCustomDaemonMapper

15.8.1 Description

The `TCustomDaemonMapper` class is responsible for mapping a daemon definition to an actual `TDaemon` instance. It maintains a `TDaemonDefs` (427) collection with daemon definitions, which can be used to map the definition of a daemon to a `TDaemon` descendent class.

An IDE such as Lazarus can design a `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance visually, to help establish the relationship between various `TDaemonDef` (423) definitions and the actual `TDaemon` (415) instances that will be used to run the daemons.

The `TCustomDaemonMapper` class has no support for streaming. The `TDaemonMapper` (429) class has support for streaming (and hence visual designing).

See also: `TDaemon` (415), `TDaemonDef` (423), `TDaemonDefs` (427), `TDaemonMapper` (429)

15.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
413	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomDaemonMapper</code> .
413	<code>Destroy</code>	Clean up and destroy a <code>TCustomDaemonMapper</code> instance.

15.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
414	<code>DaemonDefs</code>	rw	Collection of daemons.
414	<code>OnCreate</code>	rw	Event called when the daemon mapper is created.
414	<code>OnDestroy</code>	rw	Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.
415	<code>OnInstall</code>	rw	Event called when the daemons are installed.
414	<code>OnRun</code>	rw	Event called when the daemons are executed.
415	<code>OnUnInstall</code>	rw	Event called when the daemons are uninstalled.

15.8.4 `TCustomDaemonMapper.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCustomDaemonMapper`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `TCustomDaemonMapper`. It creates the `TDaemonDefs` (427) collection and then calls the inherited constructor. It should never be necessary to create a daemon mapper manually, the application will create a global `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` (427), `TCustomDaemonApplication` (408), `TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy` (413)

15.8.5 `TCustomDaemonMapper.Destroy`

Synopsis: Clean up and destroy a `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the `DaemonDefs` (414) collection and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDaemonDefs` (427), `TCustomDaemonMapper.Create` (413)

15.8.6 TCustomDaemonMapper.DaemonDefs

Synopsis: Collection of daemons.

Declaration: `Property DaemonDefs : TDaemonDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DaemonDefs` is the application's global collection of daemon definitions. This collection will be used to decide at runtime which `TDaemon` class must be created to run or install a daemon.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` ([408](#))

15.8.7 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnCreate

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is created.

Declaration: `Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCreate` is an event that is called when the `TCustomDaemonMapper` instance is created. It can for instance be used to dynamically create daemon definitions at runtime.

See also: `OnDestroy` ([414](#)), `OnUnInstall` ([415](#)), `OnCreate` ([414](#)), `OnDestroy` ([414](#))

15.8.8 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event called when the daemon mapper is freed.

Declaration: `Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDestroy` is called when the global daemon mapper instance is destroyed. it can be used to release up any resources that were allocated when the instance was created, in the `OnCreate` ([414](#)) event.

See also: `OnCreate` ([414](#)), `OnInstall` ([415](#)), `OnUnInstall` ([415](#)), `OnCreate` ([414](#))

15.8.9 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnRun

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are executed.

Declaration: `Property OnRun : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnRun` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to run the daemons (with command-line parameter '-r'). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnInstall` ([415](#)), `OnUnInstall` ([415](#)), `OnCreate` ([414](#)), `OnDestroy` ([414](#))

15.8.10 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are installed.

Declaration: `Property OnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to install the daemons (with command-line parameter `'-i'` or `'/install'`). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (414), `OnUnInstall` (415), `OnCreate` (414), `OnDestroy` (414)

15.8.11 TCustomDaemonMapper.OnUnInstall

Synopsis: Event called when the daemons are uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property OnUnInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnUnInstall` is the event called when the daemon application is executed to uninstall the daemons (with command-line parameter `'-u'` or `'/uninstall'`). it is called exactly once.

See also: `OnRun` (414), `OnInstall` (415), `OnCreate` (414), `OnDestroy` (414)

15.9 TDaemon

15.9.1 Description

`TDaemon` is a `TCustomDaemon` (405) descendent which is meant for development in a visual environment: it contains event handlers for all major operations. Whenever a `TCustomDaemon` method is executed, it's execution is shunted to the event handler, which can be filled with code in the IDE.

All the events of the daemon are executed in the thread in which the daemon's controller is running (as given by `DaemonThread` (406)), which is not the main program thread.

See also: `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TDaemonController` (420)

15.9.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
419	AfterInstall	rw	Called after the daemon was installed.
419	AfterUnInstall	rw	Called after the daemon is uninstalled.
418	BeforeInstall	rw	Called before the daemon will be installed.
419	BeforeUnInstall	rw	Called before the daemon is uninstalled.
416	Definition		
417	OnContinue	rw	Daemon continue.
419	OnControlCode	rw	Called when a control code is received for the daemon.
420	OnControlCodeEvent	rw	
418	OnExecute	rw	Daemon execute event.
417	OnPause	rw	Daemon pause event.
418	OnShutDown	rw	Daemon shutdown.
416	OnStart	rw	Daemon start event.
417	OnStop	rw	Daemon stop event.
416	Status		

15.9.3 TDaemon.Definition

Declaration: `Property Definition :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

15.9.4 TDaemon.Status

Declaration: `Property Status :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

15.9.5 TDaemon.OnStart

Synopsis: Daemon start event.

Declaration: `Property OnStart : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be started. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` ([406](#)) method.

If the start of the daemon should do some continuous action, then this action should be performed in a new thread: this thread should then be created and started in the `OnExecute` ([418](#)) event handler, so the event handler can return at once.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` ([417](#)), `TDaemon.OnExecute` ([418](#)), `TDaemon.OnContinue` ([417](#)), `ReportStatus` ([406](#))

15.9.6 TDaemon.OnStop

Synopsis: Daemon stop event.

Declaration: `Property OnStop : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnStart` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (406) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (418) event, this is the place where the thread should be stopped.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (416), `TDaemon.OnPause` (417), `ReportStatus` (406)

15.9.7 TDaemon.OnPause

Synopsis: Daemon pause event.

Declaration: `Property OnPause : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (406) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (418) event, this is the place where the thread's execution should be suspended.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStop` (417), `TDaemon.OnContinue` (417), `ReportStatus` (406)

15.9.8 TDaemon.OnContinue

Synopsis: Daemon continue.

Declaration: `Property OnContinue : TDaemonOKEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnPause` is the event called when the daemon must be stopped. This event handler should return as quickly as possible. If it must perform lengthy operations, it is best to report the status to the operating system at regular intervals using the `ReportStatus` (406) method.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (418) event and it was suspended in a `OnPause` (416) event, this is the place where the thread's executed should be resumed.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (416), `TDaemon.OnPause` (417), `ReportStatus` (406)

15.9.9 TDaemon.OnShutDown

Synopsis: Daemon shutdown.

Declaration: `Property OnShutDown : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnShutDown` is the event called when the daemon must be shut down. When the system is being shut down and the daemon does not respond to stop signals, then a shutdown message is sent to the daemon. This event can be used to respond to such a message. The daemon process will simply be stopped after this event.

If a thread was started in the `OnExecute` (418), this is the place where the thread's executed should be stopped or the thread freed from memory.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (416), `TDaemon.OnPause` (417), `ReportStatus` (406)

15.9.10 TDaemon.OnExecute

Synopsis: Daemon execute event.

Declaration: `Property OnExecute : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnExecute` is executed once after the daemon was started. If assigned, it should perform whatever operation the daemon is designed.

If the daemon's action is event based, then no `OnExecute` handler is needed, and the events will control the daemon's execution: the daemon thread will then go in a loop, passing control messages to the daemon.

If an `OnExecute` event handler is present, the checking for control messages must be done by the implementation of the `OnExecute` handler.

See also: `TDaemon.OnStart` (416), `TDaemon.OnStop` (417)

15.9.11 TDaemon.BeforeInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon will be installed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInstall` is called before the daemon is installed. It can be done to specify extra dependencies, or change the daemon description etc.

See also: `AfterInstall` (419), `BeforeUnInstall` (419), `AfterUnInstall` (419)

15.9.12 TDaemon.AfterInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon was installed.

Declaration: `Property AfterInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInstall` is called after the daemon was successfully installed.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(418\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(419\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(419\)](#)

15.9.13 TDaemon.BeforeUnInstall

Synopsis: Called before the daemon is uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property BeforeUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeUnInstall` is called before the daemon is uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(418\)](#), [AfterInstall \(419\)](#), [AfterUnInstall \(419\)](#)

15.9.14 TDaemon.AfterUnInstall

Synopsis: Called after the daemon is uninstalled.

Declaration: `Property AfterUnInstall : TDaemonEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterUnInstall` is called after the daemon is successfully uninstalled.

See also: [BeforeInstall \(418\)](#), [AfterInstall \(419\)](#), [BeforeUnInstall \(419\)](#)

15.9.15 TDaemon.OnControlCode

Synopsis: Called when a control code is received for the daemon.

Declaration: `Property OnControlCode : TCustomControlCodeEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnControlCode` is called when the daemon receives a control code. If the daemon has not handled the control code, it should set the `Handled` parameter to `False`. By default it is set to `True`.

See also: [Architecture \(397\)](#)

15.9.16 TDaemon.OnControlCodeEvent

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property OnControlCodeEvent : TCustomControlCodeEvEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description:

15.10 TDaemonApplication

15.10.1 Description

`TDaemonApplication` is the default `TCustomDaemonApplication` (408) descendent that is used to run the daemon application. It is possible to register an alternative `TCustomDaemonApplication` class (using `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (404)) to run the application in a different manner.

See also: `TCustomDaemonApplication` (408), `RegisterDaemonApplicationClass` (404)

15.11 TDaemonController

15.11.1 Description

`TDaemonController` is a class that is used by the `TDaemonApplication` (420) class to control the daemon during runtime. The `TDaemonApplication` class instantiates an instance of `TDaemonController` for each daemon in the application and communicates with the daemon through the `TDaemonController` instance. It should rarely be necessary to access or use this class.

See also: `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TDaemonApplication` (420)

15.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
422	<code>Controller</code>	<code>Controller</code> .
421	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TDaemonController</code> class.
421	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TDaemonController</code> instance.
421	<code>Main</code>	Daemon main entry point.
422	<code>ReportStatus</code>	Report the status to the operating system.
421	<code>StartService</code>	Start the service.

15.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
423	<code>CheckPoint</code>	r	Send checkpoint signal to the operating system.
422	<code>Daemon</code>	r	Daemon instance this controller controls.
423	<code>LastStatus</code>	r	Last reported status.
422	<code>Params</code>	r	Parameters passed to the daemon.

15.11.4 TDaemonController.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonController` class. It should never be necessary to create a new instance manually, because the controllers are created by the global `TDaemonApplication` (420) instance, and `AOwner` will be set to the global `TDaemonApplication` (420) instance.

See also: `TDaemonApplication` (420), `Destroy` (421)

15.11.5 TDaemonController.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TDaemonController` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` deallocates some resources allocated when the instance was created.

See also: `Create` (421)

15.11.6 TDaemonController.StartService

Synopsis: Start the service.

Declaration: `procedure StartService; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartService` starts the service controlled by this instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TDaemonController.Main` (421)

15.11.7 TDaemonController.Main

Synopsis: Daemon main entry point.

Declaration: `procedure Main(Argc: DWord; Args: PPChar); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Main` is the service's main entry point, called when the system wants to start the service. The global application will call this function whenever required, with the appropriate arguments.

The standard implementation starts the daemon thread, and waits for it to stop. All other daemon action - such as responding to control code events - is handled by the thread.

Errors: If the daemon thread cannot be created, an exception is raised.

See also: `TDaemonThread` (430)

15.11.8 TDaemonController.Controller

Synopsis: Controller.

Declaration: `procedure Controller(ControlCode: DWord; EventType: DWord;
EventData: Pointer); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Controller` is responsible for sending the control code to the daemon thread so it can be processed.

This routine is currently only used on windows, as there is no service manager on Linux. Later on this may be changed to respond to signals on Linux as well.

See also: `TDaemon.OnControlCode` ([419](#))

15.11.9 TDaemonController.ReportStatus

Synopsis: Report the status to the operating system.

Declaration: `function ReportStatus : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReportStatus` reports the status of the daemon to the operating system. On windows, this sends the current service status to the service manager. On other operating systems, this sends a message to the system log.

Errors: If an error occurs, an error message is sent to the system log.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([406](#)), `TDaemonController.LastStatus` ([423](#))

15.11.10 TDaemonController.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance this controller controls.

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance that is controller by this instance of the `TDaemonController` class.

15.11.11 TDaemonController.Params

Synopsis: Parameters passed to the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Params` contains the parameters passed to the daemon application by the operating system, comparable to the application's command-line parameters. The property is set by the `Main` ([421](#)) method.

15.11.12 TDaemonController.LastStatus

Synopsis: Last reported status.

Declaration: Property LastStatus : TCurrentStatus

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: LastStatus is the last status reported to the operating system.

See also: ReportStatus ([422](#))

15.11.13 TDaemonController.CheckPoint

Synopsis: Send checkpoint signal to the operating system.

Declaration: Property CheckPoint : DWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: CheckPoint can be used to send a checkpoint signal during lengthy operations, to signal that a lengthy operation is in progress. This should be used mainly on windows, to signal the service manager that the service is alive.

See also: ReportStatus ([422](#))

15.12 TDaemonDef

15.12.1 Description

TDaemonDef contains the definition of a daemon in the application: The name of the daemon, which TCustomDaemon ([405](#)) descendent should be started to run the daemon, a description, and various other options should be set in this class. The global TDaemonApplication instance maintains a collection of TDaemonDef instances and will use these definitions to install or start the various daemons.

See also: TDaemonApplication ([420](#)), TDaemon ([415](#))

15.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
424	Create	Create a new TDaemonDef instance.
424	Destroy	Free a TDaemonDef from memory.

15.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
424	DaemonClass	r	TDaemon class to use for this daemon.
425	DaemonClassName	rw	Name of the TDaemon class to use for this daemon.
425	Description	rw	Description of the daemon.
426	DisplayName	rw	Displayed name of the daemon (service).
426	Enabled	rw	Is the daemon enabled or not.
425	Instance	rw	Instance of the daemon class.
427	LogStatusReport	rw	Log the status report to the system log.
425	Name	rw	Name of the daemon (service).
427	OnCreateInstance	rw	Event called when a daemon is instantiated.
426	Options	rw	Service options.
426	RunArguments	rw	Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.
427	WinBindings	rw	Windows-specific bindings (windows only).

15.12.4 TDaemonDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TDaemonDef instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new TDaemonDef instance. It should not be necessary to instantiate a definition manually, it is handled by the collection.

See also: TDaemonDefs ([427](#))

15.12.5 TDaemonDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDaemonDef from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the TDaemonDef from memory.

15.12.6 TDaemonDef.DaemonClass

Synopsis: TDaemon class to use for this daemon.

Declaration: `Property DaemonClass : TCustomDaemonClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DaemonClass` is the TDaemon class that is used when this service is requested. It is looked up in the application's global daemon mapper by its name in `DaemonClassName` ([425](#)).

See also: `DaemonClassName` ([425](#)), `TDaemonMapper` ([429](#))

15.12.7 TDaemonDef.Instance

Synopsis: Instance of the daemon class.

Declaration: `Property Instance : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Instance` points to the `TDaemon` (415) instance that is used when the service is in operation at runtime.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` (424)

15.12.8 TDaemonDef.DaemonClassName

Synopsis: Name of the `TDaemon` class to use for this daemon.

Declaration: `Property DaemonClassName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DaemonClassName` is the name of the `TCustomDaemon` class that will be used whenever the service is needed. The name is used to look up the class pointer registered in the daemon mapper, when `TCustomDaemonApplication` (408) creates an instance of the daemon.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Instance` (425), `TDaemonDef.DaemonClass` (424), `RegisterDaemonClass` (404), `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TCustomDaemonApplication` (408)

15.12.9 TDaemonDef.Name

Synopsis: Name of the daemon (service).

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the internal name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.DisplayName` (426)

15.12.10 TDaemonDef.Description

Synopsis: Description of the daemon.

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Description` is the description shown in the Windows service manager when managing this service. It is supplied to the windows service manager when the daemon is installed.

15.12.11 TDaemonDef.DisplayName

Synopsis: Displayed name of the daemon (service).

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is the displayed name of the daemon as it is known to the operating system.

See also: `TDaemonDef.Name` ([425](#))

15.12.12 TDaemonDef.RunArguments

Synopsis: Additional command-line arguments when running daemon.

Declaration: `Property RunArguments : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RunArguments` specifies any additional command-line arguments that should be specified when running the daemon: these arguments will be passed to the service manager when registering the service on windows.

15.12.13 TDaemonDef.Options

Synopsis: Service options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TDaemonOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` tells the operating system which operations can be performed on the daemon while it is running.

This option is only used during the installation of the daemon.

15.12.14 TDaemonDef.Enabled

Synopsis: Is the daemon enabled or not.

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Enabled` specifies whether a daemon should be installed, run or uninstalled. Disabled daemons are not installed, run or uninstalled.

15.12.15 TDaemonDef.WinBindings

Synopsis: Windows-specific bindings (windows only).

Declaration: `Property WinBindings : TWinBindings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WinBindings` is used to group together the windows-specific properties of the daemon. This property is totally ignored on other platforms.

See also: `TWinBindings` ([435](#))

15.12.16 TDaemonDef.OnCreateInstance

Synopsis: Event called when a daemon is instantiated.

Declaration: `Property OnCreateInstance : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnCreateInstance` is called whenever an instance of the daemon is created. This can be used for instance when a single `TDaemon` class is used to run several services, to correctly initialize the `TDaemon`.

15.12.17 TDaemonDef.LogStatusReport

Synopsis: Log the status report to the system log.

Declaration: `Property LogStatusReport : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogStatusReport` can be set to `True` to send the status reports also to the system log. This can be used to track the progress of the daemon.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([406](#))

15.13 TDaemonDefs

15.13.1 Description

`TDaemonDefs` is the class of the global list of daemon definitions. It contains an item for each daemon in the application.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([412](#)) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([412](#)), `TDaemonDef` ([423](#))

15.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
428	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDaemonDefs</code> collection.
429	DaemonDefByName	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
428	FindDaemonDef	Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.
428	IndexOfDaemonDef	Return index of daemon definition.

15.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
429	Daemons	rw	Indexed access to <code>TDaemonDef</code> instances.

15.13.4 TDaemonDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDaemonDefs` collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent; AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TDaemonDefs` collection. It keeps the `AOwner` parameter for future reference and calls the inherited constructor.

Normally it is not necessary to create an instance of `TDaemonDefs` manually. The global `TCustomDaemonMapper` ([412](#)) instance will create a collection and maintain it.

See also: `TDaemonDef` ([423](#))

15.13.5 TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef

Synopsis: Return index of daemon definition.

Declaration: `function IndexOfDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfDaemonDef` searches the collection for a `TDaemonDef` ([423](#)) instance with a name equal to `DaemonName`, and returns its index. It returns -1 if no definition was found with this name. The search is case insensitive.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` ([428](#)), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` ([429](#))

15.13.6 TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function FindDaemonDef(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` ([423](#)) instance whose name matches `DaemonName`. If no definition is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` ([428](#)), `TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName` ([429](#))

15.13.7 TDaemonDefs.DaemonDefByName

Synopsis: Find and return instance of daemon definition with given name.

Declaration: `function DaemonDefByName(const DaemonName: string) : TDaemonDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindDaemonDef` searches the list of daemon definitions and returns the `TDaemonDef` (423) instance whose name matches `DemonName`. If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (405) exception is raised.

The `FindDaemonDef` (428) call does not raise an error, but returns `Nil` instead.

Errors: If no definition is found, an `EDaemon` (405) exception is raised.

See also: `TDaemonDefs.IndexOfDaemonDef` (428), `TDaemonDefs.FindDaemonDef` (428)

15.13.8 TDaemonDefs.Daemons

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TDaemonDef` instances.

Declaration: `Property Daemons[Index: Integer]: TDaemonDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Daemons` is the default property of `TDaemonDefs`, it gives access to the `TDaemonDef` instances in the collection.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (423)

15.14 TDaemonMapper

15.14.1 Description

`TDaemonMapper` is a direct descendent of `TCustomDaemonMapper` (412), but introduces no new functionality. It's sole purpose is to make it possible for an IDE to stream the `TDaemonMapper` instance.

For this purpose, it overrides the `Create` constructor and tries to find a resource with the same name as the class name, and tries to stream the instance from this resource.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (430) constructor can be used instead.

See also: `CreateNew` (430), `Create` (430)

15.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
430	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance and initializes it from streamed resources.
430	<code>CreateNew</code>	Create a new <code>TDaemonMapper</code> instance without initialization.

15.14.3 TDaemonMapper.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance and initializes it from streamed resources.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper` and attempts to read the component from resources compiled in the application.

If the instance should not be streamed, the `CreateNew` (430) constructor can be used instead.

Errors: If no streaming system is found, or no resource exists for the class, an exception is raised.

See also: `CreateNew` (430)

15.14.4 TDaemonMapper.CreateNew

Synopsis: Create a new `TDaemonMapper` instance without initialization.

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; Dummy: Integer=0)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateNew` initializes a new instance of `TDaemonMapper`. In difference with the `Create` constructor, it does not attempt to read the component from a stream.

See also: `Create` (430)

15.15 TDaemonThread

15.15.1 Description

`TDaemonThread` is the thread in which the daemons in the application are run. Each daemon is run in it's own thread.

It should not be necessary to create these threads manually, the `TDaemonController` (420) class will take care of this.

See also: `TDaemonController` (420), `TDaemon` (415)

15.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
431	<code>CheckControlMessage</code>	Check if a control message has arrived.
432	<code>ContinueDaemon</code>	Continue the daemon.
431	<code>Create</code>	Create a new thread.
431	<code>Execute</code>	Run the daemon.
432	<code>InterrogateDaemon</code>	Report the daemon status.
432	<code>PauseDaemon</code>	Pause the daemon.
432	<code>ShutDownDaemon</code>	Shut down daemon.
431	<code>StopDaemon</code>	Stops the daemon.

15.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
433	<code>Daemon</code>	r	Daemon instance.

15.15.4 TDaemonThread.Create

Synopsis: Create a new thread.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADaemon: TCustomDaemon)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new thread instance. It initializes the `Daemon` property with the passed `ADaemon`. The thread is created suspended.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` ([433](#))

15.15.5 TDaemonThread.Execute

Synopsis: Run the daemon.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` starts executing the daemon and waits till the daemon stops. It also listens for control codes for the daemon.

See also: `TDaemon.Execute` ([415](#))

15.15.6 TDaemonThread.CheckControlMessage

Synopsis: Check if a control message has arrived.

Declaration: `procedure CheckControlMessage (WaitForMessage: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckControlMessage` checks if a control message has arrived for the daemon and executes the appropriate daemon message. If the parameter `WaitForMessage` is `True`, then the routine waits for the message to arrive. If it is `False` and no message is present, it returns at once.

15.15.7 TDaemonThread.StopDaemon

Synopsis: Stops the daemon.

Declaration: `function StopDaemon : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopDaemon` attempts to stop the `Daemon` by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` instance. `StopDaemon` also terminates the thread. The return value is `True` if the `Daemon` was successfully stopped in the method.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` ([433](#)), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` ([432](#)), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` ([432](#)), `TCustomDaemon` ([405](#)), `TThread.Terminate` ([??](#))

15.15.8 TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon

Synopsis: Pause the daemon.

Declaration: `function PauseDaemon : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `PauseDaemon` attempts to pause the Daemon by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` (405) instance, and calling `Suspend` to suspend the thread. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (431), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (432), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (432), `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TThread.Suspend` (??)

15.15.9 TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon

Synopsis: Continue the daemon.

Declaration: `function ContinueDaemon : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ContinueDaemon` attempts to restart the Daemon by calling methods in the `TCustomDaemon` (405) instance. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful.

See also: `TDaemonThread.Daemon` (433), `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (431), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (432), `TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon` (432), `TCustomDaemon` (405)

15.15.10 TDaemonThread.ShutDownDaemon

Synopsis: Shut down daemon.

Declaration: `function ShutDownDaemon : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ShutDownDaemon` shuts down the Daemon for the thread. This happens normally only when the system is shut down and the daemon didn't respond to the stop request. The return value is the result from the method in the `TCustomDaemon` (405) instance. The thread is terminated in this method.

See also: `TDaemonThread.StopDaemon` (431), `TDaemonThread.PauseDaemon` (432), `TDaemonThread.ContinueDaemon` (432), `TCustomDaemon` (405), `TThread.Terminate` (??)

15.15.11 TDaemonThread.InterrogateDaemon

Synopsis: Report the daemon status.

Declaration: `function InterrogateDaemon : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `InterrogateDaemon` simply calls `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (406) for the daemon that is running in this thread. It always returns `True`.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (406)

15.15.12 TDaemonThread.Daemon

Synopsis: Daemon instance.

Declaration: `Property Daemon : TCustomDaemon`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Daemon` is the daemon instance which is running in this thread.

See also: `TDaemon` ([415](#))

15.16 TDependencies

15.16.1 Description

`TDependencies` is just a descendent of `TCollection` which contains a series of dependencies on other services. It overrides the default property of `TCollection` to return `TDependency` ([434](#)) instances.

See also: `TDependency` ([434](#))

15.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
433	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDependencies</code> collection.

15.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
433	Items	rw	Default property override.

15.16.4 TDependencies.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` Create a new instance of a `TDependencies` collection.

15.16.5 TDependencies.Items

Synopsis: Default property override.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TDependency; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` overrides the default property of `TCollection` so the items are of type `TDependency` ([434](#)).

See also: `TDependency` ([434](#))

15.17 TDependency

15.17.1 Description

TDependency is a collection item used to specify dependencies on other daemons (services) in windows. It is used only on windows and when installing the daemon: changing the dependencies of a running daemon has no effect.

See also: TDependencies ([433](#)), TDaemonDef ([423](#))

15.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
434	Assign	Assign TDependency instance to another.

15.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
434	IsGroup	rw	Name refers to a service group.
434	Name	rw	Name of the service.

15.17.4 TDependency.Assign

Synopsis: Assign TDependency instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TDependency to copy all properties from one instance to another.

15.17.5 TDependency.Name

Synopsis: Name of the service.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name is the name of a service or service group that the current daemon depends on.

See also: TDependency.IsGroup ([434](#))

15.17.6 TDependency.IsGroup

Synopsis: Name refers to a service group.

Declaration: `Property IsGroup : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: IsGroup can be set to True to indicate that Name refers to the name of a service group.

See also: TDependency.Name ([434](#))

15.18 TWinBindings

15.18.1 Description

`TWinBindings` contains windows-specific properties for the daemon definition (in `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (427)). If the daemon should not run on Windows, then the properties can be ignored.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (423), `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (427)

15.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
436	<code>Assign</code>	Copies all properties.
435	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TWinBindings</code> instance.
435	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TWinBindings</code> instance from memory.

15.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
439	<code>AcceptedCodes</code>	rw	
436	<code>Dependencies</code>	rw	Service dependencies.
436	<code>ErrCode</code>	rw	Service specific error code.
438	<code>ErrorSeverity</code>	rw	Error severity in case of startup failure.
437	<code>GroupName</code>	rw	Service group name.
438	<code>IDTag</code>	rw	Location in the service group.
437	<code>Password</code>	rw	Password for service startup.
438	<code>ServiceType</code>	rw	Type of service.
437	<code>StartType</code>	rw	Service startup type.
437	<code>UserName</code>	rw	Username to run service as.
438	<code>WaitHint</code>	rw	Timeout wait hint.
436	<code>Win32ErrCode</code>	rw	General windows error code.

15.18.4 TWinBindings.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TWinBindings` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes various properties such as the dependencies.

See also: `TDaemonDef` (423), `TDaemonDef.WinBindings` (427), `TWinBindings.Dependencies` (436)

15.18.5 TWinBindings.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TWinBindings` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TWinBindings` instance.

See also: `TWinBindings.Dependencies` (436), `TWinBindings.Create` (435)

15.18.6 TWinBindings.Assign

Synopsis: Copies all properties.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TWinBindings` so all properties are copied from `Source` to the `TWinBindings` instance.

15.18.7 TWinBindings.ErrCode

Synopsis: Service specific error code.

Declaration: `Property ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrCode` contains a service specific error code that is reported with `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (406) to the windows service manager. If it is zero, then the contents of `Win32ErrCode` (436) are reported. If it is nonzero, then the windows-errorcode is set to `ERROR_SERVICE_SPECIFIC_ERROR`.

See also: `TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode` (436)

15.18.8 TWinBindings.Win32ErrCode

Synopsis: General windows error code.

Declaration: `Property Win32ErrCode : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Win32ErrCode` is a general windows service error code that can be reported with `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` (406) to the windows service manager. It is sent if `ErrCode` (436) is zero.

See also: `ErrCode` (436)

15.18.9 TWinBindings.Dependencies

Synopsis: Service dependencies.

Declaration: `Property Dependencies : TDependencies`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Dependencies` contains the list of other services (or service groups) that this service depends on. Windows will first attempt to start these services prior to starting this service. If they cannot be started, then the service will not be started either.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

15.18.10 **TWInBindings.GroupName**

Synopsis: Service group name.

Declaration: `Property GroupName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GroupName` specifies the name of a service group that the service belongs to. If it is empty, then the service does not belong to any group.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `TDependency.IsGroup` ([434](#))

15.18.11 **TWInBindings.Password**

Synopsis: Password for service startup.

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` contains the service password: if the service is started with credentials other than one of the system users, then the password for the user must be entered here.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `UserName` ([437](#))

15.18.12 **TWInBindings.UserName**

Synopsis: Username to run service as.

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` specifies the name of a user whose credentials should be used to run the service. If it is left empty, the service is run as the system user. The password can be set in the `Password` ([437](#)) property.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

See also: `Password` ([437](#))

15.18.13 **TWInBindings.StartType**

Synopsis: Service startup type.

Declaration: `Property StartType : TStartType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartType` specifies when the service should be started during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

15.18.14 **TWInBindings.WaitHint**

Synopsis: Timeout wait hint.

Declaration: `Property WaitHint : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WaitHint` specifies the estimated time for a start/stop/pause or continue operation (in milliseconds). `ReportStatus` should be called prior to this time to report the next status.

See also: `TCustomDaemon.ReportStatus` ([406](#))

15.18.15 **TWInBindings.IDTag**

Synopsis: Location in the service group.

Declaration: `Property IDTag : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IDTag` contains the location of the service in the service group after installation of the service. It should not be set, it is reported by the service manager.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

15.18.16 **TWInBindings.ServiceType**

Synopsis: Type of service.

Declaration: `Property ServiceType : TServiceType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServiceType` specifies what kind of service is being installed.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

15.18.17 **TWInBindings.ErrorSeverity**

Synopsis: Error severity in case of startup failure.

Declaration: `Property ErrorSeverity : TErrorSeverity`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ErrorSeverity` can be used at installation time to tell the windows service manager how to behave when the service fails to start during system startup.

This property is only used during installation of the service.

15.18.18 TWinBindings.AcceptedCodes

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AcceptedCodes : TWinControlCodes`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description:

Chapter 16

Reference for unit 'DB'

16.1 Used units

Table 16.1: Used units by unit 'DB'

Name	Page
Classes	??
FmtBCD	??
MaskUtils	1367
System	??
sysutils	??
Variants	??

16.2 Overview

The `db` unit provides the basis for all database access mechanisms. It introduces abstract classes, on which all database access mechanisms are based: `TDataset` ([498](#)) representing a set of records from a database, `TField` ([551](#)) which represents the contents of a field in a record, `TDataSource` ([538](#)) which acts as an event distributor on behalf of a dataset and `TParams` ([633](#)) which can be used to parameterize queries. The databases connections themselves are abstracted in the `TDatabase` ([489](#)) class.

16.3 Constants, types and variables

16.3.1 Constants

```
DefaultFieldClasses : Array[TFieldType] of TFieldClass = class of
  TField = (TField, TStringField, TSmallIntField, TLongIntField, TWordField
    , TBooleanField, TFloatField, TCurrencyField, TBCDField, TDateField
    , TTimeField, TDateTimeField, TBytesField, TVarBytesField, TAutoIncField
    , TBlobField, TMemoField, TGraphicField, TBlobField, TBlobField, TBlobField
    , TBlobField, Nil, TStringField, TWideStringField, TLargeIntField
    , Nil, TArrayField, Nil, Nil, TBlobField, TMemoField, TVariantField
    , Nil, Nil, TGuidField, Nil, TFMTBCDField, TWideStringField, TWideMemoField
```

```
, Nil, Nil, TLongWordField, TShortintField, TByteField, TExtendedField
, TSingleField)
```

DefaultFieldClasses contains the TField (551) descendent class to use when a TDataset instance needs to create fields based on the TFieldDefs (583) field definitions when opening the dataset. The entries can be set to create customized TField descendents for certain field datatypes in all datasets.

```
dsEditModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey]
```

dsEditModes contains the various values of TDataset.State (526) for which the dataset is in edit mode, i.e. states in which it is possible to set field values for that dataset.

```
dsMaxBufferCount = MAXINT div 8
```

Maximum data buffers count for dataset.

```
dsMaxStringSize = 8192
```

Maximum size of string fields.

```
dsWriteModes = [dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey, dsCalcFields, dsFilter
, dsNewValue, dsInternalCalc, dsRefreshFields]
```

dsWriteModes contains the various values of TDataset.State (526) for which data can be written to the dataset buffer.

```
FieldTypeNames : Array[TFieldType] of string = string[15] = ('Unknown'
, 'String', 'Smallint', 'Integer', 'Word', 'Boolean', 'Float', 'Currency'
, 'BCD', 'Date', 'Time', 'DateTime', 'Bytes', 'VarBytes', 'AutoInc'
, 'Blob', 'Memo', 'Graphic', 'FmtMemo', 'ParadoxOle', 'DBaseOle',
'TypedBinary', 'Cursor', 'FixedChar', 'WideString', 'Largeint', 'ADT'
, 'Array', 'Reference', 'DataSet', 'OraBlob', 'OraClob', 'Variant'
, 'Interface', 'IDispatch', 'Guid', 'TimeStamp', 'FMTBcd', 'FixedWideChar'
, 'WideMemo', 'OraTimeStamp', 'OraInterval', 'LongWord', 'Shortint'
, 'Byte', 'Extended', 'Single')
```

FieldTypeNames contains the names (in English) for the various field data types.

```
FieldTypetoVariantMap : Array[TFieldType] of Integer = (varError,
varOleStr, varSmallint, varInteger, varSmallint, varBoolean, varDouble
, varCurrency, varCurrency, varDate, varDate, varDate, varOleStr,
varOleStr, varInteger, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varOleStr, varOleStr, varOleStr, varError, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varInt64, varError, varError, varError, varError, varOleStr, varOleStr
, varVariant, varUnknown, varDispatch, varOleStr, varOleStr, varDouble
, varOleStr, varOleStr, varUnknown, varUnknown, varLongWord, varShortint
, varByte, varDouble, varSingle)
```

FieldTypetoVariantMap contains for each field datatype the variant value type that corresponds to it. If a field type cannot be expressed by a variant type, then varError is stored in the variant value.

```
ftBlobTypes = [ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic, ftFmtMemo, ftParadoxOle
, ftDBaseOle, ftTypedBinary, ftOraBlob, ftOraClob, ftWideMemo]
```

ftBlobTypes is a constant containing all blob field data types. It is to be preferred over the TBlobType (443) range, which contains some non-blob types as well.

```
ObjectFieldTypes = [ftADT, ftArray, ftReference, ftDataSet]
```

```
SQLDelimiterCharacters = [';', ', ', ' ', '(', ')', #13, #10, #9]
```

SQL statement delimiter token characters.

```
YesNoChars : Array[Boolean] of char = ('N', 'Y')
```

Array of characters mapping a boolean to Y/N.

16.3.2 Types

```
LargeInt = Int64
```

Large (64-bit) integer.

```
PBookmarkFlag = ^TBookmarkFlag
```

PBookmarkFlag is a convenience type, defined for internal use in TDataset (498) or one of it's descendents.

```
PBufferList = ^TBufferList
```

PBufferList is a pointer to a structure of type TBufferList (443). It is an internal type, and should not be used in end-user code.

```
PDateTimeRec = ^TDateTimeRec
```

Pointer to TDateTimeRec record.

```
PLargeInt = ^LargeInt
```

Pointer to Large (64-bit) integer.

```
PLookupListRec = ^TLookupListRec
```

Pointer to TLookupListRec record.

```
TBlobData = TBytes
```

TBlobData should never be used directly in application code.

```
TBlobStreamMode = (bmRead, bmWrite, bmReadWrite)
```

Table 16.2: Enumeration values for type `TBlobStreamMode`

Value	Explanation
<code>bmRead</code>	Read blob data.
<code>bmReadWrite</code>	Read and write blob data.
<code>bmWrite</code>	Write blob data.

`TBlobStreamMode` is used when creating a stream for reading BLOB data. It indicates what the data will be used for: reading, writing or both.

`TBlobType = ftBlob..ftWideMemo` deprecated

`TBlobType` is a subrange type, indicating the various datatypes of BLOB fields.

`TBookmark = TBytes`

`TBookmark` is the type used by the `TDataset.SetBookmark` (498) method. It is of type `TBytes`, the contents of the buffer is determined by the actual `TDataset` descendent.

`TBookmarkFlag = (bfCurrent,bfBOF,bfEOF,bfInserted)`

Table 16.3: Enumeration values for type `TBookmarkFlag`

Value	Explanation
<code>bfBOF</code>	First record in the dataset.
<code>bfCurrent</code>	Buffer used for the current record.
<code>bfEOF</code>	Last record in the dataset.
<code>bfInserted</code>	Buffer used for insert.

`TBookmarkFlag` is used internally by `TDataset` (498) and it's descendent types to mark the internal memory buffers. It should not be used in end-user applications.

`TBookmarkStr = ansistring`

`TBookmarkStr` was the type used by the `TDataset.Bookmark` (520) property in earlier versions of FPC. It can be used as a string, but should in fact be considered an opaque type.

This type is deprecated, and no longer usable, use the `TBookmark` (443) type instead.

`TBufferArray = ^TRecordBuffer`

`TBufferArray` is an internally used type. It can change in future implementations, and should not be used in application code.

`TBufferList = Array[0..dsMaxBufferCount-1] of TRecordBuffer =
PAnsiChar`

`TBufferList` is used internally by the `TDataset` (498) class to manage the memory buffers for the data. It should not be necessary to use this type in end-user applications.

```
TCloseErrorEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; aError: Exception)
  of object
```

```
TDataAction = (daFail, daAbort, daRetry)
```

Table 16.4: Enumeration values for type TDataAction

Value	Explanation
daAbort	The operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an EAbort exception is raised).
daFail	The operation should fail (an exception will be raised).
daRetry	Retry the operation.

TDataAction is used by the TDataSetErrorEvent (445) event handler prototype. The parameter Action of this event handler is of TDataAction type, and should indicate what action must be taken by the dataset.

```
TDatabaseClass = class of TDataBase
```

TDatabaseClass is the class pointer for the TDatabase (489) class.

```
TDataChangeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Field: TField) of
  object
```

TDataChangeEvent is the event handler prototype for the TDataSource.OnDataChange (541) event. The sender parameter is the TDataSource instance that triggered the event, and the Field parameter is the field whose data has changed. If the dataset has scrolled, then the Field parameter is Nil.

```
TDataEvent = (deFieldChange, deRecordChange, deDataSetChange,
  deDataSetScroll, deLayoutChange, deUpdateRecord,
  deUpdateState, deCheckBrowseMode, dePropertyChange,
  deFieldListChange, deFocusControl, deParentScroll,
  deConnectChange, deReconcileError, deDisabledStateChange)
```

Table 16.5: Enumeration values for type TDataEvent

Value	Explanation
deCheckBrowseMode	The browse mode is being checked.
deConnectChange	Unused.
deDataSetChange	The dataset property changed.
deDataSetScroll	The dataset scrolled to another record.
deDisabledStateChange	Unused.
deFieldChange	A field value changed.
deFieldListChange	Event sent when the list of fields of a dataset changes.
deFocusControl	Event sent whenever a control connected to a field should be focused.
deLayoutChange	The layout properties of one of the fields changed.
deParentScroll	Unused.
dePropertyChange	Unused.
deReconcileError	Unused.
deRecordChange	The current record changed.
deUpdateRecord	The record is being updated.
deUpdateState	The dataset state is updated.

TDataEvent describes the various events that can be sent to TDataSource (538) instances connected to a TDataSet (498) instance.

TDataOperation = procedure of object

TDataOperation is a prototype handler used internally in TDataSet. It can be changed at any time, so it should not be used in end-user code.

TDatasetClass = class of TDataSet

TDatasetClass is the class type for the TDataSet (498) class. It is currently unused in the DB unit and is defined for the benefit of other units.

```
TDatasetErrorEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet; E: EDatabaseError
;
                                var DataAction: TDataAction) of
object
```

TDatasetErrorEvent is used by the TDataSet.OnEditError (535), TDataSet.OnPostError (536) and TDataSet.OnDeleteError (535) event handlers to allow the programmer to specify what should be done if an update operation fails with an exception: The DataSet parameter indicates what dataset triggered the event, the E parameter contains the exception object. The DataAction must be set by the event handler, and based on its return value, the dataset instance will take appropriate action. The default value is daFail, i.e. the exception will be raised again. For a list of available return values, see TDataAction (444).

```
TDatasetNotifyEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet) of object
```

TDatasetNotifyEvent is used in most of the TDataSet (498) event handlers. It differs from the more general TNotifyEvent (defined in the Classes unit) in that the Sender parameter of the latter is replaced with the DataSet parameter. This avoids typecasts, the available TDataSet methods can be used directly.

```

TDataSetState = (dsInactive, dsBrowse, dsEdit, dsInsert, dsSetKey,
  dsCalcFields, dsFilter, dsNewValue, dsOldValue, dsCurValue
  ,
  dsBlockRead, dsInternalCalc, dsOpening, dsRefreshFields
  )

```

Table 16.6: Enumeration values for type TDataSetState

Value	Explanation
dsBlockRead	The dataset is open, but no events are transferred to datasources.
dsBrowse	The dataset is active, and the cursor can be used to navigate the data.
dsCalcFields	The dataset is calculating it's calculated fields.
dsCurValue	The dataset is showing the current values of a record.
dsEdit	The dataset is in editing mode: the current record can be modified.
dsFilter	The dataset is filtering records.
dsInactive	The dataset is not active. No data is available.
dsInsert	The dataset is in insert mode: the current record is a new record which can be edited.
dsInternalCalc	The dataset is calculating it's internally calculated fields.
dsNewValue	The dataset is showing the new values of a record.
dsOldValue	The dataset is showing the old values of a record.
dsOpening	The dataset is currently opening, but is not yet completely open.
dsRefreshFields	Dataset is refreshing field values from server after an update.
dsSetKey	The dataset is calculating the primary key.

TDataSetState describes the current state of the dataset. During it's lifetime, the dataset's state is described by these enumerated values.

Some state are not used in the default TDataset implementation, and are only used by certain descendants.

```
TDateTimeAlias = type TDateTime
```

TDateTimeAlias is no longer used.

```

TDateTimeRec = record
case TFieldType of
ftDate: (
  Date : LongInt
  );
ftTime: (
  Time : LongInt;
  );
ftDateTime: (
  DateTime : TDateTimeAlias
  );
end

```

TDateTimeRec was used by older TDataset (498) implementations to store date/time values. Newer implementations use the TDateTime. This type should no longer be used.

```
TDBDatasetClass = class of TDBDataset
```

TDBDatasetClass is the class pointer for TDBDataset (544)

```
TFieldAttribute = (faHiddenCol, faReadonly, faRequired, faLink, faUnNamed
,
faFixed)
```

Table 16.7: Enumeration values for type TFieldAttribute

Value	Explanation
faFixed	Fixed length field.
faHiddenCol	Field is a hidden column (used to construct a unique key).
faLink	Field is a link field for other datasets.
faReadonly	Field is read-only.
faRequired	Field is required.
faUnNamed	Field has no original name.

TFieldAttribute is used to denote some attributes of a field in a database. It is used in the Attributes (581) property of TFieldDef (577).

```
TFieldAttributes = Set of TFieldAttribute = (faFixed, faHiddenCol, faLink
, faReadonly, faRequired,
faUnNamed)
```

TFieldAttributes is used in the TFieldDef.Attributes (581) property to denote additional attributes of the underlying field.

```
TFieldChars = Set of char = char
```

TFieldChars is a type used in the TField.ValidChars (568) property. It's a simple set of characters.

```
TFieldClass = class of TField
```

```
TFieldDefClass = class of TFieldDef
```

TFieldDefClass is used to be able to customize the actual TDataset.FieldDefs (523) items class.

```
TFieldDefsClass = class of TFieldDefs
```

TFieldDefClass is used to be able to customize the actual TDataset.FieldDefs (523) class used in a TDataset (498) descendent.

```
TFieldGetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; var aText: string;
DisplayText: Boolean) of object
```

TFieldGetTextEvent is the prototype for the TField.OnGetText (576) event handler. It should be used when the text of a field requires special formatting. The event handler should return the contents of the field in formatted form in the AText parameter. The DisplayText is True if the text is used for displaying purposes or is False if it will be used for editing purposes.


```
TFieldKind = (fkData, fkCalculated, fkLookup, fkInternalCalc)
```

Table 16.8: Enumeration values for type TFieldKind

Value	Explanation
fkCalculated	The field is calculated on the fly.
fkData	Field represents actual data in the underlying data structure.
fkInternalCalc	Field is calculated but stored in an underlying buffer.
fkLookup	The field is a lookup field.

TFieldKind indicates the type of a TField instance. Besides TField instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. To distinguish between these kind of fields, TFieldKind is introduced.

```
TFieldKinds = Set of TFieldKind = (fkCalculated, fkData, fkInternalCalc,
    , fkLookup)
```

TFieldKinds is a set of TFieldKind (448) values. It is used internally by the classes of the DB unit.

```
TFieldMap = Array[TFieldType] of Byte
```

TFieldMap is no longer used.

```
TFieldNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TField) of object
```

TFieldNotifyEvent is a prototype for the event handlers in the TField (551) class. Its Sender parameter is the field instance that triggered the event.

```
TFieldRef = ^TField
```

Pointer to a TField instance.

```
TFieldsClass = class of TFields
```

TFieldsClass is needed to be able to specify the class of fields used in TDataset.Fields (526);

```
TFieldSetTextEvent = procedure(Sender: TField; const aText: string
    )
                        of object
```

TFieldSetTextEvent is the prototype for an event handler used to set the contents of a field based on a user-edited text. It should be used when the text of a field is entered with special formatting. The event handler should set the contents of the field based on the formatted text in the AText parameter.

```
TFieldType = (ftUnknown, ftString, ftSmallint, ftInteger, ftWord, ftBoolean
    ,
                ftFloat, ftCurrency, ftBCD, ftDate, ftTime, ftDateTime
```

```
, ftBytes,
    ftVarBytes, ftAutoInc, ftBlob, ftMemo, ftGraphic
, ftFmtMemo,
    ftParadoxOle, ftDBaseOle, ftTypedBinary, ftCursor
,
    ftFixedChar, ftWideString, ftLargeint, ftADT, ftArray
,
    ftReference, ftDataSet, ftOraBlob, ftOraClob, ftVariant
,
    ftInterface, ftIDispatch, ftGuid, ftTimeStamp, ftFMTBcd
,
    ftFixedWideChar, ftWideMemo, ftOraTimeStamp, ftOraInterval
,
    ftLongWord, ftShortint, ftByte, ftExtended, ftSingle)
```

Table 16.9: Enumeration values for type TFieldType

Value	Explanation
ftADT	ADT value.
ftArray	Array data.
ftAutoInc	Auto-increment integer value (4 bytes).
ftBCD	Binary Coded Decimal value (DECIMAL and NUMERIC SQL types).
ftBlob	Binary data value (no type, no size).
ftBoolean	Boolean value.
ftByte	Byte field type.
ftBytes	Array of bytes value, fixed size (untyped).
ftCurrency	Currency value (4 decimal points).
ftCursor	Cursor data value (no size).
ftDataSet	Dataset data (blob).
ftDate	Date value.
ftDateTime	Date/Time (timestamp) value.
ftDBaseOle	Paradox OLE field data.
ftExtended	Extended field type.
ftFixedChar	Fixed character array (string).
ftFixedWideChar	Fixed wide character date (2 bytes per character).
ftFloat	Floating point value (double).
ftFMTBcd	Formatted BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value.
ftFmtMemo	Formatted memo data value (no size).
ftGraphic	Graphical data value (no size).
ftGuid	GUID data value.
ftIDispatch	Dispatch data value.
ftInteger	Regular integer value (4 bytes, signed).
ftInterface	interface data value.
ftLargeint	Large integer value (8-byte).
ftLongWord	Longword (cardinal) field type.
ftMemo	Binary text data (no size).
ftOraBlob	Oracle BLOB data.
ftOraClob	Oracle CLOB data.
ftOraInterval	Oracle interval field type.
ftOraTimeStamp	Oracle time stamp field type.
ftParadoxOle	Paradox OLE field data (no size).
ftReference	Reference data.
ftShortint	Shortint field type.
ftSingle	
ftSmallint	Small integer value(1 byte, signed).
ftString	String data value (ansistring).
ftTime	Time value.
ftTimeStamp	Timestamp data value.
ftTypedBinary	Binary typed data (no size).
ftUnknown	Unknown data type.
ftVarBytes	Array of bytes value, variable size (untyped).
ftVariant	Variant data value.
ftWideMemo	Widestring memo data.
ftWideString	Widestring (2 bytes per character).
ftWord	Word-sized value(2 bytes, unsigned).

TFieldType indicates the type of a TField (551) underlying data, in the DataType (564) property.

```
TFilterOption = (foCaseInsensitive, foNoPartialCompare)
```

Table 16.10: Enumeration values for type TFilterOption

Value	Explanation
foCaseInsensitive	Filter case insensitively.
foNoPartialCompare	Do not compare values partially, always compare completely.

TFilterOption enumerates the various options available when filtering a dataset. The TFilterOptions (451) set is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (528) property to indicate which of the options should be used when filtering the data.

```
TFilterOptions = Set of TFilterOption = (foCaseInsensitive, foNoPartialCompare
)
```

TFilterOption is the set of filter options to use when filtering a dataset. This set type is used in the TDataset.FilterOptions (528) property. The available values are described in the TFilterOption (451) type.

```
TFilterRecordEvent = procedure (DataSet: TDataSet; var Accept: Boolean
)
of object
```

TFilterRecordEvent is the prototype for the TDataset.OnFilterRecord (536) event handler. The DataSet parameter indicates which dataset triggered the event, and the Accept parameter must be set to true if the current record should be shown, False should be used when the record should be hidden.

```
TGetMode = (gmCurrent, gmNext, gmPrior)
```

Table 16.11: Enumeration values for type TGetMode

Value	Explanation
gmCurrent	Retrieve the current record.
gmNext	Retrieve the next record.
gmPrior	Retrieve the previous record.

TGetMode is used internally by TDataset (498) when it needs to fetch more data for its buffers (using GetRecord). It tells the descendent dataset what operation must be performed.

```
TGetResult = (grOK, grBOF, grEOF, grError)
```

Table 16.12: Enumeration values for type TGetResult

Value	Explanation
grBOF	The beginning of the recordset is reached.
grEOF	The end of the recordset is reached.
grError	An error occurred.
grOK	The operation was completed successfully.

TGetResult is used by descendents of TDataset (498) when they have to communicate the result of the GetRecord operation back to the TDataset record.

```
TIndexOption = (ixPrimary, ixUnique, ixDescending, ixCaseInsensitive
,
                ixExpression, ixNonMaintained)
```

Table 16.13: Enumeration values for type TIndexOption

Value	Explanation
ixCaseInsensitive	The values in the index are sorted case-insensitively.
ixDescending	The values in the index are sorted descending.
ixExpression	The values in the index are based on a calculated expression.
ixNonMaintained	The index is non-maintained, i.e. changing the data will not update the index.
ixPrimary	The index is the primary index for the data.
ixUnique	The index is a unique index, i.e. each index value can occur only once.

TIndexOption describes the various properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexOptions (452) set type to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (598).

```
TIndexOptions = Set of TIndexOption = (ixCaseInsensitive, ixDescending
, ixExpression,
                ixNonMaintained, ixPrimary, ixUnique
)
```

TIndexOptions contains the set of properties that an index can have. It is used in the TIndexDef.Options (600) property to describe all properties of an index definition as in TIndexDef (598).

```
TLocateOption = (loCaseInsensitive, loPartialKey)
```

Table 16.14: Enumeration values for type TLocateOption

Value	Explanation
loCaseInsensitive	Perform a case-insensitive search.
loPartialKey	Accept partial key matches for string fields.

TLocateOption is used in the TDataset.Locate (515) call to enumerate the possible options available when locating a record in the dataset.

For string-type fields, this option indicates that fields starting with the search value are considered a match. For other fields (e.g. integer, date/time), this option is ignored and only equal field values are considered a match.

```
TLocateOptions = Set of TLocateOption = (loCaseInsensitive, loPartialKey
)
```

TLocateOptions is used in the TDataset.Locate (515) call: It should contain the actual options to use when locating a record in the dataset.

```
TLoginEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Username: string;
    Password: string) of object
```

TLoginEvent is the prototype for the TCustomConnection.OnLogin (488) event handler. It gets passed the TCustomConnection instance that is trying to login, and the initial username and password.

```
TParamBinding = Array of Integer
```

TParamBinding is an auxiliary type used when parsing and binding parameters in SQL statements. It should never be used directly in application code.

```
TParamClass = class of TParam
```

TParamClass is needed to be able to specify the type of parameters when instantiating a TParams (633) collection.

```
TParamStyle = (psInterbase, psPostgreSQL, psSimulated)
```

Table 16.15: Enumeration values for type TParamStyle

Value	Explanation
psInterbase	Parameters are specified by a ? character.
psPostgreSQL	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.
psSimulated	Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

TParamStyle denotes the style in which parameters are specified in a query. It is used in the TParams.ParseSql (636) method, and can have the following values:

psInterbase Parameters are specified by a ? character.

psPostgreSQL Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

psSimulated Parameters are specified by a \$N character.

```
TParamType = (ptUnknown, ptInput, ptOutput, ptInputOutput, ptResult)
```

Table 16.16: Enumeration values for type TParamType

Value	Explanation
ptInput	Input parameter.
ptInputOutput	Input/output parameter.
ptOutput	Output parameter, filled on result.
ptResult	Result parameter.
ptUnknown	Unknown type.

TParamType indicates the kind of parameter represented by a TParam (619) instance. it has one of the following values:

ptUnknown Unknown type.

ptInput Input parameter.

ptOutput Output parameter, filled on result.

ptInputOutput Input/output parameter.

ptResult Result parameter.

```
TParamTypes = Set of TParamType = (ptInput, ptInputOutput, ptOutput
    , ptResult, ptUnknown)
```

TParamTypes is defined for completeness: a set of TParamType (453) values.

```
TProviderFlag = (pfInUpdate, pfInWhere, pfInKey, pfHidden,
    pfRefreshOnInsert, pfRefreshOnUpdate)
```

Table 16.17: Enumeration values for type TProviderFlag

Value	Explanation
pfHidden	
pfInKey	Field is a key field and used in the WHERE clause of an update statement.
pfInUpdate	Changes to the field should be propagated to the database.
pfInWhere	Field should be used in the WHERE clause of an update statement in case of upWhereChanged.
pfRefreshOnInsert	This field's value should be refreshed after insert.
pfRefreshOnUpdate	This field's value should be refreshed after update.

TProviderFlag describes how the field should be used when applying updates from a dataset to the database. Each field of a TDataset (498) has one or more of these flags.

```
TProviderFlags = Set of TProviderFlag = (pfHidden, pfInKey, pfInUpdate
    , pfInWhere,
        pfRefreshOnInsert, pfRefreshOnUpdate)
```

TProviderFlags is used for the TField.ProviderFlags (575) property to describe the role of the field when applying updates to a database.

```
TPSCommandType = (ctUnknown, ctQuery, ctTable, ctStoredProc, ctSelect
    ,
        ctInsert, ctUpdate, ctDelete, ctDDL)
```

Table 16.18: Enumeration values for type `TPSCommandType`

Value	Explanation
<code>ctDDL</code>	SQL DDL statement.
<code>ctDelete</code>	SQL DELETE Statement.
<code>ctInsert</code>	SQL INSERT Statement.
<code>ctQuery</code>	General SQL statement.
<code>ctSelect</code>	SQL SELECT Statement.
<code>ctStoredProc</code>	Stored procedure statement.
<code>ctTable</code>	Table contents (select * from table).
<code>ctUnknown</code>	Unknown SQL type or not SQL based.
<code>ctUpdate</code>	SQL UPDATE statement.

`TPSCommandType` is used in the `IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType` (465) call to determine the type of SQL command that the provider is exposing. It is meaningless for datasets that are not SQL based.

`TRecordBuffer = PAnsiChar`

`TRecordBuffer` is the type used by `TDataset` (498) to point to a record's data buffer. It is used in several internal `TDataset` routines.

`TRecordBufferBaseType = AnsiChar`

`TRecordBufferBaseType` should not be used directly. It just serves as an (opaque) base type to `TRecordBuffer` (455)

`TResolverResponse = (rrSkip, rrAbort, rrMerge, rrApply, rrIgnore)`

Table 16.19: Enumeration values for type `TResolverResponse`

Value	Explanation
<code>rrAbort</code>	Abort the whole update process, no error message is displayed (no <code>EAbort</code> exception raised).
<code>rrApply</code>	Replace the update with new values applied by the event handler.
<code>rrIgnore</code>	Ignore the error and remove update from change log.
<code>rrMerge</code>	Merge the update with existing changes on the server.
<code>rrSkip</code>	Skip the current update, leave it in the change log.

`TResolverResponse` is used to indicate what should happen to a pending change that could not be resolved. It is used in callbacks.

`TResyncMode = Set of (rmExact, rmCenter)`

Table 16.20: Enumeration values for type

Value	Explanation
<code>rmCenter</code>	Try to position the cursor in the middle of the buffer.
<code>rmExact</code>	Reposition at exact the same location in the buffer.

TResyncMode is used internally by various TDataset (498) navigation and data manipulation methods such as the TDataset.Refresh (518) method when they need to reset the cursor position in the dataset's buffer.

```
TSQLParseOption = (spoCreate, spoEscapeSlash, spoEscapeRepeat, spoUseMacro
)
```

Table 16.21: Enumeration values for type TSQLParseOption

Value	Explanation
spoCreate	Indicates existing parameters are cleared and re-created, not updated.
spoEscapeRepeat	Causes an escaped character to be repeated.
spoEscapeSlash	Causes the Slash character ('/') to be escaped.
spoUseMacro	Enables macro expansion in a SQL statement.

TSQLParseOption is an enumerated type with values that represent SQL parser options available for use in the TParams collection. Value(s) from TSQLParseOption are stored in the TSQLParseOptions set type, and passed as an argument to the TParams.ParseSQL method. When a value from the enumeration is included in the set, the feature or behavior is enabled while parsing the SQL statement.

```
TSQLParseOptions = Set of TSQLParseOption = (spoCreate, spoEscapeRepeat
, spoEscapeSlash, spoUseMacro)
```

TSQLParseOptions is a set type used to store zero or more values from the TSQLParseOption enumeration. TSQLParseOptions is used in the TParams.ParseSQL method to indicate the options enabled when the SQL statement is parsed. The set type can be passed as an argument to the method.

See TSQLParseOption (456) for information about the enumeration values and their meanings.

```
TStringFieldBuffer = Array[0..dsMaxStringSize] of AnsiChar
```

Type to access string field content buffers as an array of characters.

```
TUpdateAction = (uaFail, uaAbort, uaSkip, uaRetry, uaApplied)
```

Table 16.22: Enumeration values for type TUpdateAction

Value	Explanation
uaAbort	The whole update operation should abort.
uaApplied	Consider the update as applied.
uaFail	Update operation should fail.
uaRetry	Retry the update operation.
uaSkip	The update of the current record should be skipped. (but not discarded).

TUpdateAction indicates what action must be taken in case the applying of updates on the underlying database fails. This type is not used in the TDataset (498) class, but is defined on behalf of TDataset descendents that implement caching of updates: It indicates what should be done when the (delayed) applying of the updates fails. This event occurs long after the actual post or delete operation.

TUpdateKind = (ukModify, ukInsert, ukDelete)

Table 16.23: Enumeration values for type TUpdateKind

Value	Explanation
ukDelete	Delete a record in the database.
ukInsert	insert a new record in the database.
ukModify	Modify an existing record in the database.

TUpdateKind indicates what kind of update operation is in progress when applying updates.

TUpdateMode = (upWhereAll, upWhereChanged, upWhereKeyOnly)

Table 16.24: Enumeration values for type TUpdateMode

Value	Explanation
upWhereAll	Use all old field values.
upWhereChanged	Use only old field values of modified fields.
upWhereKeyOnly	Only use key fields in the where clause.

TUpdateMode determines how the WHERE clause of update queries for SQL databases should be constructed.

TUpdateStatus = (usUnmodified, usModified, usInserted, usDeleted)

Table 16.25: Enumeration values for type TUpdateStatus

Value	Explanation
usDeleted	Record exists in the database, but is locally deleted.
usInserted	Record does not yet exist in the database, but is locally inserted.
usModified	Record exists in the database but is locally modified.
usUnmodified	Record is unmodified.

TUpdateStatus determines the current state of the record buffer, if updates have not yet been applied to the database.

TUpdateStatusSet = Set of TUpdateStatus = (usDeleted, usInserted, usModified, usUnmodified)

TUpdateStatusSet is a set of TUpdateStatus (457) values.

16.3.3 Variables

```
LoginDialogExProc : function(const ADatabaseName: string; var AUserName
    : string;
    var APassword: string; UserNameReadOnly: Boolean
    ) : Boolean = Nil
```

`LoginDialogExProc` is a procedural variable that can be set to handle login dialogs: if a database connection component needs to collect login data (typically when `LoginPrompt` is `True`), then if this callback is set it can e.g. be used to show a dialog used to fetch the data.

16.4 Procedures and functions

16.4.1 BuffersEqual

Synopsis: Check whether 2 memory buffers are equal.

Declaration: `function BuffersEqual (Buf1: Pointer; Buf2: Pointer; Size: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `BuffersEqual` compares the memory areas pointed to by the `Buf1` and `Buf2` pointers and returns `True` if the contents are equal. The memory areas are compared for the first `Size` bytes. If all bytes in the indicated areas are equal, then `True` is returned, otherwise `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Buf1` or `Buf2` do not point to a valid memory area or `Size` is too large, then an exception may occur

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.Comparemem` (??)

16.4.2 DatabaseError

Synopsis: Raise an `EDatabaseError` exception.

Declaration: `procedure DatabaseError(const Msg: string); overload`
`procedure DatabaseError(const Msg: string; Comp: TComponent); overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DatabaseError` raises an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception, passing it `Msg`. If `Comp` is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: `DatabaseErrorFmt` (458), `EDatabaseError` (460)

16.4.3 DatabaseErrorFmt

Synopsis: Raise an `EDatabaseError` exception with a formatted message.

Declaration: `procedure DatabaseErrorFmt(const Fmt: string;`
`const Args: Array of const); overload`
`procedure DatabaseErrorFmt(const Fmt: string;`
`const Args: Array of const; Comp: TComponent)`
`; overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `DatabaseErrorFmt` raises an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception, passing it a message made by calling `#rtl.sysutils.format` (??) with the `fmt` and `Args` arguments. If `Comp` is specified, the name of the component is prepended to the message.

See also: `DatabaseError` (458), `EDatabaseError` (460)

16.4.4 DateTimeRecToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert TDateTimeRec record to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function DateTimeRecToDateTime(DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTimeRec)
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeRecToDateTime` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the timestamp in `Data` to a `TDateTime` value.

See also: `TFieldType` (449), `TDateTimeRec` (446), `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` (459)

16.4.5 DateTimeToDateTimeRec

Synopsis: Convert TDateTime value to a TDateTimeRec record.

Declaration: `function DateTimeToDateTimeRec(DT: TFieldType; Data: TDateTime)
: TDateTimeRec`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToDateTimeRec` examines `Data` and `Dt` and uses `dt` to convert the date/time value in `Data` to a `TDateTimeRec` record.

See also: `TFieldType` (449), `TDateTimeRec` (446), `DateTimeRecToDateTime` (459)

16.4.6 DisposeMem

Synopsis: Dispose of a heap memory block and Nil the pointer (deprecated).

Declaration: `procedure DisposeMem(var Buffer; Size: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeMem` disposes of the heap memory area pointed to by `Buffer` (`Buffer` must be of type `Pointer`). The `Size` parameter indicates the size of the memory area (it is, in fact, ignored by the heap manager). The pointer `Buffer` is set to `Nil`. If `Buffer` is `Nil`, then nothing happens. Do not use `DisposeMem` on objects, because their destructor will not be called.

Errors: If `Buffer` is not pointing to a valid heap memory block, then memory corruption may occur.

See also: `#rtl.system.FreeMem` (??), `#rtl.sysutils.freeandnil` (??)

16.4.7 enumerator(TDataSet):TDataSetEnumerator

Synopsis: Operator to return dataset enumerator.

Declaration: `operator enumerator(ADataset: TDataSet) : TDataSetEnumerator`

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows to use the `TDataSetEnumerator` (537) as an enumerator for a `TDataset` (498)

See also: `TDataSetEnumerator` (537), `TDataset` (498)

16.4.8 ExtractFieldName

Synopsis: Extract the field name at position.

Declaration: `function ExtractFieldName(const Fields: string; var Pos: Integer)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFieldName` returns the string starting at position `Pos` till the next semicolon (;) character or the end of the string. On return, `Pos` contains the position of the first character after the semicolon character (or one more than the length of the string).

See also: `TFields.GetFieldList` ([586](#))

16.4.9 SkipComments

Synopsis: Skip SQL comments.

Declaration: `function SkipComments(var p: PChar; EscapeSlash: Boolean;
EscapeRepeat: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SkipComments` examines the null-terminated string in `P` and skips any SQL comment or string literal found at the start. It returns `P` the first non-comment or non-string literal position. The `EscapeSlash` parameter determines whether the backslash character (\) functions as an escape character (i.e. the following character is not considered a delimiter). `EscapeRepeat` must be set to `True` if the quote character is repeated to indicate itself.

The function returns `True` if a comment was found and skipped, `False` otherwise.

Errors: No checks are done on the validity of `P`.

See also: `TParams.ParseSQL` ([636](#))

16.5 TLookupListRec

```
TLookupListRec = record
  Key : Variant;
  Value : Variant;
end
```

`TLookupListRec` is used by lookup fields to store lookup results, if the results should be cached. Its two fields keep the key value and associated lookup value.

16.6 EDatabaseError

16.6.1 Description

`EDatabaseError` is the base class from which database-related exception classes should derive. It is raised by the `DatabaseError` ([458](#)) call.

See also: `DatabaseError` ([458](#)), `DatabaseErrorFmt` ([458](#))

16.7 EUpdateError

16.7.1 Description

EupdateError is an exception used by the TProvider database support. It should never be raised directly.

See also: EDatabaseError ([460](#))

16.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
461	Create	Create a new EUpdateError instance.
461	Destroy	Free the EupdateError instance.

16.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
462	Context	r	Context in which exception occurred.
462	ErrorCode	r	Numerical error code.
462	OriginalException	r	Originally raised exception.
462	PreviousError	r	Previous error number.

16.7.4 EUpdateError.Create

Synopsis: Create a new EUpdateError instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(NativeError: string; Context: string;
ErrCode: Integer; PrevError: Integer; E: Exception)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new EUpdateError object and populates the various properties with the NativeError, Context, ErrCode and PrevError parameters. The E parameter is the actual exception that occurred while the update operation was attempted. The exception object E will be freed if the EUpdateError instance is freed.

See also: EDatabaseError ([460](#))

16.7.5 EUpdateError.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the EupdateError instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy frees the original exception object (if there was one) and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If the original exception object was already freed, an error will occur.

See also: EUpdateError.OriginalException ([462](#))

16.7.6 EUpdateError.Context

Synopsis: Context in which exception occurred.

Declaration: `Property Context : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: A description of the context in which the original exception was raised.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` (462), `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` (462), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` (462)

16.7.7 EUpdateError.ErrorCode

Synopsis: Numerical error code.

Declaration: `Property ErrorCode : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ErrorCode` is a numerical error code, provided by the native data access layer, to describe the error. It may or not be filled.

See also: `EUpdateError.OriginalException` (462), `EUpdateError.Context` (462), `EUpdateError.PreviousError` (462)

16.7.8 EUpdateError.OriginalException

Synopsis: Originally raised exception.

Declaration: `Property OriginalException : Exception`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OriginalException` is the originally raised exception that is transformed to an `EUpdateError` exception.

See also: `DB.EDatabaseError` (460)

16.7.9 EUpdateError.PreviousError

Synopsis: Previous error number.

Declaration: `Property PreviousError : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `PreviousError` is used to order the errors which occurred during an update operation.

See also: `EUpdateError.ErrorCode` (462), `EUpdateError.Context` (462), `EUpdateError.OriginalException` (462)

16.8 IProviderSupport

16.8.1 Description

`IProviderSupport` is an interface used by Delphi's `TProvider` (datasnap) technology. It is currently not used in Free Pascal, but is provided for Delphi compatibility. The `TDataset` (498) class implements all the methods of this interface for the benefit of descendent classes, but does not publish the interface in its declaration.

See also: `TDataset` (498)

16.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
463	<code>PSEndTransaction</code>	End an active transaction.
463	<code>PSExecute</code>	Execute the current command-text.
464	<code>PSExecuteStatement</code>	Execute a SQL statement.
464	<code>PSGetAttributes</code>	Get a list of attributes (metadata).
464	<code>PSGetCommandText</code>	Return the SQL command executed for getting data.
465	<code>PSGetCommandType</code>	Return SQL command type.
465	<code>PSGetDefaultOrder</code>	Default order index definition.
465	<code>PSGetIndexDefs</code>	Return a list of index definitions.
465	<code>PSGetKeyFields</code>	Return a list of key fields in the dataset.
466	<code>PSGetParams</code>	Get the parameters in the commandtext.
466	<code>PSGetQuoteChar</code>	Quote character for quoted strings.
466	<code>PSGetTableName</code>	Name of database table which must be updated.
466	<code>PSGetUpdateException</code>	Transform exception to <code>UpdateError</code> .
467	<code>PSInTransaction</code>	Is the dataset in an active transaction.
467	<code>PSIsSQLBased</code>	Is the dataset SQL based.
467	<code>PSIsSQLSupported</code>	Can the dataset support SQL statements.
467	<code>PSReset</code>	Position the dataset on the first record.
468	<code>PSSetCommandText</code>	Set the command-text of the dataset.
468	<code>PSSetParams</code>	Set the parameters for the command text.
468	<code>PSStartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.
468	<code>PSUpdateRecord</code>	Update a record.

16.8.3 IProviderSupport.PSEndTransaction

Synopsis: End an active transaction.

Declaration: `procedure PSEndTransaction (ACommit: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSEndTransaction` ends an active transaction if an transaction is active. (`PSInTransaction` (440) returns `True`). If `ACommit` is `True` then the transaction is committed, else it is rolled back.

See also: `PSInTransaction` (440), `PSStartTransaction` (440)

16.8.4 IProviderSupport.PSExecute

Synopsis: Execute the current command-text.

Declaration: `procedure PSExecute`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSExecute` executes the current SQL statement: the command as it is returned by `PSGetCommandText` (440).

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (440), `PSExecuteStatement` (440)

16.8.5 IProviderSupport.PSExecuteStatement

Synopsis: Execute a SQL statement.

Declaration: `function PSExecuteStatement(const ASQL: string; AParams: TParams; ResultSet: Pointer=Nil) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSExecuteStatement` will execute the ASQL SQL statement in the current transaction. The SQL statement can have parameters embedded in it (in the form `:ParamName`), values for these parameters will be taken from `AParams`. If the SQL statement returns a result-set, then the result set can be returned in `ResultSet`. The function returns `True` if the statement was executed successful.

`PSExecuteStatement` does not modify the content of `CommandText`: `PSGetCommandText` (440) returns the same value before and after a call to `PSExecuteStatement`.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (440), `PSSetCommandText` (440), `PSExecuteStatement` (440)

16.8.6 IProviderSupport.PSGetAttributes

Synopsis: Get a list of attributes (metadata).

Declaration: `procedure PSGetAttributes(List: TList)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetAttributes` returns a set of `name=value` pairs which is included in the data packet sent to a client.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (440)

16.8.7 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandText

Synopsis: Return the SQL command executed for getting data.

Declaration: `function PSGetCommandText : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetCommandText` returns the SQL command that is executed when the `PSExecute` (440) function is called (for a `TSQLQuery` this would be the SQL property) or when the dataset is opened.

See also: `PSExecute` (440), `PSSetCommandText` (440)

16.8.8 IProviderSupport.PSGetCommandType

Synopsis: Return SQL command type.

Declaration: function PSGetCommandType : TPSCommandType

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetCommandType` should return the kind of SQL statement that is executed by the command (as returned by `PSGetCommandText` (440)). The list of possible command types is enumerated in `TPSCCommandType` (454).

See also: [PSGetCommandText \(440\)](#), [TPSCCommandType \(454\)](#), [PSExecute \(440\)](#)

16.8.9 IProviderSupport.PSGetDefaultOrder

Synopsis: Default order index definition.

```
Declaration: function PSGetDefaultOrder : TIndexDef
```

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetDefaultOrder` should return the index definition from the list of indexes (as returned by `PSGetIndexDefs` (440)) that represents the default sort order.

See also: [PSGetIndexDefs \(440\)](#), [PSGetKeyFields \(440\)](#)

16.8.10 IProviderSupport.PSGetIndexDefs

Synopsis: Return a list of index definitions.

```
Declaration: function PSGetIndexDefs
                (IndexTypes: TIndexOptions=[ixPrimary..ixNonMaintained])
                : TIndexDefs
```

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetIndexDefs` should return a list of index definitions, limited to the types of indexes in `IndexTypes`.

See also: [PSGetDefaultOrder \(440\)](#), [PSGetKeyFields \(440\)](#)

16.8.11 IProviderSupport.PSGetKeyFields

Synopsis: Return a list of key fields in the dataset.

```
Declaration: function PSGetKeyFields : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetKeyFields` returns a semicolon-separated list of fieldnames that make up the unique key for a record. Normally, these are the names of the fields that have `pFinKey` in their `ProviderOptions` (551) property.

See also: [PSGetIndexDefs \(440\)](#), [PSGetDefaultOrder \(440\)](#), [TField.ProviderOptions \(551\)](#), [TProviderFlags \(454\)](#)

16.8.12 IProviderSupport.PSGetParams

Synopsis: Get the parameters in the commandtext.

Declaration: `function PSGetParams : TParams`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetParams` returns the list of parameters in the command-text (as returned by `PSGetCommandText` (440)). This is usually the `Params` property of a `TDataset` (498) descendant.

See also: `PSGetCommandText` (440), `PSSetParams` (440)

16.8.13 IProviderSupport.PSGetQuoteChar

Synopsis: Quote character for quoted strings.

Declaration: `function PSGetQuoteChar : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetQuoteChar` returns the quote character needed to enclose string literals in an SQL statement for the underlying database.

See also: `PSGetTableName` (440)

16.8.14 IProviderSupport.PSGetTableName

Synopsis: Name of database table which must be updated.

Declaration: `function PSGetTableName : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetTableName` returns the name of the table for which update SQL statements must be constructed. The provider can create and execute SQL statements to update the underlying database by itself. For this, it uses `PSGetTableName` as the name of the table to update.

See also: `PSGetQuoteChar` (440)

16.8.15 IProviderSupport.PSGetUpdateException

Synopsis: Transform exception to `UpdateError`.

Declaration: `function PSGetUpdateException(E: Exception; Prev: EUpdateError)
: EUpdateError`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSGetUpdateException` is called to transform and chain exceptions that occur during an `ApplyUpdates` operation. The exception `E` must be transformed to an `EUpdateError` (461) exception. The previous `EUpdateError` exception in the update batch is passed in `Prev`.

See also: `EUpdateError` (461)

16.8.16 IProviderSupport.PSInTransaction

Synopsis: Is the dataset in an active transaction.

Declaration: `function PSInTransaction : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSInTransaction` returns `True` if the dataset is in an active transaction or `False` if no transaction is active.

See also: `PEndTransaction` ([440](#)), `PStartTransaction` ([440](#))

16.8.17 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLBased

Synopsis: Is the dataset SQL based.

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSIsSQLBased` returns `True` if the dataset is SQL based or not. Note that this is different from `PSIsSQLSupported` ([440](#)) which indicates whether SQL statements can be executed using `PExecuteCommand` ([440](#))

See also: `PSIsSQLSupported` ([440](#)), `PExecuteCommand` ([440](#))

16.8.18 IProviderSupport.PSIsSQLSupported

Synopsis: Can the dataset support SQL statements.

Declaration: `function PSIsSQLSupported : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSIsSQLSupported` returns `True` if `PExecuteCommand` ([440](#)) can be used to execute SQL statements on the underlying database.

See also: `PExecuteCommand` ([440](#))

16.8.19 IProviderSupport.PSReset

Synopsis: Position the dataset on the first record.

Declaration: `procedure PSReset`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSReset` repositions the dataset on the first record. For bi-directional datasets, this usually means that first is called, but for unidirectional datasets this may result in re-fetching the data from the underlying database.

See also: `TDataset.First` ([512](#)), `TDataset.Open` ([517](#))

16.8.20 IProviderSupport.PSSetCommandText

Synopsis: Set the command-text of the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure PSSetCommandText (const CommandText: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSSetCommandText` sets the `commandtext` (SQL) statement that is executed by `PSExecute` or that is used to open the dataset.

See also: `PSExecute` (440), `PSGetCommandText` (440), `PSSetParams` (440)

16.8.21 IProviderSupport.PSSetParams

Synopsis: Set the parameters for the command text.

Declaration: `procedure PSSetParams (AParams: TParams)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSSetParams` sets the values of the parameters that should be used when executing the command-text SQL statement.

See also: `PSSetCommandText` (440), `PSGetParams` (440)

16.8.22 IProviderSupport.PSStartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure PSStartTransaction`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSStartTransaction` is used by the provider to start a new transaction. It will only be called if no transaction was active yet (i.e. `PSIntransaction` (440) returned `False`).

See also: `PSEndTransaction` (440), `PSIntransaction` (440)

16.8.23 IProviderSupport.PSUpdateRecord

Synopsis: Update a record.

Declaration: `function PSUpdateRecord (UpdateKind: TUpdateKind; Delta: TDataSet)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PSUpdateRecord` is called before attempting to update the records through generated SQL statements. The update to be performed is passed in `UpdateKind` parameter. The `Delta` Dataset's current record contains all data for the record that must be updated.

The function returns `True` if the update was successfully applied, `False` if not. In that case the provider will attempt to update the record using SQL statements if the dataset allows it.

See also: `PSIsSQLSupported` (440), `PSExecuteCommand` (440)

16.9 TArrayField

16.9.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
469	Create	

16.9.2 TArrayField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

16.10 TAutoIncField

16.10.1 Description

`TAutoIncField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 32-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftAutoInc`: This field gets its data automatically by the database engine. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 32-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TAutoIncField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each auto-incremental field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
469	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TAutoIncField</code> class.

16.10.3 TAutoIncField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TAutoIncField` class. It simply calls the inherited constructor and then sets up some of the `TField` ([551](#)) class' fields.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.11 TBCDField

16.11.1 Description

`TBCDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of Binary Coded Decimal type. (`TField.DataType` ([564](#)) equals `ftBCD`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([551](#)) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BCD fields.

`TBCDField` assumes that the field's contents can be stored in a currency type, i.e. the maximum number of decimals after the decimal separator that can be stored in a `TBCDField` is 4. Fields that need to store a larger amount of decimals should be represented by a `TFMTBCDField` (594) instance.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBCDField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BCD field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TFMTBCDField` (594)

16.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
470	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.
470	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TBCDField</code> class.

16.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
471	<code>Currency</code>	rw	Does the field represent a currency amount.
471	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum value for the field.
472	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum value for the field.
471	<code>Precision</code>	rw	Precision of the BCD field.
472	<code>Size</code>		Number of decimals after the decimal separator.
471	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value of the field contents as a Currency type.

16.11.4 TBCDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBCDField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBCDField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with BCD data values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.11.5 TBCDField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Currency) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (472) and `MaxValue` (471) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (471), `MinValue` (472)

16.11.6 TBCDField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field contents as a Currency type.

Declaration: `Property Value : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden from the `TField.Value` (568) property to a currency type field. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsCurrency` (558) field.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsCurrency` (558)

16.11.7 TBCDField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD field.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the total number of decimals in the BCD value. It is not the same as `TBCDField.Size` (472), which is the number of decimals after the decimal point. The `Precision` property should be set by the descendent classes when they initialize the field, and should be considered read-only. Changing the value will influence the values returned by the various `AsXXX` properties.

See also: `TBCDField.Size` (472), `TBCDField.Value` (471)

16.11.8 TBCDField.Currency

Synopsis: Does the field represent a currency amount.

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (565) and `TField.Text` (567) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (565), `TField.Text` (567)

16.11.9 TBCDField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (472) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MinValue` (472), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (470)

16.11.10 TBCDField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Currency`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `TBCDField.MaxValue` (471) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TBCDField.MaxValue` (471), `TBCDField.CheckRange` (470)

16.11.11 TBCDField.Size

Synopsis: Number of decimals after the decimal separator.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is the number of decimals after the decimal separator. It is not the total number of decimals, which is stored in the `TBCDField.Precision` (471) field.

See also: `TBCDField.Precision` (471)

16.12 TBinaryField

16.12.1 Description

`TBinaryField` is an abstract class, designed to handle binary data of variable size. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (551) class to be able to work with binary field data, such as retrieving the contents as a string or as a variant.

One must never create an instance of `TBinaryField` manually, it is an abstract class. Instead, a descendent class such as `TBytesField` (480) or `TVarBytesField` (646) should be created.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TBytesField` (480), `TVarBytesField` (646)

16.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
473	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBinaryField</code> class.

16.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
473	Size		Size of the binary data.

16.12.4 TBinaryField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBinaryField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBinaryField` class. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.12.5 TBinaryField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the binary data.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is simply redeclared `published` with a default value of 16.

See also: `TField.Size` ([567](#))

16.13 TBlobField

16.13.1 Description

`TBlobField` is the class used when a dataset must manage BLOB data. (`TField.DataType` ([564](#)) equals `ftBLOB`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([551](#)) class, and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with BLOB fields. It also serves as parent class for some specialized blob-like field types such as `TMemoField` ([614](#)), `TWideMemoField` ([647](#)) or `TGraphicField` ([597](#))

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBlobField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([498](#)), `TField` ([551](#)), `TMemoField` ([614](#)), `TWideMemoField` ([647](#)), `TGraphicField` ([597](#))

16.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
474	Clear	Clear the BLOB field's contents.
474	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBlobField</code> class.
474	IsBlob	Is the field a blob field.
475	LoadFromFile	Load the contents of the field from a file.
475	LoadFromStream	Load the field's contents from stream.
475	SaveToFile	Save field contents to a file.
476	SaveToStream	Save the field's contents to stream.
476	SetFieldType	Set field type.

16.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
476	BlobSize	r	Size of the current blob.
477	BlobType	rw	Type of blob.
476	Modified	rw	Has the field's contents been modified.
477	Size		Size of the blob field.
477	Transliterate	rw	Should the contents of the field be transliterated.
477	Value	rw	Return the field's contents as a string.

16.13.4 TBlobField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBlobField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBlobField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([551](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with BLOB data.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.13.5 TBlobField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the BLOB field's contents.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` overrides the `TField` implementation of `TField.Clear` ([555](#)). It creates and immediately releases an empty blob stream in write mode, effectively clearing the contents of the BLOB field.

See also: `TField.Clear` ([555](#)), `TField.IsNull` ([566](#))

16.13.6 TBlobField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a blob field.

Declaration: `class function IsBlob : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsBlob` is overridden by `TBlobField` to return `True`

See also: `TField.IsBlob` ([556](#))

16.13.7 TBlobField.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load the contents of the field from a file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `LoadFromStream` ([475](#)) to read the contents of the blob field from the file. The file is opened in read-only mode.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is not available for reading, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromStream` ([475](#)), `SaveToFile` ([475](#))

16.13.8 TBlobField.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the field's contents from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load the contents of the field from a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the stream will be copied, and the stream will be positioned on the first byte of data, so it must be seekable.

Errors: If the stream is not seekable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToStream` ([476](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([475](#))

16.13.9 TBlobField.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save field contents to a file.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToFile` creates a file stream with `FileName` as the name of the file to open, en then calls `SaveToStream` ([476](#)) to write the contents of the blob field to the file. The file is opened in write mode and is created if it does not yet exist.

Errors: If the file cannot be created or is not available for writing, an exception will be raised.

See also: `LoadFromFile` ([475](#)), `SaveToStream` ([476](#))

16.13.10 TBlobField.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the field's contents to stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToStream` can be used to save the contents of the field to a `TStream` (??) descendent. The entire data of the field will be copied. The stream must of course support writing.

Errors: If the stream is not writable, an exception will be raised.

See also: `SaveToFile` ([475](#)), `LoadFromStream` ([475](#))

16.13.11 TBlobField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden by `TBlobField` to check whether a valid Blob field type is set. If so, it calls the inherited method.

See also: `TField.DataType` ([564](#))

16.13.12 TBlobField.BlobSize

Synopsis: Size of the current blob.

Declaration: `Property BlobSize : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BlobSize` is the size (in bytes) of the current contents of the field. It will vary as the dataset's current record moves from record to record.

See also: `TField.Size` ([567](#)), `TField.DataSize` ([564](#))

16.13.13 TBlobField.Modified

Synopsis: Has the field's contents been modified.

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Modified` indicates whether the field's contents have been modified for the current record.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` ([475](#))

16.13.14 TBlobField.Value

Synopsis: Return the field's contents as a string.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TBlobField` as a string value: getting or setting this value will convert the BLOB data to a string, it will return the same value as the `TField.AsString` (561) property.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsString` (561)

16.13.15 TBlobField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transliterate` indicates whether the contents of the field should be transliterated (i.e. changed from OEM to non OEM codepage and vice versa) when reading or writing the value. The actual transliteration must be done in the `TDataset.Translate` (519) method of the dataset to which the field belongs. By default this property is `False`, but it can be set to `True` for BLOB data which contains text in another codepage.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (644), `TDataset.Translate` (519)

16.13.16 TBlobField.BlobType

Synopsis: Type of blob.

Declaration: `Property BlobType : TBlobType`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BlobType` is an alias for `TField.DataType` (564), but with a restricted set of values. Setting `BlobType` is equivalent to setting the `TField.DataType` (564) property.

See also: `TField.DataType` (564)

16.13.17 TBlobField.Size

Synopsis: Size of the blob field.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is the size of the blob in the internal memory buffer. It defaults to 0, as the BLOB data is not stored in the internal memory buffer. To get the size of the data in the current record, use the `BlobSize` (476) property instead.

See also: `BlobSize` (476)

16.14 TBooleanField

16.14.1 Description

`TBooleanField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (498) whenever it needs to manage boolean data (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftBoolean`). It overrides some properties and methods of `TField` (551) to be able to work with boolean data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBooleanField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each boolean field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551)

16.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
478	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TBooleanField</code> class.

16.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
479	<code>DisplayValues</code>	rw	Textual representation of the true and false values.
478	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value of the field as a boolean value.

16.14.4 TBooleanField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBooleanField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBooleanField` class. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure it for working with boolean values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.14.5 TBooleanField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a boolean value.

Declaration: `Property Value : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined from `TField.Value` (568) by `TBooleanField` as a boolean value. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsBoolean` (558) property.

See also: `TField.AsBoolean` (558), `TField.Value` (568)

16.14.6 TBooleanField.DisplayValues

Synopsis: Textual representation of the true and false values.

Declaration: `Property DisplayValues : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `DisplayValues` contains 2 strings, separated by a semicolon (;) which are used to display the `True` and `False` values of the fields. The first string is used for `True` values, the second value is used for `False` values. If only one value is given, it will serve as the representation of the `True` value, the `False` value will be represented as an empty string.

A value of `Yes;No` will result in `True` values being displayed as 'Yes', and `False` values as 'No'. When writing the value of the field as a string, the string will be compared (case insensitively) with the value for `True`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `True`. After this it will be compared to the value for `False`, and if it matches, the field's value will be set to `False`. If the text matches neither of the two values, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.Text` (567)

16.15 TByteField

16.15.1 Description

`TByteField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 8-bit unsigned data: the data type `ftByte`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (551) to handle `Byte` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `Byte` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (607) and `MaxValue` (607).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TByteField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `MinValue` (607), `MaxValue` (607)

16.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
479	<code>Create</code>	Create new instance of <code>TByteField</code> .

16.15.3 TByteField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of `TByteField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the `MinValue` (607) `MaxValue` (607) and `TField.DataType` (564) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (607), `MaxValue` (607), `TField.DataType` (564)

16.16 TBytesField

16.16.1 Description

`TBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of fixed-size binary type. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class to be able to work with fixed-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TVarBytesField` (646)

16.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
480	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TBytesField</code> class.

16.16.3 TBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with binary data values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.17 TCheckConstraint

16.17.1 Description

`TCheckConstraint` can be used to store the definition of a record-level constraint. It does not enforce the constraint, it only stores the constraint's definition. The constraint can come from several sources: an imported constraints from the database, usually stored in the `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (482) property, or a constraint enforced by the user on a particular dataset instance stored in `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (481).

See also: `TCheckConstraints` (482), `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (482), `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (481)

16.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
481	Assign	Assign one constraint to another.

16.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
481	CustomConstraint	rw	User-defined constraint.
481	ErrorMessage	rw	Message to display when the constraint is violated.
482	FromDictionary	rw	True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary.
482	ImportedConstraint	rw	Constraint imported from the database engine.

16.17.4 TCheckConstraint.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one constraint to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` is overridden by `TCheckConstraint` to copy all published properties if `Source` is also a `TCheckConstraint` instance.

Errors: If `Source` is not an instance of `TCheckConstraint`, an exception may be thrown.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` ([482](#)), `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` ([481](#))

16.17.5 TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: User-defined constraint.

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CustomConstraint` is an SQL expression with an additional user-defined constraint. The expression should be enforced by a `TDataset` ([498](#)) descendent when data is posted to the dataset. If the constraint is violated, then the dataset should raise an exception, with message as specified in `TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage` ([481](#))

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage` ([481](#))

16.17.6 TCheckConstraint.ErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display when the constraint is violated.

Declaration: `Property ErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ErrorMessage` is used as the message when the dataset instance raises an exception if the constraint is violated.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` ([481](#))

16.17.7 TCheckConstraint.FromDictionary

Synopsis: True if the constraint is imported from a datadictionary.

Declaration: `Property FromDictionary : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FromDictionary` indicates whether a constraint is imported from a data dictionary. This can be set by `TDataset` (498) descendents to indicate the source of the constraint, but is otherwise ignored.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint` (482)

16.17.8 TCheckConstraint.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint imported from the database engine.

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` is a constraint imported from the database engine: it will not be enforced locally by the `TDataset` (498) descendent.

See also: `TCheckConstraint.CustomConstraint` (481)

16.18 TCheckConstraints

16.18.1 Description

`TCheckConstraints` is a `TCollection` descendent which keeps a collection of `TCheckConstraint` (480) items. It overrides the `Add` (483) method to return a `TCheckConstraint` instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (480)

16.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
483	Add	Add new <code>TCheckConstraint</code> item to the collection.
483	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TCheckConstraints</code> class.

16.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
483	Items	rw	Indexed access to the items in the collection.

16.18.4 TCheckConstraints.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TCheckConstraints` class. The `AOwner` argument is usually the `TDataset` (498) instance for which the data is managed. It is kept for future reference. After storing the owner, the inherited constructor is called with the `TCheckConstraint` (480) class pointer.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (480), `TDataset` (498)

16.18.5 TCheckConstraints.Add

Synopsis: Add new `TCheckConstraint` item to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add : TCheckConstraint`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` is overridden by `TCheckConstraint` to add a new `TCheckConstraint` (480) instance to the collection. it returns the newly added instance.

See also: `TCheckConstraint` (480), `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Add` (??)

16.18.6 TCheckConstraints.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the items in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TCheckConstraint; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` is overridden by `TCheckConstraints` to provide type-safe access to the items in the collection. The `index` is zero-based, so it runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.Items` (??)

16.19 TCurrencyField

16.19.1 Description

`TCurrencyField` is the field class used by `TDataset` (498) when it needs to manage currency-valued data. (`TField.Datatype` (564) equals `ftCurrency`). It simply sets some `Tfield` (551) properties to be able to work with currency data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TCurrencyField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each currency field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (551), `TDataset` (498)

16.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
484	Create	Create a new instance of a TCurrencyField.

16.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
484	Currency		Is the field a currency field.

16.19.4 TCurrencyField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TCurrencyField.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TCurrencyField. It calls the inherited constructor and then sets some properties (TCurrencyField.Currency ([484](#))) to be able to work with currency data.

See also: TField ([551](#)), TCurrencyField.Currency ([484](#))

16.19.5 TCurrencyField.Currency

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field.

Declaration: Property Currency :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Currency is inherited from TFloatField.Currency ([593](#)) but is initialized to True by the TCurrencyField constructor. It can be set to False if the contents of the field is of type currency, but does not represent an amount of currency.

See also: TFloatField.Currency ([593](#))

16.20 TCustomConnection

16.20.1 Description

TCustomConnection must be used for all database classes that need a connection to a server. The class introduces some methods and classes to activate the connection (Open ([485](#))) and to deactivate the connection (TCustomConnection.Close ([485](#))), plus a property to inspect the state (Connected ([486](#))) of the connected.

See also: TCustomConnection.Open ([485](#)), TCustomConnection.Close ([485](#)), TCustomConnection.Connected ([486](#))

16.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
485	Close	Close the connection.
485	Destroy	Remove the TCustomconnection instance from memory.
485	Open	Makes the connection to the server.

16.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
487	AfterConnect	rw	Event triggered after a connection is made.
487	AfterDisconnect	rw	Event triggered after a connection is closed.
488	BeforeConnect	rw	Event triggered before a connection is made.
488	BeforeDisconnect	rw	Event triggered before a connection is closed.
486	Connected	rw	Is the connection established or not.
486	DataSetCount	r	Number of datasets connected to this connection.
486	DataSets	r	Datasets linked to this connection.
487	LoginPrompt	rw	Should the OnLogin be triggered.
488	OnCloseError	rw	
488	OnLogin	rw	Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

16.20.4 TCustomConnection.Close

Synopsis: Close the connection.

Declaration: `procedure Close(ForceClose: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the connection with the server if it was connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeDisconnect` ([488](#)) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the disconnect process is aborted. After calling this event, the connection is actually closed. After the connection was closed, the `AfterDisconnect` ([487](#)) event is triggered.

Calling the `Close` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` ([486](#)) property to `False`.

If `ForceClose` is `True` then the descendant should ignore errors from the underlying connection, allowing all datasets to be closed properly.

Errors: If the connection cannot be broken for some reason, an `EDatabaseError` ([460](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect` ([488](#)), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` ([487](#)), `TCustomConnection.Open` ([485](#)), `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([486](#))

16.20.5 TCustomConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TCustomconnection` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` closes the connection, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the disconnect process, an exception will be raise, and the instance is not removed from memory.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` ([485](#))

16.20.6 TCustomConnection.Open

Synopsis: Makes the connection to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: public

Description: `Open` establishes the connection with the server if it was not yet connected. Calling this method first triggers the `BeforeConnect` (488) event. If an exception is raised during the execution of that event handler, the connect process is aborted. If `LoginPrompt` (487) is `True`, the `OnLogin` (488) event handler is called. Only after this event, the connection is actually established. After the connection was established, the `AfterConnect` (487) event is triggered.

Calling the `Open` method is equivalent to setting the `Connected` (486) property to `True`.

Errors: If an exception is raised during the `BeforeConnect` or `OnLogin` handlers, the connection is not actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (488), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (487), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (488), `TCustomConnection.AfterConnect` (487), `TCustomConnection.Connected` (486)

16.20.7 TCustomConnection.DataSetCount

Synopsis: Number of datasets connected to this connection.

Declaration: `Property DataSetCount : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DataSetCount` is the number of datasets connected to this connection component. The actual datasets are available through the `Datasets` (486) array property. As implemented in `TCustomConnection`, this property is always zero. Descendent classes implement the actual count.

See also: `TDataSet` (498), `TCustomConnection.Datasets` (486)

16.20.8 TCustomConnection.DataSets

Synopsis: Datasets linked to this connection.

Declaration: `Property DataSets[Index: LongInt]: TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Datasets` allows indexed access to the datasets connected to this connection. `Index` is a zero-based indexed, it's maximum value is `DataSetCount-1` (486).

See also: `DataSetCount` (486)

16.20.9 TCustomConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is the connection established or not.

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Connected` is `True` if the connection to the server is established, `False` if it is disconnected. The property can be set to `True` to establish a connection (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Open` (485), or to `False` to break it (equivalent to calling `TCustomConnection.Close` (485)).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (485), `TCustomConnection.Close` (485)

16.20.10 TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should the `OnLogin` be triggered.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `LoginPrompt` can be set to `True` if the `OnLogin` handler should be called when the `Open` method is called. If it is not `True`, then the event handler is not called.

See also: `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (488)

16.20.11 TCustomConnection.AfterConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is made.

Declaration: `Property AfterConnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterConnect` is called after a connection is successfully established in `TCustomConnection.Open` (485). It can be used to open datasets, or indicate a connection status change.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (485), `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (488), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (488)

16.20.12 TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered after a connection is closed.

Declaration: `Property AfterDisconnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterDisConnect` is called after a connection is successfully closed in `TCustomConnection.Close` (485). It can be used for instance to indicate a connection status change.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (485), `TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect` (488)

16.20.13 TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is made.

Declaration: `Property BeforeConnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeConnect` is called before a connection is attempted in `TCustomConnection.Open` (485).

It can be used to set connection parameters, or to abort the establishing of the connection: if an exception is raised during this event, the connection attempt is aborted.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Open` (485), `TCustomConnection.AfterConnect` (487), `TCustomConnection.OnLogin` (488)

16.20.14 TCustomConnection.BeforeDisconnect

Synopsis: Event triggered before a connection is closed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeDisconnect : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeDisConnect` is called before a connection is closed in `TCustomConnection.Close` (485).

It can be used for instance to check for unsaved changes, to save those changes, or to abort the disconnect operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, the disconnect operation is aborted entirely.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` (485), `TCustomConnection.AfterDisconnect` (487)

16.20.15 TCustomConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt is shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin : TLoginEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt during the call: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` (487) property is `True`, after the `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (488) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (488), `TCustomConnection.LoginPrompt` (487), `TCustomConnection.Open` (485)

16.20.16 TCustomConnection.OnCloseError

Declaration: `Property OnCloseError : TCloseErrorEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.21 TDatabase

16.21.1 Description

TDatabase is a component whose purpose is to provide a connection to an external database engine, not to provide the database itself. This class provides generic methods for attachment to databases and querying their contents; the details of the actual connection are handled by database-specific components (such as SQLDb for SQL-based databases, or DBA for DBASE/FoxPro style databases).

Like TDataset (498), TDatabase is an abstract class. It provides methods to keep track of datasets connected to the database, and to close these datasets when the connection to the database is closed. To this end, it introduces a Connected (492) boolean property, which indicates whether a connection to the database is established or not. The actual logic to establish a connection to a database must be implemented by descendent classes.

See also: TDataset (498), TDatabase (489)

16.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
490	CloseDataSets	Close all connected datasets.
490	CloseTransactions	End all transactions.
489	Create	Initialize a new TDatabase class instance.
490	Destroy	Remove a TDatabase instance from memory.
491	EndTransaction	End an active transaction.
490	StartTransaction	Start a new transaction.

16.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
492	Connected	rw	Is the database connected.
492	DatabaseName	rw	Database name or path.
491	Directory	rw	Directory for the database.
492	IsSQLBased	r	Is the database SQL based.
492	KeepConnection	rw	Should the connection be kept active.
493	Params	rw	Connection parameters.
491	TransactionCount	r	Number of transaction components connected to this database.
491	Transactions	r	Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

16.21.4 TDatabase.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new TDatabase class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TDatabase class. It allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: TDBDataset (544), TDBTransaction (545), TDatabase.Destroy (490)

16.21.5 TDatabase.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TDatabase instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` starts by disconnecting the database (thus closing all datasets and ending all transactions), then notifies all connected datasets and transactions that it is about to be released. After this, it releases all resources used by the TDatabase instance

See also: `TDatabase.CloseDatasets` ([490](#))

16.21.6 TDatabase.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets.

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets. It is called automatically when the connection is closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` ([485](#)), `TDatabase.CloseTransactions` ([490](#))

16.21.7 TDatabase.CloseTransactions

Synopsis: End all transactions.

Declaration: `procedure CloseTransactions`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseTransaction` calls `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` ([545](#)) on all connected transactions. It is called automatically when the connection is closed, after all datasets are closed.

See also: `TCustomConnection.Close` ([485](#)), `TDatabase.CloseDatasets` ([490](#))

16.21.8 TDatabase.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to start a new transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` ([545](#)) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` ([545](#)) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` ([545](#)), `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` ([545](#))

16.21.9 TDatabase.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End an active transaction.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndTransaction` must be implemented by descendent classes to end an active transaction. This method is provided for Delphi compatibility: new applications should use a `TDBTransaction` (545) component instead and invoke the `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (545) method.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (545), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (545)

16.21.10 TDatabase.TransactionCount

Synopsis: Number of transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property TransactionCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `TransactionCount` is the number of transaction components which are connected to this database instance. It is the upper bound for the `TDatabase.Transactions` (491) array property.

See also: `TDatabase.Transactions` (491)

16.21.11 TDatabase.Transactions

Synopsis: Indexed access to all transaction components connected to this database.

Declaration: `Property Transactions[Index: LongInt]: TDBTransaction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Transactions` provides indexed access to the transaction components connected to this database. The `Index` is zero based: it runs from 0 to `TransactionCount-1`.

See also: `TDatabase.TransactionCount` (491)

16.21.12 TDatabase.Directory

Synopsis: Directory for the database.

Declaration: `Property Directory : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Directory` is provided for Delphi compatibility: it indicates (for Paradox and dBase based databases) the directory where the database files are located. It is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase` (489).

See also: `TDatabase.Params` (493), `TDatabase.IsSQLBased` (492)

16.21.13 TDatabase.IsSQLBased

Synopsis: Is the database SQL based.

Declaration: `Property IsSQLBased : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsSQLbased` is a read-only property which indicates whether a property is SQL-Based, i.e. whether the database engine accepts SQL commands.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` ([493](#)), `TDatabase.Directory` ([491](#))

16.21.14 TDatabase.Connected

Synopsis: Is the database connected.

Declaration: `Property Connected : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Connected` is simply promoted to published property from `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([486](#)).

See also: `TCustomConnection.Connected` ([486](#))

16.21.15 TDatabase.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Database name or path.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DatabaseName` specifies the path of the database. For directory-based databases this will be the same as the `Directory` ([491](#)) property. For other databases this will be the name of a known pre-configured connection, or the location of the database file.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` ([491](#)), `TDatabase.Params` ([493](#))

16.21.16 TDatabase.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Should the connection be kept active.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `KeepConnection` is provided for Delphi compatibility, and is not used in the Free Pascal implementation of `TDatabase`.

See also: `TDatabase.Params` ([493](#))

16.21.17 TDatabase.Params

Synopsis: Connection parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Params` is a catch-all storage mechanism for database connection parameters. It is a list of strings in the form of `Name=Value` pairs. Which name/value pairs are supported depends on the `TDatabase` descendent, but the `user_name` and `password` parameters are commonly used to store the login credentials for the database.

See also: `TDatabase.Directory` ([491](#)), `TDatabase.DatabaseName` ([492](#))

16.22 TDataLink

16.22.1 Description

`TDataLink` is used by GUI controls or datasets in a master-detail relationship to handle data events coming from a `TDataSource` ([538](#)) instance. It is a class that exists for component programmers, application coders should never need to use `TDataLink` or one of its descendents.

DB-Aware Component coders must use a `TDataLink` instance to handle all communication with a `TDataSet` ([498](#)) instance, rather than communicating directly with the dataset. `TDataLink` contains methods which are called by the various events triggered by the dataset. Inversely, it has some methods to trigger actions in the dataset.

`TDataLink` is an abstract class; it is never used directly. Instead, a descendent class is used which overrides the various methods that are called in response to the events triggered by the dataset. Examples are .

See also: `TDataSet` ([498](#)), `TDataSource` ([538](#)), `TDetailDataLink` ([549](#)), `TMasterDataLink` ([611](#))

16.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
494	Create	Initialize a new instance of <code>TDataLink</code> .
494	Destroy	Remove an instance of <code>TDataLink</code> from memory.
494	Edit	Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible.
495	ExecuteAction	Execute action.
495	UpdateAction	Update handler for actions.
495	UpdateRecord	Called when the data in the dataset must be updated.

16.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
495	Active	r	Is the link active.
496	ActiveRecord	rw	Currently active record.
496	BOF	r	Is the dataset at the first record.
496	BufferCount	rw	Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.
497	DataSet	r	Dataset this datalink is connected to.
497	DataSource	rw	Datasource this datalink is connected to.
497	DataSourceFixed	rw	Can the datasource be changed.
497	Editing	r	Is the dataset in edit mode.
498	Eof	r	
498	ReadOnly	rw	Is the link readonly.
498	RecordCount	r	Number of records in the buffer of the dataset.

16.22.4 TDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of `TDataLink`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some fields. In particular, it sets the `buffercount` to 1.

See also: `TDataLink.Destroy` ([494](#))

16.22.5 TDataLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove an instance of `TDataLink` from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TDataLink` instance (in particular, it removes itself from the `datasource` it is coupled to), and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDataLink.Destroy` ([494](#))

16.22.6 TDataLink.Edit

Synopsis: Set the dataset in edit mode, if possible.

Declaration: `function Edit : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Edit` attempts to put the dataset in edit mode. It returns `True` if this operation succeeded, `False` if not. To this end, it calls the `Edit` ([539](#)) method of the `DataSource` ([497](#)) to which the datalink instance is coupled. If the `TDataSource.AutoEdit` ([540](#)) property is `False` then this operation will not succeed, unless the dataset is already in edit mode. GUI controls should always respect the result of this function, and not allow the user to edit data if this function returned `false`.

See also: `TDataSource` ([538](#)), `TDataLink.DataSource` ([497](#)), `TDataSource.Edit` ([539](#)), `TDataSource.AutoEdit` ([540](#))

16.22.7 TDataLink.UpdateRecord

Synopsis: Called when the data in the dataset must be updated.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateRecord` is called when the dataset expects the GUI controls to post any pending changes to the dataset. This method guards against recursive behaviour: while an `UpdateRecord` is in progress, the `TDataLink.RecordChange` (493) notification (which could result from writing data to the dataset) will be blocked.

See also: `TDataLink.RecordChange` (493)

16.22.8 TDataLink.ExecuteAction

Synopsis: Execute action.

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteAction` implements action support. It should never be necessary to call `ExecuteAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to handle an action. This method must be overridden in case any additional action must be taken when the action must be executed. The implementation in `TDataLink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.ExecuteTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: `TDataLink.UpdateAction` (495)

16.22.9 TDataLink.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Update handler for actions.

Declaration: `function UpdateAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateAction` implements action update support. It should never be necessary to call `UpdateAction` from program code, as it is called automatically whenever a target control needs to update an action. This method must be overridden in case any specific action must be taken when the action must be updated. The implementation in `TDataLink` checks if the action handles the datasource, and then calls `Action.UpdateTarget`, passing it the datasource. If so, it returns `True`.

See also: `TDataLink.ExecuteAction` (495)

16.22.10 TDataLink.Active

Synopsis: Is the link active.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Active` determines whether the events of the dataset are passed on to the control connected to the `actionlink`. If it is set to `False`, then no events are passed between control and dataset. It is set to `TDataset.Active` (528) whenever the `DataSource` (497) property is set.

See also: `TDatalink.DataSource` (497), `TDatalink.ReadOnly` (498), `TDataset.Active` (528)

16.22.11 TDataLink.ActiveRecord

Synopsis: Currently active record.

Declaration: `Property ActiveRecord : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActiveRecord` returns the index of the active record in the dataset's record buffer for this datalink.

See also: `TDatalink.BOF` (496), `TDatalink.EOF` (498)

16.22.12 TDataLink.BOF

Synopsis: Is the dataset at the first record.

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `TDataset.BOF` (520) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDatalink.EOF` (498), `TDataset.BOF` (520)

16.22.13 TDataLink.BufferCount

Synopsis: Set to the number of record buffers this datalink needs.

Declaration: `Property BufferCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BufferCount` can be set to the number of buffers that the dataset should manage on behalf of the control connected to this datalink. By default, this is 1. Controls that must display more than 1 buffer (such as grids) can set this to a higher value.

See also: `TDataset.ActiveBuffer` (504), `TDatalink.ActiveRecord` (496)

16.22.14 TDataLink.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datalink is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSet` equals `Datasource.Dataset` if the `datasource` is set, or `Nil` otherwise.

See also: `TDataLink.DataSource` (497), `TDataSet` (498)

16.22.15 TDataLink.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource this datalink is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSource : TDataSource`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSource` should be set to a `TDataSource` (538) instance to get access to the dataset it is connected to. A datalink never points directly to a `TDataSet` (498) instance, always to a `datasource`. When the `datasource` is enabled or disabled, all `TDataLink` instances connected to it are enabled or disabled at once.

See also: `TDataSet` (498), `TDataSource` (538)

16.22.16 TDataLink.DataSourceFixed

Synopsis: Can the datasource be changed.

Declaration: `Property DataSourceFixed : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSourceFixed` can be set to `True` to prevent changing of the `DataSource` (497) property. When lengthy operations are in progress, this can be done to prevent user code (e.g. event handlers) from changing the `datasource` property which might interfere with the operation in progress.

See also: `TDataLink.DataSource` (497)

16.22.17 TDataLink.Editing

Synopsis: Is the dataset in edit mode.

Declaration: `Property Editing : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Editing` determines whether the dataset is in one of the edit states (`dsEdit`, `dsInsert`). It can be set into this mode by calling the `TDataLink.Edit` (494) method. Never attempt to set the dataset in editing mode directly. The `Edit` method will perform the needed checks prior to setting the dataset in edit mode and will return `True` if the dataset was successfully set in the editing state.

See also: `TDataLink.Edit` (494), `TDataSet.Edit` (509)

16.22.18 TDataLink.Eof

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property Eof : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EOF` returns `TDataset.EOF` (522) if the dataset is available, `True` otherwise.

See also: `TDataLink.BOF` (496), `TDataset.EOF` (522)

16.22.19 TDataLink.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the link readonly.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to indicate that the link is read-only, i.e. the connected control will not modify the dataset. Methods as `TDataLink.Edit` (494) will check this property and fail if the link is read-only. This setting has no effect on the communication of dataset events to the datalink: the `TDataLink.Active` (495) property can be used to disable delivery of events to the datalink.

See also: `TDataLink.Active` (495), `TDataLink.edit` (494)

16.22.20 TDataLink.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the buffer of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordCount` returns the number of records in the dataset's buffer. It is limited by the `TDataLink.BufferCount` (496) property: `RecordCount` is always less than `Buffercount`.

See also: `TDataLink.BufferCount` (496)

16.23 TDataSet**16.23.1 Description**

`TDataset` is the main class of the `db` unit. This abstract class provides all basic functionality to access data stored in tabular format: The data consists of records, and the data in each record is organised in several fields.

`TDataset` has a buffer to cache a few records in memory, this buffer is used by `TDatasource` to create the ability to use data-aware components.

`TDataset` is an abstract class, which provides the basic functionality to access, navigate through the data and - in case read-write access is available, edit existing or add new records.

`TDataset` is an abstract class: it does not have the knowledge to store or load the records from whatever medium the records are stored on. Descendants add the functionality to load and save the data. Therefore `TDataset` is never used directly, one always instantiates a descendent class.

Initially, no data is available: the dataset is inactive. The `Open` (517) method must be used to fetch data into memory. After this command, the data is available in memory for browsing or editing purposes: The dataset is active (indicated by the `TDataset.Active` (528) property). Likewise, the `Close` (507) method can be used to remove the data from memory. Any changes not yet saved to the underlying medium will be lost.

Data is expected to be in tabular format, where each row represents a record. The dataset has an idea of a cursor: this is the current position of the data cursor in the set of rows. Only the data of the current record is available for display or editing purposes. Through the `Next` (516), `Prev` (498), `First` (512) and `Last` (515) methods, it is possible to navigate through the records. The `EOF` (522) property will be `True` if the last row has been reached. Likewise, the `BOF` (520) property will return `True` if the first record in the dataset has been reached when navigating backwards. If both properties are empty, then there is no data available. For dataset descendants that support counting the number of records, the `RecordCount` (525) will be zero.

The `Append` (505) and `Insert` (514) methods can be used to insert new records to the set of records. The `TDataset.Delete` (508) statement is used to delete the current record, and the `Edit` (509) command must be used to set the dataset in editing mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. Any changes made to the current record (be it a new or existing record) must be saved by the `Post` (517) method, or can be undone using the `Cancel` (506) method.

The data in the various fields properties is available through the `Fields` (526) array property, giving indexed access to all the fields in a record. The contents of a field is always readable. If the dataset is in one of the editing modes, then the fields can also be written to.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
504	ActiveBuffer	Currently active memory buffer.
505	Append	Append a new record to the data.
505	AppendRecord	Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data.
506	BookmarkValid	Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.
506	Cancel	Cancel the current editing operation.
506	CheckBrowseMode	Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.
506	ClearFields	Clear the values of all fields.
507	Close	Close the dataset.
507	CompareBookmarks	Compare two bookmarks.
507	ControlsDisabled	Check whether the controls are disabled.
504	Create	Create a new TDataset instance.
508	CreateBlobStream	Create blob stream.
508	CursorPosChanged	Indicate a change in cursor position.
508	DataConvert	Convert data from/to native format.
508	Delete	Delete the current record.
504	Destroy	Free a TDataset instance.
509	DisableControls	Disable event propagation of controls.
509	Edit	Set the dataset in editing mode.
510	EnableControls	Enable event propagation of controls.
510	FieldByName	Search a field by name.
510	FindField	Find a field by name.
511	FindFirst	Find the first active record (deprecated).
511	FindLast	Find the last active record (deprecated).
511	FindNext	Find the next active record (deprecated).
511	FindPrior	Find the previous active record (deprecated).
512	First	Position the dataset on the first record.
512	FreeBookmark	Free a bookmark obtained with GetBookmark (deprecated).
512	GetBookmark	Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated).
513	GetCurrentRecord	Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer.
504	GetFieldData	Get the data for a field.
513	GetFieldList	Return field instances in a list.
513	GetFieldNames	Return a list of all available field names.
513	GotoBookmark	Jump to bookmark.
514	Insert	Insert a new record at the current position.
514	InsertRecord	Insert a new record with given values.
514	IsEmpty	Check if the dataset contains no data.
514	IsLinkedTo	Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset.
515	IsSequenced	Is the data sequenced.
515	Last	Navigate forward to the last record.
515	Locate	Locate a record based on some key values.
516	Lookup	Search for a record and return matching values.
516	MoveBy	Move the cursor position.
516	Next	Go to the next record in the dataset.
517	Open	Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.
517	Post	Post pending edits to the database.
518	Prior	Go to the previous record.
518	Refresh	Refresh the records in the dataset.
518	Resync	Resynchronize the data buffer.
505	SetFieldData	Store the data for a field.
518	SetFields	Set a number of field values at once.
519	Translate	Transliterate a buffer.
519	UpdateCursorPos	Update cursor position.
519	UpdateRecord	Indicate that the record contents have changed.
520	UpdateStatus	Get the update status for the current record.

16.23.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
528	Active	rw	Is the dataset open or closed.
532	AfterCancel	rw	Event triggered after a Cancel operation.
529	AfterClose	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is closed.
533	AfterDelete	rw	Event triggered after a successful Delete operation.
531	AfterEdit	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.
530	AfterInsert	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.
529	AfterOpen	rw	Event triggered after the dataset is opened.
531	AfterPost	rw	Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database.
534	AfterRefresh	rw	Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.
533	AfterScroll	rw	Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.
528	AutoCalcFields	rw	How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated.
532	BeforeCancel	rw	Event triggered before a Cancel operation.
529	BeforeClose	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is closed.
532	BeforeDelete	rw	Event triggered before a Delete operation.
530	BeforeEdit	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.
530	BeforeInsert	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.
529	BeforeOpen	rw	Event triggered before the dataset is opened.
531	BeforePost	rw	Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database.
534	BeforeRefresh	rw	Event triggered before the data is refreshed.
533	BeforeScroll	rw	Event triggered before the cursor changes position.
520	BlockReadSize	rw	Number of records to read.
520	BOF	r	Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record).
520	Bookmark	rw	Get or set the current cursor position.
521	CanModify	r	Can the data in the dataset be modified.
522	DataSource	r	Datasource this dataset is connected to.
522	DefaultFields	r	Is the dataset using persistent fields or not.
522	EOF	r	Indicates whether the last record has been reached.
523	FieldCount	r	Number of fields.
523	FieldDefs	rw	Definitions of available fields in the underlying database.
526	Fields	r	Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.
527	FieldValues	rw	Access to field values based on the field names.
527	Filter	rw	Filter to apply to the data in memory.
527	Filtered	rw	Is the filter active or not.
528	FilterOptions	rw	Options to apply when filtering.
524	Found	r	Check success of one of the Find methods.
524	IsUniDirectional	r	Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only).
524	Modified	r	Was the current record modified ?
534	OnCalcFields	rw	Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.
535	OnDeleteError	rw	Event triggered when a delete operation fails.
535	OnEditError	rw	Event triggered when an edit operation fails.
536	OnFilterRecord	rw	Event triggered to filter records.
536	OnNewRecord	rw	Event triggered when a new record is created.
536	OnPostError	rw	Event triggered when a post operation fails.
525	RecNo	rw	Current record number.
525	RecordCount	r	Number of records in the dataset.
525	RecordSize	r	Size of the record in memory.
526	SparseArrays	rw	
526	State	r	Current operational state of the dataset.

16.23.4 TDataSet.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TDataSet instance.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new TDataSet (498) instance. It calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the internal structures needed to manage the dataset (fielddefs, fieldlist, constraints etc.).

See also: TDataSet.Destroy (504)

16.23.5 TDataSet.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a TDataSet instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy removes a TDataSet instance from memory. It closes the dataset if it was open, clears all internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

Errors: An exception may occur during the close operation, in that case, the dataset will not be removed from memory.

See also: TDataSet.Close (507), TDataSet.Create (504)

16.23.6 TDataSet.ActiveBuffer

Synopsis: Currently active memory buffer.

Declaration: function ActiveBuffer : TRecordBuffer

Visibility: public

Description: ActiveBuffer points to the currently active memory buffer. It should not be used in application code.

16.23.7 TDataSet.GetFieldData

Synopsis: Get the data for a field.

```
Declaration: function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean
                ; virtual; overload
function GetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
                NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean; virtual
                ; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: GetFieldData should copy the data for field Field from the internal dataset memory buffer into the memory pointed to by Buffer. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The function should return True if data was available and has been copied, or False if no data was available (in which case the field has value Null). The NativeFormat determines whether the data should be in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values should be in TDateTime format).

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the memory buffer

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([565](#))

16.23.8 TDataSet.SetFieldData

Synopsis: Store the data for a field.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer); virtual
; overload
procedure SetFieldData(Field: TField; Buffer: Pointer;
NativeFormat: Boolean); virtual; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldData` should copy the data from field `Field`, stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer` to the dataset memory buffer for the current record. This function is not intended for use by end-user applications, and should be used only in descendent classes, where it can be overridden. The `NativeFormat` determines whether the data is in native format (e.g. whether the date/time values are in `TDateTime` format).

See also: `TField.DisplayText` ([565](#))

16.23.9 TDataSet.Append

Synopsis: Append a new record to the data.

Declaration: `procedure Append`

Visibility: public

Description: `Append` appends a new record at the end of the dataset. It is functionally equal to the `TDataSet.Insert` ([514](#)) call, but the cursor is positioned at the end of the dataset prior to performing the insert operation. The same events occur as when the `Insert` call is made.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` ([514](#)), `TDataSet.Edit` ([509](#))

16.23.10 TDataSet.AppendRecord

Synopsis: Append a new record to the dataset and fill with data.

Declaration: `procedure AppendRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendRecord` first calls `Append` to add a new record to the dataset. It then copies the values in `Values` to the various fields (using `TDataSet.SetFields` ([518](#))) and attempts to post the record using `TDataSet.Post` ([517](#)). If all went well, the result is that the values in `Values` have been added as a new record to the dataset.

Errors: Various errors may occur (not supplying a value for all required fields, invalid values) and may cause an exception. This may leave the dataset in editing mode.

See also: `TDataSet.Append` ([505](#)), `TDataSet.SetFields` ([518](#)), `TDataSet.Post` ([517](#))

16.23.11 TDataSet.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Test whether ABookMark is a valid bookmark.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookMark) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BookmarkValid` returns `True` if `ABookMark` is a valid bookmark for the dataset. Various operations can render a bookmark invalid: changing the sort order, closing and re-opening the dataset. `BookmarkValid` always returns `False` in `TDataSet`. Descendent classes must override this method to do an actual test.

Errors: If the bookmark is a completely arbitrary pointer, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (512), `TDataSet.SetBookmark` (498), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` (512), `TDataSet.BookmarkAvailable` (498)

16.23.12 TDataSet.Cancel

Synopsis: Cancel the current editing operation.

Declaration: `procedure Cancel; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Cancel` cancels the current editing operation and sets the dataset again in browse mode. This operation triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeCancel` (532) and `TDataSet.AfterCancel` (532) events. If the dataset was in insert mode, then the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533) events are triggered after and respectively before the `BeforeCancel` and `AfterCancel` events. If the dataset was not in one of the editing modes when `Cancel` is called, then nothing will happen.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (526), `TDataSet.Append` (505), `TDataSet.Insert` (514), `TDataSet.Edit` (509)

16.23.13 TDataSet.CheckBrowseMode

Synopsis: Check whether the dataset is in browse mode.

Declaration: `procedure CheckBrowseMode`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckBrowseMode` will force the dataset to browse mode (`State=dsBrowse`) if it is active. If it is not active, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception is raised. If it is active, but in an edit state, then `TDataSet.UpdateRecord` (519) is called, and if the `TDataSet.Modified` (524) property is true, a `TDataSet.Post` (517) is performed, else `TDataSet.Cancel` (506) is called.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (526), `TDataSet.Post` (517), `TDataSet.Cancel` (506), `TDataSet.UpdateRecord` (519), `TDataSet.Modified` (524)

16.23.14 TDataSet.ClearFields

Synopsis: Clear the values of all fields.

Declaration: `procedure ClearFields`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearFields` clears the values of all fields.

Errors: If the dataset is not in editing mode (`State` in `dsEditmodes`), then an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (526), `TField.Clear` (555)

16.23.15 `TDataset.Close`

Synopsis: Close the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Close`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the dataset if it is open (`Active=True`). This action triggers the `TDataset.BeforeClose` (529) and `TDataset.AfterClose` (529) events. If the dataset is not active, nothing happens.

Errors: If an exception occurs during the closing of the dataset, the `AfterClose` event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataset.Active` (528), `TDataset.Open` (517)

16.23.16 `TDataset.ControlsDisabled`

Synopsis: Check whether the controls are disabled.

Declaration: `function ControlsDisabled : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ControlsDisabled` returns `True` if the controls are disabled, i.e. no events are propagated to the controls connected to this dataset. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (509) call can be used to disable sending of data events to the controls. The sending can be re-enabled with `TDataset.EnableControls` (510). This mechanism has a counting mechanism: in order to enable sending of events to the controls, `EnableControls` must be called as much as `DisableControls` was called. The `ControlsDisabled` function will return `true` as long as the internal counter is not zero.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (509), `TDataset.EnableControls` (510)

16.23.17 `TDataset.CompareBookmarks`

Synopsis: Compare two bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookMark; Bookmark2: TBookMark)
: LongInt; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareBookmarks` can be used to compare the relative positions of 2 bookmarks. It returns a negative value if `Bookmark1` is located before `Bookmark2`, zero if they refer to the same record, and a positive value if the second bookmark appears before the first bookmark. This function must be overridden by descendent classes of `TDataset`. The implementation in `TDataset` always returns zero.

Errors: No checks are performed on the validity of the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.BookmarkValid` (506), `TDataset.GetBookmark` (512), `TDataset.SetBookmark` (498)

16.23.18 TDataSet.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Create blob stream.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode)
: TStream; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateBlobStream` is not intended for use by application programmers. It creates a stream object which can be used to read or write data from a blob field. Instead, application programmers should use the `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (475) and `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (476) methods when reading and writing data from/to BLOB fields. Which operation must be performed on the stream is indicated in the `Mode` parameter, and the `Field` parameter contains the field whose data should be read. The caller is responsible for freeing the stream created by this function.

See also: `TBlobField.LoadFromStream` (475), `TBlobField.SaveToStream` (476)

16.23.19 TDataSet.CursorPosChanged

Synopsis: Indicate a change in cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure CursorPosChanged`

Visibility: public

Description: `CursorPosChanged` is not intended for internal use only, and serves to indicate that the current cursor position has changed. (it clears the internal cursor position).

16.23.20 TDataSet.DataConvert

Synopsis: Convert data from/to native format.

Declaration: `procedure DataConvert(aField: TField; aSource: Pointer; aDest: Pointer;
aToNative: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DataConvert` converts the data from field `AField` in buffer `ASource` to native format and puts the result in `ADest`. If the `aToNative` parameter equals `False`, then the data is converted from native format to non-native format. Currently, only date/time/datetime and BCD fields are converted from/to native data. This means the routine handles conversion between `TDateTime` (the native format) and `TDateTimeRec`, and between `TBCD` and currency (the native format) for BCD fields. `DataConvert` is used internally by `TDataset` and descendent classes. There should be no need to use this routine in application code.

Errors: No checking on the validity of the buffer pointers is performed. If an invalid pointer is passed, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataset.GetFieldData` (504), `TDataset.SetFieldData` (505)

16.23.21 TDataSet.Delete

Synopsis: Delete the current record.

Declaration: `procedure Delete; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` will delete the current record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (532), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (533) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533) events. If the dataset was in edit mode, the edits will be canceled before the delete operation starts.

Errors: If the dataset is empty or read-only, then an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Cancel` (506), `TDataset.BeforeDelete` (532), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataset.AfterDelete` (533), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533)

16.23.22 TDataSet.DisableControls

Synopsis: Disable event propagation of controls.

Declaration: `procedure DisableControls`

Visibility: public

Description: `DisableControls` tells the dataset to stop sending data-related events to the controls. This can be used before starting operations that will cause the current record to change a lot, or before any other lengthy operation that may cause a lot of events to be sent to the controls that show data from the dataset: each event will cause the control to update itself, which is a time-consuming operation that may also cause a lot of flicker on the screen.

The sending of events to the controls can be re-enabled with `Tdataset.EnableControls` (510). Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (507).

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (510), `TDataset.ControlsDisabled` (507)

16.23.23 TDataSet.Edit

Synopsis: Set the dataset in editing mode.

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: public

Description: `Edit` will set the dataset in edit mode: the contents of the current record can then be changed. This action will call the `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (530) and `TDataset.AfterEdit` (531) events. If the dataset was already in insert or edit mode, nothing will happen (the events will also not be triggered). If the dataset is empty, this action will execute `TDataset.Append` (505) instead.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only or not opened, then an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.State` (526), `TDataset.EOF` (522), `TDataset.BOF` (520), `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.BeforeEdit` (530), `TDataset.AfterEdit` (531)

16.23.24 TDataSet.EnableControls

Synopsis: Enable event propagation of controls.

Declaration: `procedure EnableControls`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnableControls` tells the dataset to resume sending data-related events to the controls. This must be used after a call to `TDataSet.DisableControls` (509) to re-enable updating of controls.

Note that for each call to `DisableControls`, a matching call to `EnableControls` must be made: an internal count is kept and only when the count reaches zero, the controls are again notified of changes to the dataset. It is therefore essential that the call to `EnableControls` is put in a `Finally` block:

```
MyDataset.DisableControls;
Try
    // Do some intensive stuff
Finally
    MyDataset.EnableControls
end;
```

Errors: Failure to call `enablecontrols` will prevent the controls from receiving updates. The state can be checked with `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (507).

See also: `TDataSet.DisableControls` (509), `TDataSet.ControlsDisabled` (507)

16.23.25 TDataSet.FieldByName

Synopsis: Search a field by name.

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FieldByName` is a shortcut for `Fields.FieldByName` (588): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned.

Errors: If the field is not found, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` (588), `TDataSet.FindField` (510)

16.23.26 TDataSet.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field by name.

Declaration: `function FindField(const FieldName: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindField` is a shortcut for `Fields.FindField` (588): it searches for the field with `fieldname` equalling `FieldName`. The case is performed case-insensitive. The matching field instance is returned, and if no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TDataSet.FieldByName` (510), `TFields.FindField` (588)

16.23.27 TDataSet.FindFirst

Synopsis: Find the first active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindFirst : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindFirst` positions the cursor on the first record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.First` (512) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (512), `TDataSet.FindLast` (511), `TDataSet.FindNext` (511), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (511)

16.23.28 TDataSet.FindLast

Synopsis: Find the last active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindLast : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindLast` positions the cursor on the last record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Last` (515) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Last` (515), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (511), `TDataSet.FindNext` (511), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (511)

16.23.29 TDataSet.FindNext

Synopsis: Find the next active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindNext : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindNext` positions the cursor on the next record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataSet`: The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataSet.Next` (516) instead.

See also: `TDataSet.Next` (516), `TDataSet.FindFirst` (511), `TDataSet.FindLast` (511), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (511)

16.23.30 TDataSet.FindPrior

Synopsis: Find the previous active record (deprecated).

Declaration: `function FindPrior : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindPrior` positions the cursor on the previous record (taking into account filtering), and returns `True` if the cursor position was changed. This method must be implemented by descendents of `TDataset`: The implementation in `TDataset` always returns `False`, indicating that the position was not changed.

This method is deprecated, use `TDataset.Prior` (518) instead.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (518), `TDataset.FindFirst` (511), `TDataset.FindLast` (511), `TDataset.FindPrior` (511)

16.23.31 `TDataset.First`

Synopsis: Position the dataset on the first record.

Declaration: `procedure First`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` positions the dataset on the first record. This action will trigger the `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533) events. After the action is completed, the `TDataset.BOF` (520) property will be `True`.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional or is closed, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Prior` (518), `TDataset.Last` (515), `TDataset.Next` (516), `TDataset.BOF` (520), `TDataset.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533)

16.23.32 `TDataset.FreeBookmark`

Synopsis: Free a bookmark obtained with `GetBookmark` (deprecated).

Declaration: `procedure FreeBookmark(ABookmark: TBookmark); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeBookmark` must be used to free a bookmark obtained by `TDataset.GetBookmark` (512). It should not be used on bookmarks obtained with the `TDataset.Bookmark` (520) property. Both `GetBookmark` and `FreeBookmark` are deprecated. Use the `Bookmark` property instead: it uses a string type, which is automatically disposed of when the string variable goes out of scope.

See also: `TDataset.GetBookmark` (512), `TDataset.Bookmark` (520)

16.23.33 `TDataset.GetBookmark`

Synopsis: Get a bookmark pointer (deprecated).

Declaration: `function GetBookmark : TBookmark; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetBookmark` gets a bookmark pointer to the current cursor location. The `TDataset.SetBookmark` (498) call can be used to return to the current record in the dataset. After use, the bookmark must be disposed of with the `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (512) call. The bookmark will be `Nil` if the dataset is empty or not active.

This call is deprecated. Use the `TDataset.Bookmark` (520) property instead to get a bookmark.

See also: `TDataset.SetBookmark` (498), `TDataset.FreeBookmark` (512), `TDataset.Bookmark` (520)

16.23.34 TDataSet.GetCurrentRecord

Synopsis: Copy the data for the current record in a memory buffer.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentRecord(Buffer: TRecordBuffer) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCurrentRecord` can be overridden by `TDataSet` descendants to copy the data for the current record to `Buffer`. `Buffer` must point to a memory area, large enough to contain the data for the record. If the data is copied successfully to the buffer, the function returns `True`. The `TDataSet` implementation is empty, and returns `False`.

See also: `TDataSet.ActiveBuffer` (504)

16.23.35 TDataSet.GetFieldList

Synopsis: Return field instances in a list.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldList(List: TList; const FieldNames: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldList` parses `FieldNames` for names of fields, and returns the field instances that match the names in `list`. `FieldNames` must be a list of field names, separated by semicolons. The list is cleared prior to filling with the requested field instances.

Errors: If `FieldNames` contains a name of a field that does not exist in the dataset, then an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNames` (513), `TDataSet.FieldByName` (510), `TDataSet.FindField` (510)

16.23.36 TDataSet.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all available field names.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` returns in `List` the names of all available fields, one field per item in the list. The dataset must be open for this function to work correctly.

See also: `TDataSet.GetFieldNameList` (498), `TDataSet.FieldByName` (510), `TDataSet.FindField` (510)

16.23.37 TDataSet.GotoBookmark

Synopsis: Jump to bookmark.

Declaration: `procedure GotoBookmark(const ABookmark: TBookmark)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GotoBookmark` positions the dataset to the bookmark position indicated by `ABookmark`. `ABookmark` is a bookmark obtained by the `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (512) function.

This function is deprecated, use the `TDataSet.Bookmark` (520) property instead.

Errors: if `ABookmark` does not contain a valid bookmark, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Bookmark` (520), `TDataSet.GetBookmark` (512), `TDataSet.FreeBookmark` (512)

16.23.38 TDataSet.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new record at the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` will insert a new record at the current position. When this function is called, any pending modifications (when the dataset already is in insert or edit mode) will be posted. After that, the `BeforeInsert` (530), `BeforeScroll` (533), `OnNewRecord` (536), `AfterInsert` (530) and `AfterScroll` (533) events are triggered in the order indicated here. The dataset is in the `dsInsert` state after this method is called, and the contents of the various fields can be set. To write the new record to the underlying database `TDataSet.Post` (517) must be called.

Errors: If the dataset is read-only, calling `Insert` will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460).

See also: `BeforeInsert` (530), `BeforeScroll` (533), `OnNewRecord` (536), `AfterInsert` (530), `AfterScroll` (533), `TDataSet.Post` (517), `TDataSet.Append` (505)

16.23.39 TDataSet.InsertRecord

Synopsis: Insert a new record with given values.

Declaration: `procedure InsertRecord(const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertRecord` is not yet implemented in Free Pascal. It does nothing.

See also: `TDataSet.Insert` (514), `TDataSet.SetFieldValues` (498)

16.23.40 TDataSet.IsEmpty

Synopsis: Check if the dataset contains no data.

Declaration: `function IsEmpty : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsEmpty` returns `True` if the dataset is empty, i.e. if `EOF` (522) and `TDataSet.BOF` (520) are both `True`, and the dataset is not in insert mode.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` (522), `TDataSet.BOF` (520), `TDataSet.State` (526)

16.23.41 TDataSet.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check whether a datasource is linked to the dataset.

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo (ADatasource: TDataSource) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsLinkedTo` returns `True` if `ADatasource` is linked to this dataset, either directly (the `ADatasource.Dataset`" (540) points to the current dataset instance, or indirectly.

See also: `TDataSource.Dataset` (540)

16.23.42 TDataSet.IsSequenced

Synopsis: Is the data sequenced.

Declaration: `function IsSequenced : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IsSequenced` indicates whether it is safe to use the `TDataSet.RecNo` (525) property to navigate in the records of the data. By default, this property is set to `True`, but `TDataSet` descendants may set this property to `False` (for instance, unidirectional datasets), in which case `RecNo` should not be used to navigate through the data.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (525)

16.23.43 TDataSet.Last

Synopsis: Navigate forward to the last record.

Declaration: `procedure Last`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` puts the cursor at the last record in the dataset, fetching more records from the underlying database if needed. It is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling `TDataSet.Next` (516). After a call to `Last`, the `TDataSet.EOF` (522) property will be `True`.

Calling this method will trigger the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533) events.

See also: `TDataSet.First` (512), `TDataSet.Next` (516), `TDataSet.EOF` (522), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533)

16.23.44 TDataSet.Locate

Synopsis: Locate a record based on some key values.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Locate` attempts to locate a record in the dataset. There are 2 possible cases when using `Locate`.

1. `Keyvalues` is a single value. In that case, `KeyFields` is the name of the field whose value must be matched to the value in `KeyValues`
2. `Keyvalues` is a variant array. In that case, `KeyFields` must contain a list of names of fields (separated by semicolons) whose values must be matched to the values in the `KeyValues` array

The matching always happens according to the `Options` parameter. For a description of the possible values, see `TLocateOption` (452).

If a record is found that matches the criteria, then the `locate` operation positions the cursor on this record, and returns `True`. If no record is found to match the criteria, `False` is returned, and the position of the cursor is unchanged.

The implementation in `TDataSet` always returns `False`. It is up to `TDataSet` descendants to implement this method and return an appropriate value.

See also: `TDataSet.Find` (498), `TDataSet.Lookup` (516), `TLocateOption` (452)

16.23.45 TDataSet.Lookup

Synopsis: Search for a record and return matching values.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
const ResultFields: string) : Variant; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Lookup` always returns `Null` in `TDataSet`. Descendents of `TDataSet` can override this method to call `TDataSet.Locate` (515) to locate the record with fields `KeyFields` matching `KeyValues` and then to return the values of the fields in `ResultFields`. If `ResultFields` contains more than one fieldname (separated by semicolons), then the function returns an array. If there is only 1 fieldname, the value is returned directly.

Errors: If the dataset is unidirectional, then a `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Locate` (515)

16.23.46 TDataSet.MoveBy

Synopsis: Move the cursor position.

Declaration: `function MoveBy(Distance: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveBy` moves the current record pointer with `Distance` positions. `Distance` may be a positive number, in which case the cursor is moved forward, or a negative number, in which case the cursor is moved backward. The move operation will stop as soon as the beginning or end of the data is reached. The `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533) events are triggered (once) when this method is called. The function returns the distance which was actually moved by the cursor.

Errors: A negative distance will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception on unidirectional datasets.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` (525), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533)

16.23.47 TDataSet.Next

Synopsis: Go to the next record in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Next`

Visibility: public

Description: `Next` positions the cursor on the next record in the dataset. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533) events. If the dataset is located on the last known record (`EOF` (522) is true), then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (516), `TDataSet.Prior` (518), `TDataSet.Last` (515), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533), `TDataSet.EOF` (522)

16.23.48 TDataSet.Open

Synopsis: Activate the dataset: Fetch data into memory.

Declaration: `procedure Open`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Open` must be used to make the `TDataSet` Active. It does nothing if the dataset is already active. `Open` initializes the `TDataSet` and brings the dataset in a browsable state:

Effectively the following happens:

1. The `BeforeOpen` event is triggered.
2. The descendants `InternalOpen` method is called to actually fetch data and initialize field-
defs and field instances.
3. `BOF` (520) is set to `True`
4. Internal buffers are allocated and filled with data
5. If the dataset is empty, `EOF` (522) is set to `true`
6. `State` (526) is set to `dsBrowse`
7. The `AfterOpen` (529) event is triggered

Errors: If the descendent class cannot fetch the data, or the data does not match the field definitions present in the dataset, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataSet.Active` (528), `TDataSet.State` (526), `TDataSet.BOF` (520), `TDataSet.EOF` (522), `TDataSet.BeforeOpen` (529), `TDataSet.AfterOpen` (529)

16.23.49 TDataSet.Post

Synopsis: Post pending edits to the database.

Declaration: `procedure Post; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Post` attempts to save pending edits when the dataset is in one of the edit modes: that is, after a `Insert` (514), `Append` (505) or `TDataSet.Edit` (509) operation. The changes will be committed to memory - and usually immediately to the underlying database as well. Prior to saving the data to memory, it will check some constraints: in `TDataSet`, the presence of a value for all required fields is checked. if for a required field no value is present, an exception will be raised. A call to `Post` results in the triggering of the `BeforePost` (531), `AfterPost` (531) events. After the call to `Post`, the `State` (526) of the dataset is again `dsBrowse`, i.e. the dataset is again in browse mode.

Errors: Invoking the `post` method when the dataset is not in one of the editing modes (`dsEditModes` (441)) will result in an `EdatabaseError` (460) exception. If an exception occurs during the save operation, the `OnPostError` (536) event is triggered to handle the error.

See also: `Insert` (514), `Append` (505), `Edit` (509), `OnPostError` (536), `BeforePost` (531), `AfterPost` (531), `State` (526)

16.23.50 TDataSet.Prior

Synopsis: Go to the previous record.

Declaration: `procedure Prior`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prior` moves the cursor to the previous record. It is equivalent to a `MoveBy(-1)` operation. Calling this method triggers the `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533) and `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533) events. If the dataset is located on the first record, (`BOF` (520) is true) then no action is performed, and the events are not triggered.

Errors: Calling this method on a closed dataset will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TDataSet.MoveBy` (516), `TDataSet.Next` (516), `TDataSet.First` (512), `TDataSet.BeforeScroll` (533), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` (533), `TDataSet.BOF` (520)

16.23.51 TDataSet.Refresh

Synopsis: Refresh the records in the dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Refresh`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Refresh` posts any pending edits, and refetches the data in the dataset from the underlying database, and attempts to reposition the cursor on the same record as it was. This operation is not supported by all datasets, and should be used with care. The repositioning may not always succeed, in which case the cursor will be positioned on the first record in the dataset. This is in particular true for unidirectional datasets. Calling `Refresh` results in the triggering of the `BeforeRefresh` (534) and `AfterRefresh` (534) events.

Errors: Refreshing may fail if the underlying dataset descendent does not support it.

See also: `TDataSet.Close` (507), `TDataSet.Open` (517), `BeforeRefresh` (534), `AfterRefresh` (534)

16.23.52 TDataSet.Resync

Synopsis: Resynchronize the data buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Resync (Mode: TResyncMode); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resync` refetches the records around the cursor position. It should not be used by application code, instead `TDataSet.Refresh` (518) should be used. The `Resync` parameter indicates how the buffers should be refreshed.

See also: `TDataSet.Refresh` (518)

16.23.53 TDataSet.SetFields

Synopsis: Set a number of field values at once.

Declaration: `procedure SetFields (const Values: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetFields` sets the values of the fields with the corresponding values in the array. It starts with the first field in the `TDataset.Fields` (526) property, and works its way down the array.

Errors: If the dataset is not in edit mode, then an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised. If there are more values than fields, an `EListError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TDataset.Fields` (526)

16.23.54 `TDataset.Translate`

Synopsis: Transliterate a buffer.

Declaration: `function Translate(Src: PChar; Dest: PChar; ToOem: Boolean) : Integer; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Translate` is called for all string fields for which the `TStringField.Transliterate` (644) property is set to `True`. The `toOEM` parameter is set to `True` if the transliteration must happen from the used codepage to the codepage used for storage, and if it is set to `False` then the transliteration must happen from the native codepage to the storage codepage. This call must be overridden by descendants of `TDataset` to provide the necessary transliteration: `TDataset` just copies the contents of the `Src` buffer to the `Dest` buffer. The result must be the number of bytes copied to the destination buffer.

Errors: No checks are performed on the buffers.

See also: `TStringField.Transliterate` (644)

16.23.55 `TDataset.UpdateCursorPos`

Synopsis: Update cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateCursorPos`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateCursorPos` should not be used in application code. It is used to ensure that the logical cursor position is the correct (physical) position.

See also: `TDataset.Refresh` (518)

16.23.56 `TDataset.UpdateRecord`

Synopsis: Indicate that the record contents have changed.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateRecord`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateRecord` notifies controls that the contents of the current record have changed. It triggers the event. This should never be called by application code, and is intended only for descendants of `TDataset`.

See also: `OnUpdateRecord` (498)

16.23.57 TDataSet.UpdateStatus

Synopsis: Get the update status for the current record.

Declaration: `function UpdateStatus : TUpdateStatus; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateStatus` always returns `usUnModified` in the `TDataSet` implementation. Descendent classes should override this method to indicate the status for the current record in case they support cached updates: the function should return the status of the current record: has the record been locally inserted, modified or deleted, or none of these. `UpdateStatus` is not used in `TDataSet` itself, but is provided so applications have a unique API to work with datasets that have support for cached updates.

16.23.58 TDataSet.BlockReadSize

Synopsis: Number of records to read.

Declaration: `Property BlockReadSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BlockReadSize` can be set to a positive number to prevent the dataset from sending notifications to DB-Aware controls while scrolling through the data. Setting it to zero will re-enable sending of notifications, as will putting the dataset in another state (edit etc.).

See also: `EnableControls` ([440](#)), `DisableControls` ([440](#))

16.23.59 TDataSet.BOF

Synopsis: Is the cursor at the beginning of the data (on the first record).

Declaration: `Property BOF : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BOF` returns `True` if the first record is the first record in the dataset, `False` otherwise. It will always be `True` if the dataset is just opened, or after a call to `TDataSet.First` ([512](#)). As soon as `TDataSet.Next` ([516](#)) is called, `BOF` will no longer be true.

See also: `TDataSet.EOF` ([522](#)), `TDataSet.Next` ([516](#)), `TDataSet.First` ([512](#))

16.23.60 TDataSet.Bookmark

Synopsis: Get or set the current cursor position.

Declaration: `Property Bookmark : TBookmark`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bookmark` can be read to obtain a bookmark to the current position in the dataset. The obtained value can be used to return to current position at a later stage. Writing the `Bookmark` property with a value previously obtained like this, will reposition the dataset on the same position as it was when the property was read.

This is often used when scanning all records, like this:

```
Var
  B : TBookmark;

begin
  With MyDataset do
    begin
      B:=Bookmark;
      DisableControls;
      try
        First;
        While Not EOF do
          begin
            DoSomething;
            Next;
          end;
        finally
          EnableControls;
          Bookmark:=B;
        end;
      end;
    end;
```

At the end of this code, the dataset will be positioned on the same record as when the code was started. The `TDataset.DisableControls` (509) and `TDataset.EnableControls` (510) calls prevent the controls from receiving update notifications as the dataset scrolls through the records, thus reducing flicker on the screen.

Note that bookmarks become invalid as soon as the dataset closes. A call to refresh may also destroy the bookmarks.

See also: `TDataset.DisableControls` (509), `TDataset.EnableControls` (510)

16.23.61 TDataSet.CanModify

Synopsis: Can the data in the dataset be modified.

Declaration: `Property CanModify : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CanModify` indicates whether the dataset allows editing. `Unidirectional` datasets do not allow editing. Descendent datasets can impose additional conditions under which the data can not be modified (read-only datasets, for instance). If the `CanModify` property is `False`, then the edit, append or insert methods will fail.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (514), `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.Delete` (508), `Tdataset.Edit` (509)

16.23.62 TDataSet.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource this dataset is connected to.

Declaration: Property DataSource : TDataSource

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Datasource is the datasource this dataset is connected to, and from which it can get values for parameters. In TDataSet, the Datasource property is not used, and is always Nil. It is up to descendent classes that actually support a datasource to implement getter and setter routines for the Datasource property.

See also: TDataSource ([538](#))

16.23.63 TDataSet.DefaultFields

Synopsis: Is the dataset using persistent fields or not.

Declaration: Property DefaultFields : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: DefaultFields is True if the fields were generated dynamically when the dataset was opened. If it is False then the field instances are persistent, i.e. they were created at design time with the fields editor. If DefaultFields is True, then for each item in the TDataSet.FieldDefs ([523](#)) property, a field instance is created. These fields instances are freed again when the dataset is closed. If DefaultFields is False, then there may be less field instances than there are items in the FieldDefs property. This can be the case for instance when opening a DBF file at runtime which has more fields than the file used at design time.

See also: TDataSet.FieldDefs ([523](#)), TDataSet.Fields ([526](#)), TField ([551](#))

16.23.64 TDataSet.EOF

Synopsis: Indicates whether the last record has been reached.

Declaration: Property EOF : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: EOF is True if the cursor is on the last record in the dataset, and no more records are available. It is also True for an empty dataset. The EOF property will be set to True in the following cases:

1. The cursor is on the last record, and the TDataSet.Next ([516](#)) method is called.
2. The TDataSet.Last ([515](#)) method is called (which is equivalent to moving to the last record and calling TDataSet.Next ([516](#))).
3. The dataset is empty when opened.

In all other cases, `EOF` is `False`. Note: when the cursor is on the last-but-one record, and `Next` is called (moving the cursor to the last record), `EOF` will not yet be `True`. Only if both the cursor is on the last record **and** `Next` is called, will `EOF` become `True`.

This means that the following loop will stop after the last record was visited:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
      Next;
    end;
```

See also: `TDataset.BOF` (520), `TDataset.Next` (516), `TDataset.Last` (515), `TDataset.IsEmpty` (514)

16.23.65 TDataSet.FieldCount

Synopsis: Number of fields.

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldCount` is the same as `Fields.Count` (590), i.e. the number of fields. For a dataset with persistent fields (when `DefaultFields` (522) is `False`) then this number will be always the same every time the dataset is opened. For a dataset with dynamically created fields, the number of fields may be different each time the dataset is opened.

See also: `TFields` (586)

16.23.66 TDataSet.FieldDefs

Synopsis: Definitions of available fields in the underlying database.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs : TFieldDefs`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `FieldDefs` is filled by the `TDataset` descendent when the dataset is opened. It represents the fields as they are returned by the particular database when the data is initially fetched from the engine. If the dataset uses dynamically created fields (when `DefaultFields` (522) is `True`), then for each item in this list, a field instance will be created with default properties available in the field definition. If the dataset uses persistent fields, then the fields in the field list will be checked against the items in the `FieldDefs` property. If no matching item is found for a persistent field, then an exception will be raised. Items that exist in the `fielddefs` property but for which there is no matching field instance, are ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Open` (517), `TDataset.DefaultFields` (522), `TDataset.Fields` (526)

16.23.67 TDataSet.Found

Synopsis: Check success of one of the Find methods.

Declaration: `Property Found : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Found` is `True` if the last of one of the `TDataSet.FindFirst` (511), `TDataSet.FindLast` (511), `TDataSet.FindNext` (511) or `TDataSet.FindPrior` (511) operations was successful.

See also: `TDataSet.FindFirst` (511), `TDataSet.FindLast` (511), `TDataSet.FindNext` (511), `TDataSet.FindPrior` (511)

16.23.68 TDataSet.Modified

Synopsis: Was the current record modified ?

Declaration: `Property Modified : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Modified` is `True` if the current record was modified after a call to `Tdataset.Edit` (509) or `Tdataset.Insert` (514). It becomes `True` if a value was written to one of the fields of the dataset.

See also: `Tdataset.Edit` (509), `TDataSet.Insert` (514), `TDataSet.Append` (505), `TDataSet.Cancel` (506), `TDataSet.Post` (517)

16.23.69 TDataSet.IsUniDirectional

Synopsis: Is the dataset unidirectional (i.e. forward scrolling only).

Declaration: `Property IsUniDirectional : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsUniDirectional` is `True` if the dataset is unidirectional. By default it is `False`, i.e. scrolling backwards is allowed. If the dataset is unidirectional, then any attempt to scroll backwards (using one of `TDataSet.Prior` (518) or `TDataSet.Last` (515)), random positioning of the cursor, editing or filtering will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460). Unidirectional datasets are also not suitable for display in a grid, as they have only 1 record in memory at any given time: they are only useful for performing an action on all records:

```
With MyDataset do
  While not EOF do
    begin
      DoSomething;
    Next;
  end;
```

See also: `TDataSet.Prior` (518), `TDataSet.Next` (516)

16.23.70 TDataSet.RecordCount

Synopsis: Number of records in the dataset.

Declaration: `Property RecordCount : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordCount` is the number of records in the dataset. This number is not necessarily equal to the number of records returned by a query. For optimization purposes, a `TDataSet` descendent may choose not to fetch all records from the database when the dataset is opened. If this is the case, then the `RecordCount` will only reflect the number of records that have actually been fetched at the current time, and therefor the value will change as more records are fetched from the database.

Only when `Last` has been called (and the dataset has been forced to fetch all records returned by the database), will the value of `RecordCount` be equal to the number of records returned by the query.

In general, datasets based on in-memory data or flat files, will return the correct number of records in `RecordCount`.

See also: `TDataSet.RecNo` ([525](#))

16.23.71 TDataSet.RecNo

Synopsis: Current record number.

Declaration: `Property RecNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `RecNo` returns the current position in the dataset. It can be written to set the cursor to the indicated position. This property must be implemented by `TDataSet` descendents, for `TDataSet` the property always returns -1.

This property should not be used if exact positioning is required. it is inherently unreliable.

See also: `TDataSet.RecordCount` ([525](#))

16.23.72 TDataSet.RecordSize

Synopsis: Size of the record in memory.

Declaration: `Property RecordSize : Word`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RecordSize` is the total size of the memory buffer used for the records. This property returns always 0 in the `TDataSet` implementation. Descendent classes should implement this property. Note that this property does not necessarily reflect the actual data size for the records. that may be more or less, depending on how the `TDataSet` descendent manages it's data.

See also: `TField.Datasize` ([564](#)), `TDataSet.RecordCount` ([525](#)), `TDataSet.RecNo` ([525](#))

16.23.73 TDataSet.SparseArrays

Declaration: `Property SparseArrays : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

16.23.74 TDataSet.State

Synopsis: Current operational state of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property State : TDataSetState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `State` determines the current operational state of the dataset. During its lifetime, the dataset is in one of many states, depending on which operation is currently in progress:

- If a dataset is closed, the `State` is `dsInactive`.
- As soon as it is opened, it is in `dsBrowse` mode, and remains in this state while changing the cursor position.
- If the `Edit` or `Insert` or `Append` methods is called, the `State` changes to `dsEdit` or `dsInsert`, respectively.
- As soon as edits have been posted or cancelled, the state is again `dsBrowse`.
- Closing the dataset sets the state again to `dsInactive`.

There are some other states, mainly connected to internal operations, but which can become visible in some of the dataset's events.

See also: `TDataSet.Active` (528), `TDataSet.Edit` (509), `TDataSet.Insert` (514), `TDataSet.Append` (505), `TDataSet.Post` (517), `TDataSet.Cancel` (506)

16.23.75 TDataSet.Fields

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Fields : TFields`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` provides access to the fields of the dataset. It is of type `TFields` (586) and therefore gives indexed access to the fields, but also allows other operations such as searching for fields based on their names or getting a list of fieldnames.

See also: `TFieldDefs` (583), `TField` (551)

16.23.76 TDataSet.FieldValues

Synopsis: Access to field values based on the field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[FieldName: string]: Variant; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldValues` provides array-like access to the values of the fields, based on the names of the fields. The value is read or written as a variant type. It is equivalent to the following:

```
FieldByName(FieldName).AsVariant
```

It can be read as well as written.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` ([588](#))

16.23.77 TDataSet.Filter

Synopsis: Filter to apply to the data in memory.

Declaration: `Property Filter : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Filter` is not implemented by `TDataset`. It is up to descendent classes to implement actual filtering: the filtering happens on in-memory data, and is not applied on the database level. (in particular: setting the filter property will in no way influence the WHERE clause of an SQL-based dataset).

In general, the `filter` property accepts a SQL-like syntax usually encountered in the WHERE clause of an SQL SELECT statement.

The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Filtered` ([527](#)), `TDataset.FilterOptions` ([528](#))

16.23.78 TDataSet.Filtered

Synopsis: Is the filter active or not.

Declaration: `Property Filtered : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Filtered` determines whether the filter condition in `TDataset.Filter` ([527](#)) is applied or not. The filter is only applied if the `Filtered` property is set to `True`. If the `Filtered` property is `False`, the `Filter` property is ignored.

See also: `TDataset.Filter` ([527](#)), `TDataset.FilterOptions` ([528](#))

16.23.79 TDataSet.FilterOptions

Synopsis: Options to apply when filtering.

Declaration: Property FilterOptions : TFilterOptions

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: FilterOptions determines what options should be taken into account when applying the filter in TDataSet.Filter (527), such as case-sensitivity or whether to treat an asterisk as a wildcard: By default, an asterisk (*) at the end of a literal string in the filter expression is treated as a wildcard. When FilterOptions does not include foNoPartialCompare, strings that have an asterisk at the end, indicate a partial string match. In that case, the asterisk matches any number of characters. If foNoPartialCompare is included in the options, the asterisk is regarded as a regular character.

See also: TDataSet.Filter (527), TDataSet.FilterOptions (528)

16.23.80 TDataSet.Active

Synopsis: Is the dataset open or closed.

Declaration: Property Active : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Active is True if the dataset is open, and False if it is closed (TDataSet.State (526) is then dsInactive). Setting the Active property to True is equivalent to calling TDataSet.Open (517), setting it to False is equivalent to calling TDataSet.Close (507)

See also: TDataSet.State (526), TDataSet.Open (517), TDataSet.Close (507)

16.23.81 TDataSet.AutoCalcFields

Synopsis: How often should the value of calculated fields be calculated.

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AutoCalcFields is by default true, meaning that the values of calculated fields will be computed in the following cases:

- When the dataset is opened
- When the dataset is put in edit mode
- When a data field changed

When AutoCalcFields is False, then the calculated fields are called whenever

- The dataset is opened
- The dataset is put in edit mode

Both proper calculated fields and lookup fields are computed. Calculated fields are computed through the TDataSet.OnCalcFields (534) event.

See also: TField.FieldKind (571), TDataSet.OnCalcFields (534)

16.23.82 TDataSet.BeforeOpen

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is opened.

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeOpen` is triggered before the dataset is opened. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsInactive` state. It can be used to set parameters and options that influence the opening process. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains closed.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterOpen` ([529](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([526](#))

16.23.83 TDataSet.AfterOpen

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is opened.

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterOpen` is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has fetched its data and is in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If the dataset is not empty, then a `TDataSet.AfterScroll` ([533](#)) event will be triggered immediately after the `AfterOpen` event. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains open, but the `AfterScroll` event will not be triggered.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterOpen` ([529](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([526](#)), `TDataSet.AfterScroll` ([533](#))

16.23.84 TDataSet.BeforeClose

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is closed.

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeClose` is triggered before the dataset is closed. No actions have been performed yet when this event is called, and the dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state or one of the editing states. It can be used to prevent closing of the dataset, for instance if there are pending changes not yet committed to the database. If an exception is raised during the event handler, the dataset remains opened.

See also: `TDataSet.AfterClose` ([529](#)), `TDataSet.State` ([526](#))

16.23.85 TDataSet.AfterClose

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is closed.

Declaration: `Property AfterClose : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterOpen` is triggered after the dataset is opened. The dataset has discarded its data and has cleaned up its internal memory structures. It is in `dsInactive` state when this event is triggered.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeClose` (529), `TDataset.State` (526)

16.23.86 `TDataset.BeforeInsert`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeInsert` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Append` (505) or `TDataset.Insert` (514) methods. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeInsert` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the append or insert operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterInsert` (530), `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.Insert` (514)

16.23.87 `TDataset.AfterInsert`

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in insert mode.

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterInsert` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsInsert` state and it has initialized the new record buffer. This event can be used e.g. to set initial field values. After the `AfterInsert` event, the `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533) event is still triggered. Raising an exception in the `AfterInsert` event, will prevent the `AfterScroll` event from being triggered, but does not undo the insert or append operation.

See also: `TDataset.BeforeInsert` (530), `TDataset.AfterScroll` (533), `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.Insert` (514)

16.23.88 `TDataset.BeforeEdit`

Synopsis: Event triggered before the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit : TDatasetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeEdit` is triggered at the start of the `TDataset.Edit` (509) method. The dataset is still in `dsBrowse` state when this event is triggered. If an exception is raised in the `BeforeEdit` event handler, then the dataset will remain in `dsBrowse` state, and the edit operation is cancelled.

See also: `TDataset.AfterEdit` (531), `TDataset.Edit` (509), `TDataset.State` (526)

16.23.89 TDataSet.AfterEdit

Synopsis: Event triggered after the dataset is put in edit mode.

Declaration: Property `AfterEdit` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterEdit` is triggered after the dataset has finished putting the dataset in `dsEdit` state and it has initialized the edit buffer for the record. Raising an exception in the `AfterEdit` event does not undo the edit operation.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforeEdit` (530), `TDataSet.Edit` (509), `TDataSet.State` (526)

16.23.90 TDataSet.BeforePost

Synopsis: Event called before changes are posted to the underlying database.

Declaration: Property `BeforePost` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforePost` is triggered at the start of the `TDataSet.Post` (517) method, when the dataset is still in one of the edit states (`dsEdit`,`dsInsert`). If the dataset was not in an edit state when `Post` is called, the `BeforePost` event is not triggered. This event can be used to supply values for required fields that have no value yet (the `Post` operation performs the check on required fields only after this event), or it can be used to abort the post operation: if an exception is raised during the `BeforePost` operation, the posting operation is cancelled, and the dataset remains in the editing state it was in before the post operation.

See also: `TDataSet.post` (517), `TDataSet.AfterPost` (531), `TDataSet.State` (526)

16.23.91 TDataSet.AfterPost

Synopsis: Event called after changes have been posted to the underlying database.

Declaration: Property `AfterPost` : `TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterPost` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Post` (517) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in `dsBrowse` state. If an error occurred during the post operation, then the `AfterPost` event is not called, but the `TDataSet.OnPostError` (536) event is triggered instead.

See also: `TDataSet.BeforePost` (531), `TDataSet.Post` (517), `TDataSet.State` (526), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (536)

16.23.92 TDataSet.BeforeCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Cancel operation.

Declaration: Property BeforeCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeCancel is triggered at the start of the TDataSet.Cancel (506) operation, when the state is still one of the editing states (dsEdit,dsInsert). The event handler can be used to abort the cancel operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the cancel operation stops. If the dataset was not in one of the editing states when the Cancel method was called, then the event is not triggered.

See also: TDataSet.AfterCancel (532), TDataSet.Cancel (506), TDataSet.State (526)

16.23.93 TDataSet.AfterCancel

Synopsis: Event triggered after a Cancel operation.

Declaration: Property AfterCancel : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterCancel is triggered when the TDataSet.Cancel (506) operation was successfully completed, and the dataset is again in dsBrowse state.

See also: TDataSet.BeforeCancel (532), TDataSet.Cancel (506), TDataSet.State (526)

16.23.94 TDataSet.BeforeDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered before a Delete operation.

Declaration: Property BeforeDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeDelete is triggered at the start of the TDataSet.Delete (508) operation, when the dataset is still in dsBrowse state. The event handler can be used to abort the delete operation: if an exception is raised during the event handler, then the delete operation stops. The event is followed by a TDataSet.BeforeScroll (533) event. If the dataset was in insert mode when the Delete method was called, then the event will not be called, as TDataSet.Cancel (506) is called instead.

See also: TDataSet.AfterDelete (533), TDataSet.Delete (508), TDataSet.BeforeScroll (533), TDataSet.Cancel (506), TDataSet.State (526)

16.23.95 TDataSet.AfterDelete

Synopsis: Event triggered after a successful Delete operation.

Declaration: Property AfterDelete : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterDelete is triggered after the successful completion of the TDataSet.Delete (508) operation, when the dataset is again in dsBrowse state. The event is followed by a TDataSet.AfterScroll (533) event.

See also: TDataSet.BeforeDelete (532), TDataSet.Delete (508), TDataSet.AfterScroll (533), TDataSet.State (526)

16.23.96 TDataSet.BeforeScroll

Synopsis: Event triggered before the cursor changes position.

Declaration: Property BeforeScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeScroll is triggered before the cursor changes position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: TDataSet.Next (516), TDataSet.Prior (518), TDataSet.First (512), TDataSet.Last (515), but also with two of the editing operations: TDataSet.Insert (514) and TDataSet.Delete (508). Raising an exception in this event handler aborts the operation in progress.

See also: TDataSet.AfterScroll (533), TDataSet.Next (516), TDataSet.Prior (518), TDataSet.First (512), TDataSet.Last (515), TDataSet.Insert (514), TDataSet.Delete (508)

16.23.97 TDataSet.AfterScroll

Synopsis: Event triggered after the cursor has changed position.

Declaration: Property AfterScroll : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterScroll is triggered after the cursor has changed position. This can happen with one of the navigation methods: TDataSet.Next (516), TDataSet.Prior (518), TDataSet.First (512), TDataSet.Last (515), but also with two of the editing operations: TDataSet.Insert (514) and TDataSet.Delete (508) and after the dataset was opened. It is suitable for displaying status information or showing a value that needs to be calculated for each record.

See also: TDataSet.AfterScroll (533), TDataSet.Next (516), TDataSet.Prior (518), TDataSet.First (512), TDataSet.Last (515), TDataSet.Insert (514), TDataSet.Delete (508), TDataSet.Open (517)

16.23.98 TDataSet.BeforeRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered before the data is refreshed.

Declaration: Property BeforeRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: BeforeRefresh is triggered at the start of the TDataSet.Refresh (518) method, after the dataset has been put in browse mode. If the dataset cannot be put in browse mode, the BeforeRefresh method will not be triggered. If an exception is raised during the BeforeRefresh method, then the refresh method is cancelled and the dataset remains in the dsBrowse state.

See also: TDataSet.Refresh (518), TDataSet.AfterRefresh (534), TDataSet.State (526)

16.23.99 TDataSet.AfterRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered after the data has been refreshed.

Declaration: Property AfterRefresh : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AfterRefresh is triggered at the end of the TDataSet.Refresh (518) method, after the dataset has refreshed its data and is again in dsBrowse state. This event can be used to react on changes in data in the current record

See also: TDataSet.Refresh (518), TDataSet.State (526), TDataSet.BeforeRefresh (534)

16.23.100 TDataSet.OnCalcFields

Synopsis: Event triggered when values for calculated fields must be computed.

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields : TDataSetNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnCalcFields is triggered whenever the dataset needs to (re)compute the values of any calculated fields in the dataset. It is called very often, so this event should return as quickly as possible. Only the values of the calculated fields should be set, no methods of the dataset that change the data or cursor position may be called during the execution of this event handler. The frequency with which this event is called can be controlled through the TDataSet.AutoCalcFields (528) property. Note that the value of lookup fields does not need to be calculated in this event, their value is computed automatically before this event is triggered.

See also: TDataSet.AutoCalcFields (528), TField.Kind (551)

16.23.101 TDataSet.OnDeleteError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a delete operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnDeleteError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnDeleteError` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Delete` (508) method fails to delete the record in the underlying database. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed delete should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445), `TDataSet.Delete` (508), `TDataSet.OnEditError` (535), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (536)

16.23.102 TDataSet.OnEditError

Synopsis: Event triggered when an edit operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnEditError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnEditError` is triggered when the `TDataSet.Edit` (509) method fails to put the dataset in edit mode because the underlying database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed edit operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445), `TDataSet.Edit` (509), `TDataSet.OnDeleteError` (535), `TDataSet.OnPostError` (536)

16.23.103 TDataSet.OnFilterRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered to filter records.

Declaration: `Property OnFilterRecord : TFilterRecordEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnFilterRecord` can be used to provide event-based filtering for datasets that support it. This event is only triggered when the `Tdataset.Filtered` (527) property is set to `True`. The event handler should set the `Accept` parameter to `True` if the current record should be accepted, or to `False` if it should be rejected. No methods that change the state of the dataset may be used during this event, and calculated fields or lookup field values are not yet available.

See also: `TDataset.Filter` (527), `TDataset.Filtered` (527), `TDataset.state` (526)

16.23.104 TDataSet.OnNewRecord

Synopsis: Event triggered when a new record is created.

Declaration: `Property OnNewRecord : TDataSetNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnNewRecord` is triggered by the `TDataset.Append` (505) or `TDataset.Insert` (514) methods when the buffer for the new record's data has been allocated. This event can be used to set default value for some of the fields in the dataset. If an exception is raised during this event handler, the operation is cancelled and the dataset is put again in browse mode (`TDataset.State` (526) is again `dsBrowse`).

See also: `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.Insert` (514), `TDataset.State` (526)

16.23.105 TDataSet.OnPostError

Synopsis: Event triggered when a post operation fails.

Declaration: `Property OnPostError : TDataSetErrorEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnPostError` is triggered when the `TDataset.Post` (517) method fails to post the changes in the dataset buffer to the underlying database, because the database engine reported an error. The event handler can be used to indicate what the response to the failed post operation should be. To this end, it gets the exception object passed to it (parameter `E`), and it can examine this object to return an appropriate action in the `DataAction` parameter. The following responses are supported:

daFailThe operation should fail (an exception will be raised).

daAbortThe operation should be aborted (edits are undone, and an `EAbort` exception is raised).

daRetryRetry the operation.

For more information, see also the description of the `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445) event handler type.

See also: `TDataSetErrorEvent` (445), `TDataset.Post` (517), `TDataset.OnDeleteError` (535), `TDataset.OnEditError` (535)

16.24 TDataSetEnumerator

16.24.1 Description

`TDataSetEnumerator` is an enumerator for the records in a dataset. It returns the `TDataSet.Fields` (526) instance. It navigates from the first till the last record in the dataset. The following is an example of how this can be used, in conjunction with the field enumerator:

```
var
  Rec : TFields;
  Fld : TField;

begin
  for Rec in MyDataset do
    for F in Rec do
      Writeln(F.Name, ' : ', F.AsString);
```

Note that the current record pointer of the dataset is modified as the loop is traversed. If the current record is modified by other code while the loop is running, the result may become unpredictable. Similarly, if 2 enumerators are used simultaneously for the same dataset, the results are unpredictable.

See also: `TDataSet` (498), `TFields` (586), `TFieldsEnumerator` (590)

16.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
537	Create	Create a new instance of the dataset enumerator.
537	MoveNext	Attempts to navigate to the next record.

16.24.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
538	Current	r	Current record.

16.24.4 TDataSetEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the dataset enumerator.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADataset: TDataSet)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` saves the dataset for later use, and puts the dataset on the first record.

Errors: None.

See also: `TDataSet` (498), `TDataSet.First` (512), `TFieldsEnumerator` (590)

16.24.5 TDataSetEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Attempts to navigate to the next record.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` attempts to navigate to the next record. It returns `True` if the attempt was successful, `False` if not (EOF is true).

See also: `TDataset.Next` (516), `TDataset.EOF` (522)

16.24.6 `TDatasetEnumerator.Current`

Synopsis: Current record.

Declaration: `Property Current : TFields`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` always returns `TDataset.Fields` (526).

See also: `TDataset.Fields` (526)

16.25 `TDataSource`

16.25.1 Description

`TDataSource` is a mediating component: it handles communication between any DB-Aware component (often edit controls on a form) and a `TDataset` (498) instance. Any database aware component should never communicate with a dataset directly. Instead, it should communicate with a `TDataSource` (538) instance. The `TDataset` instance will communicate with the `TDataSource` instance, which will notify every component attached to it. Vice versa, any component that wishes to make changes to the dataset, will notify the `TDataSource` instance, which will then (if needed) notify the `TDataset` instance. The datasource can be disabled, in which case all communication between the dataset and the DB-Aware components is suspended until the datasource is again enabled.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TDatalink` (493)

16.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
539	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TDataSource</code> .
539	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove a <code>TDataSource</code> instance from memory.
539	<code>Edit</code>	Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed.
539	<code>IsLinkedTo</code>	Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset.

16.25.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
540	<code>AutoEdit</code>	rw	Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically.
540	<code>DataSet</code>	rw	Dataset this datasource is connected to.
541	<code>Enabled</code>	rw	Enable or disable sending of events.
541	<code>OnDataChange</code>	rw	Called whenever data changes in the current record.
541	<code>OnStateChange</code>	rw	Called whenever the state of the dataset changes.
542	<code>OnUpdateData</code>	rw	Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated.
540	<code>State</code>	r	State of the dataset.

16.25.4 TDataSource.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TDataSource.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TDataSource. It simply allocates some resources and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: TDataSource.Destroy (539)

16.25.5 TDataSource.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a TDataSource instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` notifies all TDataLink (493) instances connected to it that the dataset is no longer available, and then removes itself from the TDataLink instance. It then cleans up all resources and calls the inherited constructor.

See also: TDataSource.Create (539), TDataLink (493)

16.25.6 TDataSource.Edit

Synopsis: Put the dataset in edit mode, if needed.

Declaration: `procedure Edit`

Visibility: public

Description: `Edit` will check `AutoEdit` (540): if it is `True`, then it puts the Dataset (540) it is connected to in edit mode, if it was in browse mode. If `AutoEdit` is `False`, then nothing happens. Application or component code that deals with GUI development should always attempt to set a dataset in edit mode through this method instead of calling `TDataSet.Edit` (509) directly.

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` (460) exception can occur if the dataset is read-only or fails to set itself in edit mode. (e.g. unidirectional datasets).

See also: TDataSource.AutoEdit (540), TDataSet.Edit (509), TDataSet.State (526)

16.25.7 TDataSource.IsLinkedTo

Synopsis: Check if a dataset is linked to a certain dataset.

Declaration: `function IsLinkedTo(ADataset: TDataSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsLinkedTo` checks if it is somehow linked to `ADataset`: it checks the `Dataset` (540) property, and returns `True` if it is the same. If not, it continues by checking any detail dataset fields that the dataset possesses (recursively). This function can be used to detect circular links in e.g. master-detail relationships.

See also: TDataSource.Dataset (540)

16.25.8 TDataSource.State

Synopsis: State of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property State : TDataSetState`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `State` contains the `State` (526) of the dataset it is connected to, or `dsInactive` if the dataset property is not set or the datasource is not enabled. Components connected to a dataset through a datasource property should always check `TDataSource.State` instead of checking `TDataSet.State` (526) directly, to take into account the effect of the `Enabled` (541) property.

See also: `TDataSet.State` (526), `TDataSource.Enabled` (541)

16.25.9 TDataSource.AutoEdit

Synopsis: Should the dataset be put in edit mode automatically.

Declaration: `Property AutoEdit : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AutoEdit` can be set to `True` to prevent visual controls from putting the dataset in edit mode. Visual controls use the `TDataSource.Edit` (539) method to attempt to put the dataset in edit mode as soon as the user changes something. If `AutoEdit` is set to `False` then the `Edit` method does nothing. The effect is that the user must explicitly set the dataset in edit mode (by clicking some button or some other action) before the fields can be edited.

See also: `TDataSource.Edit` (539), `TDataSet.Edit` (509)

16.25.10 TDataSource.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this datasource is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataSet` must be set by the application programmer to the `TDataSet` (498) instance for which this datasource is handling events. Setting it to `Nil` will disable all controls that are connected to this datasource instance. Once it is set and the datasource is enabled, the datasource will start sending data events to the controls or components connected to it.

See also: `TDataSet` (498), `TDataSource.Enabled` (541)

16.25.11 TDataSource.Enabled

Synopsis: Enable or disable sending of events.

Declaration: Property Enabled : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Enabled is by default set to True: the datasource instance communicates events from the dataset to components connected to the datasource, and vice versa: components can interact with the dataset. If the Enabled property is set to False then no events are communicated to connected components: it is as if the dataset property was set to Nil. Reversely, the components cannot interact with the dataset if the Enabled property is set to False.

See also: TDataset (498), TDataSource.Dataset (540), TDataSource.AutoEdit (540)

16.25.12 TDataSource.OnStateChange

Synopsis: Called whenever the state of the dataset changes.

Declaration: Property OnStateChange : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnStateChange is called whenever the TDataset.State (526) property changes, and the datasource is enabled. It can be used in application code to react to state changes: enabling or disabling non-DB-Aware controls, setting empty values etc.

See also: TDataSource.OnUpdateData (542), TDataSource.OnStateChange (541), TDataset.State (526), TDataSource.Enabled (541)

16.25.13 TDataSource.OnDataChange

Synopsis: Called whenever data changes in the current record.

Declaration: Property OnDataChange : TDataChangeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnDataChange is called whenever a field value changes: if the Field parameter is set, a single field value changed. If the Field parameter is Nil, then the whole record changed: when the dataset is opened, when the user scrolls to a new record. This event handler can be set to react to data changes: to update the contents of non-DB-aware controls for instance. The event is not called when the datasource is not enabled.

See also: TDataSource.OnUpdateData (542), TDataSource.OnStateChange (541), TDataset.AfterScroll (533), TField.OnChange (576), TDataSource.Enabled (541)

16.25.14 TDataSource.OnUpdateData

Synopsis: Called whenever the data in the dataset must be updated.

Declaration: `Property OnUpdateData : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnUpdateData` is called whenever the dataset needs the latest data from the controls: usually just before a `TDataset.Post` (517) operation. It can be used to copy data from non-db-aware controls to the dataset just before the dataset is posting the changes to the underlying database.

See also: `TDatasource.OnDataChange` (541), `TDatasource.OnStateChange` (541), `TDataset.Post` (517)

16.26 TDateField

16.26.1 Description

`TDateField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type date. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftDate`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class to be able to work with date fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each date field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TDateTimeField` (542), `TTimeField` (645)

16.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
542	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateField</code> class.

16.26.3 TDateField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with date values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.27 TDateTimeField

16.27.1 Description

`TDateTimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type datetime. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftDateTime`). It also serves as base class for the `TDateField` (542) or `TTimeField` (645) classes. It overrides some of the properties and methods of the `TField` (551) class to be able to work with date/time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TDateTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each datetime field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([498](#)), `TField` ([551](#)), `TDateField` ([542](#)), `TTimeField` ([645](#))

16.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
543	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TDateTimeField</code> class.

16.27.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
543	DisplayFormat	rw	Formatting string for textual representation of the field.
544	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
543	Value	rw	Contents of the field as a <code>TDateTime</code> value.

16.27.4 TDateTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TDateTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TDateTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([551](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with date/time values.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.27.5 TDateTimeField.Value

Synopsis: Contents of the field as a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `Property Value : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined from `TField.Value` ([568](#)) by `TDateTimeField` as a `TDateTime` value. It returns the same value as the `TField.AsDateTime` ([559](#)) property.

See also: `TField.AsDateTime` ([559](#)), `TField.Value` ([568](#))

16.27.6 TDateTimeField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Formatting string for textual representation of the field.

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayFormat` can be set to a formatting string that will then be used by the `TField.DisplayText` (565) property to format the value with the `DateTimeToString` (??) function.

See also: `DateTimeToString` (??), `FormatDateTime` (??), `TField.DisplayText` (565)

16.27.7 TDateTimeField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TDateTimeField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (565)

16.28 TDBDataset

16.28.1 Description

`TDBDataset` is a `TDataset` descendent which introduces the concept of a database: a central component (`TDatabase` (489)) which represents a connection to a database. This central component is exposed in the `TDBDataset.Database` (545) property. When the database is no longer connected, or is no longer in memory, all `TDBDataset` instances connected to it are disabled.

`TDBDataset` also introduces the notion of a transaction, exposed in the `Transaction` (545) property.

`TDBDataset` is an abstract class, it should never be used directly.

Dataset component writers should descend their component from `TDBDataset` if they wish to introduce a central database connection component. The database connection logic will be handled automatically by `TDBDataset`.

See also: `TDatabase` (489), `TDBTransaction` (545)

16.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
545	<code>destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TDBDataset</code> instance from memory.

16.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
545	<code>DataBase</code>	rw	Database this dataset is connected to.
545	<code>Transaction</code>	rw	Transaction in which this dataset is running.

16.28.4 TDBDataset.destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TDBDataset` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will disconnect the `TDBDataset` from its `Database` (545) and `Transaction` (545). After this it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDBDataset.Database` (545), `TDatabase` (489)

16.28.5 TDBDataset.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this dataset is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Database` should be set to the `TDatabase` (489) instance this dataset is connected to. It can only be set when the dataset is closed.

Descendent classes should check in the property setter whether the database instance is of the correct class.

Errors: If the property is set when the dataset is active, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception will be raised.

See also: `TDatabase` (489), `TDBDataset.Transaction` (545)

16.28.6 TDBDataset.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which this dataset is running.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transaction` points to a `TDBTransaction` (545) component that represents the transaction this dataset is active in. This property should only be used for databases that support transactions.

The property can only be set when the dataset is disabled.

See also: `TDBTransaction` (545), `TDBDataset.Database` (545)

16.29 TDBTransaction

16.29.1 Description

`TDBTransaction` encapsulates a SQL transaction. It is an abstract class, and should be used by component creators that wish to encapsulate transactions in a class. The `TDBTransaction` class offers functionality to refer to a `TDatabase` (489) instance, and to keep track of `TDataset` instances which are connected to the transaction.

See also: `TDatabase` (489), `TDataset` (498)

16.29.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
546	CloseDataSets	Close all connected datasets.
546	Create	Transaction property.
546	Destroy	Remove a <code>TDBTransaction</code> instance from memory.

16.29.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
547	Active	rw	Is the transaction active or not.
547	DataBase	rw	Database this transaction is connected to.

16.29.4 TDBTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Transaction property.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TDBTransaction` instance. It sets up the necessary resources, after having called the inherited constructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Destroy` ([546](#))

16.29.5 TDBTransaction.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove a `TDBTransaction` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` first disconnects all connected `TDBDataset` ([544](#)) instances and then cleans up the resources allocated in the `Create` ([546](#)) constructor. After that it calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Create` ([546](#))

16.29.6 TDBTransaction.CloseDataSets

Synopsis: Close all connected datasets.

Declaration: `procedure CloseDataSets`
`procedure CloseDataSets(InCommit: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CloseDatasets` closes all connected datasets (All `TDBDataset` ([544](#)) instances whose `Transaction` ([545](#)) property points to this `TDBTransaction` instance).

See also: `TDBDataset` ([544](#)), `TDBDataset.Transaction` ([545](#))

16.29.7 TDBTransaction.DataBase

Synopsis: Database this transaction is connected to.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDataBase`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DataBase` points to the database that this transaction is part of. This property can be set only when the transaction is not active.

Errors: Setting this property to a new value when the transaction is active will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TDBTransaction.Active` (547), `TDataBase` (489)

16.29.8 TDBTransaction.Active

Synopsis: Is the transaction active or not.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` is `True` if a transaction was started using `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (545). Reversely, setting `Active` to `True` will call `StartTransaction`, setting it to `False` will call `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (545).

See also: `TDBTransaction.StartTransaction` (545), `TDBTransaction.EndTransaction` (545)

16.30 TDefCollection

16.30.1 Description

`TDefCollection` is a parent class for the `TFieldDefs` (583) and `TIndexDefs` (601) collections: It holds a set of named definitions on behalf of a `TDataset` (498) component. To this end, it introduces a `dataset` (549) property, and a mechanism to notify the dataset of any updates in the collection. It is supposed to hold items of class `TNamedItem` (616), so the `TDefCollection.Find` (548) method can find items by named.

16.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
548	<code>create</code>	Instantiate a new <code>TDefCollection</code> instance.
548	<code>Find</code>	Find an item by name.
548	<code>GetItemNames</code>	Return a list of all names in the collection.
548	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find location of item by name.

16.30.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
549	<code>Dataset</code>	<code>r</code>	Dataset this collection manages definitions for.
549	<code>Updated</code>	<code>rw</code>	Has one of the items been changed.

16.30.4 TDefCollection.create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new TDefCollection instance.

Declaration: `constructor create(ADataset: TDataSet; AOwner: TPersistent;
AClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create saves the ADataset and AOwner components in local variables for later reference, and then calls the inherited Create with AClass as a parameter. AClass should at least be of type TNamedItem. ADataset is the dataset on whose behalf the collection is managed. AOwner is the owner of the collection, normally this is the form or datamodule on which the dataset is dropped.

See also: TDataSet ([498](#)), TNamedItem ([616](#))

16.30.5 TDefCollection.Find

Synopsis: Find an item by name.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Description: Find searches for an item in the collection with name AName and returns the item if it is found. If no item with the requested name is found, Nil is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

Errors: If no item with matching name is found, Nil is returned.

See also: TNamedItem.Name ([616](#)), TDefCollection.IndexOf ([548](#))

16.30.6 TDefCollection.GetItemNames

Synopsis: Return a list of all names in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure GetItemNames(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: GetItemNames fills List with the names of all items in the collection. It clears the list first.

Errors: If List is not a valid TStrings instance, an exception will occur.

See also: TNamedItem.Name ([616](#))

16.30.7 TDefCollection.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find location of item by name.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const AName: string) : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOf searches in the collection for an item whose Name property matches AName and returns the index of the item if it finds one. If no item is found, -1 is returned. The search is performed case-insensitive.

See also: TDefCollection.Find ([548](#)), TNamedItem.Name ([616](#))

16.30.8 TDefCollection.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset this collection manages definitions for.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset this collection manages definitions for. It must be supplied when the collection is created and cannot change during the lifetime of the collection.

16.30.9 TDefCollection.Updated

Synopsis: Has one of the items been changed.

Declaration: `Property Updated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Changed` indicates whether the collection has changed: an item was added or removed, or one of the properties of the items was changed.

16.31 TDetailDataLink

16.31.1 Description

`TDetailDataLink` handles the communication between a detail dataset and the master datasource in a master-detail relationship between datasets. It should never be used in an application, and should only be used by component writers that wish to provide master-detail functionality for `TDataSet` descendents.

See also: `TDataSet` ([498](#)), `TDataSource` ([538](#))

16.31.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
549	<code>DetailDataSet</code>	<code>r</code>	Detail dataset in Master-detail relation.

16.31.3 TDetailDataLink.DetailDataSet

Synopsis: Detail dataset in Master-detail relation.

Declaration: `Property DetailDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DetailDataSet` is the detail dataset in a master-detail relationship between 2 datasets. `DetailDataSet` is always `Nil` in `TDetailDataLink` and is only filled in in descendent classes like `TMasterDataLink` ([611](#)). The master dataset is available through the regular `TDataLink.DataSource` ([497](#)) property.

See also: `TDataSet` ([498](#)), `TMasterDataLink` ([611](#)), `TDataLink.DataSource` ([497](#))

16.32 TExtendedField

16.32.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
550	CheckRange	
550	Create	

16.32.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
550	Currency	rw	
550	MaxValue	rw	
551	MinValue	rw	
551	Precision	rw	
550	Value	rw	

16.32.3 TExtendedField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

16.32.4 TExtendedField.CheckRange

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Extended) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

16.32.5 TExtendedField.Value

Declaration: `Property Value : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.32.6 TExtendedField.Currency

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.32.7 TExtendedField.MaxValue

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Extended`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.32.8 TExtendedField.MinValue

Declaration: Property MinValue : Extended

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.32.9 TExtendedField.Precision

Declaration: Property Precision : LongInt

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.33 TField

16.33.1 Description

TField is an abstract class that defines access methods for a field in a record, controlled by a **TDataset** (498) instance. It provides methods and properties to access the contents of the field in the current record. Reading one of the **AsXXX** properties of **TField** will access the field contents and return the contents as the desired type. Writing one of the **AsXXX** properties will write a value to the buffer represented by the **TField** instance.

TField is an abstract class, meaning that it should never be created directly. **TDataset** instances always create one of the descendent classes of **TField**, depending on the type of the underlying data.

See also: **TDataset** (498), **TFieldDef** (577), **TFields** (586)

16.33.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
554	Assign	Copy properties from one TField instance to another.
554	AssignValue	Assign value of a variant record to the field.
555	Clear	Clear the field contents.
554	Create	Create a new TField instance.
554	Destroy	Destroy the TField instance.
555	FocusControl	Set focus to the first control connected to this field.
555	GetData	Get the data from this field.
556	IsBlob	Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).
556	IsValidChar	Check whether a character is valid input for the field.
556	RefreshLookupList	Refresh the lookup list.
556	SetData	Save the field data.
557	SetFieldType	Set the field data type.
557	Validate	Validate the data buffer.

16.33.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
569	Alignment	rw	Alignment for this field.
561	AsAnsiString	rw	Return field contents as an ANSI string.
557	AsBCD	rw	Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal).
558	AsBoolean	rw	Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.
558	AsBytes	rw	Retrieve the contents of the field as an array of bytes.
558	AsCurrency	rw	Access the field's contents as a Currency value.
559	AsDateTime	rw	Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.
559	AsExtended	rw	
559	AsFloat	rw	Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.
560	AsInteger	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
560	AsLargeInt	rw	Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.
559	AsLongint	rw	Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.
560	AsLongWord	rw	Access field contents as 32-bit unsigned integer (longword/cardinal).
561	AsSingle	rw	
561	AsString	rw	Access the field's contents as an AnsiString value.
562	AsUnicodeString	rw	Field contents as a UnicodeString.
562	AsUTF8String	rw	Field contents as a UTF8 String.
563	AsVariant	rw	Access the field's contents as a Variant value.
562	AsWideString	rw	Access the field's contents as a WideString value.
563	AttributeSet	rw	Not used: dictionary information.
563	Calculated	rw	Is the field a calculated field ?
563	CanModify	r	Can the field's contents be modified.
570	ConstraintErrorMessage	rw	Message to display if the CustomConstraint constraint is violated.
564	CurValue	r	Current value of the field.
570	CustomConstraint	rw	Custom constraint for the field's value.
564	DataSet	rw	Dataset this field belongs to.
564	DataSet	r	Size of the field's data.
564	DataType	r	The data type of the field.
570	DefaultExpression	rw	Default value for the field.
571	DisplayLabel	rws	Name of the field for display purposes.
565	DisplayName	r	User-readable fieldname.
565	DisplayText	r	Formatted field value.
571	DisplayWidth	rws	Width of the field in characters.
565	EditMask	rw	Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
566	EditMaskPtr	r	Alias for EditMask.
569	FieldDef	r	Fielddef associated with this field.
571	FieldKind	rw	The kind of field.
571	FieldName	rw	Name of the field.
566	FieldNo	r	Number of the field in the record.
572	HasConstraints	r	Does the field have any constraints defined.
572	ImportedConstraint	rw	Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database.
572	Index	rw	Index of the field in the list of fields.
566	IsIndexField	r	Is the field an indexed field ?
566	IsNull	r	Is the field empty.
573	KeyFields	rw	Key fields to use when looking up a field value.
574	Lookup	rws	Is this field a lookup field.
573	LookupCache	rw	Should lookup values be cached.
573	LookupDataSet	rw	Dataset with lookup values.
573	LookupKeyFields	rw	Names of fields on which to perform a locate.
569	LookupList	r	List of lookup values.
574	LookupResultField	rw	Name of field to use as lookup value.

16.33.4 TField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new TField instance.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new TField instance and sets up initial values for the fields. TField is a component, and AOwner will be used as the owner of the TField instance. This usually will be the form or datamodule on which the dataset was placed. There should normally be no need for a programmer to create a Tfield instance manually. The TDataSet.Open (517) method will create the necessary TField instances, if none had been created in the designer.

See also: TDataSet.Open (517)

16.33.5 TField.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TField instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up any structures set up by the field instance, and then calls the inherited destructor. There should be no need to call this method under normal circumstances: the dataset instance will free any TField instances it has created when the dataset was opened.

See also: TDataSet.Close (507)

16.33.6 TField.Assign

Synopsis: Copy properties from one TField instance to another.

Declaration: procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Assign is overridden by TField to copy the field value (not the field properties) from Source if it exists. If Source is Nil then the value of the field is cleared.

Errors: If Source is not a TField instance, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TField.Value (568)

16.33.7 TField.AssignValue

Synopsis: Assign value of a variant record to the field.

Declaration: procedure AssignValue(const AValue: TVarRec)

Visibility: public

Description: AssignValue assigns the value of a "array of const" record AValue (of type TVarRec) to the field's value. If the record contains a TPersistent instance, it will be used as argument for the Assign to the field.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the `AValue` contains an unsupported value (such as a non-nil pointer) then an exception will be raised. If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TField.Assign` (554), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.8 TField.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the field contents.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the contents of the field. After calling this method the value of the field is `Null` and `IsNull` (566) returns `True`.

The dataset must be in edit mode to execute this method.

Errors: If the dataset is not in one of the edit modes, then executing this method will raise an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (566), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.9 TField.FocusControl

Synopsis: Set focus to the first control connected to this field.

Declaration: `procedure FocusControl`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FocusControl` will set focus to the first control that is connected to this field.

Errors: If the control cannot receive focus, then this method will raise an exception.

See also: `TDataset.EnableControls` (510), `TDataset.DisableControls` (509)

16.33.10 TField.GetData

Synopsis: Get the data from this field.

Declaration: `function GetData(Buffer: Pointer) : Boolean; overload`
`function GetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean) : Boolean`
`; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetData` is used internally by `TField` to fetch the value of the data of this field into the data buffer pointed to by `Buffer`. It returns `False` if the field has no value (i.e. is `Null`). If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format. It should not be necessary to use this method, instead use the various 'AsXXX' methods to access the data.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (566), `TField.SetData` (556), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.11 TField.IsBlob

Synopsis: Is the field a BLOB field (untyped data of indeterminate size).

Declaration: `class function IsBlob : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsBlob` returns `True` if the field is one of the blob field types. The `TField` implementation returns `false`. Only one of the blob-type field classes override this function and let it return `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBlobField.IsBlob` ([474](#))

16.33.12 TField.IsValidChar

Synopsis: Check whether a character is valid input for the field.

Declaration: `function IsValidChar(InputChar: char) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsValidChar` checks whether `InputChar` is a valid characters for the current field. It does this by checking whether `InputChar` is in the set of characters specified by the `TField.ValidChars` ([568](#)) property. The `ValidChars` property will be initialized to a correct set of characters by descendent classes. For instance, a numerical field will only accept numerical characters and the sign and decimal separator characters.

Descendent classes can override this method to provide custom checks. The `ValidChars` property can be set to restrict the list of valid characters to a subset of what would normally be available.

See also: `TField.ValidChars` ([568](#))

16.33.13 TField.RefreshLookupList

Synopsis: Refresh the lookup list.

Declaration: `procedure RefreshLookupList`

Visibility: public

Description: `RefreshLookupList` fills the lookup list for a lookup fields with all key, value pairs found in the lookup dataset. It will open the lookup dataset if needed. The lookup list is only used if the `TField.LookupCache` ([573](#)) property is set to `True`.

Errors: If the values of the various lookup properties is not correct or the lookup dataset cannot be opened, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `LookupDataset` ([573](#)), `LookupKeyFields` ([573](#)), `LookupResultField` ([574](#))

16.33.14 TField.SetData

Synopsis: Save the field data.

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer); overload`
`procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer; NativeFormat: Boolean); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` saves the value of the field data in `Buffer` to the dataset internal buffer. The `Buffer` pointer should point to a memory buffer containing the data for the field in the correct format. If the `NativeFormat` parameter is true, then date/time formats should use the `TDateTime` format.

There should normally not be any need to call `SetData` directly: it is called by the various setter methods of the `AsXXX` properties of `TField`.

Errors: No validity checks are performed on `Buffer`: it should point to a valid memory area, and should be large enough to contain the value of the field. Failure to provide a buffer that matches these criteria will result in an exception.

See also: `TField.GetData` (555), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.15 TField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field data type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` does nothing, but it can be overridden by descendent classes to provide special handling when the field type is set.

See also: `TField.DataType` (564)

16.33.16 TField.Validate

Synopsis: Validate the data buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Validate(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Validate` is called by `SetData` prior to writing the data from `Buffer` to the dataset buffer. It will call the `TField.OnValidate` (577) event handler, if one is set, to allow the application programmer to program additional checks.

See also: `TField.SetData` (556), `TField.OnValidate` (577)

16.33.17 TField.AsBCD

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a BCD (Binary coded Decimal).

Declaration: `Property AsBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a BCD value (Binary Coded Decimal). If the native type of the field is not BCD, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a BCD value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a BCD value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.AsCurrency` (558), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.18 TField.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Boolean value.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a boolean value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a boolean value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a Boolean value (for instance a string value), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsInteger` ([560](#))

16.33.19 TField.AsBytes

Synopsis: Retrieve the contents of the field as an array of bytes.

Declaration: `Property AsBytes : TBytes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBytes` returns the contents of the field as an array of bytes. For blob data this is the actual blob content.

See also: `TBlobField` ([473](#))

16.33.20 TField.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Currency value.

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a currency value. If the native type of the field is not Boolean, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a currency value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a currency-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsFloat` ([559](#))

16.33.21 TField.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsDateTime` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a TDateTime value (for both date and time values). If the native type of the field is not a date or time value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a TDateTime value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a TDateTime-compatible value (dates or string values), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsString` ([561](#))

16.33.22 TField.AsExtended

Declaration: `Property AsExtended : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

16.33.23 TField.AsFloat

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a floating-point (Double) value.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a floating-point value (of type double, i.e. with double precision). If the native type of the field is not a floating-point value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a floating-point value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a floating-point-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsString` ([561](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([558](#))

16.33.24 TField.AsLongint

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLongint : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLongint` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `longint`). If the native type of the field is not a longint value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a longint value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised. This is an alias for the `TField.AsInteger` (560).

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.AsInteger` (560)

16.33.25 TField.AsLongWord

Synopsis: Access field contents as 32-bit unsigned integer (longword/cardinal).

Declaration: `Property AsLongWord : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `Integer`). If the native type of the field is not an integer value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a integer value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit unsigned integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsInteger` (560)

16.33.26 TField.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 64-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 64-bit signed integer value (of type `Int64`). If the native type of the field is not an `Int64` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to an `Int64` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 64-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.AsInteger` (560)

16.33.27 TField.AsInteger

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a 32-bit signed integer (longint) value.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a 32-bit signed integer value (of type `Integer`). If the native type of the field is not an integer value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a integer value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a 32-bit signed integer-compatible value (string values for instance), an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsString` ([561](#)), `TField.AsLongint` ([559](#)), `TField.AsInt64` ([551](#))

16.33.28 TField.AsSingle

Declaration: `Property AsSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

16.33.29 TField.AsString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as an `AnsiString` value.

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as an `AnsiString` value. If the native type of the field is not an `ansistring` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `ansistring` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefor, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not an `ansistring`-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AsWideString` ([562](#))

16.33.30 TField.AsAnsiString

Synopsis: Return field contents as an ANSI string.

Declaration: `Property AsAnsiString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsAnsiString` returns the field data as an ANSI string (single byte character string). Note that if the field contains unicode data, some characters may get lost when reading.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([561](#)), `TField.AsUnicodeString` ([562](#)), `TField.AsUTF8String` ([562](#)), `TField.CodePage` ([551](#))

16.33.31 TField.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Field contents as a UnicodeString.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUnicodeString` returns the field data as a Unicode string (double byte character string). If the field contains an `AnsiString`, the data will be converted to unicode according to the `CodePage` (551) when reading, and when writing the written data will be converted to single-byte string. Note that if the field is an `ansistring` field, some characters may get lost when writing.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.AsAnsiString` (561), `TField.AsUTF8String` (562), `TField.CodePage` (551)

16.33.32 TField.AsUTF8String

Synopsis: Field contents as a UTF8 String.

Declaration: `Property AsUTF8String : UTF8String`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the field data as a UTF8-Encoded string (single byte character string). If the field contains an `AnsiString`, the data will be converted to unicode according to the `CodePage` (551). If the field contains a unicode string, the string is UTF-8 encoded. When writing the written data will be converted to single-byte string. Note that if the field is an `ansistring` field, some characters may get lost when writing.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.AsUnicodeString` (562), `TField.AsAnsi8String` (551), `TField.CodePage` (551)

16.33.33 TField.AsWideString

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a WideString value.

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWideString` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a `WideString` value. If the native type of the field is not a `widestring` value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a `widestring` value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a `widestring-compatible` value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.Astring` (551)

16.33.34 TField.AsVariant

Synopsis: Access the field's contents as a Variant value.

Declaration: `Property AsVariant : variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsVariant` can be used to read or write the contents of the field as a Variant value. If the native type of the field is not a Variant value, then an attempt will be made to convert the field value from the native format to a variant value when reading the field's content. Likewise, when writing the property, the value will be converted to the native type of the field (if the value allows it). Therefore, when reading or writing a field value for a field whose native data type is not a variant-compatible value, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#)), `TField.AString` ([551](#))

16.33.35 TField.AttributeSet

Synopsis: Not used: dictionary information.

Declaration: `Property AttributeSet : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AttributeSet` was used in older Delphi versions to store data dictionary information for use in data-aware controls at design time. Not used in FreePascal (or newer Delphi versions); kept for Delphi compatibility.

16.33.36 TField.Calculated

Synopsis: Is the field a calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property Calculated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Calculated` is `True` if the `FieldKind` ([571](#)) is `fkCalculated`. Setting the property will result in `FieldKind` being set to `fkCalculated` (for a value of `True`) or `fkData`. This property should be considered read-only.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` ([571](#))

16.33.37 TField.CanModify

Synopsis: Can the field's contents be modified.

Declaration: `Property CanModify : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `CanModify` is `True` if the field is not read-only and the dataset allows modification.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` ([575](#)), `TDataset.CanModify` ([521](#))

16.33.38 TField.CurValue

Synopsis: Current value of the field.

Declaration: `Property CurValue : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CurValue` returns the current value of the field as a variant.

See also: `TField.Value` ([568](#))

16.33.39 TField.DataSet

Synopsis: Dataset this field belongs to.

Declaration: `Property DataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `DataSet` contains the dataset this field belongs to. Writing this property will add the field to the list of fields of a dataset, after removing it from the list of fields of the dataset the field was previously assigned to. It should under normal circumstances never be necessary to set this property, the `TDataSet` code will take care of this.

See also: `TDataSet` ([498](#)), `TDataSet.Fields` ([526](#))

16.33.40 TField.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the field's data.

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSize` is the memory size needed to store the field's contents. This is different from the `Size` ([567](#)) property which declares a logical size for datatypes that have a variable size (such as string fields). For BLOB fields, use the `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([476](#)) property to get the size of the field's contents for the current record..

See also: `TField.Size` ([567](#)), `TBlobField.BlobSize` ([476](#))

16.33.41 TField.DataType

Synopsis: The data type of the field.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Datatype` indicates the type of data the field has. This property is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset. Instead of checking the class type of the field, it is better to check the `Datatype`, since the actual class of the `TField` instance may differ depending on the dataset.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (571)

16.33.42 TField.DisplayName

Synopsis: User-readable fieldname.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayName` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` (571) property, unless assigned another value.

The use of this property is deprecated. Use `DisplayLabel` (571) instead.

See also: `Tfield.FieldName` (571)

16.33.43 TField.DisplayText

Synopsis: Formatted field value.

Declaration: `Property DisplayText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `DisplayText` returns the field's value as it should be displayed to the user, with all necessary formatting applied. Controls that should display the value of the field should use `DisplayText` instead of the `TField.AsString` (561) property, which does not take into account any formatting.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561)

16.33.44 TField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask : TEditMask`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TDateTimeField.EditMask` (544), `TStringField.EditMask` (644)

16.33.45 TField.EditMaskPtr

Synopsis: Alias for EditMask.

Declaration: `Property EditMaskPtr : TEditMask`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EditMaskPtr` is a read-only alias for the `EditMask` (565) property. It is not used.

See also: `TField.EditMask` (565)

16.33.46 TField.FieldNo

Synopsis: Number of the field in the record.

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldNo` is the position of the field in the record. It is a 1-based index and is initialized when the dataset is opened or when persistent fields are created for the dataset.

See also: `TField.Index` (572)

16.33.47 TField.IsIndexField

Synopsis: Is the field an indexed field ?

Declaration: `Property IsIndexField : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsIndexField` is true if the field is an indexed field. By default this property is `False`, descendants of `TDataset` (498) can change this to `True`.

See also: `TField.Calculated` (563)

16.33.48 TField.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the field empty.

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the field does not have a value. If the underlying data contained a value, or a value is written to it, `IsNull` will return `False`. After `TDataset.Insert` (514) is called or `Clear` (555) is called then `IsNull` will return `True`.

See also: `TField.Clear` (555), `TDataset.Insert` (514)

16.33.49 TField.NewValue

Synopsis: The new value of the field.

Declaration: `Property NewValue : Variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NewValue` returns the new value of the field. The FPC implementation of `TDataset` (498) does not yet support this.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.CurValue` (564)

16.33.50 TField.Offset

Synopsis: Offset of the field's value in the dataset buffer.

Declaration: `Property Offset : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Offset` is the location of the field's contents in the dataset memory buffer. It is read-only and initialized by the dataset when it is opened.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (566), `TField.Index` (572), `TField.Datasize` (564)

16.33.51 TField.Size

Synopsis: Logical size of the field.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the field for datatypes that can have variable size, such as string types, BCD types or array types. To get the size of the storage needed to store the field's content, the `DataSize` (564) should be used. For blob fields, the current size of the data is not guaranteed to be present.

See also: `DataSize` (564)

16.33.52 TField.Text

Synopsis: Text representation of the field.

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Text` can be used to retrieve or set the value of the value as a string value for editing purposes. It will trigger the `TField.OnGetText` (576) event handler if a handler was specified. For display purposes, the `TField.DisplayText` (565) property should be used. Controls that should display the value in a textual format should use `Text` whenever they must display the text for editing purposes. Inversely, when a control should save the value entered by the user, it should write the contents to the `Text` property, not the `AsString` (561) property, this will invoke the `TField.OnSetText` (576) event handler, if one is set.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.DisplayText` (565), `TField.Value` (568)

16.33.53 TField.ValidChars

Synopsis: Characters that are valid input for the field's content.

Declaration: `Property ValidChars : TFieldChars`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ValidChars` is a property that is initialized by descendent classes to contain the set of characters that can be entered in an edit control which is used to edit the field. Numerical fields will set this to a set of numerical characters, string fields will set this to all possible characters. It is possible to restrict the possible input by setting this property to a subset of all possible characters (for example, set it to all uppercase letters to allow the user to enter only uppercase characters. `TField` itself does not enforce the validity of the data when the content of the field is set, an edit control should check the validity of the user input by means of the `IsValidChar` (556) function.

See also: `TField.IsValidChar` (556)

16.33.54 TField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a variant value.

Declaration: `Property Value : variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` can be used to read or write the value of the field as a Variant value. When setting the value, the value will be converted to the actual type of the field as defined in the underlying data. Likewise, when reading the value property, the actual field value will be converted to a variant value. If the field does not contain a value (when `IsNull` (566) returns `True`), then `Value` will contain `Null`.

It is not recommended to use the `Value` property: it should only be used when the type of the field is unknown. If the type of the field is known, it is better to use one of the `AsXXX` properties, which will not only result in faster code, but will also avoid strange type conversions.

See also: `TField.IsNull` (566), `TField.Text` (567), `TField.DisplayText` (565)

16.33.55 TField.OldValue

Synopsis: Old value of the field.

Declaration: `Property OldValue : variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `OldValue` returns the value of the field prior to an edit operation. This feature is currently not supported in FPC.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.CurValue` (564), `TField.NewValue` (567)

16.33.56 TField.LookupList

Synopsis: List of lookup values.

Declaration: `Property LookupList : TLookupList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LookupList` contains the list of key, value pairs used when caching the possible lookup values for a lookup field. The list is only valid when the `LookupCache` (573) property is set to `True`. It can be refreshed using the `RefreshLookupList` (556) method.

See also: `TField.RefreshLookupList` (556), `TField.LookupCache` (573)

16.33.57 TField.FieldDef

Synopsis: `Fielddef` associated with this field.

Declaration: `Property FieldDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldDef` references the `TFieldDef` instance to which this field instance is bound. When a dataset is opened, the `TDataset.FieldDefs` (523) property is filled with field definitions as returned from the server. After this fields are created, or if they already exist, are bound to these fielddefs.

See also: `TDataset.FieldDefs` (523)

16.33.58 TField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment for this field.

Declaration: `Property Alignment : TAlignment`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Alignment` contains the alignment that UI controls should observe when displaying the contents of the field. Setting the property at the field level will make sure that all DB-Aware controls will display the contents of the field with the same alignment.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (565)

16.33.59 TField.CustomConstraint

Synopsis: Custom constraint for the field's value.

Declaration: `Property CustomConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomConstraint` may contain a constraint that will be enforced when the dataset posts it's data. It should be a SQL-like expression that results in a `True` or `False` value. Examples of valid constraints are:

```
Salary < 10000  
YearsEducation < Age
```

If the constraint is not satisfied when the record is posted, then an exception will be raised with the value of `ConstraintErrorMessage` (570) as a message.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` (570), `TField.ImportedConstraint` (572)

16.33.60 TField.ConstraintErrorMessage

Synopsis: Message to display if the `CustomConstraint` constraint is violated.

Declaration: `Property ConstraintErrorMessage : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConstraintErrorMessage` is the message that should be displayed when the dataset checks the constraints and the constraint in `TField.CustomConstraint` (570) is violated.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` (570)

16.33.61 TField.DefaultExpression

Synopsis: Default value for the field.

Declaration: `Property DefaultExpression : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultValue` can be set to a value that should be entered in the field whenever the `TDataset.Append` (505) or `TDataset.Insert` (514) methods are executed. It should contain a valid SQL expression that results in the correct type for the field.

This feature is not yet implemented in FPC.

See also: `TDataset.Insert` (514), `TDataset.Append` (505), `TDataset.CustomConstraint` (498)

16.33.62 TField.DisplayLabel

Synopsis: Name of the field for display purposes.

Declaration: `Property DisplayLabel : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayLabel` is the name of the field as it will be displayed to the user e.g. in grid column headers. By default it equals the `FieldName` (571) property, unless assigned another value.

See also: `TField.FieldName` (571)

16.33.63 TField.DisplayWidth

Synopsis: Width of the field in characters.

Declaration: `Property DisplayWidth : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayWidth` is the width (in characters) that should be used by controls that display the contents of the field (such as in grids or lookup lists). It is initialized to a default value for most fields (e.g. it equals `Size` (567) for string fields) but can be modified to obtain a more appropriate value for the field's expected content.

See also: `TField.Alignment` (569), `TField.DisplayText` (565)

16.33.64 TField.FieldKind

Synopsis: The kind of field.

Declaration: `Property FieldKind : TFieldKind`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldKind` indicates the type of the `TField` instance. Besides `TField` instances that represent fields present in the underlying data records, there can also be calculated or lookup fields. This property determines what kind of field the `TField` instance is.

16.33.65 TField.FieldName

Synopsis: Name of the field.

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldName` is the name of the field as it is defined in the underlying data structures (for instance the name of the field in a SQL table, DBase file, or the alias of the field if it was aliased in a SQL `SELECT` statement. It does not always equal the `Name` property, which is the name of the `TField` component instance. The `Name` property will generally equal the name of the dataset appended with the value of the `FieldName` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Name` (577), `TField.Size` (567), `TField.DataType` (564)

16.33.66 TField.HasConstraints

Synopsis: Does the field have any constraints defined.

Declaration: `Property HasConstraints : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `HasConstraints` will contain `True` if one of the `CustomConstraint` (570) or `ImportedConstraint` (572) properties is set to a non-empty value.

See also: `CustomConstraint` (570), `ImportedConstraint` (572)

16.33.67 TField.Index

Synopsis: Index of the field in the list of fields.

Declaration: `Property Index : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Index` is the name of the field in the list of fields of a dataset. It is, in general, the (0-based) position of the field in the underlying data structures, but this need not always be so. The `TField.FieldNo` (566) property should be used for that.

See also: `TField.FieldNo` (566)

16.33.68 TField.ImportedConstraint

Synopsis: Constraint for the field value on the level of the underlying database.

Declaration: `Property ImportedConstraint : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ImportedConstraint` contains any constraints that the underlying data engine imposes on the values of a field (usually in an SQL `CONSTRAINT`) clause. Whether this field is filled with appropriate data depends on the implementation of the `TDataset` (498) descendent.

See also: `TField.CustomConstraint` (570), `TDataset` (498), `TField.ConstraintErrorMessage` (570)

16.33.69 TField.KeyFields

Synopsis: Key fields to use when looking up a field value.

Declaration: `Property KeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the lookupfield's dataset which will be matched to the fields enumerated in `LookupKeyFields` (573) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (573) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (573), `LookupDataset` (573)

16.33.70 TField.LookupCache

Synopsis: Should lookup values be cached.

Declaration: `Property LookupCache : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupCache` is by default `False`. If it is set to `True` then a list of key, value pairs will be created from the `LookupKeyFields` (573) in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (573) property. The list of key, value pairs is available through the `TField.LookupList` (569) property.

See also: `LookupKeyFields` (573), `LookupDataset` (573), `TField.LookupList` (569)

16.33.71 TField.LookupDataSet

Synopsis: Dataset with lookup values.

Declaration: `Property LookupDataSet : TDataSet`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupDataset` is used by lookup fields to fetch the field's value. The `LookupKeyFields` (573) property is used as a list of fields to locate a record in this dataset, and the value of the `LookupResultField` (574) field is then used as the value of the lookup field.

See also: `KeyFields` (573), `LookupKeyFields` (573), `LookupResultField` (574), `LookupCache` (573)

16.33.72 TField.LookupKeyFields

Synopsis: Names of fields on which to perform a locate.

Declaration: `Property LookupKeyFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupKeyFields` should contain a semi-colon separated list of field names from the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (573) property. These fields will be used when locating a record corresponding to the values in the `TField.KeyFields` (573) property.

See also: `KeyFields` (573), `LookupDataset` (573), `LookupResultField` (574), `LookupCache` (573)

16.33.73 TField.LookupResultField

Synopsis: Name of field to use as lookup value.

Declaration: `Property LookupResultField : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LookupResultField` contains the field name from a field in the dataset pointed to by the `LookupDataset` (573) property. The value of this field will be used as the lookup's field value when a record is found in the lookup dataset as result for the lookup field value.

See also: `KeyFields` (573), `LookupDataset` (573), `LookupKeyFields` (573), `LookupCache` (573)

16.33.74 TField.Lookup

Synopsis: Is the field a lookup field.

Declaration: `Property Lookup : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Lookup` is `True` if the `FieldKind` (571) equals `fkLookup`, `False` otherwise. Setting the `Lookup` property will switch the `FieldKind` between the `fkLookup` and `fkData`.

See also: `TField.FieldKind` (571)

16.33.75 TField.Origin

Synopsis: Original fieldname of the field.

Declaration: `Property Origin : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Origin` contains the origin of the field in the form `TableName.fieldName`. This property is filled only if the `TDataset` (498) descendent or the database engine support retrieval of this property. It can be used to automatically create update statements, together with the `TField.ProviderFlags` (575) property.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField.ProviderFlags` (575)

16.33.76 TField.ParentField

Declaration: `Property ParentField : TObjectField`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.33.77 TField.ProviderFlags

Synopsis: Flags for provider or update support.

Declaration: `Property ProviderFlags : TProviderFlags`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ProviderFlags` contains a set of flags that can be used by engines that automatically generate update SQL statements or update data packets. The various items in the set tell the engine whether the key is a key field, should be used in the where clause of an update statement or whether - in fact - it should be updated at all.

These properties should be set by the programmer so engines such as SQLDB can create correct update SQL statements whenever they need to post changes to the database. Note that to be able to set these properties in a designer, persistent fields must be created.

See also: `TField.Origin` ([574](#))

16.33.78 TField.ReadOnly

Synopsis: Is the field read-only.

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReadOnly` can be set to `True` to prevent controls of writing data to the field, effectively making it a read-only field. Setting this property to `True` does not prevent the field from getting a value through code: it is just an indication for GUI controls that the field's value is considered read-only.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([581](#))

16.33.79 TField.Required

Synopsis: Does the field require a value.

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Required` determines whether the field needs a value when posting the data: when a dataset posts the changed made to a record (new or existing), it will check whether all fields with the `Required` property have a value assigned to them. If not, an exception will be raised. Descendents of `TDataset` ([498](#)) will set the property to `True` when opening the dataset, depending on whether the field is required in the underlying data engine. For fields that are not required by the database engine, the programmer can still set the property to `True` if the business logic requires a field.

See also: `TDataset.Open` ([517](#)), `ReadOnly` ([575](#)), `Visible` ([576](#))

16.33.80 TField.Visible

Synopsis: Should the field be shown in grids.

Declaration: `Property Visible : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Visible` can be used to hide fields from a grid when displaying data to the user. Invisible fields will by default not be shown in the grid.

See also: `TField.ReadOnly` (575), `TField.Required` (575)

16.33.81 TField.OnChange

Synopsis: Event triggered when the field's value has changed.

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnChange` is triggered whenever the field's value has been changed. It is triggered only after the new contents have been written to the dataset buffer, so it can be used to react to changes in the field's content. To prevent the writing of changes to the buffer, use the `TField.OnValidate` (577) event. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler: doing so may lead to infinite loops and other unexpected results.

See also: `TField.OnChange` (576)

16.33.82 TField.OnGetText

Synopsis: Event to format the field's content.

Declaration: `Property OnGetText : TFieldGetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnGetText` is triggered whenever the `TField.Text` (567) or `TField.DisplayText` (565) properties are read. It can be used to return a custom formatted string in the `AText` parameter which will then typically be used by a control to display the field's contents to the user. It is not allowed to change the state of the dataset or the contents of the field during the execution of this event handler.

See also: `TField.Text` (567), `TField.DisplayText` (565), `TField.OnSetText` (576), `TFieldGetTextEvent` (447)

16.33.83 TField.OnSetText

Synopsis: Event to set the field's content based on a user-formatted string.

Declaration: `Property OnSetText : TFieldSetTextEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnSetText` is called whenever the `TField.Text` ([567](#)) property is written. It can be used to set the actual value of the field based on the passed `AText` parameter. Typically, this event handler will perform the inverse operation of the `TField.OnGetText` ([576](#)) handler, if it exists.

See also: `TField.Text` ([567](#)), `TField.OnGetText` ([576](#)), `TField.GetTextEvent` ([447](#))

16.33.84 TField.OnValidate

Synopsis: Event to validate the value of a field before it is written to the data buffer.

Declaration: `Property OnValidate : TFieldNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnValidate` is called prior to writing a new field value to the dataset's data buffer. It can be used to prevent writing the new value to the buffer by raising an exception in the event handler. Note that this event handler is always called, irrespective of the way the value of the field is set.

See also: `TField.Text` ([567](#)), `TField.OnGetText` ([576](#)), `TField.OnSetText` ([576](#)), `TField.OnChange` ([576](#))

16.34 TFieldDef

16.34.1 Description

`TFieldDef` is used to describe the fields that are present in the data underlying the dataset. For each field in the underlying field, an `TFieldDef` instance is created when the dataset is opened. This class offers almost no methods, it is mainly a storage class, to store all relevant properties of fields in a record (name, data type, size, required or not, etc.)

See also: `TDataset.FieldDefs` ([523](#)), `TFieldDefs` ([583](#))

16.34.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
579	<code>AddChild</code>	
579	<code>Assign</code>	Assign the contents of one <code>TFieldDef</code> instance to another.
578	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for <code>TFieldDef</code> .
579	<code>CreateField</code>	Create <code>TField</code> instance based on definitions in current <code>TFieldDef</code> instance.
578	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TFieldDef</code> instance.
579	<code>HasChildDefs</code>	

16.34.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
581	Attributes	rw	Additional attributes of the field.
580	CharSize	r	Character size.
582	ChildDefs	rws	
581	Codepage	r	System code page for the values in string and wide string field types.
582	DataType	rw	Data type for the field.
579	FieldClass	r	TField class used for this fielddef.
580	FieldNo	r	Field number.
580	InternalCalcField	rw	Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?
581	ParentDef	r	
582	Precision	rw	Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields.
581	Required	rw	Is the field required ?
582	Size	rw	Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field.

16.34.4 TFieldDef.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for TFieldDef.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`
`constructor Create(AOwner: TFieldDefs; const AName: string;`
`ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Integer;`
`ARequired: Boolean; AFieldNo: LongInt;`
`ACodePage: TSystemCodePage=CP_ACP); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the constructor for the `TFieldDef` class.

If a simple call is used, with a single argument `ACollection`, the inherited `Create` is called and the Field number is set to the incremented current index.

If the more complicated call is used, with multiple arguments, then after the inherited `Create` call, the Name ([577](#)), datatype ([582](#)), size ([582](#)), precision ([582](#)), FieldNo ([580](#)), Required ([581](#)) and CodePage ([581](#)) property are all set according to the passed arguments.

Errors: If a duplicate name is passed, then an exception will occur.

See also: Name ([577](#)), datatype ([582](#)), size ([582](#)), precision ([582](#)), FieldNo ([580](#)), Required ([581](#)), CodePage ([581](#))

16.34.5 TFieldDef.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TFieldDef instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` destroys the `TFieldDef` instance. It simply calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TFieldDef.Create` ([578](#))

16.34.6 TFieldDef.AddChild

Declaration: `function AddChild : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

16.34.7 TFieldDef.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of one TFieldDef instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(APersistent: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Assign assigns all published properties of APersistent to the current instance, if APersistent is an instance of class TFieldDef.

Errors: If APersistent is not of class TFieldDef (577), then an exception will be raised.

16.34.8 TFieldDef.CreateField

Synopsis: Create TField instance based on definitions in current TFieldDef instance.

Declaration: `function CreateField(AOwner: TComponent; ParentField: TObjectField=Nil;
const FieldName: string='';
CreateChildren: Boolean=True) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: CreateField determines, based on the DataType (582) what TField (551) descendent it should create, and then returns a newly created instance of this class. It sets the appropriate defaults for the Size (567), FieldName (571), FieldNo (566), Precision (551), ReadOnly (575) and Required (575) properties of the newly created instance. It should never be necessary to use this call in an end-user program, only TDataSet descendent classes should use this call.

The newly created field is owned by the component instance passed in the AOwner parameter.

The DefaultFieldClasses (441) array is used to determine which TField Descendent class should be used when creating the TField instance, but descendents of TDataSet may override the values in that array.

See also: DefaultFieldClasses (441), TField (551)

16.34.9 TFieldDef.HasChildDefs

Declaration: `function HasChildDefs : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

16.34.10 TFieldDef.FieldClass

Synopsis: TField class used for this fielddef.

Declaration: `Property FieldClass : TFieldClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FieldClass` is the class of the `TField` instance that is created by the `CreateField` (579) class. The return value is retrieved from the `TDataset` instance the `TFieldDef` instance is associated with. If there is no `TDataset` instance available, the return value is `Nil`

See also: `TDataset` (498), `CreateField` (579), `TField` (551)

16.34.11 TFieldDef.FieldNo

Synopsis: Field number.

Declaration: `Property FieldNo : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldNo` is the number of the field in the data structure where the dataset contents comes from, for instance in a DBase file. If the underlying data layer does not support the concept of field number, a sequential number is assigned.

16.34.12 TFieldDef.CharSize

Synopsis: Character size.

Declaration: `Property CharSize : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CharSize` is only relevant for string fields: it indicates the number of bytes used to represent a single character. It is calculated from the `TFieldDef.CodePage` (581) property and can have the following values:

- 1 for single-byte string fields
- 2 for UnicodeString fields
- 4 for UTF8 strings

See also: `TFieldDef.CodePage` (581), `TFieldDef.Size` (582)

16.34.13 TFieldDef.InternalCalcField

Synopsis: Is this a definition of an internally calculated field ?

Declaration: `Property InternalCalcField : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `InternalCalc` is `True` if the `fielddef` instance represents an internally calculated field: for internally calculated fields, storage must be provided by the underlying data mechanism.

16.34.14 TFieldDef.ParentDef

Declaration: `Property ParentDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

16.34.15 TFieldDef.Required

Synopsis: Is the field required ?

Declaration: `Property Required : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Required` is set to `True` if the field requires a value when posting data to the dataset. If no value was entered, the dataset will raise an exception when the record is posted. The `Required` property is usually initialized based on the definition of the field in the underlying database. For SQL-based databases, a field declared as `NOT NULL` will result in a `Required` property of `True`.

16.34.16 TFieldDef.Codepage

Synopsis: System code page for the values in string and wide string field types.

Declaration: `Property Codepage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Codepage` is a read-only `TSystemCodePage` property with the system code page used for values in the field. The value in `CodePage` is assigned in the overloaded constructor which includes a `TSystemCodePage` argument. `CodePage` is relevant for string or wide string field types, and uses the following values:

ftString, ftFixedChar, ftMemo Uses the value passed in the argument. The default value is 0.

ftWideString, ftFixedWideChar, ftWideMemo Use the value in the `CP_UTF16` constant.

Other non-string field types Uses the value 0 in `Codepage`.

See also: `TFieldDef.Create` ([578](#)), `TFieldDef.DataType` ([582](#))

16.34.17 TFieldDef.Attributes

Synopsis: Additional attributes of the field.

Declaration: `Property Attributes : TFieldAttributes`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Attributes` contain additional attributes of the field. It shares the `faRequired` attribute with the `Required` property.

See also: `TFieldDef.Required` ([581](#))

16.34.18 TFieldDef.DataType

Synopsis: Data type for the field.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataType` contains the data type of the field's contents. Based on this property, the `FieldClass` property determines what kind of field class must be used to represent this field.

See also: `TFieldDef.FieldClass` ([579](#)), `TFieldDef.CreateField` ([579](#))

16.34.19 TFieldDef.ChildDefs

Declaration: `Property ChildDefs : TFieldDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.34.20 TFieldDef.Precision

Synopsis: Precision used in BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) fields.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the number of digits used in a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) field. It is not the number of digits after the decimal separator, but the total number of digits.

See also: `TFieldDef.Size` ([582](#))

16.34.21 TFieldDef.Size

Synopsis: Size of the buffer needed to store the data of the field.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` indicates the size of the buffer needed to hold data for the field. For types with a fixed size (such as integer, word or data/time) the size can be zero: the buffer mechanism reserves automatically enough heap memory. For types which can have various sizes (blobs, string types), the `Size` property tells the buffer mechanism how many bytes are needed to hold the data for the field. For BCD fields, the size property indicates the number of decimals after the decimal separator.

See also: `TFieldDef.Precision` ([582](#)), `TFieldDef.DataType` ([582](#))

16.35 TFieldDefs

16.35.1 Description

`TFieldDefs` is used by each `TDataset` instance to keep a description of the data that it manages; for each field in a record that makes up the underlying data, the `TFieldDefs` instance keeps an instance of `TFieldDef` that describes the field's contents. For any internally calculated fields of the dataset, a `TFieldDef` instance is kept as well. This collection is filled by descendent classes of `TDataset` as soon as the dataset is opened; it is cleared when the dataset closes. After the collection was populated, the dataset creates `TField` instances based on all the definitions in the collections. If persistent fields were used, the contents of the `fielddefs` collection is compared to the field components that are present in the dataset. If the collection contains more field definitions than field components, these extra fields will not be available in the dataset.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([577](#)), `TDataset` ([498](#))

16.35.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
583	<code>Add</code>	Add a new field definition to the collection.
584	<code>AddFieldDef</code>	Add new <code>TFieldDef</code> .
584	<code>Assign</code>	Copy all items from one dataset to another.
583	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TFieldDefs</code> .
584	<code>Find</code>	Find item by name.
585	<code>MakeNameUnique</code>	Create a unique field name starting from a base name.
585	<code>Update</code>	Force update of definitions.

16.35.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
585	<code>HiddenFields</code>	rw	Should field instances be created for hidden fields.
585	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to the <code>fielddef</code> instances.
586	<code>ParentDef</code>	r	

16.35.4 TFieldDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFieldDefs`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of `TFieldDefs`. The `ADataset` argument contains the dataset instance for which the collection contains the field definitions.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([577](#)), `TDataset` ([498](#))

16.35.5 TFieldDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field definition to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType;
 ASize: Integer; APrecision: Integer; ARequired: Boolean;
 AReadOnly: Boolean; AFieldNo: Integer;`


```

        ACodePage: TSystemCodePage) : TFieldDef; overload
function Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word;
        ARequired: Boolean; AFieldNo: Integer) : TFieldDef
        ; overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word;
        ARequired: Boolean); overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType; ASize: Word)
        ; overload
procedure Add(const AName: string; ADataType: TFieldType); overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new item to the collection and fills in the Name, DataType, Size and Required properties of the newly added item with the provided parameters.

Errors: If an item with name AName already exists in the collection, then an exception will be raised.

See also: TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef ([584](#))

16.35.6 TFieldDefs.AddFieldDef

Synopsis: Add new TFieldDef.

Declaration: function AddFieldDef : TFieldDef

Visibility: public

Description: AddFieldDef creates a new TFieldDef item and returns the instance.

See also: TFieldDefs.Add ([583](#))

16.35.7 TFieldDefs.Assign

Synopsis: Copy all items from one dataset to another.

Declaration: procedure Assign(FieldDefs: TFieldDefs); overload

Visibility: public

Description: Assign simply calls inherited Assign with the FieldDefs argument.

See also: TFieldDef.Assign ([579](#))

16.35.8 TFieldDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find item by name.

Declaration: function Find(const AName: string) : TFieldDef

Visibility: public

Description: Find simply calls the inherited TDefCollection.Find ([548](#)) to find an item with name AName and typecasts the result to TFieldDef.

See also: TDefCollection.Find ([548](#)), TNamedItem.Name ([616](#))

16.35.9 TFieldDefs.Update

Synopsis: Force update of definitions.

Declaration: `procedure Update; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` notifies the dataset that the field definitions are updated, if it was not yet notified.

See also: `TDefCollection.Updated` ([549](#))

16.35.10 TFieldDefs.MakeNameUnique

Synopsis: Create a unique field name starting from a base name.

Declaration: `function MakeNameUnique(const AName: string) : string; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MakeNameUnique` uses `AName` to construct a name of a field that is not yet in the collection. If `AName` is not yet in the collection, then `AName` is returned. If a field definition with field name equal to `AName` already exists, then a new name is constructed by appending a sequence number to `AName` till the resulting name does not appear in the list of field definitions.

See also: `TFieldDefs.Find` ([584](#)), `TFieldDef.Name` ([577](#))

16.35.11 TFieldDefs.HiddenFields

Synopsis: Should field instances be created for hidden fields.

Declaration: `Property HiddenFields : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HiddenFields` determines whether a field is created for fielddefs that have the `faHiddenCol` attribute set. If set to `False` (the default) then no `TField` instances will be created for hidden fields. If it is set to `True`, then a `TField` instance will be created for hidden fields.

See also: `TFieldDef.Attributes` ([581](#))

16.35.12 TFieldDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fielddef instances.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: LongInt]: TFieldDef; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` provides zero-based indexed access to all `TFieldDef` instances in the collection. The index must vary between 0 and `Count-1`, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `TFieldDef` ([577](#))

16.35.13 TFieldDefs.ParentDef

Declaration: `Property ParentDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

16.36 TFields**16.36.1 Description**

`TFields` mimics a `TCollection` class for the `Fields` (526) property of `TDataset` (498) instance. Since `TField` (551) is a descendent of `TComponent`, it cannot be an item of a collection, and must be managed by another class.

See also: `TField` (551), `TDataset` (498), `TDataset.Fields` (526)

16.36.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
587	<code>Add</code>	Add a new field to the list.
587	<code>CheckFieldName</code>	Check field name for duplicate entries.
587	<code>CheckFieldNames</code>	Check a list of field names for duplicate entries.
588	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list of fields.
586	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TFields</code> .
587	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the <code>TFields</code> instance.
588	<code>FieldByName</code>	Find a field based on its name.
588	<code>FieldByNumber</code>	Search field based on its fieldnumber.
588	<code>FindField</code>	Find a field based on its name.
589	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Return an enumerator for the <code>for..in</code> construct.
589	<code>GetFieldNames</code>	Get the list of fieldnames.
589	<code>IndexOf</code>	Return the index of a field instance.
589	<code>Remove</code>	Remove an instance from the list.

16.36.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
590	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of fields in the list.
590	<code>Dataset</code>	<code>r</code>	Dataset the fields belong to.
590	<code>Fields</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to the fields in the list.

16.36.4 TFields.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFields`.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ADataset : TDataset)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFields`. It stores the `ADataset` parameter, so it can be retrieved at any time in the `TFields.Dataset` (590) property, and initializes an internal list object to store the list of fields.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TFields.Dataset` (590), `TField` (551)

16.36.5 TFields.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the TFields instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the field instances that it manages on behalf of the Dataset (590). After that it cleans up the internal structures and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TDataset (498), TField (551), TFields.Clear (588)

16.36.6 TFields.Add

Synopsis: Add a new field to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(Field: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` must be used to add a new TField (551) instance to the list of fields. After a TField instance is added to the list, the TFields instance will free the field instance if it is cleared.

See also: TField (551), TFields.Clear (588)

16.36.7 TFields.CheckFieldName

Synopsis: Check field name for duplicate entries.

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldName(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckFieldName` checks whether a field with name equal to `Value` (case insensitive) already appears in the list of fields (using TFields.Find (586)). If it does, then an EDatabaseError (460) exception is raised.

See also: TField.FieldName (571), TFields.Find (586)

16.36.8 TFields.CheckFieldNames

Synopsis: Check a list of field names for duplicate entries.

Declaration: `procedure CheckFieldNames(const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckFieldNames` splits `Value` in a list of fieldnames, using semicolon as a separator. For each of the fieldnames obtained in this way, it calls `CheckFieldName` (587).

Errors: Spaces are not discarded, so leaving a space after or before a fieldname will not find the fieldname, and will yield a false negative result.

See also: TField.FieldName (571), TFields.CheckFieldName (587), TFields.Find (586)

16.36.9 TFields.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of fields.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TField` (551) var instances from the list. All field instances are freed after they have been removed from the list.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.36.10 TFields.FindField

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name.

Declaration: `function FindField(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindField` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (571) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively. If no field instance is found, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (588)

16.36.11 TFields.FieldByName

Synopsis: Find a field based on its name.

Declaration: `function FieldByName(const Value: string) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Fieldbyname` searches the list of fields and returns the field instance whose `FieldName` (571) property matches `Value`. The search is performed case-insensitively.

Errors: If no field instance is found, then an exception is raised. If this behaviour is undesired, use `TField.FindField` (551), where `Nil` is returned if no match is found.

See also: `TFields.FindField` (588), `TFields.FieldName` (586), `TFields.FieldByNumber` (588), `TFields.IndexOf` (589)

16.36.12 TFields.FieldByNumber

Synopsis: Search field based on its fieldnumber.

Declaration: `function FieldByNumber(FieldNo: Integer) : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FieldByNumber` searches for the field whose `TField.FieldNo` (566) property matches the `FieldNo` parameter. If no such field is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (588), `TFields.FindField` (588), `TFields.IndexOf` (589)

16.36.13 TFields.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the `for .. in` construct.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TFieldsEnumerator`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetEnumerator` is the implementation of `IEnumerable` and returns an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` ([590](#))

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator` ([590](#)), `#rtl.system.IEnumerable` ([??](#))

16.36.14 TFields.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Get the list of fieldnames.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(Values: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetFieldNames` fills `Values` with the fieldnames of all the fields in the list, each item in the list contains 1 fieldname. The list is cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `TField.FieldName` ([571](#))

16.36.15 TFields.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return the index of a field instance.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Field: TField) : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` scans the list of fields and returns the index of the field instance in the list (it compares actual field instances, not field names). If the field does not appear in the list, -1 is returned.

See also: `TFields.FieldByName` ([588](#)), `TFields.FieldByNumber` ([588](#)), `TFields.FindField` ([588](#))

16.36.16 TFields.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an instance from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Value: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` removes the field `Value` from the list. It does not free the field after it was removed. If the field is not in the list, then nothing happens.

See also: `TFields.Clear` ([588](#))

16.36.17 TFields.Count

Synopsis: Number of fields in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of fields in the fieldlist. The items in the `Fields` (590) property are numbered from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TFields.fields` (590)

16.36.18 TFields.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset the fields belong to.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset instance that owns the fieldlist. It is set when the `TFields` (586) instance is created. This property is purely for informational purposes. When adding fields to the list, no check is performed whether the field's `Dataset` property matches this dataset.

See also: `TFields.Create` (586), `TField.Dataset` (564), `TDataSet` (498)

16.36.19 TFields.Fields

Synopsis: Indexed access to the fields in the list.

Declaration: `Property Fields[Index: Integer]: TField; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Fields` is the default property of the `TFields` class. It provides indexed access to the fields in the list: the index runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

Errors: Providing an index outside the allowed range will result in an `EListError` exception.

See also: `TFields.FieldName` (588)

16.37 TFieldsEnumerator**16.37.1 Description**

`TFieldsEnumerator` implements all the methods of `IEnumerator` so a `TFields` (586) instance can be used in a `for..in` construct. `TFieldsEnumerator` returns all the fields in the `TFields` collection. Therefore the following construct is possible:

```

Var
  F : TField;

begin
  // ...
  For F in MyDataset.Fields do
    begin
      // F is of type TField.
    end;
  // ...

```

Do not create an instance of `TFieldsEnumerator` manually. The compiler will do all that is needed when it encounters the `for..in` construct.

See also: `TField` ([551](#)), `TFields` ([586](#)), `#rtl.system.IEnumerator` ([??](#))

16.37.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
591	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TFieldsEnumerator</code> .
591	MoveNext	Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

16.37.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
592	Current	r	Return the current field.

16.37.4 TFieldsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AFields: TFields)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TFieldsEnumerator`. It stores the `AFields` reference, pointing to the `TFields` ([586](#)) instance that created the enumerator. It initializes the enumerator position.

16.37.5 TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move the current field to the next field in the collection.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` moves the internal pointer to the next field in the fields collection, and returns `True` if the operation was a success. If no more fields are available, then `False` is returned.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.Current` ([592](#))

16.37.6 TFieldsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Return the current field.

Declaration: `Property Current : TField`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` returns the current field. It will return a non-nil value only after `MoveNext` returned `True`.

See also: `TFieldsEnumerator.MoveNext` ([591](#))

16.38 TFloatField

16.38.1 Description

`TFloatField` is the class created when a dataset must manage floating point values of double precision. It exposes a few new properties such as `Currency` ([593](#)), `MaxValue` ([593](#)), `MinValue` ([594](#)) and overrides some `TField` ([551](#)) methods to work with floating point data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TFloatField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each floating-point field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `Currency` ([593](#)), `MaxValue` ([593](#)), `MinValue` ([594](#))

16.38.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
593	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field.
592	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TFloatField</code> .

16.38.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
593	<code>Currency</code>	<code>rw</code>	Is the field a currency field.
593	<code>MaxValue</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum value for the field.
594	<code>MinValue</code>	<code>rw</code>	Minimum value for the field.
594	<code>Precision</code>	<code>rw</code>	Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations.
593	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field as a double type.

16.38.4 TFloatField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TFloatField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TFloatField`. It calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some properties.

16.38.5 TFloatField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a value is in the allowed range of values for the field.

Declaration: `function CheckRange (AValue: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (594) and `MaxValue` (593) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (593), `MinValue` (594)

16.38.6 TFloatField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a double type.

Declaration: `Property Value : Double`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TFloatField` to return a value of type `Double`. It returns the same value as `TField.AsFloat` (559)

See also: `TField.AsFloat` (559), `TField.Value` (568)

16.38.7 TFloatField.Currency

Synopsis: Is the field a currency field.

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` can be set to `True` to indicate that the field contains data representing an amount of currency. This affects the way the `TField.DisplayText` (565) and `TField.Text` (567) properties format the value of the field: if the `Currency` property is `True`, then these properties will format the value as a currency value (generally appending the currency sign) and if the `Currency` property is `False`, then they will format it as a normal floating-point value.

See also: `TField.DisplayText` (565), `TField.Text` (567), `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (617), `TNumericField.EditFormat` (618)

16.38.8 TFloatField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Double`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a value different from zero, it is then the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` ([594](#)) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MinValue` ([594](#))

16.38.9 TFloatField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Double`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a value different from zero, then it is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any floating-point value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` ([593](#)) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TFloatField.MaxValue` ([593](#)), `TFloatField.CheckRange` ([593](#))

16.38.10 TFloatField.Precision

Synopsis: Precision (number of digits) of the field in text representations.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the maximum number of digits that should be used when the field is converted to a textual representation in `TField.Displaytext` ([565](#)) or `TField.Text` ([567](#)), it is used in the arguments to `FormatFloat` (??).

See also: `TField.Displaytext` ([565](#)), `TField.Text` ([567](#)), `FormatFloat` (??)

16.39 TFMTBCDField

16.39.1 Description

`TFMTBCDField` is the field created when a data type of `ftFMTBCD` is encountered. It represents usually a fixed-precision floating point data type (BCD : Binary Coded Decimal data) such as the `DECIMAL` or `NUMERIC` field types in an SQL database.

See also: `TFloatField` ([592](#))

16.39.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
595	CheckRange	Check value if it is in the range defined by MinValue and MaxValue.
595	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TFMTBCDField</code> class.

16.39.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
596	Currency	rw	Does the field contain currency data ?
596	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field.
596	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field.
596	Precision	rw	Total number of digits in the BCD data.
597	Size		Number of digits after the decimal point.
595	Value	rw	The value of the field as a BCD value.

16.39.4 TFMTBCDField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TFMTBCDField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TFMTBCDField` class: it sets the `MinValue` ([440](#)), `MaxValue` ([440](#)), `Size` ([567](#)) (15) and `Precision` ([440](#)) (2) fields to their default values.

See also: `MinValue` ([440](#)), `MaxValue` ([440](#)), `Size` ([567](#)), `Precision` ([440](#))

16.39.5 TFMTBCDField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check value if it is in the range defined by `MinValue` and `MaxValue`.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: TBCD) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckRange` checks whether `AValue` is between `MinValue` ([440](#)) and `MaxValue` ([440](#)) if they are both nonzero. If either of them is zero, then `True` is returned. The `MinValue` and `MaxValue` values themselves are also valid values.

See also: `MinValue` ([440](#)), `MaxValue` ([440](#))

16.39.6 TFMTBCDField.Value

Synopsis: The value of the field as a BCD value.

Declaration: `Property Value : TBCD`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is the value of the field as a BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) value.

See also: `TField.AsFloat` ([559](#)), `TField.AsCurrency` ([558](#))

16.39.7 TFMTBCDField.Precision

Synopsis: Total number of digits in the BCD data.

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` is the total number of digits in the BCD data. The maximum precision is 32.

See also: `TField.AsFloat` (559), `TField.AsCurrency` (558), `Size` (440)

16.39.8 TFMTBCDField.Currency

Synopsis: Does the field contain currency data ?

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Currency` determines how the textual representation of the data is formatted. It has no influence on the actual data itself. If `True` it is represented as a currency (monetary value). If `DisplayFormat` (551) or `EditFormat` (551) are set, these values are used instead to format the value.

See also: `TField.DisplayFormat` (551), `TField.EditFormat` (551)

16.39.9 TFMTBCDField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` can be set to a nonzero value to indicate the maximum value the field may contain. It must be set together with `MinValue` (440) or it will not have any effect.

See also: `TFMTBCDField.CheckRange` (595), `MinValue` (440)

16.39.10 TFMTBCDField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` can be set to a nonzero value to indicate the maximum value the field may contain. It must be set together with `MaxValue` (440) or it will not have any effect.

See also: `TFMTBCDField.CheckRange` (595), `MaxValue` (440)

16.39.11 TFMTBCDField.Size

Synopsis: Number of digits after the decimal point.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Size` is the maximum number of digits allowed after the decimal point. Together with the `Precision` (440) property it determines the maximum allowed range of values for the field. This range can be restricted using the `MinValue` (440) and `MaxValue` (440) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (440), `MaxValue` (440), `Precision` (440)

16.40 TGraphicField

16.40.1 Description

`TGraphicField` is the class used when a dataset must manage graphical BLOB data. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftGraphic`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class. All methods to be able to work with graphical BLOB data have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (473) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TGraphicsField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each graphical BLOB field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TBLOBField` (473), `TMemoField` (614), `TWideMemoField` (647)

16.40.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
597	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TGraphicField</code> class.

16.40.3 TGraphicField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TGraphicField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with graphical BLOB values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.41 TGUIDField

16.41.1 Description

`TGUIDField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftGUID`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class and overrides

some of its methods to be able to work with variant data. It also adds a method to retrieve the field value as a native TGUID type.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TGUIDField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each GUID field when a dataset is opened.

See also: TDataset (498), TField (551), TGuidField.AsGuid (598)

16.41.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
598	Create	Create a new instance of the TGUIDField class.

16.41.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
598	AsGuid	rw	Field content as a GUID value.

16.41.4 TGuidField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TGUIDField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of the TGUIDField class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some TField (551) properties to configure the instance for working with GUID values.

See also: TField (551)

16.41.5 TGuidField.AsGuid

Synopsis: Field content as a GUID value.

Declaration: `Property AsGuid : TGUID`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: AsGUID can be used to get or set the field's content as a value of type TGUID.

See also: TField.AsString (561)

16.42 TIndexDef

16.42.1 Description

TIndexDef describes one index in a set of indexes of a TDataset (498) instance. The collection of indexes is described by the TIndexDefs (601) class. It just has the necessary properties to describe an index, but does not implement any functionality to maintain an index.

See also: TIndexDefs (601)

16.42.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
599	Create	Create a new index definition.

16.42.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
600	CaseInsFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively.
600	DescFields	rw	Fields in field list that are ordered descending.
599	Expression	rw	Expression that makes up the index values.
599	Fields	rw	Fields making up the index.
600	Options	rw	Index options.
601	Source	rw	Source of the index.

16.42.4 TIndexDef.Create

Synopsis: Create a new index definition.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Owner: TIndexDefs; const AName: string;
const TheFields: string; TheOptions: TIndexOptions)
; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TIndexDef` ([598](#)) instance with the `AName` value as the index name, `AField` as the fields making up the index, and `TheOptions` as the options. `Owner` should be the `TIndexDefs` ([601](#)) instance to which the new `TIndexDef` can be added.

Errors: If an index with name `AName` already exists in the collection, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDefs` ([601](#)), `TIndexDef.Options` ([600](#)), `TIndexDef.Fields` ([599](#))

16.42.5 TIndexDef.Expression

Synopsis: Expression that makes up the index values.

Declaration: `Property Expression : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Expression` is an SQL expression based on which the index values are computed. It is only used when `ixExpression` is in `TIndexDef.Options` ([600](#))

See also: `TIndexDef.Options` ([600](#)), `TindexDef.Fields` ([599](#))

16.42.6 TIndexDef.Fields

Synopsis: Fields making up the index.

Declaration: `Property Fields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Fields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons: the fields that make up the index, in case the index is not based on an expression. The list contains the names of all fields, regardless of whether the sort order for a particular field is ascending or descending. The fields should be in the right order, i.e. the first field is sorted on first, and so on.

The `TIndexDef.DescFields` (600) property can be used to determine the fields in the list that have a descending sort order. The `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (600) property determines which fields are sorted in a case-insensitive manner.

See also: `TIndexDef.DescFields` (600), `TIndexDef.CaseInsFields` (600), `TIndexDef.Expression` (599)

16.42.7 TIndexDef.CaseInsFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered case-insensitively.

Declaration: `Property CaseInsFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CaseInsFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (599) property which are ordered in a case-insensitive manner. `CaseInsFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (599), `TIndexDef.Expression` (599), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (600)

16.42.8 TIndexDef.DescFields

Synopsis: Fields in field list that are ordered descending.

Declaration: `Property DescFields : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DescFields` is a list of fieldnames, separated by semicolons. It contains the names of the fields in the `Fields` (599) property which are ordered in a descending manner. `DescFields` may not contain fieldnames that do not appear in `Fields`.

See also: `TIndexDef.Fields` (599), `TIndexDef.Expression` (599), `TIndexDef.DescFields` (600)

16.42.9 TIndexDef.Options

Synopsis: Index options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TIndexOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` describes the various properties of the index. This is usually filled by the dataset that provides the index definitions. For datasets that provide In-memory indexes, this should be set prior to creating the index: it cannot be changed once the index is created.

See the description of `TIndexOption` (452) for more information on the various available options.

See also: `TIndexOptions` (452)

16.42.10 TIndexDef.Source

Synopsis: Source of the index.

Declaration: `Property Source : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Source` describes where the index comes from. This is a property for the convenience of the various datasets that provide indexes: they can use it to describe the source of the index.

16.43 TIndexDefs

16.43.1 Description

`TIndexDefs` is used to keep a collection of index (sort order) definitions. It can be used by classes that provide in-memory or on-disk indexes to provide a list of available indexes.

See also: `TIndexDef` ([598](#)), `TIndexDefs.Items` ([603](#))

16.43.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
602	<code>Add</code>	Add a new index definition with given name and options.
602	<code>AddIndexDef</code>	Add a new, empty, index definition.
601	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TIndexDefs</code> instance.
602	<code>Find</code>	Find an index by name.
602	<code>FindIndexForFields</code>	Find index definition based on field names.
603	<code>GetIndexForFields</code>	Get index definition based on field names.
603	<code>Update</code>	Called whenever one of the items changes.

16.43.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
603	<code>Items</code>	rw	Indexed access to the index definitions.

16.43.4 TIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TIndexDefs` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); virtual; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TIndexDefs` class. It simply calls the inherited destructor with the appropriate item class, `TIndexDef` ([598](#)).

See also: `TIndexDef` ([598](#)), `TIndexDefs.Destroy` ([601](#))

16.43.5 TIndexDefs.Add

Synopsis: Add a new index definition with given name and options.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const Name: string; const Fields: string;
Options: TIndexOptions); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds a new `TIndexDef` (598) instance to the list of indexes. It initializes the index definition properties `Name`, `Fields` and `Options` with the values given in the parameters with the same names.

Errors: If an index with the same `Name` already exists in the list of indexes, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIndexDef` (598), `TNamedItem.Name` (616), `TIndexDef.Fields` (599), `TIndexDef.Options` (600), `TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef` (602)

16.43.6 TIndexDefs.AddIndexDef

Synopsis: Add a new, empty, index definition.

Declaration: `function AddIndexDef : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddIndexDef` adds a new `TIndexDef` (598) instance to the list of indexes, and returns the newly created instance. It does not initialize any of the properties of the new index definition.

See also: `TIndexDefs.Add` (602)

16.43.7 TIndexDefs.Find

Synopsis: Find an index by name.

Declaration: `function Find(const IndexName: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` overloads the `TDefCollection.Find` (548) method to search and return a `TIndexDef` (598) instance based on the name. The search is case-insensitive and raises an exception if no matching index definition was found. Note: `TIndexDefs.IndexOf` can be used instead if an exception is not desired.

See also: `TIndexDef` (598), `TDefCollection.Find` (548), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (602)

16.43.8 TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields

Synopsis: Find index definition based on field names.

Declaration: `function FindIndexForFields(const Fields: string) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (599) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance.

Errors: If no matching definition is found, an exception is raised. This is different from other `Find` functionality, where `Find` usually returns `Nil` if nothing is found.

See also: `TIndexDef` (598), `TIndexDefs.Find` (602), `TIndexDefs.GetindexForFields` (603)

16.43.9 TIndexDefs.GetIndexForFields

Synopsis: Get index definition based on field names.

Declaration: `function GetIndexForFields(const Fields: string;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean) : TIndexDef`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetIndexForFields` searches in the list of indexes for an index whose `TIndexDef.Fields` (599) property matches the list of fields in `Fields`. If `CaseInsensitive` is `True` it only searches for case-sensitive indexes. If it finds an index definition, then it returns the found instance. If it does not find a matching definition, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TIndexDef` (598), `TIndexDefs.Find` (602), `TIndexDefs.FindIndexForFields` (602)

16.43.10 TIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Called whenever one of the items changes.

Declaration: `procedure Update; virtual; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Update` can be called to have the dataset update its index definitions.

16.43.11 TIndexDefs.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the index definitions.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIndexDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is redefined by `TIndexDefs` using `TIndexDef` as the type for the elements. It is the default property of the `TIndexDefs` class.

See also: `TIndexDef` (598)

16.44 TIntegerField

16.44.1 Description

`TIntegerField` is an alias for `TLongintField` (605).

See also: `TLongintField` (605), `TField` (551)

16.45 TLargeintField

16.45.1 Description

`TLargeIntField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 64-bit signed data: the data type `ftLargeInt`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (551) to handle `int64` data, and

sets some of the properties to values for int64 data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to 64-bit integer data such as `MinValue` (605) and `MaxValue` (605).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLargeIntField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each int64 field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (551), `MinValue` (605), `MaxValue` (605)

16.45.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
604	<code>CheckRange</code>	Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.
604	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TLargeIntField</code> class.

16.45.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
605	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum value for the field.
605	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum value for the field.
604	<code>Value</code>	rw	Field contents as a 64-bit integer value.

16.45.4 TLargeIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TLargeIntField` class: it calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the various properties of `Tfield` (551) and `MinValue` (605) and `MaxValue` (605).

See also: `TField` (551), `MinValue` (605), `MaxValue` (605)

16.45.5 TLargeIntField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a values falls within the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LargeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` (605) and `MaxValue` (605) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` (605), `MinValue` (605)

16.45.6 TLargeIntField.Value

Synopsis: Field contents as a 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `Property Value : LargeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Value is redefined by `TLargeIntField` as a 64-bit integer value. It returns the same value as `TField.AsLargeInt` (560).

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `TField.AsLargeInt` (560)

16.45.7 TLargeIntField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field if set to any value different from zero. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MaxValue` is set, `MinValue` (605) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MinValue` (605)

16.45.8 TLargeIntField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LargeInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals 0, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

If `MinValue` is set, `MaxValue` (605) should also be set, because it will also be checked.

See also: `TLargeIntField.MaxValue` (605)

16.46 TLongintField

16.46.1 Description

`TLongintField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 32-bit signed data: the data type `ftInteger`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (551) to handle integer data, and sets some of the properties to values for integer data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (607) and `MaxValue` (607).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLongintField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (551), `MaxValue` (607), `MinValue` (607)

16.46.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
606	CheckRange	Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field.
606	Create	Create a new instance of TLongintField.

16.46.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
607	MaxValue	rw	Maximum value for the field.
607	MinValue	rw	Minimum value for the field.
606	Value	rw	Value of the field as longint.

16.46.4 TLongintField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TLongintField.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TLongintField. After calling the inherited constructor, it initializes the `MinValue` ([607](#)) and `MaxValue` ([607](#)) properties.

See also: TField ([551](#)), `MaxValue` ([607](#)), `MinValue` ([607](#))

16.46.5 TLongintField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check whether a valid is in the allowed range of values for the field.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckRange` returns `True` if `AValue` lies within the range defined by the `MinValue` ([607](#)) and `MaxValue` ([607](#)) properties. If the value lies outside of the allowed range, then `False` is returned.

See also: `MaxValue` ([607](#)), `MinValue` ([607](#))

16.46.6 TLongintField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as longint.

Declaration: `Property Value : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is redefined by TLongintField as a 32-bit signed integer value. It returns the same value as the TField.AsInteger ([560](#)) property.

See also: TField.Value ([568](#))

16.46.7 TLongintField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be larger than `MaxValue`. Any attempt to write a larger value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MaxValue` equals `MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MinValue` (607)

16.46.8 TLongintField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum value for the field.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LongInt`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value for the field. When setting the field's value, the value may not be less than `MinValue`. Any attempt to write a smaller value as the field's content will result in an exception. By default `MinValue` equals `-MaxInt`, i.e. any integer value is allowed.

See also: `MaxValue` (607)

16.47 TLongWordField

16.47.1 Description

`TByteField` is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 32-bit unsigned data: the data type `ftLongword`. It overrides some methods of `TField` (551) to handle `LongWord` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `LongWord` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (609) and `MaxValue` (608).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TLongWordField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `MinValue` (609), `MaxValue` (608)

16.47.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
608	<code>CheckRange</code>	Checkif a value is in the allowed range.
608	<code>Create</code>	Create new instance of <code>TLongWordField</code> .

16.47.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
608	<code>MaxValue</code>	rw	Maximum field value.
609	<code>MinValue</code>	rw	Minimum field value.
608	<code>Value</code>	rw	Value as longword.

16.47.4 TLongWordField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of TLongWordField.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the `MinValue` (609) `MaxValue` (608) and `TField.DataType` (564) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (607), `MaxValue` (607), `TField.DataType` (564)

16.47.5 TLongWordField.CheckRange

Synopsis: Check if a value is in the allowed range.

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: LargeInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckRange` checks whether `aValue` is in the range of allowed values. This is normally `[0..High(LongWord)]`, unless specified otherwise in `MinValue` (609) or `MaxValue` (608)

See also: `MinValue` (609), `MaxValue` (608)

16.47.6 TLongWordField.Value

Synopsis: Value as longword.

Declaration: `Property Value : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is reintroduced in `TLongWordField` and gives access to the value of the field as `LongWord` data (a `Cardinal`).

See also: `TField.Value` (568)

16.47.7 TLongWordField.MaxValue

Synopsis: Maximum field value.

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : LongWord`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxValue` is the maximum value the field contents can have. It is checked when setting the field value. By default it is set to `High(LongWord)` but you can set it to a smaller value to limit the range of allowed values.

See also: `MinValue` (609), `CheckRange` (608)

16.47.8 TLongWordField.MinValue

Synopsis: Minimum field value.

Declaration: `Property MinValue : LongWord`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MinValue` is the minimum value the field contents can have. It is checked when setting the field value. By default it is set to `Low (LongWord)` (Zero) but you can set it to a larger value to limit the range of allowed values.

See also: `MaxValue` ([608](#)), `CheckRange` ([608](#))

16.48 TLookupList

16.48.1 Description

`TLookupList` is a list object used for storing values of lookup operations by lookup fields. There should be no need to create an instance of `TLookupList` manually, the `TField` instance will create an instance of `TLookupList` on demand.

See also: `TField.LookupCache` ([573](#))

16.48.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
610	<code>Add</code>	Add a key, value pair to the list.
610	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all key, value pairs from the list.
609	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TLookupList</code> .
609	<code>Destroy</code>	Free a <code>TLookupList</code> instance from memory.
610	<code>FirstKeyByValue</code>	Find the first key that matches a value.
610	<code>ValueOfKey</code>	Look up value based on a key.
611	<code>ValuesToStrings</code>	Convert values to stringlist.

16.48.3 TLookupList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TLookupList`.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` sets up the necessary structures to manage a list of lookup values for a lookup field.

See also: `TLookupList.Destroy` ([609](#))

16.48.4 TLookupList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free a `TLookupList` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all resources (mostly memory) allocated by the lookup list, and calls then the inherited destructor.

See also: `TLookupList.Create` (609)

16.48.5 TLookupList.Add

Synopsis: Add a key, value pair to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(const AKey: Variant; const AValue: Variant)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` will add the value `AValue` to the list and associate it with key `AKey`. The same key cannot be added twice.

See also: `TLookupList.Clear` (610)

16.48.6 TLookupList.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all key, value pairs from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all keys and associated values from the list.

See also: `TLookupList.Add` (610)

16.48.7 TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue

Synopsis: Find the first key that matches a value.

Declaration: `function FirstKeyByValue(const AValue: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FirstKeyByValue` does a reverse lookup: it returns the first key value in the list that matches the `AValue` value. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

Errors: If no key is found, `Null` is returned.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` (610)

16.48.8 TLookupList.ValueOfKey

Synopsis: Look up value based on a key.

Declaration: `function ValueOfKey(const AKey: Variant) : Variant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValueOfKey` does a value lookup based on a key: it returns the value in the list that matches the `AKey` key. If none is found, `Null` is returned. This mechanism is quite slow, as a linear search is performed.

See also: `TLookupList.FirstKeyByValue` (610), `TLookupList.Add` (610)

16.48.9 TLookupList.ValuesToStrings

Synopsis: Convert values to stringlist.

Declaration: `procedure ValuesToStrings(AStrings: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValuesToStrings` converts the list of values to a stringlist, so they can be used e.g. in a drop-down list.

See also: `TLookupList.ValueOfKey` (610)

16.49 TMasterDataLink

16.49.1 Description

`TMasterDataLink` is a `TDatalink` descendent which handles master-detail relations. It can be used in `TDataset` (498) descendents that must have master-detail functionality: the detail dataset creates an instance of `TMasterDataLink` to point to the master dataset, which is subsequently available through the `TDatalink.Dataset` (497) property.

The class also provides functionality for keeping a list of fields that make up the master-detail functionality, in the `TMasterDataLink.FieldName` (612) and `TMasterDataLink.Fields` (612) properties.

This class should never be used in application code.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TDatalink.DataSource` (497), `TDatalink.DataSet` (497), `TMasterDataLink.FieldName` (612), `TMasterDataLink.Fields` (612)

16.49.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
611	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMasterDataLink</code> .
612	Destroy	Free the datalink instance from memory.

16.49.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
612	<code>FieldNames</code>	rw	List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship.
612	<code>Fields</code>	r	List of fields as specified in <code>FieldNames</code> .
612	<code>OnMasterChange</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset data changes.
613	<code>OnMasterDisable</code>	rw	Called whenever the master dataset is disabled.

16.49.4 TMasterDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataset); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of `TMasterDataLink`. The `ADataset` parameter is the detail dataset in the master-detail relation: it is saved in the `DetailDataset` (549) property. The master dataset must be set through the `DataSource` (497) property, and is usually set by the application programmer.

See also: `TDetailDataLink.DetailDataset` ([549](#)), `TDatalink.Datasource` ([497](#))

16.49.5 TMasterDataLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the datalink instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the resources used by `TMasterDataLink` and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `TMasterDataLink.Create` ([611](#))

16.49.6 TMasterDataLink.FieldNames

Synopsis: List of fieldnames that make up the master-detail relationship.

Declaration: `Property FieldNames : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldNames` is a semicolon-separated list of fieldnames in the master dataset (`TDatalink.Dataset` ([497](#))) on which the master-detail relationship is based. Setting this property will fill the `TMasterDataLink.Fields` ([612](#)) property with the field instances of the master dataset.

See also: `TMasterDataLink.Fields` ([612](#)), `TDatalink.Dataset` ([497](#)), `TDataset.GetFieldList` ([513](#))

16.49.7 TMasterDataLink.Fields

Synopsis: List of fields as specified in `FieldNames`.

Declaration: `Property Fields : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Fields` is filled with the `TField` ([551](#)) instances from the master dataset (`TDatalink.Dataset` ([497](#))) when the `FieldNames` ([612](#)) property is set, and when the master dataset opens.

See also: `TField` ([551](#)), `TMasterDataLink.FieldNames` ([612](#))

16.49.8 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset data changes.

Declaration: `Property OnMasterChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnMasterChange` is called whenever the field values in the master dataset changes, i.e. when it becomes active, or when the current record changes. If the `TMasterDataLink.Fields` ([612](#)) list is empty, `TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable` ([613](#)) is called instead.

See also: `TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable` ([613](#))

16.49.9 TMasterDataLink.OnMasterDisable

Synopsis: Called whenever the master dataset is disabled.

Declaration: `Property OnMasterDisable : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnMasterDisable` is called whenever the master dataset is disabled, or when it is active and the field list is empty.

See also: `TMasterDataLink.OnMasterChange` (612)

16.50 TMasterParamsDataLink

16.50.1 Description

`TMasterParamsDataLink` is a `TDataLink` (493) descendent that can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between 2 `TDataset` instances where the detail dataset is parameterized using a `TParams` instance. It takes care of closing and opening the detail dataset and copying the parameter values from the master dataset whenever the data in the master dataset changes.

See also: `TDatalink` (493), `TDataset` (498), `TParams` (633), `TParam` (619)

16.50.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
614	<code>CopyParamsFromMaster</code>	Copy parameter values from master dataset.
613	<code>Create</code>	Initialize a new <code>TMasterParamsDataLink</code> instance.
614	<code>RefreshParamNames</code>	Refresh the list of parameter names.

16.50.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
614	<code>Params</code>	<code>rw</code>	Parameters of detail dataset.

16.50.4 TMasterParamsDataLink.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new `TMasterParamsDataLink` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataset); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` first calls the inherited constructor using `ADataset`, and then looks for a property named `Params` of type `TParams` (633) in the published properties of `ADataset` and assigns it to the `Params` (614) property.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TParams` (633), `TMasterParamsDataLink.Params` (614)

16.50.5 TMasterParamsDataLink.RefreshParamNames

Synopsis: Refresh the list of parameter names.

Declaration: `procedure RefreshParamNames; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RefreshParamNames` scans the `Params` (614) property and sets the `FieldNames` (612) property to the list of parameter names.

See also: `TMasterParamsDataLink.Params` (614), `TMasterDataLink.FieldNames` (612)

16.50.6 TMasterParamsDataLink.CopyParamsFromMaster

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from master dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamsFromMaster(CopyBound: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CopyParamsFromMaster` calls `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (638), passing it the master dataset: it provides the parameters of the detail dataset with their new values. If `CopyBound` is `false`, then only parameters with their `Bound` (630) property set to `False` are copied. If it is `True` then the value is set for all parameters.

Errors: If the master dataset does not have a corresponding field for each parameter, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (638), `TParam.Bound` (630)

16.50.7 TMasterParamsDataLink.Params

Synopsis: Parameters of detail dataset.

Declaration: `Property Params : TParams`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Params` is the `TParams` instance of the detail dataset. If the detail dataset contains a property named `Params` of type `TParams`, then it will be set when the `TMasterParamsDataLink` instance was created. If the property is not published, or has another name, then the `Params` property must be set in code.

See also: `TParams` (633), `TMasterParamsDataLink.Create` (613)

16.51 TMemoField

16.51.1 Description

`TMemoField` is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftMemo`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class. All methods to be able to work with memo fields have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (473) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TMemoField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TBlobField` (473), `TWideMemoField` (647), `TGraphicField` (597)

16.51.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
615	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TMemoField</code> class.

16.51.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
615	CodePage	r	Codepage of the memo field string data.
615	Transliterate		Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

16.51.4 TMemoField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TMemoField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TMemoField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([551](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with memo values.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.51.5 TMemoField.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage of the memo field string data.

Declaration: `Property CodePage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CodePage` is the code page of the string data in the field. It is determined when the field is initially created from the dataset's data, and cannot be changed while the dataset is active.

See also: `TField.AsString` ([561](#)), `TFieldDef.CodePage` ([581](#))

16.51.6 TMemoField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the contents of the field be transliterated.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transliterate` is redefined from `TBlobField.Transliterate` ([477](#)) with a default value of `true`.

See also: `TBlobField.Transliterate` ([477](#)), `TStringField.Transliterate` ([644](#)), `TDataset.Translate` ([519](#))

16.52 TNamedItem

16.52.1 Description

`NamedItem` is a `TCollectionItem` (??) descendent which introduces a `Name` (616) property. It automatically returns the value of the `Name` property as the value of the `DisplayName` (616) property.

See also: `DisplayName` (616), `Name` (616)

16.52.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
616	<code>DisplayName</code>	rw	Display name.
616	<code>Name</code>	rw	Name of the item.

16.52.3 TNamedItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Display name.

Declaration: `Property DisplayName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayName` is declared in `TCollectionItem` (??), and is made public in `TNamedItem`. The value equals the value of the `Name` (616) property.

See also: `Name` (616)

16.52.4 TNamedItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the item in the collection. This property is also used as the value for the `DisplayName` (616) property. If the `TNamedItem` item is owned by a `TDefCollection` (547) collection, then the name must be unique, i.e. each `Name` value may appear only once in the collection.

See also: `DisplayName` (616), `TDefCollection` (547)

16.53 TNumericField

16.53.1 Description

`TNumericField` is an abstract class which overrides some of the methods of `TField` (551) to handle numerical data. It also introduces or publishes a couple of properties that are only relevant in the case of numerical data, such as `TNumericField.DisplayFormat` (617) and `TNumericField.EditFormat` (618).

Since `TNumericField` is an abstract class, it must never be instantiated directly. Instead one of the descendent classes should be created.

See also: [TField \(551\)](#), [TNumericField.DisplayFormat \(617\)](#), [TNumericField.EditFormat \(618\)](#), [TField.Alignment \(569\)](#), [TIntegerField \(603\)](#), [TLargeIntField \(603\)](#), [TFloatField \(592\)](#), [TBCDField \(469\)](#)

16.53.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
617	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TNumericField</code> .

16.53.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
617	Alignment		Alignment of the field.
617	DisplayFormat	rw	Format string for display of numerical data.
618	EditFormat	rw	Format string for editing of numerical data.

16.53.4 TNumericField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TNumericField`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes the `TField.Alignment (569)` property with

See also: [TField.Alignment \(569\)](#)

16.53.5 TNumericField.Alignment

Synopsis: Alignment of the field.

Declaration: `Property Alignment :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Alignment` is published by `TNumericField` with `taRightJustify` as a default value.

See also: [TField.Alignment \(569\)](#)

16.53.6 TNumericField.DisplayFormat

Synopsis: Format string for display of numerical data.

Declaration: `Property DisplayFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DisplayFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format (??)` and `FormatFloat (??)` functions) for display purposes: the `TField.DisplayText (565)` property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format (??)`, `FormatFloat (??)`, [TField.DisplayText \(565\)](#), [TNumericField.EditFormat \(618\)](#)

16.53.7 TNumericField.EditFormat

Synopsis: Format string for editing of numerical data.

Declaration: `Property EditFormat : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EditFormat` specifies a format string (such as used by the `Format (??)` and `FormatFloat (??)` functions) for editing purposes: the `TField.Text (567)` property will use this property to format the field's value. Which formatting function (and, consequently, which format can be entered) is used depends on the descendent of the `TNumericField` class.

See also: `Format (??)`, `FormatFloat (??)`, `TField.Text (567)`, `TNumericField.DisplayFormat (617)`

16.54 TObjectField

16.54.1 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
618	<code>FieldCount</code>	<code>r</code>	
618	<code>Fields</code>	<code>r</code>	
618	<code>FieldValues</code>	<code>rw</code>	
619	<code>ObjectType</code>	<code>rw</code>	
619	<code>UnNamed</code>	<code>r</code>	

16.54.2 TObjectField.FieldCount

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

16.54.3 TObjectField.Fields

Declaration: `Property Fields : TFields`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

16.54.4 TObjectField.FieldValues

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[AIndex: Integer]: Variant; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.54.5 TObjectField.UnNamed

Declaration: Property UnNamed : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

16.54.6 TObjectField.ObjectType

Declaration: Property ObjectType : string

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

16.55 TParam

16.55.1 Description

TParam is one item in a TParams (633) collection. It describes the name (TParam.Name (631)), type (ParamType (632)) and value (TParam.Value (633)) of a parameter in a parameterized query or stored procedure. Under normal circumstances, it should never be necessary to create a TParam instance manually; the TDataset (498) descendent that owns the parameters should have created all necessary TParam instances.

See also: TParams (633)

16.55.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
621	Assign	Assign one parameter instance to another.
621	AssignField	Copy value from field instance.
621	AssignFieldValue	Assign field value to the parameter.
622	AssignFromField	Copy field type and value.
621	AssignToField	Assign parameter value to field.
622	Clear	Clear the parameter value.
620	Create	Create a new parameter value.
622	GetData	Get the parameter value from a memory buffer.
622	GetDataSize	Return the size of the data.
623	LoadFromFile	Load a parameter value from file.
623	LoadFromStream	Load a parameter value from stream.
623	SetBlobData	Set BLOB data.
623	SetData	Set the parameter value from a buffer.

16.55.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
628	AsAnsiString	rw	Parameter contents as an ANSI string.
624	AsBCD	rw	Get or set parameter value as BCD value.
624	AsBlob	rw	Return parameter value as a blob.
624	AsBoolean	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value.
625	AsByte	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value.
625	AsBytes	rw	Get or set parameter value as TBytes.
625	AsCurrency	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a currency value.
625	AsDate	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date (TDateTime) value.
626	AsDateTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value.
626	AsFloat	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value.
629	AsFmtBCD	rw	Parameter value as a BCD value.
626	AsInteger	rw	Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value.
626	AsLargeInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value.
627	AsLongWord	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value.
627	AsMemo	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value.
627	AsShortInt	rw	
627	AsSingle	rw	
627	AsSmallInt	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value.
628	AsString	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a string value.
629	AsTime	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a time (TDateTime) value.
629	AsUnicodeString	rw	Parameter contents as a Unicode string.
628	AsUTF8String	rw	Parameter contents as an UTF8 string.
631	AsWideString	rw	Get/Set the value as a widestring.
629	AsWord	rw	Get/Set parameter value as a word value.
630	Bound	rw	Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value).
630	Dataset	r	Dataset to which this parameter belongs.
631	DataType	rw	Data type of the parameter.
630	IsNull	r	Is the parameter empty.
631	Name	rw	Name of the parameter.
630	NativeStr	rw	No description available.
632	NumericScale	rw	Numeric scale.
632	ParamType	rw	Type of parameter.
632	Precision	rw	Precision of the BCD value.
633	Size	rw	Size of the parameter.
631	Text	rw	Read or write the value of the parameter as a string.
633	Value	rws	Value as a variant.

16.55.4 TParam.Create

Synopsis: Create a new parameter value.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override; overload`
`constructor Create(AParams: TParams; AParamType: TParamType)`
`; reintroduce; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` first calls the inherited `create`, and then initializes the parameter properties. The first form creates a default parameter, the second form is a convenience function and initializes a parameter of a certain kind (`AParamType`), in which case the owning `TParams` collection must be specified in `AParams`

See also: `TParams` ([633](#))

16.55.5 TParam.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one parameter instance to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign copies the Name, ParamType, Bound, Value, SizePrecision and NumericScale properties from ASource if it is of type TParam. If Source is of type TField (551), then it is passed to TParam.AssignField (621). If Source is of type TStrings, then it is assigned to TParams.AsMemo (633).

Errors: If Source is not of type TParam, TField or TStrings, an exception will be raised.

See also: TField (551), TParam.Name (631), TParam.Bound (630), TParam.NumericScale (632), TParam.ParamType (632), TParam.value (633), TParam.Size (633), TParam.AssignField (621), Tparam.AsMemo (627)

16.55.6 TParam.AssignField

Synopsis: Copy value from field instance.

Declaration: `procedure AssignField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignField copies the Field, FieldName (571) and Value (568) to the parameter instance. The parameter is bound after this operation. If Field is Nil then the parameter name and value are cleared.

See also: TParam.assign (621), TParam.AssignToField (621), TParam.AssignFieldValue (621)

16.55.7 TParam.AssignToField

Synopsis: Assign parameter value to field.

Declaration: `procedure AssignToField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignToField copies the parameter value (633) to the field instance. If Field is Nil, nothing happens.

Errors: An EDatabaseError (460) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types ftCursor, ftArray, ftDataset, ftReference).

See also: TParam.Assign (621), TParam.AssignField (621), TParam.AssignFromField (622)

16.55.8 TParam.AssignFieldValue

Synopsis: Assign field value to the parameter.

Declaration: `procedure AssignFieldValue(Field: TField; const AValue: Variant)`

Visibility: public

Description: AssignFieldValue copies only the field type from Field and the value from the AValue parameter. It sets the TParam.Bound (630) bound parameter to True. This method is called from TParam.AssignField (621).

See also: TField (551), TParam.AssignField (621), TParam.Bound (630)

16.55.9 TParam.AssignFromField

Synopsis: Copy field type and value.

Declaration: `procedure AssignFromField(Field: TField)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AssignFromField` copies the field value (568) and data type (`TField.DataType` (564)) to the parameter instance. If `Field` is `Nil`, nothing happens. This is the reverse operation of `TParam.AssignToField` (621).

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` (460) exception is raised if the field has an unsupported field type (for types `ftCursor`, `ftArray`, `ftDataset`, `ftReference`).

See also: `TParam.Assign` (621), `TParam.AssignField` (621), `TParam.AssignToField` (621)

16.55.10 TParam.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the parameter value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the parameter value, it is set to `UnAssigned`. The Datatype, parameter type or name are not touched.

See also: `TParam.Value` (633), `TParam.Name` (631), `TParam.ParamType` (632), `TParam.DataType` (631)

16.55.11 TParam.GetData

Synopsis: Get the parameter value from a memory buffer.

Declaration: `procedure GetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetData` retrieves the parameter value and stores it in `buffer`. It uses the same data layout as `TField` (551), and can be used to copy the parameter value to a record buffer.

Errors: Only basic field types are supported. Using an unsupported field type will result in an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception.

See also: `TParam.SetData` (623), `TField` (551)

16.55.12 TParam.GetDataSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the data.

Declaration: `function GetDataSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDataSize` returns the size (in bytes) needed to store the current value of the parameter.

Errors: For an unsupported data type, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `TParam.GetData` (622), `TParam.SetData` (623)

16.55.13 TParam.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a file named `FileName`. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types. This function simply creates a `TFileStream` instance and passes it to `TParam.LoadFromStream` (623).

Errors: If the specified `FileName` is not a valid file, or the file is not readable, an exception will occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (623), `TBlobType` (443), `TParam.SaveToFile` (619)

16.55.14 TParam.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load a parameter value from stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; BlobType: TBlobType)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` can be used to load a BLOB-type parameter from a stream. The `BlobType` parameter can be used to set the exact data type of the parameter: it must be one of the BLOB data types.

Errors: If the stream does not support taking the `Size` of the stream, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromFile` (623), `TParam.SaveToStream` (619)

16.55.15 TParam.SetBlobData

Synopsis: Set BLOB data.

Declaration: `procedure SetBlobData(Buffer: Pointer; ASize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetBlobData` reads the value of a BLOB type parameter from a memory buffer: the data is read from the memory buffer `Buffer` and is assumed to be `Size` bytes long.

Errors: No checking is performed on the validity of the data buffer. If the data buffer is invalid or the size is wrong, an exception may occur.

See also: `TParam.LoadFromStream` (623)

16.55.16 TParam.SetData

Synopsis: Set the parameter value from a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetData(Buffer: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetData` performs the reverse operation of `TParam.GetData` (622): it reads the parameter value from the memory area pointed to by `Buffer`. The size of the data read is determined by `TParam.GetDataSize` (622) and the type of data by `TParam.DataType` (631) : it is the same storage mechanism used by `TField` (551), and so can be used to copy the value from a `TDataset` (498) record buffer.

Errors: Not all field types are supported. If an unsupported field type is encountered, an `EDatabaseError` (460) exception is raised.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TParam.GetData` (622), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.GetDataSize` (622)

16.55.17 TParam.AsBCD

Synopsis: Get or set parameter value as BCD value.

Declaration: `Property AsBCD : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to get or set a parameter value as a BCD encoded floating point value.

See also: `TParam.AsFloat` (626)

16.55.18 TParam.AsBlob

Synopsis: Return parameter value as a blob.

Declaration: `Property AsBlob : TBlobData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBlob` returns the parameter value as a blob: currently this is a string. It can be set to set the parameter value.

See also: `TParam.AsString` (628)

16.55.19 TParam.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a boolean value.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` will return the parameter value as a boolean value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftBoolean`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.20 TParam.AsByte

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsByte : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsByte` will return the parameter value as a 8-bit unsigned integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftByte`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` ([626](#)), `TParam.AsSmallint` ([627](#)), `TParam.AsWord` ([629](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.Value` ([633](#))

16.55.21 TParam.AsBytes

Synopsis: Get or set parameter value as `TBytes`.

Declaration: `Property AsBytes : TBytes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsBCD` can be used to get or set a parameter value as a `TBytes` value. This should normally only be used for blob type parameters.

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([628](#))

16.55.22 TParam.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a currency value.

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsCurrency` will return the parameter value as a currency value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftCurrency`.

See also: `TParam.AsFloat` ([626](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.Value` ([633](#))

16.55.23 TParam.AsDate

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date (`TDateTime`) value.

Declaration: `Property AsDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsDate` will return the parameter value as a date value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDate`.

See also: `TParam.AsDateTime` ([626](#)), `TParam.AsTime` ([629](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.Value` ([633](#))

16.55.24 TParam.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a date/time (TDateTime) value.

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsDateTime` will return the parameter value as a TDateTime value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftDateTime`.

See also: `TParam.AsDate` (625), `TParam.asTime` (629), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.25 TParam.AsFloat

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a floating-point value.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : Double`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` will return the parameter value as a double floating-point value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftFloat`.

See also: `TParam.AsCurrency` (625), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.26 TParam.AsInteger

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as an integer (32-bit) value.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` will return the parameter value as a 32-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftInteger`.

See also: `TParam.AsLargeInt` (626), `TParam.AsSmallInt` (627), `TParam.AsWord` (629), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.27 TParam.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : LargeInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` will return the parameter value as a 64-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftLargeInt`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` (626), `TParam.asSmallint` (627), `TParam.AsWord` (629), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.28 TParam.AsLongWord

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `Property AsLongWord : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLongWord` will return the parameter value as a 32-bit unsigned integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftLongWord`.

See also: `TParam.asInteger` (626), `TParam.asSmallint` (627), `TParam.AsWord` (629), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.29 TParam.AsMemo

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a memo (string) value.

Declaration: `Property AsMemo : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsMemo` will return the parameter value as a memo (string) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftMemo`.

See also: `TParam.asString` (628), `TParam.LoadFromStream` (623), `TParam.SaveToStream` (619), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.30 TParam.AsShortInt

Declaration: `Property AsShortInt : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

16.55.31 TParam.AsSingle

Declaration: `Property AsSingle : Single`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

16.55.32 TParam.AsSmallInt

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a smallint value.

Declaration: `Property AsSmallInt : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsSmallInt` will return the parameter value as a 16-bit signed integer value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftSmallInt`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` ([626](#)), `TParam.AsLargeInt` ([626](#)), `TParam.AsWord` ([629](#)), `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.Value` ([633](#))

16.55.33 TParam.AsString

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a string value.

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` will return the parameter value as a string value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftString`.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.Value` ([633](#))

16.55.34 TParam.AsAnsiString

Synopsis: Parameter contents as an ANSI string.

Declaration: `Property AsAnsiString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsAnsiString` returns the parameter data as an ANSI string (single byte character string). Note that if the parameter contains unicode data, some characters may get lost when reading.

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([628](#)), `TParam.AsUnicodeString` ([629](#)), `TParam.AsUTF8String` ([628](#))

16.55.35 TParam.AsUTF8String

Synopsis: Parameter contents as an UTF8 string.

Declaration: `Property AsUTF8String : UTF8String`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the parameter data as an UTF8 string (single byte-encoded unicode string).

See also: `TParam.AsString` ([628](#)), `TParam.AsUnicodeString` ([629](#)), `TParam.AsAnsiString` ([628](#))

16.55.36 TParam.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Parameter contents as a Unicode string.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : UnicodeString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsUTF8String` returns the parameter data as a `UnicodeString` (double byte unicode string).

See also: `TParam.AsString` (628), `TParam.AsUTF8String` (628), `TParam.AsAnsiString` (628)

16.55.37 TParam.AsTime

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a time (`TDateTime`) value.

Declaration: `Property AsTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsTime` will return the parameter value as a time (`TDateTime`) value. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftTime`.

See also: `TParam.AsDate` (625), `TParam.AsDateTime` (626), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.38 TParam.AsWord

Synopsis: Get/Set parameter value as a word value.

Declaration: `Property AsWord : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsWord` will return the parameter value as an integer. If it is written, the value is set to the specified value and the data type is set to `ftWord`.

See also: `TParam.AsInteger` (626), `TParam.AsLargeInt` (626), `TParam.AsSmallint` (627), `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.39 TParam.AsFmtBCD

Synopsis: Parameter value as a BCD value.

Declaration: `Property AsFmtBCD : TBCD`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AsFmtBCD` can be used to get or set the parameter's value as a BCD typed value.

See also: `AsFloat` (440), `AsCurrency` (440)

16.55.40 TParam.Bound

Synopsis: Is the parameter value bound (set to fixed value).

Declaration: `Property Bound : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Bound` indicates whether a parameter has received a fixed value: setting the parameter value will set `Bound` to `True`. When creating master-detail relationships, parameters with their `Bound` property set to `True` will not receive a value from the master dataset: their value will be kept. Only parameters where `Bound` is `False` will receive a new value from the master dataset.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.41 TParam.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset to which this parameter belongs.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Dataset` is the dataset that owns the `TParams` (633) instance of which this `TParam` instance is a part. It is `Nil` if the collection is not set, or is not a `TParams` instance.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TParams` (633)

16.55.42 TParam.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the parameter empty.

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsNull` is `True` if the value is empty or not set (`Null` or `UnAssigned`).

See also: `TParam.Clear` (622), `TParam.Value` (633)

16.55.43 TParam.NativeStr

Synopsis: No description available.

Declaration: `Property NativeStr : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: No description available

16.55.44 TParam.Text

Synopsis: Read or write the value of the parameter as a string.

Declaration: `Property Text : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsText` returns the same value as `TParam.AsString` (628), but, when written, does not set the data type: instead, it attempts to convert the value to the type specified in `TParam.DataType` (631).

See also: `TParam.AsString` (628), `TParam.DataType` (631)

16.55.45 TParam.AsWideString

Synopsis: Get/Set the value as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property AsWideString : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsWideString` returns the parameter value as a widestring value. Setting the property will set the value of the parameter and will also set the `DataType` (631) to `ftWideString`.

See also: `TParam.AsString` (628), `TParam.Value` (633), `TParam.DataType` (631)

16.55.46 TParam.DataType

Synopsis: Data type of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property DataType : TFieldType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DataType` is the current data type of the parameter value. It is set automatically when one of the various `AsXYZ` properties is written, or when the value is copied from a field value.

See also: `TParam.IsNull` (630), `TParam.Value` (633), `TParam.AssignField` (621)

16.55.47 TParam.Name

Synopsis: Name of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is the name of the parameter. The name is usually determined automatically from the SQL statement the parameter is part of. Each parameter name should appear only once in the collection.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (631), `TParam.Value` (633), `TParams.ParamByName` (636)

16.55.48 TParam.NumericScale

Synopsis: Numeric scale.

Declaration: `Property NumericScale : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NumericScale` can be used to store the numerical scale for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.Precision` ([632](#)), `TParam.Size` ([633](#))

16.55.49 TParam.ParamType

Synopsis: Type of parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamType : TParamType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamType` specifies the type of parameter: is the parameter value written to the database engine, or is it received from the database engine, or both ? It can have the following value:

ptUnknownUnknown type.

ptInputInput parameter.

ptOutputOutput parameter, filled on result.

ptInputOutputInput/output parameter.

ptResultResult parameter.

The `ParamType` property is usually set by the database engine that creates the parameter instances.

See also: `TParam.DataType` ([631](#)), `TParam.DataSize` ([619](#)), `TParam.Name` ([631](#))

16.55.50 TParam.Precision

Synopsis: Precision of the BCD value.

Declaration: `Property Precision : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Precision` can be used to store the numerical precision for BCD values. It is currently unused.

See also: `TParam.NumericScale` ([632](#)), `TParam.Size` ([633](#))

16.55.51 TParam.Size

Synopsis: Size of the parameter.

Declaration: `Property Size : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Size` is the declared size of the parameter. In the current implementation, this parameter is ignored other than copying it from `TField.DataSize` (564) in the `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (621) method. The actual size can be retrieved through the `TParam.Datasize` (619) property.

See also: `TParam.Datasize` (619), `TField.DataSize` (564), `TParam.AssignFieldValue` (621)

16.55.52 TParam.Value

Synopsis: Value as a variant.

Declaration: `Property Value : Variant`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` returns (or sets) the value as a variant value.

See also: `TParam.DataType` (631)

16.56 TParams

16.56.1 Description

`TParams` is a collection of `TParam` (619) values. It is used to specify parameter values for parameterized SQL statements, but is also used to specify parameter values for stored procedures. Its default property is an array of `TParam` (619) values. The class also offers a method to scan a SQL statement for parameter names and replace them with placeholders understood by the SQL engine: `TParams.ParseSQL` (636).

`TDataset` (498) itself does not use `TParams`. The class is provided in the `DB` unit, so all `TDataset` descendents that need some kind of parameterization make use of the same interface. The `TMasterParamsDataLink` (613) class can be used to establish a master-detail relationship between a parameter-aware `TDataset` instance and another dataset; it will automatically refresh parameter values when the fields in the master dataset change. To this end, the `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (638) method exists.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TMasterParamsDataLink` (613), `TParam` (619), `TParams.ParseSQL` (636), `TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset` (638)

16.56.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
634	AddParam	Add a parameter to the collection.
635	AssignValues	Copy values from another collection.
638	CopyParamValuesFromDataset	Copy parameter values from the fields in a dataset.
634	Create	Create a new instance of TParams.
635	CreateParam	Create and add a new parameter to the collection.
635	FindParam	Find a parameter with given name.
636	GetEnumerator	Return an enumerator for the parameters.
635	GetParamList	Fetch a list of TParam instances.
636	IsEqual	Is the list of parameters equal.
636	ParamByName	Return a parameter by name.
636	ParseSQL	Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders.
637	RemoveParam	Remove a parameter from the collection.

16.56.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
638	Dataset	r	Dataset that owns the TParams instance.
638	Items	rw	Indexed access to TParams instances in the collection.
638	ParamValues	rw	Named access to the parameter values.

16.56.4 TParams.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TParams.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent;
 AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass); overload
constructor Create(AOwner: TPersistent); overload
constructor Create; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TParams. It calls the inherited constructor with TParam ([619](#)) as the collection's item class, and sets AOwner as the owner of the collection. Usually, AOwner will be the dataset that needs parameters.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TCollection.create` ([??](#)), TParam ([619](#))

16.56.5 TParams.AddParam

Synopsis: Add a parameter to the collection.

Declaration: `procedure AddParam(Value: TParam)`

Visibility: public

Description: AddParam adds Value to the collection.

Errors: No checks are done on the TParam instance. If it is Nil, an exception will be raised.

See also: TParam ([619](#)), `#rtl.classes.tcollection.add` ([??](#))

16.56.6 TParams.AssignValues

Synopsis: Copy values from another collection.

Declaration: `procedure AssignValues(Value: TParams)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AssignValues` examines all `TParam` (619) instances in `Value`, and looks in its own items for a `TParam` instance with the same name. If it is found, then the value and type of the parameter are copied (using `TParam.Assign` (621)). If it is not found, nothing is done.

See also: `TParam` (619), `TParam.Assign` (621)

16.56.7 TParams.CreateParam

Synopsis: Create and add a new parameter to the collection.

Declaration: `function CreateParam(FldType: TFieldType; const ParamName: string; ParamType: TParamType) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateParam` creates a new `TParam` (619) instance with datatype equal to `fldType`, Name equal to `ParamName` and sets its `ParamType` property to `ParamType`. The parameter is then added to the collection.

See also: `TParam` (619), `TParam.Name` (631), `TParam.Datatype` (631), `TParam.Paramtype` (632)

16.56.8 TParams.FindParam

Synopsis: Find a parameter with given name.

Declaration: `function FindParam(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindParam` searches the collection for the `TParam` (619) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, `Nil` is returned.

Remark A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` (631), `TParams.ParamByName` (636), `TParams.GetParamList` (635)

16.56.9 TParams.GetParamList

Synopsis: Fetch a list of `TParam` instances.

Declaration: `procedure GetParamList(List: TList; const ParamNames: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParamList` examines the parameter names in the semicolon-separated list `ParamNames`. It searches each `TParam` instance from the names in the list and adds it to `List`.

Errors: If the `ParamNames` list contains an unknown parameter name, then an exception is raised. Whitespace is not discarded.

See also: `TParam` (619), `TParam.Name` (631), `TParams.ParamByName` (636)

16.56.10 TParams.IsEqual

Synopsis: Is the list of parameters equal.

Declaration: `function IsEqual(Value: TParams) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsEqual` compares the parameter count of `Value` and if it matches, it compares all `TParam` items of `Value` with the items it owns. If all items are equal (all properties match), then `True` is returned. The items are compared on index, so the order is important.

See also: `TParam` (619)

16.56.11 TParams.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the parameters.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TParamsEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator that loops over all parameters (as implemented by `TParamsEnumerator` (639))

See also: `TParamsEnumerator` (639)

16.56.12 TParams.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return a parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const Value: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` searches the collection for the `TParam` (619) instance with property `Name` equal to `Value`. It will return the last instance with the given name, and will only return one instance. If no match is found, an exception is raised.

Remark A `TParams` collection can have 2 `TParam` instances with the same name: no checking for duplicates is done.

See also: `TParam.Name` (631), `TParams.FindParam` (635), `TParams.GetParamList` (635)

16.56.13 TParams.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Parse SQL statement, replacing parameter names with SQL parameter placeholders.

```
Declaration: function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean) : string
                ; overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
                EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
                ParameterStyle: TParamStyle) : string; overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
                EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
                ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
                out ParamBinding: TParamBinding) : string; overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; DoCreate: Boolean;
```

```

        EscapeSlash: Boolean; EscapeRepeat: Boolean;
        ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
        out ParamBinding: TParamBinding;
        out ReplaceString: string) : string; overload
function ParseSQL(const SQL: string; Options: TSQLParseOptions;
        ParameterStyle: TParamStyle;
        out ParamBinding: TParamBinding; MacroChar: char;
        out ReplaceString: string) : string

```

Visibility: public

Description: ParseSQL parses the SQL statement for parameter names in the form :ParamName. It replaces them with a SQL parameter placeholder. If DoCreate is True then a TParam instance is added to the collection with the found parameter name.

The parameter placeholder is determined by the ParameterStyle property, which can have the following values:

psInterbaseParameters are specified by a ? character.

psPostgreSQLParameters are specified by a \$N character.

psSimulatedParameters are specified by a \$N character.

psInterbase is the default.

If the EscapeSlash parameter is True, then backslash characters are used to quote the next character in the SQL statement. If it is False, the backslash character is regarded as a normal character.

If the EscapeRepeat parameter is True (the default) then embedded quotes in string literals are escaped by repeating themselves. If it is false then they should be quoted with backslashes.

ParamBinding, if specified, is filled with the indexes of the parameter instances in the parameter collection: for each SQL parameter placeholder, the index of the corresponding TParam instance is returned in the array.

ReplaceString, if specified, contains the placeholder used for the parameter names (by default, \$). It has effect only when ParameterStyle equals psSimulated.

The function returns the SQL statement with the parameter names replaced by placeholders.

See also: TParam ([619](#)), TParam.Name ([631](#)), TParamStyle ([453](#))

16.56.14 TParams.RemoveParam

Synopsis: Remove a parameter from the collection.

Declaration: procedure RemoveParam(Value: TParam)

Visibility: public

Description: RemoveParam removes the parameter Value from the collection, but does not free the instance.

Errors: Value must be a valid instance, or an exception will be raised.

See also: TParam ([619](#))

16.56.15 TParams.CopyParamValuesFromDataset

Synopsis: Copy parameter values from the fields in a dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyParamValuesFromDataset (ADataset: TDataSet;
CopyBound: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyParamValuesFromDataset` assigns values to all parameters in the collection by searching in `ADataset` for fields with the same name, and assigning the value of the field to the `TParam` instances using `TParam.AssignField` (621). By default, this operation is only performed on `TParam` instances with their `Bound` (630) property set to `False`. If `CopyBound` is true, then the operation is performed on all `TParam` instances in the collection.

Errors: If, for some `TParam` instance, `ADataset` misses a field with the same name, an `EDatabaseError` exception will be raised.

See also: `TParam` (619), `TParam.Bound` (630), `TParam.AssignField` (621), `TDataSet` (498), `TDataSet.FieldName` (510)

16.56.16 TParams.Dataset

Synopsis: Dataset that owns the `TParams` instance.

Declaration: `Property Dataset : TDataSet`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Dataset` is the `TDataSet` (498) instance that was specified when the `TParams` instance was created.

See also: `TParams.Create` (634), `TDataSet` (498)

16.56.17 TParams.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TParams` instances in the collection.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TParam; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` is overridden by `TParams` so it has the proper type (`TParam`). The `Index` runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TParams` (633)

16.56.18 TParams.ParamValues

Synopsis: Named access to the parameter values.

Declaration: `Property ParamValues[ParamName: string]: Variant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamValues` provides access to the parameter values (`TParam.Value` (633)) by name. It is equivalent to reading and writing

```
ParamByName (ParamName) .Value
```

See also: `TParam.Value` (633), `TParams.ParamByName` (636)

16.57 TParamsEnumerator

16.57.1 Description

`TParamsEnumerator` is a helper class to implement enumeration (`for..in`) of parameters. It implements the `IEnumerator` interface.

See also: `TParams.GetEnumerator` (636)

16.57.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
639	<code>Create</code>	Create a new <code>TParamsEnumerator</code> instance.
639	<code>MoveNext</code>	Go to next <code>TParam</code> .

16.57.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
640	<code>Current</code>	r	Current <code>TParam</code> instance.

16.57.4 TParamsEnumerator.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TParamsEnumerator` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (AParams: TParams)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new enumerator for `AParams`.

See also: `TParams.GetEnumerator` (636)

16.57.5 TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Go to next `TParam`.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MoveNext` will move to the next `TParam` instance if possible. If it returns `True` then `TParamsEnumerator.Current` (640) will return the new current `TParam`

See also: `TParamsEnumerator.Current` (640)

16.57.6 TParamsEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current TParam instance.

Declaration: Property Current : TParam

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current is the current TParam instance. It is only valid if TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext (639) returned true.

See also: TParamsEnumerator.MoveNext (639)

16.58 TShortintField

16.58.1 Description

TShortintField is instantiated when a dataset must manage a field with 8-bit signed data: the data type `ftShortInt`. It overrides some methods of TField (551) to handle `ShortInt` data, and sets some of the properties to values for `ShortInt` data. It also introduces some methods and properties specific to integer data such as `MinValue` (607) and `MaxValue` (607).

It should never be necessary to create an instance of TShortintField manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each integer field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `MinValue` (607), `MaxValue` (607)

16.58.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
640	Create	Create new instance of TShortintField.

16.58.3 TShortintField.Create

Synopsis: Create new instance of TShortintField.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create calls the inherited constructor and sets the values of the `MinValue` (607)`MaxValue` (607) and `TField.DataType` (564) properties.

See also: `MinValue` (607), `MaxValue` (607), `TField.DataType` (564)

16.59 TSingleField

16.59.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
641	CheckRange	
641	Create	

16.59.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
641	Currency	rw	
641	MaxValue	rw	
641	MinValue	rw	
642	Precision	rw	
641	Value	rw	

16.59.3 TSingleField.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

16.59.4 TSingleField.CheckRange

Declaration: `function CheckRange(AValue: Single) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

16.59.5 TSingleField.Value

Declaration: `Property Value : Single`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.59.6 TSingleField.Currency

Declaration: `Property Currency : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.59.7 TSingleField.MaxValue

Declaration: `Property MaxValue : Single`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.59.8 TSingleField.MinValue

Declaration: `Property MinValue : Single`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.59.9 TSingleField.Precision

Declaration: `Property Precision : LongInt`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

16.60 TSmallIntField

16.60.1 Description

`TSmallIntField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit signed integer data, of datatype `ftSmallInt`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit signed integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TSmallIntField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each smallint field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TField \(551\)](#), [TNumericField \(616\)](#), [TLongintField \(605\)](#), [TWordField \(649\)](#)

16.60.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
642	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TSmallIntField</code> class.

16.60.3 TSmallIntField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TSmallIntField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TSmallIntField` ([642](#)) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the `TField` ([551](#)) properties to work with 16-bit signed integer data.

See also: [TField \(551\)](#)

16.61 TStringField

16.61.1 Description

`TStringField` is the class used whenever a dataset has to handle a string field type (data type `ftString`). This class overrides some of the standard `TField` ([551](#)) methods to handle string data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of string type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TStringField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each string field when a dataset is opened.

See also: [TField \(551\)](#), [TWideStringField \(648\)](#), [TDataset \(498\)](#)

16.61.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
643	Create	Create a new instance of the TStringField class.
643	SetFieldType	Set the field type.

16.61.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
643	CodePage	r	Codepage of the field string data.
644	EditMask		Specify an edit mask for an edit control.
644	FixedChar	rw	Is the string declared with a fixed length ?
645	Size		Maximum size of the string.
644	Transliterate	rw	Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing.
644	Value	rw	Value of the field as a string.

16.61.4 TStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TStringField class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Create is used to create a new instance of the TStringField class. It initializes some TField ([551](#)) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

16.61.5 TStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); override`

Visibility: public

Description: SetFieldType is overridden in TStringField ([642](#)) to check the data type more accurately (ftString and ftFixedChar). No extra functionality is added.

See also: TField.DataType ([564](#))

16.61.6 TStringField.CodePage

Synopsis: Codepage of the field string data.

Declaration: `Property CodePage : TSystemCodePage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: CodePage is the code page of the string data in the field. It is determined when the field is initially created from the dataset's data, and cannot be changed while the dataset is active.

See also: TField.AsString ([561](#)), TField.AsUnicodeString ([562](#)), TField.AsAnsi8String ([551](#)), TFieldDef.CodePage ([581](#))

16.61.7 TStringField.FixedChar

Synopsis: Is the string declared with a fixed length ?

Declaration: `Property FixedChar : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FixedChar` is `True` if the underlying data engine has declared the field with a fixed length, as in a `SQL CHAR()` declaration: the field's value will then always be padded with as many spaces as needed to obtain the declared length of the field. If it is `False` then the declared length is simply the maximum length for the field, and no padding with spaces is performed.

16.61.8 TStringField.Transliterate

Synopsis: Should the field value be transliterated when reading or writing.

Declaration: `Property Transliterate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Transliterate` can be set to `True` if the field's contents should be transliterated prior to copying it from or to the field's buffer. Transliteration is done by a method of `TDataset`: `TDataset.Translate` (519).

See also: `TDataset.Translate` (519)

16.61.9 TStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a string.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is overridden in `TField` to return the value of the field as a string. It returns the contents of `TField.AsString` (561) when read, or sets the `AsString` property when written to.

See also: `TField.AsString` (561), `TField.Value` (568)

16.61.10 TStringField.EditMask

Synopsis: Specify an edit mask for an edit control.

Declaration: `Property EditMask :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `EditMask` can be used to specify an edit mask for controls that allow to edit this field. It has no effect on the field value, and serves only to ensure that the user can enter only correct data for this field.

`TStringField` just changes the visibility of the `EditMask` property, it is introduced in `TField`.

For more information on valid edit masks, see the documentation of the GUI controls.

See also: `TField.EditMask` ([565](#))

16.61.11 TStringField.Size

Synopsis: Maximum size of the string.

Declaration: `Property Size :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Size` is made published by the `TStringField` class so it can be set in the IDE: it is the declared maximum size of the string (in characters) and is used to calculate the size of the dataset buffer.

See also: `TField.Size` ([567](#))

16.62 TTimeField

16.62.1 Description

`TimeField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of type time. (`TField.DataType` ([564](#)) equals `ftTime`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` ([551](#)) class to be able to work with time fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TTimeField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each time field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` ([498](#)), `TField` ([551](#)), `TDateTimeField` ([542](#)), `TDateField` ([542](#))

16.62.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
645	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of a <code>TTimeField</code> class.

16.62.3 TTimeField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TTimeField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TTimeField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` ([551](#)) properties to configure the instance for working with time values.

See also: `TField` ([551](#))

16.63 TVarBytesField

16.63.1 Description

`TVarBytesField` is the class used when a dataset must manage data of variable-size binary type. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftVarBytes`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class to be able to work with variable-size byte fields.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVarBytesField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variable-sized binary data field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TBytesField` (480)

16.63.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
646	Create	Create a new instance of a <code>TVarBytesField</code> class.

16.63.3 TVarBytesField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a `TVarBytesField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TVarBytesField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with variable-size binary data values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.64 TVariantField

16.64.1 Description

`TVariantField` is the class used when a dataset must manage native variant-typed data. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftVariant`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class and overrides some of its methods to be able to work with variant data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TVariantField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each variant field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551)

16.64.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
647	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TVariantField</code> class.

16.64.3 TVariantField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TVariantField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TVariantField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with variant values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.65 TWideMemoField

16.65.1 Description

`TWideMemoField` is the class used when a dataset must manage memo (Text BLOB) data. (`TField.DataType` (564) equals `ftWideMemo`). It initializes some of the properties of the `TField` (551) class. All methods to be able to work with widestring memo fields have been implemented in the `TBlobField` (473) parent class.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWideMemoField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring memo field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TDataset` (498), `TField` (551), `TBlobField` (473), `TMemoField` (614), `TGraphicField` (597)

16.65.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
647	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWideMemoField</code> class.

16.65.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
648	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field's contents as a widestring.

16.65.4 TWideMemoField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWideMemoField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWideMemoField` class. It calls the inherited destructor, and then sets some `TField` (551) properties to configure the instance for working with widestring memo values.

See also: `TField` (551)

16.65.5 TWideMemoField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field's contents as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Value` is redefined by `TWideMemoField` as a `WideString` value. Reading and writing this property is equivalent to reading and writing the `TField.AsWideString` (562) property.

See also: `TField.Value` (568), `Tfield.AsWideString` (562)

16.66 TWideStringField

16.66.1 Description

`TWideStringField` is the string field class instantiated for fields of data type `ftWideString`. This class overrides some of the standard `TField` (551) methods to handle widestring data, and introduces some properties that are only pertinent for data fields of widestring type. It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWideStringField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each widestring field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (551), `TStringField` (642), `TDataset` (498)

16.66.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
648	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWideStringField</code> class.
648	<code>SetFieldType</code>	Set the field type.

16.66.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
649	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Value of the field as a widestring.

16.66.4 TWideStringField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is used to create a new instance of the `TWideStringField` class. It initializes some `TField` (551) properties after having called the inherited constructor.

16.66.5 TWideStringField.SetFieldType

Synopsis: Set the field type.

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldType(AValue: TFieldType); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldType` is overridden in `TWideStringField` (648) to check the data type more accurately (`ftWideString` and `ftFixedWideChar`). No extra functionality is added.

See also: `TField.DataType` (564)

16.66.6 TWideStringField.Value

Synopsis: Value of the field as a widestring.

Declaration: `Property Value : WideString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is overridden by the `TWideStringField` to return a `WideString` value. It is the same value as the `TField.AsWideString` (562) property.

See also: `TField.AsWideString` (562), `TField.Value` (568)

16.67 TWordField

16.67.1 Description

`TWordField` is the class created when a dataset must manage 16-bit unsigned integer data, of datatype `ftWord`. It exposes no new properties, but simply overrides some methods to manage 16-bit unsigned integer data.

It should never be necessary to create an instance of `TWordField` manually, a field of this class will be instantiated automatically for each word field when a dataset is opened.

See also: `TField` (551), `TNumericField` (616), `TLongintField` (605), `TSmallIntField` (642)

16.67.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
649	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TWordField</code> class.

16.67.3 TWordField.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TWordField` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the `TWordField` (649) class. It calls the inherited constructor and then simply sets some of the `TField` (551) properties to work with 16-bit unsigned integer data.

See also: `TField` (551)

Chapter 17

Reference for unit 'dbugintf'

17.1 Used units

Table 17.1: Used units by unit 'dbugintf'

Name	Page
dbugmsg	657
System	??

17.2 Overview

Use `dbugintf` to add debug messages to your application. The messages are not sent to standard output, but are sent to a debug server process which collects messages from various clients and displays them somehow on screen.

The unit is transparent in its use: it does not need initialization, it will start the debug server by itself if it can find it: the program should be called `debugserver` and should be in the `PATH`. When the first debug message is sent, the unit will initialize itself.

The FCL contains a sample debug server (`dbugsrv`) which can be started in advance, and which writes debug message to the console (both on Windows and Linux). The Lazarus project contains a visual application which displays the messages in a GUI.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC ([650](#)) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to start the debug server if needed, so the process ([650](#)) unit should also be functional.

17.3 Writing a debug server.

Writing a debug server is relatively easy. It should instantiate a `TSimpleIPCServer` class from the SimpleIPC ([650](#)) unit, and use the `DebugServerID` as `ServerID` identification. This constant, as well as the record containing the message which is sent between client and server is defined in the `msgintf` unit.

The `dbugintf` unit relies on the SimpleIPC ([650](#)) mechanism to communicate with the debug server, hence it works on all platforms that have a functional version of that unit. It also uses `TProcess` to

start the debug server if needed, so the process (650) unit should also be functional.

17.4 Constants, types and variables

17.4.1 Resource strings

`SEntering = '> Entering '`

String used when sending method enter message.

`SExiting = '< Exiting '`

String used when sending method exit message.

`SProcessID = '%d Process %s (PID=%d) '`

String used when sending identification message to the server.

`SSeparator = '>-----<'`

String used when sending a separator line.

`SServerStartFailed = 'Failed to start debugserver. (%s) '`

String used to display an error message when the start of the debug server failed.

17.4.2 Types

`TDebugLevel = (dlInformation, dlWarning, dlError)`

Table 17.2: Enumeration values for type `TDebugLevel`

Value	Explanation
<code>dlError</code>	Error message.
<code>dlInformation</code>	Informational message.
<code>dlWarning</code>	Warning message.

`TDebugLevel` indicates the severity level of the debug message to be sent. By default, an informational message is sent.

`TErrorLevel = Array[TDebugLevel] of Integer`

`TErrorLevel` is used to easily convert an error level enumerated value to an integer value.

17.4.3 Variables

`DebugServerExe : string = ''`

`DefaultDebugServerExe` is the filename for the default debug server executable.

`DefaultDebugServer : string = DebugServerID`

`DefaultDebugServer` is the name at which the default debug server can be reached.

`SendError : string = ''`

Whenever a call encounters an exception, the exception message is stored in this variable.

17.5 Procedures and functions

17.5.1 FreeDebugClient

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure FreeDebugClient`

Visibility: default

Description:

17.5.2 GetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Check if sending of debug messages is enabled.

Declaration: `function GetDebuggingEnabled : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDebuggingEnabled` returns the value set by the last call to `SetDebuggingEnabled`. It is `True` by default.

See also: `SetDebuggingEnabled` ([656](#)), `SendDebug` ([653](#))

17.5.3 InitDebugClient

Synopsis: Initialize the debug client.

Declaration: `function InitDebugClient : Boolean`
`function InitDebugClient(const ShowPID: Boolean;`
`const ServerLogFilename: string='') : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitDebugClient` starts the debug server and then performs all necessary initialization of the debug IPC communication channel.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` ([653](#)) call will initialize the debug client when it is first called.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` ([653](#)), `StartDebugServer` ([656](#))

17.5.4 SendBoolean

Synopsis: Send the value of a boolean variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendBoolean(const Identifier: string; const Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendBoolean` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (653) which sends the name and value of a boolean value as an informational message.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendDateTime` (653), `SendInteger` (654), `SendPointer` (655)

17.5.5 SendDateTime

Synopsis: Send the value of a `TDateTime` variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendDateTime(const Identifier: string; const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDateTime` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (653) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. The value is converted to a string using the `DateTimeToStr` (??) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendBoolean` (653), `SendInteger` (654), `SendPointer` (655)

17.5.6 SendDebug

Synopsis: Send a message to the debug server.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebug(const Msg: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendDebug` sends the message `Msg` to the debug server as an informational message (debug level `dlInformation`). If no debug server is running, then an attempt will be made to start the server first.

The binary that is started is called `debugserver` and should be somewhere on the `PATH`. A sample binary which writes received messages to standard output is included in the FCL, it is called `dbugsrv`. This binary can be renamed to `debugserver` or can be started before the program is started.

Errors: Errors are silently ignored, any exception messages are stored in `SendError` (652).

See also: `SendDebugEx` (653), `SendDebugFmt` (654), `SendDebugFmtEx` (654)

17.5.7 SendDebugEx

Synopsis: Send debug message other than informational messages.

Declaration: `procedure SendDebugEx(const Msg: string; MType: TDebugLevel)`

Visibility: default

Description: SendDebugEx allows to specify the debug level of the message to be sent in MType. By default, SendDebug (653) uses informational messages.

Other than that the function of SendDebugEx is equal to that of SendDebug

Errors: None.

See also: SendDebug (653), SendDebugFmt (654), SendDebugFmtEx (654)

17.5.8 SendDebugFmt

Synopsis: Format and send a debug message.

Declaration: procedure SendDebugFmt(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const)

Visibility: default

Description: SendDebugFmt is a utility routine which formats a message by passing Msg and Args to Format (??) and sends the result to the debug server using SendDebug (653). It exists mainly to avoid the Format call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: SendDebug (653), SendDebugEx (653), SendDebugFmtEx (654), #rtl.sysutils.format (??)

17.5.9 SendDebugFmtEx

Synopsis: Format and send message with alternate type.

Declaration: procedure SendDebugFmtEx(const Msg: string; const Args: Array of const;
MType: TDebugLevel)

Visibility: default

Description: SendDebugFmtEx is a utility routine which formats a message by passing Msg and Args to Format (??) and sends the result to the debug server using SendDebugEx (653) with Debug level MType. It exists mainly to avoid the Format call in calling code.

Errors: None.

See also: SendDebug (653), SendDebugEx (653), SendDebugFmt (654), #rtl.sysutils.format (??)

17.5.10 SendInteger

Synopsis: Send the value of an integer variable.

Declaration: procedure SendInteger(const Identifier: string; const Value: Integer;
HexNotation: Boolean=False)

Visibility: default

Description: SendInteger is a simple wrapper around SendDebug (653) which sends the name and value of an integer value as an informational message. If HexNotation is True, then the value will be displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: SendDebug (653), SendBoolean (653), SendDateTime (653), SendPointer (655)

17.5.11 SendMethodEnter

Synopsis: Send method enter message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodEnter(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodEnter` sends a "Entering MethodName" message to the debug server. After that it increases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodExit` (655), the indentation of messages can be decreased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendMethodExit` (655), `SendSeparator` (656)

17.5.12 SendMethodExit

Synopsis: Send method exit message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMethodExit(const MethodName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendMethodExit` sends a "Exiting MethodName" message to the debug server. After that it decreases the message indentation (currently 2 characters). By sending a corresponding `SendMethodEnter` (655), the indentation of messages can be increased again.

By using the `SendMethodEnter` and `SendMethodExit` methods at the beginning and end of a procedure/method, it is possible to visually trace program execution.

Note that the indentation level will not be made negative.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendMethodEnter` (655), `SendSeparator` (656)

17.5.13 SendPointer

Synopsis: Send the value of a pointer variable.

Declaration: `procedure SendPointer(const Identifier: string; const Value: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SendInteger` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (653) which sends the name and value of a pointer value as an informational message. The pointer value is displayed using hexadecimal notation.

Errors: None.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendBoolean` (653), `SendDateTime` (653), `SendInteger` (654)

17.5.14 SendSeparator

Synopsis: Send a separator message.

Declaration: `procedure SendSeparator`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SendSeparator` is a simple wrapper around `SendDebug` (653) which sends a short horizontal line to the debug server. It can be used to visually separate execution of blocks of code or blocks of values.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `SendMethodEnter` (655), `SendMethodExit` (655)

17.5.15 SetDebuggingEnabled

Synopsis: Temporary enables or disables debugging.

Declaration: `procedure SetDebuggingEnabled(const AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SetDebuggingEnabled` can be used to temporarily enable or disable sending of debug messages: this allows to control the amount of messages sent to the debug server without having to remove the `SendDebug` (653) statements. By default, debugging is enabled. If set to `false`, debug messages are simply discarded till debugging is enabled again.

A value of `True` enables sending of debug messages. A value of `False` disables sending.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `GetDebuggingEnabled` (652), `SendDebug` (653)

17.5.16 StartDebugServer

Synopsis: Start the debug server.

Declaration: `function StartDebugServer(const aLogFilename: string='') : Integer`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StartDebugServer` attempts to start the debug server. The process started is called `debugserver` and should be located in the `PATH`.

Normally this function should not be called. The `SendDebug` (653) call will attempt to start the server by itself if it is not yet running.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `SendDebug` (653), `InitDebugClient` (652)

Chapter 18

Reference for unit 'dbugmsg'

18.1 Used units

Table 18.1: Used units by unit 'dbugmsg'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

18.2 Overview

`dbugmsg` is an auxiliary unit used in the `dbugintf` (650) unit. It defines the message protocol used between the debug unit and the debug server.

18.3 Constants, types and variables

18.3.1 Constants

```
DebugServerID = 'fpcdebugserver'
```

`DebugServerID` is a string which is used when creating the message protocol, it is used when identifying the server in the (platform dependent) client-server protocol.

```
lctError = 2
```

`lctError` is the identification of error messages.

```
lctIdentify = 3
```

`lctIdentify` is sent by the client to a server when it first connects. It's the first message, and contains the name of client application.

```
lctInformation = 0
```

`lctInformation` is the identification of informational messages.

`lctStop` = - 1

`lctStop` is sent by the client to a server when it disconnects.

`lctWarning` = 1

`lctWarning` is the identification of warning messages.

18.3.2 Types

18.4 Procedures and functions

18.4.1 DebugMessageName

Synopsis: Return the name of the debug message.

Declaration: `function DebugMessageName (msgType: Integer) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DebugMessageName` returns the name of the message type. It can be used to examine the `MsgType` field of a `TDebugMessage` (659) record, and if `msgType` contains a known type, it returns a string describing this type.

Errors: If `MsgType` contains an unknown type, 'Unknown' is returned.

18.4.2 ReadDebugMessageFromStream

Synopsis: Read a message from stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadDebugMessageFromStream (AStream: TStream;
var Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` reads a `TDebugMessage` (659) record (`Msg`) from the stream `AStream`.

The record is not read in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: If the stream contains not enough bytes or is malformed, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (659), `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (658)

18.4.3 WriteDebugMessageToStream

Synopsis: Write a message to stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDebugMessageToStream (AStream: TStream;
const Msg: TDebugMessage)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDebugMessageFromStream` writes a `TDebugMessage` (659) record (`Msg`) to the stream `AStream`.

The record is not written in a byte-ordering safe way, i.e. it cannot be exchanged between little- and big-endian systems.

Errors: A stream write error may occur if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: `TDebugMessage` (659), `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (658)

18.5 TDebugMessage

```
TDebugMessage = record
  MsgType : Integer;
  MsgTimeStamp : TDateTime
;
  Msg : string;
end
```

`TDebugMessage` is a record that describes the message passed from the client to the server. It should not be passed directly in shared memory, as the string containing the message is allocated on the heap. Instead, the `WriteDebugMessageToStream` (658) and `ReadDebugMessageFromStream` (658) can be used to read or write the message from/to a stream.

Chapter 19

Reference for unit 'eventlog'

19.1 Used units

Table 19.1: Used units by unit 'eventlog'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

19.2 Overview

The EventLog unit implements the TEventLog ([662](#)) component, which is a component that can be used to send log messages to the system log (if it is available) or to a file.

19.3 Constants, types and variables

19.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrLogFailedMsg = 'Failed to log entry (Error: %s) '
```

Message used to format an error when an error exception is raised.

```
SErrLogOpenStdErr = 'Standard Error not available for logging'
```

Error message if stderr is not open for writing.

```
SErrLogOpenStdOut = 'Standard Output not available for logging'
```

Error message if stdout is not open for writing.

```
SLogCustom = 'Custom (%d) '
```

Custom message formatting string.

```
SLogDebug = 'Debug'
```

Debug message name.

```
SLogError = 'Error'
```

Error message name.

```
SLogInfo = 'Info'
```

Informational message name.

```
SLogWarning = 'Warning'
```

Warning message name.

19.3.2 Constants

```
AllEvents = [Low(TEventType)..High(TEventType)]
```

19.3.3 Types

```
TLogCategoryEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var Code: Word) of
    object
```

TLogCategoryEvent is the event type for the TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory (670) event handler. It should return a OS event category code for the etCustom log event type in the Code parameter.

```
TLogCodeEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var Code: DWord) of
    object
```

TLogCodeEvent is the event type for the OnGetCustomEvent (670) and OnGetCustomEventID (670) event handlers. It should return a OS system log code for the etCustom log event or event ID type in the Code parameter.

```
TLogMessageEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; EventType: TEventType
    ;
                                const Msg: string) of object
```

TLogMessageEvent is the signature of the event handler TEventLog.OnLogMessage (670). If you write your own log message handling method, then it must use this signature.

```
TLogType = (ltSystem, ltFile, ltStdOut, ltStdErr)
```

Table 19.2: Enumeration values for type TLogType

Value	Explanation
ltFile	Write to file.
ltStdErr	Write log messages to standard error output.
ltStdOut	Write log messages to standard output.
ltSystem	Use the system log.

`TLogType` determines where the log messages are written. It is the type of the `TEventLog.LogType` (667) property. It can have 2 values:

ltFile This is used to write all messages to file. if no system logging mechanism exists, this is used as a fallback mechanism.

ltSystem This is used to send all messages to the system log mechanism. Which log mechanism this is, depends on the operating system.

19.4 ELogError

19.4.1 Description

`ELogError` is the exception used in the `TEventLog` (662) component to indicate errors.

See also: `TEventLog` (662)

19.5 TEventLog

19.5.1 Description

`TEventLog` is a component which can be used to send messages to the system log. In case no system log exists (such as on Windows 95/98 or DOS), the messages are written to a file. Messages can be logged using the general `Log` (665) call, or the specialized `Warning` (665), `Error` (666), `Info` (666) or `Debug` (666) calls, which have the event type predefined.

See also: `Log` (665), `Warning` (665), `Error` (666), `Info` (666), `Debug` (666)

19.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
663	Create	
666	Debug	Log a debug message.
663	Destroy	Clean up <code>TEventLog</code> instance.
666	Error	Log an error message to.
663	EventTypeToString	Create a string representation of an event type.
666	Info	Log an informational message.
665	Log	Log a message to the system log.
665	Pause	Pause the sending of log messages.
664	RegisterMessageFile	Register message file.
665	Resume	Resume sending of log messages if sending was paused.
664	UnRegisterMessageFile	Unregister the message file (needed on windows only).
665	Warning	Log a warning message.

19.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
667	Active	rw	Activate the log mechanism.
666	AppendContent	rw	Control whether output is appended to an existing file.
669	CustomLogType	rw	Custom log type ID.
668	DefaultEventType	rw	Default event type for the Log (665) call.
667	EventFilter	rw	
669	EventIDOffset	rw	Offset for event ID messages identifiers.
668	FileName	rw	File name for log file.
667	Identification	rw	Identification string for messages.
667	LogType	rw	Log type.
670	OnGetCustomCategory	rw	Event to retrieve custom message category.
670	OnGetCustomEvent	rw	Event to retrieve custom event Code.
670	OnGetCustomEventID	rw	Event to retrieve custom event ID.
670	OnLogMessage	rw	Implement custom handling of log messages.
671	Paused	rw	Is the message sending paused ?
668	RaiseExceptionOnError	rw	Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored.
669	TimeStampFormat	rw	Format for the timestamp string.

19.5.4 TEventLog.Create

Declaration: constructor `Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

19.5.5 TEventLog.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up `TEventLog` instance.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TEventLog` instance. It cleans any log structures that might have been set up to perform logging, by setting the Active ([667](#)) property to False.

See also: Active ([667](#))

19.5.6 TEventLog.EventTypeToString

Synopsis: Create a string representation of an event type.

Declaration: function `EventTypeToString(E: TEventType) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `EventTypeToString` converts the event type `E` to a suitable string representation for logging purposes. It's mainly used when writing messages to file, as the system log usually has it's own mechanisms for displaying the various event types.

See also: `#rtl.sysutils.TEventType` (??)

19.5.7 TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Register message file.

Declaration: `function RegisterMessageFile(AFileName: string) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterMessageFile` is used on Windows to register the file `AFileName` containing the formatting strings for the system messages. This should be a file containing resource strings. If `AFileName` is empty, the filename of the application binary is substituted.

When a message is logged to the windows system log, Windows looks for a formatting string in the file registered with this call.

There are 2 kinds of formatting strings:

Category strings these should be numbered from 1 to 4

1 Should contain the description of the `etInfo` event type.

2 Should contain the description of the `etWarning` event type.

4 Should contain the description of the `etError` event type.

4 Should contain the description of the `etDebug` event type.

None of these strings should have a string substitution placeholder.

The second type of strings are the **message definitions**. Their number starts at `EventIDOffset` (669) (default is 1000) and each string should have 1 placeholder.

Free Pascal comes with a `fclel.res` resource file which contains default values for the 8 strings, in English. It can be linked in the application binary with the statement

```
{ $R fclel.res }
```

This file is generated from the `fclel.mc` and `fclel.rc` files that are distributed with the Free Pascal sources.

If the strings are not registered, windows will still display the event messages, but they will not be formatted nicely.

Note that while any messages logged with the event logger are displayed in the event viewer in Windows locks the file registered here. This usually means that the binary is locked.

On non-windows operating systems, this call is ignored.

Errors: If `AFileName` is invalid, false is returned.

19.5.8 TEventLog.UnRegisterMessageFile

Synopsis: Unregister the message file (needed on windows only).

Declaration: `function UnRegisterMessageFile : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnRegisterMessageFile` can be used to unregister a message file previously registered with `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` (664). This function is usable only on windows, it has no effect on other platforms. Note that windows locks the registered message file while viewing messages, so unregistering helps to avoid file locks while event viewer is open.

See also: `TEventLog.RegisterMessageFile` (664)

19.5.9 TEventLog.Pause

Synopsis: Pause the sending of log messages.

Declaration: `procedure Pause`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pause` temporarily suspends the sending of log messages. the various log calls will simply eat the log message and return as if the message was sent.

The sending can be resumed by calling `Resume` (665).

See also: `TEventLog.Resume` (665), `TEventLog.Paused` (671)

19.5.10 TEventLog.Resume

Synopsis: Resume sending of log messages if sending was paused.

Declaration: `procedure Resume`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Resume` resumes the sending of log messages if sending was paused through `Pause` (660).

See also: `TEventLog.Pause` (665), `TEventLog.Paused` (671)

19.5.11 TEventLog.Log

Synopsis: Log a message to the system log.

Declaration: `procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Msg: string); virtual`
`procedure Log(EventType: TEventType; const Fmt: string;`
`Args: Array of const)`
`procedure Log(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Log(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Log` sends a log message to the system log. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters. If `EventType` is specified, then it is used as the message event type. If `EventType` is omitted, then the event type is determined from `Default-EventType` (668).

If `EventType` is `etCustom`, then the `OnGetCustomEvent` (670), `OnGetCustomEventID` (670) and `OnGetCustomCategory` (670).

The other logging calls: `Info` (666), `Warning` (665), `Error` (666) and `Debug` (666) use the `Log` call to do the actual work.

See also: `Info` (666), `Warning` (665), `Error` (666), `Debug` (666), `OnGetCustomEvent` (670), `OnGetCustomEventID` (670), `OnGetCustomCategory` (670)

19.5.12 TEventLog.Warning

Synopsis: Log a warning message.

Declaration: `procedure Warning(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Warning(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Warning` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etWarning` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([665](#)), Info ([666](#)), Error ([666](#)), Debug ([666](#))

19.5.13 TEventLog.Error

Synopsis: Log an error message to.

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Error(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Error` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etError` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([665](#)), Info ([666](#)), Warning ([665](#)), Debug ([666](#))

19.5.14 TEventLog.Debug

Synopsis: Log a debug message.

Declaration: `procedure Debug(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Debug(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Debug` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etDebug` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([665](#)), Info ([666](#)), Warning ([665](#)), Error ([666](#))

19.5.15 TEventLog.Info

Synopsis: Log an informational message.

Declaration: `procedure Info(const Msg: string)`
`procedure Info(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Info` is a utility function which logs a message with the `etInfo` type. The message is either the parameter `Msg` as is, or is formatted from the `Fmt` and `Args` parameters.

See also: Log ([665](#)), Warning ([665](#)), Error ([666](#)), Debug ([666](#))

19.5.16 TEventLog.AppendContent

Synopsis: Control whether output is appended to an existing file.

Declaration: `Property AppendContent : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read, Write

Description: `AppendContent` determines what is done when the log type is `ltFile` and a log file already exists. If the log file already exists, then the default behaviour (`AppendContent=False`) is to re-create the log file when the log is activated. If `AppendContent` is `True` then output will be appended to the existing file.

See also: `LogType` ([667](#)), `FileName` ([668](#))

19.5.17 TEventLog.Identification

Synopsis: Identification string for messages.

Declaration: `Property Identification : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Identification` is used as a string identifying the source of the messages in the system log. If it is empty, the filename part of the application binary is used.

See also: `Active` ([667](#)), `TimeStampFormat` ([669](#))

19.5.18 TEventLog.EventFilter

Declaration: `Property EventFilter : TEventTypes`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

19.5.19 TEventLog.LogType

Synopsis: Log type.

Declaration: `Property LogType : TLogType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogType` is the type of the log: if it is `ltSystem`, then the system log is used, if it is available. If it is `ltFile` or there is no system log available, then the log messages are written to a file. The name for the log file is taken from the `FileName` ([668](#)) property.

See also: `FileName` ([668](#))

19.5.20 TEventLog.Active

Synopsis: Activate the log mechanism.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` determines whether the log mechanism is active: if set to `True`, the component connects to the system log mechanism, or opens the log file if needed. Any attempt to log a message while the log is not active will try to set this property to `True`. Disconnecting from the system log or closing the log file is done by setting the `Active` property to `False`.

If the connection to the system logger fails, or the log file cannot be opened, then setting this property may result in an exception.

See also: [Log \(665\)](#)

19.5.21 `TEventLog.RaiseExceptionOnError`

Synopsis: Determines whether logging errors are reported or ignored.

Declaration: `Property RaiseExceptionOnError : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RaiseExceptionOnError` determines whether an error during a logging operation will be signaled with an exception or not. If set to `False`, errors will be silently ignored, thus not disturbing normal operation of the program.

19.5.22 `TEventLog.DefaultEventType`

Synopsis: Default event type for the [Log \(665\)](#) call.

Declaration: `Property DefaultEventType : TEventType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultEventType` is the event type used by the [Log \(665\)](#) call if it's `EventType` parameter is omitted.

See also: [Log \(665\)](#)

19.5.23 `TEventLog.FileName`

Synopsis: File name for log file.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is the name of the log file used to log messages if no system logger is available or the `LogType (667)` is `ltFile`. If none is specified, then the name of the application binary is used, with the extension replaced by `.log`. The file is then located in the `/tmp` directory on UNIX-like systems, or in the application directory for Dos/Windows like systems.

See also: [LogType \(667\)](#)

19.5.24 TEventLog.TimestampFormat

Synopsis: Format for the timestamp string.

Declaration: `Property TimestampFormat : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TimestampFormat` is the formatting string used to create a timestamp string when writing log messages to file. It should have a format suitable for the `FormatDateTime (??)` call. If it is left empty, then `yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss.zzz` is used.

See also: `TEventLog.Identification` ([667](#))

19.5.25 TEventLog.CustomLogType

Synopsis: Custom log type ID.

Declaration: `Property CustomLogType : Word`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CustomLogType` is used in the `EventTypeToString` ([663](#)) to format the custom log event type string.

See also: `EventTypeToString` ([663](#))

19.5.26 TEventLog.EventIDOffset

Synopsis: Offset for event ID messages identifiers.

Declaration: `Property EventIDOffset : DWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `EventIDOffset` is the offset for the message formatting strings in the windows resource file. This property is ignored on other platforms.

The message strings in the file registered with the `RegisterMessageFile` ([664](#)) call are windows resource strings. They each have a unique ID, which must be communicated to windows. In the resource file distributed by Free Pascal, the resource strings are numbered from 1000 to 1004. The actual number communicated to windows is formed by adding the ordinal value of the message's eventtype to `EventIDOffset` (which is by default 1000), which means that by default, the string numbers are:

1000 Custom event types

1001 Information event type

1002 Warning event type

1003 Error event type

1004 Debug event type

See also: `RegisterMessageFile` ([664](#))

19.5.27 TEventLog.OnGetCustomCategory

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom message category.

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomCategory : TLogCategoryEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomCategory is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which describes the message category in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: OnGetCustomEventID ([670](#)), OnGetCustomEvent ([670](#))

19.5.28 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEventID

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event ID.

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomEventID : TLogCodeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomEventID is called on the windows platform to determine the category of a custom event type. It should return an ID which will be used by windows to look up the string which formats the message, in the file containing the resource strings.

See also: OnGetCustomCategory ([670](#)), OnGetCustomEvent ([670](#))

19.5.29 TEventLog.OnGetCustomEvent

Synopsis: Event to retrieve custom event Code.

Declaration: Property OnGetCustomEvent : TLogCodeEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetCustomEvent is called on the windows platform to determine the event code of a custom event type. It should return an ID.

See also: OnGetCustomCategory ([670](#)), OnGetCustomEventID ([670](#))

19.5.30 TEventLog.OnLogMessage

Synopsis: Implement custom handling of log messages.

Declaration: Property OnLogMessage : TLogMessageEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnLogMessage can be used to implement custom handling of log messages. It is always called, regardless of the LogType ([667](#)) setting.

See also: LogType ([667](#)), TLogMessageEvent ([661](#))

19.5.31 TEventLog.Paused

Synopsis: Is the message sending paused ?

Declaration: `Property Paused : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Paused` indicates whether the sending of messages is temporarily suspended or not. Setting it to `True` has the same effect as calling `Pause` (665). Setting it to `False` has the same effect as calling `Resume` (665).

See also: `TEventLog.Pause` (665), `TEventLog.Resume` (665)

Chapter 20

Reference for unit 'ezcgi'

20.1 Used units

Table 20.1: Used units by unit 'ezcgi'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

20.2 Overview

`ezcgi`, written by Michael Hess, provides a single class which offers simple access to the CGI environment which a CGI program operates under. It supports both GET and POST methods. It's intended for simple CGI programs which do not need full-blown CGI support. File uploads are not supported by this component.

To use the unit, a descendent of the `TEZCGI` class should be created and the `DoPost` ([675](#)) or `DoGet` ([675](#)) methods should be overridden.

20.3 Constants, types and variables

20.3.1 Constants

```
hexTable = '0123456789ABCDEF'
```

String constant used to convert a number to a hexadecimal code or back.

20.4 ECGIException

20.4.1 Description

Exception raised by `TEZcgi` ([673](#)).

See also: `TEZcgi` ([673](#))

20.5 TEZcgi

20.5.1 Description

TEZcgi implements all functionality to analyze the CGI environment and query the variables present in it. It's main use is the exposed variables.

Programs wishing to use this class should make a descendent class of this class and override the DoPost (675) or DoGet (675) methods. To run the program, an instance of this class must be created, and it's Run (674) method should be invoked. This will analyze the environment and call the DoPost or DoGet method, depending on what HTTP method was used to invoke the program.

20.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
673	Create	Creates a new instance of the TEZCGI component.
673	Destroy	Removes the TEZCGI component from memory.
675	DoGet	Method to handle GET requests.
675	DoPost	Method to handle POST requests.
675	GetValue	Return the value of a request variable.
674	PutLine	Send a line of output to the web-client.
674	Run	Run the CGI application.
674	WriteContent	Writes the content type to standard output.

20.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
677	Email	rw	Email of the server administrator.
677	Name	rw	Name of the server administrator.
676	Names	r	Indexed array with available variable names.
675	Values	r	Variables passed to the CGI script.
677	VariableCount	r	Number of available variables.
676	Variables	r	Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

20.5.4 TEZcgi.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the TEZCGI component.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the CGI program's environment: it reads the environment variables passed to the CGI program and stores them in the Variable (676) property.

See also: Variables (676), Names (676), Values (675)

20.5.5 TEZcgi.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the TEZCGI component from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes all variables from memory and then calls the inherited `destroy`, removing the `TEZCGI` instance from memory.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `Create` ([673](#))

20.5.6 TEZcgi.Run

Synopsis: Run the CGI application.

Declaration: `procedure Run`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Run` analyses the variables passed to the application, processes the request variables (it stores them in the `Variables` ([676](#)) property) and calls the `DoPost` ([675](#)) or `DoGet` ([675](#)) methods, depending on the method passed to the web server.

After creating the instance of `TEZCGI`, the `Run` method is the only method that should be called when using this component.

See also: `Variables` ([676](#)), `DoPost` ([675](#)), `DoGet` ([675](#))

20.5.7 TEZcgi.WriteContent

Synopsis: Writes the content type to standard output.

Declaration: `procedure WriteContent(cType: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteContent` writes the content type `cType` to standard output, followed by an empty line. After this method was called, no more HTTP headers may be written to standard output. Any HTTP headers should be written before `WriteContent` is called. It should be called from the `DoPost` ([675](#)) or `DoGet` ([675](#)) methods.

See also: `DoPost` ([675](#)), `DoGet` ([675](#)), `PutLine` ([674](#))

20.5.8 TEZcgi.PutLine

Synopsis: Send a line of output to the web-client.

Declaration: `procedure PutLine(sOut: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PutLine` writes a line of text (`sOut`) to the web client (currently, to standard output). It should be called only after `WriteContent` ([674](#)) was called with a content type of `text`. The sent text is not processed in any way, i.e. no HTML entities or so are inserted instead of special HTML characters. This should be done by the user.

Errors: No check is performed whether the content type is right.

See also: `WriteContent` ([674](#))

20.5.9 TEZcgi.GetValue

Synopsis: Return the value of a request variable.

Declaration: `function GetValue(Index: string; defaultValue: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetValue` returns the value of the variable named `Index`, and returns `DefaultValue` if it is empty or does not exist.

See also: [Values \(675\)](#)

20.5.10 TEZcgi.DoPost

Synopsis: Method to handle POST requests.

Declaration: `procedure DoPost; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoPost` is called by the `Run (674)` method the POST method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(674\)](#), [DoGet \(675\)](#)

20.5.11 TEZcgi.DoGet

Synopsis: Method to handle GET requests.

Declaration: `procedure DoGet; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoGet` is called by the `Run (674)` method the GET method was used to invoke the CGI application. It should be overridden in descendents of `TEZcgi` to actually handle the request.

See also: [Run \(674\)](#), [DoPost \(675\)](#)

20.5.12 TEZcgi.Values

Synopsis: Variables passed to the CGI script.

Declaration: `Property Values[Index: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Values` is a name-based array of variables that were passed to the script by the web server or the HTTP request. The `Index` variable is the name of the variable whose value should be retrieved. The following standard values are available:

AUTH_TYPE Authorization type

CONTENT_LENGTH Content length

CONTENT_TYPE Content type

GATEWAY_INTERFACE Used gateway interface
PATH_INFO Requested URL
PATH_TRANSLATED Transformed URL
QUERY_STRING Client query string
REMOTE_ADDR Address of remote client
REMOTE_HOST DNS name of remote client
REMOTE_IDENT Remote identity.
REMOTE_USER Remote user
REQUEST_METHOD Request methods (POST or GET)
SCRIPT_NAME Script name
SERVER_NAME Server host name
SERVER_PORT Server port
SERVER_PROTOCOL Server protocol
SERVER_SOFTWARE Web server software
HTTP_ACCEPT Accepted responses
HTTP_ACCEPT_CHARSET Accepted character sets
HTTP_ACCEPT_ENCODING Accepted encodings
HTTP_IF_MODIFIED_SINCE Proxy information
HTTP_REFERER Referring page
HTTP_USER_AGENT Client software name

Other than the standard list, any variables that were passed by the web-client request, are also available. Note that the variables are case insensitive.

See also: [TEZCGI.Variables \(676\)](#), [TEZCGI.Names \(676\)](#), [TEZCGI.GetValue \(675\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(677\)](#)

20.5.13 TEZcgi.Names

Synopsis: Indexed array with available variable names.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the available variable names. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` ([677](#)). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: [TEZcgi.Variables \(676\)](#), [TEZcgi.Values \(675\)](#), [TEZcgi.GetValue \(675\)](#), [TEZcgi.VariableCount \(677\)](#)

20.5.14 TEZcgi.Variables

Synopsis: Indexed array with variables as name=value pairs.

Declaration: `Property Variables[Index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Variables` provides indexed access to the available variable names and values. The variables are returned as `Name=Value` pairs. The `Index` may run from 0 to `VariableCount` (677). Any other value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: `TEZcgi.Names` (676), `TEZcgi.Values` (675), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (675), `TEZcgi.VariableCount` (677)

20.5.15 `TEZcgi.VariableCount`

Synopsis: Number of available variables.

Declaration: `Property VariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `TEZcgi.VariableCount` returns the number of available CGI variables. This includes both the standard CGI environment variables and the request variables. The actual names and values can be retrieved with the `Names` (676) and `Variables` (676) properties.

See also: `Names` (676), `Variables` (676), `TEZcgi.Values` (675), `TEZcgi.GetValue` (675)

20.5.16 `TEZcgi.Name`

Synopsis: Name of the server administrator.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (674) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (674), `TEZcgi.Email` (677)

20.5.17 `TEZcgi.Email`

Synopsis: Email of the server administrator.

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Email` is used when displaying an error message to the user. This should set prior to calling the `TEZcgi.Run` (674) method.

See also: `TEZcgi.Run` (674), `TEZcgi.Name` (677)

Chapter 21

Reference for unit 'FileInfo'

21.1 Used units

Table 21.1: Used units by unit 'FileInfo'

Name	Page
Classes	??
resource	??
System	??
sysutils	??
versionresource	??
versiontypes	??

21.2 Overview

The `FileInfo` unit provides classes and utilities for extracting and manipulating version information from executable files and modules. It includes both low-level access through `TVersionInfo` (685) and high-level component-based access through `TFileVersionInfo` (682).

The unit also provides convenience functions for version comparison (`CompareVersionQuads` (680), `CompareProgramVersion` (679), `NewerVersion` (680)), string conversion (`VersionQuadToStr` (682), `ProgramversionToStr` (680), `StrToVersionQuad` (681), `StrToProgramVersion` (681)), and version extraction (`GetProgramVersion` (680)).

21.3 Constants, types and variables

21.3.1 Types

```
TVersionCompare = (vcEqual,vcBuildDiffers,vcRevisionDiffers,  
vcMinorDiffers,vcMajorDiffers)
```

Table 21.2: Enumeration values for type TVersionCompare

Value	Explanation
vcBuildDiffers	Only build numbers differ
vcEqual	Versions are identical
vcMajorDiffers	Major version numbers differ
vcMinorDiffers	Minor version numbers or lower differ
vcRevisionDiffers	Revision numbers or lower differ

TVersionCompare indicates the level of difference between two version numbers, from equal to major version differences.

TVersionQuad = Array[1..4] of Word

TVersionQuad is an array of four Word values representing major, minor, revision, and build numbers respectively.

21.4 Procedures and functions

21.4.1 assign(TProgramVersion):TVersionQuad

Synopsis: Assignment operator from program version to version quad

Declaration: operator := (V: TProgramVersion) : TVersionQuad

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows assigning a TProgramVersion (682) to a TVersionQuad (679) variable.

See also: TProgramVersion (682), TVersionQuad (679), assign(TVersionQuad):TProgramVersion (679)

21.4.2 assign(TVersionQuad):TProgramVersion

Synopsis: Assignment operator from version quad to program version

Declaration: operator := (q: TVersionQuad) : TProgramVersion

Visibility: default

Description: This operator allows assigning a TVersionQuad (679) to a TProgramVersion (682) variable.

See also: TVersionQuad (679), TProgramVersion (682), assign(TProgramVersion):TVersionQuad (679)

21.4.3 CompareProgramVersion

Synopsis: Compares two program version records

Declaration: function CompareProgramVersion (Version1: TProgramVersion;
Version2: TProgramVersion)
: TVersionCompare

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareProgramVersion` compares two `TProgramVersion` (682) records and returns the level of difference between them.

See also: `TProgramVersion` (682), `TVersionCompare` (678), `CompareVersionQuads` (680)

21.4.4 CompareVersionQuads

Synopsis: Compares two version quad arrays

Declaration: `function CompareVersionQuads(Quad1: TVersionQuad; Quad2: TVersionQuad) : TVersionCompare`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareVersionQuads` compares two `TVersionQuad` (679) values and returns the level of difference between them. Comparison is performed hierarchically from major to build version.

See also: `TVersionQuad` (679), `TVersionCompare` (678), `CompareProgramVersion` (679)

21.4.5 GetProgramVersion

Synopsis: Extracts version information from the current executable

Declaration: `function GetProgramVersion(out Version: TVersionQuad) : Boolean`
`function GetProgramVersion(out Version: TProgramVersion) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProgramVersion` retrieves the file version from the current executable's version resources. Returns `True` if version information was successfully extracted, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TVersionInfo` (685)

21.4.6 NewerVersion

Synopsis: Determines if one version is newer than another

Declaration: `function NewerVersion(Q1: TVersionQuad; Q2: TVersionQuad) : Boolean`
`function NewerVersion(V1: TProgramVersion; V2: TProgramVersion) : Boolean`
`function NewerVersion(V1: string; V2: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewerVersion` compares two version values and returns `True` if the first version is newer than the second. Supports `TVersionQuad` (679), `TProgramVersion` (682), and string parameters.

See also: `CompareVersionQuads` (680), `CompareProgramVersion` (679)

21.4.7 ProgramVersionToStr

Synopsis: Converts a program version record to string representation

Declaration: `function ProgramVersionToStr(const Version: TProgramVersion) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ProgramVersionToStr` converts a `TProgramVersion` (682) to a string in the format "major.minor.revision.build".

See also: `TProgramVersion` (682), `StrToProgramVersion` (681), `VersionQuadToStr` (682)

21.4.8 StrToProgramVersion

Synopsis: Converts a string to a program version record

Declaration: `function StrToProgramVersion(const S: string) : TProgramVersion`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToProgramVersion` parses a version string and converts it to a `TProgramVersion` (682). Raises an exception if the string cannot be parsed.

Errors: Raises `EConvertError` if the string is not a valid version format.

See also: `TProgramVersion` (682), `TryStrToProgramVersion` (681), `StrToVersionQuad` (681)

21.4.9 StrToVersionQuad

Synopsis: Converts a string to a version quad

Declaration: `function StrToVersionQuad(const S: string) : TVersionQuad`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToVersionQuad` parses a version string and converts it to a `TVersionQuad` (679). Raises an exception if the string cannot be parsed.

Errors: Raises `EConvertError` if the string is not a valid version quad format.

See also: `TVersionQuad` (679), `TryStrToVersionQuad` (681), `StrToProgramVersion` (681)

21.4.10 TryStrToProgramVersion

Synopsis: Attempts to convert a string to a program version record

Declaration: `function TryStrToProgramVersion(const S: string;
out Version: TProgramVersion) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToProgramVersion` parses a version string and converts it to a `TProgramVersion` (682). Returns `True` if the conversion was successful, `False` otherwise.

See also: `TProgramVersion` (682), `StrToProgramVersion` (681), `TryStrToVersionQuad` (681)

21.4.11 TryStrToVersionQuad

Synopsis: Attempts to convert a string to a version quad

Declaration: `function TryStrToVersionQuad(S: string; out Quad: TVersionQuad)
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToVersionQuad` parses a version string and converts it to a `TVersionQuad` (679). Returns `True` if the conversion was successful, `False` otherwise. Accepts strings in the format "major.minor.revision.build".

See also: `TVersionQuad` (679), `StrToVersionQuad` (681), `TryStrToProgramVersion` (681)

21.4.12 VersionQuadToStr

Synopsis: Converts a version quad to string representation

Declaration: `function VersionQuadToStr(const Quad: TVersionQuad) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `VersionQuadToStr` converts a `TVersionQuad` (679) to a string in the format "major.minor.revision.build".

See also: `TVersionQuad` (679), `StrToVersionQuad` (681), `ProgramversionToStr` (680)

21.5 TProgramVersion

```
TProgramVersion = record
  Major : Word;
  Minor : Word;
  Revision
    : Word;
  Build : Word;
end
```

`TProgramVersion` is a record with named fields for major, minor, revision, and build numbers. It provides a more readable alternative to `TVersionQuad` (679).

21.6 EVersionInfo

21.6.1 Description

`EVersionInfo` is raised when errors occur during version information processing, such as accessing unloaded resources or missing translations.

See also: `TVersionInfo` (685), `TFileVersionInfo` (682)

21.7 TFileVersionInfo

21.7.1 Description

`TFileVersionInfo` is a component that provides easy access to version information from executable files. It automatically extracts version strings and supports filtering by key names and translations. The component can be enabled to automatically read version information when properties change.

See also: `TVersionInfo` (685), `EVersionInfo` (682)

21.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
683	Create	Creates a new <code>TFileVersionInfo</code> component
683	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TFileVersionInfo</code> component
683	Loaded	Called after component loading is complete
683	ReadFileInfo	Reads version information from the specified file

21.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
684	Enabled	rw	Controls automatic reading of version information
684	FileName	rw	File name to read version information from
685	Filter	rw	List of version string keys to extract
685	Translation	rw	Language and code page identifier for version strings
685	TranslationOnly	rw	Controls behavior when specified translation is not found
684	VersionStrings	r	Extracted version information strings

21.7.4 TFileVersionInfo.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TFileVersionInfo` component

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes the component with empty string lists for version strings and filter.

See also: `ReadFileInfo` ([683](#))

21.7.5 TFileVersionInfo.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TFileVersionInfo` component

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Frees the internal string lists and destroys the component.

See also: `Create` ([683](#))

21.7.6 TFileVersionInfo.Loaded

Synopsis: Called after component loading is complete

Declaration: `procedure Loaded; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Automatically triggers version information reading if the component is enabled after being loaded from a stream.

See also: `ReadFileInfo` ([683](#))

21.7.7 TFileVersionInfo.ReadFileInfo

Synopsis: Reads version information from the specified file

Declaration: `procedure ReadFileInfo`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadFileInfo` extracts version strings from the file specified by `FileName` ([684](#)). If no file is specified, it reads from the current executable. The extracted strings are filtered according to `Filter` ([685](#)) and stored in `VersionStrings` ([684](#)).

Errors: Raises [EVersionInfo \(682\)](#) if the specified translation is not found and [TranslationOnly \(685\)](#) is `True`.

See also: [FileName \(684\)](#), [VersionStrings \(684\)](#), [Filter \(685\)](#), [Translation \(685\)](#)

21.7.8 TFileVersionInfo.Enabled

Synopsis: Controls automatic reading of version information

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: When `True`, version information is automatically read when properties change. When `False`, [ReadFileInfo \(683\)](#) must be called manually.

See also: [ReadFileInfo \(683\)](#)

21.7.9 TFileVersionInfo.FileName

Synopsis: File name to read version information from

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the executable file to extract version information from. If empty, version information is read from the current executable.

See also: [ReadFileInfo \(683\)](#)

21.7.10 TFileVersionInfo.VersionStrings

Synopsis: Extracted version information strings

Declaration: `Property VersionStrings : TStrings`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read`

Description: Contains the version strings extracted from the file in key=value format. The strings are filtered according to [Filter \(685\)](#) settings.

See also: [Filter \(685\)](#), [ReadFileInfo \(683\)](#)

21.7.11 TFileVersionInfo.Filter

Synopsis: List of version string keys to extract

Declaration: `Property Filter : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Contains the names of version string keys to extract. If empty, all available version strings are extracted. Common keys include `CompanyName`, `FileDescription`, `FileVersion`, `ProductName`, `ProductVersion`.

See also: `VersionStrings` ([684](#))

21.7.12 TFileVersionInfo.Translation

Synopsis: Language and code page identifier for version strings

Declaration: `Property Translation : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies which language and code page combination to use when extracting version strings. The format is an 8-character hexadecimal string (e.g., "040904b0" for English US). If empty, the first available translation is used.

See also: `TranslationOnly` ([685](#))

21.7.13 TFileVersionInfo.TranslationOnly

Synopsis: Controls behavior when specified translation is not found

Declaration: `Property TranslationOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `True`, an exception is raised if the specified `Translation` ([685](#)) is not found. When `False`, the first available translation is used instead.

See also: `Translation` ([685](#))

21.8 TVersionInfo

21.8.1 Description

`TVersionInfo` provides direct access to version resources in executable files. It can load version information from files or module instances and exposes the raw version data structures.

See also: `TFileVersionInfo` ([682](#)), `EVersionInfo` ([682](#))

21.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
686	Create	Creates a new TVersionInfo instance
686	Destroy	Destroys the TVersionInfo instance and frees resources
686	Load	Loads version information from a file or module instance

21.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
687	FixedInfo	r	Fixed version information structure
687	StringFileInfo	r	String-based version information
687	VarFileInfo	r	Variable version information containing language and code page data

21.8.4 TVersionInfo.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new TVersionInfo instance

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes the TVersionInfo object. No version information is loaded until Load ([686](#)) is called.

See also: Load ([686](#))

21.8.5 TVersionInfo.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TVersionInfo instance and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Frees all loaded version resources and destroys the object.

21.8.6 TVersionInfo.Load

Synopsis: Loads version information from a file or module instance

Declaration: `procedure Load(const Instance: THandle); overload`
`procedure Load(const AFileName: string); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Load extracts version resources from the specified source. It can load from a file name or from a module instance handle. After successful loading, version information is available through the properties.

Errors: May raise exceptions if the file cannot be opened or contains invalid version resources.

See also: FixedInfo ([687](#)), StringFileInfo ([687](#)), VarFileInfo ([687](#))

21.8.7 TVersionInfo.FixedInfo

Synopsis: Fixed version information structure

Declaration: `Property FixedInfo : TVersionFixedInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Provides access to the fixed version information containing file version, product version, file flags, and other binary version data.

See also: [StringFileInfo \(687\)](#), [VarFileInfo \(687\)](#)

21.8.8 TVersionInfo.StringFileInfo

Synopsis: String-based version information

Declaration: `Property StringFileInfo : TVersionStringFileInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Provides access to string version information such as company name, file description, file version, and other textual version data. Information is organized by language and code page.

See also: [FixedInfo \(687\)](#), [VarFileInfo \(687\)](#)

21.8.9 TVersionInfo.VarFileInfo

Synopsis: Variable version information containing language and code page data

Declaration: `Property VarFileInfo : TVersionVarFileInfo`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Provides access to the variable file information containing supported languages and code pages for the version strings.

See also: [FixedInfo \(687\)](#), [StringFileInfo \(687\)](#)

Chapter 22

Reference for unit 'fpexprpars'

22.1 Used units

Table 22.1: Used units by unit 'fpexprpars'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contnrs	284
System	??
sysutils	??

22.2 Overview

This unit implements an expression parser and evaluator that supports a wide variety of data types, mathematical operations, and built-in functions. It provides the infrastructure for parsing and evaluating mathematical expressions with support for variables, functions, and complex data types.

The parser supports the following features:

- Multiple data types: integers, floats, strings, booleans, dates, and currency
- Standard mathematical operators: +, -, *, /, mod, power
- Comparison operators: =, <>, <, >, <=, >=
- Logical operators: and, or, xor, not
- Built-in mathematical, string, and date/time functions comparable to what exists in the SysUtils (??) unit.
- Variable and function definitions
- Conditional expressions (if-then-else)
- Aggregate functions for data processing

The unit is designed to be extensible, allowing custom functions and variables to be registered with the parser for specialized applications.

22.3 Constants, types and variables

22.3.1 Constants

```
AllBuiltIns = [bcStrings, bcDateTime, bcMath, bcBoolean, bcConversion
, bcData, bcVaria, bcUser, bcAggregate]
```

This constant represents the complete set of all available built-in identifier categories in the expression parser. It includes all predefined categories such as string functions, date/time operations, mathematical functions, boolean operations, data conversion functions, and user-defined functions.

This provides a convenient way to enable the full feature set of the expression parser without having to specify individual categories manually.

```
ttComparisons = [ttLargerThan, ttLessthan, ttLargerThanEqual, ttLessthanEqual
, ttEqual, ttUnequal]
```

This constant set contains all TTokenType (694) values that represent comparison operators in expressions. It includes equality, inequality, and ordering operators such as equal, unequal, less than, greater than, less than or equal, and greater than or equal.

The set is used by the parser to identify comparison operations and ensure proper precedence handling when evaluating expressions.

```
ttDelimiters = [ttPlus, ttMinus, ttLessThan, ttLargerThan, ttEqual
, ttDiv, ttMul, ttLeft, ttRight, ttLessThanEqual, ttLargerThanEqual
, ttunequal, ttPower]
```

This constant set contains all TTokenType (694) values that represent operators and structural delimiters in expressions. It includes arithmetic operators, comparison operators, parentheses, and the power operator.

The set is used by the parser and scanner to identify tokens that serve as operators or structural elements, allowing the parser to distinguish between operands and operators during expression analysis.

22.3.2 Types

```
PFPEExpressionResult = ^TFPEExpressionResult
```

This type defines a pointer to a TFPEExpressionResult (698) record. It is used in function interfaces where results need to be passed by reference or when dynamic allocation of result records is required.

```
TBuiltInCategories = Set of TBuiltInCategory = (bcStrings, bcDateTime
, bcMath, bcBoolean, bcConversion,
bcData, bcVaria
, bcUser, bcAggregate)
```

This set type allows for specifying collections of TBuiltInCategory (690) values. It is used to define which categories of built-in functions should be enabled or available in specific contexts.

```
TBuiltInCategory = (bcStrings, bcDateTime, bcMath, bcBoolean, bcConversion
,
bcData, bcVaria, bcUser, bcAggregate)
```

Table 22.2: Enumeration values for type `TBuiltInCategory`

Value	Explanation
<code>bcAggregate</code>	Aggregate functions category
<code>bcBoolean</code>	Boolean functions category
<code>bcConversion</code>	Type conversion functions category
<code>bcData</code>	Data manipulation functions category
<code>bcDateTime</code>	Date and time functions category
<code>bcMath</code>	Mathematical functions category
<code>bcStrings</code>	String manipulation functions category
<code>bcUser</code>	User-defined functions category
<code>bcVaria</code>	Miscellaneous functions category

This enumeration categorizes the different types of built-in functions available in the expression parser. Each category groups related functions together, such as string functions, mathematical functions, date/time functions, and others.

```

TExprArgumentArray = Array of TFPEExprNode = class(TObject)
protected
    procedure CheckNodeType(Anode: TFPEExprNode; Allowed: TResultTypes
    );
    procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEExpressionResult); virtual
    ; abstract;
public
    procedure Check; virtual
    ; abstract;
    procedure InitAggregate; virtual;
    procedure UpdateAggregate
    ; virtual;
    class function IsAggregate : Boolean; virtual;
    function
    HasAggregate : Boolean; virtual;
    function NodeType : TResultType
    ; virtual; abstract;
    function NodeValue : TFPEExpressionResult
    ;
    function AsString : AnsiString; virtual; abstract;
end

```

The `TExprArgumentArray` array type holds the argument nodes passed to functions and operations that accept multiple parameters. Each element is a `TFPEExprNode` (753) representing one argument expression.

The array is dynamically sized to accommodate functions with varying numbers of arguments. Functions and operations use this array to access their argument nodes and evaluate them during expression processing.

Unlike `TExprParameterArray` (691) which holds evaluated results, this array holds the actual expression nodes that produce the argument values.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

```
TExprFloat = Double
```

This type alias defines the standard floating-point data type used throughout the expression parser for all floating-point calculations and storage. It is currently defined as `Double`, providing the highest cross-platform precision for mathematical operations.

All floating-point operations within the expression parser, including mathematical functions and numeric conversions, use this type to ensure consistency and precision. The type is used in expression results, intermediate calculations, and function parameters.

Using a type alias allows for easy modification of the underlying floating-point precision across the entire expression parsing system if needed for specific applications or platforms.

```
TExprParameterArray = Array of TFPEXpressionResult = record
  ResString
    : AnsiString;
case ResultType : TResultType of
rtBoolean: (
  ResBoolean
    : Boolean;
);
rtInteger: (
  ResInteger : Int64;
);
rtFloat: (
  ResFloat : TExprFloat;
);
rtCurrency: (
  ResCurrency : Currency
  ;
);
rtDateTime: (
  ResDateTime : TDateTime;
);
rtString: (
);
end
```

This array type holds the parameter values passed to functions during expression evaluation. Each element is a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) containing both the value and type information for one parameter.

The array is dynamically sized to accommodate functions with varying numbers of parameters. Functions use this array to access their input parameters and determine their types during evaluation.

```
TFPBinaryOperationClass = class of TFPBinaryOperation
```

This is a class reference type (metaclass) for `TFPBinaryOperation` (719). It allows for dynamic creation of binary operation instances and enables polymorphic handling of different binary operation types during expression parsing.

Class reference types are essential in factory patterns where the specific binary operation class to be instantiated is determined at runtime based on the operator token encountered in the expression (such as `+`, `-`, `*`, `/`, etc.).

```
TFPBooleanResultOperationClass = class of
  TFPBooleanResultOperation
```

This is a class reference type (metaclass) for `TFPBooleanResultOperation` (724). It allows for dynamic creation of boolean result operation instances and enables polymorphic handling of different boolean result operation types.

```
TFPEXpressionParserClass = class of TFPEXpressionParser
```

This is a class reference type that can hold references to `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) or its derived classes. It enables polymorphic creation and manipulation of parser instances.

This type is useful for applications that need to work with different parser implementations or create parser instances dynamically based on runtime conditions.

```
TFPEXprFunctionCallBack = procedure(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult
;
                                const Args: TExprParameterArray
)
```

This procedural type defines the signature for callback procedures that can be used to implement custom function evaluation. It allows external code to provide function implementations that will be called during expression evaluation.

```
TFPEXprFunctionClass = class of TFPEXprFunction
```

This is a class reference type (metaclass) for `TFPEXprFunction` (740).

This type is used by the function registry to store references to function classes that can be instantiated when the corresponding function is called in an expression.

```
TFPEXprFunctionEvent = procedure(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult;
    const Args: TExprParameterArray
)
                                of object
```

This event procedure type defines the signature for event handlers that implement custom function evaluation. It provides a method-based approach to function implementation using object methods rather than standalone procedures.

```
TFPEXprVariableCallBack = procedure(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult
;
                                constref AName: ShortString
)
```

This procedural type defines the signature for callback procedures that provide variable values during expression evaluation. It allows external code to resolve variable names to their corresponding values at runtime.

```
TFPEXprVariableEvent = procedure(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult;
    constref AName: ShortString) of
    object
```

This event procedure type defines the signature for event handlers that resolve variable values during expression evaluation. It provides a method-based approach to variable resolution using object methods rather than standalone procedures.

```
TIdentifierEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    const aIdentifier: AnsiString;
    var aIdent: TFPEXprIdentifierDef) of object

TIdentifierType = (itVariable, itFunctionCallBack, itFunctionHandler
    ,
                    itFunctionNode)
```

Table 22.3: Enumeration values for type TIdentifierType

Value	Explanation
itFunctionCallBack	Function callback identifier type
itFunctionHandler	Function event handler identifier type
itFunctionNode	Function node identifier type
itVariable	Variable identifier type

This enumeration defines the different types of identifiers that can be encountered in expressions. It distinguishes between variables and functions to enable proper handling and resolution during expression parsing and evaluation.

```
TNumberKind = (nkDecimal, nkHex, nkOctal, nkBinary)
```

Table 22.4: Enumeration values for type TNumberKind

Value	Explanation
nkBinary	Binary number format (base 2)
nkDecimal	Decimal number format (base 10)
nkHex	Hexadecimal number format (base 16)
nkOctal	Octal number format (base 8)

This enumeration defines the different numerical base formats that the expression scanner can recognize and parse when tokenizing numeric literals in expressions.

The scanner can handle numbers in various bases commonly used in programming and mathematical contexts, allowing expressions to contain numbers in the most convenient format for the specific use case.

Each kind represents a different base system with its own parsing rules and digit validation requirements during the scanning process.

```
TResultType = (rtBoolean, rtInteger, rtFloat, rtDateTime, rtString,
    rtCurrency)
```

Table 22.5: Enumeration values for type TResultType

Value	Explanation
rtBoolean	Boolean result type
rtCurrency	Currency result type
rtDateTime	Date/time result type
rtFloat	Floating-point result type
rtInteger	Integer result type
rtString	String result type

This enumeration defines all possible data types that can be produced as results from expression evaluation. Each value represents a specific data type that expression nodes can return, enabling type checking and proper value handling.

The result type system ensures that expressions are properly typed and that operations between different types are handled correctly through appropriate type conversions when needed.

These types correspond to the variant record fields in TFPEXpressionResult (698) and determine how result values should be interpreted and stored.

```
TResultTypes = Set of TResultType = (rtBoolean, rtCurrency, rtDateTime
    , rtFloat, rtInteger,
      rtString)
```

This set type allows for specifying collections of TResultType (693) values. It is used in validation and type checking to define which result types are acceptable for specific operations or functions.

For example, arithmetic operations might accept a set containing rtInteger and rtFloat types, while comparison operations might accept a broader set of types that can be compared.

```
TTokenType = (ttPlus, ttMinus, ttLessThan, ttLargerThan, ttEqual, ttDiv
    ,
      ttMod, ttMul, ttLeft, ttRight, ttLessThanEqual,
    ttLargerThanEqual, ttunequal, ttNumber, ttString,
    ttIdentifier, ttComma, ttAnd, ttOr, ttXor, ttTrue, ttFalse,
    ttNot, ttif, ttCase, ttPower, ttEOF)
```

Table 22.6: Enumeration values for type TTokenType

Value	Explanation
ttAnd	Logical AND operator token (and)
ttCase	Case conditional keyword token
ttComma	Comma separator token (,)
ttDiv	Division operator token (/)
ttEOF	End of file token marking end of input
ttEqual	Equality comparison operator token (=)
ttFalse	Boolean false literal token
ttIdentifier	Identifier token (variable or function name)
ttIf	Conditional if keyword token
ttLargerThan	Greater than comparison operator token (>)
ttLargerThanEqual	Greater than or equal comparison operator token (>=)
ttLeft	Left parenthesis token ((
ttLessThan	Less than comparison operator token (<)
ttLessThanEqual	Less than or equal comparison operator token (<=)
ttMinus	Minus operator token (-)
ttMod	Modulo operator token (mod)
ttMul	Multiplication operator token (*)
ttNot	Logical NOT operator token (not)
ttNumber	Numeric literal token
ttOr	Logical OR operator token (or)
ttPlus	Plus operator token (+)
ttPower	Power/exponentiation operator token (**)
ttRight	Right parenthesis token ())
ttString	String literal token
ttTrue	Boolean true literal token
ttunequal	Inequality comparison operator token (<>)
ttXor	Logical XOR operator token (xor)

This enumeration defines all possible token types that can be encountered during expression parsing and lexical analysis. Each token type represents a fundamental unit of the expression language, from operators and keywords to literals and identifiers.

The token types are organized into several categories:

- Arithmetic operators: ttPlus, ttMinus, ttMul, ttDiv, ttMod, ttPower
- Comparison operators: ttEqual, ttUnequal, ttLessThan, ttLargerThan, ttLessThanEqual, ttLargerThanEqual
- Logical operators: ttAnd, ttOr, ttXor, ttNot
- Literals: ttNumber, ttString, ttTrue, ttFalse
- Structure tokens: ttLeft, ttRight, ttComma
- Keywords: ttIf, ttCase
- Special tokens: ttIdentifier, ttEOF

The TFPEXpressionScanner (737) uses these token types to categorize input text during the lexical analysis phase of expression parsing.

22.4 Procedures and functions

22.4.1 ArgToFloat

Synopsis: Convert argument to float value

Declaration: `function ArgToFloat(Arg: TFPEXpressionResult) : TExprFloat`

Visibility: default

Description: This utility function converts an `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) argument to a floating-point value. It handles conversion from various result types including integer, currency, and string representations to the standard `TExprFloat` (691) type.

The function is primarily used internally by mathematical operations and built-in functions that require floating-point operands. It provides type safety by ensuring consistent conversion behavior across different numeric types.

If the argument cannot be converted to a valid floating-point value, appropriate error handling is performed to maintain expression evaluation integrity.

22.4.2 BuiltinIdentifiers

Synopsis: Get built-in identifiers manager

Declaration: `function BuiltinIdentifiers : TExprBuiltInManager`

Visibility: default

Description: The `BuiltinIdentifiers` function provides access to the global `TExprBuiltInManager` (711) instance that contains all standard built-in functions and variables available to the expression parser. The manager is automatically initialized with default built-in functions when first accessed.

The returned manager includes predefined mathematical functions (sin, cos, sqrt, etc.), string manipulation functions (length, uppercase, etc.), date/time functions (now, date, etc.), and conversion functions between different data types.

This global manager can be extended with custom functions and variables, or individual parsers can use their own manager instances for specialized functionality.

22.4.3 CharToResultType

Synopsis: Convert character to result type

Declaration: `function CharToResultType(C: AnsiChar) : TResultType`

Visibility: default

Description: The `CharToResultType` function converts a single character code to the corresponding `TResultType` (693) enumeration value. It is used internally for parsing type specifications and managing result type conversions within the expression parser.

The character codes map to specific result types:

- 'B' maps to Boolean type (`rtBoolean`)
- 'I' maps to Integer type (`rtInteger`)
- 'F' maps to Float type (`rtFloat`)
- 'S' maps to String type (`rtString`)

- 'D' maps to DateTime type (rtDateTime)
- 'C' maps to Currency type (rtCurrency)

The `CharToResultType` function is primarily used for internal type management and serialization purposes within the expression parsing framework.

22.4.4 RegisterStdBuiltins

Synopsis: Register standard built-in functions

Declaration: `procedure RegisterStdBuiltins (AManager: TExprBuiltInManager;
Categories: TBuiltInCategories=AllBuiltIns)`

Visibility: default

Description: This procedure registers the standard set of built-in functions and variables with the specified manager. It populates the manager with predefined mathematical, string, date/time, and utility functions based on the selected categories.

The registration process allows applications to customize which built-in functions are available by specifying categories, enabling selective loading of functionality to meet specific requirements while minimizing memory usage.

22.4.5 ResultTypeName

Synopsis: Get name for result type

Declaration: `function ResultTypeName (AResult: TResultType) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: The `ResultTypeName` (697) function converts a `TResultType` (693) enumeration value to its corresponding string name. It provides a human-readable representation of result types for debugging, error reporting, and logging purposes.

22.4.6 TokenName

Synopsis: Get name for token type

Declaration: `function TokenName (AToken: TTokenType) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: The `TokenName` (697) function converts a `TTokenType` (694) enumeration value to its corresponding string name. It provides a human-readable representation of token types for debugging, error reporting, and logging purposes.

22.5 TFPExpressionResult

```
TFPExpressionResult = record
  ResString : AnsiString;
case ResultType
  : TResultType of
    rtBoolean: (
```

```

    ResBoolean : Boolean;
);
rtInteger
  : (
    ResInteger : Int64;
  );
rtFloat: (
  ResFloat : TExprFloat;
);
rtCurrency: (
  ResCurrency : Currency;
);
rtDateTime: (
  ResDateTime
    : TDatetime;
);
rtString: (
);
end

```

The `TFPEXpressionResult` record stores the result of evaluating an expression node, containing both the actual value and type information.

The `ResultType` field indicates which variant is active and determines how to interpret the value stored in the record.

22.6 EExprParser

22.6.1 Description

This exception class is raised by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) when parsing or evaluation errors occur. It encompasses both syntactic errors during expression parsing and runtime errors during expression evaluation.

This exception is raised in various scenarios:

- Syntax errors in expression structure (mismatched parentheses, invalid operators)
- Type mismatches during expression evaluation
- Undefined variable or function references
- Runtime errors during function calls or mathematical operations
- Invalid function arguments or parameter count mismatches
- Division by zero and other mathematical errors

22.7 EExprScanner

22.7.1 Description

This exception class is raised by the `TFPEXpressionScanner` (737) when lexical analysis errors occur during expression scanning. It indicates problems encountered while tokenizing the input expression text.

Common scenarios that trigger this exception include:

- Invalid character sequences that cannot be recognized as valid tokens
- Malformed string literals (unclosed quotes)
- Invalid numeric literals (malformed number formats)
- Unexpected characters that violate the expression grammar

The exception typically provides detailed error information including the position where the error occurred and a description of what went wrong during the scanning process.

22.8 TAggregateAvg

22.8.1 Description

The `TAggregateAvg` class implements the average (mean) aggregate function, which calculates the arithmetic mean of all processed numeric values. It extends `TAggregateSum` (704) to leverage summation functionality while adding count tracking for average calculation.

The average function handles different numeric types and ensures appropriate precision in the final result. Division by zero is handled appropriately when no values have been processed.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
700	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the average from aggregated values
699	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize average aggregation
700	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update average aggregate with new value

22.8.3 TAggregateAvg.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize average aggregation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes the average aggregate for a new aggregation cycle. It resets both the sum accumulator and the count of processed values to zero, preparing the aggregate for processing new values.

The method calls the parent `TAggregateSum.InitAggregate` (705) to handle sum initialization and additionally resets the count tracking needed for average calculation.

22.8.4 TAggregateAvg.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update average aggregate with new value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method processes a new value for the average calculation by updating both the running sum and incrementing the count of processed values. It leverages the parent `TAggregateSum.UpdateAggregate` (705) for sum handling.

Each call to this method adds one value to the sum and increases the count by one, maintaining the data needed to calculate the final average when requested.

22.8.5 TAggregateAvg.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the average from aggregated values

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method calculates and returns the final average value by dividing the accumulated sum by the count of processed values. It overrides the base class behavior to provide average-specific result calculation.

The method handles edge cases such as division by zero (when no values have been processed) and ensures appropriate result type conversion based on the input data types.

The returned result is a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) containing the calculated average as a floating-point value.

22.9 TAggregateCount

22.9.1 Description

The `TAggregateCount` class implements the count aggregate function, which counts the number of values processed during aggregation. It extends `TAggregateExpr` (701) to provide count-specific aggregation logic.

Unlike other aggregate functions that process the actual values, the count function simply increments a counter for each value encountered, regardless of the value's content or type. This makes it useful for determining the number of records or values in a dataset.

The count function always returns an integer result representing the total number of values processed during the aggregation cycle.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
701	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize count aggregation
701	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update count aggregate with new value

22.9.3 TAggregateCount.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize count aggregation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes the count aggregate for a new aggregation cycle. It resets the internal counter to zero, preparing the aggregate to count new values from the beginning.

The method sets up the initial state needed for accurate counting and ensures that the counter starts from zero for each new aggregation sequence.

Proper initialization is essential for accurate count results, as it establishes the starting point for the counting process.

22.9.4 TAggregateCount.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update count aggregate with new value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method increments the internal counter by one for each value encountered during the aggregation process. Unlike other aggregates, it does not examine the actual value content, only the presence of a value.

Each call to this method represents the processing of one item in the aggregation sequence, and the counter is incremented regardless of the value's type or content.

This simple counting approach makes the count aggregate efficient and applicable to any data type or value combination.

22.10 TAggregateExpr

22.10.1 Description

This abstract base class provides the foundation for all aggregate expression classes in the expression parser. Aggregate expressions perform calculations over multiple values, such as sums, averages, counts, minimums, and maximums.

The class extends `TFPEExprNode` (753) to provide aggregate-specific functionality including initialization and update methods that are called as values are processed. Derived classes must implement the specific aggregation logic for their particular operation.

Aggregate expressions typically maintain internal state that accumulates as values are processed, making them stateful unlike regular expression nodes. The aggregation process involves initialization, iterative updates, and final value calculation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
702	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Get the aggregate expression value
702	<code>IsAggregate</code>	Check if expression is an aggregate

22.10.3 TAggregateExpr.IsAggregate

Synopsis: Check if expression is an aggregate

Declaration: `class function IsAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `TAggregateExpr.IsAggregate` class function returns `True` to indicate that this expression is an aggregate expression. It overrides the default behavior from `TFPEXprNode` (753) which returns `False` for regular expressions.

The method is used by the expression parser to identify aggregate expressions and handle them differently from regular expressions, as aggregates require special processing including initialization and incremental updates.

22.10.4 TAggregateExpr.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Get the aggregate expression value

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method returns the final calculated value of the aggregate expression after all values have been processed. It is called after the aggregation process is complete to retrieve the accumulated result.

The method returns the result in a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) structure, which can contain different data types depending on the specific aggregate operation (numeric for sums and averages, integer for counts, etc.).

The `GetNodeValue` (702) method should only be called after the aggregation initialization and update phases are complete, as the result depends on all processed values.

22.11 TAggregateMax

22.11.1 Description

The `TAggregateMax` class implements the maximum aggregate function, which finds the largest value among all processed values. It extends `TAggregateExpr` (701) to provide maximum-specific aggregation logic.

The class maintains an internal state that tracks the maximum value encountered so far during the aggregation process. The first value encountered is used as the initial maximum, and subsequent values are compared to update the maximum when larger values are found.

The maximum function works with numeric types (integers, floats, currency) and can also compare string and date/time values using appropriate comparison logic for each data type.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
703	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize maximum aggregation
703	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update maximum aggregate with new value

22.11.3 TAggregateMax.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize maximum aggregation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes the maximum aggregate for a new aggregation cycle. It sets up the internal state needed to track the maximum value across multiple value updates.

The method resets an internal flag, indicating that the next value processed will be the first value in the aggregation sequence. It also prepares any internal storage needed for the maximum calculation.

The `InitAggregate` (703) method must be called before starting a new aggregation cycle to ensure proper initialization of the aggregate state.

22.11.4 TAggregateMax.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update maximum aggregate with new value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method processes a new value in the maximum aggregation sequence. If this is the first value, it becomes the initial maximum. Otherwise, the new value is compared with the current maximum and replaces it if larger.

The method handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers and lexical comparison for strings. Type compatibility is maintained throughout the aggregation process.

After processing the first value, the `FFirst` flag is set to `False` to ensure subsequent values are properly compared against the established maximum.

22.12 TAggregateMin

22.12.1 Description

The `AggregateMin` class implements the minimum aggregate function, which finds the smallest value among all processed values. It extends `TAggregateExpr` (701) to provide minimum-specific aggregation logic.

The class maintains an internal state that tracks the minimum value encountered so far during the aggregation process. The first value encountered is used as the initial minimum, and subsequent values are compared to update the minimum when smaller values are found.

The minimum function works with numeric types (integers, floats, currency) and can also compare string and date/time values using appropriate comparison logic for each data type.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
704	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize minimum aggregation
704	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update minimum aggregate with new value

22.12.3 TAggregateMin.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize minimum aggregation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes the minimum aggregate for a new aggregation cycle. It sets up the internal state needed to track the minimum value across multiple value updates.

The method sets an internal flag, indicating that the next value processed will be the first value in the aggregation sequence. It also prepares any internal storage needed for the minimum calculation.

The `InitAggregate` method must be called before starting a new aggregation cycle to ensure proper initialization of the aggregate state.

22.12.4 TAggregateMin.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update minimum aggregate with new value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method processes a new value in the minimum aggregation sequence. If this is the first value, it becomes the initial minimum. Otherwise, the new value is compared with the current minimum and replaces it if smaller.

After processing the first value, the `FFirst` flag is set to `False` to ensure subsequent values are properly compared against the established minimum.

22.13 TAggregateSum

22.13.1 Description

The `TAggregateSum` class implements the sum aggregate function, which calculates the total of all processed numeric values. It extends `TAggregateExpr` (701) to provide summation-specific aggregation logic.

The class maintains an internal accumulator that adds each new value to the running total. It handles different numeric types (integers, floats, currency) and performs appropriate type conversions to maintain precision during the summation process.

The sum function ensures type safety by converting arguments to compatible numeric types before performing addition operations. The final result type depends on the types of values processed during aggregation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
705	<code>ConvertArgument</code>	Convert argument for sum aggregation
705	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize sum aggregation
705	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update sum aggregate with new value

22.13.3 TAggregateSum.ConvertArgument

Synopsis: Convert argument for sum aggregation

Declaration: `function ConvertArgument(aIndex: Integer; aNode: TFPEExprNode;
aType: TResultType) : TFPEExprNode; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `ConvertArgument` method converts an expression node argument to an appropriate numeric type for summation. It handles type conversion between different numeric types to ensure compatibility during the sum calculation process.

The method takes the argument index, the expression node containing the value, and the target result type, then performs the necessary conversion to make the value compatible with the sum operation.

This conversion ensures that mixed numeric types can be properly summed together while maintaining appropriate precision and avoiding type-related runtime errors.

22.13.4 TAggregateSum.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize sum aggregation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes the sum aggregate for a new aggregation cycle. It resets the internal accumulator to zero and prepares the aggregate state for processing new values.

The method sets up the appropriate initial values based on the expected result type (integer, float, or currency) and ensures that the accumulator is ready to receive and sum new values.

22.13.5 TAggregateSum.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update sum aggregate with new value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method adds a new value to the running sum during the aggregation process. It handles the addition of different numeric types while maintaining appropriate precision and type compatibility.

The method performs type conversion as needed using the `ConvertArgument` (705) method, then adds the converted value to the internal accumulator. It ensures that the sum calculation maintains the appropriate result type throughout the process.

Each call to this method processes one value from the aggregation sequence and updates the internal sum state accordingly.

22.14 TCaseOperation

22.14.1 Description

The `TCaseOperation` class implements case-when conditional operations in expressions, providing multi-way branching logic based on value matching. It allows for testing a single expression against multiple possible values and executing different branches based on which value matches.

The case operation evaluates a test expression and compares it against a series of when-value pairs, executing the associated expression for the first matching value. If no values match, an optional else expression is evaluated.

The `TCaseOperation` class enables complex multi-conditional logic within expressions, similar to CASE statements in SQL or switch statements in programming languages, providing an alternative to nested if-then-else constructs.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
708	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of case operation
706	<code>Check</code>	Validate the case operation for correctness
707	<code>Create</code>	Create case operation with arguments
708	<code>destroy</code>	Destroy case operation and free resources
707	<code>HasAggregate</code>	Check if case operation contains aggregates
706	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize aggregate processing for case operation
707	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for case operation
707	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update aggregate calculations for case operation

22.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
708	<code>Condition</code>	<code>r</code>	The condition expression of the case operation

22.14.4 TCaseOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the case operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` (706) method validates the case operation to ensure that all components are properly configured and type-compatible. It checks that the condition expression and all case branches have compatible types and that the operation can be safely evaluated.

The validation process includes verifying that the condition can be evaluated to determine which case branch should be executed, and that all possible execution paths result in compatible data types.

22.14.5 TCaseOperation.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for case operation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes aggregate processing for the case operation node. It prepares the case operation for aggregate calculations by initializing any aggregate functions used within the case branches.

The initialization process ensures that all child nodes that contain aggregate functions are properly set up for aggregate processing, allowing the case operation to participate correctly in aggregate expression evaluation.

22.14.6 TCaseOperation.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for case operation

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates aggregate calculations for the case operation node during aggregate expression evaluation. It ensures that aggregate functions within the selected case branch are properly updated with current data values.

The update process involves evaluating the condition to determine the active case branch, then updating any aggregate functions contained within that branch, allowing proper aggregate calculation in conditional expressions.

22.14.7 TCaseOperation.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if case operation contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `HasAggregate` (707) method determines whether the case operation contains any aggregate functions within its condition or case branches. It returns true if any part of the case operation uses aggregate functions.

22.14.8 TCaseOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for case operation

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method returns the data type that will be produced by the case operation. The result type is determined by analyzing all possible case branches to ensure they are compatible and determining the common result type.

The case operation ensures that all branches produce results of the same type, or automatically performs appropriate type conversions to achieve a common result type for the entire operation.

22.14.9 TCaseOperation.Create

Synopsis: Create case operation with arguments

Declaration: `constructor Create (Args: TExprArgumentArray)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Create` constructor creates a new case operation node with the provided arguments array. The arguments typically include the condition expression and alternating case values and result expressions.

The case operation follows a pattern commonly found in SQL:

```
CASE condition
  WHEN value1 THEN result1
  WHEN value2 THEN result2
ELSE
  default_result
END.
```

The arguments array contains these components in the appropriate order for evaluation.

22.14.10 TCaseOperation.destroy

Synopsis: Destroy case operation and free resources

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the case operation and frees all associated resources. It properly deallocates all child expression nodes including the condition and all case branches.

22.14.11 TCaseOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of case operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` (708) method returns a human-readable string representation of the case operation, showing the condition and all case branches in a format that can be used for debugging or display purposes.

The string format typically follows the pattern:

```
CASE condition
  WHEN value1 THEN result1
  WHEN value2 THEN result2
ELSE
  default_result
END.
```

making the case logic clearly visible for analysis and debugging.

22.14.12 TCaseOperation.Condition

Synopsis: The condition expression of the case operation

Declaration: `Property Condition : TFPEExprNode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: The `Condition` (708) property provides access to the condition expression that determines which case branch will be executed. The condition is evaluated and its result is compared against the `WHEN` values to select the appropriate branch.

The condition expression can be any valid expression that produces a value compatible with the `WHEN` clause values, allowing flexible case-based conditional logic.

22.15 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode

22.15.1 Description

The `TCurrencyToDateTimeNode` conversion node class handles the conversion of currency values to date/time values in expressions. It treats the currency value as a numeric representation that can be converted to datetime format.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
709	<code>Check</code>	Validate the currency to datetime conversion
710	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Convert currency value to datetime
709	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for currency to datetime conversion

22.15.3 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the currency to datetime conversion

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the currency value can be safely converted to a datetime value, checking for valid datetime ranges and ensuring the conversion will produce a valid date/time result.

22.15.4 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for currency to datetime conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtDateTime` (693) to indicate that this conversion produces datetime results, enabling proper datetime handling in subsequent operations.

22.15.5 TCurrencyToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Convert currency value to datetime

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method converts a currency value to a datetime value by treating the currency amount as a numeric datetime representation, applying the standard Pascal datetime encoding.

22.16 TCurrencyToFloatNode

22.16.1 Description

The `TCurrencyToFloatNode` conversion node class handles the conversion of currency values to floating-point values in expressions. It preserves the numeric value while changing the data type to enable mathematical operations that require floating-point operands.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
710	<code>Check</code>	Validate the currency to float conversion
711	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Convert currency value to float
710	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for currency to float conversion

22.16.3 TCurrencyToFloatNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the currency to float conversion

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the currency value can be safely converted to a floating-point value, ensuring that precision is maintained and no overflow conditions occur during the conversion process.

22.16.4 TCurrencyToFloatNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for currency to float conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtFloat` (693) to indicate that this conversion produces floating-point results, enabling proper type handling for subsequent mathematical operations.

22.16.5 TCurrencyToFloatNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Convert currency value to float

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the actual conversion of a currency value to a floating-point value, maintaining the numeric precision while changing the data type representation for mathematical compatibility.

22.17 TExprBuiltInManager

22.17.1 Description

The `TExprBuiltInManager` class serves as a manager for built-in functions and predefined variables that can be used within expressions. It provides a centralized registry where built-in mathematical functions, string functions, date/time functions, and system variables are registered and made available to the expression parser.

The manager handles the registration, lookup, and instantiation of built-in functions when they are encountered during expression parsing. It also maintains predefined variables such as system constants that can be referenced in expressions.

The `TExprBuiltInManager` class allows for extensibility by enabling the registration of custom built-in functions and variables that should be available across all expression evaluations.

See also: `TFPEXpressionParser` (731)

22.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
713	<code>AddBooleanVariable</code>	Add boolean variable to built-in collection
714	<code>AddCurrencyVariable</code>	Add currency variable to built-in collection
714	<code>AddDateTimeVariable</code>	Add datetime variable to built-in collection
713	<code>AddFloatVariable</code>	Add float variable to built-in collection
714	<code>AddFunction</code>	Add function to built-in collection
713	<code>AddIntegerVariable</code>	Add integer variable to built-in collection
714	<code>AddStringVariable</code>	Add string variable to built-in collection
713	<code>AddVariable</code>	Add variable to built-in collection
712	<code>Create</code>	Create built-in manager instance
715	<code>Delete</code>	
712	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy built-in manager instance
712	<code>FindIdentifier</code>	Find built-in identifier by name
712	<code>IdentifierByName</code>	Get identifier by name with exception on not found
712	<code>IndexOfIdentifier</code>	Find index of built-in identifier
715	<code>Remove</code>	

22.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
715	<code>IdentifierCount</code>	r	Number of built-in identifiers
715	<code>Identifiers</code>	r	Array access to built-in identifiers

22.17.4 TExprBuiltInManager.Create

Synopsis: Create built-in manager instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `TExprBuiltInManager` (711) constructor creates a new built-in manager instance that provides standard built-in functions and variables for expression parsing. The manager registers common mathematical, string, date/time, and conversion functions.

22.17.5 TExprBuiltInManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy built-in manager instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This destructor properly cleans up the built-in manager by freeing all registered built-in identifier definitions and any other allocated resources used by the manager.

22.17.6 TExprBuiltInManager.IndexOfIdentifier

Synopsis: Find index of built-in identifier

Declaration: `function IndexOfIdentifier(const AName: ShortString) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `IndexOfIdentifier` (712) method searches for a built-in identifier with the specified name and returns its index position in the collection. If the identifier is not found, it returns -1. The search is case-sensitive.

22.17.7 TExprBuiltInManager.FindIdentifier

Synopsis: Find built-in identifier by name

Declaration: `function FindIdentifier(const AName: ShortString)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `FindIdentifier` (712) method searches for a built-in identifier with the specified name and returns the `TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef` (725) object if found, or nil if not found. The search is case-sensitive and covers all registered built-in functions and variables.

22.17.8 TExprBuiltInManager.IdentifierByName

Synopsis: Get identifier by name with exception on not found

Declaration: `function IdentifierByName(const AName: ShortString)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `IdentifierByName` (712) method retrieves a built-in identifier by name from the manager. Unlike `FindIdentifier` (712), this method raises an exception if the identifier is not found, making it suitable when the identifier is expected to exist.

22.17.9 TExprBuiltInManager.AddVariable

Synopsis: Add variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AResultType: TResultType;
const AValue: AnsiString)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddVariable` (713) method creates and adds a new built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and value. The variable becomes available for use in expressions parsed by this manager.

22.17.10 TExprBuiltInManager.AddBooleanVariable

Synopsis: Add boolean variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddBooleanVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AValue: Boolean)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddBooleanVariable` (713) method creates and adds a new boolean built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and boolean value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the boolean value.

22.17.11 TExprBuiltInManager.AddIntegerVariable

Synopsis: Add integer variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddIntegerVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AValue: Integer)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddIntegerVariable` (713) method creates and adds a new integer built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and integer value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the numeric value.

22.17.12 TExprBuiltInManager.AddFloatVariable

Synopsis: Add float variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddFloatVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AValue: TExprFloat)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddFloatVariable` (713) method creates and adds a new floating-point built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and float value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the floating-point value.

22.17.13 TExprBuiltInManager.AddCurrencyVariable

Synopsis: Add currency variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddCurrencyVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AValue: Currency)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddCurrencyVariable` (714) method creates and adds a new currency built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and currency value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the monetary value.

22.17.14 TExprBuiltInManager.AddStringVariable

Synopsis: Add string variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddStringVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString;
const AValue: AnsiString)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddStringVariable` (714) method creates and adds a new string built-in variable to the manager with the specified category, name, and string value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the text value.

22.17.15 TExprBuiltInManager.AddDateTimeVariable

Synopsis: Add datetime variable to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddDateTimeVariable(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString; AValue: TDateTime)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddDateTimeVariable` (714) method adds a datetime variable with the specified name and initial value to the built-in collection. The variable will be available in expressions under the provided name and will initially hold the specified datetime value.

Built-in datetime variables can be used to provide predefined date/time values like current date, system timestamps, or reference dates that expressions can access and use in date/time calculations.

22.17.16 TExprBuiltInManager.AddFunction

Synopsis: Add function to built-in collection

Declaration: `function AddFunction(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ACallback: TFPEExprFunctionCallBack)
: TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef
function AddFunction(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;`

```

const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ACallback: TFPEXprFunctionEvent)
    : TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef
function AddFunction(const ACategory: TBuiltInCategory;
const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ANodeClass: TFPEXprFunctionClass)
    : TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef

```

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddFunction` method adds a custom function to the built-in collection, making it available for use in expressions. The function must provide appropriate callback or event handling mechanisms for evaluation.

Built-in functions extend the expression language with domain-specific functionality, allowing applications to provide mathematical, string, date/time, or business-logic functions that can be called from within expressions.

22.17.17 TExprBuiltinManager.Delete

Declaration: `procedure Delete(AIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

22.17.18 TExprBuiltinManager.Remove

Declaration: `function Remove(const aIdentifier: AnsiString) : Integer`

Visibility: public

22.17.19 TExprBuiltinManager.IdentifierCount

Synopsis: Number of built-in identifiers

Declaration: `Property IdentifierCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `IdentifierCount` property returns the total number of built-in identifiers (functions and variables) currently registered in the manager. It includes all predefined mathematical functions, string functions, date/time functions, and variables.

This count is useful for iterating through all available built-ins or for applications that need to report or analyze the available expression language features.

22.17.20 TExprBuiltinManager.Identifiers

Synopsis: Array access to built-in identifiers

Declaration: `Property Identifiers[AIndex: Integer]: TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Identifiers` property provides indexed access to the built-in identifier definitions registered in the manager. Each element is a `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) object containing function or variable information.

The array allows applications to enumerate and examine all available built-in functions and variables, useful for creating help systems, function browsers, or validation tools.

22.18 TFloatToCurrencyNode

22.18.1 Description

The `TFloatToCurrencyNode` conversion node class handles the conversion of floating-point values to currency values in expressions.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
716	<code>Check</code>	Validate the float to currency conversion
717	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Convert float value to currency
716	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for float to currency conversion

22.18.3 TFloatToCurrencyNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the float to currency conversion

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Check` method validates that the floating-point value can be safely converted to a currency value, checking for valid currency ranges and preventing overflow conditions that could result in incorrect currency amounts.

22.18.4 TFloatToCurrencyNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for float to currency conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtCurrency` (693) to indicate that this conversion produces currency results, enabling proper currency handling in the expression parser.

22.18.5 TFloatToCurrencyNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Convert float value to currency

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the actual conversion of a floating-point value to a currency value, applying appropriate rounding and precision rules to ensure accurate currency representation.

22.19 TFloatToDateTimeNode

22.19.1 Description

The `TFloatToDateTimeNode` conversion node class handles the conversion of floating-point values to date/time values in expressions. It supports the standard Pascal datetime representation where the integer part represents days and the fractional part represents time.

The class enables precise datetime calculations by allowing floating-point values to represent both date and time components in a single numeric value. This is particularly useful for calculations involving time intervals and fractional days.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
717	<code>Check</code>	Validate the float to datetime conversion
718	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Convert float value to datetime
717	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for float to datetime conversion

22.19.3 TFloatToDateTimeNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the float to datetime conversion

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Check` method validates that the floating-point value can be safely converted to a datetime value. It checks for valid datetime ranges and ensures that the conversion will not result in invalid date/time values.

The validation helps prevent runtime errors that could occur when attempting to convert floating-point values that are outside the valid datetime range or represent invalid date combinations.

22.19.4 TFloatToDateTimeNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for float to datetime conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` (717) method returns `rtDateTime` (693) to indicate that this conversion produces datetime results.

22.19.5 TFloatToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Convert float value to datetime

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` (718) method converts a floating-point value to a datetime value using the Pascal datetime encoding. The integer part represents days since the base date, and the fractional part represents the time portion of the day.

22.20 TFPAddOperation

22.20.1 Description

The `TFPAddOperation` class implements the addition operation between two numeric operands. It extends the binary operation framework to provide addition-specific functionality for integers, floats, and currency values.

The operation handles type conversion automatically when operands have different numeric types, promoting the result to the more precise type as needed. For example, adding an integer to a float produces a float result.

The addition operation also supports string concatenation when both operands are strings, providing unified handling for both numeric addition and string concatenation under the same operator.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
718	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of addition operation

22.20.3 TFPAddOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of addition operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the addition operation, showing both operands connected by the "+" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

The string representation helps in understanding the structure of mathematical expressions and provides useful debugging information for complex arithmetic operations.

22.21 TFPBinaryAndOperation

22.21.1 Description

The `TFPBinaryAndOperation` class implements the logical AND operation between two boolean operands. It extends `TFPBooleanOperation` (723) to provide AND-specific functionality that evaluates to True only when both operands are True.

The operation uses short-circuit evaluation, meaning that if the left operand is False, the right operand is not evaluated since the result is already determined to be False. This optimization improves performance and can prevent evaluation of potentially expensive or problematic right operands.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
719	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of AND operation

22.21.3 TFPBinaryAndOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of AND operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` (719) method returns a string representation of the AND operation, typically showing both operands connected by the "and" keyword for debugging and display purposes.

22.22 TFPBinaryOperation

22.22.1 Description

This `TFPBinaryOperation` is the base class for all binary operations in the expression parser. Binary operations take two operands (left and right) and perform some operation to produce a result. It extends `TFPEXprNode` (753) to provide the foundation for all two-operand operations.

The class manages the operand nodes and provides common functionality such as aggregate handling, validation, and resource management that is shared by all binary operations.

Derived classes implement specific operations such as arithmetic operations (+, -, *, /), comparison operations (=, <, >), and logical operations (and, or, xor). Each operation defines its own evaluation logic while leveraging the common binary operation infrastructure.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
721	Check	Validate the binary operation for correctness
720	Create	Create binary operation with left and right operands
720	Destroy	Destroy binary operation and free resources
721	HasAggregate	Check if binary operation contains aggregates
720	InitAggregate	Initialize aggregate processing for binary operation
721	UpdateAggregate	Update aggregate calculations for binary operation

22.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
721	left	r	Left operand of the binary operation
722	Right	r	Right operand of the binary operation

22.22.4 TFPBinaryOperation.Create

Synopsis: Create binary operation with left and right operands

Declaration: constructor `Create (ALeft: TFPEXprNode; ARight: TFPEXprNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `TFPBinaryOperation` constructor creates a new binary operation with the specified left and right operands. It takes ownership of both operand nodes and manages their lifecycle as part of the binary operation.

The constructor properly initializes the binary operation structure and establishes the relationship between the operation and its operands, ensuring that the operands are properly managed during the operation's lifetime.

22.22.5 TFPBinaryOperation.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy binary operation and free resources

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: This destructor properly cleans up the binary operation by freeing both the left and right operand nodes and any other resources used by the operation.

The destructor ensures that all memory allocated for the operands is properly released, preventing memory leaks in complex expression trees.

22.22.6 TFPBinaryOperation.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for binary operation

Declaration: procedure `InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes aggregate processing for both the left and right operands of the binary operation. It delegates the aggregate initialization to both operands to ensure that any aggregate expressions within the operands are properly initialized.

The `InitAggregate` (720) method is called as part of the aggregate processing cycle when the expression contains aggregate functions that need special handling.

22.22.7 TFPBinaryOperation.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for binary operation

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates aggregate calculations for both the left and right operands of the binary operation. It delegates the aggregate updates to both operands to ensure that any aggregate expressions are properly maintained during the aggregation cycle.

The method is called repeatedly during aggregate processing to update the state of aggregate functions contained within the operands.

22.22.8 TFPBinaryOperation.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if binary operation contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `HasAggregate` method checks whether either the left or right operand contains aggregate expressions. It returns `True` if any of the operands has aggregate functionality, which indicates that special aggregate processing is required for this operation.

The method is used by the expression parser to identify operations that need aggregate handling and to ensure proper processing order for aggregate expressions.

22.22.9 TFPBinaryOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the binary operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates the binary operation by checking both operands for correctness and ensuring that they are compatible for the specific operation. It calls the `Check` method on both operands to perform recursive validation.

The validation process ensures that the operation can be safely executed and that all type requirements and constraints are met before evaluation begins.

22.22.10 TFPBinaryOperation.left

Synopsis: Left operand of the binary operation

Declaration: `Property left : TFPEExprNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `left` property provides access to the left operand of the binary operation. The left operand is the first operand in the operation and is typically evaluated before the right operand in operations where evaluation order matters.

The property returns the `TFPEExprNode` (753) that represents the left side of the binary operation, allowing access to its value and type information.

22.22.11 TFPBinaryOperation.Right

Synopsis: Right operand of the binary operation

Declaration: `Property Right : TFPEExprNode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Right` property provides access to the right operand of the binary operation. The right operand is the second operand in the operation and is typically evaluated after the left operand in operations where evaluation order matters.

The property returns the `TFPEExprNode` (753) that represents the right side of the binary operation, allowing access to its value and type information.

22.23 TFPBinaryOrOperation

22.23.1 Description

The `TFPBinaryOrOperation` class implements the logical OR operation between two boolean operands. It extends `TFPBooleanOperation` (723) to provide OR-specific functionality that evaluates to `True` when at least one operand is `True`.

The operation uses short-circuit evaluation, meaning that if the left operand is `True`, the right operand is not evaluated since the result is already determined to be `True`. This optimization improves performance in expressions where the first condition is likely to be true.

The result is always a boolean value, following standard logical OR truth table rules where only `False` OR `False` produces `False`.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
722	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of OR operation

22.23.3 TFPBinaryOrOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of OR operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the OR operation, typically showing both operands connected by the "or" keyword for debugging and display purposes.

The string format aids in visualizing the logical structure of expressions and provides valuable information for debugging complex boolean logic.

22.24 TFPBinaryXOrOperation

22.24.1 Description

The `TFPBinaryXOrOperation` class implements the logical XOR (exclusive OR) operation between two boolean operands. It extends `TFPBooleanOperation` (723) to provide XOR-specific functionality that evaluates to `True` when exactly one operand is `True`.

The XOR operation returns `True` only when the operands have different boolean values (`True XOR False` or `False XOR True`), and returns `False` when both operands have the same value (`True XOR True` or `False XOR False`).

Unlike AND and OR operations, XOR requires evaluation of both operands since both values are needed to determine the result.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
723	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of XOR operation

22.24.3 TFPBinaryXOrOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of XOR operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the XOR operation, typically showing both operands connected by the "xor" keyword for debugging and display purposes.

22.25 TFPBooleanOperation

22.25.1 Description

`TFPBooleanOperation` is the base class for binary operations that work with boolean operands and produce boolean results. It extends `TFPBinaryOperation` (719) to provide boolean-specific functionality and validation.

The class ensures that both operands are boolean expressions and provides the framework for logical operations such as AND, OR, and XOR. It handles type validation to ensure that only boolean values participate in logical operations.

Derived classes implement specific boolean operations while leveraging the common boolean operation infrastructure for validation and type management.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
724	<code>Check</code>	Validate the boolean operation for correctness
724	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for boolean operations

22.25.3 TFPBooleanOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the boolean operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that both operands of the boolean operation are boolean expressions. It ensures type compatibility and prevents type mismatches that would result in runtime errors during evaluation.

The validation process checks that both the left and right operands produce boolean results, raising appropriate errors if non-boolean operands are found.

22.25.4 TFPBooleanOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for boolean operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtBoolean` (693) to indicate that boolean operations always produce boolean results. This type information is used by the expression parser for type checking and result handling.

22.26 TFPBooleanResultOperation

22.26.1 Description

The `TFPBooleanResultOperation` class serves as the base class for binary operations that produce boolean results but may accept non-boolean operands. It extends `TFPBinaryOperation` (719) to provide the framework for comparison and relational operations.

Unlike `TFPBooleanOperation` (723) which requires boolean operands, this class allows various operand types while ensuring the result is always boolean. This makes it suitable for comparison operations like equality, less than, greater than, etc.

The class provides the infrastructure for operations that compare values of compatible types and return boolean results indicating the relationship between the operands.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

22.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
725	Check	Validate the boolean result operation
725	NodeType	Get the result type for boolean operations

22.26.3 TFPBooleanResultOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the boolean result operation

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The Check ([725](#)) method validates that the operands are compatible for the specific boolean result operation. While the result will be boolean, the operands may be of various types depending on the specific operation (e.g., numeric types for comparison operations).

The validation ensures that the operands are type-compatible for the comparison or relational operation being performed.

22.26.4 TFPBooleanResultOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for boolean operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The NodeType ([725](#)) method returns `rtBoolean` ([693](#)) to indicate that operations derived from this class always produce boolean results, regardless of the input operand types.

22.27 TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef

22.27.1 Description

The `TFPBuiltInExprIdentifierDef` class extends `TFPEmrIdentifierDef` ([742](#)) to provide additional functionality for built-in functions and variables. It includes category information and other metadata specific to built-in identifiers that come predefined with the expression parser.

22.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
726	Assign	Assign values from another built-in identifier definition

22.27.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
726	Category	rw	The category of the built-in identifier

22.27.4 TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef.Assign

Synopsis: Assign values from another built-in identifier definition

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Assign` method copies all properties and settings from another `TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef` object, as usual for a `TPersistent` descendant

22.27.5 TFPBuiltinExprIdentifierDef.Category

Synopsis: The category of the built-in identifier

Declaration: `Property Category : TBuiltinCategory`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Category` property specifies which `TBuiltinCategory` (690) this built-in identifier belongs to. The category is used to group related functions together and can be used for selective inclusion or exclusion of function groups.

22.28 TFPConstExpression

22.28.1 Description

The `TFPConstExpression` class represents constant literal values in expressions, storing fixed values that do not change during expression evaluation. It provides the foundation for all literal constants including strings, integers, floats, booleans, and date/time values.

Constant expressions are the leaf nodes of expression trees that provide actual data values rather than computed results. They are essential building blocks that supply the raw data that other expression nodes operate on.

The class handles various data types through different constructor methods and provides type-safe storage and retrieval of constant values during expression evaluation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
729	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of constant expression
728	<code>Check</code>	Validate the constant expression
728	<code>CreateBoolean</code>	Create constant expression with boolean value
728	<code>CreateCurrency</code>	Create constant expression with currency value
727	<code>CreateDateTime</code>	Create constant expression with datetime value
727	<code>CreateFloat</code>	Create constant expression with float value
727	<code>CreateInteger</code>	Create constant expression with integer value
727	<code>CreateString</code>	Create constant expression with string value
728	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Get the constant value
728	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for constant expressions

22.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
729	ConstValue	r	The constant value stored in the expression

22.28.4 TFPCConstExpression.CreateString

Synopsis: Create constant expression with string value

Declaration: `constructor CreateString(const AValue: AnsiString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `TFPCConstExpression` constructor creates a constant expression that holds a string literal value. The string value is stored internally and will be returned whenever the expression is evaluated.

String constants are used for literal text values in expressions and can be used in string operations, comparisons, and function parameters that expect string arguments.

22.28.5 TFPCConstExpression.CreateInteger

Synopsis: Create constant expression with integer value

Declaration: `constructor CreateInteger(AValue: Int64)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `TFPCConstExpression` constructor creates a constant expression that holds an integer literal value. The integer value is stored internally and will be returned whenever the expression is evaluated.

Integer constants are used for whole number values in expressions and can be used in arithmetic operations, comparisons, and function parameters that expect integer arguments.

22.28.6 TFPCConstExpression.CreateDateTime

Synopsis: Create constant expression with datetime value

Declaration: `constructor CreateDateTime(AValue: TDateTime)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `CreateDateTime` constructor creates a new constant expression node that holds a datetime value. The datetime constant can be used in expressions for date/time arithmetic, comparisons, and function parameters that expect datetime arguments.

22.28.7 TFPCConstExpression.CreateFloat

Synopsis: Create constant expression with float value

Declaration: `constructor CreateFloat(AValue: TExprFloat)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `CreateFloat` constructor creates a new constant expression node that holds a floating-point value. The float constant can be used in expressions for mathematical calculations, comparisons, and function parameters that expect floating-point arguments.

22.28.8 TFPCnstExpression.CreateBoolean

Synopsis: Create constant expression with boolean value

Declaration: `constructor CreateBoolean(AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `TFPCnstExpression` constructor creates a new constant expression node that holds a boolean value (true or false).

22.28.9 TFPCnstExpression.CreateCurrency

Synopsis: Create constant expression with currency value

Declaration: `constructor CreateCurrency(AValue: Currency)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `TFPCnstExpression` constructor creates a new constant expression node that holds a currency value with fixed-point precision.

22.28.10 TFPCnstExpression.Check

Synopsis: Validate the constant expression

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Check` method validates the constant expression to ensure that the stored constant value is valid and consistent with its declared type. For constant expressions, validation is typically straightforward since the value is fixed.

22.28.11 TFPCnstExpression.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for constant expressions

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` method returns the data type of the constant value stored in the expression. The result type corresponds directly to the type of the constant data, whether it's integer, float, string, boolean, datetime, or currency.

For constant expressions, the node type is fixed and determined when the constant is created.

22.28.12 TFPCnstExpression.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Get the constant value

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method returns the constant value stored in the expression as a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698). Since constants have fixed values, this method always returns the same result regardless of context.

22.28.13 TFPCnstExpression.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of constant expression

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the constant expression, showing the constant value in a readable format. The string representation varies based on the data type of the constant value.

22.28.14 TFPCnstExpression.ConstValue

Synopsis: The constant value stored in the expression

Declaration: `Property ConstValue : TFPEXpressionResult`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `ConstValue` property provides access to the constant value held by the expression node. The value is stored as a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) record containing both the value and its type information.

22.29 TFPCnvertNode

22.29.1 Description

`TFPCnvertNode` is the base class for all type conversion operations in the expression parser. It provides the fundamental infrastructure for converting values between different data types during expression evaluation.

The class extends `TFPEXprNode` (753) to provide conversion-specific functionality that enables automatic type coercion and explicit type casting operations within expressions.

Derived classes implement specific conversion logic for different source and target type combinations, ensuring type safety and proper value transformation during expression evaluation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.29.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
729	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of conversion operation

22.29.3 TFPCnvertNode.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of conversion operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: default

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the conversion operation, typically showing the source expression and the target type for debugging and display purposes.

The string representation helps in understanding the structure of complex expressions that include multiple type conversions and provides useful information for debugging expression parsing issues.

22.30 TFPDivideOperation

22.30.1 Description

The `TFPDivideOperation` class implements division operations between two numeric operands, handling division by zero checks and type conversion for integers, floats, and currency values.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
730	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of division operation
730	<code>Check</code>	Validate the division operation for correctness
731	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the result of division operation
730	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for division operations

22.30.3 TFPDivideOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the division operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that both operands are numeric types and checks for division by zero conditions to prevent runtime errors.

22.30.4 TFPDivideOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of division operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns string representation showing operands connected by "/" symbol for debugging purposes.

22.30.5 TFPDivideOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for division operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the appropriate result type for division operations, typically promoting to floating-point for precise division results.

22.30.6 TFPSDivideOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of division operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEExpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Performs the division calculation after checking for division by zero, returning the quotient with appropriate type handling.

22.31 TFPEqualOperation

22.31.1 Description

The `TFPEqualOperation` class implements the equality comparison operation (=) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPBooleanResultOperation` (724) to provide equality-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if they are equal, `False` otherwise. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric equality for numbers, string comparison for strings, and boolean comparison for boolean values.

Type conversion is performed when necessary to compare values of different but compatible types (e.g., comparing an integer with a float).

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.31.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
731	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of equality operation

22.31.3 TFPEqualOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of equality operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` (731) method returns a string representation of the equality operation, showing both operands connected by the "=" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

22.32 TFPEExpressionParser

22.32.1 Description

This is the main expression parser class that provides comprehensive functionality for parsing and evaluating mathematical expressions.

The parser handles the complete expression evaluation pipeline from tokenization through parsing to evaluation, supporting complex expressions with proper operator precedence, parentheses, function calls, and variable references.

Key features include built-in mathematical functions, string operations, date/time handling, boolean logic, comparison operations, and extensibility through custom functions and variables.

See also: TExprBuiltInManager (711)

22.32.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
733	Clear	Clear the current expression
732	Create	Create expression parser instance
732	Destroy	Destroy expression parser and free resources
734	Evaluate	Evaluate the current expression
733	EvaluateExpression	Evaluate the expression and return result
733	ExtractIdentifierNames	
733	ExtractNode	Extract expression node from result
734	HasAggregate	Check if expression contains aggregates
733	IdentifierByName	Get identifier definition by name
734	InitAggregate	Initialize aggregate calculation
734	ResultType	Get the result type of the expression
735	UpdateAggregate	Update aggregate calculation with value

22.32.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
736	AsBoolean	r	Expression result as boolean value
735	AsCurrency	r	Expression result as currency value
736	AsDateTime	r	Expression result as date/time value
735	AsFloat	r	Expression result as floating point value
735	AsInteger	r	Expression result as integer value
736	AsString	r	Expression result as string value
737	BuiltIns	rw	Manager for built-in functions and constants
736	Expression	rw	Expression string to be evaluated
737	Identifiers	rw	Collection of identifiers and their values

22.32.4 TFPExpressionParser.Create

Synopsis: Create expression parser instance

Declaration: constructor `Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Create` constructor creates a new expression parser instance that can parse and evaluate mathematical expressions. The parser is initialized with empty identifier collections and is ready to accept expression strings for parsing.

22.32.5 TFPExpressionParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy expression parser and free resources

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: This destructor properly cleans up the expression parser by freeing all allocated resources, including the parsed expression tree, identifier definitions, and any other internal structures used by the parser.

22.32.6 TFPEXpressionParser.IdentifierByName

Synopsis: Get identifier definition by name

Declaration: `function IdentifierByName(const AName: ShortString)
: TFPEXprIdentifierDef; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: The `IdentifierByName` method searches for an identifier definition with the specified name in the parser's identifier collection. It returns the `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) object if found, or raises an exception if not found.

22.32.7 TFPEXpressionParser.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the current expression

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Clear` method clears the currently parsed expression from the parser, freeing any expression tree that was previously built. After calling this method, the parser is ready to parse a new expression.

22.32.8 TFPEXpressionParser.EvaluateExpression

Synopsis: Evaluate the expression and return result

Declaration: `procedure EvaluateExpression(out Result: TFPEXpressionResult)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `EvaluateExpression` method evaluates the currently parsed expression using the provided identifier values and returns the computed result. It processes the entire expression tree to produce the final result value.

22.32.9 TFPEXpressionParser.ExtractIdentifierNames

Declaration: `procedure ExtractIdentifierNames(const aExpression: AnsiString;
aList: TStringList); overload
procedure ExtractIdentifierNames(const aExpression: AnsiString;
aCallback: TIdentifierEvent); overload`

Visibility: public

22.32.10 TFPEXpressionParser.ExtractNode

Synopsis: Extract expression node from result

Declaration: `function ExtractNode(var N: TFPEXprNode) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `ExtractNode` method extracts and returns the expression tree node from an expression result structure. It provides access to the internal node representation for advanced manipulation or analysis of the parsed expression.

This allows you to evaluate the same expression multiple times without needing to re-parse the expression: by changing e.g. the value of a variable and calling the `TFPEXpressionResult.NodeValue` (698) method on the extracted node, you can get the updated result.

22.32.11 TFPEXpressionParser.Evaluate

Synopsis: Evaluate the current expression

Declaration: `function Evaluate : TFPEXpressionResult`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Evaluate` method evaluates the currently parsed expression and returns the result as an `TFPEXpressionResult` (698). It executes the complete expression tree and computes the final value.

The evaluation process includes resolving variables, calling functions, and performing all arithmetic and logical operations according to the expression structure and operator precedence rules.

22.32.12 TFPEXpressionParser.ResultType

Synopsis: Get the result type of the expression

Declaration: `function ResultType : TResultType`

Visibility: public

Description: The `ResultType` method returns the data type that the currently parsed expression will produce when evaluated. The result type is determined by analyzing the expression tree and applying type promotion rules.

22.32.13 TFPEXpressionParser.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if expression contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `HasAggregate` method determines whether the current expression contains any aggregate functions such as `Sum`, `Count`, `Average`, `Min`, or `Max`. Aggregate functions require special handling during evaluation.

This information is important for determining the evaluation strategy, as expressions with aggregates may need multiple evaluation passes or special initialization steps.

22.32.14 TFPEXpressionParser.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate calculation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate`

Visibility: public

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes all aggregate functions within the expression for aggregate processing. It prepares aggregate functions like Sum, Count, Average, Min, and Max for data processing by resetting their internal state.

The `InitAggregate` method must be called before processing data sets with expressions containing aggregate functions to ensure correct aggregate calculations.

22.32.15 TFPEXpressionParser.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculation with value

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate`

Visibility: public

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates all aggregate functions in the expression with new data values during aggregate processing. It processes each data row or value set through the expression's aggregate functions.

The `TFPEXpressionParser` method is called repeatedly for each data item when processing datasets with aggregate expressions to accumulate the aggregate results.

22.32.16 TFPEXpressionParser.AsFloat

Synopsis: Expression result as floating point value

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : TExprFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsFloat` property returns the expression evaluation result converted to a floating-point value. It automatically handles type conversion from the expression's native result type to float.

22.32.17 TFPEXpressionParser.AsCurrency

Synopsis: Expression result as currency value

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsCurrency` property returns the expression evaluation result converted to a currency value with fixed-point precision. It handles automatic type conversion from compatible numeric types to currency.

22.32.18 TFPEXpressionParser.AsInteger

Synopsis: Expression result as integer value

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsInteger` property returns the expression evaluation result converted to an integer value. It automatically handles type conversion from the expression's native result type to integer, applying appropriate rounding or truncation.

22.32.19 TFPEXpressionParser.AsString

Synopsis: Expression result as string value

Declaration: `Property AsString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsString` (736) property returns the expression evaluation result converted to a string representation. It automatically handles type conversion from any result type to a human-readable string format.

22.32.20 TFPEXpressionParser.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Expression result as boolean value

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsBoolean` property returns the expression evaluation result converted to a boolean value. It handles automatic type conversion from compatible types to boolean, following standard conversion rules.

22.32.21 TFPEXpressionParser.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Expression result as date/time value

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsDateTime` property returns the expression evaluation result converted to a date/time value. It automatically handles type conversion from compatible numeric or string types to datetime format.

22.32.22 TFPEXpressionParser.Expression

Synopsis: Expression string to be evaluated

Declaration: `Property Expression : Ansistring`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Expression` property contains the expression text that will be parsed and evaluated by the parser. Setting this property triggers the parsing process, converting the text into an internal expression tree representation.

The expression string follows the syntax rules supported by the parser, including operators, functions, variables, and constants. Any syntax errors in the expression will be reported during the parsing phase.

22.32.23 TFPEXpressionParser.Identifiers

Synopsis: Collection of identifiers and their values

Declaration: `Property Identifiers : TFPEXprIdentifierDefs`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Identifiers` property provides access to the collection of user-defined identifiers (variables and functions) that can be referenced within expressions. It contains `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) objects defining each identifier.

Applications can add custom variables and functions to this collection to extend the expression language with domain-specific functionality and data sources.

22.32.24 TFPEXpressionParser.BuiltIns

Synopsis: Manager for built-in functions and constants

Declaration: `Property BuiltIns : TBuiltInCategories`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `BuiltIns` property references the `TExprBuiltInManager` (711) instance that provides access to built-in mathematical functions, string functions, date/time functions, and predefined constants.

The built-ins manager can be customized to add or modify the set of built-in functions available to expressions, allowing applications to tailor the function library to their specific needs.

22.33 TFPEXpressionScanner

22.33.1 Description

The `TFPEXpressionScanner` class performs lexical analysis on expression strings, breaking them into tokens that can be consumed by the expression parser. It handles the low-level details of character recognition, string parsing, and token classification.

The scanner recognizes all token types defined in `TTokenType` (694) including operators, literals, identifiers, keywords, and delimiters.

22.33.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
738	Create	Create a new expression scanner
738	GetToken	Get the next token from the source expression

22.33.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
739	CurrentChar	r	The current character being processed
739	Pos	r	Current position in the source string
739	Source	rw	The source expression string to scan
738	Token	r	The text of the current token
738	TokenType	r	The type of the current token

22.33.4 TFPEXpressionScanner.Create

Synopsis: Create a new expression scanner

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Create` constructor creates a new expression scanner instance and initializes its internal state for tokenizing expression strings.

22.33.5 TFPEXpressionScanner.GetToken

Synopsis: Get the next token from the source expression

Declaration: `function GetToken : TTokenType`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetToken` method advances the scanner to the next token in the source expression and returns the token type. The token text is made available through the `Token` property.

The method handles all aspects of tokenization including whitespace skipping, literal parsing, operator recognition, and error detection for invalid character sequences.

22.33.6 TFPEXpressionScanner.Token

Synopsis: The text of the current token

Declaration: `Property Token : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: This read-only property provides access to the text content of the token that was most recently extracted by the scanner. For identifiers and literals, this contains the exact text from the expression; for operators and keywords, it contains the recognized symbol or word.

The property is updated automatically when `GetToken` ([738](#)) is called to advance to the next token.

22.33.7 TFPEXpressionScanner.TokenType

Synopsis: The type of the current token

Declaration: `Property TokenType : TTokenType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: This read-only property returns the type classification of the current token using values from the `TTokenType` (694) enumeration. It indicates whether the token is an operator, identifier, literal, keyword, or delimiter.

The property is automatically updated when `GetToken` (738) advances to the next token.

22.33.8 `TFPEXpressionScanner.Source`

Synopsis: The source expression string to scan

Declaration: `Property Source : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: The `Source` property gets or sets the expression string that will be tokenized by the scanner. When assigned, the scanner resets its position to the beginning and prepares for tokenizing the new expression.

Setting this property initializes the scanning process and makes the scanner ready to extract tokens from the expression string. The source string should contain a valid mathematical or logical expression using the supported syntax.

22.33.9 `TFPEXpressionScanner.Pos`

Synopsis: Current position in the source string

Declaration: `Property Pos : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: This read-only property returns the current character position within the source expression string during scanning. The position starts at 1 (first character) and advances as tokens are extracted.

The position value is useful for error reporting and debugging, as it indicates exactly where in the expression the scanner is currently located or where an error occurred during tokenization.

22.33.10 `TFPEXpressionScanner.CurrentChar`

Synopsis: The current character being processed

Declaration: `Property CurrentChar : AnsiChar`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: This read-only property returns the character at the current scanning position in the source expression string. It provides access to the character that will be processed next during tokenization.

The property is useful for debugging and for understanding what character the scanner is currently examining. When the scanner reaches the end of the source string, this property may return a null character or end-of-string marker.

22.34 TFPEExprFunction

22.34.1 Description

The `TFPEExprFunction` (740) class represents a function call node in the expression tree. It serves as the base class for all function implementations that can be called from within expressions, including mathematical functions, string functions, date/time functions, and user-defined functions.

The class manages function parameters, validates argument types and counts, and provides the framework for function evaluation. It handles the common aspects of function calls such as parameter management and type checking.

Derived classes implement specific functions by overriding the evaluation methods and providing function-specific logic. The class supports functions with varying numbers of parameters and different return types.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.34.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
742	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of function expression
740	<code>Check</code>	Validate the function expression
740	<code>CreateFunction</code>	Create function with identifier and arguments
741	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy function expression and free resources
741	<code>HasAggregate</code>	Check if function contains aggregates
741	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize aggregate processing for function
741	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update aggregate calculations for function

22.34.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
742	<code>ArgumentNodes</code>	r	The argument nodes for the function
742	<code>ArgumentParams</code>	r	The argument parameters for the function

22.34.4 TFPEExprFunction.Check

Synopsis: Validate the function expression

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the function expression is properly configured, with correct parameter count and types matching the function definition. It ensures that all arguments are valid expressions and that the function can be safely evaluated.

22.34.5 TFPEExprFunction.CreateFunction

Synopsis: Create function with identifier and arguments

Declaration: `constructor CreateFunction(AID: TFPEExprIdentifierDef;
const Args: TExprArgumentArray); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CreateFunction` constructor creates a new function node with the specified identifier definition and argument expressions. It saves the function call structure and associates the function implementation with its parameters.

22.34.6 `TFPEExprFunction.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroy function expression and free resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: This destructor properly cleans up the function expression by freeing all argument nodes and any other resources used by the function expression.

22.34.7 `TFPEExprFunction.InitAggregate`

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for function

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes aggregate processing for the function and all its arguments. It ensures that any aggregate operations within the function arguments are properly initialized for a new aggregate calculation cycle.

22.34.8 `TFPEExprFunction.UpdateAggregate`

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for function

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates aggregate calculations for the function and all its arguments. It ensures that any aggregate operations within the function arguments are properly updated during the aggregate processing cycle.

22.34.9 `TFPEExprFunction.HasAggregate`

Synopsis: Check if function contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `HasAggregate` (741) method determines whether the function or any of its arguments contain aggregate operations. It returns `True` if aggregate processing is required for this function, indicating that special aggregate handling is needed.

22.34.10 TFPEExprFunction.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of function expression

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a human-readable string representation of the function expression, including the function name and its arguments. The format typically shows the function call as it would appear in an expression.

22.34.11 TFPEExprFunction.ArgumentNodes

Synopsis: The argument nodes for the function

Declaration: `Property ArgumentNodes : TExprArgumentArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `ArgumentNodes` property provides access to the array of expression nodes that represent the function arguments. Each element is a `TFPEExprNode` (753) containing the expression tree for one function parameter.

22.34.12 TFPEExprFunction.ArgumentParams

Synopsis: The argument parameters for the function

Declaration: `Property ArgumentParams : TExprParameterArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `ArgumentParams` property provides access to the array of evaluated parameter values for the function. Each element is a `TFPEExpressionResult` (698) containing the evaluated value and type information for one function parameter.

22.35 TFPEExprIdentifierDef

22.35.1 Description

The `TFPEExprIdentifierDef` (742) class defines an identifier (variable or function) that can be used in expressions. It holds the name, type, and implementation details for identifiers, allowing the expression parser to resolve and evaluate them during expression processing.

22.35.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
743	<code>ArgumentCount</code>	Get the number of arguments for function identifier
743	<code>Assign</code>	Assign values from another identifier definition
743	<code>EventBasedVariable</code>	Check if identifier is an event-based variable

22.35.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
745	AsBoolean	rw	Get identifier value as boolean
744	AsCurrency	rw	Get identifier value as currency
745	AsDateTime	rw	Get identifier value as datetime
744	AsFloat	rw	Get identifier value as float
744	AsInteger	rw	Get identifier value as integer
744	AsString	rw	Get identifier value as string
746	IdentifierType	rw	The type of this identifier
746	Name	rw	The name of the identifier
747	NodeType	rw	The node type for this identifier
747	OnGetFunctionValue	rw	Event for function value evaluation
745	OnGetFunctionValueCallBack	rw	Callback property for function value evaluation
747	OnGetVariableValue	rw	Event for variable value evaluation
745	OnGetVariableValueCallBack	rw	Callback property for variable value evaluation
746	ParameterTypes	rw	The parameter types for function identifiers
747	ResultType	rw	The result type of the identifier
746	Value	rw	The value of the identifier
748	VariableArgumentCount	rw	

22.35.4 TFExprIdentifierDef.ArgumentCount

Synopsis: Get the number of arguments for function identifier

Declaration: `function ArgumentCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `ArgumentCount` method returns the number of arguments that a function identifier expects. For variable identifiers, it returns 0. For function identifiers, it returns the count of parameters required for the function call.

22.35.5 TFExprIdentifierDef.Assign

Synopsis: Assign values from another identifier definition

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Assign` ([743](#)) method copies all properties and settings from another `TFExprIdentifierDef` ([742](#)) object. It enables copying identifier definitions with all their associated configuration and callback information, as usual for a `TPersistent` descendant.

22.35.6 TFExprIdentifierDef.EventBasedVariable

Synopsis: Check if identifier is an event-based variable

Declaration: `function EventBasedVariable : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `EventBasedVariable` method returns `True` if the identifier represents a variable that uses event-based evaluation rather than callback procedures. Event-based variables use method calls on objects for value resolution instead of standalone procedures.

22.35.7 `TFPExprIdentifierDef.AsFloat`

Synopsis: Get identifier value as float

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : TExprFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsFloat` property returns the identifier's value converted to a floating-point number. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to float format.

22.35.8 `TFPExprIdentifierDef.AsCurrency`

Synopsis: Get identifier value as currency

Declaration: `Property AsCurrency : Currency`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsCurrency` property returns the identifier's value converted to a currency data type. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to currency format.

22.35.9 `TFPExprIdentifierDef.AsInteger`

Synopsis: Get identifier value as integer

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsInteger` property returns the identifier's value converted to an integer number. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to integer format.

22.35.10 `TFPExprIdentifierDef.AsString`

Synopsis: Get identifier value as string

Declaration: `Property AsString : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsString` (744) property returns the identifier's value converted to a string representation. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to string format.

22.35.11 TFPExrIdentifierDef.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Get identifier value as boolean

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsBoolean` property returns the identifier's value converted to a boolean value. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to boolean format.

22.35.12 TFPExrIdentifierDef.AsDateTime

Synopsis: Get identifier value as datetime

Declaration: `Property AsDateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsDateTime` property returns the identifier's value converted to a date/time value. If the identifier represents a variable, it retrieves the current value; if it represents a function, it calls the function and returns the result converted to datetime format.

22.35.13 TFPExrIdentifierDef.OnGetFunctionValueCallBack

Synopsis: Callback property for function value evaluation

Declaration: `Property OnGetFunctionValueCallBack : TFPExrFunctionCallBack`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnGetFunctionValueCallBack` property holds a callback function that is called when the identifier represents a function and needs to be evaluated. The callback receives the function parameters and returns the computed result value.

22.35.14 TFPExrIdentifierDef.OnGetVariableValueCallBack

Synopsis: Callback property for variable value evaluation

Declaration: `Property OnGetVariableValueCallBack : TFPExrVariableCallBack`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnGetVariableValueCallBack` property holds a callback function that is called when the identifier represents a variable and its value needs to be retrieved. The callback returns the current value of the variable.

22.35.15 TFPExprIdentifierDef.IdentifierType

Synopsis: The type of this identifier

Declaration: `Property IdentifierType : TIdentifierType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `IdentifierType` property specifies whether this identifier definition represents a variable or a function. The identifier type determines how the identifier will be processed during expression parsing and evaluation.

Variables are simple value holders, while functions require parameter processing and can perform complex calculations. The identifier type affects parsing behavior and determines which callback or evaluation method is used.

22.35.16 TFPExprIdentifierDef.Name

Synopsis: The name of the identifier

Declaration: `Property Name : ShortString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Name` property contains the name string that identifies this variable or function within expressions. The name is used during expression parsing to match identifier references to their definitions.

Identifier names are case-sensitive and must follow valid identifier naming conventions. This name serves as the key for looking up the identifier during expression evaluation.

22.35.17 TFPExprIdentifierDef.Value

Synopsis: The value of the identifier

Declaration: `Property Value : AnsiString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Value` property contains the current value of the identifier when it represents a variable. For variables, this property holds the actual data value that will be returned when the identifier is evaluated in expressions.

The value is stored as a string but is interpreted according to the identifier's result type. For function identifiers, this property is typically not used as functions compute their results dynamically.

22.35.18 TFPExprIdentifierDef.ParameterTypes

Synopsis: The parameter types for function identifiers

Declaration: `Property ParameterTypes : AnsiString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ParameterTypes` property specifies the expected parameter types for function identifiers. It contains an array or string describing the data types that the function expects to receive as arguments. The parameter type information is used during expression parsing and validation to ensure that function calls provide arguments of the correct types, enabling compile-time type checking for function calls.

22.35.19 TFExprIdentifierDef.ResultType

Synopsis: The result type of the identifier

Declaration: `Property ResultType : TResultType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ResultType` property specifies the data type that this identifier produces when evaluated. For variables, it indicates the type of the stored value. For functions, it indicates the type of value returned by the function.

22.35.20 TFExprIdentifierDef.OnGetFunctionValue

Synopsis: Event for function value evaluation

Declaration: `Property OnGetFunctionValue : TFExprFunctionEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnGetFunctionValue` event is triggered when the identifier represents a function and needs to be evaluated with the provided parameters. The event handler receives the function arguments and should return the computed result.

22.35.21 TFExprIdentifierDef.OnGetVariableValue

Synopsis: Event for variable value evaluation

Declaration: `Property OnGetVariableValue : TFExprVariableEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnGetVariableValue` event is triggered when the identifier represents a variable and its value needs to be retrieved during expression evaluation. The event handler should return the current value of the variable.

22.35.22 TFExprIdentifierDef.NodeType

Synopsis: The node type for this identifier

Declaration: `Property NodeType : TFExprFunctionClass`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `NodeType` property returns the result type that this identifier will produce when used in expressions. It corresponds to the `ResultType` (747) property and is used for expression tree type checking. The node type information is essential for the expression parser to determine type compatibility and perform appropriate type conversions when this identifier is used in operations.

22.35.23 TFPExrIdentifierDef.VariableArgumentCount

Declaration: `Property VariableArgumentCount : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

22.36 TFPExrIdentifierDefs

22.36.1 Description

This collection class manages a set of `TFPExrIdentifierDef` (742) objects, providing methods for adding, removing, and searching identifier definitions. It serves as a registry for all available variables and functions in an expression context.

22.36.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
749	<code>AddBooleanVariable</code>	Add a boolean variable to the collection
750	<code>AddCurrencyVariable</code>	Add a currency variable to the collection
751	<code>AddDateTimeVariable</code>	Add a datetime variable to the collection
750	<code>AddFloatVariable</code>	Add a float variable to the collection
751	<code>AddFunction</code>	Add a function to the collection
750	<code>AddIntegerVariable</code>	Add an integer variable to the collection
750	<code>AddStringVariable</code>	Add a string variable to the collection
749	<code>AddVariable</code>	Add a variable to the identifier collection
749	<code>FindIdentifier</code>	Find an identifier by name
749	<code>IdentifierByName</code>	Get an identifier by name
748	<code>IndexOfIdentifier</code>	Find the index of an identifier by name

22.36.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
751	<code>Identifiers</code>	rw	Access to identifier definitions by index

22.36.4 TFPExrIdentifierDefs.IndexOfIdentifier

Synopsis: Find the index of an identifier by name

Declaration: `function IndexOfIdentifier(const AName: ShortString) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: The `IndexOfIdentifier` method searches the collection for an identifier with the specified name and returns its index position. If no identifier with the given name is found, it returns -1.

The search is case-sensitive.

22.36.5 TFExprIdentifierDefs.FindIdentifier

Synopsis: Find an identifier by name

Declaration: `function FindIdentifier(const AName: ShortString) : TFExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `FindIdentifier` method searches the collection for an identifier with the specified name and returns the `TFExprIdentifierDef` (742) object if found, or `nil` if not found. The search is case-sensitive and provides a convenient way to locate identifier definitions.

22.36.6 TFExprIdentifierDefs.IdentifierByName

Synopsis: Get an identifier by name

Declaration: `function IdentifierByName(const AName: ShortString)
: TFExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `IdentifierByName` method retrieves an identifier by name from the collection. Unlike `FindIdentifier` (749), this method raises an exception if the identifier is not found, making it suitable for cases where the identifier is expected to exist.

22.36.7 TFExprIdentifierDefs.AddVariable

Synopsis: Add a variable to the identifier collection

Declaration: `function AddVariable(const AName: ShortString;
 AResultType: TResultType;
 ACallback: TFExprVariableCallBack)
 : TFExprIdentifierDef
function AddVariable(const AName: ShortString;
 AResultType: TResultType;
 ACallback: TFExprVariableEvent)
 : TFExprIdentifierDef
function AddVariable(const AName: ShortString;
 AResultType: TResultType; const AValue: AnsiString)
 : TFExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddVariable` method creates and adds a new variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions by its name to retrieve the stored value.

22.36.8 TFExprIdentifierDefs.AddBooleanVariable

Synopsis: Add a boolean variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddBooleanVariable(const AName: ShortString; AValue: Boolean)
 : TFExprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddBooleanVariable` method creates and adds a new boolean variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and boolean value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the boolean value.

22.36.9 TFPExrIdentifierDefs.AddIntegerVariable

Synopsis: Add an integer variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddIntegerVariable(const AName: ShortString; AValue: Integer)
: TFPExrIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddIntegerVariable` method creates and adds a new integer variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and integer value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the numeric value.

22.36.10 TFPExrIdentifierDefs.AddFloatVariable

Synopsis: Add a float variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddFloatVariable(const AName: ShortString; AValue: TExprFloat)
: TFPExrIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddFloatVariable` method creates and adds a new floating-point variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and float value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the floating-point value.

22.36.11 TFPExrIdentifierDefs.AddCurrencyVariable

Synopsis: Add a currency variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddCurrencyVariable(const AName: ShortString; AValue: Currency)
: TFPExrIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddCurrencyVariable` method creates and adds a new currency variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and currency value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the monetary value.

22.36.12 TFPExrIdentifierDefs.AddStringVariable

Synopsis: Add a string variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddStringVariable(const AName: ShortString;
const AValue: AnsiString)
: TFPExrIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddStringVariable` method creates and adds a new string variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and string value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the text value.

22.36.13 TFPEXprIdentifierDefs.AddDateTimeVariable

Synopsis: Add a datetime variable to the collection

Declaration: `function AddDateTimeVariable(const AName: ShortString;
AValue: TDateTime) : TFPEXprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddDateTimeVariable` method creates and adds a new date/time variable identifier to the collection with the specified name and datetime value. The variable can then be referenced in expressions to retrieve the date/time value.

22.36.14 TFPEXprIdentifierDefs.AddFunction

Synopsis: Add a function to the collection

Declaration: `function AddFunction(const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ACallback: TFPEXprFunctionCallBack)
: TFPEXprIdentifierDef
function AddFunction(const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ACallback: TFPEXprFunctionEvent)
: TFPEXprIdentifierDef
function AddFunction(const AName: ShortString;
const AResultType: AnsiChar;
const AParamTypes: AnsiString;
ANodeClass: TFPEXprFunctionClass)
: TFPEXprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddFunction` method creates and adds a new function identifier to the collection with the specified name, parameter types, result type, and implementation details. The function becomes available for use in expressions parsed by this identifier collection.

22.36.15 TFPEXprIdentifierDefs.Identifiers

Synopsis: Access to identifier definitions by index

Declaration: `Property Identifiers[AIndex: Integer]: TFPEXprIdentifierDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: This indexed property provides direct access to identifier definitions in the collection by their numeric index. It allows iteration through all identifiers and enables index-based retrieval of `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) objects.

22.37 TFPEXprIdentifierNode

22.37.1 Description

The `TFPEXprIdentifierNode` class represents an identifier reference in the expression tree. It holds a reference to the identifier definition and handles the resolution and evaluation of variables and function calls during expression evaluation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.37.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
752	<code>CreateIdentifier</code>	Create identifier node with identifier definition
753	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Get the value of the identifier
752	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for identifier nodes

22.37.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
753	<code>Identifier</code>	<code>r</code>	The identifier definition for this node

22.37.4 TFPEXprIdentifierNode.CreateIdentifier

Synopsis: Create identifier node with identifier definition

Declaration: `constructor CreateIdentifier(AID: TFPEXprIdentifierDef)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `CreateIdentifier` constructor creates a new identifier node and associates it with the specified `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) object. The identifier definition provides the name, type, and evaluation mechanism for the identifier.

22.37.5 TFPEXprIdentifierNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for identifier nodes

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` (752) method returns the data type that this identifier node will produce when evaluated. The result type is determined by the associated identifier definition and its configured result type.

The node type is used by the expression parser for type checking and ensuring type compatibility throughout the expression tree during parsing and evaluation.

22.37.6 TFExprIdentifierNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Get the value of the identifier

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method retrieves the current value of the identifier by calling the appropriate evaluation mechanism (callback, event handler, or direct value access) based on the identifier's configuration.

For variables, this returns the stored value. For functions, this executes the function with any provided parameters and returns the computed result.

22.37.7 TFExprIdentifierNode.Identifier

Synopsis: The identifier definition for this node

Declaration: `Property Identifier : TFPEXprIdentifierDef`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Identifier` property references the `TFPEXprIdentifierDef` (742) object that defines this identifier's characteristics, including its name, type, value, and evaluation methods.

The identifier definition contains all the metadata needed to properly evaluate this identifier node during expression evaluation, including callbacks, event handlers, and type information.

22.38 TFPEXprNode

22.38.1 Description

This is the abstract base class for all nodes in the expression tree. Every element of a parsed expression (literals, variables, operators, functions) is represented by a class derived from `TFPEXprNode`.

The class defines the common interface that all expression nodes must implement, including evaluation, type checking, and aggregate processing. It provides the foundation for building complex expression trees through composition of different node types.

Derived classes implement specific functionality for different types of expression elements such as arithmetic operations, function calls, variable references, and literal values.

22.38.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
756	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of the expression node
754	<code>Check</code>	Validate the expression node for correctness
755	<code>HasAggregate</code>	Check if node tree contains any aggregate operations
754	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize aggregate processing for the node
754	<code>IsAggregate</code>	Check if this node represents an aggregate operation
755	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type of this expression node
755	<code>NodeValue</code>	Get the evaluated value of this expression node
754	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update aggregate calculations for the node

22.38.3 TFPEExprNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the expression node for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` abstract method must be implemented by derived classes to validate the expression node and its operands or parameters. It performs type checking, verifies that required operands are present, and ensures that the node can be safely evaluated.

The validation process typically includes checking operand types for compatibility, verifying function parameter counts and types, and ensuring that all required references (variables, functions) are available. If validation fails, appropriate exceptions must be raised.

The `Check` (754) method is called during the expression preparation phase, before evaluation begins, to catch errors early and provide meaningful error messages.

22.38.4 TFPEExprNode.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for the node

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` virtual method initializes aggregate processing state for nodes that participate in aggregate operations. It is called at the beginning of an aggregate processing cycle to reset counters, accumulators, and other aggregate state.

For most expression nodes, this method does nothing (default implementation). However, nodes representing aggregate functions (like `SUM`, `COUNT`, `AVG`) override this method to initialize their aggregation state.

22.38.5 TFPEExprNode.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for the node

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` virtual method updates the aggregate calculation state for nodes that participate in aggregate operations. It is called for each data row or iteration during aggregate processing to incorporate new values into the ongoing calculation.

For most expression nodes, this method does nothing (default implementation). Nodes representing aggregate functions override this method to update their running totals, counts, or other aggregate state based on the current data values.

The `UpdateAggregate` method works in conjunction with `InitAggregate` (754) to implement the aggregate processing cycle.

22.38.6 TFPEExprNode.IsAggregate

Synopsis: Check if this node represents an aggregate operation

Declaration: `class function IsAggregate : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: The `IsAggregate` class method returns `True` if the node class represents an aggregate operation that requires special processing during expression evaluation. Most node types return `False`, indicating they are simple expression elements.

Aggregate nodes (like `SUM`, `COUNT`, `AVG` functions) return `True` to indicate they need to participate in the aggregate processing cycle with initialization and update phases.

The `IsAggregate` method allows the expression evaluator to identify which nodes need aggregate processing and to ensure proper handling of aggregate expressions.

22.38.7 TFPEExprNode.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if node tree contains any aggregate operations

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: The `HasAggregate` method examines the expression subtree rooted at this node to determine if it contains any aggregate operations. It returns `True` if this node or any of its descendant nodes represents an aggregate operation.

The method recursively checks child nodes to detect aggregate functions anywhere in the expression tree. This information is used by the expression evaluator to determine if aggregate processing is required for the expression.

Unlike `IsAggregate` (754) which only checks the current node, this method performs a search of the entire subtree.

22.38.8 TFPEExprNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type of this expression node

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` abstract method must be implemented by derived classes to return the `TResultType` (693) that indicates what type of value this node will produce when evaluated.

The result type information is essential for type checking during expression validation and for determining appropriate type conversions when combining values from different nodes.

Common result types include boolean, integer, float, string, datetime, and currency, depending on the specific operation or value represented by the node.

22.38.9 TFPEExprNode.NodeValue

Synopsis: Get the evaluated value of this expression node

Declaration: `function NodeValue : TFPEExpressionResult`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeValue` method evaluates the expression node and returns the result as a `TFPEExpressionResult` (698) record containing both the value and its type information.

The method performs the actual computation represented by this node, including evaluating any child nodes or operands as needed. For simple nodes like literals, it returns the stored value; for complex nodes like operations, it computes the result from its operands.

The returned result includes type information to ensure proper handling of the value by calling code.

22.38.10 TFPEExprNode.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of the expression node

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` abstract method must be implemented by derived classes to return a string representation of the expression node and its structure. The string typically shows the operation or value in a human-readable format.

For operations, the string usually includes the operands and operator (e.g., "A + B"). For literals, it shows the value. For function calls, it shows the function name and parameters.

The `AsString` (756) method is primarily used for debugging, logging, and displaying expression structures to users.

22.39 TFPEExprVariable

22.39.1 Description

The `TFPEExprVariable` class represents a variable reference in an expression tree. Variables are identifiers that hold values and can be referenced by name within expressions to retrieve their current values.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.39.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
757	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of variable expression
756	<code>Check</code>	Validate the variable expression

22.39.3 TFPEExprVariable.Check

Synopsis: Validate the variable expression

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Check` method validates that the variable expression is properly configured and that the associated variable definition is valid and accessible for evaluation.

22.39.4 TFPEExprVariable.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of variable expression

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: default

Description: The `AsString` method returns a human-readable string representation of the variable expression, typically showing the variable name as it appears in the original expression text.

22.40 TFPPFunctionCallBack

22.40.1 Description

The `TFPPFunctionCallBack` class implements function calls that are resolved using callback mechanisms rather than built-in function implementations. It extends the expression framework to allow dynamic function resolution through user-defined callback procedures.

The callback function mechanism enables applications to provide custom function implementations that can be called from within expressions. This allows for extending the expression language with application-specific functions without modifying the core expression parser.

When a callback function is called, the registered callback procedure is invoked with the function arguments and is expected to compute and return the function result.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` ([753](#))

22.40.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
757	<code>CreateFunction</code>	Create callback function with identifier and arguments
758	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Get callback function result

22.40.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
758	<code>CallBack</code>	r	The callback procedure for function evaluation

22.40.4 TFPPFunctionCallBack.CreateFunction

Synopsis: Create callback function with identifier and arguments

Declaration: `constructor CreateFunction(AID: TFPEExprIdentifierDef;
const Args: TExprArgumentArray); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CreateFunction` constructor creates a new callback function instance with the specified identifier definition and argument list. It establishes the connection between the function call and the callback mechanism that will handle the function execution.

The constructor stores the identifier information and argument expressions that will be used during function evaluation to invoke the appropriate callback procedure with the correct parameters.

22.40.5 TFPFunctionCallback.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Get callback function result

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method evaluates the callback function by calling the registered callback procedure with the function parameters and returns the computed result. It bridges the expression tree evaluation with external function implementations.

22.40.6 TFPFunctionCallback.CallBack

Synopsis: The callback procedure for function evaluation

Declaration: `Property CallBack : TFPEXprFunctionCallback`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `CallBack` property holds the callback procedure that is invoked when the function needs to be evaluated. The callback receives the function parameters and returns the computed result, allowing external code to provide custom function implementations.

22.41 TFPFunctionEventHandler

22.41.1 Description

The `TFPFunctionEventHandler` class provides event-based function evaluation using object method calls instead of standalone callback procedures. It extends `TFPEXprFunction` (740) to support method-based function implementations.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.41.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
758	<code>CreateFunction</code>	Create event function with identifier and arguments
759	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Get event function result

22.41.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
759	<code>CallBack</code>	r	The event handler for function evaluation

22.41.4 TFPFunctionEventHandler.CreateFunction

Synopsis: Create event function with identifier and arguments

Declaration: `constructor CreateFunction(AID: TFPEXprIdentifierDef;
const Args: TExprArgumentArray); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CreateFunction` constructor creates a new event-based function node with the specified identifier definition and argument expressions. It sets up the function call structure to use event handlers for function evaluation.

22.41.5 TFPFunctionEventHandler.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Get event function result

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` (759) method evaluates the event-based function by calling the registered event handler method with the function parameters and returns the computed result. It provides method-based function evaluation.

22.41.6 TFPFunctionEventHandler.CallBack

Synopsis: The event handler for function evaluation

Declaration: `Property CallBack : TFPEXprFunctionEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `CallBack` property holds the event handler method that is invoked when the function needs to be evaluated. The event handler receives the function parameters and returns the computed result, enabling object-based function implementations.

22.42 TFPGreaterThanOrEqualOperation

22.42.1 Description

The `TFPGreaterThanOrEqualOperation` class implements the greater-than-or-equal comparison operation (`>=`) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPOrderingOperation` (767) to provide greater-than-or-equal-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if the left operand is greater than or equal to the right operand, `False` otherwise. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers, lexicographic comparison for strings, and chronological comparison for date/time values.

This operation combines both equality and greater-than testing, returning `True` when either condition is satisfied.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.42.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
760	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of greater-than-equal operation

22.42.3 TFPGreaterThanEqualOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of greater-than-equal operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the greater-than-or-equal operation, showing both operands connected by the ">=" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in visualizing comparison expressions and provides clear indication of the combined greater-than and equality test being performed.

22.43 TFPGreaterThanOperation

22.43.1 Description

The `TFPGreaterThanOperation` class implements the greater-than comparison operation (>) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPOrderingOperation` (767) to provide greater-than-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if the left operand is greater than the right operand, `False` otherwise. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers, lexicographic comparison for strings, and chronological comparison for date/time values.

Type conversion is performed when necessary to compare values of different but compatible types, ensuring proper ordering across numeric types.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.43.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
760	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of greater-than operation

22.43.3 TFPGreaterThanOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of greater-than operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the greater-than operation, showing both operands connected by the ">" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in visualizing comparison expressions and provides valuable information for debugging expression parsing and evaluation logic.

22.44 TFPLessThanEqualOperation

22.44.1 Description

The `TFPLessThanEqualOperation` class implements the less-than-or-equal comparison operation (`<=`) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPOrderingOperation` (767) to provide less-than-or-equal-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if the left operand is less than or equal to the right operand, `False` otherwise. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers, lexicographic comparison for strings, and chronological comparison for date/time values.

This operation combines both equality and less-than testing, returning `True` when either condition is satisfied.

See also: `TFPExprNode` (753)

22.44.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
761	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of less-than-equal operation

22.44.3 TFPLessThanEqualOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of less-than-equal operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the less-than-or-equal operation, showing both operands connected by the "`<=`" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in visualizing comparison expressions and provides clear indication of the combined less-than and equality test being performed.

22.45 TFPLessThanOperation

22.45.1 Description

The `TFPLessThanOperation` class implements the less-than comparison operation (`<`) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPOrderingOperation` (767) to provide less-than-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if the left operand is less than the right operand, `False` otherwise. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers, lexicographic comparison for strings, and chronological comparison for date/time values.

Type conversion is performed when necessary to compare values of different but compatible types, ensuring proper ordering across numeric types.

This class is used internally by the `TFPExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPExprNode` (753)

22.45.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
762	AsString	Get string representation of less-than operation

22.45.3 TFPLessThanOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of less-than operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the less-than operation, showing both operands connected by the "<" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in visualizing comparison expressions and provides valuable information for debugging expression parsing and evaluation logic.

22.46 TFPM moduloOperation

22.46.1 Description

The `TFPM moduloOperation` class implements modulo operations that return the remainder after division between two integer operands.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` ([731](#)) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` ([753](#))

22.46.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
762	AsString	Get string representation of modulo operation
762	Check	Validate the modulo operation for correctness
763	GetNodeValue	Calculate the result of modulo operation
763	NodeType	Get the result type for modulo operations

22.46.3 TFPM moduloOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the modulo operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Validates that both operands are integer types and checks for modulo by zero conditions.

22.46.4 TFPM moduloOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of modulo operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns string representation showing operands connected by "mod" keyword for debugging purposes.

22.46.5 TFPMModuloOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for modulo operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns integer type as modulo operations work with and return integer values.

22.46.6 TFPMModuloOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of modulo operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue (var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Performs the modulo calculation returning the remainder after integer division.

22.47 TFPMultiplyOperation

22.47.1 Description

The `TFPMultiplyOperation` class implements multiplication operation between two numeric operands, handling type conversion and providing multiplication-specific functionality for integers, floats, and currency values.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.47.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
764	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of multiplication operation
763	<code>check</code>	Validate the multiplication operation for correctness
764	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the result of multiplication operation

22.47.3 TFPMultiplyOperation.check

Synopsis: Validate the multiplication operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `check` method validates that both operands are numeric types suitable for multiplication, ensuring type compatibility.

22.47.4 TFPMultiplyOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of multiplication operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation showing both operands connected by the "*" symbol for debugging purposes.

22.47.5 TFPMultiplyOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of multiplication operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the actual multiplication by evaluating both operands and computing their product with appropriate type handling.

22.48 TFPNegateOperation

22.48.1 Description

The `TFPNegateOperation` class implements numeric negation operations that change the sign of numeric values. It extends `TFPUnaryOperator` (770) to provide negation-specific functionality for integers, floats, and currency values.

The negation operation converts positive values to negative and negative values to positive, essentially multiplying the operand by -1.

The operation requires that its operand be a numeric type (integer, float, or currency) and produces a result of the same or compatible numeric type.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.48.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
765	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of negation operation
764	<code>Check</code>	Validate the negation operation for correctness
765	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the negated value
765	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for negation operations

22.48.3 TFPNegateOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the negation operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Check` method validates that the operand of the negation operation is a numeric type suitable for negation. It ensures type compatibility and prevents attempts to negate non-numeric values.

The validation process checks that the operand is of a numeric type (integer, float, or currency) that supports negation operations.

22.48.4 TFPNegateOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for negation operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` method returns the result type for negation operations, which typically matches the type of the operand. The result preserves the numeric type of the input (integer, float, or currency) to maintain type consistency.

22.48.5 TFPNegateOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the negated value

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the numeric negation by evaluating the operand and changing its sign. It multiplies the operand's value by -1, effectively converting positive values to negative and negative values to positive.

22.48.6 TFPNegateOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of negation operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the negation operation, typically showing the operand prefixed with a minus sign "-" for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in understanding the structure of arithmetic expressions and provides useful information for debugging expression parsing and evaluation.

22.49 TFPNotNode

22.49.1 Description

The `TFPNotNode` class implements the logical NOT operation that inverts a boolean value. It extends `TFPUnaryOperator` (770) to provide NOT-specific functionality that converts True to False and False to True.

The NOT operation requires that its operand evaluates to a boolean value. It performs the logical inversion of the boolean result, providing the fundamental logical negation operation for boolean expressions.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: [TFPEExprNode \(753\)](#)

22.49.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
766	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of NOT operation
766	<code>Check</code>	Validate the NOT operation for correctness
766	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the result of NOT operation
766	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for NOT operations

22.49.3 TFPNotNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the NOT operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the operand of the NOT operation is a boolean expression. It ensures type compatibility and prevents type mismatches that would result in runtime errors during evaluation.

The validation process checks that the operand produces a boolean result, raising appropriate errors if non-boolean operands are found.

22.49.4 TFPNotNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for NOT operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` ([766](#)) method returns `rtBoolean` ([693](#)) to indicate that NOT operations always produce boolean results. This type information is used by the expression parser for type checking and result handling.

22.49.5 TFPNotNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of NOT operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEExpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the logical NOT operation by evaluating the operand and inverting its boolean result. It returns `True` if the operand is `False`, and `False` if the operand is `True`.

22.49.6 TFPNotNode.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of NOT operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the NOT operation, typically showing the operand prefixed with the "not" keyword for debugging and display purposes.

22.50 TFPOrderingOperation

22.50.1 Description

The `TFPOrderingOperation` class is the base class for comparison operations that determine the ordering relationship between two values. It extends `TFPBooleanResultOperation` (724) to provide the foundation for less-than, greater-than, and related comparison operations.

The class handles the common aspects of ordering comparisons such as type checking and ensuring that the operands can be meaningfully compared. It provides the framework for operations that determine relative order rather than equality.

Derived classes implement specific ordering operations like `<`, `>`, `<=`, and `>=` while leveraging the common ordering infrastructure for validation and type management.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.50.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
767	<code>Check</code>	Validate the ordering operation for correctness

22.50.3 TFPOrderingOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the ordering operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that both operands of the ordering operation are compatible for comparison and can be meaningfully ordered. It ensures that the operands are of types that support ordering relationships.

The validation process checks that both operands are of comparable types (such as numeric types, strings, or dates) and that the comparison operation can be safely performed. It raises an exception if incompatible types are found.

The `Check` method extends the base validation from `TFPBooleanResultOperation` (724) with ordering-specific type checking requirements.

22.51 TFPPowerOperation

22.51.1 Description

The `TFPPowerOperation` class implements the power (exponentiation) operation for raising one numeric value to the power of another. It extends the mathematical operation framework to provide exponentiation functionality with proper type handling.

The power operation supports integer, float, and currency operands, automatically promoting the result type to ensure sufficient precision. The operation follows standard mathematical rules for exponentiation including handling of negative bases and fractional exponents.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: [TFPEExprNode \(753\)](#)

22.51.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
768	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of power operation
768	<code>Check</code>	Validate the power operation for correctness
769	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the result of power operation
768	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for power operations

22.51.3 TFPPowerOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the power operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the power operation can be performed safely on the provided base and exponent operands. It checks for mathematically invalid operations such as negative bases with fractional exponents.

The validation also ensures that both operands are of compatible numeric types and that the operation will not result in overflow or underflow conditions that could produce invalid results.

22.51.4 TFPPowerOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of power operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` ([768](#)) method returns a human-readable string representation of the power operation, typically in the format 'base $\hat{=}$ exponent' or 'base ** exponent', showing both operands and the power operator.

22.51.5 TFPPowerOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for power operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method determines the data type that will be produced by the power operation. Power operations typically promote the result to a floating-point type to handle fractional results and maintain mathematical precision.

The result type is usually float regardless of the input operand types, since exponentiation often produces non-integer results even when both operands are integers.

22.51.6 TFPPowerOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of power operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` (769) method evaluates the power operation by raising the left operand to the power of the right operand and returns the result. It handles both integer and floating-point base values with numeric exponents.

22.52 TFPSubtractOperation

22.52.1 Description

The `TFPSubtractOperation` class implements the subtraction operation between two numeric operands. It extends the binary operation framework to provide subtraction-specific functionality for integers, floats, and currency values.

The operation handles type conversion automatically when operands have different numeric types, promoting the result to the more precise type as needed. The result type follows standard numeric promotion rules.

The subtraction operation computes the difference between the left operand (minuend) and the right operand (subtrahend), returning `left - right`.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.52.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
770	<code>AsString</code>	Get string representation of subtraction operation
769	<code>Check</code>	Validate the subtraction operation for correctness
769	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Calculate the result of subtraction operation

22.52.3 TFPSubtractOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the subtraction operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` (769) method validates that both operands are numeric types suitable for subtraction. It ensures type compatibility and prevents attempts to subtract incompatible types.

22.52.4 TFPSubtractOperation.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Calculate the result of subtraction operation

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` (769) method performs the actual subtraction by evaluating both operands and computing their difference. It handles type conversion and returns the result in the appropriate numeric format.

22.52.5 TFPSubtractOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of subtraction operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the subtraction operation, showing both operands connected by the "-" symbol for debugging and display purposes.

22.53 TFPUnaryOperator

22.53.1 Description

`TFPUnaryOperator` is the base class for all unary operations in the expression parser. Unary operations take a single operand and perform some operation to produce a result. It extends `TFPExprNode` (753) to provide the foundation for all single-operand operations.

The class manages the operand node and provides common functionality such as aggregate handling, validation, and resource management that is shared by all unary operations.

Derived classes implement specific operations such as logical NOT, numeric negation, and type conversions. Each operation defines its own evaluation logic while leveraging the common unary operation infrastructure.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPExprNode` (753)

22.53.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
772	<code>Check</code>	Validate the unary operator for correctness
770	<code>Create</code>	Create unary operator with operand
771	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy unary operator and free resources
772	<code>HasAggregate</code>	Check if unary operator contains aggregates
771	<code>InitAggregate</code>	Initialize aggregate processing for unary operator
771	<code>UpdateAggregate</code>	Update aggregate calculations for unary operator

22.53.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
772	<code>Operand</code>	<code>r</code>	The operand expression of the unary operator

22.53.4 TFPUnaryOperator.Create

Synopsis: Create unary operator with operand

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOperand: TFPEExprNode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `TFPUnaryOperator` (770) constructor creates a new unary operation with the specified operand. It takes ownership of the operand node and manages its lifecycle as part of the unary operation.

The constructor properly initializes the unary operation structure and establishes the relationship between the operation and its operand, ensuring that the operand is properly managed during the operation's lifetime.

22.53.5 TFPUnaryOperator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy unary operator and free resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This destructor properly cleans up the unary operation by freeing the operand node and any other resources used by the operation.

The destructor ensures that all memory allocated for the operand is properly released, preventing memory leaks in complex expression trees.

22.53.6 TFPUnaryOperator.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for unary operator

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes aggregate processing for the operand of the unary operation. It delegates the aggregate initialization to the operand to ensure that any aggregate expressions within the operand are properly initialized.

The `InitAggregate` method is called as part of the aggregate processing cycle when the expression contains aggregate functions that need special handling.

22.53.7 TFPUnaryOperator.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for unary operator

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates aggregate calculations for the operand of the unary operation. It delegates the aggregate updates to the operand to ensure that any aggregate expressions are properly maintained during the aggregation cycle.

The method is called repeatedly during aggregate processing to update the state of aggregate functions contained within the operand.

22.53.8 TFPUnaryOperator.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if unary operator contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `HasAggregate` method checks whether the operand contains aggregate expressions. It returns `True` if the operand has aggregate functionality, which indicates that special aggregate processing is required for this operation.

The method is used by the expression parser to identify operations that need aggregate handling and to ensure proper processing order for aggregate expressions.

22.53.9 TFPUnaryOperator.Check

Synopsis: Validate the unary operator for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates the unary operation by checking the operand for correctness and ensuring that it is compatible with the specific operation. It calls the `Check` method on the operand to perform recursive validation.

22.53.10 TFPUnaryOperator.Operand

Synopsis: The operand expression of the unary operator

Declaration: `Property Operand : TFPEExprNode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `Operand` (772) property provides access to the operand of the unary operation. The operand is the single expression node that the unary operation acts upon to produce its result.

The property returns the `TFPEExprNode` (753) that represents the operand, allowing access to its value and type information for evaluation purposes.

22.54 TFPUnequalOperation

22.54.1 Description

The `TFPUnequalOperation` class implements the inequality comparison operation (`<>`) between two operands of compatible types. It extends `TFPBooleanResultOperation` (724) to provide inequality-specific comparison logic.

The operation compares two values and returns `True` if they are not equal, `False` if they are equal. It handles different data types appropriately, using numeric comparison for numbers, string comparison for strings, and boolean comparison for boolean values.

Type conversion is performed when necessary to compare values of different but compatible types, ensuring that the inequality test works across different numeric types.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.54.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
773	AsString	Get string representation of inequality operation

22.54.3 TFPUnequalOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of inequality operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the inequality operation, showing both operands connected by the "<>" for debugging and display purposes.

The string format helps in understanding the structure of complex comparison expressions and provides useful information for debugging expression parsing and evaluation.

22.55 TIfOperation

22.55.1 Description

The `TIfOperation` class implements conditional if-then-else operations in expressions, allowing for branching logic based on boolean conditions. It extends the expression framework to provide conditional evaluation similar to the ternary operator in many programming languages.

The operation evaluates a boolean condition and returns one of two expressions based on the result: the "then" expression if the condition is `True`, or the "else" expression if the condition is `False`. This enables complex conditional logic within expressions.

The class manages three operands: the condition (which must evaluate to boolean), the "then" expression (evaluated when condition is `True`), and the "else" expression (evaluated when condition is `False`). Only one of the result expressions is evaluated, providing efficient conditional processing.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` ([731](#)) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` ([753](#))

22.55.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
775	AsString	Get string representation of conditional operation
774	Check	Validate the conditional operation for correctness
775	Create	Create conditional operation with condition and branches
775	destroy	Destroy conditional operation and free resources
774	HasAggregate	Check if conditional operation contains aggregates
774	InitAggregate	Initialize aggregate processing for if operation
775	NodeType	Get the result type for conditional operation
774	UpdateAggregate	Update aggregate calculations for if operation

22.55.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
776	Condition	<code>r</code>	The condition expression of the if operation

22.55.4 TlfOperation.Check

Synopsis: Validate the conditional operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates the conditional operation by checking that the condition expression evaluates to a boolean type and that the then-branch and else-branch expressions are present and valid.

The validation ensures that the condition is a boolean expression and that both branch expressions are compatible for the intended result type. It also validates all three operand expressions recursively.

22.55.5 TlfOperation.InitAggregate

Synopsis: Initialize aggregate processing for if operation

Declaration: `procedure InitAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `InitAggregate` method initializes aggregate processing for the condition, then-branch, and else-branch expressions of the conditional operation. It delegates the aggregate initialization to all three operands.

The `InitAggregate` (774) method is called as part of the aggregate processing cycle when any of the conditional branches contain aggregate functions that need special handling.

22.55.6 TlfOperation.UpdateAggregate

Synopsis: Update aggregate calculations for if operation

Declaration: `procedure UpdateAggregate; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `UpdateAggregate` method updates aggregate calculations for the condition, then-branch, and else-branch expressions of the conditional operation. It delegates the aggregate updates to all three operands.

The method is called repeatedly during aggregate processing to update the state of any aggregate functions contained within the conditional expressions.

22.55.7 TlfOperation.HasAggregate

Synopsis: Check if conditional operation contains aggregates

Declaration: `function HasAggregate : Boolean; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `HasAggregate` method checks whether any of the three operands (condition, then-branch, or else-branch) contain aggregate expressions. It returns `True` if any operand has aggregate functionality.

The method is used by the expression parser to identify conditional operations that need aggregate handling and to ensure proper processing order for expressions with aggregate functions.

22.55.8 TlfOperation.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for conditional operation

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` method determines and returns the result type for the conditional operation based on the types of the then-branch and else-branch expressions. The result type is typically the common type that both branches can be converted to.

The method analyzes both branch expressions to determine a compatible result type that can accommodate values from either branch, ensuring type safety in conditional expressions.

22.55.9 TlfOperation.Create

Synopsis: Create conditional operation with condition and branches

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACondition: TFPEExprNode; ALeft: TFPEExprNode;
ARight: TFPEExprNode)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Create` constructor creates a new conditional operation with the specified condition expression, then-branch expression, and else-branch expression. It takes ownership of all three operand nodes.

The constructor properly initializes the conditional operation structure and establishes the relationship between the operation and its three operands (condition, then-branch, and else-branch), ensuring proper resource management.

22.55.10 TlfOperation.destroy

Synopsis: Destroy conditional operation and free resources

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` properly cleans up the conditional operation by freeing the condition expression, then-branch expression, and else-branch expression, along with any other resources used by the operation.

22.55.11 TlfOperation.AsString

Synopsis: Get string representation of conditional operation

Declaration: `function AsString : AnsiString; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AsString` method returns a string representation of the conditional operation, typically showing the condition, then-branch, and else-branch expressions in a readable format such as "if condition then expr1 else expr2" for debugging and display purposes.

22.55.12 TIfOperation.Condition

Synopsis: The condition expression of the if operation

Declaration: `Property Condition : TFPEExprNode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `Condition` property provides access to the boolean condition expression that determines which branch of the conditional operation will be evaluated. The condition must evaluate to a boolean result.

The condition is evaluated first, and based on its boolean result, either the then-branch or else-branch expression is evaluated to provide the final result of the conditional operation.

22.56 TIntConvertNode

22.56.1 Description

The `TIntConvertNode` class handles conversion operations that produce integer results from various source data types. It extends `TFPConvertNode` (729) to provide integer-specific conversion functionality.

The class is used when expressions require values to be converted to integer representation, such as when performing integer arithmetic operations or when explicit integer casting is needed.

The conversion handles different source types appropriately, applying truncation, rounding, or other integer conversion rules based on the source data type.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEExpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEExprNode` (753)

22.56.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
776	<code>Check</code>	Validate the integer conversion for correctness

22.56.3 TIntConvertNode.Check

Synopsis: Validate the integer conversion for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the conversion operation can be safely performed and that the source value can be properly converted to an integer. It checks for potential overflow conditions and invalid source data types.

The validation helps prevent runtime errors during expression evaluation by ensuring that all type conversions are valid before the actual conversion is attempted.

22.57 TIntToCurrencyNode

22.57.1 Description

This conversion node class handles the automatic conversion of integer values to currency values in expressions. It extends the base conversion functionality to provide integer-to-currency specific conversion logic.

The class is used internally by the expression parser when type coercion is needed to make integer values compatible with currency operations. The conversion treats the integer as a currency amount with appropriate decimal precision.

This conversion is useful in financial calculations where integer values need to be combined with currency values while maintaining proper decimal precision and formatting.

See also: [TFPEExprNode \(753\)](#)

22.57.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
777	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Convert integer value to currency
777	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for integer to currency conversion

22.57.3 TIntToCurrencyNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for integer to currency conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` ([777](#)) method returns `rtCurrency` ([693](#)) to indicate that this conversion node produces currency results. It overrides the base class method to provide type-specific result type information.

The method enables the expression parser to properly identify currency operations and apply appropriate formatting, precision, and arithmetic rules for currency calculations.

This type information is crucial for maintaining proper currency handling throughout complex expressions involving mixed numeric types.

22.57.4 TIntToCurrencyNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Convert integer value to currency

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEExpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the actual conversion of an integer value to a currency value. It retrieves the integer value from the source node and converts it to the equivalent currency representation.

The conversion maintains the numeric value while applying currency-specific precision and formatting rules. The integer is treated as a whole currency unit (e.g., dollars, euros) with appropriate decimal handling.

The result is returned in a `TFPEExpressionResult` ([698](#)) structure with the result type set to `rtCurrency` and the converted value stored in the currency field.

22.58 TIntToDateTimeNode

22.58.1 Description

The `TIntToDateTimeNode` conversion node class handles the conversion of integer values to date/time values in expressions. It extends the base conversion functionality to provide integer-to-datetime specific conversion logic.

The class interprets integer values as datetime representations, typically using the standard Pascal datetime encoding where integers represent days since a base date. This allows integration of numeric date calculations with datetime operations.

The conversion enables mathematical operations on dates by treating them as numeric values while maintaining proper datetime semantics and formatting in the final results.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.58.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
778	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Internally used convert integer value to datetime
778	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for integer to datetime conversion

22.58.3 TIntToDateTimeNode.NodeType

Synopsis: Get the result type for integer to datetime conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtDateTime` (693) to indicate that this conversion node produces datetime results. It provides type information for the expression parser to handle datetime operations correctly.

22.58.4 TIntToDateTimeNode.GetNodeValue

Synopsis: Internally used convert integer value to datetime

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method converts an integer value to a datetime value using the standard Pascal datetime encoding. The integer is interpreted as the number of days since the base date (typically December 30, 1899).

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.59 TIntToFloatNode

22.59.1 Description

The `TIntToFloatNode` conversion node class handles the automatic conversion of integer values to floating-point values in expressions. It extends the base conversion functionality to provide integer-to-float specific conversion logic.

The class is used internally by the expression parser when type coercion is needed to make integer values compatible with operations that require floating-point operands. The conversion preserves the numeric value while changing the data type representation.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.59.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
779	<code>GetNodeValue</code>	Internally used convert integer value to float
779	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for integer to float conversion

22.59.3 `TIntToFloatNode.NodeType`

Synopsis: Get the result type for integer to float conversion

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `NodeType` method returns `rtFloat` (693) to indicate that this conversion node produces floating-point results. It overrides the base class method to provide type-specific result type information.

The method is used by the expression parser to determine the result type of expressions that include this conversion node, enabling proper type checking and result handling.

22.59.4 `TIntToFloatNode.GetNodeValue`

Synopsis: Internally used convert integer value to float

Declaration: `procedure GetNodeValue(var Result: TFPEXpressionResult); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `GetNodeValue` method performs the actual conversion of an integer value to a floating-point value. It retrieves the integer value from the source node and converts it to the equivalent floating-point representation.

The conversion maintains the numeric value while changing the internal representation to `TExprFloat` (691) format. The method ensures that the conversion is performed safely and accurately.

The result is returned in a `TFPEXpressionResult` (698) structure with the result type set to `rtFloat` and the converted value stored in the appropriate field.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.60 TMathOperation

22.60.1 Description

The `TMathOperation` (779) class serves as a base class for mathematical operations that can be performed on numeric operands. It provides common functionality for arithmetic operations including type checking and result type determination.

Mathematical operations support various numeric types including integers, floats, and currency values, with automatic type promotion to ensure precision is maintained in calculations. The class ensures that operands are compatible for mathematical operations.

This class is used internally by the `TFPEXpressionParser` (731) class to construct an AST (Abstract Syntax Tree). There is normally no need for you to use or instantiate this class directly.

See also: `TFPEXprNode` (753)

22.60.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
780	<code>Check</code>	Validate the mathematical operation for correctness
780	<code>NodeType</code>	Get the result type for mathematical operations

22.60.3 `TMathOperation.Check`

Synopsis: Validate the mathematical operation for correctness

Declaration: `procedure Check; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Check` method validates that the mathematical operation can be performed safely on the provided operands. It checks that both operands are of compatible numeric types and that the operation is mathematically valid.

The validation includes type compatibility checking and ensures that operations like division by zero or other mathematically undefined operations are detected before evaluation attempts.

22.60.4 `TMathOperation.NodeType`

Synopsis: Get the result type for mathematical operations

Declaration: `function NodeType : TResultType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `NodeType` method determines the data type that will be produced by the mathematical operation. The result type is calculated based on the types of the operands and follows standard type promotion rules.

For example, operations between integers produce integer results, but operations involving floats promote the result to float type to maintain precision. Currency operations maintain currency type where appropriate.

Chapter 23

Reference for unit 'fphttp'

23.1 Used units

Table 23.1: Used units by unit 'fphttp'

Name	Page
Classes	??
HTTPDefs	1146
httproute	1231
System	??
sysutils	??

23.2 Overview

The `fphttp` unit provides the foundation for handling HTTP requests in web server applications. It implements content producers ([790](#)), web actions ([786](#)), and web modules ([784](#)) for processing HTTP requests and generating responses.

The idea behind the web module and action architecture is that they process an URL of the following kind:

```
{BaseURL}/module/action/*
```

Where the appropriate module is determined by the http router ([781](#)) and the correct action is selected by the module. The action's event handler will then be executed.

If your application requires a more flexible URL handling, you may want to register callbacks directly with the HTTP router. If you are looking to generate HTML, then the `fpweb` ([781](#)) unit contains web modules that descend from `TCustomHTTPModule` ([784](#)) but are geared towards generating HTML.

23.3 Constants, types and variables

23.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrInvActNoDefaultAction =  
    'Invalid action name and no default action'
```

`SErrInvActNoDefaultAction` is the error message displayed when an invalid action is requested and no default action is available.

```
SErrNoDefaultAction = 'No action name and no default action'
```

`SErrNoDefaultAction` is the error message displayed when no default action is available.

```
SErrNoSessionFactoryClass =  
  'No session manager class available. Include iniwebsession unit and recompile.'
```

`SErrNoSessionFactoryClass` is the error message displayed when no session factory class is registered.

```
SErrNoSessionOutsideRequest =  
  'Default session not available outside handlerrequest'
```

`SErrNoSessionOutsideRequest` is the error message displayed when attempting to access session data outside of a request context.

```
SErrNoSuchAction = 'No action found for action: "%s"'
```

`SErrNoSuchAction` is the error message displayed when a requested action cannot be found.

```
SErrNosuchModule = 'No such module registered: "%s"'
```

`SErrNosuchModule` is the error message displayed when a requested module cannot be found.

```
SErrRequestNotHandled = 'Web request was not handled by actions.'
```

`SErrRequestNotHandled` is the error message displayed when a request cannot be handled by any action.

```
SErrUnknownAction = 'Unknown action: "%s"'
```

`SErrUnknownAction` is the error message displayed for unrecognized or invalid actions.

23.3.2 Types

```
TCustomHTTPModuleClass = class of TCustomHTTPModule
```

`TCustomHTTPModuleClass` is a class reference type for HTTP module classes.

```
TGetActionEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest;  
  var ActionName: string) of object
```

`TGetActionEvent` is triggered to determine which action should handle a specific request.

```
TInitModuleEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest)  
  of object
```

`TInitModuleEvent` is triggered when an HTTP module is initialized for request processing.

```
TOnModuleRequest = procedure(Sender: TModuleItem; ARequest: TRequest
;
                                AResponse: TResponse) of object
```

TOnModuleRequest is an event type for handling requests at the module level.

```
TSessionFactoryClass = class of TSessionFactory
```

TSessionFactoryClass is a class reference type for session factory classes.

```
TSessionHTTPModuleClass = class of TSessionHTTPModule
```

TSessionHTTPModuleClass is a class reference type for session-enabled HTTP module classes.

```
TWebActionEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest;
    AResponse: TResponse; var Handled: Boolean
)
                                of object
```

TWebActionEvent is an event type for handling web action processing before or after request handling.

```
TWebModuleKind = (wkPooled, wkOneShot)
```

Table 23.2: Enumeration values for type TWebModuleKind

Value	Explanation
wkOneShot	New module instance created for each request
wkPooled	Module instances are pooled and reused

TWebModuleKind defines how web modules are created and managed during request handling.

23.3.3 Variables

```
ModuleFactory : TModuleFactory
```

ModuleFactory is the global instance of the module factory for managing HTTP modules.

```
SessionFactoryClass : TSessionFactoryClass = Nil
```

SessionFactoryClass holds the class reference used to create session factory instances.

23.4 Procedures and functions

23.4.1 RegisterHTTPModule

Synopsis: Registers an HTTP module with the factory

Declaration: `procedure RegisterHTTPModule (ModuleClass: TCustomHTTPModuleClass;
 SkipStreaming: Boolean=False)
 procedure RegisterHTTPModule(const ModuleName: string;
 ModuleClass: TCustomHTTPModuleClass;
 SkipStreaming: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterHTTPModule` is a convenience function to register an HTTP module class with the global module factory.

23.4.2 SessionFactory

Synopsis: Returns the global session factory instance

Declaration: `function SessionFactory : TSessionFactory`

Visibility: default

Description: `SessionFactory` returns the global session factory instance used for session management.

23.5 EFPHTTPError

23.5.1 Description

`EFPHTTPError` is raised when errors occur during HTTP request processing.

23.6 EWebSessionError

23.6.1 Description

`EWebSessionError` is raised when errors occur during session management operations.

23.7 TCustomHTTPModule

23.7.1 Description

`TCustomHTTPModule` is the base class for HTTP modules that handle web requests. It provides the foundation for web applications with action-based request routing.

23.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
785	<code>CreateNew</code>	Creates a new HTTP module instance
785	<code>DoAfterInitModule</code>	Executes after module initialization
785	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles an HTTP request
785	<code>RegisterModule</code>	Registers the module with the factory

23.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
786	AfterInitModule	rw	Event after module initialization
786	BaseURL	rw	Base URL for the module
786	Kind	rw	Module creation mode

23.7.4 TCustomHTTPModule.CreateNew

Synopsis: Creates a new HTTP module instance

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(aOwner: TComponent; CreateMode: Integer)
; override; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateNew` creates a new HTTP module instance with the specified owner and creation mode.

23.7.5 TCustomHTTPModule.RegisterModule

Synopsis: Registers the module with the factory

Declaration: `class procedure RegisterModule(const AModuleName: string=''); overload
class procedure RegisterModule(const AModuleName: string;
ASkipStreaming: Boolean); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `RegisterModule` registers this HTTP module class with the module factory using the specified name.

23.7.6 TCustomHTTPModule.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles an HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `HandleRequest` processes an HTTP request and generates the appropriate response.

23.7.7 TCustomHTTPModule.DoAfterInitModule

Synopsis: Executes after module initialization

Declaration: `procedure DoAfterInitModule(ARequest: TRequest); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DoAfterInitModule` is called after the module has been initialized for the current request.

23.7.8 TCustomHTTPModule.Kind

Synopsis: Module creation mode

Declaration: `Property Kind : TWebModuleKind`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Kind` determines how module instances are created and managed.

23.7.9 TCustomHTTPModule.BaseURL

Synopsis: Base URL for the module

Declaration: `Property BaseURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BaseURL` specifies the base URL path that this module handles.

23.7.10 TCustomHTTPModule.AfterInitModule

Synopsis: Event after module initialization

Declaration: `Property AfterInitModule : TInitModuleEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterInitModule` is triggered after the module is initialized for request processing.

23.8 TCustomWebAction

23.8.1 Description

`TCustomWebAction` represents an individual web action that can handle specific HTTP requests. It associates a content producer or a simple event with request handling events. Web actions are selected by the `TCustomHTTPModule` (784) module by checking the second path element in the HTTP URL:

```
{BaseURL}/module/action
```

23.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
787	<code>GetNamePath</code>	Returns the action name path

23.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
788	AfterResponse	rw	Event triggered after response generation
788	BeforeRequest	rw	Event triggered before request processing
787	ContentProducer	rw	Content producer for this action
787	Default	rw	Indicates if this is the default action
787	Name	rw	Name of the web action

23.8.4 TCustomWebAction.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns the action name path

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : string; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNamePath` returns the full path name of the action for identification purposes.

23.8.5 TCustomWebAction.Name

Synopsis: Name of the web action

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` specifies the unique name used to identify this web action.

23.8.6 TCustomWebAction.ContentProducer

Synopsis: Content producer for this action

Declaration: `Property ContentProducer : THTTPContentProducer`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ContentProducer` specifies the content producer responsible for generating the response content.

23.8.7 TCustomWebAction.Default

Synopsis: Indicates if this is the default action

Declaration: `Property Default : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Default` specifies whether this action should be used as the default when no specific action is requested.

23.8.8 TCustomWebAction.BeforeRequest

Synopsis: Event triggered before request processing

Declaration: `Property BeforeRequest : TRequestEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeRequest` is triggered before the request is processed by the action.

23.8.9 TCustomWebAction.AfterResponse

Synopsis: Event triggered after response generation

Declaration: `Property AfterResponse : TResponseEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AfterResponse` is triggered after the response has been generated by the action.

23.9 TCustomWebActions

23.9.1 Description

`TCustomWebActions` manages a collection of web actions that can handle HTTP requests.

23.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
789	<code>ActionByName</code>	Finds action by name
789	<code>Add</code>	Adds a new web action
789	<code>Assign</code>	Copies actions from another collection
788	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new web actions collection
789	<code>FindAction</code>	Searches for action by name
789	<code>IndexOfAction</code>	Returns index of named action

23.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
790	<code>Actions</code>	rw	Array access to web actions
790	<code>DefActionWhenUnknown</code>	rw	Use default action for unknown requests
789	<code>OnGetAction</code>	rw	Event for action name determination

23.9.4 TCustomWebActions.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new web actions collection

Declaration: `constructor Create(AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new web actions collection with the specified action item class.

23.9.5 TCustomWebActions.Assign

Synopsis: Copies actions from another collection

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign copies all actions from the source collection to this collection.

23.9.6 TCustomWebActions.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new web action

Declaration: `function Add : TCustomWebAction`

Visibility: public

Description: Add creates and adds a new web action to the collection.

23.9.7 TCustomWebActions.ActionByName

Synopsis: Finds action by name

Declaration: `function ActionByName(const AName: string) : TCustomWebAction`

Visibility: public

Description: ActionByName returns the web action with the specified name, or raises an exception if not found.

23.9.8 TCustomWebActions.FindAction

Synopsis: Searches for action by name

Declaration: `function FindAction(const AName: string) : TCustomWebAction`

Visibility: public

Description: FindAction searches for a web action with the specified name and returns nil if not found.

23.9.9 TCustomWebActions.IndexOfAction

Synopsis: Returns index of named action

Declaration: `function IndexOfAction(const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfAction returns the index of the web action with the specified name, or -1 if not found.

23.9.10 TCustomWebActions.OnGetAction

Synopsis: Event for action name determination

Declaration: `Property OnGetAction : TGetActionEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnGetAction is triggered to determine which action should handle a request.

23.9.11 TCustomWebActions.Actions

Synopsis: Array access to web actions

Declaration: `Property Actions[Index: Integer]: TCustomWebAction; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Actions` provides indexed access to individual web actions in the collection.

23.9.12 TCustomWebActions.DefActionWhenUnknown

Synopsis: Use default action for unknown requests

Declaration: `Property DefActionWhenUnknown : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefActionWhenUnknown` determines whether the default action should handle requests for unknown actions.

23.10 THTTPContentProducer

23.10.1 Description

`THTTPContentProducer` is the base class for generating HTTP content. It provides methods for handling requests and producing content for HTTP responses.

23.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
791	<code>ContentToStream</code>	Writes content to a stream
791	<code>GetContent</code>	Retrieves content for the HTTP response
790	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles an HTTP request
791	<code>HaveContent</code>	Checks if content is available

23.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
791	<code>Request</code>	r	Current HTTP request
791	<code>Response</code>	r	Current HTTP response

23.10.4 THTTPContentProducer.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles an HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse;
var Handled: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `HandleRequest` processes an HTTP request and sets the handled flag if the request was processed.

23.10.5 THTTPContentProducer.GetContent

Synopsis: Retrieves content for the HTTP response

Declaration: `procedure GetContent (ARequest: TRequest; Content: TStream;
var Handled: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetContent` retrieves the content to be sent as the HTTP response body.

23.10.6 THTTPContentProducer.HaveContent

Synopsis: Checks if content is available

Declaration: `function HaveContent : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `HaveContent` returns `True` if the content producer can generate content for the current request.

23.10.7 THTTPContentProducer.ContentToStream

Synopsis: Writes content to a stream

Declaration: `function ContentToStream(Stream: TStream) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ContentToStream` writes the generated content directly to a stream and returns the number of bytes written.

23.10.8 THTTPContentProducer.Request

Synopsis: Current HTTP request

Declaration: `Property Request : TRequest`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Request` provides access to the current HTTP request being processed.

23.10.9 THTTPContentProducer.Response

Synopsis: Current HTTP response

Declaration: `Property Response : TResponse`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Response` provides access to the current HTTP response being generated.

23.11 TModuleFactory

23.11.1 Description

TModuleFactory manages the registration and creation of HTTP modules.

23.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
792	FindModule	Finds a module by name
793	IndexOfModule	Returns index of named module
792	ModuleByName	Returns module by name
792	RegisterHTTPModule	Registers an HTTP module

23.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
793	Modules	rw	Array access to registered modules
793	OnModuleRequest	rw	Event for module request handling

23.11.4 TModuleFactory.RegisterHTTPModule

Synopsis: Registers an HTTP module

Declaration:

```
procedure RegisterHTTPModule(const ModuleName: string;
                             ModuleClass: TCustomHTTPModuleClass;
                             SkipStreaming: Boolean=False); virtual
procedure RegisterHTTPModule(ModuleClass: TCustomHTTPModuleClass;
                             SkipStreaming: Boolean=False)
```

Visibility: public

Description: RegisterHTTPModule registers an HTTP module class with the factory.

23.11.5 TModuleFactory.FindModule

Synopsis: Finds a module by name

Declaration:

```
function FindModule(const AModuleName: string) : TModuleItem
```

Visibility: public

Description: FindModule searches for a registered module with the specified name.

23.11.6 TModuleFactory.ModuleByName

Synopsis: Returns module by name

Declaration:

```
function ModuleByName(const AModuleName: string) : TModuleItem
```

Visibility: public

Description: ModuleByName returns the module item with the specified name, or raises an exception if not found.

23.11.7 TModuleFactory.IndexOfModule

Synopsis: Returns index of named module

Declaration: `function IndexOfModule(const AModuleName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfModule` returns the index of the module with the specified name, or -1 if not found.

23.11.8 TModuleFactory.Modules

Synopsis: Array access to registered modules

Declaration: `Property Modules[Index: Integer]: TModuleItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Modules` provides indexed access to registered module items.

23.11.9 TModuleFactory.OnModuleRequest

Synopsis: Event for module request handling

Declaration: `Property OnModuleRequest : TOnModuleRequest`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnModuleRequest` is triggered when a request is being handled by a module.

23.12 TModuleItem

23.12.1 Description

`TModuleItem` holds registration information for an HTTP module in the module factory.

23.12.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
1240	<code>IRouteInterface</code>	Interface for route request handlers

23.12.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
794	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the module item

23.12.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
794	<code>ModuleClass</code>	rw	HTTP module class
794	<code>ModuleName</code>	rw	Name of the module
794	<code>SkipStreaming</code>	rw	Whether to skip component streaming

23.12.5 TModuleItem.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the module item

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the module item and its associated resources.

23.12.6 TModuleItem.ModuleClass

Synopsis: HTTP module class

Declaration: `Property ModuleClass : TCustomHTTPModuleClass`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ModuleClass` specifies the class for this registered HTTP module.

23.12.7 TModuleItem.ModuleName

Synopsis: Name of the module

Declaration: `Property ModuleName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ModuleName` specifies the registered name for this HTTP module.

23.12.8 TModuleItem.SkipStreaming

Synopsis: Whether to skip component streaming

Declaration: `Property SkipStreaming : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SkipStreaming` determines whether component streaming is skipped for this module.

23.13 TSessionFactory

23.13.1 Description

`TSessionFactory` provides session management functionality including creation, cleanup, and configuration.

23.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
795	CleanupSessions	Cleans up expired sessions
795	CreateSession	Creates a new user session
795	DoneSession	Finalizes a user session

23.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
795	CleanupInterval	rw	Session cleanup interval in minutes
796	DefaultTimeOutMinutes	rw	Default session timeout in minutes
796	SessionCookie	rw	Name of the session cookie
796	SessionCookiePath	rw	Path for the session cookie

23.13.4 TSessionFactory.CreateSession

Synopsis: Creates a new user session

Declaration: `function CreateSession(ARequest: TRequest) : TCustomSession`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateSession` creates a new user session for the specified HTTP request.

23.13.5 TSessionFactory.DoneSession

Synopsis: Finalizes a user session

Declaration: `procedure DoneSession(var ASession: TCustomSession)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoneSession` performs cleanup and finalization for the specified session.

23.13.6 TSessionFactory.CleanupSessions

Synopsis: Cleans up expired sessions

Declaration: `procedure CleanupSessions`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CleanupSessions` removes expired sessions from the session storage.

23.13.7 TSessionFactory.CleanupInterval

Synopsis: Session cleanup interval in minutes

Declaration: `Property CleanupInterval : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CleanupInterval` specifies how often expired sessions are cleaned up, in minutes.

23.13.8 TSessionFactory.DefaultTimeoutMinutes

Synopsis: Default session timeout in minutes

Declaration: `Property DefaultTimeoutMinutes : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultTimeoutMinutes` specifies the default timeout period for new sessions, in minutes.

23.13.9 TSessionFactory.SessionCookie

Synopsis: Name of the session cookie

Declaration: `Property SessionCookie : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SessionCookie` specifies the name of the HTTP cookie used to store session identifiers.

23.13.10 TSessionFactory.SessionCookiePath

Synopsis: Path for the session cookie

Declaration: `Property SessionCookiePath : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SessionCookiePath` specifies the path attribute for the session cookie.

23.14 TSessionHTTPModule

23.14.1 Description

`TSessionHTTPModule` extends HTTP modules with session management capabilities. It automatically manages user sessions across multiple HTTP requests.

23.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
797	<code>destroy</code>	Destroys the session HTTP module
797	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles request with session management

23.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
797	<code>CreateSession</code>	rw	Indicates if sessions should be created
797	<code>OnNewSession</code>	rw	Event triggered when a new session is created
798	<code>OnSessionExpired</code>	rw	Event triggered when a session expires
797	<code>Session</code>	rw	Current session object

23.14.4 TSessionHTTPModule.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the session HTTP module

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `destroy` frees the session HTTP module and its associated session resources.

23.14.5 TSessionHTTPModule.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles request with session management

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HandleRequest` processes an HTTP request with automatic session management.

23.14.6 TSessionHTTPModule.CreateSession

Synopsis: Indicates if sessions should be created

Declaration: `Property CreateSession : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CreateSession` determines whether new sessions are automatically created for requests.

23.14.7 TSessionHTTPModule.Session

Synopsis: Current session object

Declaration: `Property Session : TCustomSession`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Session` provides access to the current user session associated with the request.

23.14.8 TSessionHTTPModule.OnNewSession

Synopsis: Event triggered when a new session is created

Declaration: `Property OnNewSession : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnNewSession` is triggered when a new user session is created.

23.14.9 TSessionHTTPModule.OnSessionExpired

Synopsis: Event triggered when a session expires

Declaration: Property OnSessionExpired : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: OnSessionExpired is triggered when a user session expires due to timeout.

Chapter 24

Reference for unit 'fphttpclient'

24.1 Used units

Table 24.1: Used units by unit 'fphttpclient'

Name	Page
base64	200
Classes	??
HTTPDefs	1146
sslsockets	??
ssockets	??
System	??
sysutils	??
URIParser	1616

24.2 Overview

The `fpHttpClient` unit provides a complete HTTP client implementation for making HTTP requests. It supports all standard HTTP methods (GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, PATCH, OPTIONS, HEAD), SSL/TLS connections, redirects, authentication, cookies, and form posting including file uploads.

The main classes are `TFPCustomHTTPClient` ([809](#)) (base class) and `TFPHTTPClient` ([819](#)) (with published properties). The unit also supports Server-Sent Events through `TCustomHTTPEventSource` ([799](#)) and proxy connections through `TProxyData` ([827](#)).

24.3 Advanced TFPHTTPClient Features

The `TFPHTTPClient` class supports advanced features like authentication, custom headers, cookies, proxy settings, and request/response event handling. These features enable building robust HTTP client applications with full control over the HTTP communication.

```
program AdvancedHTTPExample;
```



```

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    SysUtils, Classes, fphttpclient, opensslsockets, base64;

procedure OnDataReceived(Sender: TObject; const ContentLength, CurrentPos: Int64);
begin
    if ContentLength > 0 then
        Write(Format('Progress: %d/%d bytes (%.1f%%)' + #13,
            [CurrentPos, ContentLength, (CurrentPos/ContentLength)*100]));
end;

procedure OnPassword(Sender: TObject; var RepeatRequest: Boolean);
begin
    Writeln('Authentication required - this is where you would prompt for credentials'
    RepeatRequest := False; // Don't retry automatically
end;

var
    Client: TFPHTTPClient;
    Response: String;
    AuthHeader: String;
begin
    Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
    try
        Writeln('=== Basic Authentication Example ===');
        // HTTP Basic Authentication
        AuthHeader := 'Basic ' + EncodeBase64('username:password');
        Client.AddHeader('Authorization', AuthHeader);

        // You can also use the Username/Password properties
        // Client.UserName := 'testuser';
        // Client.Password := 'testpass';

        Writeln('=== Custom Headers Example ===');
        Client.AddHeader('X-API-Key', 'your-api-key-here');
        Client.AddHeader('X-Custom-Header', 'custom-value');
        Client.AddHeader('Accept', 'application/json');

        Writeln('=== Event Handlers Example ===');
        Client.OnDataReceived := @OnDataReceived;
        Client.OnPassword := @OnPassword;

        Writeln('=== Cookie Management Example ===');
        // Cookies are automatically managed between requests
        Client.Cookies.Values['session_id'] := 'abc123';
        Client.Cookies.Values['user_pref'] := 'dark_mode';

        Writeln('=== Redirect Configuration ===');
        Client.AllowRedirect := True;
        Client.MaxRedirects := 10;

        Writeln('=== Timeout Configuration ===');
        Client.IOTimeout := 30000; // 30 seconds timeout
    finally
        Client.Free;
    end;
end;

```

```

Client.ConnectTimeout := 10000; // 10 seconds connect timeout

Writeln('=== Proxy Configuration Example ===');
// Uncomment to use proxy
// Client.Proxy.Host := 'proxy.example.com';
// Client.Proxy.Port := 8080;
// Client.Proxy.UserName := 'proxy_user';
// Client.Proxy.Password := 'proxy_pass';

try
  // Make request with all configured settings
  Response := Client.Get('https://httpbin.org/headers');

  Writeln('Request completed successfully!');
  Writeln('Status Code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
  Writeln('Response Length: ', Length(Response));

  // Access response headers
  Writeln('Server: ', Client.GetHeader(Client.ResponseHeaders, 'Server'));
  Writeln('Content-Type: ', Client.GetHeader(Client.ResponseHeaders, 'Content-Type'));

  // Show cookies received from server
  if Client.Cookies.Count > 0 then
  begin
    Writeln('Cookies received:');
    Writeln(Client.Cookies.Text);
  end;

except
  on E: Exception do
  begin
    Writeln('Request failed: ', E.Message);
    Writeln('Last status code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
  end;
end;

finally
  Client.Free;
end;
end.

```

24.4 File Upload with Local Filename

The `FileFormPost` method provides an easy way to upload local files to a server. It automatically handles multipart/form-data encoding and sets appropriate headers. The method takes the URL, form field name, local filename, and a response stream.

```

program FileUploadExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses

```

```

SysUtils, Classes, fphttpclient, opensslsockets;

procedure CreateTestFile(const FileName: String);
var
  F: TextFile;
begin
  AssignFile(F, FileName);
  Rewrite(F);
  try
    Writeln(F, 'Sample file content for upload test');
    Writeln(F, 'Created: ', DateTimeToStr(Now));
    Writeln(F, 'This file will be uploaded via HTTP POST');
  finally
    CloseFile(F);
  end;
end;

var
  Client: TFPHTTPClient;
  ResponseStream: TStringStream;
  TestFileName: String;
begin
  Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
  ResponseStream := TStringStream.Create('');
  TestFileName := '/tmp/claude/upload_test.txt';

  try
    // Create a test file to upload
    CreateTestFile(TestFileName);

    Writeln('=== File Upload with Local Filename ===');
    Writeln('Uploading file: ', TestFileName);

    // Configure client for file upload
    Client.AllowRedirect := True;
    Client.AddHeader('User-Agent', 'FreePascal-FileUploader/1.0');

    // Upload the file
    // Parameters: URL, field name, local filename, response stream
    Client.FileFormPost('https://httpbin.org/post', 'uploaded_file', TestFileName, R

    // Check upload result
    if Client.ResponseStatusCode = 200 then
    begin
      Writeln('Upload successful!');
      Writeln('Server response status: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
      Writeln('Response content type: ', Client.GetHeader(Client.ResponseHeaders, 'C

      // Show part of the response
      Writeln('Server response (first 200 chars):');
      Writeln(Copy(ResponseStream.DataString, 1, 200));
    end
    else
    begin

```

```

        Writeln('Upload failed with status: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
        Writeln('Response: ', ResponseStream.DataString);
    end;

    // Upload with additional form fields
    Writeln('=== File Upload with Additional Fields ===');
    ResponseStream.Clear;

    // Add custom headers for the upload
    Client.AddHeader('X-Upload-Purpose', 'documentation-example');

    // You can also upload to services that expect additional form data
    // by using FileFormPost combined with other form fields

finally
    ResponseStream.Free;
    Client.Free;

    // Clean up test file
    if FileExists(TestFileName) then
        DeleteFile(TestFileName);
    end;
end.

```

Important Notes:

- The file must exist and be readable for the upload to succeed.
- The form field name should match what the server expects.
- The method automatically sets Content-Type to multipart/form-data
- Large files are streamed efficiently without loading entirely into memory
- The server response is written to the provided response stream

24.5 Form Data and File Upload with fpHttpClient

The `TFPHttpClient` class provides specialized methods for posting form data and uploading files. `FormPost` handles URL-encoded form data, while `FileFormPost` uploads files using multipart/form-data encoding.

```

program FormPostExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    SysUtils, Classes, fphttpclient, opensslsockets;

var
    Client: TFPHttpClient;
    FormData: TStrings;
    Response: String;

```

```

    FileStream: TFileStream;
begin
    Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
    FormData := TStringList.Create;
    try
        // Simple form post with key-value pairs
        Writeln('=== Form Post Example ===');
        FormData.Values['username'] := 'testuser';
        FormData.Values['email'] := 'test@example.com';
        FormData.Values['message'] := 'Hello from FreePascal!';

        Response := Client.FormPost('https://httpbin.org/post', FormData);
        Writeln('Form POST response: ', Copy(Response, 1, 150), '...');

        // Form post with raw data
        Writeln('=== Raw Form Data Post ===');
        Response := Client.FormPost('https://httpbin.org/post', 'field1=value1&field2=value2');
        Writeln('Raw form POST status: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);

        // File upload using FileFormPost
        Writeln('=== File Upload Example ===');

        // Create a test file to upload
        FileStream := TFileStream.Create('/tmp/claude/test_upload.txt', fmCreate);
        try
            FileStream.WriteAnsiString('This is test content for file upload');
        finally
            FileStream.Free;
        end;

        // Upload the file
        Client.FileFormPost('https://httpbin.org/post', 'file', '/tmp/claude/test_upload.txt',
            TStringStream.Create(''));

        Writeln('File upload status: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
        if Client.ResponseStatusCode = 200 then
            Writeln('File uploaded successfully');

        // Clean up test file
        if FileExists('/tmp/claude/test_upload.txt') then
            DeleteFile('/tmp/claude/test_upload.txt');

    finally
        FormData.Free;
        Client.Free;
    end;
end.

```

24.6 HTTP Methods with TFPHTTPClient

The `TFPHTTPClient` class supports all standard HTTP methods through various methods and overloads. Each method provides multiple ways to handle the response: as a string, stream, or file.

```

program HTTPMethodsExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    SysUtils, Classes, fphttpclient, opensslsockets;

var
    Client: TFPHTTPClient;
    Response: String;
    PostData: TStringStream;
    ResponseStream: TFileStream;
begin
    Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
    try
        // GET request
        Writeln('=== GET Request ===');
        Response := Client.Get('https://httpbin.org/get?param1=value1');
        Writeln('GET Response: ', Copy(Response, 1, 100), '...');

        // POST request with data
        Writeln('=== POST Request ===');
        Client.RequestBody := TRawByteStringStream.Create('{"key": "value", "number": 42');
        Client.AddHeader('Content-Type', 'application/json');
        Response := Client.Post('https://httpbin.org/post');
        Writeln('POST Response: ', Copy(Response, 1, 100), '...');

        // PUT request
        Writeln('=== PUT Request ===');
        Client.RequestBody := TRawByteStringStream.Create('{"updated": "data"}');
        Client.AddHeader('Content-Type', 'application/json');
        Client.HTTPMethod('PUT', 'https://httpbin.org/put', nil, [200]);
        Writeln('PUT Status Code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);

        // DELETE request
        Writeln('=== DELETE Request ===');
        Client.HTTPMethod('DELETE', 'https://httpbin.org/delete', nil, [200]);
        Writeln('DELETE Status Code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);

        // HEAD request (only headers, no body)
        Writeln('=== HEAD Request ===');
        Client.HTTPMethod('HEAD', 'https://httpbin.org/get', nil, [200]);
        Writeln('HEAD Content-Length: ', Client.GetHeader(Client.ResponseHeaders, 'Content-Length'));

        // OPTIONS request
        Writeln('=== OPTIONS Request ===');
        Client.HTTPMethod('OPTIONS', 'https://httpbin.org', nil, [200]);
        Writeln('Allowed Methods: ', Client.GetHeader(Client.ResponseHeaders, 'Allow'));

        // Save response to file
        Writeln('=== GET to File ===');
        Client.Get('https://httpbin.org/json', '/tmp/claude/response.json');
        if FileExists('/tmp/claude/response.json') then
            Writeln('Response saved to file successfully');
    except
        on E: Exception do
            Writeln('Error: ', E.Message);
    end;
end;

```

```

finally
    Client.Free;
end;
end.

```

24.7 HTTPS Support in TFPHTTPClient

To enable HTTPS support in the TFPHTTPClient class, you must include either `opensslsockets` or `gnutlssockets` in your program's `uses` clause. These units register SSL socket handlers that the HTTP client uses automatically when encountering HTTPS URLs.

`opensslsockets` uses the OpenSSL library and is the most commonly used option. `gnutlssockets` uses the GnuTLS library as an alternative. Include only one of these units - do not include both in the same program.

```

program HTTPSExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    SysUtils, fphttpclient, opensslsockets; // This enables HTTPS support

var
    Client: TFPHTTPClient;
    Response: String;
begin
    Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
    try
        // Configure SSL settings if needed
        Client.AllowRedirect := True;

        // Make HTTPS request - automatically uses SSL
        Response := Client.Get('https://api.github.com/users/freepascal');

        Writeln('HTTPS Response:');
        Writeln(Response);

        Writeln('HTTPS request completed successfully');
        Writeln('Status Code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);

    finally
        Client.Free;
    end;
end.

```

SSL Certificate Verification: By default, the client verifies SSL certificates. You can disable this verification for testing purposes by setting `Client.IOTimeout := 0` and handling the `OnVerifyCertificate` event, but this is not recommended for production code as it makes connections vulnerable to man-in-the-middle attacks.

24.8 Using the TFPHTTPClient

The `TFPHTTPClient` class provides both simple class methods for quick requests and instance-based methods for more control over the HTTP client behavior. For basic operations, use the static `SimpleGet`, `SimplePost`, and `SimpleFormPost` methods. For advanced features like custom headers, authentication, or cookie management, create a `TFPHTTPClient` instance.

The HTTP client automatically handles redirects (up to a configurable limit), manages cookies, and supports both HTTP and HTTPS protocols. For HTTPS support, you must include either `opensslsockets` or `gnutlssockets` in your program's `uses` clause.

```
program HTTPClientBasic;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    SysUtils, Classes, fphttpclient, opensslsockets; // opensslsockets enables HTTPS

var
    Client: TFPHTTPClient;
    Response: String;
    ResponseStream: TStringStream;
begin
    // Simple GET request using class method
    Response := TFPHTTPClient.SimpleGet('https://httpbin.org/get');
    Writeln('Simple GET response:');
    Writeln(Response);

    // Instance-based approach for more control
    Client := TFPHTTPClient.Create(nil);
    ResponseStream := TStringStream.Create('');
    try
        // Configure client
        Client.AllowRedirect := True;
        Client.MaxRedirects := 5;

        // Add custom headers
        Client.AddHeader('User-Agent', 'MyApp/1.0');
        Client.AddHeader('Accept', 'application/json');

        // Make request to stream
        Client.Get('https://httpbin.org/headers', ResponseStream);

        Writeln('Response with custom headers:');
        Writeln(ResponseStream.DataString);

        Writeln('Response Status Code: ', Client.ResponseStatusCode);
        Writeln('Response Headers:');
        Writeln(Client.ResponseHeaders.Text);
    finally
        ResponseStream.Free;
        Client.Free;
    end;
end.
```


24.9 Constants, types and variables

24.9.1 Constants

```
DefMaxRedirects = 16
```

Default maximum number of HTTP redirects that will be followed automatically. The value is 16, which prevents infinite redirect loops while allowing reasonable redirect chains.

```
ReadBufLen = 4096
```

Default buffer size used for reading data from sockets. The value is 4096 bytes, which provides a good balance between memory usage and performance.

24.9.2 Types

```
TDataEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const ContentLength: Int64
    ;
    const CurrentPos: Int64) of object
```

Event type called during data transfer to provide progress information. During header reading, ContentLength is 0. During content reading, ContentLength is -1 if not specified by server.

```
TGetSocketHandlerEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    const UseSSL: Boolean;
    out AHandler: TSocketHandler)
    of object
```

Event type called to allow custom socket handler creation. This enables the use of custom SSL implementations or socket configurations.

```
THTTPVerifyCertificateEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    AHandler: TSSLSocketHandler;
    var aAllow: Boolean) of
    object
```

Event type called during SSL certificate verification, allowing custom certificate validation logic.

```
TPasswordEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var RepeatRequest: Boolean
    )
    of object
```

Event type called when the server requests authentication. The event handler can provide credentials and indicate whether to retry the request.

```
TRedirectEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const ASrc: string;
    var ADest: string) of object
```

Event type called when an HTTP redirect is encountered. The event handler can modify the destination URL or prevent the redirect.

```
TSocketHandlerCreatedEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  AHandler: TSocketHandler)
  of object
```

Event type called after a socket handler has been created, allowing additional configuration of the handler.

24.10 Procedures and functions

24.10.1 DecodeURLElement

Synopsis: URL-decodes a string from URL encoding

Declaration: `function DecodeURLElement(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Decodes percent-encoded sequences in a URL-encoded string back to their original characters.

See also: [EncodeURLElement \(809\)](#)

24.10.2 EncodeURLElement

Synopsis: URL-encodes a string for use in URLs

Declaration: `function EncodeURLElement(S: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Encodes special characters in a string to make it safe for use in URLs by replacing them with percent-encoded sequences.

See also: [DecodeURLElement \(809\)](#)

24.11 EHTTPClient

24.11.1 Description

`EHTTPClient` is raised when HTTP operations fail, providing status code and error message information.

See also: [EHTTPClientSocket \(799\)](#)

24.12 TFPCustomHTTPClient

24.12.1 Description

`TFPCustomHTTPClient` is the base class for HTTP client functionality. It provides methods for all standard HTTP operations including GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, PATCH, OPTIONS, and HEAD requests.

The class supports SSL/TLS connections, HTTP redirects, authentication, cookies, form posting with file uploads, proxy connections, and Server-Sent Events. It handles connection management, timeout control, and provides various events for monitoring request progress.

See also: [TFPHTTPClient \(819\)](#), [TProxyData \(827\)](#)

24.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
811	AddHeader	Adds an HTTP header to a headers collection
810	Create	Creates a new HTTP client instance
814	Delete	Performs an HTTP DELETE request
810	Destroy	Destroys the HTTP client instance
818	FileFormPost	Performs an HTTP POST request with file upload
817	FormPost	Performs an HTTP POST request with form data
812	Get	Performs an HTTP GET request
811	GetHeader	Gets the value of a header from a headers collection
816	Head	Performs an HTTP HEAD request
812	HTTPMethod	Executes an HTTP request with the specified method
811	IndexOfHeader	Returns the index of a header in a headers collection
812	IsRedirect	Checks if an HTTP status code indicates a redirect
816	Options	Performs an HTTP OPTIONS request
815	Patch	Performs an HTTP PATCH request
813	Post	Performs an HTTP POST request
814	Put	Performs an HTTP PUT request
813	RedirectForcesGET	Checks if a redirect status code forces GET method
815	SimpleDelete	Static method to perform a simple HTTP DELETE request
818	SimpleFileFormPost	Static method to perform a simple file upload form POST
817	SimpleFormPost	Static method to perform a simple form POST request
813	SimpleGet	Static method to perform a simple HTTP GET request
816	SimpleOptions	Static method to perform a simple HTTP OPTIONS request
815	SimplePatch	Static method to perform a simple HTTP PATCH request
813	SimplePost	Static method to perform a simple HTTP POST request
814	SimplePut	Static method to perform a simple HTTP PUT request
818	StreamFormPost	Performs an HTTP form POST with stream upload
812	Terminate	Terminates any ongoing HTTP operation

24.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
819	Terminated	r	Indicates whether the HTTP operation has been terminated

24.12.4 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new HTTP client instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new HTTP client instance and initializes default settings for timeouts, HTTP version, and other configuration options.

See also: [Destroy \(810\)](#)

24.12.5 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP client instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the HTTP client instance, closes any open connections, and frees associated resources.

See also: Create ([810](#))

24.12.6 TFPCustomHTTPClient.AddHeader

Synopsis: Adds an HTTP header to a headers collection

Declaration:

```
class procedure AddHeader(HTTPHeaders: TStrings; const AHeader: string;
                        const AValue: string)
      procedure AddHeader(const AHeader: string; const AValue: string)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method to add an HTTP header with the specified name and value to a headers collection. If a header with the same name already exists, its value is updated.

See also: GetHeader ([811](#))

24.12.7 TFPCustomHTTPClient.IndexOfHeader

Synopsis: Returns the index of a header in a headers collection

Declaration:

```
class function IndexOfHeader(HTTPHeaders: TStrings;
                        const AHeader: string) : Integer
      function IndexOfHeader(const AHeader: string) : Integer
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method to find the index of a header with the specified name in a headers collection. Returns -1 if the header is not found.

See also: GetHeader ([811](#))

24.12.8 TFPCustomHTTPClient.GetHeader

Synopsis: Gets the value of a header from a headers collection

Declaration:

```
class function GetHeader(HTTPHeaders: TStrings; const AHeader: string)
                        : string
      function GetHeader(const AHeader: string) : string
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method to retrieve the value of a header with the specified name from a headers collection. Returns an empty string if the header is not found.

See also: AddHeader ([811](#))

24.12.9 TFPCustomHttpClient.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminates any ongoing HTTP operation

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Signals that any ongoing HTTP operation should be terminated. This sets the `Terminated` property to `True` and may abort current requests.

See also: `Terminated` ([819](#))

24.12.10 TFPCustomHttpClient.HTTPMethod

Synopsis: Executes an HTTP request with the specified method

Declaration: `procedure HTTPMethod(const AMethod: string; const AURL: string;
Stream: TStream;
const AllowedResponseCodes: Array of Integer)
; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Generic method for executing HTTP requests with any HTTP method. This is the core method used by all other HTTP method shortcuts (GET, POST, etc.).

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: `Get` ([812](#)), `Post` ([813](#))

24.12.11 TFPCustomHttpClient.Get

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP GET request

Declaration: `procedure Get(const AURL: string; Stream: TStream)
procedure Get(const AURL: string; const LocalFileName: string)
procedure Get(const AURL: string; Response: TStrings)
function Get(const AURL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Performs an HTTP GET request to retrieve data from the specified URL. The response can be written to a stream, saved to a file, or returned as a string.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: `Post` ([813](#)), `SimpleGet` ([813](#))

24.12.12 TFPCustomHttpClient.IsRedirect

Synopsis: Checks if an HTTP status code indicates a redirect

Declaration: `class function IsRedirect(ACode: Integer) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Static utility method that returns `True` if the specified HTTP status code indicates a redirect (3xx codes).

See also: `RedirectForcesGET` ([813](#))

24.12.13 TFPCustomHTTPClient.RedirectForcesGET

Synopsis: Checks if a redirect status code forces GET method

Declaration: `class function RedirectForcesGET(ACode: Integer) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method that returns `True` if the specified redirect status code requires changing the HTTP method to GET. This applies to certain 3xx status codes that mandate method changes.

See also: [IsRedirect \(812\)](#)

24.12.14 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleGet

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP GET request

Declaration: `class procedure SimpleGet(const AURL: string; Stream: TStream)`
`class procedure SimpleGet(const AURL: string;`
`const LocalFileName: string)`
`class procedure SimpleGet(const AURL: string; Response: TStrings)`
`class function SimpleGet(const AURL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP GET request without requiring an HTTP client instance. This is convenient for quick one-off requests.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [Get \(812\)](#)

24.12.15 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Post

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP POST request

Declaration: `procedure Post(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)`
`procedure Post(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)`
`procedure Post(const URL: string; const LocalFileName: string)`
`function Post(const URL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP POST request to send data to the specified URL. The request body is taken from the `RequestBody` property.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Get \(812\)](#), [FormPost \(817\)](#)

24.12.16 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePost

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP POST request

Declaration: `class procedure SimplePost(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)`
`class procedure SimplePost(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)`
`class procedure SimplePost(const URL: string;`
`const LocalFileName: string)`
`class function SimplePost(const URL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP POST request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: Post ([813](#))

24.12.17 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Put

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP PUT request

Declaration:

```
procedure Put(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
procedure Put(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
procedure Put(const URL: string; const LocalFileName: string)
function Put(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP PUT request to upload or update data at the specified URL. The request body is taken from the `RequestBody` property.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: Post ([813](#)), Patch ([815](#))

24.12.18 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePut

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP PUT request

Declaration:

```
class procedure SimplePut(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
class procedure SimplePut(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
class procedure SimplePut(const URL: string;
                        const LocalFileName: string)
class function SimplePut(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP PUT request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: Put ([814](#))

24.12.19 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Delete

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP DELETE request

Declaration:

```
procedure Delete(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
procedure Delete(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
procedure Delete(const URL: string; const LocalFileName: string)
function Delete(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP DELETE request to delete a resource at the specified URL.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Get \(812\)](#), [Post \(813\)](#)

24.12.20 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleDelete

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP DELETE request

Declaration:

```
class procedure SimpleDelete(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
class procedure SimpleDelete(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
class procedure SimpleDelete(const URL: string;
                           const LocalFileName: string)
class function SimpleDelete(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP DELETE request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [Delete \(814\)](#)

24.12.21 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Patch

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP PATCH request

Declaration:

```
procedure Patch(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
procedure Patch(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
procedure Patch(const URL: string; const LocalFileName: string)
function Patch(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP PATCH request to partially update a resource at the specified URL. The request body is taken from the `RequestBody` property.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Put \(814\)](#), [Post \(813\)](#)

24.12.22 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimplePatch

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP PATCH request

Declaration:

```
class procedure SimplePatch(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)
class procedure SimplePatch(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)
class procedure SimplePatch(const URL: string;
                           const LocalFileName: string)
class function SimplePatch(const URL: string) : RawByteString
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP PATCH request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [Patch \(815\)](#)

24.12.23 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Options

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP OPTIONS request

Declaration: `procedure Options(const URL: string; const Response: TStream)`
`procedure Options(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)`
`procedure Options(const URL: string; const LocalFileName: string)`
`function Options(const URL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP OPTIONS request to query the supported methods and capabilities of a server or resource.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Head \(816\)](#)

24.12.24 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleOptions

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple HTTP OPTIONS request

Declaration: `class procedure SimpleOptions(const URL: string;`
`const Response: TStream)`
`class procedure SimpleOptions(const URL: string; Response: TStrings)`
`class procedure SimpleOptions(const URL: string;`
`const LocalFileName: string)`
`class function SimpleOptions(const URL: string) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple HTTP OPTIONS request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [Options \(816\)](#)

24.12.25 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Head

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP HEAD request

Declaration: `class procedure Head(AURL: string; Headers: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP HEAD request to retrieve only the headers for a resource without the body content. Useful for checking resource metadata, existence, or modification dates.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Get \(812\)](#)

24.12.26 TFPCustomHTTPClient.FormPost

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP POST request with form data

Declaration: `procedure FormPost(const URL: string; FormData: RawByteString;
 const Response: TStream)
 procedure FormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings;
 const Response: TStream)
 procedure FormPost(const URL: string; const FormData: string;
 const Response: TStrings)
 procedure FormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings;
 const Response: TStrings)
 function FormPost(const URL: string; const FormData: RawByteString)
 : RawByteString
 function FormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings) : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP POST request with form-encoded data. The form data is automatically encoded as application/x-www-form-urlencoded.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [Post \(813\)](#), [FileFormPost \(818\)](#)

24.12.27 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleFormPost

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple form POST request

Declaration: `class procedure SimpleFormPost(const URL: string;
 const FormData: RawByteString;
 const Response: TStream)
 class procedure SimpleFormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings;
 const Response: TStream)
 class procedure SimpleFormPost(const URL: string;
 const FormData: RawByteString;
 const Response: TStrings)
 class procedure SimpleFormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings;
 const Response: TStrings)
 class function SimpleFormPost(const URL: string;
 const FormData: RawByteString)
 : RawByteString
 class function SimpleFormPost(const URL: string; FormData: TStrings)
 : RawByteString`

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple form POST request without requiring an HTTP client instance.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [FormPost \(817\)](#)

24.12.28 TFPCustomHTTPClient.FileFormPost

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP POST request with file upload

Declaration:

```
procedure FileFormPost(const AURL: string; const AFieldName: string;
                      const AFileName: string; const Response: TStream)
procedure FileFormPost(const AURL: string; FormData: TStrings;
                      AFieldName: string; AFileName: string;
                      const Response: TStream)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP POST request with file upload using multipart/form-data encoding. This method allows uploading files as part of a form submission.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [FormPost \(817\)](#), [StreamFormPost \(818\)](#)

24.12.29 TFPCustomHTTPClient.StreamFormPost

Synopsis: Performs an HTTP form POST with stream upload

Declaration:

```
procedure StreamFormPost(const AURL: string; const AFieldName: string;
                       const AFileName: string;
                       const AStream: TStream; const Response: TStream)
procedure StreamFormPost(const AURL: string; FormData: TStrings;
                       const AFieldName: string;
                       const AFileName: string;
                       const AStream: TStream; const Response: TStream)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Performs an HTTP POST request with form data that includes a file uploaded from a stream. Uses multipart/form-data encoding for the upload.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors or invalid responses.

See also: [FileFormPost \(818\)](#), [FormPost \(817\)](#)

24.12.30 TFPCustomHTTPClient.SimpleFileFormPost

Synopsis: Static method to perform a simple file upload form POST

Declaration:

```
class procedure SimpleFileFormPost(const AURL: string;
                                   const AFieldName: string;
                                   const AFileName: string;
                                   const Response: TStream)
```

Visibility: public

Description: Static utility method for performing a simple file upload form POST request without requiring an HTTP client instance. Uses multipart/form-data encoding for the file upload.

Errors: May raise HTTP-related exceptions on connection errors.

See also: [FileFormPost \(818\)](#)

24.12.31 TFPCustomHTTPClient.Terminated

Synopsis: Indicates whether the HTTP operation has been terminated

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Returns `True` if the current HTTP operation has been terminated by calling `Terminate`. This can be used to check if an operation was cancelled.

See also: `Terminate` ([812](#))

24.13 TFPHTTPClient

24.13.1 Description

`TFPHTTPClient` is the complete HTTP client implementation that publishes all properties from `TFPCustomHTTPClient` ([809](#)). This class is intended for use in visual design environments and provides access to all HTTP client functionality through published properties.

See also: `TFPCustomHTTPClient` ([809](#))

24.13.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
826	AfterSocketHandlerCreate		Event called after socket handler creation
823	AllowRedirect		Whether to automatically follow HTTP redirects
820	Connected		Indicates whether a connection is currently active
821	ConnectTimeout		Timeout for connection establishment in milliseconds
823	Cookies		Cookie jar for automatic cookie management
822	HTTPVersion		The HTTP protocol version to use for requests
821	IOTimeout		Timeout for data transfer operations in milliseconds
820	KeepConnection		Whether to keep the connection alive between requests
824	MaxRedirects		Maximum number of redirects to follow automatically
825	OnDataReceived		Event called during data reception to track progress
825	OnGetSocketHandler		Event called to provide custom socket handlers
825	OnHeaders		Event called when response headers are received
825	OnPassword		Event called when authentication is required
824	OnRedirect		Event called when a redirect is encountered
826	OnVerifySSLCertificate		Event called for custom SSL certificate verification
824	Password		Password for HTTP authentication
826	Proxy		Proxy server configuration
822	RequestBody		The request body content for POST/PUT requests
821	RequestHeaders		HTTP headers to send with requests
822	ResponseHeaders		HTTP headers received from server responses
823	ResponseStatusCode		HTTP status code from the last response
823	ResponseStatusText		HTTP status text from the last response
822	ServerHTTPVersion		The HTTP protocol version used by the server in the last response
824	UserName		Username for HTTP authentication
826	VerifySSLCertificate		Whether to verify SSL certificates

24.13.3 TFPHttpClient.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Whether to keep the connection alive between requests

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: When set to `True`, the HTTP connection is kept open between requests to the same server. This can improve performance for multiple requests to the same host.

See also: [Connected \(820\)](#)

24.13.4 TFPHttpClient.Connected

Synopsis: Indicates whether a connection is currently active

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Returns `True` if there is currently an active connection to a server.

See also: `KeepConnection` ([820](#))

24.13.5 `TFPHTTPClient.IOTimeout`

Synopsis: Timeout for data transfer operations in milliseconds

Declaration: `Property IOTimeout :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Maximum time to wait for data transfer operations (reading/writing) before timing out. A value of 0 means no timeout.

See also: `ConnectTimeout` ([821](#))

24.13.6 `TFPHTTPClient.ConnectTimeout`

Synopsis: Timeout for connection establishment in milliseconds

Declaration: `Property ConnectTimeout :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Maximum time to wait when establishing a connection to a server before timing out. A value of 0 means no timeout.

See also: `IOTimeout` ([821](#))

24.13.7 `TFPHTTPClient.RequestHeaders`

Synopsis: HTTP headers to send with requests

Declaration: `Property RequestHeaders :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Collection of HTTP headers that will be sent with all requests. Common headers include Content-Type, User-Agent, Accept, etc.

See also: `ResponseHeaders` ([822](#))

24.13.8 TFPHTTPClient.RequestBody

Synopsis: The request body content for POST/PUT requests

Declaration: `Property RequestBody` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Contains the data that will be sent as the request body for POST, PUT, PATCH, and similar requests.
The content type should be set appropriately in `RequestHeaders`.

See also: `RequestHeaders` ([821](#))

24.13.9 TFPHTTPClient.ResponseHeaders

Synopsis: HTTP headers received from server responses

Declaration: `Property ResponseHeaders` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Collection of HTTP headers received from the server in the last response. This is populated after each request and contains server response metadata.

See also: `RequestHeaders` ([821](#)), `ResponseStatusCode` ([823](#))

24.13.10 TFPHTTPClient.HTTPVersion

Synopsis: The HTTP protocol version to use for requests

Declaration: `Property HTTPVersion` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Specifies which HTTP protocol version to use (e.g., '1.0', '1.1'). Defaults to HTTP/1.1.

See also: `ServerHTTPVersion` ([822](#))

24.13.11 TFPHTTPClient.ServerHTTPVersion

Synopsis: The HTTP protocol version used by the server in the last response

Declaration: `Property ServerHTTPVersion` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Contains the HTTP protocol version that the server used in its last response.

See also: `HTTPVersion` ([822](#))

24.13.12 TFPHTTPClient.ResponseStatusCode

Synopsis: HTTP status code from the last response

Declaration: `Property ResponseStatusCode` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: The HTTP status code returned by the server for the last request. Common values include 200 (OK), 404 (Not Found), 500 (Internal Server Error), etc.

See also: `ResponseStatusText` ([823](#)), `ResponseHeaders` ([822](#))

24.13.13 TFPHTTPClient.ResponseStatusText

Synopsis: HTTP status text from the last response

Declaration: `Property ResponseStatusText` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: The HTTP status text (reason phrase) returned by the server for the last request. For example, 'OK' for status code 200, 'Not Found' for 404, etc.

See also: `ResponseStatusCode` ([823](#))

24.13.14 TFPHTTPClient.Cookies

Synopsis: Cookie jar for automatic cookie management

Declaration: `Property Cookies` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Cookie jar that automatically manages cookies between requests. Cookies received from servers are stored and automatically sent with subsequent requests to the same domain.

See also: `RequestCookies` ([819](#)), `ResponseCookies` ([819](#))

24.13.15 TFPHTTPClient.AllowRedirect

Synopsis: Whether to automatically follow HTTP redirects

Declaration: `Property AllowRedirect` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: When set to `True`, the client will automatically follow HTTP redirects (3xx status codes). When `False`, redirects must be handled manually.

See also: `MaxRedirects` ([824](#)), `OnRedirect` ([824](#))

24.13.16 TFPHTTPClient.MaxRedirects

Synopsis: Maximum number of redirects to follow automatically

Declaration: `Property MaxRedirects :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Maximum number of HTTP redirects to follow automatically before giving up. Defaults to `DefMaxRedirects` (808) (16).

See also: `AllowRedirect` (823), `DefMaxRedirects` (808)

24.13.17 TFPHTTPClient.OnRedirect

Synopsis: Event called when a redirect is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnRedirect :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when an HTTP redirect response is received. The event handler can modify the destination URL or prevent the redirect.

See also: `TRedirectEvent` (808), `AllowRedirect` (823)

24.13.18 TFPHTTPClient.UserName

Synopsis: Username for HTTP authentication

Declaration: `Property UserName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Username to use for HTTP Basic Authentication when the server requires credentials.

See also: `Password` (824), `OnPassword` (825)

24.13.19 TFPHTTPClient.Password

Synopsis: Password for HTTP authentication

Declaration: `Property Password :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Password to use for HTTP Basic Authentication when the server requires credentials.

See also: `UserName` (824), `OnPassword` (825)

24.13.20 TFPHTTPClient.OnPassword

Synopsis: Event called when authentication is required

Declaration: `Property OnPassword :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when the server requests authentication. The event handler can provide credentials and indicate whether to retry the request.

See also: [TPasswordEvent \(808\)](#), [UserName \(824\)](#), [Password \(824\)](#)

24.13.21 TFPHTTPClient.OnDataReceived

Synopsis: Event called during data reception to track progress

Declaration: `Property OnDataReceived :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered periodically during data reception to provide progress information. Useful for showing download progress to users.

See also: [TDataEvent \(808\)](#), [OnDataSent \(819\)](#)

24.13.22 TFPHTTPClient.OnHeaders

Synopsis: Event called when response headers are received

Declaration: `Property OnHeaders :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when HTTP response headers have been received but before the response body is read. Useful for examining headers before processing the response content.

See also: [ResponseHeaders \(822\)](#)

24.13.23 TFPHTTPClient.OnGetSocketHandler

Synopsis: Event called to provide custom socket handlers

Declaration: `Property OnGetSocketHandler :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when a socket handler is needed, allowing the application to provide custom socket implementations. This enables the use of custom SSL implementations or socket configurations.

See also: [TGetSocketHandlerEvent \(808\)](#)

24.13.24 TFPHTTPClient.Proxy

Synopsis: Proxy server configuration

Declaration: `Property Proxy` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Configuration for proxy server connections. When configured, all HTTP requests will be routed through the specified proxy server.

See also: `TProxyData` ([827](#))

24.13.25 TFPHTTPClient.VerifySSLCertificate

Synopsis: Whether to verify SSL certificates

Declaration: `Property VerifySSLCertificate` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: When set to `True`, SSL certificates are verified against trusted certificate authorities. When `False`, SSL certificate verification is disabled (less secure).

See also: `OnVerifySSLCertificate` ([826](#)), `CertCAFileName` ([819](#))

24.13.26 TFPHTTPClient.AfterSocketHandlerCreate

Synopsis: Event called after socket handler creation

Declaration: `Property AfterSocketHandlerCreate` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered after a socket handler has been created, allowing additional configuration of the handler.

See also: `TSocketHandlerCreatedEvent` ([809](#)), `OnGetSocketHandler` ([825](#))

24.13.27 TFPHTTPClient.OnVerifySSLCertificate

Synopsis: Event called for custom SSL certificate verification

Declaration: `Property OnVerifySSLCertificate` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered during SSL certificate verification, allowing custom certificate validation logic. The event handler can accept or reject certificates based on custom criteria.

See also: `THTTPVerifyCertificateEvent` ([808](#)), `VerifySSLCertificate` ([826](#))

24.14 TProxyData

24.14.1 Description

TProxyData stores proxy server configuration including host, port, and authentication credentials. It is used by the HTTP client to route requests through proxy servers.

See also: TFPHTTPClient.Proxy ([826](#))

24.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
827	Assign	Assigns proxy settings from another object

24.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
827	Host	rw	Proxy server hostname or IP address
828	Password	rw	Password for proxy authentication
827	Port	rw	Proxy server port number
828	UserName	rw	Username for proxy authentication

24.14.4 TProxyData.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns proxy settings from another object

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Copies proxy configuration from another TProxyData instance.

24.14.5 TProxyData.Host

Synopsis: Proxy server hostname or IP address

Declaration: `Property Host : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The hostname or IP address of the proxy server to use for HTTP requests.

See also: Port ([827](#))

24.14.6 TProxyData.Port

Synopsis: Proxy server port number

Declaration: `Property Port : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The port number to connect to on the proxy server.

See also: Host ([827](#))

24.14.7 TProxyData.UserName

Synopsis: Username for proxy authentication

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Username to use for proxy server authentication if required.

See also: Password ([828](#))

24.14.8 TProxyData.Password

Synopsis: Password for proxy authentication

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Password to use for proxy server authentication if required.

See also: UserName ([828](#))

Chapter 25

Reference for unit 'fpjson'

25.1 Used units

Table 25.1: Used units by unit 'fpjson'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contnrs	284
System	??
sysutils	??
Variants	??

25.2 Overview

The JSON unit implements JSON support for Free Pascal. It contains the data structures (`TJSONData` ([853](#)) and descendent objects) to treat JSON data and output JSON as a string `TJSONData.AsJSON` ([862](#)). The generated JSON can be formatted in several ways `TJSONData.FormatJSON` ([858](#)).

Using the JSON data structures is simple. Instantiate an appropriate descendent of `TJSONData`, set the data and call `AsJSON`. The following JSON data types are supported:

Numbers in one of `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#)) or `TJSONInt64Number` ([864](#)), depending on the type of the number.

Strings in `TJSONString` ([880](#)).

Boolean in `TJSONBoolean` ([852](#)).

null is supported using `TJSONNull` ([866](#))

Array is supported using `TJSONArray` ([842](#))

Object is supported using `TJSONObject` ([868](#))

The constructors of these objects allow to set the value, making them very easy to use. The memory management is automatic in the sense that arrays and objects own their values, and when the array or object is freed, all data in it is freed as well.

Typical use would be:

```

Var
  O : TJSONObject;

begin
  O:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',44,
                        'Firstname','Michael',
                        'Lastname','Van Canneyt']);

  Writeln(O.AsJSON);
  Write('Welcome ',O.Strings['Firstname'],' ');
  Writeln(O.Get('Lastname','')); // empty default.
  Writeln(', your current age is ',O.Integers('Age'));
  O.Free;
end;

```

The `TJSONArray` and `TJSONObject` classes offer methods to examine, get and set the various members and search through the various members.

Currently the JSON support only allows the use of UTF-8 data.

Parsing incoming JSON and constructing the JSON data structures is not implemented in the `fpJSON` unit. For this, the `jsonscanner` unit must be included in the program unit clause. This sets several callback hooks (using `SetJSONParserHandler` (839) and then the `GetJSON` (837) function can then be used to transform a string or stream to JSON data structures:

```

uses fpjson, jsonparser;

Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=GetJSON('{ "Children" : ['+
             '  { "Age" : 23, '+
             '    "Names" : { "LastName" : "Rodriquez",'+
             '                  "FirstName" : "Roberto" }},'+
             '  { "Age" : 20, '+
             '    "Names" : { "LastName" : "Rodriquez",'+
             '                  "FirstName" : "Maria" }},'+
             '  ]}');
  E:=D.FindPath('Children[1].Names.FirstName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
  D.Free;
end.

```

will print "Maria".

The `FPJSON` code does not use hardcoded class names when creating the JSON: it uses the various `CreateJSON` (836) functions to create the data. These functions use a registry of classes, so it is possible to create descendents of the classes in the `fpjson` unit and have these used for construction of JSON Data structures. The `GetJSONInstanceType` (838) and `SetJSONInstanceType` (839) functions can be used to get or set the classes that must be used. the default parser used by `GetJSON` (837) will also use these functions.

25.3 Constants, types and variables

25.3.1 Constants

`ActualValueJSONTypes = ValueJSONTypes - [jtNull]`

`ActualValueJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that have a non-null single value, i.e., all types except array or object or null.

`AsCompactJSON = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject, foskipWhiteSpace, foDoNotQuoteMembers]`

`AsCompressedJSON` can be used to let `FormatJSON` (858) behave as `TJSONData.AsJSON` (862) with `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` equal to `True` and `TJSONData.UnquotedMemberNames` equal to `True`.

`AsCompressedJSON = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject, foskipWhiteSpace]`

`AsCompressedJSON` can be used to let `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (858) behave as `TJSONData.AsJSON` (862) with `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` (858) equal to `True`

`AsJSONFormat = [foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject]`

`AsJSONFormat` contains the options that make `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (858) behave like `TJSONData.AsJSON` (862)

`DefaultFormat = []`

`DefaultFormat` contains the default formatting options used in formatted JSON.

`DefaultIndentSize = 2`

`DefaultIndentSize` is the default indent size used in formatted JSON.

`jitNumberLargeInt = jitNumberInt64`

LargeInt type definition.

`StructuredJSONTypes = [jtArray, jtObject]`

`StructuredJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that contain multiple values: array or object.

`ValueJSONTypes = [jtNumber, jtString, jtBoolean, jtNull]`

`ValueJSONTypes` is a set constant designating the JSON types that have a single value, i.e., all types except array or object.

25.3.2 Types

PJSONCharType = ^TJSONCharType

PJSONCharType is a pointer to a TJSONCharType (833) character. It is used while parsing JSON.

```
TFormatOption = (foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject,
  foDoNotQuoteMembers, foUseTabchar, foSkipWhiteSpace,
  foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading, foForceLF, foFormatFloat)
```

Table 25.2: Enumeration values for type TFormatOption

Value	Explanation
foDoNotQuoteMembers	Do not use quote characters around object member names.
foForceLF	
foFormatFloat	
foSingleLineArray	Keep all array elements on a single line.
foSingleLineObject	Keep all object elements on a single line.
foSkipWhiteSpace	Skip whitespace.
foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading	Only skip leading whitespace when formatting JSON.
foUseTabchar	Use the tabulator character for indents.

TFormatOption enumerates the various formatting options that can be used in the TJSONData.FormatJSON (858) function.

```
TFormatOptions = Set of TFormatOption = (foDoNotQuoteMembers, foForceLF
  , foFormatFloat,
  foSingleLineArray, foSingleLineObject
  , foSkipWhiteSpace,
  foSkipWhiteSpaceOnlyLeading, foUseTabchar
  )
```

TFormatOptions is the set definition used to specify options in TJSONData.FormatJSON (858).

TFPJSStream = TMemoryStream

TFPJSStream resolves to a stream on native platforms, TJSArrary in javascript runtimes.

TJSONArrayClass = class of TJSONArray

TJSONArray is the class type for the TJSONArray (842) class. It is used in CreateJSONArray (837).

```
TJSONArrayIterator = procedure(Item: TJSONData; Data: TObject;
  var Continue: Boolean) of object
```

TJSONArrayIterator is the procedural callback used by TJSONArray.Iterate (844) to iterate over the values. Item is the current item in the iteration. Data is the data passed on when calling Iterate. The Continue parameter can be set to false to stop the iteration loop.

TJSONBooleanClass = class of TJSONBoolean

TJSONBooleanClass is the class type of TJSONBoolean (852). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONCharType = AnsiChar
```

TJSONCharType is the type of a single character in a TJSONStringType (835) string. It is used by the parser.

```
TJSONDataClass = class of TJSONData
```

TJSONDataClass is used in the CreateJSON (836), SetJSONInstanceType (839) and GetJSONInstanceType (838) functions to set the actual classes used when creating JSON data.

```
TJSONEnum = record
public
  Key : TJSONStringType;
  KeyNum : Integer
;
  Value : TJSONData;
end
```

TJSONEnum is the loop variable type to use when implementing a JSON enumerator (for in). It contains 3 elements which are available in the loop: key, keynum (numerical key) and the actual value (TJSONData).

```
TJSONFloat = Double
```

TJSONFloat is the floating point type used in the JSON support. It is currently a double, but this can be changed easily.

```
TJSONFloatNumberClass = class of TJSONFloatNumber
```

TJSONFloatNumberClass is the class type of TJSONFloatNumber (863). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONInstanceType = (jitUnknown, jitNumberInteger, jitNumberInt64,
  jitNumberQWord, jitNumberFloat, jitString, jitBoolean
,
  jitNull, jitArray, jitObject)
```

Table 25.3: Enumeration values for type TJSONInstanceType

Value	Explanation
jitArray	Array value.
jitBoolean	Boolean value.
jitNull	Null value.
jitNumberFloat	Floating point real number value.
jitNumberInt64	64-bit signed integer number value.
jitNumberInteger	32-bit signed integer number value.
jitNumberQWord	Qword integer number type.
jitObject	Object value.
jitString	String value.
jitUnknown	Unknown.

`TJSONInstanceType` is used by the parser to determine what kind of `TJSONData` (853) descendent to create for a particular data item. It is a more fine-grained division than `TJSONType` (835)

```
TJSONInt64NumberClass = class of TJSONInt64Number
```

`TJSONInt64NumberClass` is the class type of `TJSONInt64Number` (864). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONIntegerNumberClass = class of TJSONIntegerNumber
```

`TJSONIntegerNumberClass` is the class type of `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONLargeInt = Int64
```

`TJSONLargeInt` resolves to the largest possible integer type for the current platform. This is `NativeInt` for `Pas2JS` and `Int64` for all other platforms.

```
TJSONLargeIntNumber = TJSONInt64Number
```

This class is instantiated when a `TJSONLargeInt` must be represented.

```
TJSONLargeIntNumberClass = TJSONInt64NumberClass
```

`TJSONLargeIntNumberClass` is the Class reference for `TJSONLargeIntNumber` (834)

```
TJSONNullClass = class of TJSONNull
```

`TJSONNullClass` is the class type of `TJSONNull` (866). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONNumberType = (ntFloat, ntInteger, ntInt64, ntQWord)
```

Table 25.4: Enumeration values for type `TJSONNumberType`

Value	Explanation
<code>ntFloat</code>	Floating point value.
<code>ntInt64</code>	64-bit integer value.
<code>ntInteger</code>	32-bit Integer value.
<code>ntQWord</code>	64-bit unsigned integer value.

`TJSONNumberType` is used to enumerate the different kind of numerical types: JSON only has a single 'number' format. Depending on how the value was parsed, FPC tries to create a value that is as close to the original value as possible: this can be one of integer, `int64` or `TJSONFloatType` (normally a double). The number types have a common ancestor, and they are distinguished by their `TJSONNumber.NumberType` (868) value.

```
TJSONObjectClass = class of TJSONObject
```

`TJSONObject` is the class type for the `TJSONObject` (868) class. It is used in `CreateJSONObject` (837).

```
TJSONObjectIterator = procedure(const AName: TJJSONStringType;
  Item: TJJSONData; Data: TObject;
  var Continue: Boolean) of object
```

TJSONObjectIterator is the procedural callback used by TJJSONObject.Iterate (871) to iterate over the values. Item is the current item in the iteration, and AName it's name. Data is the data passed on when calling Iterate. The Continue parameter can be set to false to stop the iteration loop.

```
TJSONParserHandler = procedure(AStream: TStream;
  const AUseUTF8: Boolean;
  out Data: TJJSONData)
```

TJSONParserHandler is a callback prototype used by the GetJSON (837) function to do the actual parsing. It has 2 arguments: AStream, which is the stream containing the JSON that must be parsed, and AUseUTF8, which indicates whether the (ansi) strings contain UTF-8.

The result should be returned in Data.

The parser is expected to use the JSON class types registered using the SetJSONInstanceType (839) method, the actual types can be retrieved with GetJSONInstanceType (838)

```
TJSONQWordNumberClass = class of TJJSONQWordNumber
```

TJSONQwordNumberClass is the class type of TJJSONQWordNumber (879). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONStringClass = class of TJJSONString
```

TJSONStringClass is the class type of TJJSONString (880). It is used in the factory methods.

```
TJSONStringParserHandler = procedure(const aJSON: TJJSONStringType
  ;
  const AUseUTF8: Boolean;
  out Data: TJJSONData)
```

TJSONStringParserHandler is the prototype for the handler to convert a JSON string to a TJJSONData (853). It is used in the SetJSONStringParserHandler (840) and GetJSONStringParserHandler (838) calls.

```
TJSONStringType = UTF8String
```

TJSONFloat is the string point type used in the JSON support. It is currently an ansistring, but this can be changed easily. Unicode characters can be encoded with UTF-8.

```
TJSONtype = (jtUnknown, jtNumber, jtString, jtBoolean, jtNull, jtArray
  ,
  jtObject)
```

Table 25.5: Enumeration values for type TJSONtype

Value	Explanation
jtArray	Array data (integer index, elements can be any type).
jtBoolean	Boolean data.
jtNull	Null data.
jtNumber	Numerical type. This can be integer (32/64 bit) or float.
jtObject	Object data (named index, elements can be any type).
jtString	String data type.
jtUnknown	Unknown JSON data type.

TJSONtype determines the type of JSON data a particular object contains. The class function TJSONData.TJSONtype (854) returns this type, and indicates what kind of data that particular descendent contains. The values correspond to the original data types in the JSON specification. The TJSONData object itself returns the unknown value.

TJSONUnicodeStringType = Unicodestring

TJSONUnicodeStringType is an alias used wherever a Unicode (double byte) string is used in the fpJSON code, in particular the TJSONData.AsUnicodeString (860) property.

TJSONVariant = variant

TJSONVariant resolves to Variant on native platforms, JSValue in javascript runtimes.

25.4 Procedures and functions

25.4.1 CreateJSON

Synopsis: Create a JSON data item.

Declaration: `function CreateJSON : TJSONNull`
`function CreateJSON(Data: Boolean) : TJSONBoolean`
`function CreateJSON(Data: Integer) : TJSONIntegerNumber`
`function CreateJSON(Data: Int64) : TJSONInt64Number`
`function CreateJSON(Data: QWord) : TJSONQWordNumber`
`function CreateJSON(Data: TJSONFloat) : TJSONFloatNumber`
`function CreateJSON(const Data: TJSONStringType) : TJSONString`
`function CreateJSON(const Data: TJSONUnicodeStringType) : TJSONString`

Visibility: default

Description: CreateJSON will create a JSON Data item depending on the type of data passed to it, and will use the classes returned by GetJSONInstanceType (838) to do so. The classes to be used can be set using the SetJSONInstanceType (839).

The JSON parser uses these functions to create instances of TJSONData (853).

Errors: None.

See also: GetJSONInstanceType (838), SetJSONInstanceType (839), GetJSON (837), CreateJSONArray (837), CreateJSONObject (837)

25.4.2 CreateJSONArray

Synopsis: Create a JSON array.

Declaration: `function CreateJSONArray(const Data: Array of const) : TJSONArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateJSONArray` retrieves the class registered to represent JSON array data, and creates an instance of this class, passing `Data` to the constructor. For the `Data` array the same type conversion rules as for the constructor apply.

Errors: if one of the elements in `Data` cannot be converted to a JSON structure, an exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (838), `SetJSONInstanceType` (839), `GetJSON` (837), `CreateJSON` (836), `TJSONArray` (842)

25.4.3 CreateJSONObject

Synopsis: Create a JSON object.

Declaration: `function CreateJSONObject : TJSONObject`
`function CreateJSONObject(const Data: Array of const) : TJSONObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateJSONObject` retrieves the class registered to represent JSON object data, and creates an instance of this class, passing `Data` to the constructor. For the `Data` array the same type conversion rules as for the `TJSONObject.Create` (869) constructor apply.

Errors: if one of the elements in `Data` cannot be converted to a JSON structure, an exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (838), `SetJSONInstanceType` (839), `GetJSON` (837), `CreateJSON` (836), `TJSONObject` (868)

25.4.4 GetJSON

Synopsis: Convert JSON string to JSON data structure.

Declaration: `function GetJSON(const JSON: TJSONStringType;`
`const UseUTF8: Boolean=True) : TJSONData`
`function GetJSON(const JSON: TStream; const UseUTF8: Boolean=True)`
`: TJSONData`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSON` will read the `JSON` argument (a string or stream that contains a valid JSON data representation) and converts it to native JSON objects. The stream must be positioned on the start of the JSON.

The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser. The `jsonparser` unit does contain a JSON parser, and must be included once in the project to be able to parse JSON. The `jsonparser` unit uses the `SetJSONParserHandler` (839) call to set a callback that is used by `GetJSON` to parse the data.

If `UseUTF8` is set to true, then Unicode characters will be encoded as UTF-8. Otherwise, they are converted to the nearest matching ansi character.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the JSON data stream does not contain valid JSON data.

See also: `GetJSONParserHandler` (838), `SetJSONParserHandler` (839), `TJSONData` (853)

25.4.5 GetJSONInstanceType

Synopsis: JSON factory: Get the JSONData class types to use.

Declaration: `function GetJSONInstanceType(AType: TJSONInstanceType) : TJSONDataClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONInstanceType` can be used to retrieve the registered descendents of the `TJSONData` (853) class, one for each possible kind of data. The result is the class type used to instantiate data of type `AType`.

The JSON parser and the `CreateJSON` (836) function will use the registered types to instantiate JSON Data. When the parser encounters a value of type `AType`, it will instantiate a class of the type returned by this function. By default, the classes in the `fpJSON` unit are returned.

See also: `CreateJSON` (836), `TJSONData` (853), `GetJSON` (837)

25.4.6 GetJSONParserHandler

Synopsis: Get the current JSON parser handler.

Declaration: `function GetJSONParserHandler : TJSONParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONParserHandler` can be used to get the current value of the JSON parser handler callback.

The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser in itself: it contains simply the data structure and the ability to write JSON. The parsing must be done using a separate unit.

See also: `SetJSONParserHandler` (839), `GetJSONStringParserHandler` (838), `TJSONParserHandler` (835), `GetJSON` (837)

25.4.7 GetJSONStringParserHandler

Synopsis: return the current JSON string to JSON Data conversion callback.

Declaration: `function GetJSONStringParserHandler : TJJSONStringParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetJSONStringParserHandler` returns the handler installed by the last `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (840) call.

See also: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (840), `SetJSONParserHandler` (839), `GetJSONParserHandler` (838)

25.4.8 JSONStringToString

Synopsis: Convert a JSON-escaped string to a string.

Declaration: `function JSONStringToString(const S: TJJSONStringType) : TJJSONStringType`
`function JSONStringToString(const S: UnicodeString) : TJJSONStringType`

Visibility: default

Description: `JSONStringToString` examines the string `S` and replaces any special characters by an escaped string, as in the JSON specification. The following escaped characters are recognized:

```
\\ \" \/ \b \t \n \f \r \u000X
```

See also: [StringToJSONString \(840\)](#), [JSONTypeName \(839\)](#)

25.4.9 JSONTypeName

Synopsis: Convert a JSON type to a string.

Declaration: `function JSONTypeName (JSONType: TJSONType) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `JSONTypeName` converts the `JSONType` to a string that describes the type of JSON value.

See also: [StringToJSONString \(840\)](#), [JSONStringToString \(838\)](#)

25.4.10 SetJSONInstanceType

Synopsis: JSON factory: Set the JSONData class types to use.

Declaration: `function SetJSONInstanceType (AType: TJSONInstanceType;
AClass: TJSONDataClass) : TJSONDataClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONInstanceType` can be used to register descendents of the `TJSONData (853)` class, one for each possible kind of data. The class type used to instantiate data of type `AType` is passed in `AClass`.

The JSON parser will use the registered types to instantiate JSON Data instanced: when the parser encounters a value of type `AType`, it will instantiate a class of type `AClass`. By default, the classes in the `fpJSON` unit are used.

The `CreateJSON (836)` functions also use the types registered here to instantiate their data.

The return value is the previously registered instance type for the `AType`.

Errors: If `AClass` is not suitable to contain data of type `AType`, an exception is raised.

See also: [GetJSONInstanceType \(838\)](#), [CreateJSON \(836\)](#)

25.4.11 SetJSONParserHandler

Synopsis: Set the JSON parser handler.

Declaration: `function SetJSONParserHandler (AHandler: TJSONParserHandler)
: TJSONParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONParserHandler` can be used to set the JSON parser handler callback. The `fpJSON` unit does not contain a JSON parser in itself: it contains simply the data structure and the ability to write JSON. The parsing must be done using a separate unit, and is invoked through a callback. `SetJSONParserHandler` must be used to set this callback.

The `jsonparser` unit does contain a JSON parser, and must be included once in the project to be able to parse JSON. The `jsonparser` unit uses the `SetJSONParserHandler` call to set the callback that is used by `GetJSON` to parse the data. This is done once at the initialization of that unit, so it is sufficient to include the unit in the `uses` clause of the program.

The function returns the previously registered callback.

This handler uses a stream as input. For speed reasons you can also register handler that converts a string to JSON data. This is done with the `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (840) call.

See also: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` (840), `GetJSONParserHandler` (838), `TJSONParserHandler` (835), `GetJSON` (837)

25.4.12 SetJSONStringParserHandler

Synopsis: Install a JSON string to JSON Data conversion callback.

Declaration: `function SetJSONStringParserHandler(AHandler: TJSONStringParserHandler)
: TJSONStringParserHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJSONStringParserHandler` has the same functionality as `SetJSONParserHandler` (839).

It sets a callback that will be used by the `GetJSON` (837) call to convert a string value to JSON data. If no such callback is installed, the string will be converted to a stream, and the handler set by `SetJSONParserHandler` (839) will be used instead. Setting this handler prevents a conversion from a string to a stream.

The function returns the previously installed handler, if any.

See also: `GetJSONStringParserHandler` (838), `SetJSONParserHandler` (839), `GetJSONParserHandler` (838)

25.4.13 StringToJSONString

Synopsis: Convert a string to a JSON-escaped string.

Declaration: `function StringToJSONString(const S: TJSONStringType;
Strict: Boolean=False) : TJSONStringType
function StringToJSONString(const S: UnicodeString;
Strict: Boolean=False) : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToJSONString` examines the string `S` and replaces any special characters by an escaped string, as in the JSON specification. The following characters are escaped:

`\ " #8 #9 #10 #12 #13.`

`Strict` indicates that only the absolutely necessary characters will be escaped (when set to `True`) when converging string values to JSON. If set to `False` will also be escaped, although this is strictly speaking not necessary.

See also: `JSONStringToString` (838), `JSONTypeName` (839)

25.5 EJSON

25.5.1 Description

`EJSON` is the exception raised by the JSON implementation to report JSON error.

25.6 TBaseJSONEnumerator

25.6.1 Description

`TBaseJSONEnumerator` is the base type for the JSON enumerators. It should not be used directly, instead use the enumerator support of Object pascal to loop over values in JSON data.

The value of the `TBaseJSONEnumerator` enumerator is a record that describes the key and value of a JSON value. The key can be string-based (for records) or numerical (for arrays).

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([833](#))

25.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
841	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Return the current value of the enumerator.
841	<code>MoveNext</code>	Move to next value in array/object.

25.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
841	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Return the current value of the enumerator.

25.6.4 TBaseJSONEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Return the current value of the enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TJSONEnum; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current value of the enumerator. This is a `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)) value.

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([833](#))

25.6.5 TBaseJSONEnumerator.MoveNext

Synopsis: Move to next value in array/object.

Declaration: `function MoveNext : Boolean; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `MoveNext` attempts to move to the next value. This will return `True` if the move was successful, or `False` if not. When `True` is returned, then

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)), `TJSONData` ([853](#))

25.6.6 TBaseJSONEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Return the current value of the enumerator.

Declaration: `Property Current : TJSONEnum`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `Current` returns the current enumerator value of type `TJSEnum` (833). It is only valid after `MoveNext` (841) returned `True`.

See also: `TJSEnum` (833), `TJSEData` (853), `MoveNext` (841)

25.7 TJSEArray

25.7.1 Description

`TJSEArrayClass` is the class type of `TJSEArray` (842). It is used in the factory methods.

See also: `TJSEArray` (842), `SetJSONInstanceType` (839), `GetJSONInstanceType` (838)

25.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
845	Add	Add a JSON value to the array.
844	Clear	Clear the array.
843	Clone	Clone the JSON array.
843	Create	Create a new instance of JSON array data.
845	Delete	Delete an element from the list by index.
843	Destroy	Free the JSON array.
845	Exchange	Exchange 2 elements in the list.
846	Extract	Extract an element from the array.
844	GetEnumerator	Get an array enumerator.
844	IndexOf	Return index of <code>TJSEData</code> instance in array.
846	Insert	Insert an element in the array.
844	Iterate	Iterate over all elements in the array.
843	JSONType	native JSON data type.
846	Move	Move a value from one location to another.
847	Remove	Remove an element from the list.
847	Sort	Sort the items in the array.

25.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
851	Arrays	rw	Get or set elements as JSON array values.
851	Booleans	rw	Get or set elements as boolean values.
850	Floats	rw	Get or set elements as floating-point numerical values.
848	Int64s	rw	Get or set elements as Int64 values.
848	Integers	rw	Get or set elements as integer values.
847	Items		Indexed access to the values in the array.
849	LargeInts	rw	Get or set elements as <code>LargeInt</code> values.
848	Nulls	r	Check which elements are null.
851	Objects	rw	Get or set elements as JSON object values.
849	QWords	rw	Get or set elements as <code>QWord</code> values.
850	Strings	rw	Get or set elements as string values.
847	Types	r	JSON types of elements in the array.
849	UnicodeStrings	rw	Get or set elements as Unicode string values.

25.7.4 TJSONArray.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of JSON array data.

Declaration: `constructor Create; reintroduce; overload`
`constructor Create(const Elements: Array of const); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new JSON array instance, and initializes the data with `Elements`. The elements are converted to various `TJSONData` (853) instances, instances of `TJSONData` are inserted in the array as-is.

The data type of the inserted objects is determined from the type of data passed to it, with a natural mapping. A `Nil` pointer will be inserted as a `TJSONNull` value.

Errors: If an invalid class or not recognized data type (pointer) is inserted in the elements array, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `GetJSONInstanceType` (838)

25.7.5 TJSONArray.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the JSON array.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will delete all elements in the array and clean up the `TJSONArray` (842) instance.

See also: `TJSONArray.Clear` (844), `TJSONArray.Create` (843)

25.7.6 TJSONArray.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONArray` to return `jtArray`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` (854)

25.7.7 TJSONArray.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the JSON array.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` creates a new `TJSONArray`, clones all elements in the array and adds them to the newly created array in the same order as they are in the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (858)

25.7.8 TJSONArray.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over all elements in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONArrayIterator; Data: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the array, passing them one by one to the `Iterator` callback, together with the `Data` parameter. The iteration stops when all elements have been passed or when the iterator callback returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

See also: `TJSONArrayIterator` ([832](#))

25.7.9 TJSONArray.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of `JSONData` instance in array.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(obj: TJSONData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` compares all elements in the array with `Obj` and returns the index of the element instance that equals `Obj`. The actual instances are compared, not the JSON value. If none of the elements match, the function returns -1.

See also: `Clear` ([844](#))

25.7.10 TJSONArray.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an array enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is overridden in `TJSONArray` so it returns an array enumerator. The array enumerator will return all the elements in the array, and stores their index in the `KeyNum` member of `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)).

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)), `TJSONData.GetEnumerator` ([855](#))

25.7.11 TJSONArray.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the array.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` clears the array and frees all elements in it. After the call to clear, `Count` ([859](#)) returns 0.

See also: `Delete` ([845](#)), `Extract` ([846](#))

25.7.12 TJSONArray.Add

Synopsis: Add a JSON value to the array.

Declaration: `function Add(Item: TJSONData) : Integer`
`function Add(I: Integer) : Integer`
`function Add(I: Int64) : Int64`
`function Add(I: QWord) : QWord`
`function Add(const S: UnicodeString) : Integer`
`function Add(const S: TJJSONStringType) : Integer`
`function Add : Integer`
`function Add(F: TJSONFloat) : Integer`
`function Add(B: Boolean) : Integer`
`function Add(AnArray: TJSONArray) : Integer`
`function Add(AnObject: TJSONObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` adds the value passed on to the array. If it is a plain pascal value, it is converted to an appropriate `TJSONData` (853) instance. If a `TJSONData` instance is passed, it is simply added to the array. Note that the instance will be owned by the array, and destroyed when the array is cleared (this is in particular true is an JSON array or object).

The function returns the `TJSONData` instance that was added to the array.

See also: `Delete` (845), `Extract` (846)

25.7.13 TJSONArray.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list by index.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the element with given `Index` from the list. The `TJSONData` (853) element is freed.

Errors: If an invalid index is passed, an exception is raised.

See also: `Clear` (844), `Add` (845), `Extract` (846), `Exchange` (845)

25.7.14 TJSONArray.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchange 2 elements in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Exchange` exchanges 2 elements at locations `Index1` and `Index2` in the list. This is more efficient than manually extracting and adding the elements to the list.

Errors: If an invalid index (for either element) is passed, an exception is raised.

25.7.15 TJSONArray.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an element from the array.

Declaration: `function Extract (Item: TJSONData) : TJSONData`
`function Extract (Index: Integer) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` removes the element at position `Index` or the indicated element from the list, just as `Delete` (845) does. In difference with `Delete`, it does not free the object instance. Instead, it returns the extracted element.

See also: `Delete` (845), `Clear` (844), `Insert` (846), `Add` (845)

25.7.16 TJSONArray.Insert

Synopsis: Insert an element in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Insert (Index: Integer)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; Item: TJSONData)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; I: Integer)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; I: Int64)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; I: QWord)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; const S: UnicodeString)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; const S: TJSONStringType)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; F: TJSONFloat)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; B: Boolean)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AnArray: TJSONArray)`
`procedure Insert (Index: Integer; AnObject: TJSONObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` adds a value or element to the array at position `Index`. Elements with index equal to or larger than `Index` are shifted. Like `Add` (845), it converts plain pascal values to JSON values.

Note that when inserting a `TJSONData` (853) instance to the array, it is owned by the array. `Index` must be a value between 0 and `Count-1`.

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `Add` (845), `Delete` (845), `Extract` (846), `Clear` (844)

25.7.17 TJSONArray.Move

Synopsis: Move a value from one location to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move (CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the element at index `CurIndex` to the position `NewIndex`. It will shift the elements in between as needed. This operation is more efficient than extracting and inserting the element manually.

See also: `Exchange` (845), `Extract` (846), `Insert` (846)

25.7.18 TJSONArray.Remove

Synopsis: Remove an element from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove (Item: TJSONData)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes `item` from the array, if it is in the array. The object pointer is checked for presence in the array, not the JSON values. Note that the element is freed if it was in the array and is removed.

See also: [Delete \(845\)](#), [Extract \(846\)](#)

25.7.19 TJSONArray.Sort

Synopsis: Sort the items in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Sort (Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Sort` can be used to perform a sort in an array. The array does not compare elements, for this the `Compare` callback must be used, to compare 2 elements from the array.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TListSortCompare` (??)

25.7.20 TJSONArray.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the values in the array.

Declaration: `Property Items : ; default`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `Items` is introduced in `TJSONData.Items` ([859](#)). `TJSONArray` simply declares it as the default property.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` ([859](#))

25.7.21 TJSONArray.Types

Synopsis: JSON types of elements in the array.

Declaration: `Property Types[Index: Integer]: TJSONType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Types` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.JSONType` ([854](#)) result of the elements in the array. Accessing it is equivalent to accessing

`Items[Index].JSONType`

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([854](#)), `TJSONData.Items` ([859](#))

25.7.22 TJSONArray.Nulls

Synopsis: Check which elements are null.

Declaration: `Property Nulls[Index: Integer]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Nulls` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.IsNull` (862) property when reading. It is then equivalent to accessing

`Items[Index].IsNull`

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` (854), `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847)

25.7.23 TJSONArray.Integers

Synopsis: Get or set elements as integer values.

Declaration: `Property Integers[Index: Integer]: Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Integers` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsInteger` (861) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

`Items[Index].AsInteger`

When writing, it will check if an integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (848), `TJSONArray.QWords` (849), `TJSONArray.Floats` (850), `TJSONArray.Strings` (850), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (851)

25.7.24 TJSONArray.Int64s

Synopsis: Get or set elements as Int64 values.

Declaration: `Property Int64s[Index: Integer]: Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Int64s` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsInt64` (860) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

`Items[Index].AsInt64`

When writing, it will check if a 64-bit integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-64-bit-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written int64 value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847), `TJSONArray.Integers` (848), `TJSONArray.Floats` (850), `TJSONArray.Strings` (850), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (851), `TJSONArray.QWords` (849)

25.7.25 TJSONArray.LargeInts

Synopsis: Get or set elements as LargeInt values.

Declaration: `Property LargeInts[Index: Integer]: TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LargeInts` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (861) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsLargeInt
```

When writing, it will check if an Largeint integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-large-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written value.

See also: `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (861), `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847), `TJSONArray.Integers` (848), `TJSONArray.Floats` (850), `TJSONArray.Strings` (850), `TJSONArray.Booleans` (851), `TJSONArray.QWords` (849)

25.7.26 TJSONArray.QWords

Synopsis: Get or set elements as QWord values.

Declaration: `Property QWords[Index: Integer]: QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QWords` gives direct access to the `AsQWord` (860) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsQWord
```

When writing, it will check if an 64-bit unsigned integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-64-bit unsigned integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written QWord value.

See also: `Items` (829), `AsQWord` (860), `IsNull` (862), `Types` (847), `Integers` (848), `Floats` (850), `Strings` (850), `Booleans` (851)

25.7.27 TJSONArray.UnicodeStrings

Synopsis: Get or set elements as Unicode string values.

Declaration: `Property UnicodeStrings[Index: Integer]: TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UnicodeStrings` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsUnicodeString` (860) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsUnicodeString
```

When writing, it will check if a UNicodeStrings JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-string value is there, it is replaced with the written Unicode string value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(859\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(862\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(847\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(849\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(850\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(851\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(850\)](#)

25.7.28 TJSONArray.Strings

Synopsis: Get or set elements as string values.

Declaration: `Property Strings[Index: Integer]: TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsString (859)` property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsString
```

When writing, it will check if a string JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-string value is there, it is replaced with the written string value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(859\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(862\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(847\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(849\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(850\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(851\)](#)

25.7.29 TJSONArray.Floats

Synopsis: Get or set elements as floating-point numerical values.

Declaration: `Property Floats[Index: Integer]: TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Floats` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsFloat (861)` property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsFloat
```

When writing, it will check if a floating point numerical JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-floating point numerical value is there, it is replaced with the written floating point value.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(859\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(862\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(847\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(850\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(849\)](#), [TJSONArray.Booleans \(851\)](#)

25.7.30 TJSONArray.Booleans

Synopsis: Get or set elements as boolean values.

Declaration: `Property Booleans[Index: Integer]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Floats` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsBoolean` (862) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsBoolean
```

When writing, it will check if a boolean JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-boolean value is there, it is replaced with the written boolean value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847), `TJSONArray.Integers` (848), `TJSONArray.Strings` (850), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (848), `TJSONArray.QWords` (849), `TJSONArray.Floats` (850)

25.7.31 TJSONArray.Arrays

Synopsis: Get or set elements as JSON array values.

Declaration: `Property Arrays[Index: Integer]: TJSONArray`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Arrays` gives direct access to JSON Array values when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index] As TJSONArray
```

When writing, it will replace any previous value at that location with the written value. Note that the old value is freed, and the new value is owned by the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONArray.Types` (847), `TJSONArray.Integers` (848), `TJSONArray.Strings` (850), `TJSONArray.Int64s` (848), `TJSONArray.QWords` (849), `TJSONArray.Floats` (850), `TJSONArray.Objects` (851)

25.7.32 TJSONArray.Objects

Synopsis: Get or set elements as JSON object values.

Declaration: `Property Objects[Index: Integer]: TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Objects` gives direct access to JSON object values when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index] As TJSONObject
```

When writing, it will replace any previous value at that location with the written value. Note that the old value is freed, and the new value is owned by the array.

See also: [TJSONData.Items \(859\)](#), [TJSONData.IsNull \(862\)](#), [TJSONArray.Types \(847\)](#), [TJSONArray.Integers \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.Strings \(850\)](#), [TJSONArray.Int64s \(848\)](#), [TJSONArray.QWords \(849\)](#), [TJSONArray.Floats \(850\)](#), [TJSONArray.Arrays \(851\)](#)

25.8 TJSONBoolean

25.8.1 Description

`TJSONBoolean` must be used whenever boolean data must be represented. It has limited functionality to convert the value from or to integer or floating point data.

See also: [TJSONFloatNumber \(863\)](#), [TJSONIntegerNumber \(865\)](#), [TJSONInt64Number \(864\)](#), [TJSONBoolean \(852\)](#), [TJSONNull \(866\)](#), [TJSONArray \(842\)](#), [TJSONObject \(868\)](#)

25.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
853	<code>Clear</code>	Clear data.
853	<code>Clone</code>	Clone boolean value.
852	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of boolean JSON data.
852	<code>JSONType</code>	native JSON data type.

25.8.3 TJSONBoolean.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of boolean JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Boolean); reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new boolean JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: [TJSONIntegerNumber.Create \(866\)](#), [TJSONFloatNumber.Create \(863\)](#), [TJSONInt64Number.Create \(864\)](#), [TJSONString.Create \(880\)](#), [TJSONArray.Create \(843\)](#), [TJSONObject.Create \(869\)](#)

25.8.4 TJSONBoolean.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONString` to return `jtBoolean`.

See also: [TJSONData.JSONType \(854\)](#)

25.8.5 TJSONBoolean.Clear

Synopsis: Clear data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONBoolean` to set the value to `False`.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([855](#))

25.8.6 TJSONBoolean.Clone

Synopsis: Clone boolean value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same boolean value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

25.9 TJSONData

25.9.1 Description

`TJSONData` is an abstract class which introduces all properties and methods needed to work with JSON-based data. It should never be instantiated. Based on the type of data that must be represented one of the following descendents must be instantiated instead.

Numbers must be represented using one of `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#)) or `TJSONInt64Number` ([864](#)), depending on the type of the number.

Strings can be represented with `TJSONString` ([880](#)).

Boolean can be represented with `TJSONBoolean` ([852](#)).

null is supported using `TJSONNull` ([866](#))

Array data can be represented using `TJSONArray` ([842](#))

Object data can be supported using `TJSONObject` ([868](#))

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONString` ([880](#)), `TJSONBoolean` ([852](#)), `TJSONNull` ([866](#)), `TJSONArray` ([842](#)), `TJSONObject` ([868](#))

25.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
855	Clear	Clear the raw value of this data object.
858	Clone	Duplicate the value of the JSON data.
854	Create	Create a new instance of TJSONData.
855	DumpJSON	Fast, memory efficient dump of JSON in stream.
855	FindPath	Find data by name.
858	FormatJSON	Return a formatted JSON representation of the data.
855	GetEnumerator	Return an enumerator for the data.
857	GetPath	Get data by name.
854	JSONType	The native JSON data type represented by this object.

25.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
862	AsBoolean	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a boolean.
861	AsFloat	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a float.
860	AsInt64	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit integer.
861	AsInteger	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 32-bit integer.
862	AsJSON	r	Return a JSON representation of the value.
861	AsLargeInt	rw	Access to data as largeint.
860	AsQWord	rw	Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit unsigned integer.
859	AsString	rw	Access the raw JSON value as a string.
860	AsUnicodeString	rw	Return the value as a Unicode string.
858	CompressedJSON	rw	Compress JSON - skip whitespace.
859	Count	r	Number of sub-items for this data element.
862	IsNull	r	Is the data a null value ?
859	Items	rw	Indexed access to sub-items.
859	Value	rw	The value of this data object as a variant.

25.9.4 TJSONData.JSONType

Synopsis: The native JSON data type represented by this object.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `JSONType` indicates the JSON data type that this object will be written as, or the JSON data type that instantiated this object. In `TJSONData`, this function returns `jtUnknown`. Descendents override this method to return the correct data type.

See also: `TJSONType` ([835](#))

25.9.5 TJSONData.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TJSONData`.

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TJSONData` object. It should never be called directly, instead one of the descendents should be instantiated.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([866](#)), `TJSONString.Create` ([880](#)), `TJSONBoolean.Create` ([852](#)), `TJSONArray.Create` ([843](#)), `TJSONObject.Create` ([869](#))

25.9.6 TJSONData.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the raw value of this data object.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is implemented by the descendents of `TJSONData` to clear the data. An array will be emptied, an object will remove all properties, numbers are set to zero, strings set to the empty string, etc.

See also: `Create` ([854](#))

25.9.7 TJSONData.DumpJSON

Synopsis: Fast, memory efficient dump of JSON in stream.

Declaration: `procedure DumpJSON(S: TFPJSStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DumpJSON` writes the data as a JSON string to the stream `S`. No intermediate strings are created, making this a more fast and memory efficient operation than creating a string with `TJSONData.AsJSON` ([862](#)) and writing it to stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TJSONData.FormatJSON` ([858](#)), `TJSONData.AsJSON` ([862](#))

25.9.8 TJSONData.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Return an enumerator for the data.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns an enumerator for the JSON data. For simple types, the enumerator will just contain the current value. For arrays and objects, the enumerator will loop over the values in the array. The return value is not a `TJSONData` ([853](#)) type, but a `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)) structure, which contains the value, and for structured types, the key (numerical or string).

See also: `TJSONEnum` ([833](#)), `TJSONArray` ([842](#)), `TJSONObject` ([868](#))

25.9.9 TJSONData.FindPath

Synopsis: Find data by name.

Declaration: `function FindPath(const APath: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPath` finds a value based on its path. If none is found, `Nil` is returned. The path elements are separated by dots and square brackets, as in object member notation or array notation. The path is case sensitive.

- For simple values, the path must be empty.
- For JSON objects (868), a member can be specified using its name, and the object value itself can be retrieved with the empty path.
- For JSON Arrays (868), the elements can be found based on an array index. The array value itself can be retrieved with the empty path.

The following code will return the value itself, i.e. `E` will contain the same element as `D`:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONIntegerNumber.Create(123);
  E:=D.FindPath('');
end.
```

The following code will not return anything:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONIntegerNumber.Create(123);
  E:=D.FindPath('a');
end.
```

The following code will return the third element from the array:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONArray.Create([1,2,3,4,5]);
  E:=D.FindPath('[2]');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

The output of this program is 3.

The following code returns the element `Age` from the object:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
                        'Lastame','Rodriguez',
                        'FirstName','Roberto']);
  E:=D.FindPath('Age');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

The code will print 23.

Obviously, this can be combined:

```
Var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
                        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
                            'LastName','Rodriguez',
                            'FirstName','Roberto'])]);
  E:=D.FindPath('Names.LastName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

And mixed:

```
var
  D,E : TJSONData;

begin
  D:=TJSONObject.Create(['Children',
    TJSONArray.Create([
      TJSONObject.Create(['Age',23,
        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
          'LastName','Rodriguez',
          'FirstName','Roberto'])
        ]),
      TJSONObject.Create(['Age',20,
        'Names', TJSONObject.Create([
          'LastName','Rodriguez',
          'FirstName','Maria'])
        ])
    ])
  ]);
  E:=D.FindPath('Children[1].Names.FirstName');
  Writeln(E.AsJSON);
end.
```

See also: [TJSONArray \(842\)](#), [TJSONObject \(868\)](#), [GetPath \(857\)](#)

25.9.10 TJSONData.GetPath

Synopsis: Get data by name.

Declaration: `function GetPath(const APath: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetPath` is identical to `FindPath` ([855](#)) but raises an exception if no element was found. The exception message contains the piece of path that was not found.

Errors: An `EJSON` ([840](#)) exception is raised if the path does not exist.

See also: [FindPath \(855\)](#)

25.9.11 TJSONData.Clone

Synopsis: Duplicate the value of the JSON data.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` returns a new instance of the `TJSONData` descendent that has the same value as the instance, i.e. the `AsJSON` property of the instance and its clone is the same.

Note that the clone must be freed by the caller. Freeing a JSON object will not free its clones.

Errors: Normally, no JSON-specific errors should occur, but an `EOutOfMemory` (??) exception can be raised.

See also: `Clear` (855), `EOutOfMemory` (??)

25.9.12 TJSONData.FormatJSON

Synopsis: Return a formatted JSON representation of the data.

Declaration: `function FormatJSON(Options: TFormatOptions=DefaultFormat;
 Indentsize: Integer=DefaultIndentSize)
 : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Description: `FormatJSON` returns a formatted JSON representation of the data. For simple JSON values, this is the same representation as the `AsJSON` (829) property, but for complex values (`TJSONArray` (842) and `TJSONObject` (868)) the JSON is formatted differently.

There are some optional parameters to control the formatting. `Options` controls the use of whitespace and newlines. `IndentSize` controls the amount of indent applied when starting a new line.

The implementation is not optimized for speed.

See also: `AsJSON` (862), `TFormatOptions` (832)

25.9.13 TJSONData.CompressedJSON

Synopsis: Compress JSON - skip whitespace.

Declaration: `Property CompressedJSON : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CompressedJSON` can be used to let `TJSONData.AsJSON` (862) return JSON which does not contain any whitespace. By default it is `False` and whitespace is inserted. If set to `True`, output will contain no whitespace.

See also: `TJSONData.FormatJSON` (858), `TJSONData.AsJSON` (862), `TJSONData.UnquotedMemberNames` (853), `TJSONData.AsCompressedJSON` (853), `TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames` (874)

25.9.14 TJSONData.Count

Synopsis: Number of sub-items for this data element.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Count` is the amount of members of this data element. For simple values (null, boolean, number and string) this is zero. For complex structures, this is the amount of elements in the array or the number of properties of the object

See also: [Items \(859\)](#)

25.9.15 TJSONData.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to sub-items.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TJSONData`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Items` allows indexed access to the sub-items of this data. The `Index` is 0-based, and runs from 0 to `Count-1`. For simple data types, this function always returns `Nil`, the complex data type descendents ([TJSONArray \(842\)](#) and [TJSONObject \(868\)](#)) override this method to return the `Index`-th element in the list.

See also: [Count \(859\)](#), [TJSONArray \(842\)](#), [TJSONObject \(868\)](#)

25.9.16 TJSONData.Value

Synopsis: The value of this data object as a variant.

Declaration: `Property Value : TJSONVariant`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` returns the value of the data object as a variant when read, and converts the variant value to the native JSON type of the object. It does not change the native JSON type ([TJSONType \(835\)](#)), so the variant value must be convertible to the native JSON type.

For complex types, reading or writing this property will raise an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: [TJSONType \(835\)](#)

25.9.17 TJSONData.AsString

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a string.

Declaration: `Property AsString : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` allows access to the raw value as a string. When reading, it converts the native value of the data to a string. When writing, it attempts to transform the string to a native value. If this conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONString` (880) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsInteger` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsFloat` (861), `AsBoolean` (862), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.18 TJSONData.AsUnicodeString

Synopsis: Return the value as a Unicode string.

Declaration: `Property AsUnicodeString : TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsUnicodeString` returns the value of a simple JSON value as a Unicode string.

See also: `TJSONData.AsString` (859)

25.9.19 TJSONData.AsInt64

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit integer.

Declaration: `Property AsInt64 : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInt64` allows access to the raw value as a 64-bit integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 64-bit integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 64-bit integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONInt64Number` (864) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInteger` (861), `AsString` (859), `AsBoolean` (862), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.20 TJSONData.AsQWord

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 64-bit unsigned integer.

Declaration: `Property AsQWord : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsQWord` allows access to the raw value as a 64-bit unsigned integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 64-bit unsigned integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 64-bit unsigned integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONQwordNumber` (879) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInteger` (861), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsBoolean` (862), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.21 TJSONData.AsLargeInt

Synopsis: Access to data as largeint.

Declaration: `Property AsLargeInt : TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsLargeInt` returns an integer value of the largest possible integer type for the current platform: This is `NativeInt` on the `pas2JS` platform, `Int64` on all other platforms.

25.9.22 TJSONData.AsFloat

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a float.

Declaration: `Property AsFloat : TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsFloat` allows access to the raw value as a floating-point value. When reading, it converts the native value of the data to a floating-point. When writing, it attempts to transform the floating-point value to a native value. If this conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONFloatNumber` (863) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsInteger` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsBoolean` (862), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.23 TJSONData.AsInteger

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as an 32-bit integer.

Declaration: `Property AsInteger : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsInteger` allows access to the raw value as a 32-bit integer value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a 32-bit integer value. When writing, it attempts to transform the 32-bit integer value to a native value. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsBoolean` (862), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.24 TJSONData.AsBoolean

Synopsis: Access the raw JSON value as a boolean.

Declaration: `Property AsBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsBoolean` allows access to the raw value as a boolean value. When reading, it attempts to convert the native value of the data to a boolean value. When writing, it attempts to transform the boolean value to a native value. For numbers this means that non-zero numbers result in `True`, a zero results in `False`. If either conversion fails, an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

For `TJSONBoolean` (852) this will return the native value.

For complex values, reading or writing this property will always result in an `EConvertError` exception.

See also: `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsInteger` (861), `IsNull` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.25 TJSONData.IsNull

Synopsis: Is the data a null value ?

Declaration: `Property IsNull : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsNull` is `True` only for `JSONType=jtNull`, i.e. for a `TJSONNull` (866) instance. In all other cases, it is `False`. This value cannot be set.

See also: `TJSONType` (835), `JSONType` (854), `TJSONNull` (866), `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsInteger` (861), `AsBoolean` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.9.26 TJSONData.AsJSON

Synopsis: Return a JSON representation of the value.

Declaration: `Property AsJSON : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `AsJSON` returns a JSON representation of the value of the data. For simple values, this is just a textual representation of the object. For objects and arrays, this is an actual JSON Object or JSON Array.

See also: `AsFloat` (861), `Value` (859), `AsInt64` (860), `AsString` (859), `AsInteger` (861), `AsBoolean` (862), `AsJSON` (862)

25.10 TJSONFloatNumber

25.10.1 Description

`TJSONFloatNumber` must be used whenever floating point data must be represented. It can handle `TJSONFloat` (833) data (normally a double). For integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865) or `TJSONInt64Number` (864) are better suited.

See also: `TJSONNumber` (867), `TJSONFloat` (833), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865), `TJSONInt64Number` (864)

25.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
864	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
864	<code>Clone</code>	Clone floating point value.
863	<code>Create</code>	Create a new floating-point value.
863	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

25.10.3 TJSONFloatNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new floating-point value.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: TJSONFloat); reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new JSON floating point value, and initializes it with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` (866), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (864)

25.10.4 TJSONFloatNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONFloatNumber` to return `ntFloat`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (834), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (854)

25.10.5 TJSONFloatNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONFloatNumber` to set the value to 0.0

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([855](#))

25.10.6 TJSONFloatNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone floating point value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same floating-point value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

25.11 TJSONInt64Number

25.11.1 Description

`TJSONInt64Number` must be used whenever 64-bit integer data must be represented. For 32-bit integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#)), `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#))

25.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
865	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
865	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 64-bit integer value.
864	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 64-bit integer JSON data.
865	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

25.11.3 TJSONInt64Number.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 64-bit integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Int64); reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 64-bit integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([866](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` ([863](#))

25.11.4 TJSONInt64Number.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONInt64Number` to return `ntInt64`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (834), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (854)

25.11.5 TJSONInt64Number.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONInt64Number` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` (855)

25.11.6 TJSONInt64Number.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 64-bit integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` (858) and creates an instance of the same class with the same 64-bit integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (858)

25.12 TJSONIntegerNumber

25.12.1 Description

`TJSONIntegerNumber` must be used whenever 32-bit integer data must be represented. For 64-bit integer data, `TJSONInt64Number` (864) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (863), `TJSONInt64Number` (864)

25.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
866	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
866	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 32-bit integer value.
866	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 32-bit integer JSON data.
866	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

25.12.3 TJSONIntegerNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 32-bit integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: Integer); reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 32-bit integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` (863), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (864)

25.12.4 TJSONIntegerNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONIntegerNumber` to return `ntInteger`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (834), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (854)

25.12.5 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONIntegerNumber` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` (855)

25.12.6 TJSONIntegerNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 32-bit integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` (858) and creates an instance of the same class with the same 32-bit integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` (858)

25.13 TJSONNull

25.13.1 Description

`TJSONNull` must be used whenever a `null` value must be represented.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (863), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865), `TJSONInt64Number` (864), `TJSONBoolean` (852), `TJSONString` (880), `TJSONArray` (842), `TJSONObject` (868)

25.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
867	Clear	Clear data.
867	Clone	Clone boolean value.
867	JSONType	native JSON data type.

25.13.3 TJSONNull.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONNull` to return `jtNull`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([854](#))

25.13.4 TJSONNull.Clear

Synopsis: Clear data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` does nothing.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([855](#))

25.13.5 TJSONNull.Clone

Synopsis: Clone boolean value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#)) and creates an instance of the same class.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

25.14 TJSONNumber

25.14.1 Description

`TJSONNumber` is an abstract class which serves as the ancestor for the 3 numerical classes. It should never be instantiated directly. Instead, depending on the kind of data, one of `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([864](#)) or `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#)) should be instantiated.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([864](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#))

25.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
868	JSONType	native JSON data type.
868	NumberType	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

25.14.3 TJSONNumber.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: JSONType is overridden by TJSONNumber to return jtNumber.

See also: TJSONData.JSONType ([854](#))

25.14.4 TJSONNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: NumberType is overridden by TJSONNumber descendents to return the kind of numerical data that can be managed by the class.

See also: TJSONIntegerNumber ([865](#)), TJSONInt64Number ([864](#)), TJSONFloatNumber ([863](#)), JSONType ([829](#))

25.15 TJSONObject

25.15.1 Description

TJSONObjectClass is the class type of TJSONObject ([868](#)). It is used in the factory methods.

See also: TJSONObject ([868](#)), SetJSONInstanceType ([839](#)), GetJSONInstanceType ([838](#))

25.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
873	Add	Add a name, value to the object.
873	Clear	Clear the object.
870	Clone	Clone the JSON object.
869	Create	Create a new instance of JSON object data.
873	Delete	Delete an element from the list by index.
870	Destroy	Free the JSON object.
874	Extract	Extract an element from the object.
872	Find	Find an element by name.
872	Get	Retrieve a value by name.
871	GetEnumerator	Get an object enumerator.
871	IndexOf	Return index of JSONData instance in object.
871	IndexOfName	Return index of name in item list.
871	Iterate	Iterate over all elements in the object.
870	JSONType	native JSON data type.
874	Remove	Remove item by instance.

25.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
878	Arrays	rw	Named access to JSON array values.
878	Booleans	rw	Named access to boolean values.
875	Elements	rw	Name-based access to JSON values in the object.
876	Floats	rw	Named access to float values.
876	Int64s	rw	Named access to int64 values.
876	Integers	rw	Named access to integer values.
877	LargeInts	rw	Get or set elements as LargeInt values.
875	Names	r	Indexed access to the names of elements.
876	Nulls	rw	Named access to null values.
879	Objects	rw	Named access to JSON object values.
877	QWords	rw	Named access to QWord values.
878	Strings	rw	Named access to string values.
875	Types	r	Types of values in the object.
877	UnicodeStrings	rw	Named access to Unicode string values.
874	UnquotedMemberNames	rw	Should member names be written unquoted or quoted in JSON.

25.15.4 TJSONObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of JSON object data.

Declaration: `constructor Create;` reintroduce
`constructor Create(const Elements: Array of const);` overload

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new JSON object instance, and initializes the data with `Elements`. `Elements` is an array containing an even number of items, alternating a name and a value. The names must be strings, and the values are converted to various `TJSONData` ([853](#)) instances. If a value is an instance of `TJSONData`, it is added to the object array as-is.

The data type of the inserted objects is determined from the type of data passed to it, with a natural mapping. A `Nil` pointer will be inserted as a `TJSONNull` value. The following gives an example:

```

Var
  O : TJSONObject;

begin
  O:=TJSONObject.Create([ 'Age', 44,
                           'Firstname', 'Michael',
                           'Lastname', 'Van Canneyt' ]);

```

Errors: An `EConvertError` exception is raised in one of the following cases:

- 1.If an odd number of arguments is passed
- 2.an item where a name is expected does not contain a string
- 3.A value contains an invalid class
- 4.A value of a not recognized data type (pointer) is inserted in the elements

See also: [Add \(873\)](#), [GetJSONInstanceType \(838\)](#)

25.15.5 TJSONObject.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the JSON object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will delete all elements in the array and clean up the `TJSONObject` ([868](#)) instance.

See also: `TJSONObject.Clear` ([873](#)), `TJSONObject.Create` ([869](#))

25.15.6 TJSONObject.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONObject` to return `jtObject`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([854](#))

25.15.7 TJSONObject.Clone

Synopsis: Clone the JSON object.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` creates a new `TJSONObject`, clones all elements in the array and adds them to the newly created array with the same names as they were in the array.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

25.15.8 TJSONObject.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get an object enumerator.

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TBaseJSONEnumerator; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` is overridden in `TJSONObject` so it returns an object enumerator. The array enumerator will return all the elements in the array, and stores their name in the `Key` and index in the `KeyNum` members of `TJSONEnum` (833).

See also: `TJSONEnum` (833), `TJSONData.GetEnumerator` (855)

25.15.9 TJSONObject.Iterate

Synopsis: Iterate over all elements in the object.

Declaration: `procedure Iterate(Iterator: TJSONObjectIterator; Data: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Iterate` iterates over all elements in the object, passing them one by one with name and value to the `Iterator` callback, together with the `Data` parameter. The iteration stops when all elements have been passed or when the iterator callback returned `False` in the `Continue` parameter.

See also: `TJSONObjectIterator` (835)

25.15.10 TJSONObject.IndexOf

Synopsis: Return index of `JSONData` instance in object.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: TJSONData) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` compares all elements in the object with `Obj` and returns the index (in the `TJSONData.Items` (859) property) of the element instance that equals `Obj`. The actual instances are compared, not the JSON value. If none of the elements match, the function returns -1.

See also: `Clear` (873), `IndexOfName` (871)

25.15.11 TJSONObject.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Return index of name in item list.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: TJSONStringType;
CaseInsensitive: Boolean=False) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` compares the names of all elements in the object with `AName` and returns the index (in the `TJSONData.Items` (859) property) of the element instance whose name matched `AName`. If none of the element's names match, the function returns -1.

Since JSON is a case-sensitive specification, the names are searched case-sensitively by default. This can be changed by setting the optional `CaseInsensitive` parameter to `True`

See also: `IndexOf` (871)

25.15.12 TJSONObject.Find

Synopsis: Find an element by name.

Declaration:

```

function Find(const AName: TJSONStringType) : TJSONData; overload
function Find(const AName: TJSONStringType; AType: TJSONType)
    : TJSONData; overload
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONData)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONObject)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONArray)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONString)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONBoolean)
    : Boolean
function Find(const key: TJSONStringType; out AValue: TJSONNumber)
    : Boolean

```

Visibility: public

Description: Find compares the names of all elements in the object with AName and returns the matching element. If none of the element's names match, the function returns Nil

Since JSON is a case-sensitive specification, the names are searched case-sensitively.

If AType is specified then the element's type must also match the specified type.

See also: IndexOf ([871](#)), IndexOfName ([871](#))

25.15.13 TJSONObject.Get

Synopsis: Retrieve a value by name.

Declaration:

```

function Get(const AName: string) : TJSONVariant
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONFloat) : TJSONFloat
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Integer) : Integer
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Int64) : Int64
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: QWord) : QWord
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONUnicodeStringType)
    : TJSONUnicodeStringType
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: Boolean) : Boolean
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONStringType)
    : TJSONStringType
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONArray) : TJSONArray
function Get(const AName: string; ADefault: TJSONObject) : TJSONObject

```

Visibility: public

Description: Get can be used to retrieve a value by name. If an element with name equal to AName exists, and its type corresponds to the type of the ADefault, then the value is returned. If no element with the correct type exists, the ADefault value is returned.

If no default is specified, the value is returned as a variant type, or Null if no value was found.

The other value retrieval properties such as Integers ([876](#)), Int64s ([876](#)), Booleans ([878](#)), Strings ([878](#)), Floats ([876](#)), Arrays ([878](#)), and Objects ([879](#)) will raise an exception if the name is not found. The Get function does not raise an exception.

See also: Integers ([876](#)), Int64s ([876](#)), Booleans ([878](#)), Strings ([878](#)), Floats ([876](#)), Arrays ([878](#)), Objects ([879](#))

25.15.14 TJSONObject.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the object.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the object and frees all elements in it. After the call to `Clear`, `Count` ([859](#)) returns 0.

See also: `Delete` ([873](#)), `Extract` ([874](#))

25.15.15 TJSONObject.Add

Synopsis: Add a name, value to the object.

Declaration: `function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONData) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Boolean) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONFloat) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; const AValue: TJSONStringType) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: string; AValue: TJSONUnicodeStringType) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Int64) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: QWord) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: Integer) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType) : Integer; overload`
`function Add(const AName: TJSONStringType; AValue: TJSONArray) : Integer; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds the value `AValue` with name `AName` to the object. If the value is not a `TJSONData` ([853](#)) descendent, then it is converted to a `TJSONData` value, and it returns the `TJSONData` descendent that was created to add the value.

The properties `Integers` ([876](#)), `Int64s` ([876](#)), `Booleans` ([878](#)), `Strings` ([878](#)), `Floats` ([876](#)), `Arrays` ([878](#)) and `Objects` ([879](#)) will not raise an exception if an existing name is used. They will overwrite any existing value.

Errors: If a value with the same name already exists, an exception is raised.

See also: `Integers` ([876](#)), `Int64s` ([876](#)), `Booleans` ([878](#)), `Strings` ([878](#)), `Floats` ([876](#)), `Arrays` ([878](#)), `Objects` ([879](#))

25.15.16 TJSONObject.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an element from the list by index.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`
`procedure Delete(const AName: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the element with given `Index` or `AName` from the list. The `TJSONData` (853) element is freed. If a non-existing name is specified, no value is deleted.

Errors: If an invalid index is passed, an exception is raised.

See also: `Clear` (873), `Add` (873), `Extract` (874), `Exchange` (868)

25.15.17 TJSONObject.Remove

Synopsis: Remove item by instance.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Item: TJSONData)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` will locate the value `Item` in the list of values, and removes it if it exists. The item is freed.

See also: `Delete` (873), `Extract` (874)

25.15.18 TJSONObject.Extract

Synopsis: Extract an element from the object.

Declaration: `function Extract(Index: Integer) : TJSONData`
`function Extract(const AName: string) : TJSONData`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Extract` removes the element at position `Index` or with the `AName` from the list, just as `Delete` (829) does. In difference with `Delete`, it does not free the object instance. Instead, it returns the extracted element. The result is `Nil` if a non-existing name is specified.

See also: `Delete` (829), `Clear` (829), `Insert` (829), `Add` (829)

25.15.19 TJSONObject.UnquotedMemberNames

Synopsis: Should member names be written unquoted or quoted in JSON.

Declaration: `Property UnquotedMemberNames : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `UnquotedMemberNames` can be set to let `AsJSON` write the member names of a JSON object without quotes (`True`) or with quotes (`False`) around the member names.

When the value is `False`, JSON is written as:

```
{
  "name" : "Free Pascal",
  "type" : "Compiler"
}
```

When the value is `True`, JSON is written as:

```
{
  name : "Free Pascal",
  type : "Compiler"
}
```

Care must be taken when setting this property: The JSON standard requires the quotes to be written, but since JSON is mostly consumed in a Javascript engine, the unquoted values are usually also accepted.

See also: `TJSONData.CompressedJSON` ([858](#))

25.15.20 TJSONObject.Names

Synopsis: Indexed access to the names of elements.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: TJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Names` allows to retrieve the names of the elements in the object. The index is zero-based, running from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `Types` ([875](#)), `Elements` ([875](#))

25.15.21 TJSONObject.Elements

Synopsis: Name-based access to JSON values in the object.

Declaration: `Property Elements[AName: string]: TJSONData; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Elements` allows to retrieve the JSON values of the elements in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` ([840](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Items` ([859](#)), `Names` ([875](#)), `Types` ([875](#)), `Integers` ([876](#)), `Int64s` ([876](#)), `Booleans` ([878](#)), `Strings` ([878](#)), `Floats` ([876](#)), `Arrays` ([878](#)), `Objects` ([879](#))

25.15.22 TJSONObject.Types

Synopsis: Types of values in the object.

Declaration: `Property Types[AName: string]: TJSONtype`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Types` allows to retrieve the JSON types of the elements in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` ([840](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Items` ([859](#)), `Names` ([875](#)), `Elements` ([875](#)), `Integers` ([876](#)), `Int64s` ([876](#)), `Booleans` ([878](#)), `Strings` ([878](#)), `Floats` ([876](#)), `Arrays` ([878](#)), `Nulls` ([876](#)), `Objects` ([879](#))

25.15.23 TJSONObject.Nulls

Synopsis: Named access to null values.

Declaration: `Property Nulls[AName: string]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Nulls` allows to retrieve or set the NULL values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by a null value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONObject.Names` (875), `Elements` (829), `Integers` (829), `Int64s` (829), `Booleans` (829), `Strings` (829), `Floats` (829), `Arrays` (829), `Types` (829), `Objects` (829)

25.15.24 TJSONObject.Floats

Synopsis: Named access to float values.

Declaration: `Property Floats[AName: string]: TJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Floats` allows to retrieve or set the float values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified floating-point value.

See also: `Items` (859), `Names` (875), `Elements` (875), `Integers` (876), `Int64s` (876), `Booleans` (878), `Strings` (878), `Nulls` (876), `Arrays` (878), `Types` (875), `Objects` (879)

25.15.25 TJSONObject.Integers

Synopsis: Named access to integer values.

Declaration: `Property Integers[AName: string]: Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Integers` allows to retrieve or set the integer values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `Names` (875), `Elements` (875), `Floats` (876), `Int64s` (876), `Booleans` (878), `Strings` (878), `Nulls` (876), `Arrays` (878), `Types` (875), `Objects` (879)

25.15.26 TJSONObject.Int64s

Synopsis: Named access to int64 values.

Declaration: `Property Int64s[AName: string]: Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Int64s` allows to retrieve or set the int64 values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified int64 value.

See also: Items (859), Names (875), Elements (875), Floats (876), Integers (876), Booleans (878), Strings (878), Nulls (876), Arrays (878), Types (875), Objects (879)

25.15.27 TJSONObject.QWords

Synopsis: Named access to QWord values.

Declaration: `Property QWords[AName: string]: QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QWords` allows to retrieve or set the QWord values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an EJSON (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified QWord value.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), Names (875), Elements (875), Floats (876), Integers (876), Booleans (878), Strings (878), Nulls (876), Arrays (878), Types (875), Objects (879)

25.15.28 TJSONObject.LargeInts

Synopsis: Get or set elements as LargeInt values.

Declaration: `Property LargeInts[AName: string]: TJSONLargeInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LargeInts` gives direct access to the `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (861) property when reading. Reading it is the equivalent to accessing

```
Items[Index].AsLargeInt
```

When writing, it will check if an Largeint integer JSON value is located at the given location, and replace it with the new value. If a non-large-integer JSON value is there, it is replaced with the written value.

See also: `TJSONData.AsLargeInt` (861), `TJSONData.Items` (859), `TJSONData.IsNull` (862), `TJSONObject.Types` (875), `TJSONObject.Integers` (876), `TJSONObject.Floats` (876), `TJSONObject.Strings` (878), `TJSONObject.Booleans` (878), `TJSONObject.QWords` (877)

25.15.29 TJSONObject.UnicodeStrings

Synopsis: Named access to Unicode string values.

Declaration: `Property UnicodeStrings[AName: string]: TJSONUnicodeStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` allows to retrieve or set the Unicode string values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (840)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified `UnicodeString` value.

See also: [Items \(859\)](#), [Names \(875\)](#), [Elements \(875\)](#), [Floats \(876\)](#), [Integers \(876\)](#), [Booleans \(878\)](#), [Int64s \(876\)](#), [Nulls \(876\)](#), [Arrays \(878\)](#), [Types \(875\)](#), [Objects \(879\)](#), [Strings \(878\)](#)

25.15.30 `TJSONObject.Strings`

Synopsis: Named access to string values.

Declaration: `Property Strings[AName: string]: TJJSONStringType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Strings` allows to retrieve or set the string values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (840)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified string value.

See also: [Items \(859\)](#), [Names \(875\)](#), [Elements \(875\)](#), [Floats \(876\)](#), [Integers \(876\)](#), [Booleans \(878\)](#), [Int64s \(876\)](#), [Nulls \(876\)](#), [Arrays \(878\)](#), [Types \(875\)](#), [Objects \(879\)](#), [UnicodeStrings \(877\)](#)

25.15.31 `TJSONObject.Booleans`

Synopsis: Named access to boolean values.

Declaration: `Property Booleans[AName: string]: Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Booleans` allows to retrieve or set the boolean values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (840)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified boolean value.

See also: [Items \(859\)](#), [Names \(875\)](#), [Elements \(875\)](#), [Floats \(876\)](#), [Integers \(876\)](#), [Strings \(878\)](#), [Int64s \(876\)](#), [Nulls \(876\)](#), [Arrays \(878\)](#), [Types \(875\)](#), [Objects \(879\)](#)

25.15.32 `TJSONObject.Arrays`

Synopsis: Named access to JSON array values.

Declaration: `Property Arrays[AName: string]: TJJSONArray`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Arrays` allows to retrieve or set the JSON array values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON (840)` exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified JSON array.

See also: [Items \(859\)](#), [Names \(875\)](#), [Elements \(875\)](#), [Floats \(876\)](#), [Integers \(876\)](#), [Strings \(878\)](#), [Int64s \(876\)](#), [Nulls \(876\)](#), [Booleans \(878\)](#), [Types \(875\)](#), [Objects \(879\)](#)

25.15.33 TJSONObject.Objects

Synopsis: Named access to JSON object values.

Declaration: `Property Objects[AName: string]: TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Objects` allows to retrieve or set the JSON object values in the object by name. If a non-existent name is specified, an `EJSON` (840) exception is raised when reading. When writing, any existing value is replaced by the specified JSON object.

See also: `TJSONData.Items` (859), `Names` (875), `Elements` (875), `Floats` (876), `Integers` (876), `Strings` (878), `Int64s` (876), `Nulls` (876), `Booleans` (878), `Types` (875), `Arrays` (878)

25.16 TJSONQWordNumber

25.16.1 Description

`TJSONQWordNumber` must be used whenever 64-bit unsigned integer data must be represented. For 32-bit integer data, `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865) must be used. For 64-bit signed integer data, `TJSONInt64Number` (864) must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` (863), `TJSONIntegerNumber` (865), `TJSONInt64Number` (864)

25.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
880	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
880	<code>Clone</code>	Clone 64-bit unsigned integer value.
879	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data.
879	<code>NumberType</code>	Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

25.16.3 TJSONQWordNumber.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AValue: QWord); reintroduce`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new 64-bit unsigned integer JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` (866), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` (864), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` (863)

25.16.4 TJSONQWordNumber.NumberType

Synopsis: Kind of numerical data managed by this class.

Declaration: `class function NumberType : TJSONNumberType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `NumberType` is overridden by `TJSONQwordNumber` to return `ntQWord`.

See also: `TJSONNumberType` (834), `TJSONData.JSONtype` (854)

25.16.5 TJSONQWordNumber.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONQwordNumber` to set the value to 0.

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([855](#))

25.16.6 TJSONQWordNumber.Clone

Synopsis: Clone 64-bit unsigned integer value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the 64-bit unsigned integer value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

25.17 TJSONString

25.17.1 Description

`TJSONString` must be used whenever string data must be represented. Currently the implementation uses an ANSI string to hold the data. This means that to correctly hold Unicode data, a UTF-8 encoding must be used.

See also: `TJSONFloatNumber` ([863](#)), `TJSONIntegerNumber` ([865](#)), `TJSONInt64Number` ([864](#)), `TJSONBoolean` ([852](#)), `TJSONNull` ([866](#)), `TJSONArray` ([842](#)), `TJSONObject` ([868](#))

25.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
881	<code>Clear</code>	Clear value.
881	<code>Clone</code>	Clone string value.
880	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of string JSON data.
881	<code>JSONType</code>	native JSON data type.

25.17.3 TJSONString.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of string JSON data.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AValue: TJSONStringType); reintroduce`
`constructor Create(const AValue: TJSONUnicodeStringType); reintroduce`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new string JSON data and initializes the value with `AValue`. Currently the implementation uses an ANSI string to hold the data. This means that to correctly hold Unicode data, a UTF-8 encoding must be used.

See also: `TJSONIntegerNumber.Create` ([866](#)), `TJSONFloatNumber.Create` ([863](#)), `TJSONInt64Number.Create` ([864](#)), `TJSONBoolean.Create` ([852](#)), `TJSONArray.Create` ([843](#)), `TJSONObject.Create` ([869](#))

25.17.4 TJSONString.JSONType

Synopsis: native JSON data type.

Declaration: `class function JSONType : TJSONType; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `JSONType` is overridden by `TJSONString` to return `jtString`.

See also: `TJSONData.JSONType` ([854](#))

25.17.5 TJSONString.Clear

Synopsis: Clear value.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clear` is overridden by `TJSONString` to set the value to the empty string "".

See also: `TJSONData.Clear` ([855](#))

25.17.6 TJSONString.Clone

Synopsis: Clone string value.

Declaration: `function Clone : TJSONData; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clone` overrides `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#)) and creates an instance of the same class with the same string value.

See also: `TJSONData.Clone` ([858](#))

Chapter 26

Reference for unit 'fpjsonapply'

26.1 Used units

Table 26.1: Used units by unit 'fpjsonapply'

Name	Page
Classes	??
fpjson	829
System	??
sysutils	??

26.2 Overview

This unit provides the `TJSONApplier` ([883](#)) component class for merging JSON objects. It allows applying (merging) elements from one JSON object to another with various configuration options for ownership control, case sensitivity, type handling, and output formatting.

26.3 Constants, types and variables

26.3.1 Types

`TOWNSJSON = (ojSource, ojApply)`

Table 26.2: Enumeration values for type `TOWNSJSON`

Value	Explanation
<code>ojApply</code>	The apply JSON object is owned by the applier component
<code>ojSource</code>	The source JSON object is owned by the applier component

The `TOWNSJSON` enumeration defines which JSON objects are owned by the `TJSONApplier` ([883](#)) component. When a JSON object is owned, it will be automatically freed when the component is destroyed or when a new object is assigned.

ojSource The source JSON object is owned by the applier component

ojApply The apply JSON object is owned by the applier component

`TOWnsJSONs = Set of TOWnsJSON = (ojApply, ojSource)`

The `TOWnsJSONs` type is a set of `TOWnsJSON` (882) enumeration values. It specifies which JSON objects are owned and managed by the `TJSONApplier` (883) component. Owned objects will be automatically freed when no longer needed.

26.4 TJSONApplier

26.4.1 Description

The `TJSONApplier` class is a component that provides functionality to apply (merge) elements from one JSON object to another. It supports loading JSON objects from files or working with existing objects in memory, with various configuration options for controlling the merge behavior. The component can merge at specific paths within JSON structures, handle type conflicts, control case sensitivity, and manage object ownership.

See also: `TOWnsJSON` (882), `TOWnsJSONs` (883)

26.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
884	<code>destroy</code>	Destructor that frees owned JSON objects and cleans up resources
884	<code>Execute</code>	Executes the JSON merge operation from apply JSON to source JSON

26.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
887	ApplyFileName	rw	Filename to load apply JSON from if ApplyJSON is not set
885	ApplyJSON	rw	JSON object containing elements to apply to the source
887	ApplyPath	rw	JSON path in apply object where merging data should be taken from
888	CaseInsensitive	rw	Controls whether property name matching is case sensitive
887	CloneSource	rw	Controls whether to make a clone copy of source JSON before applying changes
887	DestFileName	rw	Filename to write the destination JSON to after merging
885	DestJSON	r	Destination JSON object containing the merge result
888	ForceCorrectType	rw	Controls whether to overwrite properties when types differ between source and apply JSON
889	Formatted	rw	Controls whether output JSON is formatted with indentation and line breaks
886	OwnsJSON	rw	Set specifying which JSON objects are owned by the component
888	RemoveNonExisting	rw	Controls whether to remove properties from source that do not exist in apply JSON
886	SourceFileName	rw	Filename to load source JSON from if SourceJSON is not set
885	SourceJSON	rw	Source JSON object to merge into
886	SourcePath	rw	JSON path in source object where merging should start

26.4.4 TJSONApplier.destroy

Synopsis: Destructor that frees owned JSON objects and cleans up resources

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `destroy` destructor frees any JSON objects that are owned by the component as indicated by the `OwnsJSON` ([886](#)) property. It also frees the destination JSON object if it differs from the source JSON object.

See also: `TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON` ([886](#)), `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` ([885](#)), `TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON` ([885](#)), `TJSONApplier.DestJSON` ([885](#))

26.4.5 TJSONApplier.Execute

Synopsis: Executes the JSON merge operation from apply JSON to source JSON

Declaration: `procedure Execute; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Execute` method performs the main JSON merge operation. It loads the source and apply JSON objects from files if they are not already set, then applies the elements from the apply JSON object to the source JSON object. The result is stored in the `DestJSON` ([885](#)) property. If file paths are specified, it starts merging at those specific locations within the JSON structures. If a destination filename is specified, the result is automatically saved to that file.

Errors: Raises `EJSON` exceptions when:

- Source JSON object is empty
- Apply JSON object is empty
- JSON files do not contain valid JSON objects
- Specified source or apply paths are not found or do not point to JSON objects

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.DestJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.SourcePath` (886), `TJSONApplier.ApplyPath` (887)

26.4.6 TJSONApplier.SourceJSON

Synopsis: Source JSON object to merge into

Declaration: `Property SourceJSON : TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `SourceJSON` property holds the source JSON object that serves as the base for the merge operation. If not set directly, it will be loaded automatically from the file specified in `SourceFileName` (886) when `Execute` (884) is called. When a new value is assigned, any previously owned source JSON object is freed.

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceFileName` (886), `TJSONApplier.DestJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON` (886)

26.4.7 TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON

Synopsis: JSON object containing elements to apply to the source

Declaration: `Property ApplyJSON : TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ApplyJSON` property holds the JSON object whose elements will be merged into the source JSON object. If not set directly, it will be loaded automatically from the file specified in `ApplyFileName` (887) when `Execute` (884) is called. When a new value is assigned, any previously owned apply JSON object is freed.

See also: `TJSONApplier.ApplyFileName` (887), `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON` (886)

26.4.8 TJSONApplier.DestJSON

Synopsis: Destination JSON object containing the merge result

Declaration: `Property DestJSON : TJSONObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `DestJSON` property contains the result of the merge operation after `Execute` (884) is called. If `CloneSource` (887) is `True`, this will be a clone of the source JSON object. If `CloneSource` (887) is `False`, this will be the same reference as the source JSON object. This property is read-only and is set automatically during the merge operation.

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.CloneSource` (887), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.9 TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON

Synopsis: Set specifying which JSON objects are owned by the component

Declaration: `Property OwnsJSON : TOwnsJSONs`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OwnsJSON` property is a set of `TOwnsJSON` (882) values that specifies which JSON objects are owned and managed by the component. Owned objects are automatically freed when the component is destroyed or when new objects are assigned. This property is automatically updated when JSON objects are loaded from files.

See also: `TOwnsJSON` (882), `TOwnsJSONs` (883), `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON` (885)

26.4.10 TJSONApplier.SourceFileName

Synopsis: Filename to load source JSON from if `SourceJSON` is not set

Declaration: `Property SourceFileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `SourceFileName` property specifies the file path from which to load the source JSON object. If `SourceJSON` (885) is not set when `Execute` (884) is called, the JSON object will be loaded from this file. When loaded from file, the component will take ownership of the JSON object.

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON` (886), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.11 TJSONApplier.SourcePath

Synopsis: JSON path in source object where merging should start

Declaration: `Property SourcePath : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `SourcePath` property specifies a JSON path within the source JSON object where the merge operation should begin. If empty, merging starts at the root of the source object. The path must point to an existing JSON object within the source structure. JSON paths use dot notation to navigate nested objects.

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.ApplyPath` (887), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.12 TJSONApplier.ApplyFileName

Synopsis: Filename to load apply JSON from if ApplyJSON is not set

Declaration: `Property ApplyFileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ApplyFileName` property specifies the file path from which to load the apply JSON object. If `ApplyJSON` (885) is not set when `Execute` (884) is called, the JSON object will be loaded from this file. When loaded from file, the component will take ownership of the JSON object.

See also: `TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.OwnsJSON` (886), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.13 TJSONApplier.ApplyPath

Synopsis: JSON path in apply object where merging data should be taken from

Declaration: `Property ApplyPath : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ApplyPath` property specifies a JSON path within the apply JSON object from which elements should be merged. If empty, elements are taken from the root of the apply object. The path must point to an existing JSON object within the apply structure. JSON paths use dot notation to navigate nested objects.

See also: `TJSONApplier.ApplyJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.SourcePath` (886), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.14 TJSONApplier.DestFileName

Synopsis: Filename to write the destination JSON to after merging

Declaration: `Property DestFileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `DestFileName` property specifies the file path where the result of the merge operation should be saved. If this property is set, the destination JSON object will be automatically saved to this file after `Execute` (884) completes. If empty, no automatic saving is performed.

See also: `TJSONApplier.DestJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884), `TJSONApplier.Formatted` (889)

26.4.15 TJSONApplier.CloneSource

Synopsis: Controls whether to make a clone copy of source JSON before applying changes

Declaration: `Property CloneSource : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `CloneSource` property determines whether a clone copy of the source JSON object is made before applying changes. When `True`, the source JSON object is cloned and changes are applied to the clone, leaving the original unchanged. When `False`, changes are applied directly to the source JSON object. The default value is `False`.

See also: `TJSONApplier.SourceJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.DestJSON` (885), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

26.4.16 TJSONApplier.CaseInsensitive

Synopsis: Controls whether property name matching is case sensitive

Declaration: `Property CaseInsensitive : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `CaseInsensitive` property controls whether property names are matched case-sensitively during the merge operation. When `True`, property names are compared ignoring case differences. When `False`, property names must match exactly including case. The default value is `False`.

See also: `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884), `TJSONApplier.RemoveNonExisting` (888)

26.4.17 TJSONApplier.ForceCorrectType

Synopsis: Controls whether to overwrite properties when types differ between source and apply JSON

Declaration: `Property ForceCorrectType : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ForceCorrectType` property determines the behavior when a property exists in both source and apply JSON objects but with different data types. When `True`, the property in the source is deleted and replaced with the property from the apply JSON. When `False`, properties with different types are handled according to their specific types (objects are merged recursively). The default value is `False`.

See also: `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884), `TJSONApplier.CaseInsensitive` (888)

26.4.18 TJSONApplier.RemoveNonExisting

Synopsis: Controls whether to remove properties from source that do not exist in apply JSON

Declaration: `Property RemoveNonExisting : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `RemoveNonExisting` property determines whether properties that exist in the source JSON but not in the apply JSON should be removed after merging. When `True`, properties in the source that are not present in the apply JSON are deleted. When `False`, existing properties in the source are preserved even if they do not exist in the apply JSON. The default value is `False`.

See also: `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884), `TJSONApplier.CaseInsensitive` (888)

26.4.19 TJSONApplier.Formatted

Synopsis: Controls whether output JSON is formatted with indentation and line breaks

Declaration: `Property Formatted : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: The `Formatted` property controls whether the JSON output is formatted with indentation and line breaks for better readability. When `True`, the output JSON is formatted with proper indentation. When `False`, the output JSON is written as a compact string without formatting. This property affects the output when writing to the `DestFileName` (887). The default value is `False`.

See also: `TJSONApplier.DestFileName` (887), `TJSONApplier.Execute` (884)

Chapter 27

Reference for unit 'fpjsontopas'

27.1 Used units

Table 27.1: Used units by unit 'fpjsontopas'

Name	Page
Classes	??
fpjson	829
jsonparser	1324
System	??
sysutils	??

27.2 Overview

The `fpJsonToPas` unit provides functionality to generate Object Pascal class definitions from JSON data structures. The main class `TJSONToPascal` ([893](#)) analyzes JSON input and creates complete Pascal unit code with classes that can serialize to and from JSON.

The generated Pascal classes include properties for each JSON field, optional load/save methods for JSON serialization, and proper type mappings from JSON types to Pascal types.

27.3 Using fpjsontopas to generate Pascal classes from JSON

The `fpjsontopas` unit allows you to generate Object Pascal class definitions from JSON data. This is useful for creating strongly-typed classes that can serialize to and from JSON format.

The basic workflow involves:

1. Create a `TJSONToPascal` ([893](#)) instance
2. Set the JSON data using the `JSON` ([895](#)) property
3. Configure options like `DestUnitName` ([896](#)) and `ToplevelObjectClassName` ([898](#))
4. Call `Execute` ([894](#)) to generate the Pascal code
5. Retrieve the generated code from the `Code` ([895](#)) property

Here's a simple example that generates Pascal classes from JSON data:

```
program JSONToPascalDemo;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
  Classes, SysUtils, fpjsontopas;

var
  Generator: TJSONToPascal;
  JSONData: string;
  i: Integer;
begin
  JSONData := '{"name": "John Doe", "age": 30, "active": true, "address": {"street":

  Generator := TJSONToPascal.Create(nil);
  try
    // Configure the generator
    Generator.JSON := JSONData;
    Generator.DestUnitName := 'PersonUnit';
    Generator.ToplevelObjectClassName := 'TPerson';
    Generator.Options := [jpoGenerateLoad, jpoGenerateSave];

    // Generate the Pascal code
    Generator.Execute;

    // Output the generated code
    Writeln('Generated Pascal unit:');
    Writeln;
    for i := 0 to Generator.Code.Count - 1 do
      Writeln(Generator.Code[i]);

  finally
    Generator.Free;
  end;
end.
```

This example will generate a complete Pascal unit with `TPerson` and `TPersonAddress` classes, including properties for each JSON field and methods to load from/save to JSON.

You can customize the generation process using various properties:

- `DefaultParentName` (896): Base class for generated objects
- `FieldPrefix` (897): Prefix for private field names
- `IndentSize` (896): Code indentation size
- `ExtraUnitNames` (897): Additional units in the uses clause
- `PropertyMap` (896): Manual type mappings for specific JSON paths

27.4 Constants, types and variables

27.4.1 Types

```
TJSONToPascalOption = (jpoUseSetter, jpoGenerateLoad,
  jpoUnknownLoadPropsError, jpoDelphiJSON,
  jpoLoadCaseInsensitive, jpoGenerateSave)
```

Table 27.2: Enumeration values for type TJSONToPascalOption

Value	Explanation
jpoDelphiJSON	Generate Delphi-compatible JSON code
jpoGenerateLoad	Generate LoadFromJSON methods
jpoGenerateSave	Generate SaveToJSON methods
jpoLoadCaseInsensitive	Make property loading case-insensitive
jpoUnknownLoadPropsError	Raise error for unknown properties during loading
jpoUseSetter	Generate setter methods for properties

TJSONToPascalOption defines various options that control how Pascal code is generated from JSON data:

jpoUseSetter Generate setter methods for properties instead of direct field access

jpoGenerateLoad Generate LoadFromJSON methods for deserializing JSON data

jpoUnknownLoadPropsError Raise an error when unknown properties are encountered during loading

jpoDelphiJSON Generate code compatible with Delphi's JSON framework

jpoLoadCaseInsensitive Make JSON property loading case-insensitive

jpoGenerateSave Generate SaveToJSON methods for serializing objects to JSON

```
TJSONToPascalOptions = Set of TJSONToPascalOption = (jpoDelphiJSON
  , jpoGenerateLoad, jpoGenerateSave,
  jpoLoadCaseInsensitive
  , jpoUnknownLoadPropsError,
  jpoUseSetter)
```

TJSONToPascalOptions is a set type based on TJSONToPascalOption (892). It allows combining multiple options to control the code generation process.

27.5 EJSONToPascal

27.5.1 Description

EJSONToPascal is raised when errors occur during JSON to Pascal code generation. It inherits from EJSON to maintain compatibility with the JSON handling framework.

27.6 TJSONToPascal

27.6.1 Description

`TJSONToPascal` is the core component that generates Object Pascal class definitions from JSON data structures. It analyzes the JSON input and creates complete Pascal unit code with classes that can serialize to and from JSON format.

The class provides comprehensive control over the code generation process through various properties and options. Generated classes include appropriate property declarations, constructor/destructor methods, and optional JSON serialization methods.

27.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
893	Create	Creates a new <code>TJSONToPascal</code> instance
894	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TJSONToPascal</code> instance
894	Execute	Generates Pascal code from JSON data

27.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
895	Active	rw	Automatically execute code generation when set to True
895	Code	rw	Generated Pascal unit code
896	DefaultParentName	rw	Default base class for generated objects
896	DestUnitName	rw	Name of the generated Pascal unit
897	ExtraUnitNames	rw	Additional units for the uses clause
897	FieldPrefix	rw	Prefix for private field names
896	IndentSize	rw	Number of spaces for code indentation
895	JSON	rw	JSON string to generate code from
894	JSONData	rw	JSON data object to generate code from
894	JSONStream	rw	Stream containing JSON data to generate code from
897	ObjectConstructorArguments	rw	Arguments for object constructors
895	Options	rw	Code generation options
896	PropertyMap	rw	Manual type mappings for JSON properties
897	PropertyTypeSuffix	rw	Suffix for generated object and array type names
898	ToplevelObjectClassName	rw	Name of the main generated class

27.6.4 TJSONToPascal.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TJSONToPascal` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `TJSONToPascal` instance and initializes default values for properties. The `AOwner` parameter specifies the component owner for memory management.

27.6.5 TJSONToPascal.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TJSONToPascal instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Cleans up resources and destroys the TJSONToPascal instance. Frees the internal property map and code strings.

27.6.6 TJSONToPascal.Execute

Synopsis: Generates Pascal code from JSON data

Declaration: `procedure Execute`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` is the main method that performs the JSON to Pascal code generation. It analyzes the JSON data from `JSONData` (894), `JSONStream` (894), or `JSON` (895) properties and generates complete Pascal unit code.

The generated code is stored in the `Code` (895) property and includes class declarations, property definitions, and optional serialization methods based on the configured options.

27.6.7 TJSONToPascal.JSONData

Synopsis: JSON data object to generate code from

Declaration: `Property JSONData : TJSONData`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `JSONData` specifies the `TJSONData` object containing the JSON structure to convert to Pascal code. This property takes priority over `JSONStream` (894) and `JSON` (895) properties.

27.6.8 TJSONToPascal.JSONStream

Synopsis: Stream containing JSON data to generate code from

Declaration: `Property JSONStream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `JSONStream` specifies a stream containing JSON data to convert to Pascal code. `JSONData` (894) property takes priority over this property if both are set.

27.6.9 TJSONToPascal.Active

Synopsis: Automatically execute code generation when set to True

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `Active` is set to `True`, the `Execute` (894) method is automatically called. This property is useful for generating code at design time in the IDE.

27.6.10 TJSONToPascal.Options

Synopsis: Code generation options

Declaration: `Property Options : TJSONToPascalOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` controls various aspects of the code generation process using `TJSONToPascalOptions` (892). Common combinations include generating load/save methods or making the code compatible with different JSON frameworks.

27.6.11 TJSONToPascal.JSON

Synopsis: JSON string to generate code from

Declaration: `Property JSON : TJSONStringType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `JSON` specifies the JSON data as a string to convert to Pascal code. `JSONData` (894) and `JSON-Stream` (894) properties take priority over this property.

27.6.12 TJSONToPascal.Code

Synopsis: Generated Pascal unit code

Declaration: `Property Code : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Code` contains the generated Pascal unit code after calling `Execute` (894). The code includes complete class definitions with properties, methods, and optional JSON serialization support.

27.6.13 TJSONToPascal.PropertyMap

Synopsis: Manual type mappings for JSON properties

Declaration: `Property PropertyMap : TPropertyMap`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PropertyMap` allows manual control over how specific JSON properties are converted to Pascal types. After `Execute` (894), it contains all detected and generated type mappings for properties.

27.6.14 TJSONToPascal.DestUnitName

Synopsis: Name of the generated Pascal unit

Declaration: `Property DestUnitName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DestUnitName` specifies the unit name that appears in the generated Pascal code. This becomes the unit declaration in the generated code.

27.6.15 TJSONToPascal.DefaultParentName

Synopsis: Default base class for generated objects

Declaration: `Property DefaultParentName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `DefaultParentName` specifies the base class used for generated Pascal classes. Default is 'TO-object'. Can be overridden per property using the property map.

27.6.16 TJSONToPascal.IndentSize

Synopsis: Number of spaces for code indentation

Declaration: `Property IndentSize : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IndentSize` controls how many spaces are used for indenting the generated Pascal code. Default value is 2 spaces per indentation level.

27.6.17 TJSONToPascal.ExtraUnitNames

Synopsis: Additional units for the uses clause

Declaration: `Property ExtraUnitNames : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ExtraUnitNames` specifies additional unit names (comma-separated) to include in the interface uses clause of the generated unit. Useful for including custom base classes or additional functionality.

27.6.18 TJSONToPascal.PropertyTypeSuffix

Synopsis: Suffix for generated object and array type names

Declaration: `Property PropertyTypeSuffix : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PropertyTypeSuffix` is appended to object and array type names during property map construction. Helps avoid naming conflicts and provides consistent naming conventions.

27.6.19 TJSONToPascal.FieldPrefix

Synopsis: Prefix for private field names

Declaration: `Property FieldPrefix : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FieldPrefix` specifies the prefix used for private field names in generated classes. Common values are 'F' (e.g., 'FName') or '_' (e.g., '_name').

27.6.20 TJSONToPascal.ObjectConstructorArguments

Synopsis: Arguments for object constructors

Declaration: `Property ObjectConstructorArguments : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ObjectConstructorArguments` specifies the constructor arguments inserted literally between parentheses in generated constructor calls. Useful when the parent class constructor requires specific parameters.

27.6.21 TJSONToPascal.ToplevelObjectClassName

Synopsis: Name of the main generated class

Declaration: `Property ToplevelObjectClassName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ToplevelObjectClassName` specifies the class name for the main object generated from the root JSON object. This is typically the primary class users will instantiate.

27.7 TPropertyMap

27.7.1 Description

`TPropertyMap` is a collection that holds `TPropertyMapItem` (899) instances. It provides methods to manage mappings between JSON paths and Pascal type information during code generation.

The collection allows you to customize how specific JSON properties are converted to Pascal code, override type names, and control the generation process for individual properties.

27.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
898	<code>AddPath</code>	Adds a new property mapping for the specified path
899	<code>FindPath</code>	Finds the property mapping for the specified path
898	<code>IndexOfPath</code>	Returns the index of the mapping for the specified path

27.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
899	<code>Map</code>	rw	Indexed access to property mapping items

27.7.4 TPropertyMap.AddPath

Synopsis: Adds a new property mapping for the specified path

Declaration: `function AddPath(const APath: string; const ATypeName: string)
: TPropertyMapItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddPath` creates a new `TPropertyMapItem` (899) for the given JSON path and type name. Returns the created mapping item for further configuration.

27.7.5 TPropertyMap.IndexOfPath

Synopsis: Returns the index of the mapping for the specified path

Declaration: `function IndexOfPath(const APath: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfPath` searches for a property mapping with the given JSON path and returns its index. Returns -1 if no mapping is found for the specified path.

27.7.6 TPropertyMap.FindPath

Synopsis: Finds the property mapping for the specified path

Declaration: `function FindPath(const APath: string) : TPropertyMapItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindPath` searches for and returns the `TPropertyMapItem` (899) for the given JSON path. Returns `nil` if no mapping is found for the specified path.

27.7.7 TPropertyMap.Map

Synopsis: Indexed access to property mapping items

Declaration: `Property Map[Aindex: Integer]: TPropertyMapItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Map` provides indexed access to the `TPropertyMapItem` (899) instances in the collection. This is the default property, allowing array-style access to mappings.

27.8 TPropertyMapItem

27.8.1 Description

`TPropertyMapItem` represents a mapping between a JSON path and Pascal type information. It stores details about how a specific JSON property should be converted to Pascal code, including type names, property names, and generation options.

Each item corresponds to a JSON property path and contains information about the Pascal type to generate, the parent class, and various options that control code generation for that specific property.

27.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
900	Assign	Assigns values from another <code>TPropertyMapItem</code>

27.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
900	Generated	r	Indicates if this mapping was automatically generated
901	JSONType	rw	JSON type for this property
900	ParentTypeName	rw	Base class name for generated objects
900	Path	rw	JSON path for this property mapping
901	PropertyName	rw	Pascal property name
901	SkipType	rw	Skip generating class or array type for this property
900	TypeName	rw	Pascal type name for this property

27.8.4 TPropertyMapItem.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns values from another TPropertyMapItem

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign copies all property values from the source TPropertyMapItem to this instance. Overrides the standard TPersistent.Assign method.

27.8.5 TPropertyMapItem.Generated

Synopsis: Indicates if this mapping was automatically generated

Declaration: `Property Generated : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Generated is True if this property mapping was automatically created during code generation, False if it was manually added. Read-only property.

27.8.6 TPropertyMapItem.Path

Synopsis: JSON path for this property mapping

Declaration: `Property Path : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Path specifies the JSON path that this mapping applies to. Paths use dot notation, e.g., 'person.address.street' for nested properties.

27.8.7 TPropertyMapItem.TypeName

Synopsis: Pascal type name for this property

Declaration: `Property TypeName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: TypeName specifies the Pascal type name to use for this property. Can be a simple type like 'String' or 'Integer', or a class name for objects.

27.8.8 TPropertyMapItem.ParentTypeName

Synopsis: Base class name for generated objects

Declaration: `Property ParentTypeName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: ParentTypeName specifies the base class to use when this property generates an object type. Overrides the DefaultParentName (896) setting for this specific property.

27.8.9 TPropertyMapItem.PropertyName

Synopsis: Pascal property name

Declaration: `Property PropertyName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PropertyName` specifies the name to use for the Pascal property. If empty, the name is derived from the JSON property name.

27.8.10 TPropertyMapItem.JSONType

Synopsis: JSON type for this property

Declaration: `Property JSONType : TJSONType`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `JSONType` indicates the JSON type detected or assigned for this property. Uses the `TJSONType` enumeration (`jtString`, `jtNumber`, `jtBoolean`, `jtArray`, `jtObject`, etc.).

27.8.11 TPropertyMapItem.SkipType

Synopsis: Skip generating class or array type for this property

Declaration: `Property SkipType : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `SkipType` is `True`, no class or array type declaration is generated for this property. Useful when you want to handle complex types manually or use existing types.

Chapter 28

Reference for unit 'fpmimetypes'

28.1 Used units

Table 28.1: Used units by unit 'fpmimetypes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	284
System	??
sysutils	??

28.2 Overview

The `fpmimetypes` unit contains a class which handles mapping of filename extensions to MIME (Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions) types. The `TFPMimeTypes` ([903](#)) class handles this mapping. A global instance of this class is available through the `MimeTypes` ([902](#)) function. The list of known mime types can be instantiated through the `LoadKnownTypes` ([904](#)) method, or a file in the standard `mime.types` format can be loaded through the `LoadFromFile` ([905](#)) method.

28.3 Procedures and functions

28.3.1 MimeTypes

Synopsis: Global `TFPMimeTypes` instance.

Declaration: `function MimeTypes : TFPMimeTypes`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `MimeTypes` returns a global instance of the `TFPMimeTypes` ([903](#)) class. It is not initialized with a list of extensions, so this instance must still be explicitly initialized with `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([904](#))

This function is not thread-safe, so be sure to call it once from the main thread and initialize the resulting list.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes` ([903](#)), `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([904](#))

28.4 TFPMimeType

28.4.1 Description

TFPMimeTypes manages a list of MIME types.

The list of types can be initialized with the OS list of known MIME types through the LoadKnownTypes (904) method, or a file in the standard mime.types format can be loaded through the LoadFromFile (905) method.

The associated mime type of a file extension can be retrieved with TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType (905).

See also: TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes (904), TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile (905), TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType (905)

28.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
905	AddType	Add a MIME type to the list.
904	Clear	Clear the list of known MIME types.
903	Create	Create a new instance of the TFPMimeTypes class.
903	Destroy	Remove instance from memory.
906	GetKnownExtensions	Get a list of all known extensions.
906	GetKnownMimeType	Get a list of all known MIME types.
905	GetMimeExtensions	Get the extensions associated with a MIME type.
905	GetMimeType	Get MIME type of an extension.
904	GetNextExtension	Extract an extension from an extension list as returned by GetMimeExtensions.
905	LoadFromFile	Load mime types from a file in mime.types file format.
904	LoadFromStream	Load mime types from a stream in mime.types file format.
904	LoadKnownTypes	Queries the OS for a list of known MIME types.

28.4.3 TFPMimeTypes.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TFPMimeTypes class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The Create method sets up the necessary internal structures.

See also: TFPMimeTypes.Destroy (903)

28.4.4 TFPMimeTypes.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy destroys the TFPMimeTypes instance and removes it from memory.

See also: TFPMimeTypes.Create (903)

28.4.5 TFPMimeType.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of known MIME types.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list of known mime types.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadKnownTypes` ([904](#))

28.4.6 TFPMimeType.LoadKnownTypes

Synopsis: Queries the OS for a list of known MIME types.

Declaration: `procedure LoadKnownTypes; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadKnownTypes` uses the default mechanism of the OS to initialize the list of MIME types. Under windows, this loads a list of known extensions from the registry (under `HKEY_CLASSES_ROOT`) and attempts to load a `mime.types` located next to the application binary. Under unixlike OS-es, the system location for the `mime.types` is used to load the `mime.types` file.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile` ([905](#))

28.4.7 TFPMimeType.GetNextExtension

Synopsis: Extract an extension from an extension list as returned by `GetMimeExtensions`.

Declaration: `class function GetNextExtension(var E: string) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNextExtension` is a helper function that extracts and returns the next extension from the semicolon separated list of extensions `E` and removes the extension from the list. If there is no more extension, the empty string is returned.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` ([905](#))

28.4.8 TFPMimeType.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load mime types from a stream in `mime.types` file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(const Stream: TStream); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromStream` parses the stream for MIME type definitions and extensions and adds them to the list of known MIME types. The stream is expected to have the text format of the `mime.types` as found in unix systems.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromFile` ([905](#))

28.4.9 TFPMimeType.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load mime types from a file in mime.types file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the file `aFileName` and parses the file for MIME type definitions and extensions and adds them to the list of known MIME types. The file is expected to have the text format of the `mime.types` as found in unix systems.

Errors: if the file `aFileName` does not exist, an exception is raised.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.LoadFromStream` (904)

28.4.10 TFPMimeType.AddType

Synopsis: Add a MIME type to the list.

Declaration: `procedure AddType(const AMimeType: string; const AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddType` can be used to add `AMimeType` to the list of known MIME types, and associate a semicolon-separated list of extensions `AExtensions` with it. If `AMimeType` is already present in the list of MIME types, then the list of extensions in `AExtensions` is merged with the existing extensions. The extensions may not have a dot character prepended to them.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` (905), `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType` (905)

28.4.11 TFPMimeType.GetMimeExtensions

Synopsis: Get the extensions associated with a MIME type.

Declaration: `function GetMimeExtensions(const AMimeType: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMimeExtensions` returns the list of extensions associated with a MIME type (`AMimeType`). If none are known, an empty string is returned. `AMimeType` is searched case insensitively.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeType` (905)

28.4.12 TFPMimeType.GetMimeType

Synopsis: Get MIME type of an extension.

Declaration: `function GetMimeType(const AExtension: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetMimeType` returns the MIME type of the extension `AExtension`. The extension is searched case-insensitive. If no MIME type is found, an empty string is returned. The extension may start with a dot character or not.

See also: `TFPMimeTypes.GetMimeExtensions` (905)

28.4.13 TFPMimeType.GetKnownMimeType

Synopsis: Get a list of all known MIME types.

Declaration: `function GetKnownMimeType (AList: TStrings) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetKnownMimeType` fills `AList` with the list of known MIME types (one per line) in random order. It clears the list first, and returns the number of entries added to the list.

See also: `TFPMimeType.GetKnownExtensions` (906)

28.4.14 TFPMimeType.GetKnownExtensions

Synopsis: Get a list of all known extensions.

Declaration: `function GetKnownExtensions (AList: TStrings) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetKnownExtensions` fills `AList` with the list of known extensions (one per line) in random order. It clears the list first, and returns the number of entries added to the list. The extensions do not have a dot (.) character prepended.

See also: `TFPMimeType.GetKnownMimeType` (906)

28.5 TMimeType

28.5.1 Description

`TMimeType` is a helper class which stores a MIME type and its associated extensions. It should not be necessary to create instances of this class manually, the creation is handled entirely through the `TFPMimeType` (903) class.

See also: `TMimeType.MimeType` (907), `TMimeType.Extensions` (907), `TFPMimeType` (903)

28.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
907	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMimeType</code> .
907	MergeExtensions	Merge extensions in the list of extensions.

28.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
907	Extensions	rw	Semicolon-separated list of extensions associated with <code>MimeType</code> .
907	MimeType	rw	Mime type name.

28.5.4 TMimeType.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TMimeType.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AMimeType: string; const AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of TMimeType and sets the TMimeType.MimeType (907) TMimeType.Extensions (907) properties to `aMimeType` and `aExtensions`.

See also: TMimeType.MimeType (907), TMimeType.Extensions (907)

28.5.5 TMimeType.MergeExtensions

Synopsis: Merge extensions in the list of extensions.

Declaration: `procedure MergeExtensions(AExtensions: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `MergeExtensions` merges the comma-separated list of extensions in `AExtensions` into TMimeType.Extensions (907) in such a way that there are no duplicates.

See also: TMimeType.Extensions (907)

28.5.6 TMimeType.MimeType

Synopsis: Mime type name.

Declaration: `Property MimeType : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MimeType` is the lowercase name of the mime type.

See also: TMimeType.Extensions (907)

28.5.7 TMimeType.Extensions

Synopsis: Semicolon-separated list of extensions associated with MimeType.

Declaration: `Property Extensions : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Extensions` is the comma-separated list of extensions that is associated with MimeType (907)

See also: TMimeType.MimeType (907)

Chapter 29

Reference for unit 'fpmkunit'

29.1 Used units

Table 29.1: Used units by unit 'fpmkunit'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
cthreads	??
libtar	1354
process	1424
System	??
sysutils	??
Zipper	1657
ZStream	1696

29.2 Overview

The `fpmkunit` unit implements the core building and installation engine for Free Pascal packages. It provides a complete set of classes and functions for managing package compilation, dependency resolution, file installation, and archive creation.

This unit forms the foundation of the `fpmake` build system, offering classes like `TPackage` ([1014](#)) for package management, `TTarget` ([1054](#)) for build targets, `TDependency` ([993](#)) for dependency tracking, and various installer classes for deployment.

The building engine supports cross-platform compilation with CPU and OS-specific conditional compilation, package variants, custom commands, and flexible installation schemes.

29.3 Usage description

The `fpmkunit` unit is meant to be used to create a program that handles compilation, archiving and installation of a set of pascal sources, collected in so-called packages. The unit can handle multiple packages, and will manage dependencies of packages automatically. Customarily this program is called `fpmake`. When using `fppkg` or in the FPC sources, use of this name is mandatory.

The unit supports the following operations:

- Compilation of units, programs or libraries.
- installation of the compiled results to standard locations.
- Creation of a .zip file with the sources of the files.
- Generation of documentation with fpdf.
- Execution of custom commands when compiling, installing or packaging

The unit consists of a series of classes which are designed to work together. An instance of these classes is created for you, they are ready to be used.

Installer This function returns the main TCustomInstaller (988) instance. This class is the entry point for all functionality: it manages settings and package definitions and processes command-line options

Defaults The main TCustomDefaults (972) Instance. Here you can set compiler options such as CPU, OS, all kinds of search paths, executable paths and directories

Installer.BuildEngine This is the engine that does all the work.

For the majority of cases, it suffices to define some packages using Installer.Packages (990), and to call Installer.Run (989). The Run method will examine the RunMode (990) property to determine what action is expected, and then it proceeds to execute the action using the BuildEngine (990). The latter does all the work, and contains all the logic to launch commands in the correct order to execute the specified action.

To demonstrate this, a simple program can be made:

```
program fpmake1;

uses fpmkunit;

var
  P: TPackage;

begin
  With Installer do
  begin
    P:=Packages.AddPackage('mypackage');
    P.Dependencies.Clear;
    P.Targets.AddUnit('src/unit1.pp');
    Run;
  end;
end.
```

The TCustomInstaller (988) class maintains a collection of Packages (990). At least 1 package must be defined. Every package has a list of files that must be compiled, and possibly a list of files that needs to be installed together with installed programs.

Every file that needs to be compiled, is a TTarget (1054), and all targets are in the Targets (1032) property of the TPackage (1014) class. Installer will compile the targets in the order that they are specified, unless dependencies have been set up (see also Dependencies (913)), in which case the order will be changed to compile dependencies of a target first, for any given target.

After compiling the `fpmake1.pp` program, it can be used to compile the `unit1.pp` when run with the `compile` command;

```
> ./fpmake1 compile
Start compiling package mypackage for target x86_64-linux.
    Compiling src/unit1.pp
[100%] Compiled package mypackage
```

To pass extra options to the compiler, we can use the `Defaults` (936) variable, which is valid as soon as the installer is created:

```
program fpmake2;

uses fpmkunit;

var
    P: TPackage;

begin
    With Installer do
        begin
            Defaults.Options.Add('-O2');
            P:=Packages.AddPackage('mypackage');
            P.Dependencies.Clear;
            P.Targets.AddUnit('src/unit1.pp');
            Run;
        end;
    end;
```

This program can be compiled, and when run with the `-v` option, you can see that the compiler is called with the extra option:

```
./fpmake2 compile -v
Start compiling package mypackage for target x86_64-linux.
    Compiling target unit1
        Executing command "/home/michael/bin/fpc \
                        -Tlinux -Px86_64 \
                        -FUunits/x86_64-linux/ \
                        -O2 src/unit1.pp"
Generating "mypackage-x86_64-linux.fpm"
[100%] Compiled package mypackage
```

(the lines have been split for readability. On the console the log would be on one line)

To make life easier, if you are using the 3.3.1 or higher version of `fpmkunit`, you can use the `AddPackageFromDir` (988) call.

```
uses fpmkunit;

begin
    With Installer do
        begin
            AddPackageFromDir('mypackage', 'src');
            Run;
```

```

    end;
end.

```

When compiled and run, the output is the following:

```

> ./fpmake3 compile -v
Adding unit src/unit1.pp to targets of mypackage
Switching to buildunit compilation of package mypackage
Start compiling package mypackage for target x86_64-linux.
  Compiling target unit1
Compiling target BuildUnit_mypackage
Not using buildunit
  Executing command "/home/michael/bin/fpc \
                    -Tlinux -Px86_64 \
                    -FUunits/x86_64-linux/ \
                    -Fusrc \
                    units/x86_64-linux/BuildUnit_mypackage.pp"
Deleted file "units/x86_64-linux/BuildUnit_mypackage.ppu"
Deleted file "units/x86_64-linux/BuildUnit_mypackage.pp"
Generating "mypackage-x86_64-linux.fpm"
[100%] Compiled package mypackage

```

Note that the installer switched to using a build unit: the `AddPackageFromDir` (908) command does not check dependencies of the units. Instead, it switches to using a build unit (a unit that simply uses all units to be compiled) and then compiles the buildunit: in that case, the compiler will compile all files in the correct order.

See also: `CommandLineOptions` (911), `Dependencies` (913)

29.4 Commandline options

The `fpmkunit` unit takes control of parsing the command-line to decide what to do and what options to set. The command-line takes a mandatory command name followed by options controlling the behaviour.

```
fpmake command [options]
```

The `command` must be one of the following:

compile Compile all units in the selected package or packages.

build Force a build of all units in the selected package or packages.

install Install all units in the selected package or packages.

buildinstall Build and install all units in the selected package or packages.

uninstall Uninstall the selected package or packages.

clean Remove all generated files in the selected package or packages for current CPU-OS target.

distclean Remove all generated files in the selected package or packages for all targets.

archive Create archive (zip) with all units in the selected package or packages.

manifest Create a manifest suitable for import in repository.

zipinstall Install all units in the selected package or packages into an archive.

pkglist Create list of all packages suitable for FPC installer.

fpdocproject Create fpdoc project file(s) for all packages

The behaviour of the command can be controlled by specifying one of the many options:

-h or -help Shows a help message

-lc-list-commands list commands instead of actually executing them.

-n-nofpccfg Compiler will not use fpc.cfg

-v-verbose Be verbose when working.

-d-debug Add debug information when working.

-I-interactive Allow to interact with child processes.

-e-useenv Use environment to pass options to compiler.

-ie-installexamples Install the example-sources.

-bu-buildunit Compile package in Build-unit mode.

-sap-skipallprograms Skip all programs even if native-compiling/installing.

-scp-skipcrossprograms Skip programs when cross-compiling/installing.

-io-ignoreinvalidoption Ignore further invalid options.

-C-cpu=Value Compile for indicated CPU.

-O-os=Value Compile for indicated OS.

-s-subtarget=Value Compile for indicated subtarget.

-t-target=Value Compile for indicated target, string in the form CPU-OS(-subtarget).

-P-prefix=Value Use indicated prefix directory for all commands.

-B-baseinstalldir=Value Use indicated directory as base install dir.

-BI-bininstalldir=Value Use indicated directory as base install dir.

-LI-libinstalldir=Value Use indicated directory as base install dir.

-UL-localunitdir=Value Use indicated directory as local (user) unit dir.

-UG-globalunitdir=Value Use indicated directory as global unit dir.

-sp-searchpath=Value Add search directory for packages.

-U-unitinstalldir=Value Use indicated directory to install units into.

-r-compiler=Value Use indicated binary as compiler.

-f-config=Value Use indicated config file when compiling.

-o-options=Value Pass extra options to the compiler.

-df-doc-folder=Value Use indicated directory as fpdoc output folder.
-sd-single-docfile=Value Create a single fpdoc project file for all projects.
-do-doc-options=Value Name=Value File with options for fpdoc project file.
-fsp-fpunitsrcpath=Value Sourcepath to replace in fpunits.cfg on installation.
-zp-zipprefix=Value Use indicated prefix for generated archives.
-T-threads=Value Enable the indicated amount of worker threads.
-data2inc=Value Use indicated data2inc executable.

Packages can come in variants. To add a package-variant to all packages:

```
+ [variantname] += [variant1], variant2, ...
```

To add a package-variant to all packages which other packages will inherit:

```
+ [variantname] *= [variant1], variant2, ...
```

To add specific options for one package-variant:

```
--options_[variantname]_[variant1]=Value
```

See also: Usage (908), Dependencies (913)

29.5 Handling dependencies

When compiling units and programs, the installer will by default compile all targets in the order that they were specified

However, if `unita` depends on `unitb`, and `unita` was specified before `unitb`, then `unitb` will be compiled twice: when compiling `unita` the compiler will compile it because it needs `unitb`. Then `unitb2` will be compiled because it is in the list of targets. Clearly, this is not ideal or efficient.

There are 2 ways to solve this:

1. Specify the dependencies of the units. In this case, when a target has dependencies, the installer will compile dependencies first, and will compile the target last
2. Switch to using a "build unit". This unit is an empty unit which simply lists all units to be compiled. Instead of compiling the units one by one, the installer will try to compile the buildunit, and then the compiler will make sure that the units are compiled in the correct order, so every unit is compiled only once (for interdependent units the compiler may still compile them twice).

The latter is clearly the easier solution. When using a build unit, the installer will of course delete the unit sources and `.ppu` file after compiling, since they are not needed any more after compilation.

When running the installer, you can request that it tries to use a build-unit by giving the `-bu` or `-buildunit` command-line option. However, there are some cases when using a build unit is not an option. Therefore, the `TPackage.SupportedBuildModes` (1014) property can be used to indicate which build modes can be used for a package. if the `bmBuildUnit` build mode (`TBuildMode` (920)) is not in the set of buildmodes, then the installer will compile one by one, even when a buildunit was requested.

To specify dependencies, you can use the `Dependencies` (1058) property of `TTarget` (1054):

```

uses fpmkunit;

var
  P: TPackage;
  T : TTarget;

begin
  With Installer do
    begin
      P:=Packages.AddPackage('mypackage');
      P.Dependencies.Clear;
      T:=P.Targets.AddUnit('src2/unita.pp');
      T.Dependencies.AddUnit('unitb');
      P.Targets.AddUnit('src2/unitb.pp');
      Run;
    end;
end.

```

You can add a unit to the dependencies using `TDependencies.AddUnit` ([992](#)), or a complete package using `TDependencies.Add` ([992](#)).

When compiling the above and running it, the following output can be seen

```

./fpmake4 compile -v
Start compiling package mypackage for target x86_64-linux.
  Compiling target unitb
    Executing command "/home/michael/bin/fpc \
      -Tlinux -Px86_64 \
      -FUunits/x86_64-linux/ \
      src2/unitb.pp"
  Compiling target unita
    Executing command "/home/michael/bin/fpc \
      -Tlinux -Px86_64 \
      -FUunits/x86_64-linux/ \
      src2/unita.pp"
Generating "mypackage-x86_64-linux.fpm"
[100%] Compiled package mypackage

```

As you can see, the installed compiled unitb first.

See also: `CommandLineOptions` ([911](#)), `Usage` ([908](#))

29.6 Constants, types and variables

29.6.1 Constants

```
AIXSharedLibExt = '.a'
```

Constant defining the file extension for shared libraries on IBM AIX systems. AIX uses specific conventions for shared library naming and loading.

```
AllAmigaLikeOSes = [Amiga, MorphOS, AROS]
```

Constant set containing operating systems that are compatible with or derived from AmigaOS. Includes classic AmigaOS and modern Amiga-compatible systems.

```
AllBSDOSes = [FreeBSD, NetBSD, OpenBSD, Darwin, iphonesim, ios, dragonfly
]
```

Constant set containing all Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) operating system variants. Includes FreeBSD, OpenBSD, NetBSD, and Darwin/macOS.

```
AllCPUs = [Low(TCPU) .. High(TCPU) ]
```

Constant set containing all CPU architectures supported by the Free Pascal Compiler. Used for platform-independent operations or when checking CPU compatibility across all architectures.

```
AllImportLibraryOSes = AllWindowsOSes + [os2, emx, netwlibc, netware
, watcom, go32v2, macosclassic, nativent, msdos, win16]
```

Constant set containing operating systems that require import libraries for dynamic linking. Import libraries contain stubs for symbols exported from dynamic libraries.

```
AllLimit83fsOses = [go32v2, os2, emx, watcom, msdos, win16, atari
]
```

Constant set containing operating systems that enforce the traditional 8.3 filename format limitation. Used to determine when filenames need to be truncated or adjusted for compatibility.

```
AllMessages = [vLError, vlWarning, vlCommand, vlInfo]
```

Constant set containing all available message verbosity levels. Includes debug, informational, warning, and error messages for complete logging.

```
AlloSes = [Low(TOS) .. High(TOS) ]
```

A predefined set that includes all operating systems supported by the Free Pascal Compiler. This constant is used for targets that should be compiled for all available platforms.

```
AllSmartLinkLibraryOSes = [Linux, msdos, win16, palmos]
```

Constant set containing operating systems that support smart linking of libraries. Smart linking allows the linker to include only used symbols, reducing executable size.

```
AllUnixOSes = [Linux, FreeBSD, NetBSD, OpenBSD, Darwin, QNX, BeOS
, Solaris, Haiku, iphonesim, ios, aix, Android, dragonfly]
```

Constant set containing all operating systems that follow Unix conventions and standards. Includes Linux, BSD variants, and other POSIX-compatible systems.

```
AllWindowsOSes = [Win32, Win64, WinCE]
```

Constant set containing all Microsoft Windows operating system versions supported by Free Pascal. Includes desktop and server editions across different Windows generations.

`Amd64 = X86_64`

Constant representing the AMD64/x86_64 CPU architecture in the FPMake build system. This 64-bit architecture is commonly used on modern desktop and server systems from both AMD and Intel, providing extended memory addressing capabilities and improved performance over 32-bit architectures.

`DbgExt = '.dbg'`

Constant defining the file extension for debug information files. These files contain debugging symbols and information for debugger support.

`DefaultMessages = [vlError, vlWarning, vlCommand]`

Constant set defining the default verbosity levels for build system messages. Includes error and warning messages that are typically displayed to users.

`DirNotFound = '<dirnotfound>'`

Constant representing the error code returned when a directory cannot be found. Used for consistent error handling in directory operations throughout the build system.

`DLLExt = '.dll'`

Constant defining the file extension for Dynamic Link Libraries on Windows ('.dll'). DLLs contain code and resources that can be used by multiple programs simultaneously.

`DocProjectFileExt = '-docs.xml'`

Constant defining the file extension for FPDoc documentation project files. These files configure how documentation is generated from source code comments.

`DOS = Go32v2`

Represents the DOS operating system in the FPMake build system.

`DyLibExt = '.dylib'`

Constant defining the file extension for dynamic libraries on macOS ('.dylib'). These libraries provide shared functionality on Apple platforms and are loaded at runtime.

`ExeExt = '.exe'`

Constant defining the platform-specific file extension for executable files. On Windows this is '.exe', while Unix-like systems typically use no extension.

`FPMakePPFile = 'fpmake.pp'`

Constant defining the standard filename for FPMake Pascal program files ('fpmake.pp'). This is the default name for the main build script file in Free Pascal packages.

```
FpmkExt = '.fpm'
```

Constant defining the file extension for FPMake build script files ('.fpm'). These files contain build configuration and packaging instructions for Free Pascal projects.

```
IncExt = '.inc'
```

Constant defining the file extension for Pascal include files ('.inc'). These files contain source code that is included into other Pascal files using include directives.

```
LibExt = '.a'
```

Constant defining the file extension for static library files. Static libraries contain precompiled object code that is linked directly into executables at compile time.

```
MacOSX = Darwin
```

Represents the macOS (formerly Mac OS X) operating system in the FPMake build system.

```
ManifestFile = 'manifest.xml'
```

Constant defining the filename for package manifest files. Manifest files contain metadata about package contents, dependencies, and installation requirements.

```
ObjExt = '.o'
```

Constant defining the file extension for compiled object files. Object files contain machine code generated from source compilation and are linked together to create executables.

```
OSCPUSupported : Array[TOS,TCpu] of Boolean = ((False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, True, True, True, True, True, True
, True, False, True, True, True, False, False, True, True), (False
, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True, False, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False), (False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, True, True, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, True, True, True, True, True, True
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, False, True, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, False, True,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, True, False, False, True, True, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, True, True, False, False, True, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, True, False, False
```

```
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, False, True,
False, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, False, True, True, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, True, False, True, False, True, False, True, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, True, False), (False, True, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False), (False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, False, False, False, False, False, True,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
), (False, True, False, False, False, False, False, True, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, False, False
, False, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False), (False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
), (False, True, True, True, True, True, True, True, True, True, True, True, False
, True, False, True, False, False), (False, True, False, False, False
, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False), (False, True, False, False, False, False, True, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True,
False, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False), (False, False, False, True, False,
False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False), (False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, True, False, False, False), (False,
True, False, False, False, True, True, False, False, False, False, False
, True, True, False, True, False), (False, True, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False), (False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, True, False, False), (False,
False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False), (False, True, False, False,
False, True, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False), (False, False, False, False, False, False, True, False,
False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False),
(False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, False, False, True, False, False), (False, False, False,
False, False, False, True, False, False, False, False, False, False, False
, False, True, False))
```

Two-dimensional array that defines which CPU architectures are supported for each operating system. Used to validate target platform combinations before attempting compilation.

```
PasExt = '.pas'
```

Constant defining the standard file extension for Pascal source files ('.pas'). Used to identify Pascal source files in package building and compilation operations.

```
PkgListFileBase = 'pkg-'
```

Constant defining the base name for package list files used by the package management system. Combined with extensions to create complete package list filenames.

```
PkgListFileExt = '.lst'
```

Constant defining the file extension for package list files. These files contain lists of available packages and their metadata.

```
PPC = PowerPC
```

Represents the PowerPC 32-bit architecture in the FPMake build system.

```
PPC64 = PowerPC64
```

Represents the PowerPC 64-bit architecture in the FPMake build system.

```
PPExt = '.pp'
```

Constant defining the file extension for Pascal program files ('.pp'). Designates main program files that contain an executable program rather than a unit.

```
PPUExt = UnitExt
```

Constant defining the file extension for Free Pascal compiled unit files ('.ppu'). These binary files contain the compiled interface and implementation of Pascal units, allowing for separate compilation and linking in the FPMake build process.

```
ProgramTargets = [ttProgram, ttExampleProgram, ttSharedLibrary]
```

Constant set containing all target types that represent executable programs. Used to filter and identify program targets in build operations.

```
RsJExt = '.rsj'
```

Constant defining the file extension for resource string files in JSON format ('.rsj'). These files store resource strings in JSON format for localization and internationalization.

```
RstExt = '.rst'
```

Constant defining the file extension for resource string files ('.rst'). These files contain compiled resource strings extracted from Pascal source files for localization and internationalization.

```
SharedLibExt = '.so'
```

Constant defining the platform-specific file extension for shared/dynamic libraries. Shared libraries are loaded at runtime and can be shared between multiple executables.

```
UnitExt = '.ppu'
```


Constant defining the standard file extension for Free Pascal unit source files ('.pas'). This extension is used by the FPMake system to identify and process unit source files during compilation and package building operations.

```
UnitTargets = [ttUnit, ttImplicitUnit, ttCleanOnlyUnit, ttExampleUnit
]
```

Constant set containing all target types that represent Pascal units. Used to filter and identify unit targets in build operations.

```
ZipExt = '.zip'
```

Constant defining the file extension for ZIP archive files ('.zip'). Used for creating and identifying package distribution archives in the fpmake system.

29.6.2 Types

```
TArchiveEvent = procedure(const AFileName: string; List: TStrings
)
of object
```

TArchiveEvent defines the signature for event handlers that process archive operations. This event type enables custom archive processing and notification during package archiving.

Event handlers receive the archive filename and file list, allowing custom processing, validation, or modification of archive operations within the build system.

```
TArchiveProc = procedure(const AFileName: string; List: TStrings)
```

TArchiveProc defines the signature for procedural archive handlers that process file archiving operations. This procedure type enables pluggable archive implementations and custom archiving logic.

Archive procedures receive the target filename and file list, implementing the actual compression and archive creation functionality for the build system.

```
TBuildMode = (bmOneByOne, bmBuildUnit)
```

Table 29.2: Enumeration values for type TBuildMode

Value	Explanation
bmBuildUnit	Use a build unit
bmOneByOne	Build targets one by one sequentially

TBuildMode specifies how the build process should execute package compilation:

bmOneByOne specifies that build targets should be compiled sequentially, one after another. This mode relies on proper dependency specification.

bmBuildUnit specifies that individual Pascal units should not be compiled separately. Rather they are compiled as part of a larger unit compilation: the build unit.

TBuildModes = Set of TBuildMode = (bmBuildUnit, bmOneByOne)

Set containing one or more TBuildMode (920) values.

Used to specify multiple build modes.

TCheckDependencyResult = (cdAvailable, cdNotAvailable, cdNotYetAvailable
)

Table 29.3: Enumeration values for type TCheckDependencyResult

Value	Explanation
cdAvailable	Dependency is available and can be used
cdNotAvailable	Dependency is not available and cannot be found
cdNotYetAvailable	Dependency is not yet available but may become available later

TCheckDependencyResult indicates the status of dependency availability checks.

Used to determine whether required dependencies are available for compilation.

cdAvailable indicates that the required dependency is present in the system and can be used for compilation. This result allows the build process to proceed.

cdNotAvailable indicates that the required dependency cannot be found in the system and is not available for use. This result prevents the build process from proceeding due to missing dependencies.

cdNotYetAvailable indicates that the dependency is not currently available but will become available after other dependencies are built or installed

TCommandAt = (caBeforeCompile, caAfterCompile, caBeforeInstall,
caAfterInstall, caBeforeArchive, caAfterArchive,
caBeforeClean, caAfterClean, caBeforeDownload,
caAfterDownload)

Table 29.4: Enumeration values for type TCommandAt

Value	Explanation
caAfterArchive	Execute command after archive creation
caAfterClean	Execute command after cleaning
caAfterCompile	Execute command after compilation
caAfterDownload	Execute command after downloading
caAfterInstall	Execute command after installation
caBeforeArchive	Execute command before archive creation
caBeforeClean	Execute command before cleaning
caBeforeCompile	Execute command before compilation
caBeforeDownload	Execute command before downloading
caBeforeInstall	Execute command before installation

Enumeration that specifies when a custom command should be executed during the build process. Determines the phase at which user-defined commands are run relative to compilation steps.

caBeforeCompile specifies that a custom command should be executed before the compilation phase begins.

caAfterCompile specifies that a custom command should be executed after compilation completes successfully.

caBeforeInstall specifies that a custom command should be executed before the installation phase begins.

caAfterInstall specifies that a custom command should be executed after installation completes successfully.

caBeforeArchive specifies that a custom command should be executed before archive creation begins.

caAfterArchive specifies that a custom command should be executed after archive creation completes.

caBeforeClean specifies that a custom command should be executed before the clean operation begins.

caAfterClean specifies that a custom command should be executed after the clean operation completes.

caBeforeDownload specifies that a custom command should be executed before download operations begin.

caAfterDownload specifies that a custom command should be executed after download operations complete successfully.

`TCompilerMode = (cmFPC, cmTP, cmObjFPC, cmDelphi, cmMacPas)`

Table 29.5: Enumeration values for type TCompilerMode

Value	Explanation
cmDelphi	Delphi compatibility mode
cmFPC	Standard Free Pascal mode
cmMacPas	Macintosh Pascal compatibility mode
cmObjFPC	Object Pascal mode with object-oriented features
cmTP	Turbo Pascal compatibility mode

`TCompilerMode` specifies the language compatibility mode used by the Free Pascal Compiler. Each mode affects syntax rules, default behavior, and language feature availability during compilation.

`TCompilerModes = Set of TCompilerMode = (cmDelphi, cmFPC, cmMacPas, cmObjFPC, cmTP)`

`TCompilerModes` is a set type that can contain multiple `TCompilerMode` (922) values, allowing build configurations to specify which compiler language modes should be supported or used. This enables flexible language compatibility settings for different parts of a package build process.

`TConditionalDestStringClass = class of TConditionalDestString`

`TConditionalDestStringClass` is a class reference type that points to `TConditionalDestString` (968) or its descendant classes.

This type enables polymorphic creation of different conditional destination string implementations at runtime.

It is used in factory methods and class registration systems for dynamic object instantiation.

```
TConditionalStringClass = class of TConditionalString
```

`TConditionalStringClass` is a class reference type that points to `TConditionalString` (970) or its descendant classes.

This type is used in factory methods and class registration systems to create conditional string instances dynamically.

It enables polymorphic creation of different conditional string implementations at runtime.

```
TCopyFileProc = procedure(const APackage: TPackage;
    const ASourceFileName: string;
    const ADestFileName: string) of object
```

`TCopyFileProc` defines the signature for callback procedures that handle file copying operations during package installation. This procedural type enables custom file copying implementations.

The procedure receives source and destination file paths and handles the actual file copying process with appropriate error handling and progress reporting.

```
TCpu = (cpuNone, i386, m68k, powerpc, sparc, x86_64, arm, powerpc64, avr, armeb
    ,
    mips, mipsel, jvm, i8086, aarch64, sparc64)
```

Table 29.6: Enumeration values for type `TCpu`

Value	Explanation
<code>aarch64</code>	ARM 64-bit architecture
<code>arm</code>	ARM 32-bit architecture
<code>armeb</code>	ARM 32-bit big-endian architecture
<code>avr</code>	Atmel AVR microcontroller architecture
<code>cpuNone</code>	No specific CPU architecture
<code>i386</code>	Intel 32-bit x86 architecture
<code>i8086</code>	Intel 16-bit x86 architecture
<code>jvm</code>	Java Virtual Machine bytecode target
<code>m68k</code>	Motorola 68000 architecture
<code>mips</code>	MIPS 32-bit big-endian architecture
<code>mipsel</code>	MIPS 32-bit little-endian architecture
<code>powerpc</code>	PowerPC 32-bit architecture
<code>powerpc64</code>	PowerPC 64-bit architecture
<code>sparc</code>	SPARC 32-bit architecture
<code>sparc64</code>	SPARC 64-bit architecture
<code>x86_64</code>	Intel/AMD 64-bit x86 architecture

`TCpu` enumerates the CPU architectures supported by the Free Pascal Compiler for cross-platform compilation. This enumeration is used throughout the build system to specify target CPU architectures and handle CPU-specific compilation requirements.

```

TCPUS = Set of TCpu = (aarch64, arm, armb, avr, cpuNone, i386, i8086, jvm
    , m68k, mips, mipsel,
        powerpc, powerpc64, sparc, sparc64, x86_64
    )

```

TCPUS is a set type that can contain multiple TCpu (923) values, enabling the specification of multiple target CPU architectures for a single build configuration. This allows packages and targets to support multiple CPU architectures simultaneously, facilitating cross-platform development and deployment strategies.

```

TDependencyType = (depPackage, depImplicitPackage, depUnit, depInclude
    )

```

Table 29.7: Enumeration values for type TDependencyType

Value	Explanation
depImplicitPackage	Implicit dependency on another package
depInclude	Dependency on an include file
depPackage	Dependency on another package
depUnit	Dependency on a specific unit

TDependencyType specifies the different kinds of dependencies that can be declared in the fpmake build system. Each type affects how the dependency is resolved and processed.

depPackage indicates a dependency on another complete package. This type ensures the referenced package is available and properly compiled before building the current package.

depImplicitPackage indicates an automatic dependency on another package that is discovered through code analysis. These dependencies are typically detected automatically without explicit declaration.

depUnit indicates a dependency on a specific Pascal unit. This type ensures the referenced unit is compiled and available before compiling units that use it.

depInclude indicates a dependency on an include file (.inc, .pas files) that is incorporated into source code using the {\$I} directive. Ensures include files are available during compilation.

```

TDependencyTypes = Set of TDependencyType = (depImplicitPackage, depInclude
    , depPackage, depUnit)

```

A set type containing one or more values from the TDependencyType (924) enumeration. Used to specify multiple dependency types when filtering or processing package dependencies.

```

TDictionaryClass = class of TDictionary

```

TDictionaryClass is a class reference type used for creating dictionary instances dynamically. This type enables runtime selection of different dictionary implementations and configurations.

```

TFileType = (ftSource, ftUnit, ftObject, ftResource, ftExecutable,
    ftStaticLibrary, ftSharedLibrary)

```

Table 29.8: Enumeration values for type TFileType

Value	Explanation
ftExecutable	Executable program file
ftObject	Object file produced by compilation
ftResource	Resource file containing application resources
ftSharedLibrary	Dynamic shared library file
ftSource	Pascal source code file
ftStaticLibrary	Static library file for linking
ftUnit	Compiled Pascal unit file

TFileType defines the different types of files that can be produced by build targets in the fpmake system. This classification determines how files are compiled, linked, and installed.

ftSource represents Pascal source code files (.pas, .pp, .p files) that contain program or unit source code. These files are compiled by the Free Pascal Compiler to produce executable programs or compiled units.

ftUnit represents compiled Pascal unit files (.ppu files) that contain compiled code and interface information. These files are produced by the compiler and used for linking with other units and programs.

ftObject represents object files (.o files on Unix, .obj on Windows) containing compiled machine code. These intermediate files are produced during compilation and used by the linker to create final executables or libraries.

ftResource represents resource files (.res, .rc files) containing application resources such as icons, bitmaps, strings, and other data. These files are compiled into applications to provide user interface elements and embedded data.

ftExecutable represents executable program files (.exe on Windows, no extension on Unix) that contain runnable machine code. These files are the final output of compiling and linking Pascal programs.

ftStaticLibrary represents static library files (.a files on Unix, .lib on Windows) containing compiled code that is linked directly into executables at compile time. Static libraries become part of the final executable.

ftSharedLibrary represents dynamic shared library files (.so on Unix, .dll on Windows) containing compiled code that is loaded at runtime. Shared libraries can be used by multiple programs simultaneously and are loaded dynamically when needed.

```
TFileTypes = Set of TFileType = (ftExecutable, ftObject, ftResource
    , ftSharedLibrary, ftSource,
    ftStaticLibrary, ftUnit)
```

TFileTypes is a set type that can contain multiple TFileType (925) values, allowing flexible specification of which file types are supported or required by build targets. This set-based approach enables targets to accept multiple input file types or produce different output types based on compilation settings.

```
TFPDocFormat = (ffHtml, ffHtm, ffXHtml, ffLaTeX, ffXMLStruct, ffChm)
```

Table 29.9: Enumeration values for type TFPDocFormat

Value	Explanation
<code>ffChm</code>	Compressed HTML Help format
<code>ffHtm</code>	HTM format output
<code>ffHtml</code>	HTML format output
<code>ffLaTex</code>	LaTeX format output
<code>ffXHtml</code>	XHTML format output
<code>ffXMLStruct</code>	XML structured output

Enumeration defining the various output formats supported by the FPDoc documentation generator. Each format represents a different way to present the generated documentation.

ffHtml generates documentation in HTML format, creating web pages that can be viewed in any web browser.

ffHtm generates documentation in HTM format, an alternative HTML format with .htm file extension. This format provides the same functionality as HTML but uses the traditional 8.3 filename convention.

ffXHtml generates documentation in XHTML format, a stricter XML-compliant version of HTML.

ffLaTex generates documentation in LaTeX format, suitable for producing high-quality printed documentation. LaTeX output can be processed to create PDF, PostScript, or DVI files with professional typesetting.

ffXMLStruct generates documentation in structured XML format, providing a machine-readable representation of the documentation data.

ffChm generates documentation in Compressed HTML Help (CHM) format, creating Windows Help files with full-text search capabilities.

```
TFPDocFormats = Set of TFPDocFormat = (ffChm, ffHtm, ffHtml, ffLaTex
, ffXHtml, ffXMLStruct)
```

A set type containing one or more values from the TFPDocFormat (926) enumeration. Allows specifying multiple documentation output formats to be generated simultaneously.

```
TfpmPluginClass = class of TfpmPlugin
```

TfpmPluginClass is a class reference type used for registering and instantiating plugin classes. This type enables dynamic plugin creation and management within the plugin system.

```
TInstallerClass = class of TCustomInstaller
```

TInstallerClass is a class reference type used for dynamic installer creation and management. This type enables runtime selection and instantiation of different installer implementations.

The class reference allows the system to create a custom installer instance.

```
TInstallMode = (imInstall, imUnInstall)
```


Table 29.11: Enumeration values for type TNotifyEventAction

Value	Explanation
neaAfterArchive	Event triggered after archiving completes
neaAfterClean	Event triggered after cleanup completes
neaAfterCompile	Event triggered after compilation completes
neaAfterCreateBuildengine	Event triggered after build engine creation
neaAfterDocProject	Event triggered after documentation project processing
neaAfterInstall	Event triggered after installation completes
neaAfterManifest	Event triggered after manifest creation
neaAfterPkgList	Event triggered after package list creation
neaAfterUnInstall	Event triggered after uninstallation completes
neaBeforeArchive	Event triggered before archiving starts
neaBeforeClean	Event triggered before cleanup starts
neaBeforeCompile	Event triggered before compilation starts
neaBeforeCreateBuildEngine	Event triggered before build engine creation
neaBeforeDocProject	Event triggered before documentation project processing
neaBeforeInstall	Event triggered before installation starts
neaBeforeManifest	Event triggered before manifest creation
neaBeforePkgList	Event triggered before package list creation
neaBeforeUnInstall	Event triggered before uninstallation starts

TNotifyEventAction defines the different stages in the build process where notification events can be triggered.

This enumeration enables attaching custom actions or handlers to specific points in the build pipeline. Build systems use these action points to execute custom commands, perform validation, or provide progress feedback.

```
TNotifyEventActionSet = Set of TNotifyEventAction = (neaAfterArchive
, neaAfterClean, neaAfterCompile,
, neaAfterCreateBuildengine
, neaAfterDocProject,
, neaAfterInstall, neaAfterManifest
, neaAfterPkgList,
, neaAfterUnInstall, neaBeforeArchive
, neaBeforeClean,
, neaBeforeCompile, neaBeforeCreateBuildEngine
,
, neaBeforeDocProject, neaBeforeInstall,
, neaBeforeManifest, neaBeforePkgList,
, neaBeforeUnInstall)
```

TNotifyEventActionSet is a set type that can contain multiple TNotifyEventAction (927) values.

This set enables efficient combination and testing of multiple event action types in a single variable. Build systems use this set type to specify which events should trigger specific notification handlers.

```
TNotifyProcEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject)
```

Procedure type used for simple notification callbacks in the build system. Provides a sender parameter to identify the object that triggered the notification.

```
TOS = (osNone, linux, go32v2, win32, os2, freebsd, beos, netbsd, amiga, atari
,
    solaris, qnx, netware, openbsd, wdosx, palmos, macosclassic, darwin
, emx,
    watcom, morphos, netwlibc, win64, wince, gba, nds, embedded
, symbian,
    haiku, iphonesim, aix, java, android, nativent, msdos, wii
, aros,
    dragonfly, win16, ios)
```

Table 29.12: Enumeration values for type TOS

Value	Explanation
aix	IBM AIX operating system
amiga	Amiga operating system
android	Android mobile operating system
aros	AROS Research Operating System
atari	Atari TOS operating system
beos	BeOS operating system
darwin	macOS (Darwin) operating system
dragonfly	DragonFly BSD operating system
embedded	Generic embedded system
emx	EMX DOS/OS2 extender
freebsd	FreeBSD operating system
gba	Nintendo Game Boy Advance
go32v2	DOS 32-bit extender operating system
haiku	Haiku operating system
ios	Apple iOS mobile operating system
iphonesim	iOS Simulator environment
java	Java Virtual Machine platform
linux	Linux operating system
macosclassic	Classic Mac OS operating system
morphos	MorphOS operating system
msdos	MS-DOS operating system
native	Windows Native NT
nds	Nintendo DS handheld system
netbsd	NetBSD operating system
netware	Novell NetWare operating system
netwlibc	NetWare with LibC
openbsd	OpenBSD operating system
os2	IBM OS/2 operating system
osNone	No specific operating system
palms	Palm OS operating system
qnx	QNX real-time operating system
solaris	Solaris operating system
symbian	Symbian mobile operating system
watcom	Watcom DOS extender
wdosx	WDOSX DOS extender
wii	Nintendo Wii gaming console
win16	Windows 16-bit operating system
win32	Windows 32-bit operating system
win64	Windows 64-bit operating system
wince	Windows CE operating system

TOS enumerates the operating systems supported by the Free Pascal Compiler for cross-platform compilation. This enumeration is used throughout the build system to specify target operating systems and handle OS-specific compilation and installation requirements.

```
TOSes = Set of TOS = (aix, amiga, android, aros, atari, beos, darwin, dragonfly
, embedded, emx,
    freebsd, gba, go32v2, haiku, ios, iphonesim, java
, linux, macosclassic,
```

```

    morphos, msdos, nativent, nds, netbsd, netware
, netwlibc, openbsd, os2,
    osNone, palmos, qnx, solaris, symbian, watcom
, wdosx, wii, win16, win32,
    win64, wince)

```

TOSes is a set type that can contain multiple TOS (929) values, allowing the specification of multiple target operating systems for build configurations. This enables packages to define which operating systems they support or require, and allows for flexible cross-platform compilation strategies within the FPMake system.

```
TPackageDictionaryClass = class of TPackageDictionary
```

TPackageDictionaryClass is a class reference type specifically for package-related dictionary implementations. This type enables dynamic creation of dictionaries optimized for package configuration and metadata management.

```
TProcessPackageResult = (ppHandled, ppDelayed)
```

Table 29.13: Enumeration values for type TProcessPackageResult

Value	Explanation
ppDelayed	Package processing was delayed for later execution
ppHandled	Package was successfully processed and handled

TProcessPackageResult indicates the outcome of package processing operations.

Used to communicate success, failure, or special handling conditions during package operations.

ppHandled indicates that the package processing operation completed successfully and all required actions were performed. This result signals successful completion of the package operation.

ppDelayed indicates that the package processing operation has been delayed and will be executed at a later time. This result is used for dependency ordering or deferred processing scenarios.

```

TReplaceFunction = function(const AName: string; const Args: string
)
    : string of object

```

TReplaceFunction is a function pointer type for implementing dynamic string replacement callbacks.

Functions of this type are used in string substitution systems to provide custom replacement logic for variable expansion.

The function receives a name and arguments array, returning the replacement string value.

```

TRunMode = (rmCompile, rmBuild, rmInstall, rmBuildInstall, rmArchive,
    rmClean, rmDistClean, rmManifest, rmZipInstall, rmPkgList
,
    rmUnInstall, rmInfo, rmDocProject)

```

Table 29.14: Enumeration values for type TRunMode

Value	Explanation
rmArchive	Archive mode - create distribution archive
rmBuild	Build mode - compile and link
rmBuildInstall	Build and install mode
rmClean	Clean mode - remove generated files
rmCompile	Compile mode - only compile sources
rmDistClean	Distribution clean mode - remove all generated files and directories
rmDocProject	Generate documentation project file
rmInfo	Information mode - display package information
rmInstall	Install mode - install files
rmManifest	Generate package manifest file
rmPkgList	List available packages
rmUnInstall	Uninstall mode - remove installed package files
rmZipInstall	Install package from ZIP archive

Enumeration that defines the different run (operation) modes available in the build system. Determines what actions are performed when the build system is executed.

rmCompile specifies that the build system should only compile source files without performing installation or packaging operations. This mode produces compiled units and executables in the build directory.

rmBuild specifies that the build system should compile source files and perform linking operations to create final executables and libraries. This mode produces complete build artifacts ready for installation.

rmInstall specifies that the build system should install compiled files to their target locations in the system. This mode performs both building and installation of package components.

rmBuildInstall specifies that the build system should perform both compilation and installation operations in a single step. This mode combines building and installing for convenient package deployment.

rmArchive specifies that the build system should create distribution archives (.zip, .tar) containing package sources and compiled files. This mode prepares packages for distribution and deployment.

rmClean specifies that the build system should remove generated files such as compiled units, object files, and executables. This mode cleans the build environment for a fresh compilation.

rmDistClean specifies that the build system should perform a thorough cleanup, removing all generated files, directories, and build artifacts. This mode returns the package to its original source-only state.

rmManifest specifies that the build system should generate a package manifest file listing all package components, dependencies, and metadata. This mode creates documentation of package contents.

rmZipInstall specifies that the build system should install a package from a ZIP archive. This mode extracts and installs pre-packaged distribution files.

rmPkgList specifies that the build system should display a list of available packages in the system. This mode provides information about installable and installed packages.

rmUnInstall specifies that the build system should remove previously installed package files from the system. This mode performs cleanup of installed package components.

rmDocProject specifies that the build system should generate documentation project files for use with FPDoc or other documentation tools. This mode creates configuration files for documentation generation.

rmInfo specifies that the build system should display detailed information about a package, including version, dependencies, targets, and configuration.

```
TSourceType = (stDoc, stSrc, stExample, stTest)
```

Table 29.15: Enumeration values for type TSourceType

Value	Explanation
stDoc	Documentation source file
stExample	Example source file
stSrc	Pascal source code file
stTest	Test source file

Enumeration that classifies source files according to their type and role in the compilation process. Determines how each source file should be processed during building.

stDoc represents documentation source files, typically XML files used by FPDoc to generate formatted documentation. These files are processed separately from regular source code compilation.

stSrc represents Pascal source code files (.pas, .pp) that contain program or unit implementations. These files undergo normal compilation processing by the Free Pascal Compiler.

stTest represents test source files that contain unit tests or test programs for validating package functionality. These files are compiled and executed as part of the testing process.

stExample represents example or demonstration source files that showcase package functionality. These files are typically compiled separately and may have different installation rules than regular package sources.

```
TSourceTypes = Set of TSourceType = (stDoc, stExample, stSrc, stTest)
```

A set type containing one or more values from the TSourceType (933) enumeration. Used to specify multiple source file types for filtering or processing operations.

```
TTargetState = (tsNeutral, tsConsidering, tsNoCompile, tsCompiled,
  tsInstalled, tsNotFound)
```

Table 29.16: Enumeration values for type TTargetState

Value	Explanation
tsCompiled	Successfully compiled
tsConsidering	Being considered for compilation
tsInstalled	Successfully installed
tsNeutral	Neutral state, not yet processed
tsNoCompile	Should not be compiled
tsNotFound	Target file not found

TTargetState is an enumeration type that tracks the current state of a build target during the compilation process. Used to prevent duplicate processing and ensure correct build order dependencies. It has the following values:

tsNeutral indicates that a build target has not yet been processed or evaluated for compilation. This is the initial state of targets before build operations begin.

tsConsidering indicates that a build target is currently being evaluated for compilation. This intermediate state prevents infinite recursion during dependency analysis.

tsNoCompile indicates that a build target should be excluded from compilation. This state is used for targets that are not applicable to the current build configuration or platform.

tsCompiled indicates that a build target has been successfully compiled. Targets in this state have completed the compilation phase and are ready for installation or further processing.

tsInstalled indicates that a build target has been successfully installed to its destination location. This represents the final successful state in the build and installation process.

tsNotFound indicates that the source file for a build target could not be located. This error state prevents compilation and signals missing or incorrectly specified source files.

```
TTargetStates = Set of TTargetState = (tsCompiled,tsConsidering,tsInstalled
,tsNeutral,
tsNoCompile,tsNotFound)
```

A set type containing one or more values from the TTargetState (933) enumeration. Used for filtering or checking multiple target states in batch operations.

```
TTargetType = (ttProgram,ttUnit,ttImplicitUnit,ttCleanOnlyUnit,
ttExampleUnit,ttExampleProgram,ttFPDoc,ttSharedLibrary
)
```

Table 29.17: Enumeration values for type TTargetType

Value	Explanation
ttCleanOnlyUnit	Unit processed only during clean operations
ttExampleProgram	Example program for demonstration purposes
ttExampleUnit	Example unit for demonstration purposes
ttFPDoc	FPDoc documentation generation target
ttImplicitUnit	Unit with implicit compilation dependencies
ttProgram	Executable program target
ttSharedLibrary	Dynamic shared library target
ttUnit	Regular Pascal unit target

TTargetType defines the different categories of build targets supported by the fpmake system:

ttProgram represents a build target that produces an executable program file

ttUnit represents a build target that produces a compiled Pascal unit. Unit targets generate .ppu files that can be used by other units and programs through the uses clause.

ttImplicitUnit represents a unit target that is compiled automatically when needed by other targets, without being explicitly listed in the build process.

ttCleanOnlyUnit represents a unit target that is only processed during clean operations to remove generated files. These units are not compiled during normal build processes but are included in cleanup operations.

ttExampleUnit represents a unit target that serves as an example or demonstration. Example units are typically compiled separately from the main package and may have different installation rules.

ttExampleProgram represents a program target that serves as an example or demonstration. Example programs showcase package functionality and are typically compiled separately from the main package components.

ttSharedLibrary represents a build target that produces a dynamic shared library (.so on Unix, .dll on Windows).

ttFPDoc represents a target that generates documentation using the FPDoc system. These targets documentation source code and XML documentation files.

```
TTargetTypes = Set of TTargetType = (ttCleanOnlyUnit, ttExampleProgram
    , ttExampleUnit, ttFPDoc,
    ttImplicitUnit, ttProgram, ttSharedLibrary
    , ttUnit)
```

A set type containing one or more values from the TTargetType (934) enumeration.

```
TVerboseLevel = (vlError, vlWarning, vlInfo, vldebug, vlCommand)
```


Table 29.18: Enumeration values for type TVerboseLevel

Value	Explanation
vlCommand	Display executed commands
vldebug	Display debug messages
vlError	Display only error messages
vlInfo	Display informational messages
vlWarning	Display warning and error messages

Enumeration that controls the amount of information displayed during build operations. Higher verbosity levels include all messages from lower levels plus additional detail.

vlError specifies the lowest verbosity level, showing only critical error messages. This level provides minimal output, displaying only messages that indicate serious problems or failures.

vlWarning displays warning messages. This level shows potential problems and issues that may not prevent compilation but could affect the build process.

vlInfo displays general informational messages about the build process, including warnings and errors. This level provides feedback about what operations are being performed during compilation and installation.

vldebug displays detailed debug information for troubleshooting build issues. This level provides extensive output including internal operations, variable values, and detailed execution flow information.

vlCommand displays the actual commands being executed during the build process. This level shows compiler invocations, tool executions, and system commands, enabling verification and debugging of build operations.

```
TVerboseLevels = Set of TVerboseLevel = (vlCommand, vldebug, vlError, vlInfo, vlWarning)
```

A set type containing one or more values from the TVerboseLevel (935) enumeration. Allows combining multiple verbosity levels for custom output filtering.

29.6.3 Variables

```
ArchiveFilesProc : TArchiveProc = Nil
```

ArchiveFilesProc is a global procedure variable that holds the archive implementation function. This variable enables system-wide configuration of the archive creation mechanism.

The archive procedure is called to perform actual file compression and archive creation, allowing pluggable archive implementations such as ZIP, TAR, or other compression formats.

```
Defaults : TCustomDefaults
```

Defaults is a global variable that holds the system-wide default configuration instance. This variable provides access to default build settings, paths, and options throughout the fpmake system.

The defaults instance contains configuration values for compiler paths, installation directories, build options, and other system-wide settings that apply to all package operations.

```
DictionaryClass : TDictionaryClass = TDictionary
```

`DictionaryClass` is a global variable that holds the class reference for the default dictionary implementation. This variable enables runtime configuration of which dictionary class to use throughout the build system.

The dictionary class is used for creating dictionary instances for template processing, variable substitution, and configuration management within `fpmake` operations.

```
GlobalDictionary : TDictionary
```

`GlobalDictionary` is a global dictionary instance used for system-wide variable storage and template processing. This dictionary provides a shared namespace for global configuration variables and template substitutions.

The global dictionary is accessible throughout the build system and enables sharing of common variables and settings across different packages and build operations.

```
OnArchiveFiles : TArchiveEvent = Nil
```

`OnArchiveFiles` is a global event handler variable for customizing archive file operations. This event handler enables system-wide customization of archive processing behavior.

When assigned, this event handler is called during archive operations to enable custom processing, validation, or modification of archive creation and file packaging operations.

```
PackageDictionaryClass : TPackageDictionaryClass =  
    TPackageDictionary
```

`PackageDictionaryClass` is a global variable that holds the class reference for the default package dictionary implementation. This variable configures which dictionary class to use for package-specific operations.

The package dictionary class is used for creating specialized dictionaries that handle package metadata, configuration variables, and package-specific template processing within the build system.

29.7 Procedures and functions

29.7.1 AddCustomFpmakeCommandlineOption

Synopsis: Adds custom command line option to `FPMake`

Declaration: `procedure AddCustomFpmakeCommandlineOption`
(const ACommandLineOption: string;
const HelpMessage: string)

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a custom command line option that will be recognized by the `FPMake` build system. This allows packages to define their own command line parameters for build customization.

After the command-line has been parsed, the value specified by the user can be retrieved with the `GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue` (940) function.

See also: `GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue` (940)

29.7.2 AddLibraryExtension

Synopsis: Adds appropriate extension to library name

Declaration: `function AddLibraryExtension(const LibraryName: string; AOS: TOS)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddLibraryExtension` adds the platform-appropriate file extension to a library name. This function ensures proper library naming conventions for different operating systems.

The function appends extensions such as `.dll` for Windows, `.so` for Linux, or `.dylib` for macOS, ensuring correct library file naming for the target platform.

29.7.3 AddProgramExtension

Synopsis: Adds appropriate extension to program name

Declaration: `function AddProgramExtension(const ExecutableName: string; AOS: TOS)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddProgramExtension` adds the platform-appropriate file extension to an executable program name. This function ensures proper executable naming conventions for different operating systems.

The function appends extensions such as `.exe` for Windows or leaves names unchanged for Unix-like systems, ensuring correct executable file naming for the target platform.

29.7.4 ChangeDir

Synopsis: Changes current working directory

Declaration: `procedure ChangeDir(const APath: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeDir` changes the current working directory to the specified path and handles errors appropriately. This procedure provides controlled directory navigation during build operations.

The procedure validates the target directory exists and is accessible before changing the working directory.

29.7.5 CPUSToString

Synopsis: Converts set of CPU architectures to string

Declaration: `function CPUSToString(CPUS: TCPUS) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CPUSToString` converts a set of CPU architecture identifiers to a comma-separated string representation. This function provides a readable format for displaying multiple CPU architecture targets.

The string representation is used when logging supported architectures and configuration display.

29.7.6 CPUToString

Synopsis: Converts CPU architecture identifier to string

Declaration: `function CPUToString(CPU: TCpu) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CPUToString` converts a CPU architecture identifier enumeration value to its string representation. This function provides human-readable names for CPU architectures used in build configuration.

The string representation is useful for logging, configuration files, and user interface display of architecture-specific information within the build system.

29.7.7 CurrentCPU

Synopsis: Gets the current CPU architecture

Declaration: `function CurrentCPU : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrentCPU` returns the current CPU architecture identifier for the running platform. This function provides architecture detection for conditional compilation and architecture-specific build settings.

The CPU architecture identifier is used to select appropriate compiler targets, optimization options, and platform-specific code generation settings during the build process.

29.7.8 CurrentOS

Synopsis: Gets the current operating system

Declaration: `function CurrentOS : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrentOS` returns the current operating system identifier for the running platform. This function provides platform detection for conditional compilation and platform-specific build operations.

The operating system identifier is used to select appropriate compiler options, file paths, and installation procedures for the target platform.

29.7.9 FixPath

Synopsis: Normalizes and fixes file path format

Declaration: `function FixPath(const APath: string) : string`
`function FixPath(const APath: string; AIsDir: Boolean) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FixPath` normalizes file paths by converting directory separators to the platform-appropriate format and ensuring consistent path representation. This function handles cross-platform path compatibility.

The normalization includes converting forward/backward slashes, removing redundant separators, and ensuring proper directory path formatting for the target operating system.

29.7.10 GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue

Synopsis: Gets value of custom command line option

Declaration:

```
function GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue
                                     (const ACommandLineOption: string)
                                     : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCustomFpmakeCommandlineOptionValue` retrieves the value of a previously registered custom command line option. This function enables packages to access their custom command-line parameters during build operations.

The function returns the value specified for the command line option.

The custom command-line option must have been registered using the `AddCustomFpmakeCommandlineOption` (937) function first.

See also: `AddCustomFpmakeCommandlineOption` (937)

29.7.11 GetDefaultLibGCCDir

Synopsis: Gets default GCC library directory

Declaration:

```
function GetDefaultLibGCCDir(CPU: TCpu; OS: TOS;
                             var ErrorMessage: string) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDefaultLibGCCDir` determines the default GCC library directory for the specified CPU architecture and operating system. This function locates system GCC libraries required for linking compiled programs.

The function searches standard locations and returns the appropriate GCC library path.

29.7.12 GetImportLibraryFilename

Synopsis: Gets filename for import library

Declaration:

```
function GetImportLibraryFilename(const UnitName: string; AOS: TOS)
                                   : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetImportLibraryFilename` generates the appropriate import library filename for a unit on the specified operating system. Import libraries are used on platforms like Windows to link against dynamic libraries.

The function constructs the correct import library name following platform conventions, enabling proper linking with dynamic libraries during the compilation process.

29.7.13 GetPluginManager

Synopsis: Gets the global plugin manager instance

Declaration:

```
function GetPluginManager : TfpmPluginManager
```

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the global plugin manager instance used by the FPMake build system. The plugin manager handles loading and managing build system extensions and add-ins.

29.7.14 Installer

Synopsis: Gets the current installer instance

Declaration:

```
function Installer(InstallerClass: TInstallerClass) : TCustomInstaller
                    ; overload
function Installer : TCustomInstaller; overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Installer` returns the current installer instance or creates a new one using the specified installer class. Note that only one class can be instantiated. This function provides access to the global installer object for package management operations.

The installer instance manages the build process, package compilation, installation, and other package lifecycle operations within the `fpmake` system.

If no class is specified and no instance is present yet, the `TFPCInstaller` (999) class is used to create the installer class.

See also: `TFPCInstaller` (999)

29.7.15 IsDifferentFromBuild

Synopsis: Checks if target differs from build platform

Declaration:

```
function IsDifferentFromBuild(ACpu: TCpu; AOs: TOS) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IsDifferentFromBuild` determines whether the specified target operating system and CPU architecture differ from the current build platform. This function enables detection of cross-compilation scenarios.

The function returns `True` when building for a different platform than the current build system.

29.7.16 IsRelativePath

Synopsis: Checks if a path is relative

Declaration:

```
function IsRelativePath(const APath: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IsRelativePath` determines whether a file path is relative or absolute by examining its format. This function provides platform-aware path type detection for build system operations.

The function returns `True` for relative paths and `False` for absolute paths.

29.7.17 MakeTargetString

Synopsis: Creates target string from parameters

Declaration:

```
function MakeTargetString(CPU: TCpu; OS: TOS) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `MakeTargetString` constructs a formatted target string from CPU architecture, operating system, and build mode parameters. This function creates standardized target identifiers used throughout the build system.

The generated target string format enables consistent identification of build configurations and target platforms within package management and compilation operations.

29.7.18 ModeToString

Synopsis: Converts build mode to string representation

Declaration: `function ModeToString(Mode: TCompilerMode) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ModeToString` converts a build mode identifier enumeration to its string representation. This function provides human-readable names for build modes used in build configuration.

The string representation includes modes such as debug, release, and other build configurations useful for logging and user interface display within the build system.

29.7.19 OSesToString

Synopsis: Converts set of operating systems to string

Declaration: `function OSesToString(OSes: TOSes) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `OSesToString` converts a set of operating system identifiers to a comma-separated string representation. This function provides a readable format for displaying multiple operating system targets.

The string representation is useful for logging supported platforms, configuration display, and documentation of multi-platform package compatibility.

29.7.20 OSToString

Synopsis: Converts operating system identifier to string

Declaration: `function OSToString(OS: TOS) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `OSToString` converts an operating system identifier enumeration value to its string representation. This function provides human-readable names for operating system identifiers used in build configuration.

The string representation is useful for logging, configuration files, and user interface display of platform-specific information within the build system.

29.7.21 SearchFiles

Synopsis: Searches for files in specified paths

Declaration: `procedure SearchFiles(AFileName: string; ASearchPathPrefix: string;
Recursive: Boolean; var List: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SearchFiles` searches for files matching a filename pattern within specified search paths. This procedure supports recursive directory traversal and wildcard pattern matching for file discovery.

The procedure populates a provided list with all matching files found during the search, enabling file location and collection for build operations.

29.7.22 SplitCommand

Synopsis: Splits command line into executable and options

Declaration: `procedure SplitCommand(const Cmd: string; out Exe: string;
out Options: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SplitCommand` parses a complete command line string and separates it into the executable name and its command-line options. This procedure handles quoted arguments and proper command-line parsing for the build system.

The procedure populates separate output parameters with the executable name and the remaining options.

29.7.23 StringToCPU

Synopsis: Converts string to CPU architecture identifier

Declaration: `function StringToCPU(const S: string) : TCpu`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToCPU` converts a string representation of a CPU architecture to its corresponding identifier enumeration. This function enables parsing of CPU architecture names from configuration files and command-line parameters.

The function supports standard CPU architecture names.

29.7.24 StringToCPUOS

Synopsis: Parses string to extract CPU and OS information

Declaration: `procedure StringToCPUOS(const S: string; var CPU: TCpu; var OS: TOS)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToCPUOS` parses a combined string containing CPU architecture and operating system information, extracting the individual CPU and OS identifiers. This procedure handles target string parsing for build configuration.

The procedure processes target strings in various formats and populates the output parameters with the corresponding CPU architecture and operating system enumeration values.

29.7.25 StringToCPUS

Synopsis: Converts string to CPU architecture set

Declaration: `function StringToCPUS(const S: string) : TCPUS`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToCPUS` converts a comma-separated string of CPU architectures to a set of CPU identifier enumerations. This function enables parsing of multiple CPU architecture targets from configuration strings.

The function processes comma-separated architecture names and builds a set containing all valid CPU architecture identifiers found in the input string.

29.7.26 StringToMode

Synopsis: Converts string to build mode identifier

Declaration: `function StringToMode(const S: string) : TCompilerMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToMode` converts a string representation of a build mode to its corresponding identifier enumeration. This function enables parsing of build mode names from configuration files and command-line parameters.

The function supports standard build mode names such as debug, release, and custom modes, providing error handling for invalid or unrecognized mode strings.

29.7.27 StringToOS

Synopsis: Converts string to operating system identifier

Declaration: `function StringToOS(const S: string) : TOS`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToOS` converts a string representation of an operating system to its corresponding identifier enumeration. This function enables parsing of operating system names from configuration files and command-line parameters.

The function supports standard operating system names.

29.8 ECollectionError

29.8.1 Description

`ECollectionError` is raised when errors occur during collection operations such as invalid indices, missing items, or collection manipulation failures.

29.9 EDictionaryError

29.9.1 Description

`EDictionaryError` is raised when dictionary operations fail due to invalid keys, missing entries, or other dictionary-specific error conditions.

29.10 EInstallerError

29.10.1 Description

`EInstallerError` is raised when installer operations encounter errors such as installation failures, permission problems, or configuration issues during package installation.

29.11 TBasicDefaults

29.11.1 Description

`TBasicDefaults` provides a concrete implementation of `TCustomDefaults` (972) with basic configuration management for the `fpmake` build system.

This class manages fundamental build settings including compiler paths, installation directories, archiving options, and other essential configuration parameters for package building and installation.

29.12 TBasicInstaller

29.12.1 Description

`TBasicInstaller` provides a basic implementation of `TCustomInstaller` (988) with standard functionality for package building and installation. This class offers a complete installer without compiler-specific optimizations.

The basic installer provides general-purpose package management suitable for the FPC compiler.

29.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
945	<code>Create</code>	Creates basic installer instance

29.12.3 TBasicInstaller.Create

Synopsis: Creates basic installer instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TBasicInstaller` instance with standard configuration and defaults. This constructor sets up the installer with general-purpose build engine and basic package management capabilities.

29.13 TBuildEngine

29.13.1 Description

`TBuildEngine` is the central component that orchestrates the entire build process for `fpmake` packages. It manages compilation, dependency resolution, file operations, and installation procedures.

The build engine provides the following functionality:

- Package compilation with dependency resolution
- Cross-platform build support
- File operations (copy, move, delete, archive)
- Installation and uninstallation procedures
- Clean and archive operations

- Multi-threaded compilation support
- Command execution and logging

The engine works with `TPackage` (1014) objects to compile targets, resolve dependencies, and manage the entire build lifecycle from compilation through installation.

See also: `TPackage` (1014), `TTarget` (1054), `TCustomDefaults` (972), `TCustomInstaller` (988)

29.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
948	AddPathPrefix	Adds package-specific path prefix to a path
957	Archive	Creates archive of package files
957	CheckDependencies	Checks package dependencies are satisfied
958	CheckExternalPackage	Checks if external package is available
957	Clean	Cleans compiled files and outputs
949	ClearResolvedFileNames	Clears resolved file name cache for a package
950	CmdArchiveFiles	Creates archive file containing specified files
949	CmdCopyFiles	Copies files to destination directory
949	CmdCreateDir	Creates a directory with necessary parent directories
950	CmdDeleteDestFiles	Deletes files from destination directory
950	CmdDeleteFiles	Deletes files from filesystem
950	CmdMoveFiles	Moves files to destination directory
951	CmdRemoveDirs	Removes directories from the filesystem
951	CmdRemoveTrees	Removes directory trees from the filesystem
951	CmdRenameFile	Renames or moves a file to new location
953	Compile	Compiles a specific target within a package
953	CompileDependencies	Compiles all dependencies for a target
948	Create	Creates a new build engine instance
958	CreateOutputDir	Creates output directory for package
951	DependencyOK	Checks if dependency is satisfied
948	Destroy	Destroys the build engine and frees resources
955	DoAfterArchive	Executes actions after package archiving
955	DoAfterClean	Executes actions after package cleaning
954	DoAfterCompile	Executes actions after package compilation
954	DoAfterInstall	Executes actions after package installation
955	DoBeforeArchive	Executes actions before package archiving
955	DoBeforeClean	Executes actions before package cleaning
954	DoBeforeCompile	Executes actions before package compilation
954	DoBeforeInstall	Executes actions before package installation
949	ExecuteCommand	Executes a command with arguments and environment variables
951	ExecuteCommands	Executes a collection of build commands
959	FPDocProject	Generates FPDoc documentation project
952	GetCompilerCommand	Gets compiler command for target
956	Install	Installs package files to target location
959	Log	Logs message with specified level and formatting
959	Manifest	Creates manifest of package contents
953	MaybeCompile	Compiles target if compilation is needed
952	NeedsCompile	Checks if target needs compilation
953	PackageOK	Checks if package is valid for compilation
957	PkgList	Lists package contents and information
956	ReadyToCompile	Checks if package is ready for compilation
948	ResolveFileNames	Resolves and validates file paths for package targets
952	TargetInstallOK	Checks if target can be installed on platform
952	TargetOK	Checks if target is valid for platform
956	UnInstall	Uninstalls package files from target location
958	ZipInstall	Creates ZIP archive during installation

29.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
960	ExternalPackages	r	Collection of external package dependencies
960	ForceCompile	rw	Whether to force recompilation of all targets
960	Interactive	rw	Whether the build engine runs in interactive mode
960	ListMode	rw	Mode for listing package information
961	NotifyEventCollection	r	Collection of notification event handlers
961	OnLog	rw	Event handler for logging messages
961	StartDir	r	Starting directory for build operations
959	Verbose	rw	Controls verbose output during build operations

29.13.4 TBuildEngine.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new build engine instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new `TBuildEngine` instance and initializes all internal components needed for package compilation, installation, and management.

The build engine handles compilation processes, dependency resolution, file operations, and package installation coordination.

29.13.5 TBuildEngine.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the build engine and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the `TBuildEngine` instance and frees all associated resources including critical sections, archive handlers, and temporary files.

29.13.6 TBuildEngine.AddPathPrefix

Synopsis: Adds package-specific path prefix to a path

Declaration: `function AddPathPrefix(APackage: TPackage; APath: string) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Adds a package-specific path prefix to the given path string.

This ensures paths are correctly resolved relative to the package's base directory and build configuration.

29.13.7 TBuildEngine.ResolveFileNames

Synopsis: Resolves and validates file paths for package targets

Declaration: `procedure ResolveFileNames(APackage: TPackage; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS;
DoChangeDir: Boolean=True;
WarnIfNotFound: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: public

Description: Resolves all file paths used by targets in the package, ensuring source files exist and creating proper search paths for the specified CPU and OS.

This critical preprocessing step validates that all required files are available before compilation begins and sets up directory context for build operations.

29.13.8 TBuildEngine.ClearResolvedFileNames

Synopsis: Clears resolved file name cache for a package

Declaration: `procedure ClearResolvedFileNames (APackage: TPackage)`

Visibility: public

Description: Clears all cached resolved file names and paths for the specified package.

This is typically called after compilation or when package configuration changes to ensure fresh file resolution on subsequent operations.

29.13.9 TBuildEngine.ExecuteCommand

Synopsis: Executes a command with arguments and environment variables

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteCommand(const Cmd: string; const Args: string;
const Env: TStrings=Nil;
IgnoreError: Boolean=False); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Executes an external command with the specified arguments and environment variables. The command execution can optionally ignore errors based on the `IgnoreError` parameter.

This is used by the build system to invoke external tools like compilers, linkers, archive utilities, and other build tools during the compilation and installation process.

29.13.10 TBuildEngine.CmdCopyFiles

Synopsis: Copies files to destination directory

Declaration: `procedure CmdCopyFiles(List: TStrings; const DestDir: string;
APackage: TPackage)`

Visibility: public

Description: Copies a list of files to the specified destination directory using either the configured copy command or the system's native copy functionality.

The destination directory is created if it doesn't exist. File paths can be absolute or relative to the current working directory.

29.13.11 TBuildEngine.CmdCreateDir

Synopsis: Creates a directory with necessary parent directories

Declaration: `procedure CmdCreateDir(const DestDir: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a directory and all necessary parent directories in the path. If the directory already exists, no error is generated.

This is used to ensure output directories exist before files are written during the build and installation process.

29.13.12 TBuildEngine.CmdMoveFiles

Synopsis: Moves files to destination directory

Declaration: `procedure CmdMoveFiles(List: TStrings; const DestDir: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Moves a list of files to the specified destination directory using either the configured move command or the system's native move functionality.

Files are relocated from their current location to the destination directory. The destination directory is created if it doesn't exist.

29.13.13 TBuildEngine.CmdDeleteFiles

Synopsis: Deletes files from filesystem

Declaration: `procedure CmdDeleteFiles(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Deletes a list of files from the filesystem using either the configured remove command or the system's native delete functionality.

This is typically used during clean operations to remove compiled object files, executables, and other generated files.

29.13.14 TBuildEngine.CmdDeleteDestFiles

Synopsis: Deletes files from destination directory

Declaration: `procedure CmdDeleteDestFiles(List: TStrings; const DestDir: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Deletes a list of files from the specified destination directory.

This method combines the file list with the destination directory path and removes the specified files as part of cleanup operations.

29.13.15 TBuildEngine.CmdArchiveFiles

Synopsis: Creates archive file containing specified files

Declaration: `procedure CmdArchiveFiles(List: TStrings; const ArchiveFile: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates an archive file containing the specified list of files using either the configured archive command or the system's native archiving functionality.

This is used during the archive phase to create distribution packages containing compiled binaries and resource files.

29.13.16 TBuildEngine.CmdRenameFile

Synopsis: Renames or moves a file to new location

Declaration: `procedure CmdRenameFile(SourceName: string; DestName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Renames a file from the source location to the destination location. This can be used for both simple renaming within the same directory or moving files between different directories.

Used during build processes when files need to be relocated or renamed according to the package configuration.

29.13.17 TBuildEngine.CmdRemoveDirs

Synopsis: Removes directories from the filesystem

Declaration: `procedure CmdRemoveDirs(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Removes a list of empty directories from the filesystem using the configured directory removal command.

This method is typically used during cleanup operations to remove temporary and generated directories that are no longer needed.

29.13.18 TBuildEngine.CmdRemoveTrees

Synopsis: Removes directory trees from the filesystem

Declaration: `procedure CmdRemoveTrees(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Recursively removes entire directory trees including all subdirectories and files within them. This is used during clean operations to remove generated directory structures.

29.13.19 TBuildEngine.ExecuteCommands

Synopsis: Executes a collection of build commands

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteCommands(Commands: TCommands; At: TCommandAt;
APackage: TPackage=Nil)`

Visibility: public

Description: Executes all commands in the specified collection at the given timing point during the build process. This allows custom commands to be run at specific phases of package building or installation.

29.13.20 TBuildEngine.DependencyOK

Synopsis: Checks if dependency is satisfied

Declaration: `function DependencyOK(ADependency: TDependency) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `DependencyOK` verifies whether a specified package dependency is satisfied and available for the build process. This function checks dependency resolution, version requirements, and availability of the required package.

The method returns `True` if the dependency is properly resolved and can be used during compilation, or `False` if the dependency is missing, has version conflicts, or cannot be satisfied.

29.13.21 `TBuildEngine.GetCompilerCommand`

Synopsis: Gets compiler command for target

Declaration: `function GetCompilerCommand(APackage: TPackage; ATarget: TTarget;
Env: TStrings) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructs the complete compiler command line for compiling the specified target.

The command includes the compiler executable, all necessary options, paths, and parameters required to compile the target successfully.

29.13.22 `TBuildEngine.TargetOK`

Synopsis: Checks if target is valid for platform

Declaration: `function TargetOK(ATarget: TTarget; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Determines whether the specified target is valid for the current platform configuration.

This check considers the target's CPU and OS restrictions to determine if it should be built on the current system.

29.13.23 `TBuildEngine.TargetInstallOK`

Synopsis: Checks if target can be installed on platform

Declaration: `function TargetInstallOK(ATarget: TTarget; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)
: Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TargetInstallOK` determines whether a build target can be installed on the current platform and configuration. This function evaluates platform compatibility, dependency availability, and installation requirements.

The method returns `True` if the target is suitable for installation on the current system, or `False` if platform restrictions or missing dependencies prevent installation.

29.13.24 `TBuildEngine.NeedsCompile`

Synopsis: Checks if target needs compilation

Declaration: `function NeedsCompile(APackage: TPackage; ATarget: TTarget) : Boolean
function NeedsCompile(APackage: TPackage) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Determines whether the specified target needs to be compiled by checking timestamps, dependencies, and build requirements.

Returns `True` if the target's output files are missing, out of date, or if dependencies have changed.

29.13.25 TBuildEngine.Compile

Synopsis: Compiles a specific target within a package

Declaration: `procedure Compile(APackage: TPackage; ATarget: TTarget); virtual`
`procedure Compile(APackage: TPackage)`
`procedure Compile(Packages: TPackages)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Compiles the specified target within the given package. This method handles the actual compilation process, including dependency resolution, command-line generation, and execution of the Free Pascal Compiler.

See also: `MaybeCompile` ([953](#)), `CompileDependencies` ([953](#)), `TTarget` ([1054](#)), `TPackage` ([1014](#))

29.13.26 TBuildEngine.MaybeCompile

Synopsis: Compiles target if compilation is needed

Declaration: `procedure MaybeCompile(APackage: TPackage; ATarget: TTarget)`
`procedure MaybeCompile(APackage: TPackage)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Conditionally compiles the target only if compilation is required based on dependency analysis and timestamp checks.

This method first calls `NeedsCompile` ([952](#)) and only performs compilation if necessary.

29.13.27 TBuildEngine.CompileDependencies

Synopsis: Compiles all dependencies for a target

Declaration: `procedure CompileDependencies(APackage: TPackage; ATarget: TTarget)`
`procedure CompileDependencies(APackage: TPackage)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ensures that all dependencies for the specified target are compiled before compiling the target itself. This method recursively processes the dependency chain to maintain proper build order.

See also: `Compile` ([953](#)), `TDependency` ([993](#)), `TTarget` ([1054](#))

29.13.28 TBuildEngine.PackageOK

Synopsis: Checks if package is valid for compilation

Declaration: `function PackageOK(APackage: TPackage) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PackageOK` validates whether a package is properly configured and ready for compilation. This function examines package structure, dependencies, target definitions, and configuration validity. The method returns `True` if the package can be compiled successfully, or `False` if there are configuration errors, missing dependencies, or other issues preventing compilation.

29.13.29 TBuildEngine.DoBeforeCompile

Synopsis: Executes actions before package compilation

Declaration: `procedure DoBeforeCompile(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoBeforeCompile` performs pre-compilation setup and initialization tasks for the package. This method prepares the build environment, resolves dependencies, and executes any custom pre-build commands.

The procedure ensures that all necessary conditions are met before the actual compilation process begins, including directory creation, file preparation, and environment configuration.

29.13.30 TBuildEngine.DoAfterCompile

Synopsis: Executes actions after package compilation

Declaration: `procedure DoAfterCompile(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoAfterCompile` performs post-compilation cleanup and finalization tasks for the package. This method executes custom post-build commands and performs any necessary housekeeping after compilation completes.

The procedure handles result validation, temporary file cleanup, and any additional processing required after the compilation phase has finished successfully.

29.13.31 TBuildEngine.DoBeforeInstall

Synopsis: Executes actions before package installation

Declaration: `procedure DoBeforeInstall(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoBeforeInstall` prepares the system and package for installation by executing pre-installation tasks. This method ensures installation directories exist, validates installation requirements, and runs custom pre-install commands.

The procedure verifies installation permissions, creates necessary directories, and performs any setup required before the actual file installation begins.

29.13.32 TBuildEngine.DoAfterInstall

Synopsis: Executes actions after package installation

Declaration: `procedure DoAfterInstall(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoAfterInstall` completes the installation process by executing post-installation tasks. This method runs custom post-install scripts, registers the package, and performs final installation verification.

The procedure handles package registration, configuration updates, and any cleanup or finalization steps required after successful package installation.

29.13.33 `TBuildEngine.DoBeforeArchive`

Synopsis: Executes actions before package archiving

Declaration: `procedure DoBeforeArchive(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoBeforeArchive` prepares files and directories for package archive creation. This method organizes files, validates archive contents, and executes pre-archiving customization commands.

The procedure ensures all necessary files are included, applies any transformations, and sets up the archive structure before the compression process begins.

29.13.34 `TBuildEngine.DoAfterArchive`

Synopsis: Executes actions after package archiving

Declaration: `procedure DoAfterArchive(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoAfterArchive` completes the archiving process by executing post-archive tasks. This method validates the created archive, runs post-archiving scripts, and performs cleanup operations.

The procedure verifies archive integrity, moves files to final locations, and handles any additional processing required after successful archive creation.

29.13.35 `TBuildEngine.DoBeforeClean`

Synopsis: Executes actions before package cleaning

Declaration: `procedure DoBeforeClean(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoBeforeClean` prepares for package cleaning by executing pre-cleanup tasks. This method backs up important files, runs custom pre-clean scripts, and identifies files to be removed.

The procedure ensures that critical files are preserved and performs any necessary preparation before the cleaning process removes temporary and generated files.

29.13.36 `TBuildEngine.DoAfterClean`

Synopsis: Executes actions after package cleaning

Declaration: `procedure DoAfterClean(APackage: TPackage); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DoAfterClean` completes the cleaning process by executing post-cleanup tasks. This method validates that unwanted files were removed, runs post-clean verification, and performs final cleanup steps.

The procedure ensures the cleaning was successful and handles any additional housekeeping required after the package cleanup operation completes.

29.13.37 `TBuildEngine.ReadyToCompile`

Synopsis: Checks if package is ready for compilation

Declaration: `function ReadyToCompile(APackage: TPackage) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadyToCompile` verifies that all prerequisites are met for package compilation. This function checks dependency availability, compiler settings, source file presence, and build configuration validity.

The method returns `True` if the package can be compiled successfully, or `False` if missing dependencies, configuration errors, or other issues prevent compilation.

29.13.38 `TBuildEngine.Install`

Synopsis: Installs package files to target location

Declaration: `procedure Install(APackage: TPackage; AnArchiveFiles: Boolean)`
`procedure Install(Packages: TPackages)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Install` performs the complete package installation process by copying compiled files and resources to their target installation directories. This method handles library files, executables, documentation, and other package components.

The installation process includes directory creation, file copying with proper permissions, and optional archive creation for backup and distribution purposes.

29.13.39 `TBuildEngine.UnInstall`

Synopsis: Uninstalls package files from target location

Declaration: `procedure UnInstall(APackage: TPackage)`
`procedure UnInstall(Packages: TPackages)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnInstall` removes package files from their installation directories and performs cleanup. This method reverses the installation process by deleting installed files, libraries, and associated resources.

The uninstallation includes removing executable files, libraries, documentation, and configuration files while preserving user data and custom configurations where appropriate.

29.13.40 TBuildEngine.Archive

Synopsis: Creates archive of package files

Declaration: `procedure Archive(APackage: TPackage)`
`procedure Archive(Packages: TPackages)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Archive` creates compressed archive files containing package sources, binaries, and documentation. This method generates distributable archive files in formats such as ZIP, TAR, or other compression formats.

The archiving process includes source files, compiled binaries, documentation, examples, and other package components organized for distribution and installation.

29.13.41 TBuildEngine.PkgList

Synopsis: Lists package contents and information

Declaration: `procedure PkgList(PkgList: TStrings; APackage: TPackage)`
`procedure PkgList(Packages: TPackages)`

Visibility: public

Description: `PkgList` displays detailed information about package contents, dependencies, targets, and configuration. This method provides a listing of package components for review and verification.

The listing includes source files, dependencies, build targets, installation paths, and other package metadata useful for package management and debugging.

29.13.42 TBuildEngine.Clean

Synopsis: Cleans compiled files and outputs

Declaration: `procedure Clean(APackage: TPackage; AllTargets: Boolean)`
`procedure Clean(APackage: TPackage; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)`
`procedure Clean(Packages: TPackages; AllTargets: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Clean` removes compiled object files, executables, and other generated outputs from the build process. This method cleans up temporary files, object files, and build artifacts to prepare for a fresh compilation.

The cleaning process can target specific packages or all targets, removing compiled units, executables, and temporary files while preserving source code and configuration files.

29.13.43 TBuildEngine.CheckDependencies

Synopsis: Checks package dependencies are satisfied

Declaration: `function CheckDependencies(APackage: TPackage; ErrorOnFailure: Boolean)`
`: TCheckDependencyResult`

Visibility: public

Description: `CheckDependencies` validates that all required dependencies for a package are available and properly configured. This function verifies dependency versions, availability, and compatibility with the current build configuration.

The method returns `True` if all dependencies are satisfied, or `False` if missing dependencies or version conflicts prevent successful compilation.

29.13.44 `TBuildEngine.CheckExternalPackage`

Synopsis: Checks if external package is available

Declaration:

```
function CheckExternalPackage(const APackageName: string;
                               const ForPackageName: string;
                               ErrorOnFailure: Boolean) : TPackage
```

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CheckExternalPackage` verifies the availability and accessibility of external packages required by the build. This function checks for system packages, third-party libraries, and external dependencies not managed by `fpmake`.

The method returns `True` if the external package is found and accessible, enabling the build to proceed with confidence that external dependencies are satisfied.

29.13.45 `TBuildEngine.CreateOutputDir`

Synopsis: Creates output directory for package

Declaration:

```
procedure CreateOutputDir(APackage: TPackage)
```

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateOutputDir` creates the necessary output directory structure for package compilation and installation. This method ensures that target directories exist with proper permissions for storing compiled files and outputs.

The procedure creates unit output directories, executable paths, and library directories as required by the package configuration and target platform.

29.13.46 `TBuildEngine.ZipInstall`

Synopsis: Creates ZIP archive during installation

Declaration:

```
procedure ZipInstall(Packages: TPackages)
```

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ZipInstall` combines package installation with ZIP archive creation for convenient distribution. This method installs package files to their target locations while simultaneously creating a compressed ZIP archive.

The ZIP installation process enables easy package distribution and backup by creating both installed files and a portable archive containing all package components.

29.13.47 TBuildEngine.Manifest

Synopsis: Creates manifest of package contents

Declaration: `procedure Manifest (Packages: TPackage; Package: TPackage)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Manifest` generates manifest files containing detailed package information and contents. This method creates structured documentation of package files, dependencies, versions, and configuration. The manifest includes file listings, checksums, dependency information, and metadata useful for package management, verification, and deployment processes.

29.13.48 TBuildEngine.FPDocProject

Synopsis: Generates FPDoc documentation project

Declaration: `procedure FPDocProject (Packages: TPackage; SingleDocFile: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `FPDocProject` creates FPDoc documentation projects for generating API documentation. This method processes package source files and generates structured documentation using the FPDoc tool. The documentation project includes unit descriptions, class hierarchies, method signatures, and code examples organized for web-based or printed documentation distribution.

29.13.49 TBuildEngine.Log

Synopsis: Logs message with specified level and formatting

Declaration: `procedure Log (Level: TVerboseLevel; Msg: string)`
`procedure Log (Level: TVerboseLevel; Fmt: string;`
`const Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Log` outputs formatted log messages with specified verbosity levels during build operations. This method provides structured logging with level-based filtering and message formatting capabilities. The logging system supports various levels including debug, info, warning, and error messages, with optional format string processing for detailed diagnostic output.

29.13.50 TBuildEngine.Verbose

Synopsis: Controls verbose output during build operations

Declaration: `Property Verbose : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `True`, the build engine produces detailed output about compilation processes, file operations, and build steps.
When `False`, only essential messages and errors are displayed.

29.13.51 TBuildEngine.Interactive

Synopsis: Whether the build engine runs in interactive mode

Declaration: `Property Interactive : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Interactive` controls whether the build engine prompts for user input during build operations. When `True`, the engine may ask for confirmations, choices, or input during the build process.

Interactive mode is useful during development and testing, while non-interactive mode is preferred for automated builds and continuous integration scenarios.

29.13.52 TBuildEngine.ListMode

Synopsis: Mode for listing package information

Declaration: `Property ListMode : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ListMode` controls the format and detail level when listing package information and contents. This property determines how package listing output is formatted and what information is displayed.

Different list modes provide varying levels of detail from simple package names to information including dependencies, targets, and configuration details.

29.13.53 TBuildEngine.ForceCompile

Synopsis: Whether to force recompilation of all targets

Declaration: `Property ForceCompile : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ForceCompile` enables complete recompilation of all targets regardless of file modification times. When `True`, all source files are recompiled even if outputs appear up-to-date.

Forced compilation ensures clean builds and is useful when dependency tracking may be unreliable or when build system changes require complete regeneration of all outputs.

29.13.54 TBuildEngine.ExternalPackages

Synopsis: Collection of external package dependencies

Declaration: `Property ExternalPackages : TPackages`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ExternalPackages` contains the collection of external package dependencies required by the build process. This property manages packages that are not built by the current build system but are required for compilation.

External packages include system libraries, third-party components, and pre-compiled packages that must be available for successful compilation and linking.

29.13.55 TBuildEngine.StartDir

Synopsis: Starting directory for build operations

Declaration: `Property StartDir : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `StartDir` specifies the base directory from which all build operations are initiated. This property establishes the root path for resolving relative file paths and organizing build outputs.

The starting directory serves as the reference point for source file locations, output directories, and configuration file paths during the build process.

29.13.56 TBuildEngine.NotifyEventCollection

Synopsis: Collection of notification event handlers

Declaration: `Property NotifyEventCollection : TNotifyEventCollection`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `NotifyEventCollection` manages the collection of event handlers that receive notifications during build operations. This property enables registration of multiple event listeners for build progress monitoring.

Event handlers can monitor compilation progress, installation status, and other build events for logging, user interface updates, and custom processing requirements.

29.13.57 TBuildEngine.OnLog

Synopsis: Event handler for logging messages

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TLogEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLog` is the event handler called when the build engine generates log messages. This event enables custom logging implementations and integration with external logging systems.

The event handler receives log level, message text, and formatting parameters, allowing custom processing, filtering, and routing of build system messages.

29.14 TCommand

29.14.1 Description

Class that encapsulates a command to be executed at specific points during the build process. Stores command information including the executable, arguments, and execution timing.

29.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
962	CmdLineOptions	Get formatted command line options
962	Destroy	Destructor that cleans up command resources
962	HaveOptions	Check if command has any options
963	ParseOptions	Parse options from a string

29.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
964	AfterCommand	rw	Command to execute after this command
964	At	rw	When to execute the command
964	BeforeCommand	rw	Command to execute before this command
963	Command	rw	Command line to execute
963	DestFile	rw	Destination file for the command
964	IgnoreResult	rw	Whether to ignore command execution result
963	Options	rw	Command line options
963	SourceFile	rw	Source file for the command

29.14.4 TCommand.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor that cleans up command resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor that releases memory and resources allocated by the command object. Ensures proper cleanup of internal data structures.

29.14.5 TCommand.HaveOptions

Synopsis: Check if command has any options

Declaration: `function HaveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Function that returns `True` if the command has any command-line options or arguments configured. Used to determine if additional formatting is needed when building the command line.

29.14.6 TCommand.CmdLineOptions

Synopsis: Get formatted command line options

Declaration: `function CmdLineOptions : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Function that builds and returns a formatted string containing all command-line options and arguments. Used when constructing the final command line for execution.

29.14.7 TCommand.ParseOptions

Synopsis: Parse options from a string

Declaration: `procedure ParseOptions(S: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Procedure that parses command-line options from a string and stores them internally. Breaks down the options string into individual arguments for later use in command execution.

29.14.8 TCommand.SourceFile

Synopsis: Source file for the command

Declaration: `Property SourceFile : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Property specifying the source file that the command operates on. Used for commands that process or transform specific files during the build process.

29.14.9 TCommand.DestFile

Synopsis: Destination file for the command

Declaration: `Property DestFile : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Property specifying the destination file that the command produces or writes to. Used for commands that generate output files during the build process.

29.14.10 TCommand.Command

Synopsis: Command line to execute

Declaration: `Property Command : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Property containing the base command or executable name to be executed. Combined with options and arguments to form the complete command line.

29.14.11 TCommand.Options

Synopsis: Command line options

Declaration: `Property Options : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: String list property containing command-line options and arguments. Each item represents a separate command-line parameter or option.

29.14.12 TCommand.At

Synopsis: When to execute the command

Declaration: `Property At : TCommandAt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Property of type `TCommandAt` ([921](#)) that specifies when during the build process this command should be executed. Determines the execution timing relative to compilation, installation, or other build phases.

29.14.13 TCommand.IgnoreResult

Synopsis: Whether to ignore command execution result

Declaration: `Property IgnoreResult : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Boolean property that determines whether command execution failures should be ignored. When `True`, the build process continues even if the command returns an error code.

29.14.14 TCommand.BeforeCommand

Synopsis: Command to execute before this command

Declaration: `Property BeforeCommand : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Property specifying another command that should be executed immediately before this command. Allows chaining of command execution for complex build operations.

29.14.15 TCommand.AfterCommand

Synopsis: Command to execute after this command

Declaration: `Property AfterCommand : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Property specifying another command that should be executed immediately after this command. Allows chaining of command execution for complex build operations.

29.15 TCommandEnumerator

29.15.1 Description

Enumerator class that enables for..in loop iteration over command collections. Provides standard iterator interface for traversing `TCommand` ([961](#)) objects.

29.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
965	GetCurrent	Get current command in enumeration

29.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
965	Current	r	Current command in enumeration

29.15.4 TCommandEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Get current command in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TCommand`

Visibility: public

Description: Function that returns the current TCommand ([961](#)) object at the enumerator position. Called by the for..in loop mechanism to access the current item.

29.15.5 TCommandEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current command in enumeration

Declaration: `Property Current : TCommand`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` returns the current TCommand ([961](#)) object in the enumeration sequence.

This property is used in for-in loops to access each command as the enumerator iterates through the collection.

29.16 TCommands

29.16.1 Description

TCommands is a specialized collection class that manages a list of TCommand ([961](#)) objects.

This class provides methods to add, remove, and iterate through build commands that should be executed during the package compilation process.

Commands are typically shell commands, compiler invocations, or other external tools needed for building packages.

29.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
966	AddCommand	Add a new command to the collection
966	GetEnumerator	Get enumerator for iterating commands

29.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
966	CommandItems	rw	Indexed access to command items
967	Commands	r	Access to commands by destination
967	DefaultAt	rw	Default execution timing for commands

29.16.4 TCommands.AddCommand

Synopsis: Add a new command to the collection

Declaration: `function AddCommand(const Cmd: string) : TCommand`
`function AddCommand(const Cmd: string; const Options: string) : TCommand`
`function AddCommand(const Cmd: string; const Options: string;`
`const Dest: string; const Source: string) : TCommand`
`function AddCommand(At: TCommandAt; const Cmd: string) : TCommand`
`function AddCommand(At: TCommandAt; const Cmd: string;`
`const Options: string) : TCommand`
`function AddCommand(At: TCommandAt; const Cmd: string;`
`const Options: string; const Dest: string;`
`const Source: string) : TCommand`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new `TCommand` object to the commands collection. The command can be configured with executable path, options, source and destination files, and execution timing.

Commands are executed during the build process at the specified timing (before or after compilation, installation, etc.).

29.16.5 TCommands.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Get enumerator for iterating commands

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TCommandEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: Function that returns a `TCommandEnumerator` ([964](#)) object for iterating through the commands collection. Enables the use of `for..in` loops to iterate over all commands in the collection.

29.16.6 TCommands.CommandItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to command items

Declaration: `Property CommandItems[Index: Integer]: TCommand`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Indexed property providing direct access to `TCommand` ([961](#)) objects by their zero-based index. Allows reading and writing of command objects at specific positions in the collection.

29.16.7 TCommands.Commands

Synopsis: Access to commands by destination

Declaration: `Property Commands[Dest: string]: TCommand; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Property providing access to commands based on their destination file or path. Allows retrieving commands that operate on specific destination targets.

29.16.8 TCommands.DefaultAt

Synopsis: Default execution timing for commands

Declaration: `Property DefaultAt : TCommandAt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Property specifying the default `TCommandAt` (921) timing for newly created commands. Used when no explicit execution timing is specified for new commands.

29.17 TCompileWorkerThread

29.17.1 Description

`TCompileWorkerThread` implements a worker thread for executing compilation operations in parallel. This class enables concurrent compilation of multiple targets to improve build performance on multi-core systems.

The worker thread manages compilation tasks, handles thread synchronization, and reports progress back to the main thread for coordinated parallel build processing.

29.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
967	Create	Creates compilation worker thread
968	Destroy	Destroys worker thread and cleans up resources

29.17.3 TCompileWorkerThread.Create

Synopsis: Creates compilation worker thread

Declaration: `constructor Create(ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
NotifyMainThreadEvent: PRTLEvent); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new compilation worker thread with the specified build engine and notification callback. This constructor prepares the thread for parallel compilation operations.

The worker thread is configured to communicate with the main thread through the provided notification event.

29.17.4 TCompileWorkerThread.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys worker thread and cleans up resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` terminates the worker thread and frees all allocated resources including build engine references and thread synchronization objects. This destructor ensures proper cleanup of the compilation thread.

The destructor waits for pending operations to complete before freeing resources.

29.18 TConditionalDestString

29.18.1 Description

`TConditionalDestString` extends conditional strings to include destination path information.

Used for file operations that require both source values and target destinations based on CPU and OS conditions.

29.18.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
968	<code>DestPath</code>	<code>rw</code>	Destination path for the conditional string

29.18.3 TConditionalDestString.DestPath

Synopsis: Destination path for the conditional string

Declaration: `Property DestPath : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Destination file or directory path where the conditional string value should be placed.

This path is used during installation and file copy operations.

29.19 TConditionalDestStrings

29.19.1 Description

`TConditionalDestStrings` is a specialized collection that manages multiple `TConditionalDestString` ([968](#)) objects.

This class provides methods for adding, searching, and retrieving conditional destination strings based on platform criteria.

It enables efficient management of platform-specific file installation paths and destinations in build systems.

29.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
969	Add	Adds conditional destination string with path mapping
969	Create	Creates conditional destination strings collection

29.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
969	ConditionalStrings	rw	Indexed access to conditional destination strings

29.19.4 TConditionalDestStrings.Create

Synopsis: Creates conditional destination strings collection

Declaration: `constructor Create(AClass: TConditionalDestStringClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TConditionalDestStrings` ([968](#)) collection instance.

The constructor sets up an empty collection ready to accept conditional destination string items.

The collection inherits from the base collection classes and provides specialized functionality for destination string management.

29.19.5 TConditionalDestStrings.Add

Synopsis: Adds conditional destination string with path mapping

Declaration: `function Add(const Value: string; ADestPath: string)`
 `: TConditionalDestString`
`function Add(const Value: string; const OSes: TOSes; ADestPath: string)`
 `: TConditionalDestString`
`function Add(const Value: string; const CPUs: TCPUS; const OSes: TOSes;`
 `ADestPath: string) : TConditionalDestString`

Visibility: public

Description: `Add` creates and adds a new conditional destination string with the specified value, destination path, and platform restrictions.

The string will only be used when the current build targets match the specified CPU architectures and operating systems.

This method enables platform-specific file installation paths and destination mapping in build configurations.

29.19.6 TConditionalDestStrings.ConditionalStrings

Synopsis: Indexed access to conditional destination strings

Declaration: `Property ConditionalStrings[Index: Integer]: TConditionalDestString; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `ConditionalStrings` provides indexed access to individual `TConditionalDestString` (968) items in the collection.

This property enables array-style access to retrieve or modify specific conditional destination strings by their position.

The index must be within the valid range from 0 to `Count-1` to avoid range check errors.

29.20 TConditionalString

29.20.1 Description

`TConditionalString` represents a string value that can be conditionally applied based on target CPU architecture and operating system. This enables platform-specific configuration in build scripts.

The class provides matching functionality to determine if the string applies to a specific CPU/OS combination, making it the foundation for cross-platform build support.

See also: `TConditionalStrings` (971), `TCpu` (923), `TOS` (929)

29.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
970	<code>Create</code>	

29.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
971	<code>CPUs</code>	rw	CPU architectures for which this string applies
971	<code>OSes</code>	rw	Operating systems for which this string applies
970	<code>Value</code>	rw	String value for this condition

29.20.4 TConditionalString.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

29.20.5 TConditionalString.Value

Synopsis: String value for this condition

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` contains the actual string content that is used when the conditional criteria are met.

This property stores the string that will be returned or applied when the CPU and OS conditions match the target platform.

The value can contain any string content including file paths, compiler options, or configuration parameters.

29.20.6 TConditionalString.OSes

Synopsis: Operating systems for which this string applies

Declaration: `Property OSes : TOSes`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OSes` specifies the set of operating systems for which this conditional string is applicable.

This property contains a list of TOS ([929](#)) values that define the target operating systems.

If empty, the string applies to all operating systems, otherwise it only applies to the specified OS platforms.

29.20.7 TConditionalString.CPUs

Synopsis: CPU architectures for which this string applies

Declaration: `Property CPUs : TCPUS`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CPUs` specifies the set of CPU architectures for which this conditional string is applicable.

This property contains a list of TCpu ([923](#)) values that define the target processor architectures.

If empty, the string applies to all CPU architectures, otherwise it only applies to the specified processor types.

29.21 TConditionalStrings

29.21.1 Description

`TConditionalStrings` is a specialized collection that manages multiple `TConditionalString` ([970](#)) objects.

This class provides methods for adding, searching, and retrieving conditional strings based on platform criteria.

It enables efficient management of platform-specific configuration values in build systems.

29.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
972	Add	Add a new conditional string
972	Create	

29.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
972	ConditionalStrings	rw	Indexed access to conditional string items

29.21.4 TConditionalStrings.Create

Declaration: constructor `Create(AClass: TConditionalStringClass)`

Visibility: public

29.21.5 TConditionalStrings.Add

Synopsis: Add a new conditional string

Declaration: function `Add(const Value: string) : TConditionalString`
function `Add(const Value: string; const OSes: TOSes)`
: `TConditionalString`
function `Add(const Value: string; const CPUs: TCPUS; const OSes: TOSes)`
: `TConditionalString`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new conditional string with the specified value and platform restrictions. The string will only be used when the current build targets match the specified CPU architectures and operating systems.

Platform-specific strings enable configuration of different values for different target platforms within the same package.

29.21.6 TConditionalStrings.ConditionalStrings

Synopsis: Indexed access to conditional string items

Declaration: Property `ConditionalStrings[Index: Integer]: TConditionalString; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Provides indexed access to individual conditional string items in the collection.

Each item contains a value and associated CPU/OS conditions.

29.22 TCustomDefaults

29.22.1 Description

`TCustomDefaults` serves as the base class for managing default configuration settings in the `fpmake` build system. This abstract class provides a foundation for storing and accessing system-wide defaults and build preferences.

Derived classes extend this base to provide specific configuration management for different aspects of the build system such as compiler settings, paths, and installation options.

29.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
976	CompilerDefaults	Sets up compiler default configuration
974	Create	Creates a new defaults configuration object
975	Destroy	Destroys the defaults object and releases resources
975	HaveOptions	Checks if configuration options are available
975	InitDefaults	Initializes default configuration values
975	IsBuildDifferentFromTarget	Checks if build configuration differs from target
976	LoadFromFile	Loads configuration settings from a file
977	LoadFromStream	Loads configuration settings from a stream
976	LocalInit	Initializes configuration from local file
976	SaveToFile	Saves configuration settings to a file
976	SaveToStream	Saves configuration settings to a stream

29.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
986	Archive	rw	Archive creation command and options
981	BaseInstallDir	rw	Base directory for installations
982	BinInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing binary files
979	BuildCPU	r	CPU architecture for the build environment
986	BuildMode	rw	Build mode configuration setting
978	BuildOS	r	Operating system for the build environment
978	BuildString	r	Build configuration string
984	Compiler	rw	Compiler executable path and options
978	CompilerVersion	r	Version of the compiler being used
984	Copy	rw	File copy command and options
977	CPU	rw	Target CPU architecture
983	DocInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing documentation files
983	ExamplesInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing example files
978	ExplicitOSNone	rw	Whether to explicitly specify no target OS
983	FPDocOptions	rw	Command line options for FPDoc
983	FPDocOutputDir	rw	Output directory for FPDoc documentation
984	FPUntSourcePath	rw	Source path for FPUnt testing framework
980	GlobalUnitDir	rw	Global directory for compiled units
986	IgnoreInvalidOptions	rw	Whether to ignore invalid configuration options
987	InstallExamples	rw	Whether to install example files
982	LibInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing library files
980	LocalUnitDir	rw	Local directory for compiled units
985	MkDir	rw	Directory creation command and options
979	Mode	rw	Build mode configuration
984	Move	rw	File move command and options
980	NoFPCCfg	rw	Whether to ignore FPC configuration files
979	Options	rw	Configuration options for the build
977	OS	rw	Target operating system
981	Prefix	rw	Installation prefix directory
985	Remove	rw	File removal command and options
985	RemoveDir	rw	Directory removal command and options
985	RemoveTree	rw	Directory tree removal command and options
981	SearchPath	rw	Search paths for finding files
987	SingleFPDocFile	rw	Whether to generate single FPDoc output file
987	SkipAllPrograms	rw	Whether to skip building all programs
987	SkipCrossPrograms	rw	Whether to skip cross-compilation programs
977	Target	rw	Build target specification
980	ThreadsAmount	rw	Number of threads to use during compilation
982	UnitConfigFilesInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing unit configuration files
982	UnitInstallDir	rw	Directory for installing unit files
979	UnixPaths	rw	Whether to use Unix-style path conventions
986	UseEnvironment	rw	Whether to use environment variables
981	ZipPrefix	rw	Prefix for archive file operations

29.22.4 TCustomDefaults.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new defaults configuration object

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TCustomDefaults` instance with default configuration values. This constructor sets up the basic configuration structure for the `fpmake` build system.

The created object serves as a container for various build system defaults including paths, compiler options, and installation preferences.

29.22.5 TCustomDefaults.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the defaults object and releases resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the `TCustomDefaults` instance and releases all associated resources including configuration collections and internal data structures.

29.22.6 TCustomDefaults.InitDefaults

Synopsis: Initializes default configuration values

Declaration: `procedure InitDefaults`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Sets up the default configuration values for this defaults object. This method is called during initialization to establish baseline configuration settings that can be overridden by specific values.

29.22.7 TCustomDefaults.HaveOptions

Synopsis: Checks if configuration options are available

Declaration: `function HaveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns `True` if this defaults object contains configuration options that can be applied. This is used to determine whether additional configuration processing is needed.

29.22.8 TCustomDefaults.IsBuildDifferentFromTarget

Synopsis: Checks if build configuration differs from target

Declaration: `function IsBuildDifferentFromTarget : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns `True` if the current build configuration differs from the target's default configuration. This is used to determine whether custom build settings need to be applied.

29.22.9 TCustomDefaults.CompilerDefaults

Synopsis: Sets up compiler default configuration

Declaration: `procedure CompilerDefaults; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes the default compiler configuration settings including standard options, search paths, and compilation flags that are applied by default to all builds using these defaults.

29.22.10 TCustomDefaults.LocalInit

Synopsis: Initializes configuration from local file

Declaration: `procedure LocalInit(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Loads configuration settings from a local initialization file. This allows customization of default settings based on local environment or user preferences.

29.22.11 TCustomDefaults.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads configuration settings from a file

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Loads configuration settings from the specified file, replacing the current default configuration. The file should contain configuration options in a format compatible with the defaults system.

29.22.12 TCustomDefaults.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves configuration settings to a file

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Saves the current default configuration settings to the specified file. This allows preservation of customized default settings for future use or distribution.

29.22.13 TCustomDefaults.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Saves configuration settings to a stream

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(S: TStream); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Saves the current default configuration settings to the provided stream. This allows flexible output of configuration data to various stream-based destinations.

29.22.14 TCustomDefaults.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads configuration settings from a stream

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(S: TStream); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Loads default configuration settings from the provided stream. This enables flexible input of configuration data from various stream-based sources.

The loaded settings become the new defaults for subsequent build operations.

29.22.15 TCustomDefaults.Target

Synopsis: Build target specification

Declaration: `Property Target : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the build target name or identifier for default configuration.

This property is used to identify which target-specific settings should be applied during the build process.

29.22.16 TCustomDefaults.OS

Synopsis: Target operating system

Declaration: `Property OS : TOS`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the target operating system for compilation (Windows, Linux, Darwin, etc.).

This property determines OS-specific compiler settings and conditional compilation directives that are applied during the build process.

29.22.17 TCustomDefaults.CPU

Synopsis: Target CPU architecture

Declaration: `Property CPU : TCpu`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the target CPU architecture for compilation (i386, x86_64, ARM, etc.).

This property determines CPU-specific compiler settings and optimizations that are applied during the build process.

29.22.18 TCustomDefaults.CompilerVersion

Synopsis: Version of the compiler being used

Declaration: `Property CompilerVersion : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Contains the version string of the Free Pascal compiler being used for builds.

This property provides version information for compatibility checking and build environment reporting.

29.22.19 TCustomDefaults.ExplicitOSNone

Synopsis: Whether to explicitly specify no target OS

Declaration: `Property ExplicitOSNone : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Boolean flag that controls whether to explicitly specify no target operating system.

When `True`, the build system will not set any OS-specific compilation flags, resulting in generic or OS-independent compilation.

29.22.20 TCustomDefaults.BuildString

Synopsis: Build configuration string

Declaration: `Property BuildString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: String representation of the current build configuration settings.

This property provides a human-readable summary of the target platform, compiler options, and build parameters.

29.22.21 TCustomDefaults.BuildOS

Synopsis: Operating system for the build environment

Declaration: `Property BuildOS : TOS`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the operating system of the build environment (the system performing the compilation).

This property is used for cross-compilation scenarios where the build OS differs from the target OS.

29.22.22 TCustomDefaults.BuildCPU

Synopsis: CPU architecture for the build environment

Declaration: `Property BuildCPU : TCpu`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the CPU architecture of the build environment (the system performing the compilation).

This property is used for cross-compilation scenarios where the build CPU differs from the target CPU architecture.

29.22.23 TCustomDefaults.Mode

Synopsis: Build mode configuration

Declaration: `Property Mode : TCompilerMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the build mode that controls optimization, debugging, and code generation settings.

Common modes include debug (with symbols and checks) and release (optimized for performance).

29.22.24 TCustomDefaults.UnixPaths

Synopsis: Whether to use Unix-style path conventions

Declaration: `Property UnixPaths : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Boolean flag that controls whether to use Unix-style path separators and conventions.

When `True`, forward slashes are used for paths instead of platform-specific separators, enabling cross-platform path consistency.

29.22.25 TCustomDefaults.Options

Synopsis: Configuration options for the build

Declaration: `Property Options : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Collection of configuration options that are applied to all builds using these defaults.

Options include compiler flags, preprocessor definitions, optimization settings, and other build-specific parameters.

29.22.26 TCustomDefaults.NoFPCCfg

Synopsis: Whether to ignore FPC configuration files

Declaration: `Property NoFPCCfg : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Boolean flag that controls whether to ignore system-wide Free Pascal configuration files.

When `True`, the build system bypasses automatic loading of `fpc.cfg` and similar configuration files.

29.22.27 TCustomDefaults.ThreadsAmount

Synopsis: Number of threads to use during compilation

Declaration: `Property ThreadsAmount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the number of parallel threads to use during multi-threaded compilation.

Higher thread counts can improve build performance on multi-core systems, while lower counts reduce resource usage.

29.22.28 TCustomDefaults.LocalUnitDir

Synopsis: Local directory for compiled units

Declaration: `Property LocalUnitDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the local directory where compiled unit files (`.ppu`, `.o`) are stored.

This directory is used for unit output during compilation and serves as a search path for unit dependencies in the same package.

29.22.29 TCustomDefaults.GlobalUnitDir

Synopsis: Global directory for compiled units

Declaration: `Property GlobalUnitDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the global directory where system-wide compiled unit files are located.

This directory is searched for unit dependencies that are not part of the current package, such as RTL and FCL units.

29.22.30 TCustomDefaults.SearchPath

Synopsis: Search paths for finding files

Declaration: `Property SearchPath : TStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the search paths used for locating source files, units, and other resources.

Multiple paths can be specified and are searched in order when resolving file dependencies during compilation.

29.22.31 TCustomDefaults.Prefix

Synopsis: Installation prefix directory

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the base installation prefix directory for all package installations.

All installation paths are relative to this prefix, enabling flexible deployment to different base locations.

29.22.32 TCustomDefaults.ZipPrefix

Synopsis: Prefix for archive file operations

Declaration: `Property ZipPrefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the directory prefix used when creating or extracting archive files.

This prefix is applied to file paths within archives to ensure proper relative path structure during archive operations.

29.22.33 TCustomDefaults.BaseInstallDir

Synopsis: Base directory for installations

Declaration: `Property BaseInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the base directory where all package components are installed.

This directory serves as the root for all installation operations and contains subdirectories for units, documentation, and examples.

29.22.34 TCustomDefaults.UnitInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing unit files

Declaration: `Property UnitInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where compiled unit files are installed.

This directory contains the final .ppu and .o files that are installed for use by other packages and applications.

29.22.35 TCustomDefaults.UnitConfigFilesInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing unit configuration files

Declaration: `Property UnitConfigFilesInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where unit configuration files are installed.

These configuration files contain search paths and settings that help the compiler locate and use the installed units.

29.22.36 TCustomDefaults.BinInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing binary files

Declaration: `Property BinInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where executable binary files are installed.

This directory contains compiled programs, utilities, and tools that are part of the package distribution.

29.22.37 TCustomDefaults.LibInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing library files

Declaration: `Property LibInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where library files are installed.

This directory contains shared libraries, static libraries, and other linkable library components provided by the package.

29.22.38 TCustomDefaults.DocInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing documentation files

Declaration: `Property DocInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where documentation files are installed.

This directory contains user manuals, API documentation, readme files, and other informational content for the package.

29.22.39 TCustomDefaults.ExamplesInstallDir

Synopsis: Directory for installing example files

Declaration: `Property ExamplesInstallDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the target directory where example files are installed.

This directory contains sample programs, demonstration code, and tutorials that show how to use the package functionality.

29.22.40 TCustomDefaults.FPDocOutputDir

Synopsis: Output directory for FPDoc documentation

Declaration: `Property FPDocOutputDir : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the output directory where FPDoc-generated documentation is created.

This directory receives the HTML, XML, or other formatted documentation files generated by the FPDoc documentation system.

29.22.41 TCustomDefaults.FPDocOptions

Synopsis: Command line options for FPDoc

Declaration: `Property FPDocOptions : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies command line options and parameters passed to the FPDoc documentation generator.

These options control documentation format, output settings, processing modes, and other FPDoc-specific configuration parameters.

29.22.42 TCustomDefaults.FPUnitSourcePath

Synopsis: Source path for FPUnit testing framework

Declaration: `Property FPUnitSourcePath : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the path to the FPUnit testing framework source files.

This path is used to locate FPUnit units and resources when building test programs and test suites for package validation.

29.22.43 TCustomDefaults.Compiler

Synopsis: Compiler executable path and options

Declaration: `Property Compiler : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the Free Pascal compiler executable path and default compilation options.

This property configures the compiler command, version, and global settings used for all compilation operations in the build system.

29.22.44 TCustomDefaults.Copy

Synopsis: File copy command and options

Declaration: `Property Copy : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for file copy operations.

This property configures the file copying mechanism used during installation, archive creation, and other file management tasks.

29.22.45 TCustomDefaults.Move

Synopsis: File move command and options

Declaration: `Property Move : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for file move operations.

This property configures the file moving mechanism used for reorganizing files during build and installation processes.

29.22.46 TCustomDefaults.Remove

Synopsis: File removal command and options

Declaration: `Property Remove : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for file removal operations.

This property configures the file deletion mechanism used during cleanup, uninstallation, and other file management tasks.

29.22.47 TCustomDefaults.RemoveDir

Synopsis: Directory removal command and options

Declaration: `Property RemoveDir : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for empty directory removal.

This property configures the directory deletion mechanism used when removing empty directories during cleanup operations.

29.22.48 TCustomDefaults.RemoveTree

Synopsis: Directory tree removal command and options

Declaration: `Property RemoveTree : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for recursive directory tree removal.

This property configures the mechanism for deleting entire directory structures with all contained files and subdirectories.

29.22.49 TCustomDefaults.MkDir

Synopsis: Directory creation command and options

Declaration: `Property MkDir : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for directory creation operations.

This property configures the directory creation mechanism used during installation and build processes to ensure required directories exist.

29.22.50 TCustomDefaults.Archive

Synopsis: Archive creation command and options

Declaration: `Property Archive : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the system command and options used for archive file creation.

This property configures the archiving mechanism used to create TAR, ZIP, or other compressed archive files for package distribution.

29.22.51 TCustomDefaults.UseEnvironment

Synopsis: Whether to use environment variables

Declaration: `Property UseEnvironment : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Boolean flag that controls whether to use environment variables in configuration.

When `True`, environment variables are expanded in paths and options, enabling dynamic configuration based on the system environment.

29.22.52 TCustomDefaults.IgnoreInvalidOptions

Synopsis: Whether to ignore invalid configuration options

Declaration: `Property IgnoreInvalidOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Boolean flag that controls whether invalid or unrecognized options are ignored.

When `True`, unknown configuration options do not cause build failures but are silently ignored with optional warning messages.

29.22.53 TCustomDefaults.BuildMode

Synopsis: Build mode configuration setting

Declaration: `Property BuildMode : TBuildMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BuildMode` specifies the current build mode configuration for the package compilation process. This setting influences compiler optimization levels, debug information inclusion, and other build parameters.

Common build modes include debug, release, and custom configurations tailored for specific build requirements.

29.22.54 TCustomDefaults.SingleFPDocFile

Synopsis: Whether to generate single FPDoc output file

Declaration: Property SingleFPDocFile : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SingleFPDocFile controls whether fpdoc generates documentation as a single combined file or as separate files for each unit. When True, all documentation is merged into one output file.

Single file output is useful for creating documentation packages or when distributing documentation as a single downloadable file.

29.22.55 TCustomDefaults.InstallExamples

Synopsis: Whether to install example files

Declaration: Property InstallExamples : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: InstallExamples controls whether example files are installed along with the package. When True, example source code and demonstration files are copied to the installation directory.

Installing examples provides users with ready-to-use code samples that demonstrate package functionality and serve as a learning resource.

29.22.56 TCustomDefaults.SkipCrossPrograms

Synopsis: Whether to skip cross-compilation programs

Declaration: Property SkipCrossPrograms : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SkipCrossPrograms determines whether program targets are skipped during cross-compilation builds. When True, only libraries and units are compiled when building for different target architectures.

This setting is useful when the target platform cannot execute the compiled programs or when only library components are needed for cross-platform deployment.

29.22.57 TCustomDefaults.SkipAllPrograms

Synopsis: Whether to skip building all programs

Declaration: Property SkipAllPrograms : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SkipAllPrograms controls whether all program targets are excluded from the build process. When True, only library units are compiled, skipping executable programs entirely.

This option is useful for library-only distributions or when building packages that provide only reusable components without standalone executables.

29.23 TCustomInstaller

29.23.1 Description

`TCustomInstaller` is the base class for implementing package installation systems. It provides the framework for managing packages, coordinating with the build engine, and handling different installation modes.

The installer manages a collection of packages, provides access to the build engine, and supports different run modes including compilation, installation, cleaning, and archiving. It serves as the bridge between the command-line interface and the build system.

See also: `TBuildEngine` (945), `TPackage` (1014), `TPackages` (1040), `TRunMode` (932)

29.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
989	<code>AddPackage</code>	Adds package to installer collection
989	<code>AddPackageVariant</code>	Adds package variant to installer
988	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new installer instance
989	<code>destroy</code>	Destroys installer instance and frees resources
989	<code>Run</code>	Executes the installer with the current configuration

29.23.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
990	<code>BuildEngine</code>	r	Build engine instance used for compilation and installation
990	<code>FPMakeOptionsString</code>	r	String representation of FPMake options
991	<code>ListMode</code>	r	Mode for listing package information
991	<code>NotifyEventCollection</code>	r	Collection of notification event handlers
990	<code>Packages</code>	r	Collection of packages managed by this installer
990	<code>RunMode</code>	r	Current operation mode of the installer

29.23.4 TCustomInstaller.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new installer instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TCustomInstaller` instance with default configuration. This constructor sets up the installer framework including the build engine, package collection, and default settings.

It also analyzes the command-line to determine what the `RunMode` ([990](#)) is.

The created instance is then ready to have packages added and can be configured for different run modes such as compilation, installation, cleaning, or archiving that will be executed during the `Run` ([989](#)) procedure.

See also: `RunMode` ([990](#)), `Run` ([989](#))

29.23.5 TCustomInstaller.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys installer instance and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `destroy` frees all resources allocated by the installer including the build engine and package collection. This destructor ensures proper cleanup of all installer components and allocated memory.

The destructor handles cleanup of temporary files, releases system resources, and properly terminates any ongoing build operations before freeing the installer instance.

29.23.6 TCustomInstaller.AddPackage

Synopsis: Adds package to installer collection

Declaration: `function AddPackage(const AName: string) : TPackage`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddPackage` creates and adds a new `TPackage` (1014) instance to the installer's package collection. The method returns the newly created package which can then be configured with targets, dependencies, and settings.

Each package added to the installer will be processed during the run operation according to the current run mode, whether for compilation, installation, or other operations.

29.23.7 TCustomInstaller.AddPackageVariant

Synopsis: Adds package variant to installer

Declaration: `function AddPackageVariant(AName: string; AIsInheritable: Boolean;
AutoAddToPackage: Boolean=False)
: TPackageVariants`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddPackageVariant` creates and adds a package variant that provides alternative build configurations. Package variants enable different compilation options, target platforms, or feature sets within the same package.

Variants can be inheritable, allowing derived packages to inherit variant settings, and can be automatically added to packages for convenient configuration management.

29.23.8 TCustomInstaller.Run

Synopsis: Executes the installer with the current configuration

Declaration: `function Run : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Runs the installer according to the current `RunMode` (990) setting. This method coordinates the entire build process, from compilation through installation, depending on the specified run mode.

See also: `RunMode` (990), `TBuildEngine` (945)

29.23.9 TCustomInstaller.FPMakeOptionsString

Synopsis: String representation of FPMake options

Declaration: `Property FPMakeOptionsString : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FPMakeOptionsString` provides a string representation of the current FPMake configuration options. This property formats the installer's settings into a readable string for logging and diagnostic purposes.

The string includes information about run mode, package configuration, build options, and other settings that affect the installer's operation.

29.23.10 TCustomInstaller.BuildEngine

Synopsis: Build engine instance used for compilation and installation

Declaration: `Property BuildEngine : TBuildEngine`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `BuildEngine` property provides access to the `TBuildEngine` (945) instance that handles the actual compilation, dependency resolution, and file operations.

See also: `TBuildEngine` (945)

29.23.11 TCustomInstaller.Packages

Synopsis: Collection of packages managed by this installer

Declaration: `Property Packages : TPackages`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The `Packages` property contains the collection of `TPackage` (1014) instances that will be processed by this installer.

See also: `TPackages` (1040), `TPackage` (1014)

29.23.12 TCustomInstaller.RunMode

Synopsis: Current operation mode of the installer

Declaration: `Property RunMode : TRunMode`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RunMode` determines the type of operation the installer will perform when `Run` is called. Possible modes include compilation, installation, cleaning, archiving, and other package management operations.

The run mode controls which build engine methods are invoked and how packages are processed during the installer execution cycle.

29.23.13 TCustomInstaller.ListMode

Synopsis: Mode for listing package information

Declaration: `Property ListMode : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: When `ListMode` is `True` then the installer will simply list the various commands it would normally execute to execute the action.

It is similar to `-dry-run` found in other utilities.

29.23.14 TCustomInstaller.NotifyEventCollection

Synopsis: Collection of notification event handlers

Declaration: `Property NotifyEventCollection : TNotifyEventCollection`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `NotifyEventCollection` manages the collection of event handlers that receive notifications during installer operations. This property enables registration of multiple event listeners for progress monitoring.

Event handlers can monitor build progress, installation status, and other installer events for logging, user interface updates, and custom processing requirements.

29.24 TDependencies

29.24.1 Description

`TDependencies` is a collection class that manages build dependencies for Free Pascal packages.

This collection stores and organizes dependency objects, providing indexed access and management functionality.

29.24.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
992	<code>Add</code>	Adds a new package dependency to the collection
993	<code>AddInclude</code>	Adds an include file dependency to the collection
992	<code>AddUnit</code>	Adds a unit dependency to the collection
992	<code>GetDependency</code>	Gets dependency at specified index
992	<code>SetDependency</code>	Sets dependency at specified index

29.24.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
993	<code>Dependencies</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indexed access to dependency objects in the collection

29.24.8 TDependencies.AddInclude

Synopsis: Adds an include file dependency to the collection

Declaration:

```
function AddInclude(const Value: string) : TDependency
function AddInclude(const Value: string; const OSes: TOSes)
                : TDependency
function AddInclude(const Value: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
                const OSes: TOSes) : TDependency
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new dependency on an include file. The dependency can be made conditional by specifying CPU architectures and operating systems where this dependency applies.

See also: Add ([992](#)), AddUnit ([992](#)), depInclude ([924](#))

29.24.9 TDependencies.Dependencies

Synopsis: Indexed access to dependency objects in the collection

Declaration:

```
Property Dependencies[Index: Integer]: TDependency; default
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Provides indexed read and write access to TDependency ([993](#)) objects stored in the collection.

This default property enables array-style access to individual dependency entries for configuration and management.

29.25 TDependency

29.25.1 Description

TDependency represents a dependency relationship between build targets or packages. Dependencies can be on other packages, individual units, include files, or specific targets.

The dependency system ensures that required components are built before dependent targets, manages version requirements, and handles conditional dependencies based on CPU and OS targets.

Dependencies support version checking through the Version property and can be conditional on specific CPU architectures and operating systems inherited from TConditionalString ([970](#)).

See also: TDependencies ([991](#)), TDependencyType ([924](#)), TConditionalString ([970](#)), TPackage ([1014](#)), TTarget ([1054](#))

29.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
994	Create	Creates a new package dependency instance
994	Destroy	Destroys the dependency object and releases resources

29.25.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
994	DependencyType	r	Type of dependency relationship
995	RequireChecksum	rw	Controls checksum verification for the dependency
994	Target	rw	Target name that this dependency references
995	TargetFileName	rw	Specific filename for the dependency target
995	Version	rw	Version requirement for the dependency

29.25.4 TDependency.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new package dependency instance

Declaration: `constructor Create; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TDependency` ([993](#)) object with the specified collection owner.

The constructor establishes the dependency relationship and registers it with the provided collection.

Dependencies are used to define build order requirements and package relationship constraints.

29.25.5 TDependency.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the dependency object and releases resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the dependency object and removes it from its containing collection.

The destructor ensures proper cleanup of version objects and conditional string resources.

The dependency is automatically unregistered from the build system when destroyed.

29.25.6 TDependency.Target

Synopsis: Target name that this dependency references

Declaration: `Property Target : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the target, unit, package, or include file that this dependency requires.

The target must be available for the dependent target to compile successfully.

29.25.7 TDependency.DependencyType

Synopsis: Type of dependency relationship

Declaration: `Property DependencyType : TDependencyType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the type of dependency: package, implicit package, unit, or include file.

The dependency type determines how the dependency is resolved and linked.

This read-only property is set when the dependency is added to the dependencies collection.

See also: `TDependencies.Add` ([992](#)), `TDependencies.AddUnit` ([992](#)), `TDependencies.AddInclude` ([993](#))

29.25.8 `TDependency.TargetFileName`

Synopsis: Specific filename for the dependency target

Declaration: `Property TargetFileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Optional specific filename for the dependency target.

When specified, this overrides the default filename derived from the target name.

29.25.9 `TDependency.Version`

Synopsis: Version requirement for the dependency

Declaration: `Property Version : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Version specification for the required dependency.

Used to ensure compatibility when multiple versions of a dependency are available.

29.25.10 `TDependency.RequireChecksum`

Synopsis: Controls checksum verification for the dependency

Declaration: `Property RequireChecksum : Cardinal`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: When `True`, requires checksum verification of the dependency file.

Ensures integrity and prevents use of corrupted or modified dependencies.

29.26 `TDictionary`

29.26.1 **Description**

`TDictionary` provides a string substitution system for variable and function expansion.

This class manages both static variable assignments and dynamic function callbacks for resolving configuration values.

The dictionary is used extensively throughout the build system to resolve paths, variables, and configuration parameters.

29.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
997	AddFunction	Adds a function replacement callback to the dictionary
996	AddVariable	Adds a variable name-value pair to the dictionary
996	Create	Creates a new string substitution dictionary
996	Destroy	Destroys the dictionary and releases resources
997	GetValue	Retrieves substituted value for dictionary entry
997	RemoveItem	Removes a variable or function from the dictionary
997	ReplaceStrings	Performs string substitution using dictionary variables
998	Substitute	Substitutes macros in a string using the dictionary

29.26.3 TDictionary.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new string substitution dictionary

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new `TDictionary` instance that can store variable name-value pairs and function callbacks for dynamic string substitution.

The dictionary is used throughout the build system to resolve configuration variables, paths, and dynamic values during compilation and installation.

29.26.4 TDictionary.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the dictionary and releases resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all memory used by the dictionary including variable storage and function callback lists.

This destructor ensures proper cleanup of all internal data structures and registered callbacks.

The destructor is called automatically when the dictionary object is destroyed or goes out of scope.

29.26.5 TDictionary.AddVariable

Synopsis: Adds a variable name-value pair to the dictionary

Declaration: `procedure AddVariable(const AName: string; const Value: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Adds or updates a variable with the specified name and value in the dictionary. If a variable with the same name already exists, its value is replaced.

Variables are used for static string substitution in configuration files, command line arguments, and file paths.

29.26.6 TDictionary.AddFunction

Synopsis: Adds a function replacement callback to the dictionary

Declaration: `procedure AddFunction(const AName: string;
FReplacement: TReplaceFunction)`

Visibility: public

Description: Adds a function callback with the specified name that provides dynamic value generation during string substitution. Functions can accept arguments and return computed values based on runtime conditions.

This enables advanced templating where values are calculated dynamically based on build parameters, system configuration, or package state.

29.26.7 TDictionary.RemoveItem

Synopsis: Removes a variable or function from the dictionary

Declaration: `procedure RemoveItem(const AName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveItem` removes the specified variable or function callback from the dictionary.

After removal, attempts to resolve the removed item name will fail with an exception.

This method is useful for dynamically modifying the available substitution variables during build processes.

29.26.8 TDictionary.GetValue

Synopsis: Retrieves substituted value for dictionary entry

Declaration: `function GetValue(AName: string) : string
function GetValue(const AName: string; const Args: string) : string
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Retrieves the value for the specified dictionary entry name. For variables, returns the stored string value. For functions, executes the callback with the provided arguments and returns the computed result.

Raises an exception if the requested entry name is not found in the dictionary.

29.26.9 TDictionary.ReplaceStrings

Synopsis: Performs string substitution using dictionary variables

Declaration: `function ReplaceStrings(const ASource: string;
const MaxDepth: Integer=10) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReplaceStrings` processes a source string and replaces all variable and function references with their resolved values.

The method supports nested substitutions up to the specified maximum depth to prevent infinite recursion.

Variable references use `$(name)` syntax, and function calls use `$(name:arg1:arg2)` format for parameter passing.

29.26.10 `TDictionary.Substitute`

Synopsis: Substitutes macros in a string using the dictionary

Declaration:

```
function Substitute(const Source: string;
                    const Macros: Array of string = string) : string
; virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `Substitute` performs macro expansion and variable substitution on the input string using dictionary entries.

This method processes macro syntax patterns and replaces them with corresponding values from variables and function callbacks.

The substitution supports both simple variable expansion and complex function calls with parameter passing.

29.27 `TFPCDefaults`

29.27.1 Description

`TFPCDefaults` extends `TCustomDefaults` (972) with Free Pascal Compiler specific configuration settings and defaults. This class provides FPC-tailored build configuration management.

The class includes FPC-specific compiler paths, option handling, and build system integration optimized for Free Pascal development environments.

29.27.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
998	<code>CompilerDefaults</code>	Sets up FPC compiler default configuration

29.27.3 `TFPCDefaults.CompilerDefaults`

Synopsis: Sets up FPC compiler default configuration

Declaration:

```
procedure CompilerDefaults; override
```

Visibility: public

Description: `CompilerDefaults` initializes the FPC compiler with standard default settings and options. This method configures the compiler environment with appropriate paths, compilation modes, and target settings.

The setup includes standard FPC installation paths, library directories, and default compiler options suitable for typical Free Pascal development scenarios.

29.28 TFPCInstaller

29.28.1 Description

`TFPCInstaller` extends `TCustomInstaller` ([988](#)) with Free Pascal Compiler specific functionality and configuration. This class provides FPC-tailored installation and build management.

The FPC installer includes specific knowledge of FPC compiler behavior, standard library paths, and Free Pascal ecosystem conventions for package building and installation.

29.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
999	Create	Creates FPC installer instance

29.28.3 TFPCInstaller.Create

Synopsis: Creates FPC installer instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TFPCInstaller` instance with FPC-specific configuration and defaults. This constructor sets up the installer with Free Pascal Compiler specific build engine and settings.

The created installer is preconfigured for Free Pascal development with appropriate compiler paths, library directories, and build system integration.

This is the installer created when no installer class is passed to the `Installer` ([941](#)) function.

See also: `Installer` ([941](#))

29.29 TfpmpPlugin

29.29.1 Description

`TfpmpPlugin` provides the foundation for implementing FPMake plugins that extend build system functionality. Plugins enable custom processing during various phases of the package building and installation process.

29.29.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1000	<code>AfterResolvePackagePath</code>	Called after resolving package path
1000	<code>BeforeResolvePackagePath</code>	Called before resolving package path
1000	<code>ResolvePackagePath</code>	Resolves package path location

29.29.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1000	Name	r	Name of the plugin

29.29.4 TfpmPlugin.BeforeResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Called before resolving package path

Declaration: `procedure BeforeResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
out AContinue: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeforeResolvePackagePath` is called by the build engine before resolving package paths during build operations. This method enables plugins to intercept and modify package path resolution logic.

Plugins can use this callback to implement custom package location strategies, add search paths, or modify the package discovery process according to specific requirements.

29.29.5 TfpmPlugin.ResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Resolves package path location

Declaration: `procedure ResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
SearchDirectory: string;
out AContinue: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResolvePackagePath` performs the actual package path resolution logic within the plugin. This method implements custom package discovery algorithms and location strategies.

The plugin can search in custom directories, apply naming conventions, or use alternative package discovery mechanisms to locate package files and directories.

29.29.6 TfpmPlugin.AfterResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Called after resolving package path

Declaration: `procedure AfterResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
out AContinue: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterResolvePackagePath` is called by the build engine after package path resolution completes. This method enables plugins to perform post-resolution processing or cleanup operations.

29.29.7 TfpmPlugin.Name

Synopsis: Name of the plugin

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Name` property holds the unique identifier for the plugin instance. This name is used for plugin registration, lookup, and identification within the build system.

Plugin names should be unique within the build environment.

29.30 TfpmPluginManager

29.30.1 Description

`TfpmPluginManager` manages the registration, instantiation, and lifecycle of FPMake plugins. This class provides centralized plugin management and coordinates plugin interactions with the build system.

The plugin manager handles plugin registration, maintains plugin collections, and provides the interface between the build engine and individual plugin instances.

29.30.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1002	<code>AfterResolvePackagePath</code>	Notifies all plugins after path resolution
1001	<code>BeforeResolvePackagePath</code>	Notifies all plugins before path resolution
1001	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys plugin manager and registered plugins
1001	<code>RegisterPlugin</code>	Registers plugin with the manager
1002	<code>ResolvePackagePath</code>	Delegates package path resolution to plugins

29.30.3 TfpmPluginManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys plugin manager and registered plugins

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the plugin manager and frees all registered plugin instances. This destructor ensures proper cleanup of all plugin resources and memory allocations.

The destructor unregisters all plugins, frees plugin instances, and releases any system resources held by the plugin management system.

29.30.4 TfpmPluginManager.RegisterPlugin

Synopsis: Registers plugin with the manager

Declaration: `procedure RegisterPlugin(APugin: TfpmPluginClass)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterPlugin` adds a plugin instance to the manager's collection of active plugins. This method enables the plugin to participate in build system events and callbacks.

Registered plugins receive notifications during package resolution, compilation, and other build operations, allowing them to extend or customize build system behavior.

29.30.5 TfpmPluginManager.BeforeResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Notifies all plugins before path resolution

Declaration: `procedure BeforeResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
out AContinue: Boolean); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeResolvePackagePath` notifies all registered plugins before package path resolution begins. This method allows plugins to prepare for or modify the upcoming path resolution process. The manager iterates through all registered plugins, calling their `BeforeResolvePackagePath` methods to enable coordinated plugin processing during package discovery operations.

29.30.6 `TfpmPluginManager.ResolvePackagePath`

Synopsis: Delegates package path resolution to plugins

Declaration: `procedure ResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage; SearchPath: string;
out AContinue: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResolvePackagePath` coordinates package path resolution by delegating to registered plugins. This method manages the plugin chain and handles resolution results from multiple plugin sources. The manager calls each plugin's resolution method until a package is found or all plugins have been exhausted, enabling flexible and extensible package discovery mechanisms.

29.30.7 `TfpmPluginManager.AfterResolvePackagePath`

Synopsis: Notifies all plugins after path resolution

Declaration: `procedure AfterResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
out AContinue: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterResolvePackagePath` notifies all registered plugins after package path resolution completes. This method enables plugins to perform post-resolution processing or cleanup operations. The manager provides resolution results to all plugins, allowing them to cache information, validate results, or trigger additional processing based on the resolved package paths.

29.31 `TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin`

29.31.1 Description

`TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin` implements a specialized plugin for package file path resolution. This plugin provides specific logic for locating package files and directories within the file system.

29.31.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1003	<code>BeforeResolvePackagePath</code>	Called before path resolution by plugin
1003	<code>ResolvePackagePath</code>	Resolves package path using plugin logic

29.31.3 TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin.BeforeResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Called before path resolution by plugin

Declaration: `procedure BeforeResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage;
out AContinue: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeforeResolvePackagePath` is called before the plugin performs package path resolution. This method enables pre-processing and preparation for the package discovery operation.

29.31.4 TfpmResolvePackagePathsPlugin.ResolvePackagePath

Synopsis: Resolves package path using plugin logic

Declaration: `procedure ResolvePackagePath (ABuildEngine: TBuildEngine;
APackage: TPackage; SearchPath: string;
out AContinue: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResolvePackagePath` implements the core package path resolution logic for this plugin. This method searches for package files using plugin-specific strategies and search algorithms.

29.32 TFPVersion

29.32.1 Description

Class that encapsulates a Free Pascal version number with major, minor, micro, and build components. Provides methods for version comparison, parsing from strings, and formatting to strings.

29.32.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1004	<code>Assign</code>	Assign version from another source
1004	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the version number to empty state
1004	<code>CompareVersion</code>	Compare this version with another version
1004	<code>SameVersion</code>	Check if versions are identical

29.32.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1005	<code>AsString</code>	rw	Version number as formatted string
1006	<code>Build</code>	rw	Build version number
1005	<code>Empty</code>	r	Whether the version number is empty
1005	<code>Major</code>	rw	Major version number
1006	<code>Micro</code>	rw	Micro version number
1005	<code>Minor</code>	rw	Minor version number

29.32.4 TFPVersion.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the version number to empty state

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Procedure that resets all version number components (major, minor, micro, build) to zero. Returns the version object to an empty, uninitialized state.

29.32.5 TFPVersion.Assign

Synopsis: Assign version from another source

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Procedure that copies version information from another TFPVersion (1003) object or compatible source. Allows cloning or copying version data between version objects.

29.32.6 TFPVersion.CompareVersion

Synopsis: Compare this version with another version

Declaration: `function CompareVersion(AVersion: TFPVersion) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CompareVersion` performs a numerical comparison between this version object and another version.

The comparison follows semantic versioning rules, comparing major, minor, micro, and build numbers in sequence.

Returns a negative value if this version is older, zero if versions are equal, or positive if this version is newer.

29.32.7 TFPVersion.SameVersion

Synopsis: Check if versions are identical

Declaration: `function SameVersion(AVersion: TFPVersion) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SameVersion` returns `True` if this version is exactly identical to the specified version.

This method performs an exact comparison of all version components including major, minor, micro, and build numbers.

Unlike `CompareVersion` (1004), this method returns a boolean result rather than a comparison integer.

29.32.8 TFPVersion.AsString

Synopsis: Version number as formatted string

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AsString` returns the version number formatted as a human-readable string in the format "major.minor.micro.build".

Empty version components are omitted from the string representation, so version 1.2.0.0 appears as "1.2".

This property is commonly used for display purposes and version comparison logging.

29.32.9 TFPVersion.Empty

Synopsis: Whether the version number is empty

Declaration: `Property Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if all version number components (major, minor, micro, build) are zero.

This property is useful for checking whether a version has been properly initialized or represents a valid version number.

An empty version typically indicates an unset or invalid version state.

29.32.10 TFPVersion.Major

Synopsis: Major version number

Declaration: `Property Major : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Major` specifies the major version component, representing significant API changes or major releases.

In semantic versioning, major version increments indicate breaking changes or incompatible API modifications.

This value must be a non-negative integer and is the most significant component in version comparison.

29.32.11 TFPVersion.Minor

Synopsis: Minor version number

Declaration: `Property Minor : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Minor` represents the minor version component, indicating backwards-compatible functionality additions.

In semantic versioning, minor version increments signal new features that maintain API compatibility.

This value must be a non-negative integer and is compared after major version in version ordering.

29.32.12 TFPVersion.Micro

Synopsis: Micro version number

Declaration: `Property Micro : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Micro` represents the micro (or patch) version component for backwards-compatible bug fixes.

In semantic versioning, micro version increments indicate bug fixes and small improvements without API changes.

This value must be a non-negative integer and is the least significant component in standard version comparison.

29.32.13 TFPVersion.Build

Synopsis: Build version number

Declaration: `Property Build : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Build` represents the build version component for distinguishing different builds of the same version.

Build numbers are typically used for internal tracking, nightly builds, or continuous integration systems.

This value must be a non-negative integer and is usually the least significant component in extended version comparison.

29.33 TFunctionItem

29.33.1 Description

`TFunctionItem` represents a dictionary entry that stores a function callback with an associated key.

Function items provide extensibility by allowing custom functions to be registered and called during template processing and build configuration evaluation.

29.33.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1007	Create	Creates function item with specified callback

29.33.3 TFunctionItem.Create

Synopsis: Creates function item with specified callback

Declaration: `constructor Create (AFunc: TReplaceFunction)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TFunctionItem` instance with the specified function callback. This constructor stores the provided function reference for later invocation during template evaluation.

29.34 TNamedCollection

29.34.1 Description

Generic collection class that manages a list of `TNamedItem` ([1008](#)) objects. Provides name-based lookup functionality and ensures unique naming within the collection.

29.34.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1007	IndexOfName	Find index of item by name
1007	ItemByName	Get item by name

29.34.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1008	Items	rw	Indexed access to collection items
1008	UniqueNames	r	Controls whether item names must be unique

29.34.4 TNamedCollection.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Find index of item by name

Declaration: `function IndexOfName (const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for an item with the specified name in the collection and returns its zero-based index. Returns -1 if no item with the given name is found.

This provides efficient name-based lookup for finding specific items in named collections.

29.34.5 TNamedCollection.ItemByName

Synopsis: Get item by name

Declaration: `function ItemByName (const AName: string) : TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Description: Retrieves an item from the collection by its name. Returns the `TNamedItem` (1008) object if found, or `nil` if no item with the specified name exists.

29.34.6 `TNamedCollection.UniqueNames`

Synopsis: Controls whether item names must be unique

Declaration: `Property UniqueNames : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Boolean property that determines whether the collection enforces unique naming. When `True`, attempting to add an item with a duplicate name will raise an exception.

29.34.7 `TNamedCollection.Items`

Synopsis: Indexed access to collection items

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Indexed property providing direct access to collection items by their zero-based index. Allows reading and writing of `TNamedItem` (1008) objects at specific positions.

29.35 `TNamedItem`

29.35.1 Description

Abstract base class that provides a `Name` property for objects that need to be identified by name. Serves as the foundation for many `fpmake` objects that require named identification.

29.35.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1008	<code>Name</code>	rw	Name of the item

29.35.3 `TNamedItem.Name`

Synopsis: Name of the item

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: String property that stores the unique name identifier for this item. Used for lookups, references, and display purposes throughout the build system.

29.36 TNamedItemList

29.36.1 Description

Specialized list class that extends basic list functionality with name-based lookup capabilities. Provides efficient access to TNamedItem (1008) objects by both index and name.

29.36.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1009	IndexOfName	Find index of named item
1009	ItemByName	Get named item by name

29.36.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1009	NamedItems	rw	Indexed access to named items

29.36.4 TNamedItemList.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Find index of named item

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for an item with the specified name and returns its zero-based index in the list. Returns -1 if no item with the given name is found.

29.36.5 TNamedItemList.ItemByName

Synopsis: Get named item by name

Declaration: `function ItemByName(const AName: string) : TNamedItem`

Visibility: public

Description: Retrieves an item from the list by its name. Returns the TNamedItem (1008) object if found, or nil if no item with the specified name exists.

29.36.6 TNamedItemList.NamedItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to named items

Declaration: `Property NamedItems[Index: Integer]: TNamedItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Property providing indexed access to TNamedItem (1008) objects by their name. Allows retrieving items using string names as array indices.

29.37 TNotifyEventCollection

29.37.1 Description

TNotifyEventCollection is a specialized collection that manages multiple notification event handlers.

This class provides methods for adding, removing, and invoking notification events at specific build process stages.

Build systems use this collection to maintain lists of callbacks that should be executed at defined trigger points.

29.37.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1010	AppendEvent	Adds a notification event handler to the collection
1011	AppendProcEvent	Adds a procedural notification event to the collection
1011	CallEvents	Invokes all event handlers for the specified action
1010	create	Creates a new notification event collection
1010	GetEnumerator	Gets enumerator for iterating notify events

29.37.3 TNotifyEventCollection.create

Synopsis: Creates a new notification event collection

Declaration: `constructor create (ASupportedActionSet: TNotifyEventActionSet)`

Visibility: public

Description: `create` initializes a new TNotifyEventCollection ([1010](#)) instance.

The constructor sets up an empty collection ready to accept notification event items.

The collection is properly initialized with all necessary internal structures for event management.

29.37.4 TNotifyEventCollection.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Gets enumerator for iterating notify events

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TNotifyEventEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns a TNotifyEventEnumerator ([1011](#)) for iterating through the collection.

This method enables for-in loop support for notification event collections.

The enumerator provides sequential access to each notification event handler in the collection.

29.37.5 TNotifyEventCollection.AppendEvent

Synopsis: Adds a notification event handler to the collection

Declaration: `procedure AppendEvent (AnAction: TNotifyEventAction;
AnEvent: TNotifyEvent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendEvent` adds a new notification event handler to the collection for a specific action type. The event handler will be triggered when the specified build action occurs during package processing. Multiple handlers can be associated with the same action type and will be executed in sequence.

29.37.6 TNotifyEventCollection.AppendProcEvent

Synopsis: Adds a procedural notification event to the collection

Declaration: `procedure AppendProcEvent (AnAction: TNotifyEventAction;
AnProcEvent: TNotifyProcEvent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AppendProcEvent` adds a procedural notification event handler to the collection for a specific action type.

This method accepts function pointers rather than object method pointers, enabling procedural call-back support.

The procedural event handler will be triggered when the specified build action occurs during package processing.

29.37.7 TNotifyEventCollection.CallEvents

Synopsis: Invokes all event handlers for the specified action

Declaration: `procedure CallEvents (AnAction: TNotifyEventAction; Sender: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CallEvents` executes all registered notification event handlers that match the specified action type.

This method is called internally by the build system when specific build actions occur.

All matching event handlers are invoked in sequence with the provided sender object as parameter.

29.38 TNotifyEventEnumerator

29.38.1 Description

`TNotifyEventEnumerator` provides iteration support for collections of notification events.

This class enables for-in loop syntax when working with notification event collections.

The enumerator maintains current position state and provides access to individual event items during iteration.

29.38.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1012	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Gets current notify event in enumeration

29.38.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1012	<code>Current</code>	r	Current notification event in the enumeration

29.38.4 TNotifyEventEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets current notify event in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TNotifyEventItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the current notification event procedure at the enumerator's position.

This method provides access to the notification event handler currently pointed to by the enumerator.

The method is typically called internally during for-in loop iteration to retrieve the current item.

29.38.5 TNotifyEventEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current notification event in the enumeration

Declaration: `Property Current : TNotifyEventItem`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Current` returns the current notification event procedure at the enumerator's position.

This property provides convenient access to the notification event handler currently pointed to during iteration.

The property is used in for-in loops to access each event handler as the enumeration progresses.

29.39 TNotifyEventItem

29.39.1 Description

`TNotifyEventItem` represents a single notification event configuration that associates callback handlers with specific build actions.

This class encapsulates the event trigger conditions and the corresponding callback procedures or functions.

Build systems use these items to implement custom behavior at defined points in the build process.

29.39.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1013	<code>CallEvent</code>	Invokes the notification event callback

29.39.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1013	<code>OnAction</code>	rw	Action type that triggers this notification event
1013	<code>OnEvent</code>	rw	Standard notify event callback procedure
1013	<code>OnProcEvent</code>	rw	Procedural notify event callback

29.39.4 TNotifyEventItem.CallEvent

Synopsis: Invokes the notification event callback

Declaration: `procedure CallEvent (Sender: TObject)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CallEvent` executes the configured notification event callback with the provided sender object.

This method checks which callback type is assigned and calls the appropriate handler procedure or method.

The method is called internally by the build system when the associated action trigger occurs.

29.39.5 TNotifyEventItem.OnAction

Synopsis: Action type that triggers this notification event

Declaration: `Property OnAction : TNotifyEventAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnAction` specifies the `TNotifyEventAction` (927) that will trigger this notification event.

When the build process reaches the specified action point, the associated callback handlers will be executed.

This property determines at which stage of the build process the event will fire.

29.39.6 TNotifyEventItem.OnEvent

Synopsis: Standard notify event callback procedure

Declaration: `Property OnEvent : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnEvent` contains a standard notification event handler that follows the `TNotifyEvent` signature.

This property accepts method pointers that receive a sender object as parameter when the event fires.

Use this property for object-oriented event handling with standard notification event signatures.

29.39.7 TNotifyEventItem.OnProcEvent

Synopsis: Procedural notify event callback

Declaration: `Property OnProcEvent : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnProcEvent` contains a procedural notification event handler for function pointer-based callbacks.

This property accepts procedure pointers that can be called when the specified build action occurs.

Use this property for procedural event handling without object context requirements.

29.40 TPackage

29.40.1 Description

`TPackage` is the central class in the `fpmake` build system that represents a complete package. A package contains build targets, dependencies, installation files, and all configuration needed for compilation and deployment.

Each package can contain multiple targets such as units, programs, and libraries. The package manages compilation options, search paths, dependencies on other packages, and installation procedures. It supports cross-platform compilation with CPU and OS-specific settings.

It handles the following aspects:

- Management of `TTarget` ([1054](#)) build targets
- Dependency tracking through `TDependency` ([993](#)) objects
- Cross-platform compilation support
- Package variants for different build configurations
- Custom installation and archiving procedures

See also: `TTarget` ([1054](#)), `TTargets` ([1066](#)), `TDependency` ([993](#)), `TPackageVariants` ([1044](#)), `TBuildEngine` ([945](#)), `TCustomInstaller` ([988](#))

29.40.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1022	AddPackageVariant	Adds a package variant to the package
1022	ApplyPackageVariantToCompilerOptions	Applies package variant settings to compiler options
1018	Create	Creates a new package instance
1018	destroy	Destroys the package instance and frees resources
1023	EnterResolveDirsCS	Enters critical section for directory resolution
1021	GetArchiveFiles	Gets list of files to include in package archive
1021	GetArchiveSourceFiles	Gets list of source files for package archive
1020	GetBinOutputDir	Returns the output directory for binary files
1020	GetCleanFiles	Gets list of files to be cleaned for the package
1020	GetInstallFiles	Gets list of files to be installed for the package
1020	GetInstallSourceFiles	Gets list of source files to be installed
1021	GetManifest	Gets package manifest information
1019	GetPackageUnitInstallDir	Gets installation directory for package units
1019	GetPackageVariantsByName	Gets package variants collection by name
1019	GetUnitConfigOutputFilename	Gets output filename for unit configuration file
1018	GetUnitsOutputDir	Returns the output directory for compiled units
1018	HaveOptions	Checks if package has global compilation options
1019	InheritPackageVariantsFromDependency	Inherits package variants from a dependency package
1023	LeaveResolveDirsCS	Leaves critical section for directory resolution
1021	ListPackage	Lists package information to a string list
1022	LoadUnitConfigFromFile	Loads unit configuration from a file
1022	SaveUnitConfigToFile	Saves unit configuration to a file
1022	SetDefaultPackageVariant	Sets the default package variant for the package
1020	SetPackageUnitInstallDir	Sets installation directory for package units
1019	SetUnitsOutputDir	Sets the output directory for compiled units

29.40.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1036	AfterArchive	rw	Event handler executed after package archiving
1036	AfterArchiveProc	rw	Procedural event handler after archiving
1035	AfterClean	rw	Event handler executed after package cleanup
1035	AfterCleanProc	rw	Procedural event handler after cleanup
1033	AfterCompile	rw	Event handler executed after package compilation
1033	AfterCompileProc	rw	Procedural event handler after compilation
1034	AfterInstall	rw	Event handler executed after package installation
1034	AfterInstallProc	rw	Procedural event handler after installation
1037	AfterManifest	rw	Event handler executed after manifest creation
1037	AfterManifestProc	rw	Procedural event handler after manifest creation
1038	AfterPkgList	rw	Event handler executed after package listing
1038	AfterPkgListProc	rw	Procedural event handler after package listing
1025	Author	rw	Author or maintainer of the package
1036	BeforeArchive	rw	Event handler executed before package archiving
1036	BeforeArchiveProc	rw	Procedural event handler before archiving
1035	BeforeClean	rw	Event handler executed before package cleanup
1035	BeforeCleanProc	rw	Procedural event handler before cleanup
1033	BeforeCompile	rw	Event handler executed before package compilation
1033	BeforeCompileProc	rw	Procedural event handler before compilation
1034	BeforeInstall	rw	Event handler executed before package installation
1034	BeforeInstallProc	rw	Procedural event handler before installation
1037	BeforeManifest	rw	Event handler executed before manifest creation
1037	BeforeManifestProc	rw	Procedural event handler before manifest creation
1038	BeforePkgList	rw	Event handler executed before package listing
1038	BeforePkgListProc	rw	Procedural event handler before package listing
1027	BuildMode	r	Default build mode configuration for the package
1031	CleanFiles	r	Collection of files to be cleaned
1031	Commands	r	Collection of custom build commands
1028	CPUs	rw	Supported CPU architectures for the package
1031	Dependencies	r	Collection of package dependencies
1025	Description	rw	Descriptive text about the package
1026	DescriptionFile	rw	File containing package description text
1025	Directory	rw	Base directory path of the package
1024	DownloadURL	rw	URL for downloading the package
1024	Email	rw	Contact email address for the package
1030	ExamplePath	r	Search paths for example files
1023	FileName	rw	Filename of the package definition file
1027	Flags	r	Package flags and behavior settings
1030	FPDocFormat	rw	Output format for FPDoc documentation
1024	HomepageURL	rw	URL of the package homepage
1029	IncludePath	r	Search paths for include files
1026	InstalledChecksum	rw	Checksum of installed package files
1030	InstallFiles	r	Collection of files to be installed
1026	IsFPMakeAddIn	rw	Whether this package is an FPMake add-in
1025	License	rw	License terms for the package
1028	NeedLibC	rw	Whether package requires C library linkage
1029	ObjectPath	r	Search paths for object files
1028	Options	rw	Compiler options for the package
1028	OSes	rw	Supported operating systems for the package
1027	PackageVersion	r	Version information for the package
1024	ShortName	rw	Short name identifier for the package
1029	SourcePath	r	Search paths for source files
1032	Sources	r	Collection of source files
1031	State	rw	Current build state of the package
1026	SupportBuildModes	rw	Whether package supports different build modes
1032	Targets	r	Collection of build targets
1030	TestPath	r	Search paths for test files
1027	TransmitOptions	rw	Options transmitted to dependent packages
1032	UnitConfigFileName	rw	Filename for unit configuration file

29.40.4 TPackage.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new package instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `TPackage` instance and initializes all internal collections and properties. The constructor sets up default values and creates collections for targets, dependencies, and other package components.

See also: `destroy` ([1018](#))

29.40.5 TPackage.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the package instance and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the `TPackage` instance and frees all associated resources including target collections, dependency lists, and internal data structures.

See also: `Create` ([1018](#))

29.40.6 TPackage.HaveOptions

Synopsis: Checks if package has global compilation options

Declaration: `function HaveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns `True` if the package has global compiler options defined, `False` otherwise.
These options apply to all targets in the package unless overridden.

29.40.7 TPackage.GetUnitsOutputDir

Synopsis: Returns the output directory for compiled units

Declaration: `function GetUnitsOutputDir(ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the directory where compiled unit files (.ppu) will be placed for the specified CPU, OS, and subtarget combination.

The directory path is constructed based on package configuration and platform settings.

29.40.8 TPackage.GetUnitConfigOutputFilename

Synopsis: Gets output filename for unit configuration file

Declaration: `function GetUnitConfigOutputFilename(ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the filename for the unit configuration file (.fpc) that contains build settings and unit paths for the specified CPU, OS, and subtarget combination. This file is used by the compiler to locate units and configure compilation.

29.40.9 TPackage.InheritPackageVariantsFromDependency

Synopsis: Inherits package variants from a dependency package

Declaration: `procedure InheritPackageVariantsFromDependency
(ADependencyPackage: TPackage)`

Visibility: public

Description: Copies package variants from a dependency package into this package, allowing build configurations to be inherited through the dependency chain. This ensures consistent variant settings across dependent packages.

29.40.10 TPackage.GetPackageVariantsByName

Synopsis: Gets package variants collection by name

Declaration: `function GetPackageVariantsByName(AName: string) : TPackageVariants`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for and returns a package variants collection with the specified name. Returns `nil` if no variants collection with the given name is found.

29.40.11 TPackage.SetUnitsOutputDir

Synopsis: Sets the output directory for compiled units

Declaration: `procedure SetUnitsOutputDir(AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets the base directory where compiled unit files (.ppu) will be stored for this package. The actual output location may include subdirectories based on CPU and OS target settings.

29.40.12 TPackage.GetPackageUnitInstallDir

Synopsis: Gets installation directory for package units

Declaration: `function GetPackageUnitInstallDir(ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the directory path where compiled unit files for this package will be installed for the specified CPU and OS combination. This is where other packages will look for this package's units.

29.40.13 TPackage.SetPackageUnitInstallDir

Synopsis: Sets installation directory for package units

Declaration: `procedure SetPackageUnitInstallDir(AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets the directory where compiled unit files for this package will be installed. This directory is where other packages will search for this package's compiled units during their own build process.

29.40.14 TPackage.GetBinOutputDir

Synopsis: Returns the output directory for binary files

Declaration: `function GetBinOutputDir(ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the directory where binary files (executables, libraries) will be placed for the specified CPU, OS, and subtarget combination.

Binary files include programs and shared libraries generated by the build process.

29.40.15 TPackage.GetCleanFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to be cleaned for the package

Declaration: `procedure GetCleanFiles(List: TStrings; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided list with filenames of all generated files that should be removed during package cleanup. This includes compiled units, object files, executables, and other build artifacts for the specified target platform.

29.40.16 TPackage.GetInstallFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to be installed for the package

Declaration: `procedure GetInstallFiles(List: TStrings; Types: TTargetTypes;
ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided list with files that should be installed when deploying this package. The file types parameter controls which categories of files are included in the installation list.

29.40.17 TPackage.GetInstallSourceFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of source files to be installed

Declaration: `procedure GetInstallSourceFiles(List: TStrings;
SourceTypes: TSourceTypes;
TargetTypes: TTargetTypes); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided list with source files (.pp, .pas, .inc) that should be installed for developer access. This allows users to examine and modify the package source code.

29.40.18 TPackage.GetArchiveFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to include in package archive

Declaration: `procedure GetArchiveFiles(List: TStrings; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided list with filenames of all files that should be included when creating a package archive. This includes source files, documentation, examples, and other distributable content for the specified target platform.

29.40.19 TPackage.GetArchiveSourceFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of source files for package archive

Declaration: `procedure GetArchiveSourceFiles(List: TStrings); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided list with source files that should be included when creating a distributable package archive. This includes Pascal source files, include files, and other source-related content for the specified target platform.

29.40.20 TPackage.GetManifest

Synopsis: Gets package manifest information

Declaration: `procedure GetManifest(Manifest: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetManifest` populates the provided manifest object with information about the package. This includes package metadata, version details, dependencies, targets, and other package configuration data.

The manifest contains structured information that can be used for package registration, dependency resolution, and package management operations within the fpmake system.

29.40.21 TPackage.ListPackage

Synopsis: Lists package information to a string list

Declaration: `procedure ListPackage(PkgList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided string list with detailed information about this package including name, version, description, targets, dependencies, and other configuration details for diagnostic or reporting purposes.

29.40.22 TPackage.AddPackageVariant

Synopsis: Adds a package variant to the package

Declaration: `procedure AddPackageVariant (APackageVariant: TPackageVariants)`

Visibility: public

Description: Adds an existing package variant object to this package, making it available for use during builds. The variant provides alternative build configurations with different compiler options and settings.

29.40.23 TPackage.ApplyPackageVariantToCompilerOptions

Synopsis: Applies package variant settings to compiler options

Declaration: `procedure ApplyPackageVariantToCompilerOptions
(ACompilerOptions: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ApplyPackageVariantToCompilerOptions` modifies the provided compiler options by applying settings from the package variant configuration. Package variants allow customizing compilation parameters for different build scenarios or target configurations.

This method ensures that variant-specific compiler flags, include paths, and other compilation settings are properly applied to the build process.

29.40.24 TPackage.SetDefaultPackageVariant

Synopsis: Sets the default package variant for the package

Declaration: `procedure SetDefaultPackageVariant`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets the package variant that will be used when no specific variant is requested during the build process. This ensures consistent default behavior for package compilation and installation.

29.40.25 TPackage.LoadUnitConfigFromFile

Synopsis: Loads unit configuration from a file

Declaration: `procedure LoadUnitConfigFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Loads unit search paths and configuration settings from an existing unit configuration file (.fpc). This allows restoration of previously saved compiler configuration for consistent builds.

29.40.26 TPackage.SaveUnitConfigToFile

Synopsis: Saves unit configuration to a file

Declaration: `procedure SaveUnitConfigToFile(const AFileName: string; ACPu: TCpu;
AOS: TOS)`

Visibility: public

Description: Saves current unit search paths and configuration settings to a unit configuration file (.fpc) for the specified CPU and OS combination. This file can later be used by the compiler for consistent build settings.

29.40.27 TPackage.EnterResolveDirsCS

Synopsis: Enters critical section for directory resolution

Declaration: `procedure EnterResolveDirsCS`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Enters a critical section to ensure thread-safe access during directory path resolution operations. This prevents race conditions when multiple threads are resolving directory paths simultaneously.

29.40.28 TPackage.LeaveResolveDirsCS

Synopsis: Leaves critical section for directory resolution

Declaration: `procedure LeaveResolveDirsCS`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Exits the critical section for directory path resolution operations, allowing other threads to access directory resolution functions. Must be called after every call to `EnterResolveDirsCS`.

29.40.29 TPackage.Version

Synopsis: Version string of the package

Declaration: `Property Version : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `Version` property contains the version string of the package. This version is used for dependency checking and package identification.

See also: `TFPVersion` ([1003](#)), `PackageVersion` ([1027](#))

29.40.30 TPackage.FileName

Synopsis: Filename of the package definition file

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FileName` contains the full path to the package definition file (typically `fpmake.pp`) that describes this package's configuration, targets, and dependencies.

29.40.31 TPackage.ShortName

Synopsis: Short name identifier for the package

Declaration: `Property ShortName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ShortName` provides a concise identifier for the package, typically used in package listings and references. This is usually a brief version of the full package name.

29.40.32 TPackage.HomepageURL

Synopsis: URL of the package homepage

Declaration: `Property HomepageURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HomepageURL` contains the web address of the package's official homepage or project site. This provides users with access to documentation, news, and additional information about the package.

29.40.33 TPackage.DownloadURL

Synopsis: URL for downloading the package

Declaration: `Property DownloadURL : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DownloadURL` specifies the web address where the package can be downloaded. This is used by package management systems to retrieve the package source code or binaries.

29.40.34 TPackage.Email

Synopsis: Contact email address for the package

Declaration: `Property Email : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Email` contains the contact email address for the package maintainer or author. This provides a way for users to report issues, ask questions, or contribute to the package.

29.40.35 TPackage.Author

Synopsis: Author or maintainer of the package

Declaration: `Property Author : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Author` contains the name of the person or organization responsible for creating and maintaining the package. This provides attribution and contact information for the package.

29.40.36 TPackage.License

Synopsis: License terms for the package

Declaration: `Property License : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `License` specifies the legal license terms under which the package is distributed. This information helps users understand their rights and obligations when using the package.

29.40.37 TPackage.Directory

Synopsis: Base directory path of the package

Declaration: `Property Directory : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `Directory` property specifies the base directory where the package files are located. All relative paths within the package are resolved relative to this directory.

See also: `FileName` ([1023](#))

29.40.38 TPackage.Description

Synopsis: Descriptive text about the package

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `Description` property contains a human-readable description of the package. This description can be loaded from a file specified in `DescriptionFile` ([1026](#)) or set directly.

See also: `DescriptionFile` ([1026](#))

29.40.39 TPackage.DescriptionFile

Synopsis: File containing package description text

Declaration: `Property DescriptionFile : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `DescriptionFile` specifies the path to a text file containing a detailed description of the package. When set, the file contents are loaded into the `Description` property.

29.40.40 TPackage.InstalledChecksum

Synopsis: Checksum of installed package files

Declaration: `Property InstalledChecksum : Cardinal`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `InstalledChecksum` contains a checksum value of the installed package files. This is used to verify package integrity and detect modifications after installation.

29.40.41 TPackage.IsFPMakeAddIn

Synopsis: Whether this package is an FPMake add-in

Declaration: `Property IsFPMakeAddIn : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `IsFPMakeAddIn` indicates whether this package provides additional functionality for the FPMake build system itself. Add-in packages extend FPMake with custom build commands and capabilities.

29.40.42 TPackage.SupportBuildModes

Synopsis: Whether package supports different build modes

Declaration: `Property SupportBuildModes : TBuildModes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SupportBuildModes` determines which build modes the installer can use when compiling this package: using a build unit or one by one, or both.

See also: `BuildMode` ([1027](#)), `TCustomDefaults.BuildMode` ([986](#))

29.40.43 TPackage.BuildMode

Synopsis: Default build mode configuration for the package

Declaration: `Property BuildMode : TBuildMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `BuildMode` specifies the default build mode configuration for the package, determining whether the installer will compile using a build unit or one by one. Note that the build mode should be in the set of supported modes `SupportBuildModes` (1026).

See also: `SupportBuildModes` (1026), `TCustomDefaults.BuildMode` (986)

29.40.44 TPackage.Flags

Synopsis: Package flags and behavior settings

Declaration: `Property Flags : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Flags` contains a set of flags that control various aspects of package behavior including installation options, build preferences, and compatibility settings.

29.40.45 TPackage.PackageVersion

Synopsis: Version information for the package

Declaration: `Property PackageVersion : TFPVersion`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `PackageVersion` contains detailed version information for the package including major, minor, micro, and build numbers. This structured version data is used for precise dependency checking.

29.40.46 TPackage.TransmitOptions

Synopsis: Options transmitted to dependent packages

Declaration: `Property TransmitOptions : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TransmitOptions` contains compiler options that are automatically passed to packages that depend on this package. This ensures consistent compilation settings across package hierarchies.

29.40.47 TPackage.OSes

Synopsis: Supported operating systems for the package

Declaration: `Property OSes : TOSes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OSes` specifies the set of operating systems on which this package can be built and used. This includes platforms like Windows, Linux, macOS, FreeBSD, and others supported by Free Pascal.

29.40.48 TPackage.CPUs

Synopsis: Supported CPU architectures for the package

Declaration: `Property CPUs : TCPUS`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CPUs` specifies the set of CPU architectures supported by this package. This includes architectures like x86_64, i386, ARM, PowerPC, and others supported by Free Pascal.

29.40.49 TPackage.NeedLibC

Synopsis: Whether package requires C library linkage

Declaration: `Property NeedLibC : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `NeedLibC` indicates whether this package requires linking with the C runtime library. When `True`, the appropriate C library is automatically linked during compilation.

29.40.50 TPackage.Options

Synopsis: Compiler options for the package

Declaration: `Property Options : TStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Options` contains the collection of compiler command-line options that are applied when building any target within this package. These options affect all compilation within the package.

29.40.51 TPackage.UnitPath

Synopsis: Search paths for unit files

Declaration: `Property UnitPath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `UnitPath` contains the search paths where the compiler looks for compiled unit files (.ppu) when building targets in this package. These paths are added to the compiler's unit search directories.

29.40.52 TPackage.ObjectPath

Synopsis: Search paths for object files

Declaration: `Property ObjectPath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ObjectPath` contains the search paths where the compiler and linker look for object files (.o) when building targets in this package. These paths are added to the linker's object search directories.

29.40.53 TPackage.IncludePath

Synopsis: Search paths for include files

Declaration: `Property IncludePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IncludePath` contains the search paths where the compiler looks for include files referenced by `{ $INCLUDE }` directives. These paths are added to the compiler's include search directories.

29.40.54 TPackage.SourcePath

Synopsis: Search paths for source files

Declaration: `Property SourcePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Specifies the search paths where the build system will look for Pascal source files (.pas, .pp) required for package compilation.

Multiple paths can be specified, and they are searched in order when resolving unit dependencies.

29.40.55 TPackage.ExamplePath

Synopsis: Search paths for example files

Declaration: `Property ExamplePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the search paths where example programs and units are located for this package.

These paths are used when building example targets and determining installation locations for demonstration code.

29.40.56 TPackage.TestPath

Synopsis: Search paths for test files

Declaration: `Property TestPath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the search paths where test programs and units are located for this package.

These paths are used when building test targets and organizing the package's test suite structure.

29.40.57 TPackage.FPDocFormat

Synopsis: Output format for FPDoc documentation

Declaration: `Property FPDocFormat : TFPDocFormats`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the output format for FPDoc-generated documentation (HTML, LaTeX, XML, etc.).

This property controls how the package's reference documentation is formatted when generated from source code comments and XML documentation files.

29.40.58 TPackage.InstallFiles

Synopsis: Collection of files to be installed

Declaration: `Property InstallFiles : TConditionalDestStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of `TInstallFiles` ([908](#)) objects that define which files should be installed and their target locations.

This collection manages deployment of compiled units, documentation, examples, and other package assets during installation.

29.40.59 TPackage.CleanFiles

Synopsis: Collection of files to be cleaned

Declaration: `Property CleanFiles : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of `TCleanFiles` (908) objects that specify which files and directories should be removed during cleanup operations.

This collection manages removal of temporary files, compiled objects, and generated outputs during clean builds.

29.40.60 TPackage.Dependencies

Synopsis: Collection of package dependencies

Declaration: `Property Dependencies : TDependencies`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of `TDependencies` (991) objects that define other packages required for this package to build and function correctly.

Dependencies are checked during build initialization to ensure all required packages are available and properly configured.

29.40.61 TPackage.Commands

Synopsis: Collection of custom build commands

Declaration: `Property Commands : TCommands`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of `TCommands` (965) objects that define custom build operations and external tool invocations.

Commands enable integration of external tools, pre/post-build scripts, and specialized build operations within the package build process.

29.40.62 TPackage.State

Synopsis: Current build state of the package

Declaration: `Property State : TTargetState`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Indicates the current build state of the package (e.g., building, compiled, installed).

This property tracks the package's progress through the build pipeline and is used for state-dependent operations.

29.40.63 TPackage.Targets

Synopsis: Collection of build targets

Declaration: `Property Targets : TTargets`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of TTargets ([1066](#)) objects that define the buildable components of this package (units, programs, libraries).

Each target represents a specific compilation unit with its own build settings, dependencies, and output configuration.

29.40.64 TPackage.Sources

Synopsis: Collection of source files

Declaration: `Property Sources : TSources`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection of TSources ([1051](#)) objects that manage individual source files associated with this package.

Sources include Pascal files, documentation files, examples, and other assets required for package building and distribution.

29.40.65 TPackage.UnitDir

Synopsis: Directory for compiled unit files

Declaration: `Property UnitDir : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the directory where compiled unit files (.ppu, .o) are generated during package compilation.

This directory contains the output of successful compilation and serves as input for linking and installation operations.

29.40.66 TPackage.UnitConfigFileName

Synopsis: Filename for unit configuration file

Declaration: `Property UnitConfigFileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the filename for the configuration file that contains unit search paths and compilation settings for this package.

This file is generated during build and used by the compiler to locate unit dependencies and apply package-specific settings.

29.40.67 TPackage.BeforeCompile

Synopsis: Event handler executed before package compilation

Declaration: `Property BeforeCompile : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package begins compilation.

This event allows custom pre-compilation setup, validation, or file preparation to be performed before the build process starts.

29.40.68 TPackage.BeforeCompileProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before compilation

Declaration: `Property BeforeCompileProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforeCompile ([1033](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before package compilation begins.

29.40.69 TPackage.AfterCompile

Synopsis: Event handler executed after package compilation

Declaration: `Property AfterCompile : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes compilation successfully.

This event allows custom post-compilation processing, validation, or file operations to be performed after the build process completes.

29.40.70 TPackage.AfterCompileProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after compilation

Declaration: `Property AfterCompileProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterCompile ([1033](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after package compilation completes.

29.40.71 TPackage.BeforeInstall

Synopsis: Event handler executed before package installation

Declaration: `Property BeforeInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package begins installation.

This event allows custom pre-installation setup, directory preparation, or validation to be performed before the installation process starts.

29.40.72 TPackage.BeforeInstallProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before installation

Declaration: `Property BeforeInstallProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforeInstall ([1034](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before package installation begins.

29.40.73 TPackage.AfterInstall

Synopsis: Event handler executed after package installation

Declaration: `Property AfterInstall : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes installation successfully.

This event allows custom post-installation processing, configuration, or verification to be performed after installation completes.

29.40.74 TPackage.AfterInstallProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after installation

Declaration: `Property AfterInstallProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterInstall ([1034](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after package installation completes.

29.40.75 TPackage.BeforeClean

Synopsis: Event handler executed before package cleanup

Declaration: `Property BeforeClean : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package begins cleanup operations.

This event allows custom pre-cleanup preparation or backup operations to be performed before generated files are removed.

29.40.76 TPackage.BeforeCleanProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before cleanup

Declaration: `Property BeforeCleanProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforeClean ([1035](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before package cleanup begins.

29.40.77 TPackage.AfterClean

Synopsis: Event handler executed after package cleanup

Declaration: `Property AfterClean : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes cleanup operations.

This event allows custom post-cleanup verification or additional cleanup operations to be performed after generated files are removed.

29.40.78 TPackage.AfterCleanProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after cleanup

Declaration: `Property AfterCleanProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterClean ([1035](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after package cleanup completes.

29.40.79 TPackage.BeforeArchive

Synopsis: Event handler executed before package archiving

Declaration: `Property BeforeArchive : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package begins archive creation.

This event allows custom pre-archiving operations, file preparation, or validation to be performed before archive generation starts.

29.40.80 TPackage.BeforeArchiveProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before archiving

Declaration: `Property BeforeArchiveProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforeArchive ([1036](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before package archiving begins.

29.40.81 TPackage.AfterArchive

Synopsis: Event handler executed after package archiving

Declaration: `Property AfterArchive : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes archive creation.

This event allows custom post-archiving operations, validation, or distribution to be performed after the archive is successfully generated.

29.40.82 TPackage.AfterArchiveProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after archiving

Declaration: `Property AfterArchiveProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterArchive ([1036](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after package archiving completes.

29.40.83 TPackage.BeforeManifest

Synopsis: Event handler executed before manifest creation

Declaration: `Property BeforeManifest : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package begins manifest file generation.

This event allows custom pre-manifest operations, content preparation, or validation to be performed before manifest creation starts.

29.40.84 TPackage.BeforeManifestProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before manifest creation

Declaration: `Property BeforeManifestProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforeManifest ([1037](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before manifest creation begins.

29.40.85 TPackage.AfterManifest

Synopsis: Event handler executed after manifest creation

Declaration: `Property AfterManifest : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes manifest file generation.

This event allows custom post-manifest operations, validation, or processing to be performed after the manifest is successfully created.

29.40.86 TPackage.AfterManifestProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after manifest creation

Declaration: `Property AfterManifestProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterManifest ([1037](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after manifest creation completes.

29.40.87 TPackage.BeforePkgList

Synopsis: Event handler executed before package listing

Declaration: `Property BeforePkgList : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately before this package generates its file listing.

This event allows custom pre-listing operations, file preparation, or validation to be performed before the package list is created.

29.40.88 TPackage.BeforePkgListProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler before package listing

Declaration: `Property BeforePkgListProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of BeforePkgList ([1038](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed before package listing begins.

29.40.89 TPackage.AfterPkgList

Synopsis: Event handler executed after package listing

Declaration: `Property AfterPkgList : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler called immediately after this package completes its file listing generation.

This event allows custom post-listing operations, validation, or processing to be performed after the package list is created.

29.40.90 TPackage.AfterPkgListProc

Synopsis: Procedural event handler after package listing

Declaration: `Property AfterPkgListProc : TNotifyProcEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Procedural event handler version of AfterPkgList ([1038](#)) that provides a simpler callback interface.

This event enables procedural callback functions to be executed after package listing completes.

29.41 TPackageDictionary

29.41.1 Description

TPackageDictionary extends the basic dictionary functionality with package-specific variable support.

This class maintains its own variable namespace while also providing access to a master dictionary for fallback lookups.

Package dictionaries enable isolated variable scoping per package while maintaining global configuration access.

29.41.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1039	GetValue	Retrieves package-specific substituted value

29.41.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1039	MasterDictionary	rw	Reference to the master dictionary for fallback lookups

29.41.4 TPackageDictionary.GetValue

Synopsis: Retrieves package-specific substituted value

Declaration: `function GetValue(const AName: string; const Args: string) : string; override`

Visibility: public

Description: GetValue retrieves a substituted value first from the package dictionary, then from the master dictionary if not found locally.

This method implements cascading lookup behavior for package-specific variable resolution.

The method supports both variable expansion and function callbacks with argument passing.

29.41.5 TPackageDictionary.MasterDictionary

Synopsis: Reference to the master dictionary for fallback lookups

Declaration: `Property MasterDictionary : TDictionary`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: MasterDictionary provides access to the global dictionary that serves as fallback for variable lookups.

When a variable is not found in the package-specific dictionary, the lookup falls back to this master dictionary.

This property enables hierarchical variable resolution from package-specific to global scope.

29.42 TPackageEnumerator

29.42.1 Description

`TPackageEnumerator` provides iteration support for `TPackages` collections using the `for-in` syntax. This class implements the enumerator pattern allowing convenient iteration through package collections.

The enumerator maintains the current position and provides access to the current `TPackage` (1014) object during iteration loops.

29.42.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1040	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Gets current package in enumeration

29.42.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1040	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current package being enumerated

29.42.4 TPackageEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets current package in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TPackage`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetCurrent` returns the `TPackage` (1014) object at the current position in the enumeration. This method is used internally by the enumerator to provide the current package during `for-in` loops.

29.42.5 TPackageEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current package being enumerated

Declaration: `Property Current : TPackage`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` property provides read-only access to the `TPackage` (1014) object at the current position during enumeration. This property is used by `for-in` loops to access the current package.

29.43 TPackages

29.43.1 Description

`TPackages` is a managed collection class that stores and provides access to multiple `TPackage` (1014) objects. This class supports enumeration, indexed access, and package lookup by name.

The collection manages package objects and provides various methods for adding, accessing, and iterating through packages in the `fpmake` build system.

29.43.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1041	AddPackage	Adds a new package to the collection
1041	GetEnumerator	Gets enumerator for iterating packages

29.43.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1042	PackageItems	rw	Indexed access to packages in the collection
1041	Packages	r	Access to packages by name

29.43.4 TPackage.AddPackage

Synopsis: Adds a new package to the collection

Declaration: `function AddPackage(const AName: string) : TPackage`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddPackage` creates and adds a new `TPackage` ([1014](#)) object to the collection with the specified name. The method returns the newly created package object for further configuration.

Each package in the collection must have a unique name. The created package can then be configured with targets, dependencies, and other package-specific settings.

29.43.5 TPackage.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Gets enumerator for iterating packages

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TPackageEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetEnumerator` returns a `TPackageEnumerator` ([1040](#)) object that enables for-in loop iteration through all packages in the collection.

This method is called automatically by the compiler when using for-in syntax with package collections.

29.43.6 TPackage.Packages

Synopsis: Access to packages by name

Declaration: `Property Packages[AName: string]: TPackage; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Packages` property provides name-based access to `TPackage` ([1014](#)) objects in the collection. This allows retrieving packages by their string name identifier.

If a package with the specified name does not exist, the property returns `nil`.

29.43.7 TPackage.PackageItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to packages in the collection

Declaration: `Property PackageItems[AIndex: Integer]: TPackage`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PackageItems` provides zero-based indexed access to `TPackage` (1014) objects in the collection. The index must be within the range 0 to `Count-1`.

This property enables accessing packages by their position in the collection rather than by name.

29.44 TPackageVariant

29.44.1 Description

`TPackageVariant` represents a specific configuration variant of a package with custom build options and settings. This class allows packages to define multiple build configurations with different compiler options, target platforms, or conditional compilation settings.

29.44.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1042	Create	Creates a new package variant configuration
1042	Destroy	Destroys package variant and frees resources

29.44.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1043	IncludePath	r	Include file search paths for this variant
1043	Options	r	Compiler options for this variant
1043	SourcePath	r	Source file search paths for this variant
1043	Targets	r	Build targets associated with this variant

29.44.4 TPackageVariant.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new package variant configuration

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `TPackageVariant` instance and adds it to the specified collection. The variant is initialized with default settings and ready for configuration with specific build options.

29.44.5 TPackageVariant.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys package variant and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the `TPackageVariant` instance and releases all associated resources including option collections and configuration data. This method is called automatically when the variant is no longer needed.

29.44.6 `TPackageVariant.Options`

Synopsis: Compiler options for this variant

Declaration: `Property Options : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Options` contains the collection of compiler command-line options specific to this package variant. These options are passed to the compiler when building the package with this variant configuration.

29.44.7 `TPackageVariant.IncludePath`

Synopsis: Include file search paths for this variant

Declaration: `Property IncludePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IncludePath` specifies the search paths for include files when compiling with this variant. These paths are added to the compiler's include search directories.

29.44.8 `TPackageVariant.SourcePath`

Synopsis: Source file search paths for this variant

Declaration: `Property SourcePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `SourcePath` specifies the search paths for source unit files when compiling with this variant. These paths are added to the compiler's unit search directories.

29.44.9 `TPackageVariant.Targets`

Synopsis: Build targets associated with this variant

Declaration: `Property Targets : TTargets`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Targets` contains the collection of build targets that are built when using this package variant. Each target in this collection will be compiled with the variant's specific options and settings.

29.45 TPackageVariantEnumerator

29.45.1 Description

`TPackageVariantEnumerator` provides enumeration support for iterating through collections of package variants using for-in loop syntax. This enumerator implements the standard enumeration pattern for Pascal collections.

29.45.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1044	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Gets current package variant in enumeration

29.45.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1044	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current package variant being enumerated

29.45.4 TPackageVariantEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets current package variant in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TPackageVariant`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the current `TPackageVariant` object in the enumeration sequence. This method is called internally by the for-in loop mechanism to access the current variant.

29.45.5 TPackageVariantEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current package variant being enumerated

Declaration: `Property Current : TPackageVariant`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Current` property provides read-only access to the current `TPackageVariant` in the enumeration. This property is used by for-in loops to access the variant object during iteration.

29.46 TPackageVariants

29.46.1 Description

`TPackageVariants` is a collection class that manages multiple `TPackageVariant` objects. This class provides methods for adding, accessing, and enumerating package variants within a package configuration.

29.46.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1045	Add	Adds a new package variant to the collection
1045	GetEnumerator	Gets enumerator for iterating package variants

29.46.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1046	ActivePackageVariant	r	Currently active package variant for building
1047	ActivePackageVariantName	rw	Name of the currently active package variant
1047	AutoAddToPackage	r	Whether variants are automatically added to the package
1046	DefaultPackageVariant	r	Default package variant used when none specified
1046	DefaultPackageVariantName	rw	Name of the default package variant
1047	IsInheritable	r	Whether package variants can be inherited by child packages
1046	MasterPackage	r	Reference to the master package owning the variants
1045	Name	rw	Name of the package variants collection

29.46.4 TPackageVariants.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new package variant to the collection

Declaration: `function Add(AName: string) : TPackageVariant; virtual; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new `TPackageVariant` to the collection. The new variant is initialized with default settings and can then be configured with specific build options and targets.

29.46.5 TPackageVariants.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Gets enumerator for iterating package variants

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TPackageVariantEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns a `TPackageVariantEnumerator` that can be used to iterate through all package variants in the collection using for-in loop syntax.

29.46.6 TPackageVariants.Name

Synopsis: Name of the package variants collection

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` property contains the identifier for this package variants collection. This name is used to reference the collection within the package configuration.

29.46.7 TPackageVariants.MasterPackage

Synopsis: Reference to the master package owning the variants

Declaration: Property MasterPackage : TPackage

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: MasterPackage provides access to the TPackage instance that owns this variants collection. This reference allows variants to access package-level settings and configuration.

29.46.8 TPackageVariants.DefaultPackageVariant

Synopsis: Default package variant used when none specified

Declaration: Property DefaultPackageVariant : TPackageVariant

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: DefaultPackageVariant specifies the package variant to use when no specific variant is requested during the build process. This ensures consistent build behavior when variants are not explicitly selected.

29.46.9 TPackageVariants.ActivePackageVariant

Synopsis: Currently active package variant for building

Declaration: Property ActivePackageVariant : TPackageVariant

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: ActivePackageVariant represents the package variant currently selected for building. This property determines which variant's settings and options are applied during the build process.

29.46.10 TPackageVariants.DefaultPackageName

Synopsis: Name of the default package variant

Declaration: Property DefaultPackageName : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: DefaultPackageName contains the string name of the default package variant. This name is used to identify which variant should be used when no specific variant is selected.

29.46.11 TPackageVariants.ActivePackageName

Synopsis: Name of the currently active package variant

Declaration: `Property ActivePackageName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ActivePackageName` contains the string name of the currently active package variant. This property reflects which variant is selected for the current build operation.

29.46.12 TPackageVariants.IsInheritable

Synopsis: Whether package variants can be inherited by child packages

Declaration: `Property IsInheritable : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `IsInheritable` determines whether the package variants in this collection can be inherited by dependent child packages, allowing for consistent variant propagation through package hierarchies.

29.46.13 TPackageVariants.AutoAddToPackage

Synopsis: Whether variants are automatically added to the package

Declaration: `Property AutoAddToPackage : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `AutoAddToPackage` controls whether new variants created in this collection are automatically registered with the parent package. When `True`, variants are immediately available for building.

29.47 TResourceFile

29.47.1 Description

`TResourceFile` represents a resource file that needs to be processed and included during package compilation.

Resource files contain binary data, icons, bitmaps, strings, or other assets that are embedded into the compiled executable.

The build system processes resource files according to platform-specific resource compilation requirements.

29.48 TResourceFiles

29.48.1 Description

`TResourceFiles` is a specialized collection class that manages resource files included in Free Pascal package builds.

This collection handles resource file tracking, installation paths, and deployment configuration for binary resources, documentation files, and other assets.

29.48.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1048	<code>GetInstallFiles</code>	Gets list of resource files for installation

29.48.3 TResourceFiles.GetInstallFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of resource files for installation

Declaration: `procedure GetInstallFiles(AList: TStrings; const APrefixU: string; const APrefixB: string; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Populates the provided list with resource files that should be installed as part of this resource collection's deployment process.

This method collects all resources associated with this collection that require installation or distribution with the package.

29.49 TSource

29.49.1 Description

`TSource` represents a single source code file within the Free Pascal build system, tracking file paths, names, and build-related properties.

This class manages individual source files that are compiled as part of build targets, including dependency tracking and compilation settings.

29.49.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1049	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new source file entry
1049	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the source file entry and releases resources
1049	<code>GetInstallFiles</code>	Gets list of files for installation from this source

29.49.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1050	<code>InstallSourcePath</code>	<code>r</code>	Installation path for the source file
1049	<code>SourceType</code>	<code>r</code>	Type of source file (documentation, example, etc.)

29.49.4 TSource.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new source file entry

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes a new `TSource` instance within the specified collection, setting up the source file entry for build processing.

The source entry is configured with default settings and linked to its parent collection for management during the build process.

29.49.5 TSource.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the source file entry and releases resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Releases all resources associated with the source file entry and performs cleanup of any allocated memory or references.

This destructor ensures proper cleanup when the source file entry is removed from the build system.

29.49.6 TSource.GetInstallFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files for installation from this source

Declaration: `procedure GetInstallFiles(List: TStrings); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Populates the provided list with files that should be installed as part of this source file's deployment process.

This method collects all files associated with this source entry that require installation or distribution with the package.

29.49.7 TSource.SourceType

Synopsis: Type of source file (documentation, example, etc.)

Declaration: `Property SourceType : TSourceType`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Specifies the category or purpose of this source file within the build system.

The source type determines how the file is processed, where it is installed, and what build rules apply to it.

29.49.8 TSource.InstallSourcePath

Synopsis: Installation path for the source file

Declaration: `Property InstallSourcePath : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Specifies the target directory path where this source file should be installed during package deployment.

This path is relative to the installation base directory and determines the final location of the source file after installation.

29.50 TSourceEnumerator

29.50.1 Description

`TSourceEnumerator` provides enumeration support for iterating through collections of source files using for-in loop constructs.

This enumerator enables convenient iteration over source file collections with automatic position tracking and bounds checking.

29.50.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1050	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Gets current source file in enumeration

29.50.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1050	<code>Current</code>	r	Current source file being enumerated

29.50.4 TSourceEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets current source file in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TSource`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the `TSource` ([1048](#)) object at the current enumeration position.

This method provides access to the source file's properties and methods during iteration through the source collection.

29.50.5 TSourceEnumerator.Current

Synopsis: Current source file being enumerated

Declaration: `Property Current : TSource`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Property providing read-only access to the TSource (1048) object at the current enumeration position.

This property returns the source file object that can be processed during for-in loop iteration.

29.51 TSources

29.51.1 Description

TSources is a collection class that manages multiple source file entries for a Free Pascal package.

This collection provides methods for adding different types of sources (documentation, examples, tests) and manages their properties for building and installation.

29.51.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1051	AddDoc	Adds documentation sources to the collection
1053	AddDocFiles	Adds documentation files matching file mask pattern
1052	AddExample	Adds example sources to the collection
1053	AddExampleFiles	Adds example files matching file mask pattern
1051	AddSrc	Adds source files to the collection
1053	AddSrcFiles	Adds source files matching file mask pattern
1052	AddTest	Adds test sources to the collection
1053	AddTestFiles	Adds test files to the source collection
1052	GetEnumerator	Gets enumerator for iterating sources

29.51.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1054	SourceItems	rw	Indexed access to source files in the collection

29.51.4 TSources.AddDoc

Synopsis: Adds documentation sources to the collection

Declaration: `function AddDoc(const AFiles: string) : TSource`
`function AddDoc(const AFiles: string; AInstallSourcePath: string)`
`: TSource`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new documentation source entry that specifies files to be installed in the documentation directory. The files are copied during installation to the configured documentation installation path.

Documentation sources typically include readme files, manuals, API documentation, and other informational content for the package.

29.51.5 TSources.AddSrc

Synopsis: Adds source files to the collection

Declaration: `function AddSrc(const AFiles: string) : TSource`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new source entry that specifies Pascal source files (.pp, .pas) to be distributed with the package. These files are typically installed for developers who want to examine or modify the package source code.

Source files are separate from compiled units and provide transparency and modification capabilities for package users.

29.51.6 TSources.AddExample

Synopsis: Adds example sources to the collection

Declaration: `function AddExample(const AFiles: string) : TSource`
`function AddExample(const AFiles: string; AInstallSourcePath: string)`
`: TSource`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new example source entry that specifies example program files to be installed in the examples directory. Examples demonstrate usage of the package functionality and serve as learning resources.

Example files help users understand how to properly use the package APIs and provide working code samples for common use cases.

29.51.7 TSources.AddTest

Synopsis: Adds test sources to the collection

Declaration: `function AddTest(const AFiles: string) : TSource`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new test source entry that specifies test program files used for package validation and quality assurance. Test files verify that the package functionality works correctly.

Test sources are typically run during development and before package releases to ensure code quality and prevent regressions.

29.51.8 TSources.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Gets enumerator for iterating sources

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TSourceEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns a `TSourceEnumerator` ([1050](#)) object that enables for-in loop iteration through the source files collection.

This method enables convenient enumeration of all source files using modern Pascal iteration syntax.

29.51.9 TSources.AddDocFiles

Synopsis: Adds documentation files matching file mask pattern

Declaration: `procedure AddDocFiles(const AFileMask: string;
const ASearchPathPrefix: string;
Recursive: Boolean=False;
AInstallSourcePath: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for and adds documentation files that match the specified file mask pattern to the source collection.

This method provides a convenient way to add multiple documentation files at once using wildcard patterns for file selection.

29.51.10 TSources.AddSrcFiles

Synopsis: Adds source files matching file mask pattern

Declaration: `procedure AddSrcFiles(const AFileMask: string;
const ASearchPathPrefix: string;
Recursive: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for and adds source files that match the specified file mask pattern to the source collection.

This method provides a convenient way to add multiple source files at once using wildcard patterns for file selection.

29.51.11 TSources.AddExampleFiles

Synopsis: Adds example files matching file mask pattern

Declaration: `procedure AddExampleFiles(const AFileMask: string;
const ASearchPathPrefix: string;
Recursive: Boolean=False;
AInstallSourcePath: string='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddExampleFiles` adds example files to the source collection that match the specified file mask pattern. The method scans for files matching `AFileMask` and adds them to be included with the package as example code.

Example files are typically demonstration code showing how to use the package functionality. They are installed to the specified installation path for reference by package users.

29.51.12 TSources.AddTestFiles

Synopsis: Adds test files to the source collection

Declaration: `procedure AddTestFiles(const AFileMask: string;
const ASearchPathPrefix: string;
Recursive: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddTestFiles` adds test files matching the specified file mask pattern to the source collection. Test files contain unit tests and validation code for verifying package functionality. The method searches for files matching `AFileMask` and includes them in the package for testing purposes. Test files are used during package validation and quality assurance.

29.51.13 TSources.SourceItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to source files in the collection

Declaration: `Property SourceItems[Index: Integer]: TSource; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SourceItems` provides indexed access to individual source files in the `TSources` collection. This property allows retrieving `TSourceItem` (908) objects by their numerical index. The index is zero-based and must be within the range 0 to `Count-1`. Each source item contains information about a single source file including its name, path, and installation settings.

29.52 TTarget

29.52.1 Description

`TTarget` represents a single build target within a package, such as a unit, program, or library. Each target defines what needs to be compiled, how it should be compiled, and where the resulting files should be installed.

Build targets can be units, programs, libraries, or documentation files. They contain information about source files, compilation options, dependencies, CPU and OS requirements, and installation settings.

Targets are managed through the `TTargets` (1066) collection and are owned by `TPackage` (1014) instances.

See also: `TPackage` (1014), `TTargets` (1066), `TTargetType` (934), `TFileType` (925), `TDependency` (993)

29.52.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1056	<code>AssignTo</code>	Assigns target properties to another object
1055	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new build target instance
1055	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the target instance and frees resources
1057	<code>GetArchiveFiles</code>	Gets list of files to be archived for this target
1057	<code>GetCleanFiles</code>	Gets list of files to be cleaned for this target
1057	<code>GetInstallFiles</code>	Gets list of files to be installed for this target
1056	<code>GetOutputFileName</code>	Returns the target's output filename for the specified OS
1056	<code>HaveOptions</code>	Checks if target has compilation options
1056	<code>SetExeName</code>	Sets the executable name for the target
1056	<code>SetName</code>	Sets the name of the target
1057	<code>SetXML</code>	Sets XML configuration data for the target

29.52.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1065	AfterClean	rw	Event handler executed after target cleanup
1064	AfterCompile	rw	Event handler executed after target compilation
1065	BeforeClean	rw	Event handler executed before target cleanup
1064	BeforeCompile	rw	Event handler executed before target compilation
1058	Commands	r	Collection of custom commands for the target
1059	CPUs	rw	Set of CPU architectures this target supports
1058	Dependencies	r	Collection of target dependencies
1062	Directory	rw	Directory where the target source files are located
1061	Extension	rw	File extension for the compiled target
1062	FileType	rw	Type of file this target generates
1061	FPCTarget	rw	FPC compiler target specification
1063	IncludePath	r	Search path for include files during compilation
1062	Install	rw	Whether this target should be installed
1064	IsFPMakePlugin	rw	Whether this target is an FPMake plugin
1059	Mode	rw	Compiler mode for the target
1060	ObjectFileName	r	Resolved object file name for the target
1063	ObjectPath	r	Path for object files generated during compilation
1060	Options	rw	Compiler options for the target
1059	OSes	rw	Set of operating systems this target supports
1058	ResourceFiles	r	Collection of resource files for the target
1062	ResourceStrings	rw	Whether to generate resource string support for the target
1061	RSJFileName	r	Resource string JSON filename for the target
1061	RSTFileName	r	Resource string table filename for the target
1060	SourceFileName	r	Resolved source file name for the target
1058	State	r	Current build state of the target
1063	TargetSourceFileName	r	Source filename for the build target
1059	TargetType	rw	Type of the build target
1060	UnitFileName	r	Resolved unit file name for the target
1063	UnitPath	r	Search path for unit files during compilation
1064	XML	rw	Whether to generate XML documentation for the target

29.52.4 TTarget.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new build target instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `TTarget` instance within the specified collection.

The target is initialized with default settings and can be configured for compilation, installation, and dependency management.

29.52.5 TTarget.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the target instance and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the `TTarget` instance and frees all associated resources including dependencies, resource files, commands, and path collections.

29.52.6 TTarget.AssignTo

Synopsis: Assigns target properties to another object

Declaration: `procedure AssignTo(Dest: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assigns the properties of this target to another persistent object.

This method is used for copying target configuration during build operations.

29.52.7 TTarget.GetOutputFileName

Synopsis: Returns the target's output filename for the specified OS

Declaration: `function GetOutputFileName(AOs: TOS) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the complete output filename that will be generated for this target on the specified operating system.

The filename includes appropriate extensions and paths based on the target type and OS conventions.

29.52.8 TTarget.HaveOptions

Synopsis: Checks if target has compilation options

Declaration: `function HaveOptions : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns `True` if the target has compiler options defined, `False` otherwise.

29.52.9 TTarget.SetName

Synopsis: Sets the name of the target

Declaration: `procedure SetName(const AValue: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets the name of the target, which is used for identification and display purposes.

The name must be unique within the containing package.

29.52.10 TTarget.SetExeName

Synopsis: Sets the executable name for the target

Declaration: `procedure SetExeName(const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets the executable filename that will be generated for program targets.

This overrides the default naming based on the target name.

29.52.11 TTarget.SetXML

Synopsis: Sets XML configuration data for the target

Declaration: `procedure SetXML(const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Sets XML configuration data associated with the target.

This XML data can contain target-specific build configuration and metadata.

29.52.12 TTarget.GetCleanFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to be cleaned for this target

Declaration: `procedure GetCleanFiles(List: TStrings; const APrefixU: string;
const APrefixB: string; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided string list with filenames that should be deleted during clean operations for this target. This includes compiled object files, executables, and other generated artifacts.

The file paths are adjusted according to the CPU, OS, and subtarget parameters to match the actual build output locations.

29.52.13 TTarget.GetInstallFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to be installed for this target

Declaration: `procedure GetInstallFiles(List: TStrings; const APrefixU: string;
const APrefixB: string; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided string list with filenames that should be copied during installation operations for this target. This includes compiled units, binaries, documentation, and resource files.

Installation paths are calculated based on the target type, CPU, OS, and the configured installation directories for units, binaries, and documentation.

29.52.14 TTarget.GetArchiveFiles

Synopsis: Gets list of files to be archived for this target

Declaration: `procedure GetArchiveFiles(List: TStrings; ACPU: TCpu; AOS: TOS)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Populates the provided string list with filenames that should be included in distribution archives for this target. This typically includes compiled binaries, documentation, and required resource files.

Files are filtered based on the target CPU and OS to ensure only relevant files are included in platform-specific archives.

29.52.15 TTarget.Dependencies

Synopsis: Collection of target dependencies

Declaration: `Property Dependencies : TDependencies`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection containing all dependencies required by this target.

Dependencies include units, packages, and include files that must be available for successful compilation of this target.

29.52.16 TTarget.ResourceFiles

Synopsis: Collection of resource files for the target

Declaration: `Property ResourceFiles : TResourceFiles`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection containing resource files that will be linked into this target.

Resource files can include icons, bitmaps, version information, and other embedded resources.

29.52.17 TTarget.Commands

Synopsis: Collection of custom commands for the target

Declaration: `Property Commands : TCommands`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Collection containing custom commands that will be executed during build phases.

Commands can be configured to run before or after compilation, installation, cleaning, or archiving.

29.52.18 TTarget.State

Synopsis: Current build state of the target

Declaration: `Property State : TTargetState`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current state of the target in the build process.

States include neutral, considering, no compile, compiled, installed, and not found.

29.52.19 TTarget.TargetType

Synopsis: Type of the build target

Declaration: `Property TargetType : TTargetType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the type of target: program, unit, implicit unit, clean-only unit, example unit, example program, fpdoc documentation, or shared library.

The target type determines compilation options and output file handling.

29.52.20 TTarget.OSes

Synopsis: Set of operating systems this target supports

Declaration: `Property OSes : TOSes`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Set of operating systems for which this target should be compiled.

If empty, the target is compiled for all operating systems. Used for conditional compilation.

29.52.21 TTarget.CPUs

Synopsis: Set of CPU architectures this target supports

Declaration: `Property CPUs : TCPUS`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Set of CPU architectures for which this target should be compiled.

If empty, the target is compiled for all CPU architectures. Used for conditional compilation.

29.52.22 TTarget.Mode

Synopsis: Compiler mode for the target

Declaration: `Property Mode : TCompilerMode`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Compiler mode used when compiling this target.

Modes include FPC, Turbo Pascal, Object Pascal, Delphi, Mac Pascal, and Delphi Unicode.

29.52.23 TTarget.Options

Synopsis: Compiler options for the target

Declaration: `Property Options : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: String list containing compiler options that will be passed to the Free Pascal Compiler when compiling this target.

Options include optimization settings, debugging flags, and compiler directives.

29.52.24 TTarget.SourceFileName

Synopsis: Resolved source file name for the target

Declaration: `Property SourceFileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Full path to the main source file for this target after path resolution.

This is the primary Pascal source file that will be compiled for this target.

29.52.25 TTarget.UnitFileName

Synopsis: Resolved unit file name for the target

Declaration: `Property UnitFileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Full path to the compiled unit file (.ppu) that will be generated for this target.

This file contains the compiled unit interface and implementation.

29.52.26 TTarget.ObjectFileName

Synopsis: Resolved object file name for the target

Declaration: `Property ObjectFileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Full path to the object file (.o) that will be generated for this target.

This file contains the compiled machine code for the target.

29.52.27 TTarget.RSTFileName

Synopsis: Resource string table filename for the target

Declaration: `Property RSTFileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RSTFileName` contains the full path to the resource string table file (.rst) for this target. This file contains string resources and translation information used by the application.

29.52.28 TTarget.RSJFileName

Synopsis: Resource string JSON filename for the target

Declaration: `Property RSJFileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `RSJFileName` contains the full path to the resource string JSON file (.rsj) for this target. This file contains string resources in JSON format for internationalization support.

29.52.29 TTarget.FPCTarget

Synopsis: FPC compiler target specification

Declaration: `Property FPCTarget : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FPCTarget` specifies the target platform and architecture for the Free Pascal Compiler. This setting determines the output format and platform-specific code generation for the target.

29.52.30 TTarget.Extension

Synopsis: File extension for the compiled target

Declaration: `Property Extension : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Extension` contains the file extension (without the dot) for the compiled output file. This extension varies based on the target type, such as 'exe' for programs or 'dll' for libraries.

29.52.31 TTarget.FileType

Synopsis: Type of file this target generates

Declaration: `Property FileType : TFileType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileType` indicates the category of file this target produces, such as executable program, dynamic library, static library, or unit. This determines compilation and linking behavior.

29.52.32 TTarget.Directory

Synopsis: Directory where the target source files are located

Declaration: `Property Directory : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Directory` specifies the directory path containing the source files for this target. This path is used to resolve relative file references during compilation.

29.52.33 TTarget.ResourceStrings

Synopsis: Whether to generate resource string support for the target

Declaration: `Property ResourceStrings : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ResourceStrings` determines whether the compiler generates resource string support files for this target. When `True`, `.rst` and `.rsj` files are created for internationalization.

29.52.34 TTarget.Install

Synopsis: Whether this target should be installed

Declaration: `Property Install : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Install` controls whether this target is included in the installation process. When `True`, the compiled target file is copied to the installation directory.

29.52.35 TTarget.TargetSourceFileName

Synopsis: Source filename for the build target

Declaration: `Property TargetSourceFileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `TargetSourceFileName` contains the name of the main source file for this target. This is the primary Pascal source file that serves as the entry point for compilation.

29.52.36 TTarget.ObjectPath

Synopsis: Path for object files generated during compilation

Declaration: `Property ObjectPath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ObjectPath` specifies the directory path where object files (.o) are stored during compilation. This allows separation of intermediate compilation files from source code directories.

29.52.37 TTarget.UnitPath

Synopsis: Search path for unit files during compilation

Declaration: `Property UnitPath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `UnitPath` contains the search directories for compiled unit files (.ppu) during compilation. The compiler searches these paths to locate required units referenced by this target.

29.52.38 TTarget.IncludePath

Synopsis: Search path for include files during compilation

Declaration: `Property IncludePath : TConditionalStrings`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IncludePath` contains the search directories for include files during compilation. The compiler searches these paths to locate files referenced by `{ $INCLUDE }` directives.

29.52.39 TTarget.XML

Synopsis: Whether to generate XML documentation for the target

Declaration: `Property XML : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `XML` determines whether the compiler generates XML documentation output for this target. When `True`, structured documentation is extracted from source code comments.

29.52.40 TTarget.IsFPMakePlugin

Synopsis: Whether this target is an FPMake plugin

Declaration: `Property IsFPMakePlugin : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `IsFPMakePlugin` indicates whether this target is a plugin for the FPMake build system. Plugin targets provide extended functionality and are loaded dynamically during the build process.

29.52.41 TTarget.BeforeCompile

Synopsis: Event handler executed before target compilation

Declaration: `Property BeforeCompile : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeCompile` is an event handler called immediately before this target is compiled. This allows custom preprocessing or validation logic to be executed before compilation begins.

29.52.42 TTarget.AfterCompile

Synopsis: Event handler executed after target compilation

Declaration: `Property AfterCompile : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterCompile` is an event handler called immediately after this target is successfully compiled. This allows custom post-processing or validation logic to be executed after compilation completes.

29.52.43 TTarget.BeforeClean

Synopsis: Event handler executed before target cleanup

Declaration: `Property BeforeClean : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `BeforeClean` is an event handler called before this target's generated files are cleaned. This allows custom cleanup preparation or backup operations before file removal.

29.52.44 TTarget.AfterClean

Synopsis: Event handler executed after target cleanup

Declaration: `Property AfterClean : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterClean` is an event handler called immediately after this target's generated files have been cleaned and removed.

This allows custom post-cleanup operations, logging, or verification that cleanup completed successfully.

29.53 TTargetEnumerator

29.53.1 Description

`TTargetEnumerator` provides enumeration support for iterating through collections of build targets in a for-in loop construct.

This enumerator enables convenient iteration over target collections with automatic position tracking and bounds checking.

29.53.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1065	<code>GetCurrent</code>	Gets current build target in enumeration

29.53.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1066	<code>Current</code>	<code>r</code>	Current build target being enumerated

29.53.4 TTargetEnumerator.GetCurrent

Synopsis: Gets current build target in enumeration

Declaration: `function GetCurrent : TTarget`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the `TTarget` (1054) object at the current enumeration position.

This method provides access to the target's properties and methods during iteration through the target collection.

29.53.5 `TTargetEnumerator.Current`

Synopsis: Current build target being enumerated

Declaration: `Property Current : TTarget`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Property providing read-only access to the `TTarget` (1054) object at the current enumeration position.

This property returns the target object that can be processed during for-in loop iteration.

29.54 `TTargets`

29.54.1 Description

`TTargets` is a collection class that manages multiple `TTarget` (1054) instances within a package. It provides methods to add different types of targets such as units, programs, libraries, and documentation targets.

The collection supports various convenience methods for adding specific target types with optional CPU and OS restrictions, making it easy to create cross-platform build configurations.

See also: `TTarget` (1054), `TTargetEnumerator` (1065), `TPackage` (1014)

29.54.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1068	<code>AddExampleProgram</code>	Adds an example program target to the collection
1068	<code>AddExampleUnit</code>	Adds an example unit target to the collection
1066	<code>AddFPDoc</code>	Adds a documentation target to the collection
1067	<code>AddImplicitUnit</code>	Adds an implicit unit target to the collection
1068	<code>AddLibrary</code>	Adds a library target to the collection
1067	<code>AddProgram</code>	Adds a program target to the collection
1067	<code>AddUnit</code>	Adds a unit target to the collection
1069	<code>GetEnumerator</code>	Gets enumerator for iterating build targets

29.54.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1069	<code>TargetItems</code>	rw	Indexed access to build targets in the collection
1069	<code>Targets</code>	r	Access to build target by name

29.54.4 `TTargets.AddFPDoc`

Synopsis: Adds a documentation target to the collection

Declaration: `function AddFPDoc(const AUnitName: string; const AXMLName: string)
: TTarget`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new FPDoc documentation target that generates HTML or other documentation formats from Pascal source code and XML documentation files.

The documentation target processes the specified unit file and corresponding XML documentation file to produce formatted documentation output.

29.54.5 TTargets.AddUnit

Synopsis: Adds a unit target to the collection

Declaration: `function AddUnit(const AUnitName: string) : TTarget
function AddUnit(const AUnitName: string; const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget
function AddUnit(const AUnitName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new unit target with the specified name to the target collection. The unit will be compiled as a regular Pascal unit and can optionally be restricted to specific CPU architectures and operating systems.

See also: [AddProgram \(1067\)](#), [AddLibrary \(1068\)](#), [AddImplicitUnit \(1067\)](#)

29.54.6 TTargets.AddImplicitUnit

Synopsis: Adds an implicit unit target to the collection

Declaration: `function AddImplicitUnit(const AUnitName: string;
InstallUnit: Boolean=True) : TTarget
function AddImplicitUnit(const AUnitName: string; const OSes: TOSes;
InstallUnit: Boolean=True) : TTarget
function AddImplicitUnit(const AUnitName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
InstallUnit: Boolean=True) : TTarget
function AddImplicitUnit(const AUnitName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
const OSes: TOSes; InstallUnit: Boolean=True)
: TTarget`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new implicit unit target that is compiled automatically as a dependency without explicit reference in the build script.

Implicit units are typically used for helper modules and internal dependencies that do not need separate installation or distribution.

29.54.7 TTargets.AddProgram

Synopsis: Adds a program target to the collection

Declaration: `function AddProgram(const AProgramName: string) : TTarget
function AddProgram(const AProgramName: string; const OSes: TOSes)
: TTarget`

```
function AddProgram(const AProgramName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
                   const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new program target with the specified name to the target collection. The program will be compiled as an executable and can optionally be restricted to specific CPU architectures and operating systems.

See also: AddUnit ([1067](#)), AddLibrary ([1068](#)), ttProgram ([934](#))

29.54.8 TTargets.AddLibrary

Synopsis: Adds a library target to the collection

```
Declaration: function AddLibrary(const ALibraryName: string) : TTarget
function AddLibrary(const ALibraryName: string; const OSes: TOSes)
                  : TTarget
function AddLibrary(const ALibraryName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
                   const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new library target with the specified name to the target collection. The library will be compiled as a shared library and can optionally be restricted to specific CPU architectures and operating systems.

See also: AddUnit ([1067](#)), AddProgram ([1067](#)), ttSharedLibrary ([934](#))

29.54.9 TTargets.AddExampleUnit

Synopsis: Adds an example unit target to the collection

```
Declaration: function AddExampleUnit(const AUnitName: string) : TTarget
function AddExampleUnit(const AUnitName: string; const OSes: TOSes)
                  : TTarget
function AddExampleUnit(const AUnitName: string; const CPUs: TCPUS;
                   const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new example unit target that demonstrates usage patterns and serves as sample code for package functionality.

Example units are typically installed separately from main package units and provide documentation through working code examples.

29.54.10 TTargets.AddExampleProgram

Synopsis: Adds an example program target to the collection

```
Declaration: function AddExampleProgram(const AProgramName: string) : TTarget
function AddExampleProgram(const AProgramName: string;
                          const OSes: TOSes) : TTarget
function AddExampleProgram(const AProgramName: string;
                          const CPUs: TCPUS; const OSes: TOSes)
                          : TTarget
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates and adds a new example program target that demonstrates package functionality through executable sample applications.

Example programs provide working demonstrations of package features and serve as practical documentation for developers.

29.54.11 TTargets.GetEnumerator

Synopsis: Gets enumerator for iterating build targets

Declaration: `function GetEnumerator : TTargetEnumerator`

Visibility: public

Description: Returns a TTargetEnumerator (1065) object that enables for-in loop iteration through the build targets collection.

This method enables convenient enumeration of all build targets using modern Pascal iteration syntax.

29.54.12 TTargets.Targets

Synopsis: Access to build target by name

Declaration: `Property Targets[AName: string]: TTarget; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Provides named access to TTarget (1054) objects within the collection using the target's name as the key.

This property enables lookup and retrieval of specific build targets by their configured names.

29.54.13 TTargets.TargetItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to build targets in the collection

Declaration: `Property TargetItems[Index: Integer]: TTarget`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Provides indexed read-only access to TTarget (1054) objects within the collection using zero-based array indexing.

This default property enables array-style access to build targets for iteration and processing.

29.55 TValueItem

29.55.1 Description

TValueItem represents a dictionary entry that stores a string value with an associated key. This class is used in template processing and variable substitution systems within the fpmake build system.

29.55.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1070	Create	Creates value item with specified value

29.55.3 TValueItem.Create

Synopsis: Creates value item with specified value

Declaration: constructor `Create(AValue: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TValueItem` instance with the specified string value. This constructor stores the provided value for later retrieval and use in template substitution.

The created value item can be added to dictionaries or collections for dynamic configuration management.

Chapter 30

Reference for unit 'fpobserver'

30.1 Used units

Table 30.1: Used units by unit 'fpobserver'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	284
System	??
sysutils	??
TypeInfo	??

30.2 Overview

The `fpobserver` unit provides a complete implementation of the Observer pattern for Free Pascal applications. It includes classes and interfaces for creating observable objects that can notify multiple observers when their state changes.

The unit contains the `TObservedHook` class for adding observer support to any object, the `TBaseMediator` hierarchy for automatic data binding between model and view objects, and mediator management classes for registering and finding appropriate mediators.

30.3 Constants, types and variables

30.3.1 Types

```
TMediatingEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var Handled: Boolean
)
of object
```

The `TMediatingEvent` procedure type defines the signature for events that occur during data transfer operations in mediators. The event allows custom handling of data transfer between subject and view objects.

The `Handled` parameter can be set to `True` to indicate that the event handler has performed the data transfer, preventing the default transfer mechanism from executing.


```
TMediatorClass = class of TBaseMediator
```

The `TMediatorClass` type is a class reference that points to `TBaseMediator` (1075) or its descendants. It is used in mediator registration and management to specify mediator classes without creating instances.

```
TOnBeforeSetupField = procedure (AObject: TObject;
    const AFieldName: string;
    var AValue: string) of object
```

The `TOnBeforeSetupField` procedure type defines the signature for events that allow formatting of field values before they are written to list view captions or items. This event provides access to the object, field name, and value that can be modified.

This event is meant to provide the possibility to apply custom formatting for dates, numbers, or other data types.

30.4 Procedures and functions

30.4.1 MediatorError

Synopsis: Raises formatted mediator error with context information

Declaration: `procedure MediatorError(Sender: TObject; const Msg: string); overload`
`procedure MediatorError(Sender: TObject; const Fmt: string;`
`Args: Array of const); overload`

Visibility: default

Description: The `MediatorError` procedure raises an `EMediator` (1073) exception with detailed context information. It formats the error message with information about the sender object, including mediator details, view component names, and subject information where available.

Multiple overloads support both direct message strings and format string with arguments.

See also: `EMediator` (1073)

30.4.2 MediatorManager

Synopsis: Returns the global singleton mediator manager instance

Declaration: `function MediatorManager : TMediatorManager`

Visibility: default

Description: The `MediatorManager` function returns the global singleton instance of the mediator manager. If the instance doesn't exist yet, it creates one automatically.

This function provides convenient access to the global mediator manager for registering mediators and finding appropriate mediator definitions.

This function is not thread-safe, so make sure to call it once in the main thread so the instance is created once.

See also: `TMediatorManager` (1090)

30.5 EMediator

30.5.1 Description

The `EMediator` class is the exception type raised by mediator-related operations when errors occur. It provides specific error reporting for mediator configuration and operation problems.

30.6 TBaseListMediator

30.6.1 Description

The `TBaseListMediator` class extends `TBaseMediator` (1075) to handle collections of objects. It creates individual item mediators for each object in the list and manages their lifecycle automatically.

The subject must be a `TObjectList`, `TList`, or `TCollection`. The mediator responds to list changes by creating, updating, or destroying item mediators as needed. This class is abstract and must be subclassed to provide specific GUI integration.

Each item in the list is handled by a `TListItemMediator` (1082) instance, allowing individual objects to have their own observer relationships and data binding behavior.

See also: `TBaseMediator` (1075)

30.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1074	<code>CompositeMediator</code>	Returns True indicating this is a composite mediator
1073	<code>Create</code>	Creates a base list mediator instance
1073	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the list mediator and all item mediators
1074	<code>ObservedChanged</code>	Handles changes in the observed list objects

30.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1074	<code>OnBeforeSetupField</code>	rw	Event for formatting field values in all item mediators
1074	<code>SelectedObject</code>	rw	Currently selected object in the list

30.6.4 TBaseListMediator.Create

Synopsis: Creates a base list mediator instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Create` constructor initializes the list mediator with an empty item mediator collection and sets the default `ViewPropertyName` to 'Caption'. The mediator is initially inactive.

30.6.5 TBaseListMediator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list mediator and all item mediators

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Destroy` destructor cleans up all item mediators and frees the mediator collection.

30.6.6 TBaseListMediator.CompositeMediator

Synopsis: Returns True indicating this is a composite mediator

Declaration: `class function CompositeMediator : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CompositeMediator` method returns True for list mediators, indicating they handle multiple objects rather than single property mediation. This affects how the mediator manager registers and selects mediators.

Composite mediators work without specific property names and handle entire object relationships rather than individual property synchronization.

30.6.7 TBaseListMediator.ObservedChanged

Synopsis: Handles changes in the observed list objects

Declaration: `procedure ObservedChanged (ASender: TObject;
Operation: TFPObservedOperation)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `ObservedChanged` method responds to changes in the list by creating mediators for added items, removing mediators for deleted items, or rebuilding the entire mediator collection when necessary.

30.6.8 TBaseListMediator.SelectedObject

Synopsis: Currently selected object in the list

Declaration: `Property SelectedObject : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `SelectedObject` property provides access to the currently selected object in the list. The base implementation returns `nil`; descendants must override the getter and setter to provide meaningful selection support.

This property enables two-way binding between the GUI selection state and the object model.

30.6.9 TBaseListMediator.OnBeforeSetupField

Synopsis: Event for formatting field values in all item mediators

Declaration: `Property OnBeforeSetupField : TOnBeforeSetupField`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnBeforeSetupField` event allows customization of how field values are formatted before display. It is automatically propagated to all item mediators in the collection.

This event is particularly useful for formatting dates, numbers, or other data types for consistent display across all list items.

30.7 TBaseMediator

30.7.1 Description

The `TBaseMediator` class provides automatic data binding between model objects (subjects) and view components. It implements the observer pattern to automatically synchronize data when either the model or view changes.

The mediator supports bidirectional data binding, read-only modes, and custom data transfer events. Subjects must implement the `IFPObserver` interface, while views must have published properties that can be accessed by name.

This class serves as the base class for more specialized mediators like list mediators and component mediators, providing common functionality for property validation, observer management, and data transfer coordination.

See also: `TObserverHook` ([1092](#)), `TComponentMediator` ([1081](#))

30.7.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
??	<code>IFPObserver</code>	

30.7.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1077	<code>CompositeMediator</code>	Indicates whether this is a composite mediator
1076	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the mediator and cleans up observer attachments
1076	<code>ObjectToView</code>	Copies data from subject object to view component
1076	<code>ViewClass</code>	Returns the minimum view class this mediator can handle
1076	<code>ViewToObject</code>	Copies data from view component to subject object

30.7.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1078	<code>Active</code>	rw	Enables or disables automatic data synchronization
1079	<code>OnObjectToView</code>	rw	Event triggered when copying data from subject to view
1079	<code>OnViewToObject</code>	rw	Event triggered when copying data from view to subject
1078	<code>ReadOnly</code>	rw	Prevents data transfer from view to subject when True
1077	<code>Subject</code>	rw	Model object implementing <code>IFPObserver</code> interface
1078	<code>SubjectPropertyName</code>	rw	Name of property in subject object to mediate
1077	<code>Valuelist</code>	rw	Optional list of values for list-based mediators
1077	<code>View</code>	r	View component for data display and editing

30.7.5 TBaseMediator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the mediator and cleans up observer attachments

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor ensures proper cleanup by detaching the mediator from both the subject and value list objects.

30.7.6 TBaseMediator.ObjectToView

Synopsis: Copies data from subject object to view component

Declaration: `procedure ObjectToView`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `ObjectToView` method transfers data from the subject's property to the view's property. It first checks for custom handling via the `OnObjectToView` (1079) event, then performs the default property copying if it was not handled in the event.

This method is called automatically when the subject changes, or can be called manually to force a data refresh.

See also: `ViewToObject` (1076), `OnObjectToView` (1079)

30.7.7 TBaseMediator.ViewToObject

Synopsis: Copies data from view component to subject object

Declaration: `procedure ViewToObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `ViewToObject` method transfers data from the view's property to the subject's property. It first checks for custom handling via the `OnViewToObject` (1079) event, then performs the default property copying if not was not handled in the event.

This method is typically called when the view component changes, unless the mediator is in read-only mode.

See also: `ObjectToView` (1076), `OnViewToObject` (1079)

30.7.8 TBaseMediator.ViewClass

Synopsis: Returns the minimum view class this mediator can handle

Declaration: `class function ViewClass : TClass; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `ViewClass` class method returns the base class that view objects must inherit from to be compatible with this mediator. Descendant mediators override this to specify more specific view class requirements.

The default implementation returns `TObject`, indicating that any object can serve as a view.

30.7.9 TBaseMediator.CompositeMediator

Synopsis: Indicates whether this is a composite mediator

Declaration: `class function CompositeMediator : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CompositeMediator` class method returns `False` for base mediators, indicating they handle single property mediation. List mediators and other composite mediators override this to return `True`.

This information is used by the mediator manager when automatically selecting appropriate mediators for different scenarios.

30.7.10 TBaseMediator.Subject

Synopsis: Model object implementing IFPObserved interface

Declaration: `Property Subject : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Subject` property holds the model object whose data will be mediated to the view. The object must implement the `IFPObserved` interface to support change notifications.

When set, the mediator automatically attaches as an observer and performs initial data synchronization if active.

See also: [View \(1077\)](#), [ViewClass \(1076\)](#), [ViewPropertyName \(1075\)](#)

30.7.11 TBaseMediator.View

Synopsis: View component for data display and editing

Declaration: `Property View : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `View` property provides access to the view component that displays and allows editing of the subject's data. The base class returns `nil`; descendant classes override `GetView` to return their specific view component.

The view must have a published property matching [ViewPropertyName \(1075\)](#) for data binding to work correctly.

See also: [Subject \(1077\)](#), [ViewClass \(1076\)](#), [ViewPropertyName \(1075\)](#)

30.7.12 TBaseMediator.Valuelist

Synopsis: Optional list of values for list-based mediators

Declaration: `Property Valuelist : TObjectList`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ValueList` property holds an optional list of values used by mediators that work with dynamic value lists, such as combobox or listbox mediators. The list must implement `IFPObserved` for change notifications.

When set, the mediator observes the value list for changes and updates the view accordingly.

See also: `Subject` ([1077](#)), `SubjectPropertyName` ([1077](#)), `ViewPropertyName` ([1075](#))

30.7.13 `TBaseMediator.SubjectPropertyName`

Synopsis: Name of property in subject object to mediate

Declaration: `Property SubjectPropertyName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `SubjectPropertyName` property specifies which published property of the subject object will be synchronized with the view. The property must exist and be published for the mediation to work correctly.

Setting this property triggers validation and may cause immediate data synchronization if the mediator is active.

See also: `Subject` ([1077](#)), `ViewPropertyName` ([1075](#))

30.7.14 `TBaseMediator.Active`

Synopsis: Enables or disables automatic data synchronization

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Active` property controls whether the mediator performs automatic data synchronization. When `True`, the mediator responds to subject changes and transfers data between subject and view.

Setting this to `False` stops all automatic synchronization, though manual calls to `ObjectToView` and `ViewToObject` still work.

See also: `ReadOnly` ([1078](#))

30.7.15 `TBaseMediator.ReadOnly`

Synopsis: Prevents data transfer from view to subject when `True`

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ReadOnly` property controls the direction of data transfer. When `True`, data flows only from subject to view, preventing user input from modifying the subject object.

This is useful for display-only scenarios where the view should reflect the subject's state but not allow modifications.

See also: `Active` ([1078](#))

30.7.16 TBaseMediator.OnViewToObject

Synopsis: Event triggered when copying data from view to subject

Declaration: `Property OnViewToObject : TMediatingEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnViewToObject` event is triggered before the default view-to-subject data transfer. Setting the `Handled` parameter to `True` prevents the default transfer, allowing custom data handling.

This event is useful for implementing custom validation, data transformation, or special handling during user input processing.

See also: `OnObjectToView` ([1079](#)), `Subject` ([1077](#)), `ViewPropertyName` ([1075](#))

30.7.17 TBaseMediator.OnObjectToView

Synopsis: Event triggered when copying data from subject to view

Declaration: `Property OnObjectToView : TMediatingEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnObjectToView` event is triggered before the default subject-to-view data transfer. Setting the `Handled` parameter to `True` prevents the default transfer, allowing custom data presentation.

This event is useful for implementing custom formatting, data transformation, or special display logic when updating the view.

See also: `OnViewToObject` ([1079](#)), `Subject` ([1077](#)), `ViewPropertyName` ([1075](#))

30.8 TColumnsListItemMediator

30.8.1 Description

The `TColumnsListItemMediator` class extends `TListItemMediator` ([1082](#)) to provide access to the parent mediator's field information collection. This allows item mediators to access column configuration for multi-column display scenarios.

See also: `TListItemMediator` ([1082](#))

30.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1079	<code>FieldsInfo</code>	<code>r</code>	Reference to parent mediator's field configuration

30.8.3 TColumnsListItemMediator.FieldsInfo

Synopsis: Reference to parent mediator's field configuration

Declaration: `Property FieldsInfo : TMediatorFieldInfoList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: The `FieldsInfo` property provides access to the parent `TColumnsListMediator`'s field information collection. This allows the item mediator to access column definitions for data formatting and display.

30.9 TColumnsListMediator

30.9.1 Description

The `TColumnsListMediator` class extends `TBaseListMediator` (1073) to support multi-column list displays. It manages a collection of field information objects that define the properties, captions, widths, and alignments for each column.

This class provides the foundation for list controls that display multiple properties of each object in a tabular format, such as list views or grids.

See also: `TBaseListMediator` (1073)

30.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1080	<code>Create</code>	Creates a columns list mediator with field info collection
1080	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the columns mediator and field info collection

30.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1081	<code>DisplayNames</code>	rw	Convenient string format for setting column properties
1081	<code>FieldsInfo</code>	rw	Collection of field information for column display configuration

30.9.4 TColumnsListMediator.Create

Synopsis: Creates a columns list mediator with field info collection

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Create` constructor initializes the columns mediator with an empty field information collection and sets the default `SubjectPropertyName` to 'Caption'.

30.9.5 TColumnsListMediator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the columns mediator and field info collection

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Destroy` destructor cleans up the field information collection along with all item mediators, ensuring complete cleanup of the mediator structure.

30.9.6 TColumnsListMediator.DisplayNames

Synopsis: Convenient string format for setting column properties

Declaration: `Property DisplayNames : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `DisplayNames` property provides a convenient way to configure all columns using a semicolon-separated string format. Setting this property parses the string and updates the field information collection.

This property is particularly useful for quick configuration and design-time setup of column layouts.

See also: `FieldsInfo` ([1081](#))

30.9.7 TColumnsListMediator.FieldsInfo

Synopsis: Collection of field information for column display configuration

Declaration: `Property FieldsInfo : TMediatorFieldInfoList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `FieldsInfo` property contains the collection of field information objects that define how each column should be displayed. This collection can be modified at design time or runtime to configure the column layout.

Changes to this collection are monitored and may trigger column recreation if the mediator is active.

See also: `DisplayNames` ([1081](#))

30.10 TComponentMediator

30.10.1 Description

The `TComponentMediator` class provides mediation capabilities for any `TComponent`-based view. It extends `TBaseMediator` ([1075](#)) to work with components that can be set at design time or runtime.

This mediator is useful for creating flexible data binding scenarios where the specific view component type is not known at compile time, or when working with various types of input controls. You can also create descendants from this class which introduce more specific behaviour

See also: `TBaseMediator` ([1075](#))

30.10.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1082	<code>ViewComponent</code>	rw	Component serving as the view in the mediation
1082	<code>ViewPropertyName</code>		Name of property in view component to mediate

30.10.3 TComponentMediator.ViewComponent

Synopsis: Component serving as the view in the mediation

Declaration: `Property ViewComponent : TComponent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `ViewComponent` property specifies which component will serve as the view for data binding. Setting this property establishes free notification handling and triggers view change processing.

See also: `ViewPropertyName` ([1082](#))

30.10.4 TComponentMediator.ViewPropertyName

Synopsis: Name of property in view component to mediate

Declaration: `Property ViewPropertyName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: The `ViewPropertyName` property specifies which published property of the view component will be synchronized with the subject. This property is published to allow configuration in the Object Inspector.

The specified property must exist and be published in the view component for the mediation to function correctly.

See also: `ViewComponent` ([1082](#))

30.11 TListItemMediator

30.11.1 Description

The `TListItemMediator` class handles individual objects within list mediators. Each item in a list gets its own item mediator that manages the observer relationship and data synchronization for that specific object.

Item mediators are created and managed automatically by their parent list mediator and coordinate with it for activation state and field formatting events.

See also: `TBaseListMediator` ([1073](#))

30.11.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
??	IFPObserver	

30.11.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1083	Destroy	Destroys the list item mediator and detaches from subject
1083	MaybeObjectToView	Conditionally updates view with data from subject

30.11.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1084	Active	r	Indicates if the parent list mediator is active
1083	OnBeforeSetupField	rw	Event for formatting field values before display
1083	Subject	rw	Individual object being mediated by this item mediator

30.11.5 TListItemMediator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list item mediator and detaches from subject

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor ensures proper cleanup by detaching from the subject object, preventing observer notifications to a destroyed mediator.

30.11.6 TListItemMediator.MaybeObjectToView

Synopsis: Conditionally updates view with data from subject

Declaration: `procedure MaybeObjectToView`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `MaybeObjectToView` method checks if both the subject is assigned and the parent mediator is active before triggering a view update.

30.11.7 TListItemMediator.OnBeforeSetupField

Synopsis: Event for formatting field values before display

Declaration: `Property OnBeforeSetupField : TOnBeforeSetupField`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `OnBeforeSetupField` event allows custom formatting of field values before they are displayed. This event is typically set by the parent list mediator to ensure consistent formatting across all items.

30.11.8 TListItemMediator.Subject

Synopsis: Individual object being mediated by this item mediator

Declaration: `Property Subject : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Subject` property holds the specific object that this item mediator is responsible for. The object must implement `IFPObserved` for proper notification handling.

When set, the mediator automatically establishes observer relationships and may trigger view updates if active.

30.11.9 TListItemMediator.Active

Synopsis: Indicates if the parent list mediator is active

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Active` property returns the active state of the parent list mediator. Item mediators don't have their own activation state but inherit it from their parent.

30.12 TMediatorDef

30.12.1 Description

The `TMediatorDef` class represents a mediator definition used by the mediator manager to automatically select appropriate mediator classes for given subject/GUI combinations.

Each definition specifies the mediator class, minimum subject class, and either specific property names or property types that the mediator can handle. The manager uses this information to find the best matching mediator for automatic mediation scenarios.

See also: [Handles \(1084\)](#)

30.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1085	<code>BetterMatch</code>	Compares this definition against another for best match selection
1084	<code>Handles</code>	Determines if this definition can handle the given subject/GUI combination

30.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1085	<code>MediatorClass</code>	rw	Class reference for the mediator implementation
1085	<code>MinSubjectClass</code>	rw	Minimum subject class that this mediator can handle
1086	<code>PropertyName</code>	rw	Specific property name this mediator handles
1085	<code>PropertyTypes</code>	rw	Set of property types this mediator can handle

30.12.4 TMediatorDef.Handles

Synopsis: Determines if this definition can handle the given subject/GUI combination

Declaration: `function Handles (ASubject: TObject; AGui: TComponent;
APropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Handles` method evaluates whether this mediator definition can handle the specified combination of subject object, GUI component, and property information. It checks class compatibility and property requirements.

This method is used by the mediator manager during the selection process to filter potentially suitable mediators.

See also: `TMediatorDef.BetterMatch` ([1085](#))

30.12.5 TMediatorDef.BetterMatch

Synopsis: Compares this definition against another for best match selection

Declaration: `function BetterMatch(M: TMediatorDef) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: The `BetterMatch` method compares this definition against another to determine which provides a better match for a given scenario. It considers property name specificity, class hierarchies, and mediator types.

This comparison logic ensures that the most specific and appropriate mediator is selected when multiple mediators could handle the same situation.

See also: `FindDefFor` ([1091](#))

30.12.6 TMediatorDef.MediatorClass

Synopsis: Class reference for the mediator implementation

Declaration: `Property MediatorClass : TMediatorClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `MediatorClass` property holds the class reference for the mediator that will be instantiated when this definition is selected. This must be a descendant of `TBaseMediator`.

See also: `TBaseMediator` ([1075](#))

30.12.7 TMediatorDef.MinSubjectClass

Synopsis: Minimum subject class that this mediator can handle

Declaration: `Property MinSubjectClass : TClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `MinSubjectClass` property specifies the minimum class that subject objects must inherit from for this mediator to be applicable. This allows mediators to be restricted to specific object hierarchies.

See also: `TBaseMediator.Subject` ([1077](#))

30.12.8 TMediatorDef.PropertyTypes

Synopsis: Set of property types this mediator can handle

Declaration: `Property PropertyTypes : TTypeKinds`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `PropertyTypes` property defines the set of property types that this mediator can handle. This is used when the mediator should work with properties of specific types rather than specific property names.

30.12.9 TMediatorDef.PropertyName

Synopsis: Specific property name this mediator handles

Declaration: `Property PropertyName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `PropertyName` property specifies a specific property name that this mediator is designed to handle. When set, the mediator will only be selected for properties with this exact name.

30.13 TMediatorDefs

30.13.1 Description

The `TMediatorDefs` class is a collection that holds mediator definitions for the mediator manager. It provides methods for adding new definitions and accessing existing ones by index.

The collection is used internally by the mediator manager to store and organize all registered mediator definitions, so normally you should not use this class directly.

See also: `TMediatorManager` ([1090](#))

30.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1086	<code>AddDef</code>	Adds a new mediator definition to the collection

30.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1086	<code>Defs</code>	rw	Indexed access to individual mediator definitions

30.13.4 TMediatorDefs.AddDef

Synopsis: Adds a new mediator definition to the collection

Declaration: `function AddDef : TMediatorDef`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddDef` method creates a new mediator definition and adds it to the collection. The returned definition can then be configured with the appropriate mediator class, subject class, and property requirements.

See also: `TMediatorManager.RegisterMediator` ([1092](#))

30.13.5 TMediatorDefs.Defs

Synopsis: Indexed access to individual mediator definitions

Declaration: `Property Defs[Index: Integer]: TMediatorDef; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Defs` property provides indexed access to mediator definitions in the collection. This is the default property, allowing array-style access syntax.

See also: `FindDefFor` ([1091](#))

30.14 TMediatorFieldInfo

30.14.1 Description

The `TMediatorFieldInfo` class defines the properties of a column in list mediators that support multiple columns. It specifies the property name, display caption, width, and alignment for each column.

Field info objects are typically managed within a `TMediatorFieldInfoList` ([1089](#)) collection and can be configured through string parsing or individual property settings.

See also: `TMediatorFieldInfoList` ([1089](#))

30.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1087	<code>Assign</code>	Copies properties from another field info object

30.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1089	<code>Alignment</code>	rw	Text alignment for the column content
1087	<code>AsString</code>	rw	String representation of field info configuration
1088	<code>Caption</code>	rw	Display caption for the column header
1088	<code>PropertyName</code>	rw	Name of property to display in this column
1088	<code>Width</code>	rw	Width of the column in display units

30.14.4 TMediatorFieldInfo.Assign

Synopsis: Copies properties from another field info object

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Assign` method copies all properties from another `TMediatorFieldInfo` object, including property name, caption, width, and alignment settings.

30.14.5 TMediatorFieldInfo.AsString

Synopsis: String representation of field info configuration

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `AsString` property provides a convenient way to get or set all field properties using a single string. The string must be in the format `'PropertyName|Alignment|Width|Caption'`. This format is used for batch configuration and serialization.

Setting this property parses the string and updates all individual properties accordingly.

See also: [Caption \(1088\)](#), [PropertyName \(1088\)](#), [Width \(1088\)](#), [Alignment \(1089\)](#)

30.14.6 TMediatorFieldInfo.Caption

Synopsis: Display caption for the column header

Declaration: `Property Caption : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Caption` property specifies the text displayed in the column header. If not explicitly set, it defaults to the property name, providing a reasonable fallback for display purposes.

See also: [PropertyName \(1088\)](#), [Width \(1088\)](#), [Alignment \(1089\)](#)

30.14.7 TMediatorFieldInfo.PropertyName

Synopsis: Name of property to display in this column

Declaration: `Property PropertyName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `PropertyName` property specifies which property of the list items will be displayed in this column. The property must be published and accessible for the column to display data correctly.

See also: [Caption \(1088\)](#), [Width \(1088\)](#), [Alignment \(1089\)](#)

30.14.8 TMediatorFieldInfo.Width

Synopsis: Width of the column in display units

Declaration: `Property Width : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Width` property specifies the column width in pixels or other display units, depending on the specific GUI implementation. The default width is 50 units.

See also: [Caption \(1088\)](#), [PropertyName \(1088\)](#), [Alignment \(1089\)](#)

30.14.9 TMediatorFieldInfo.Alignment

Synopsis: Text alignment for the column content

Declaration: `Property Alignment : TAlignment`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `Alignment` property specifies how text should be aligned within the column. It uses the standard `TAlignment` type supporting left, right, and center alignment.

See also: [Caption \(1088\)](#), [PropertyName \(1088\)](#), [Width \(1088\)](#)

30.15 TMediatorFieldInfoList

30.15.1 Description

The `TMediatorFieldInfoList` class manages a collection of `TMediatorFieldInfo` ([1087](#)) objects, providing methods for adding field configurations and accessing them by index.

The collection supports string-based batch configuration and provides notification to parent mediators when field configurations change.

See also: `TMediatorFieldInfo` ([1087](#))

30.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1089	<code>AddFieldInfo</code>	Adds a new field information item to the collection

30.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1090	<code>AsString</code>	r	String representation of all field configurations
1090	<code>FieldInfo</code>	rw	Indexed access to field information items

30.15.4 TMediatorFieldInfoList.AddFieldInfo

Synopsis: Adds a new field information item to the collection

Declaration:

```
function AddFieldInfo : TMediatorFieldInfo; overload
function AddFieldInfo(const APropName: string; AFieldWidth: Integer)
                        : TMediatorFieldInfo; overload
function AddFieldInfo(const APropName: string; const ACaption: string;
                        AFieldWidth: Integer) : TMediatorFieldInfo
                        ; overload
function AddFieldInfo(const APropName: string; const ACaption: string;
                        AFieldWidth: Integer; AAlignment: TAlignment)
                        : TMediatorFieldInfo; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddFieldInfo` method creates a new field information item and adds it to the collection. Multiple overloads are available to specify different combinations of property name, width, caption, and alignment.

The method returns the newly created field info object for further customization if needed.

30.15.5 TMediatorFieldInfoList.FieldInfo

Synopsis: Indexed access to field information items

Declaration: `Property FieldInfo[Index: Integer]: TMediatorFieldInfo; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: The `FieldInfo` property provides indexed access to individual field information objects in the collection. This is the default property, allowing array-style access syntax.

See also: [AsString \(1090\)](#)

30.15.6 TMediatorFieldInfoList.AsString

Synopsis: String representation of all field configurations

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `AsString` property provides a semicolon-separated string containing all field configurations in the collection. This format is convenient for serialization and bulk configuration.

Each field is represented in the format 'PropertyName|Alignment|Width|Caption', with fields separated by semicolons.

See also: [FieldInfo \(1090\)](#)

30.16 TMediatorManager

30.16.1 Description

The `TMediatorManager` class provides centralized registration and lookup of mediator definitions. It allows registration of mediator classes with specific requirements and automatically finds the best matching mediator for given subject/GUI combinations.

The manager uses a collection of mediator definitions to evaluate compatibility and select the most appropriate mediator based on class hierarchies, property types, and property names.

30.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1091	Create	Creates the mediator manager with empty definition collection
1091	Destroy	Destroys the manager and its definition collection
1091	FindDefFor	Finds the best mediator definition for given parameters
1092	RegisterMediator	Registers a new mediator class with the manager

30.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1092	Defs	r	Collection of registered mediator definitions

30.16.4 TMediatorManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates the mediator manager with empty definition collection

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Create` constructor initializes the mediator manager with an empty collection of mediator definitions. Mediator classes must be registered before the manager can provide automatic mediator selection.

See also: `RegisterMediator` ([1092](#))

30.16.5 TMediatorManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the manager and its definition collection

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor cleans up the mediator definition collection, freeing all registered mediator definitions.

30.16.6 TMediatorManager.FindDefFor

Synopsis: Finds the best mediator definition for given parameters

Declaration: `function FindDefFor(ASubject: TObject; AGui: TComponent) : TMediatorDef; overload`
`function FindDefFor(ASubject: TObject; AGui: TComponent; const APropName: string) : TMediatorDef; overload`
`function FindDefFor(ASubject: TObject; AGui: TComponent; APropInfo: PPropInfo) : TMediatorDef; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `FindDefFor` method searches through all registered mediator definitions to find the best match for the specified combination of subject object, GUI component, and optional property information.

The method evaluates each definition's compatibility and uses the `BetterMatch` comparison to select the most appropriate mediator. Multiple overloads support different search criteria including property names and property information.

See also: `RegisterMediator` ([1092](#))

30.16.7 TMediatorManager.RegisterMediator

Synopsis: Registers a new mediator class with the manager

Declaration:

```
function RegisterMediator(MediatorClass: TMediatorClass;
                          MinSubjectClass: TClass) : TMediatorDef
; overload
function RegisterMediator(MediatorClass: TMediatorClass;
                          MinSubjectClass: TClass;
                          const PropertyName: string) : TMediatorDef
; overload
function RegisterMediator(MediatorClass: TMediatorClass;
                          MinSubjectClass: TClass;
                          PropertyTypes: TTypeKinds) : TMediatorDef
; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: The `RegisterMediator` method creates a new mediator definition and adds it to the manager's collection. Multiple overloads allow registration with different criteria including minimum subject class, property names, and property types.

The method returns the created definition, which can be further customized if needed.

30.16.8 TMediatorManager.Defs

Synopsis: Collection of registered mediator definitions

Declaration: `Property Defs : TMediatorDefs`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Defs` property provides access to the collection of all registered mediator definitions. This can be used for advanced scenarios that require direct access to the definition collection.

30.17 TObservedHook

30.17.1 Description

The `TObservedHook` class provides a simple way to add observer pattern support to any object. It implements the `IFPObserved` interface and manages a list of observers that implement the `IFPObserver` interface.

Objects can use this class as a helper to notify observers about changes, item additions, deletions, or custom events. The class handles attaching and detaching observers automatically and provides methods for different types of notifications.

This class is intended to be used as a component within other classes that need to support observation, rather than being used directly as a standalone object.

See also: `IFPObserver` ([1071](#))

30.17.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
??	IFPObserved	

30.17.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1094	AddItem	Notifies observers that an item was added
1094	Changed	Notifies all observers that the object has changed
1093	CreateSender	Creates an observer hook with a specified sender object
1095	CustomNotify	Sends custom notification to all observers
1094	DeleteItem	Notifies observers that an item was deleted
1093	Destroy	Destroys the observer hook and notifies all observers
1093	FPOAttachObserver	Attaches an observer implementing IFPObserver interface
1094	FPODetachObserver	Detaches an observer from the notification list
1095	FPONotifyObservers	Core method to notify all observers about operations

30.17.4 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1095	Sender	r	Default sender object for notifications

30.17.5 TObservedHook.CreateSender

Synopsis: Creates an observer hook with a specified sender object

Declaration: `constructor CreateSender (ASender: TObject)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `CreateSender` constructor initializes the observer hook with a specific sender object that will be used in all notifications. If `ASender` is `nil`, the hook itself becomes the default sender.

The sender object is important because observers receive it as a parameter in their notification callbacks, allowing them to identify the source of the notification.

30.17.6 TObservedHook.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the observer hook and notifies all observers

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `Destroy` destructor ensures proper cleanup by notifying all attached observers that the observed object is being destroyed.

This prevents observers from trying to access a destroyed object and gives them a chance to perform their own cleanup operations if needed.

30.17.7 TObservedHook.FPOAttachObserver

Synopsis: Attaches an observer implementing IFPObserver interface

Declaration: `procedure FPOAttachObserver (AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: The `FPOAttachObserver` method adds an observer to the notification list. The observer object must implement the `IFPObserver` interface or an exception will be raised.

Once attached, the observer will receive notifications about all operations performed on the observed object, including changes, item additions, deletions, and custom notifications.

Errors: The same observer can only be attached once; attempting to attach it multiple times will result in an `EObserver` (1071) Exception.

See also: `EObserver` (1071), `TObservedHook.FPODetachObserver` (1094)

30.17.8 `TObservedHook.FPODetachObserver`

Synopsis: Detaches an observer from the notification list

Declaration: `procedure FPODetachObserver(AObserver: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `FPODetachObserver` method removes an observer from the notification list. The observer will no longer receive notifications about operations on the observed object.

If the observer is not currently attached, the method does nothing

See also: `TObservedHook.FPOAttachObserver` (1093)

30.17.9 `TObservedHook.Changed`

Synopsis: Notifies all observers that the object has changed

Declaration: `procedure Changed`

Visibility: public

Description: The `Changed` method sends a change notification to all attached observers using the `ooChange` operation.

Observers receive this notification through their `FPOObservedChanged` method and can respond by updating their display or performing other change-related operations.

30.17.10 `TObservedHook.AddItem`

Synopsis: Notifies observers that an item was added

Declaration: `procedure AddItem(AItem: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `AddItem` method sends an item addition notification to all observers using the `ooAddItem` operation. The added item is passed as the data parameter.

This notification is typically used by collection-like objects to inform observers when new items are added to the collection.

See also: `DeleteItem` (1094), `Changed` (1094), `CustomNotify` (1095), `FPONotifyObservers` (1095)

30.17.11 `TObservedHook.DeleteItem`

Synopsis: Notifies observers that an item was deleted

Declaration: `procedure DeleteItem(AItem: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `DeleteItem` method sends an item deletion notification to all observers using the `ooDeleteItem` operation. The deleted item is passed as the data parameter.

This notification is typically used by collection-like objects to inform observers when items are removed from the collection.

See also: [AddItem \(1094\)](#), [Changed \(1094\)](#), [CustomNotify \(1095\)](#), [FPONotifyObservers \(1095\)](#)

30.17.12 TObservedHook.CustomNotify

Synopsis: Sends custom notification to all observers

Declaration: `procedure CustomNotify(Data: Pointer=Nil)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `CustomNotify` method sends a custom notification to all observers using the `ooCustom` operation. Optional data can be passed to provide context for the custom notification.

This method is useful for application-specific notifications that don't fit into the standard change, add item, or delete item categories.

See also: [AddItem \(1094\)](#), [DeleteItem \(1094\)](#), [Changed \(1094\)](#), [FPONotifyObservers \(1095\)](#)

30.17.13 TObservedHook.FPONotifyObservers

Synopsis: Core method to notify all observers about operations

Declaration: `procedure FPONotifyObservers(ASender: TObject;
AOperation: TFPObservedOperation;
Data: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: The `FPONotifyObservers` method is the central notification mechanism that calls the `FPObservedChanged` method on all attached observers.

This method is used internally by all other notification methods and can be called directly for custom notification scenarios. The operation parameter specifies the type of change that occurred.

The method iterates through the observer list in reverse order to handle observers that might detach themselves during notification.

See also: [AddItem \(1094\)](#), [DeleteItem \(1094\)](#), [Changed \(1094\)](#), [CustomNotify \(1095\)](#)

30.17.14 TObservedHook.Sender

Synopsis: Default sender object for notifications

Declaration: `Property Sender : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: The `Sender` property contains the object that will be passed as the sender parameter to all observer notifications. This is typically the object that contains or uses the observer hook.

See also: [AddItem \(1094\)](#), [DeleteItem \(1094\)](#), [Changed \(1094\)](#), [CustomNotify \(1095\)](#), [FPONotifyObservers \(1095\)](#)

Chapter 31

Reference for unit 'fpTemplate'

31.1 Used units

Table 31.1: Used units by unit 'fpTemplate'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

31.2 Overview

`fpTemplate` implements a class `TTemplateParser` ([1111](#)) which can replace variables in a template text. The template variables are enclosed in delimiters. When a variable is encountered, it can be replaced by a string value. An event is called to get the value for a template variable. It does not contain loops or conditionals, but parametrized templates are possible.

The unit also contains `TFPCustomTemplate` ([1104](#)) and its descendant `TFPTemplate` ([1108](#)). Which is a basic implementation that uses the template parser to substitute variables in a text.

31.3 Using templates with parameters

`TTemplateParser` supports parametrized templates where tags can have parameters. To use parametrized templates, set `AllowTagParams` to `True` and use the `OnReplaceTag` event instead of `OnGetParam`. Parameters are enclosed in square brackets with the format `{TagName[-param1=value1-][-pa`

The following example demonstrates parametrized template usage:

```
program ParametrizedTemplateExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
  fpTemplate, SysUtils, Classes;
```

```

type
  TEventHandler = class
    procedure ReplaceTagHandler(Sender: TObject; const TagString: string;
      TagParams: TStringList; out ReplaceText: string);
  end;

procedure TEventHandler.ReplaceTagHandler(Sender: TObject; const TagString: string;
  TagParams: TStringList; out ReplaceText: string);
var
  i: Integer;
  ParamName, ParamValue: string;
begin
  if TagString = 'FORMAT' then
  begin
    // Handle FORMAT tag with parameters
    ReplaceText := 'Formatted text';
    for i := 0 to TagParams.Count - 1 do
    begin
      ParamName := TagParams.Names[i];
      ParamValue := TagParams.ValueFromIndex[i];
      if ParamName = 'style' then
      begin
        if ParamValue = 'bold' then
          ReplaceText := '**' + ReplaceText + '**'
        else if ParamValue = 'italic' then
          ReplaceText := '*' + ReplaceText + '*';
        end
      else if ParamName = 'color' then
        ReplaceText := '[' + ParamValue + ']' + ReplaceText + '[' + ParamValue + ']'
      end;
    end
  else if TagString = 'REPEAT' then
  begin
    // Handle REPEAT tag with count parameter
    ReplaceText := '';
    for i := 0 to TagParams.Count - 1 do
    begin
      ParamName := TagParams.Names[i];
      ParamValue := TagParams.ValueFromIndex[i];
      if ParamName = 'count' then
      begin
        ReplaceText := StringOfChar('*', StrToIntDef(ParamValue, 1));
        Break;
      end;
    end;
  end
  else if TagString = 'TABLE' then
  begin
    // Handle TABLE tag with rows and cols parameters
    ReplaceText := 'Table';
    for i := 0 to TagParams.Count - 1 do
    begin
      ParamName := TagParams.Names[i];
      ParamValue := TagParams.ValueFromIndex[i];

```

```

        if ParamName = 'rows' then
            ReplaceText := ReplaceText + '(' + ParamValue + ' rows'
        else if ParamName = 'cols' then
            ReplaceText := ReplaceText + ', ' + ParamValue + ' cols)';
        end;
    end
else
    ReplaceText := 'Unknown tag: ' + TagString;
end;

var
    Parser: TTemplateParser;
    Handler: TEventHandler;
    Template, Result: string;
begin
    Parser := TTemplateParser.Create;
    Handler := TEventHandler.Create;
    try
        // Enable parametrized templates
        Parser.AllowTagParams := True;

        // Assign tag replacement handler
        Parser.OnReplaceTag := @Handler.ReplaceTagHandler;

        // Define template text with parametrized tags
        Template := 'This is {FORMAT[-style=bold-]} text with {FORMAT[-style=italic-]}[-c
                    'Here are some {REPEAT[-count=5-]} stars.' + LineEnding +
                    'And here is a {TABLE[-rows=3-]}[-cols=4-]} definition.';

        // Parse the template
        Result := Parser.ParseString(Template);

        WriteLn(Result);
    finally
        Handler.Free;
        Parser.Free;
    end;
end.

```

This will output:

```

This is Formatted text text with [red]*Formatted text*[/red] formatting.
Here are some ***** stars.
And here is a Table(3 rows, 4 cols) definition.

```

You can also use parametrized templates with TFPTemplate:

```

program ParametrizedTFPTemplateExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    fpTemplate, SysUtils, Classes;

```

```

type
  TEventHandler = class
    procedure ReplaceTagHandler(Sender: TObject; const TagString: string;
      TagParams: TStringList; out ReplaceText: string);
  end;

procedure TEventHandler.ReplaceTagHandler(Sender: TObject; const TagString: string;
  TagParams: TStringList; out ReplaceText: string);
var
  i: Integer;
  ParamName, ParamValue: string;
begin
  if TagString = 'LINK' then
  begin
    // Handle LINK tag with url and text parameters
    ReplaceText := '#';
    for i := 0 to TagParams.Count - 1 do
    begin
      ParamName := TagParams.Names[i];
      ParamValue := TagParams.ValueFromIndex[i];
      if ParamName = 'url' then
        ReplaceText := '<a href="' + ParamValue + '"|>'
      else if ParamName = 'text' then
        ReplaceText := ReplaceText + ParamValue + '</a>';
      end;
    end;
  end
  else if TagString = 'IMG' then
  begin
    // Handle IMG tag with src and alt parameters
    ReplaceText := '<img';
    for i := 0 to TagParams.Count - 1 do
    begin
      ParamName := TagParams.Names[i];
      ParamValue := TagParams.ValueFromIndex[i];
      ReplaceText := ReplaceText + ' ' + ParamName + '=' + ParamValue + '"';
    end;
    ReplaceText := ReplaceText + ' />';
  end
  else
    ReplaceText := '';
  end;
end;

var
  Template: TFPTemplate;
  Handler: TEventHandler;
  Result: string;
begin
  Template := TFPTemplate.Create;
  Handler := TEventHandler.Create;
  try
    // Enable parametrized templates
    Template.AllowTagParams := True;
  end;
end;

```

```

// Set template content
Template.Template := '' + LineEnding +
    '';

// Assign tag replacement handler
Template.OnReplaceTag := @Handler.ReplaceTagHandler;

// Get parsed content
Result := Template.GetContent;

WriteLn(Result);
finally
    Handler.Free;
    Template.Free;
end;
end.

```

This will output:

```

<p>Visit our <a href="http://www.freepascal.org">website</a> for more information.</p>
<p>Logo: </p>

```

Note that when using parametrized templates:

- Set `AllowTagParams` to `True`
- Use `OnReplaceTag` event instead of `OnGetParam`
- Parameters use the format `[-paramname=value-]`
- The `Values` property is not used in parametrized mode

See also: `TTemplateParser.AllowTagParams` ([1117](#)), `TTemplateParser.OnReplaceTag` ([1115](#)), `TReplaceTagEvent` ([1103](#))

31.4 Basic usage of the template parser

`TTemplateParser` allows you to replace variables in template text with actual values. Variables are enclosed in delimiters (by default `{` and `}`).

The following example demonstrates basic template parsing with simple variables:

```

program BasicTemplateExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    fpTemplate, SysUtils;

var
    Parser: TTemplateParser;
    Template, Result: string;
begin

```

```

Parser := TTemplateParser.Create;
try
  // Set up template values
  Parser.Values['Name'] := 'John Doe';
  Parser.Values['Age'] := '30';
  Parser.Values['City'] := 'Amsterdam';

  // Define template text
  Template := 'Hello {Name}! You are {Age} years old and live in {City}.';

  // Parse the template
  Result := Parser.ParseString(Template);

  WriteLn(Result);
finally
  Parser.Free;
end;
end.

```

This will output:

```
Hello John Doe! You are 30 years old and live in Amsterdam.
```

You can also use an event handler to provide values dynamically:

```

program EventTemplateExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
  fpTemplate, SysUtils;

type
  TEventHandler = class
    procedure GetParamValue(Sender: TObject; const ParamName: string; out AValue: string);
  end;

procedure TEventHandler.GetParamValue(Sender: TObject; const ParamName: string; out AValue: string);
begin
  case ParamName of
    'CurrentDate': AValue := DateToStr(Now);
    'CurrentTime': AValue := TimeToStr(Now);
    'UserName': AValue := GetEnvironmentVariable('USER');
  else
    AValue := 'Unknown';
  end;
end;

var
  Parser: TTemplateParser;
  Handler: TEventHandler;
  Template, Result: string;
begin

```

```

Parser := TTemplateParser.Create;
Handler := TEventHandler.Create;
try
    // Assign event handler
    Parser.OnGetParam := @Handler.GetParamValue;

    // Define template text
    Template := 'Date: {CurrentDate}, Time: {CurrentTime}, User: {UserName}';

    // Parse the template
    Result := Parser.ParseString(Template);

    WriteLn(Result);
finally
    Handler.Free;
    Parser.Free;
end;
end.

```

The TFPTemplate class provides a higher-level interface that can load templates from files:

```

program FileTemplateExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    fpTemplate, SysUtils;

type
    TEventHandler = class
        procedure GetParamValue(Sender: TObject; const ParamName: string; out AValue: string);
    end;

procedure TEventHandler.GetParamValue(Sender: TObject; const ParamName: string; out AValue: string)
begin
    case ParamName of
        'Title': AValue := 'Welcome Page';
        'Content': AValue := 'This is the main content of the page.';
        'Footer': AValue := 'Copyright 2024 Example Company';
    else
        AValue := '';
    end;
end;

var
    Template: TFPTemplate;
    Handler: TEventHandler;
    Result: string;
begin
    Template := TFPTemplate.Create;
    Handler := TEventHandler.Create;
    try
        // Set template content directly
        Template.Template := '';
    
```

```

// Assign event handler
Template.OnGetParam := @Handler.GetParamValue;

// Get parsed content
Result := Template.GetContent;

WriteLn(Result);
finally
  Handler.Free;
  Template.Free;
end;
end.

```

See also: TTemplateParser ([1111](#)), TFPTemplate ([1108](#)), TFPCustomTemplate ([1104](#))

31.5 Constants, types and variables

31.5.1 Constants

```
DefaultParseDepth = 100
```

DefaultParseDepth is the default value for the maximum recursion depth when parsing templates.

```
MaxDelimLength = 5
```

MaxDelimLength is the maximum length (in characters) for a delimiter string.

31.5.2 Types

```

TGetParamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const ParamName: string
;
                                out AValue: string) of object

```

TGetParamEvent is the type of the event that is called when the template parser needs the value for a certain template variable.

```
TParseDelimiter = string[MaxDelimLength]
```

TParseDelimiter is the type used for the delimiter strings. Its maximum length is MaxDelimLength ([1103](#)).

```

TReplaceTagEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const TagString: string
;
                                TagParams: TStringList;
                                out ReplaceText: string) of object

```

TReplaceTagEvent is the type of the event that is called when the template parser needs to replace a tag.

31.5.3 Variables

`DefaultEndDelimiter` : `string[MaxDelimLength] = '}'`

`DefaultEndDelimiter` is the default character which indicates the end of a template variable. By default this is the `}` character.

`DefaultParamEndDelimiter` : `string[MaxDelimLength] = '-]'`

`DefaultParamEndDelimiter` is the default string which indicates the end of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `-]` string.

`DefaultParamStartDelimiter` : `string[MaxDelimLength] = '['`

`DefaultParamStartDelimiter` is the default string which indicates the start of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `[` string.

`DefaultParamValueSeparator` : `string[MaxDelimLength] = '='`

`DefaultParamValueSeparator` is the default character which separates a template variable's parameter and its value. By default this is the `=` character.

`DefaultStartDelimiter` : `string[MaxDelimLength] = '{'`

`DefaultStartDelimiter` is the default character which indicates the start of a template variable. By default this is the `{` character.

`MaxParseDepth` : `Integer = DefaultParseDepth`

`MaxParseDepth` is the maximum recursion depth when parsing templates. If this depth is exceeded, an `ETemplateParser` (1104) exception is raised.

31.6 ETemplateParser

31.6.1 Description

`ETemplateParser` is the exception class for errors that occur during template parsing.

31.7 TFPCustomTemplate

31.7.1 Description

`TFPCustomTemplate` is a base class for template processing. It can load a template from a file or from a string and then uses a `TTemplateParser` (1111) instance to parse the template.

Do not use this class directly, use `TFPTemplate` (1108) instead.

See also: `TFPTemplate` (1108)

31.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1105	Assign	Assign one template to another.
1105	GetContent	Get the parsed template content.
1105	HasContent	Check if the template has content.

31.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1108	AllowTagParams	rw	Allow tags with parameters.
1106	EndDelimiter	rw	End delimiter for a template variable.
1107	FileName	rw	Name of the file with the template.
1107	OnGetParam	rw	Event to get a value for a template variable.
1108	OnReplaceTag	rw	Event to replace a tag.
1106	ParamEndDelimiter	rw	End delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1106	ParamStartDelimiter	rw	Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1107	ParamValueSeparator	rw	Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.
1106	StartDelimiter	rw	Start delimiter for a template variable.
1107	Template	rw	The template text.

31.7.4 TFPCustomTemplate.HasContent

Synopsis: Check if the template has content.

Declaration: `function HasContent : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasContent` returns `True` if the template has content, i.e. either the `FileName` ([1096](#)) or the `Template` ([1096](#)) property is set.

See also: `FileName` ([1096](#)), `Template` ([1096](#))

31.7.5 TFPCustomTemplate.GetContent

Synopsis: Get the parsed template content.

Declaration: `function GetContent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetContent` will parse the template and return the result. If the `FileName` ([1096](#)) property is set, the content of the file is parsed. Otherwise the `Template` ([1096](#)) property is parsed.

See also: `FileName` ([1096](#)), `Template` ([1096](#))

31.7.6 TFPCustomTemplate.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one template to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` will copy the properties of the `Source` template to the current one.

31.7.7 TFPCustomTemplate.StartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property StartDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `StartDelimiter` is the character which indicates the start of a template variable. By default this is the `{` character.

See also: `DefaultStartDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `EndDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.7.8 TFPCustomTemplate.EndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property EndDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EndDelimiter` is the character which indicates the end of a template variable. By default this is the `}` character.

See also: `DefaultEndDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `StartDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.7.9 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamStartDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ParamStartDelimiter` is the string which indicates the start of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `[` string.

See also: `DefaultParamStartDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `ParamEndDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.7.10 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamEndDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ParamEndDelimiter` is the string which indicates the end of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `]` string.

See also: `DefaultParamEndDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `ParamStartDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.7.11 TFPCustomTemplate.ParamValueSeparator

Synopsis: Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.

Declaration: `Property ParamValueSeparator : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ParamValueSeparator` is the character which separates a template variable's parameter and its value. By default this is the `=` character.

See also: `DefaultParamValueSeparator` ([1104](#))

31.7.12 TFPCustomTemplate.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the file with the template.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FileName` is the name of the file that contains the template text.

See also: `Template` ([1096](#))

31.7.13 TFPCustomTemplate.Template

Synopsis: The template text.

Declaration: `Property Template : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Template` contains the template text.

See also: `FileName` ([1096](#))

31.7.14 TFPCustomTemplate.OnGetParam

Synopsis: Event to get a value for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property OnGetParam : TGetParamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnGetParam` is the event that is called when the template parser needs the value for a certain template variable. This event is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: `TGetParamEvent` ([1103](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.7.15 TFPCustomTemplate.OnReplaceTag

Synopsis: Event to replace a tag.

Declaration: `Property OnReplaceTag : TReplaceTagEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnReplaceTag` is the event that is called when the template parser needs to replace a tag. This event is used when template tags with parameters are allowed.

See also: `TReplaceTagEvent` ([1103](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.7.16 TFPCustomTemplate.AllowTagParams

Synopsis: Allow tags with parameters.

Declaration: `Property AllowTagParams : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: If `AllowTagParams` is set to `True`, then tags with parameters are allowed. If `False`, then only simple tags are allowed.

31.8 TFPTemplate

31.8.1 Description

`TFPTemplate` is a component that can be used to parse templates. It is a descendant of `TFPCustomTemplate` ([1104](#)) and publishes the properties of its ancestor.

It can be dropped on a form and its properties can be set in the object inspector.

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate` ([1104](#))

31.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1109	<code>AllowTagParams</code>		Allow tags with parameters.
1110	<code>EndDelimiter</code>		End delimiter for a template variable.
1109	<code>FileName</code>		Name of the file with the template.
1111	<code>OnGetParam</code>		Event to get a value for a template variable.
1109	<code>OnReplaceTag</code>		Event to replace a tag.
1110	<code>ParamEndDelimiter</code>		End delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1110	<code>ParamStartDelimiter</code>		Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1111	<code>ParamValueSeparator</code>		Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.
1110	<code>StartDelimiter</code>		Start delimiter for a template variable.
1109	<code>Template</code>		The template text.

31.8.3 TFPTemplate.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the file with the template.

Declaration: `Property FileName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.FileName` ([1107](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.FileName` ([1107](#))

31.8.4 TFPTemplate.Template

Synopsis: The template text.

Declaration: `Property Template :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.Template` ([1107](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.Template` ([1107](#))

31.8.5 TFPTemplate.AllowTagParams

Synopsis: Allow tags with parameters.

Declaration: `Property AllowTagParams :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.AllowTagParams` ([1108](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.AllowTagParams` ([1108](#))

31.8.6 TFPTemplate.OnReplaceTag

Synopsis: Event to replace a tag.

Declaration: `Property OnReplaceTag :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.OnReplaceTag` ([1108](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.OnReplaceTag` ([1108](#))

31.8.7 TFPTemplate.StartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property StartDelimiter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.StartDelimiter` ([1106](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.StartDelimiter` ([1106](#))

31.8.8 TFPTemplate.EndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property EndDelimiter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.EndDelimiter` ([1106](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.EndDelimiter` ([1106](#))

31.8.9 TFPTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamStartDelimiter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter` ([1106](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamStartDelimiter` ([1106](#))

31.8.10 TFPTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamEndDelimiter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter` ([1106](#)).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamEndDelimiter` ([1106](#))

31.8.11 TFPTemplate.ParamValueSeparator

Synopsis: Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.

Declaration: `Property ParamValueSeparator :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamValueSeparator` (1107).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.ParamValueSeparator` (1107)

31.8.12 TFPTemplate.OnGetParam

Synopsis: Event to get a value for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property OnGetParam :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: See `TFPCustomTemplate.OnGetParam` (1107).

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate.OnGetParam` (1107)

31.9 TTemplateParser

31.9.1 Description

`TTemplateParser` is a class that can parse a text and substitute template variables with their values.

The template variables are enclosed in delimiters, by default { and }. Whenever a variable is found, its value is looked up in the `Values` (1096) property. If it is not found there, the `OnGetParam` (1096) event is called to obtain a value for the variable.

The delimiters can be set using the various delimiter properties.

See also: `TFPCustomTemplate` (1104)

31.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1112	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list of values.
1112	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the template parser.
1112	<code>Destroy</code>	Frees the template parser instance.
1113	<code>GetParam</code>	Get a value for a parameter.
1113	<code>GetTagParams</code>	Extract tag parameters from a tag name.
1114	<code>ParseFiles</code>	Parse a file and substitute variables.
1114	<code>ParseStream</code>	Parse a stream and substitute variables.
1113	<code>ParseString</code>	Parse a string and substitute variables.
1114	<code>ParseStrings</code>	Parse a stringlist and substitute variables.
1113	<code>ReplaceTag</code>	Replace a tag with a value.

31.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1117	AllowTagParams	rw	Allow tags with parameters.
1115	EndDelimiter	rw	End delimiter for a template variable.
1117	NamesByIndex	r	Access to variable names by index.
1114	OnGetParam	rw	Event to get a value for a template variable.
1115	OnReplaceTag	rw	Event to replace a tag.
1116	ParamEndDelimiter	rw	End delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1115	ParamStartDelimiter	rw	Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.
1116	ParamValueSeparator	rw	Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.
1117	Recursive	rw	Enable recursive parsing.
1115	StartDelimiter	rw	Start delimiter for a template variable.
1117	ValueCount	r	Number of values in the list.
1116	Values	rw	List of values for template variables.
1116	ValuesByIndex	r	Access to values by index.

31.9.4 TTemplateParser.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the template parser.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TTemplateParser` object. It initializes the delimiters to their default values and sets the maximum parse depth.

See also: `Destroy` ([1096](#))

31.9.5 TTemplateParser.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees the template parser instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the `TTemplateParser` instance and frees any memory allocated by it. In particular, it will free the list of values.

See also: `Create` ([1096](#))

31.9.6 TTemplateParser.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list of values.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all values from the list of values.

See also: `Values` ([1096](#))

31.9.7 TTemplateParser.ReplaceTag

Synopsis: Replace a tag with a value.

Declaration: `function ReplaceTag(const Key: string; TagParams: TStringList;
out ReplaceWith: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReplaceTag` will replace the tag with name `Key` and parameters `TagParams` with the value in `ReplaceWith`.

The function returns `True` if the tag was replaced, `False` otherwise. A replacement will happen if the `OnReplaceTag` (1096) event is assigned.

See also: `OnReplaceTag` (1096)

31.9.8 TTemplateParser.GetParam

Synopsis: Get a value for a parameter.

Declaration: `function GetParam(const Key: string; out AValue: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetParam` will get the value for the parameter with name `Key` and return it in `AValue`.

First, the `Values` (1096) list is consulted. If the parameter is not found there, the `OnGetParam` (1096) event is called. If the parameter is found, the function returns `True`, otherwise it returns `False`.

See also: `Values` (1096), `OnGetParam` (1096)

31.9.9 TTemplateParser.GetTagParams

Synopsis: Extract tag parameters from a tag name.

Declaration: `procedure GetTagParams(var TagName: string; var TagParams: TStringList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetTagParams` will extract any tag parameters from the tag name `TagName` and return them in the `TagParams` stringlist. The tag name itself is also adapted.

31.9.10 TTemplateParser.ParseString

Synopsis: Parse a string and substitute variables.

Declaration: `function ParseString(const Src: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseString` will parse the string `Src` and substitute all template variables with their values. The resulting string is returned.

See also: `ParseStream` (1096), `ParseStrings` (1096), `ParseFiles` (1096)

31.9.11 TTemplateParser.ParseStream

Synopsis: Parse a stream and substitute variables.

Declaration: `function ParseStream(Src: TStream; Dest: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseStream` will read the content of stream `Src`, substitute all template variables with their values and write the result to stream `Dest`. The function returns the number of bytes written to the destination stream.

See also: `ParseString` ([1096](#)), `ParseStrings` ([1096](#)), `ParseFiles` ([1096](#))

31.9.12 TTemplateParser.ParseStrings

Synopsis: Parse a stringlist and substitute variables.

Declaration: `procedure ParseStrings(Src: TStrings; Dest: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseStrings` will read the strings from the stringlist `Src`, substitute all template variables with their values and add the resulting strings to the stringlist `Dest`.

See also: `ParseString` ([1096](#)), `ParseStream` ([1096](#)), `ParseFiles` ([1096](#))

31.9.13 TTemplateParser.ParseFiles

Synopsis: Parse a file and substitute variables.

Declaration: `procedure ParseFiles(const Src: string; const Dest: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParseFiles` will read the content of file `Src`, substitute all template variables with their values and write the result to file `Dest`.

See also: `ParseString` ([1096](#)), `ParseStream` ([1096](#)), `ParseStrings` ([1096](#))

31.9.14 TTemplateParser.OnGetParam

Synopsis: Event to get a value for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property OnGetParam : TGetParamEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnGetParam` is the event that is called when the template parser needs the value for a certain template variable. This event is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: `TGetParamEvent` ([1103](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.9.15 TTemplateParser.OnReplaceTag

Synopsis: Event to replace a tag.

Declaration: `Property OnReplaceTag : TReplaceTagEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnReplaceTag` is the event that is called when the template parser needs to replace a tag. This event is used when template tags with parameters are allowed.

See also: `TReplaceTagEvent` ([1103](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.9.16 TTemplateParser.StartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property StartDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `StartDelimiter` is the character which indicates the start of a template variable. By default this is the `{` character.

See also: `DefaultStartDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `EndDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.9.17 TTemplateParser.EndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable.

Declaration: `Property EndDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `EndDelimiter` is the character which indicates the end of a template variable. By default this is the `}` character.

See also: `DefaultEndDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `StartDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.9.18 TTemplateParser.ParamStartDelimiter

Synopsis: Start delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamStartDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ParamStartDelimiter` is the string which indicates the start of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `[` string.

See also: `DefaultParamStartDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `ParamEndDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.9.19 TTemplateParser.ParamEndDelimiter

Synopsis: End delimiter for a template variable parameter.

Declaration: `Property ParamEndDelimiter : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamEndDelimiter` is the string which indicates the end of a template variable's parameter. By default this is the `-]` string.

See also: `DefaultParamEndDelimiter` ([1104](#)), `ParamStartDelimiter` ([1096](#))

31.9.20 TTemplateParser.ParamValueSeparator

Synopsis: Separator for a template variable parameter and its value.

Declaration: `Property ParamValueSeparator : TParseDelimiter`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ParamValueSeparator` is the character which separates a template variable's parameter and its value. By default this is the `=` character.

See also: `DefaultParamValueSeparator` ([1104](#))

31.9.21 TTemplateParser.Values

Synopsis: List of values for template variables.

Declaration: `Property Values[Key: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Values` is a stringlist that contains key-value pairs. The key is the name of the template variable, and the value is the string to replace the variable with. This property is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: `OnGetParam` ([1096](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.9.22 TTemplateParser.ValuesByIndex

Synopsis: Access to values by index.

Declaration: `Property ValuesByIndex[index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ValuesByIndex` provides access to the values in the `Values` ([1096](#)) list by index. This property is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: `Values` ([1096](#)), `AllowTagParams` ([1096](#))

31.9.23 TTemplateParser.NamesByIndex

Synopsis: Access to variable names by index.

Declaration: `Property NamesByIndex[index: Integer]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `NamesByIndex` provides access to the names of the variables in the Values (1096) list by index. This property is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: Values (1096), `AllowTagParams` (1096)

31.9.24 TTemplateParser.ValueCount

Synopsis: Number of values in the list.

Declaration: `Property ValueCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ValueCount` is the number of values in the Values (1096) list. This property is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: Values (1096), `AllowTagParams` (1096)

31.9.25 TTemplateParser.Recursive

Synopsis: Enable recursive parsing.

Declaration: `Property Recursive : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: If `Recursive` is set to `True`, then the substituted values are parsed again for template variables. This property is only used when simple template tags are allowed.

See also: `AllowTagParams` (1096)

31.9.26 TTemplateParser.AllowTagParams

Synopsis: Allow tags with parameters.

Declaration: `Property AllowTagParams : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: If `AllowTagParams` is set to `True`, then tags with parameters are allowed. If `False`, then only simple tags are allowed.

Chapter 32

Reference for unit 'fptimer'

32.1 Used units

Table 32.1: Used units by unit 'fptimer'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

32.2 Overview

The `fpTimer` unit implements a timer class `TFPTimer` (1120) which can be used on all supported platforms. The timer class uses a driver class `TFPTimerDriver` (1122) which does the actual work.

A default timer driver class is implemented on all platforms. It will work in GUI and non-gui applications, but only in the application's main thread.

An alternative driver class can be used by setting the `DefaultTimerDriverClass` (1118) variable to the class pointer of the driver class. The driver class should descend from `TFPTimerDriver` (1122).

32.3 Constants, types and variables

32.3.1 Types

```
TFPTimerDriverClass = class of TFPTimerDriver
```

`TFPTimerDriverClass` is the class pointer of `TFPTimerDriver` (1122) it exists mainly for the purpose of being able to set `DefaultTimerDriverClass` (1118), so a custom timer driver can be used for the timer instances.

32.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultTimerDriverClass : TFPTimerDriverClass = Nil
```

`DefaultTimerDriverClass` contains the `TFPTimerDriver` (1122) class pointer that should be used when a new instance of `TFPCustomTimer` (1119) is created. It is by default set to the system timer class.

Setting this class pointer to another descendent of `TFPTimerDriver` allows to customize the default timer implementation used in the entire application.

32.4 TFPCustomTimer

32.4.1 Description

`TFPCustomTimer` is the timer class containing the timer's implementation. It relies on an extra driver instance (of type `TFPTimerDriver` (1122)) to do the actual work.

`TFPCustomTimer` publishes no events or properties, so it is unsuitable for handling in an IDE. The `TFPTimer` (1120) descendent class publishes all needed events of `TFPCustomTimer`.

See also: `TFPTimerDriver` (1122), `TFPTimer` (1120)

32.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1119	<code>Create</code>	Create a new timer.
1119	<code>Destroy</code>	Release a timer instance from memory.
1120	<code>StartTimer</code>	Start the timer.
1120	<code>StopTimer</code>	Stop the timer.

32.4.3 TFPCustomTimer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new timer.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TFPCustomTimer` instance. It creates the timer driver instance from the `DefaultTimerDriverClass` class pointer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.Destroy` (1119)

32.4.4 TFPCustomTimer.Destroy

Synopsis: Release a timer instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the timer driver component from memory, and then calls `Inherited` to clean the `TFPCustomTimer` instance from memory.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.Create` (1119)

32.4.5 TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTimer` starts the timer. After a call to `StartTimer`, the timer will start producing timer ticks.

The timer stops producing ticks only when the `StopTimer` (1120) event is called.

See also: `StopTimer` (1120), `Enabled` (1120), `OnTimer` (1121)

32.4.6 TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopTimer` stops a started timer. After a call to `StopTimer`, the timer no longer produces timer ticks.

See also: `StartTimer` (1120), `Enabled` (1120), `OnTimer` (1121)

32.5 TFPTimer

32.5.1 Description

`TFPTimer` implements no new events or properties, but merely publishes events and properties already implemented in `TFPCustomTimer` (1119): `Enabled` (1120), `OnTimer` (1121) and `Interval` (1121).

The `TFPTimer` class is suitable for use in an IDE.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer` (1119), `Enabled` (1120), `OnTimer` (1121), `Interval` (1121)

32.5.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1120	<code>Enabled</code>		Start or stop the timer.
1121	<code>Interval</code>		Timer tick interval in milliseconds.
1121	<code>OnStartTimer</code>		
1122	<code>OnStopTimer</code>		
1121	<code>OnTimer</code>		Event called on each timer tick.
1121	<code>UseTimerThread</code>		

32.5.3 TFPTimer.Enabled

Synopsis: Start or stop the timer.

Declaration: `Property Enabled :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Enabled` controls whether the timer is active. Setting `Enabled` to `True` will start the timer (calling `StartTimer` (1120)), setting it to `False` will stop the timer (calling `StopTimer` (1120)).

See also: `StartTimer` (1120), `StopTimer` (1120), `OnTimer` (1121), `Interval` (1121)

32.5.4 TFPTimer.Interval

Synopsis: Timer tick interval in milliseconds.

Declaration: `Property Interval :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Interval` specifies the timer interval in milliseconds. Every `Interval` milliseconds, the `OnTimer` (1121) event handler will be called.

Note that the milliseconds interval is a minimum interval. Under high system load, the timer tick may arrive later.

See also: `OnTimer` (1121), `Enabled` (1120)

32.5.5 TFPTimer.UseTimerThread

Declaration: `Property UseTimerThread :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

32.5.6 TFPTimer.OnTimer

Synopsis: Event called on each timer tick.

Declaration: `Property OnTimer :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `OnTimer` is called on each timer tick. The event handler must be assigned to a method that will do the actual work that should occur when the timer fires.

See also: `Interval` (1121), `Enabled` (1120)

32.5.7 TFPTimer.OnStartTimer

Declaration: `Property OnStartTimer :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

32.5.8 TFPTimer.OnStopTimer

Declaration: `Property OnStopTimer :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

32.6 TFPTimerDriver

32.6.1 Description

`TFPTimerDriver` is the abstract timer driver class: it simply provides an interface for the `TFP-CustomTimer` ([1119](#)) class to use.

The `fpTimer` unit implements a descendent of this class which implements the default timer mechanism.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer` ([1119](#)), `DefaultTimerDriverClass` ([1118](#))

32.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1122	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new driver instance.
1122	<code>StartTimer</code>	Start the timer.
1123	<code>StopTimer</code>	Stop the timer.

32.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1123	<code>Timer</code>	<code>r</code>	Timer tick.
1123	<code>TimerStarted</code>	<code>r</code>	True when the timer driver has called its <code>StartTimer</code> method.

32.6.4 TFPTimerDriver.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new driver instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ATimer: TFPCustomTimer); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` should be overridden by descendents of `TFPTimerDriver` to do additional initialization of the timer driver. `Create` just stores (in `Timer` ([1123](#))) a reference to the `ATimer` instance which created the driver instance.

See also: `Timer` ([1123](#)), `TFPTimer` ([1120](#))

32.6.5 TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer

Synopsis: Start the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StartTimer; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (1120). It should be overridden by descendants of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually start the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StartTimer` (1120), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (1123)

32.6.6 TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer

Synopsis: Stop the timer.

Declaration: `procedure StopTimer; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopTimer` is called by `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (1120). It should be overridden by descendants of `TFPTimerDriver` to actually stop the timer.

See also: `TFPCustomTimer.StopTimer` (1120), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (1122)

32.6.7 TFPTimerDriver.Timer

Synopsis: Timer tick.

Declaration: `Property Timer : TFPCustomTimer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Timer` calls the `TFPCustomTimer` (1119) timer event. Descendants of `TFPTimerDriver` should call `Timer` whenever a timer tick occurs.

See also: `TFPTimer.OnTimer` (1121), `TFPTimerDriver.StartTimer` (1122), `TFPTimerDriver.StopTimer` (1123)

32.6.8 TFPTimerDriver.TimerStarted

Synopsis: True when the timer driver has called its `StartTimer` method.

Declaration: `Property TimerStarted : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: True when the timer driver has called its `StartTimer` method.

Chapter 33

Reference for unit 'fpWeb'

33.1 Used units

Table 33.1: Used units by unit 'fpWeb'

Name	Page
Classes	??
fphttp	781
fpTemplate	1096
HTTPDefs	1146
System	??
sysutils	??

33.2 Overview

The `fpWeb` unit provides HTML-oriented functionality for web application development. It extends the basic HTTP functionality with support for web actions, template processing, and structured web modules.

This unit introduces the concept of web actions which allow mapping of URL patterns to specific handlers. It also provides template support for dynamic content generation and a complete web module framework for building complex web applications.

33.3 Constants, types and variables

33.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrInvalidVar = 'Invalid template variable name : "%s"'
```

Resource string used when an invalid template variable name is encountered.

```
SErrInvalidWebAction = 'Invalid action for "%s".'
```

Resource string used when an invalid web action is encountered during request processing.

`SErrNoContentProduced = 'No template content was produced.'`

Resource string used when no content is produced during template or action processing.

33.3.2 Types

`TContentEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Content: TStream) of object`

Event type used for content generation callbacks. The event passes a content stream that can be written to.

33.4 EFPWebError

33.4.1 Description

`EFPWebError` is the exception class used throughout the `fpweb` unit for web-related errors. It extends `EHTTP` ([1124](#)) to provide specific error handling for web application functionality.

See also: `EHTTP` ([1124](#))

33.5 TCustomFPWebModule

33.5.1 Description

`TCustomFPWebModule` extends `TSessionHTTPModule` ([1124](#)) with support for web actions, template processing, and advanced request handling. This class provides the foundation for building complex web applications with structured request routing and dynamic content generation.

The module manages a collection of web actions, template variables, and provides hooks for request preprocessing and response postprocessing.

See also: `TFPWebModule` ([1134](#)), `TFPWebActions` ([1132](#)), `TSessionHTTPModule` ([1124](#))

33.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1126	<code>CreateNew</code>	Creates a new web module instance
1126	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the web module instance
1126	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Processes an incoming HTTP request

33.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1127	Actions	rw	Collection of web actions for this module
1127	ActionVar	rw	Name of the request parameter used to identify actions
1128	AfterResponse	rw	Event called after response processing
1127	BeforeRequest	rw	Event called before request processing
1128	DefActionWhenUnknown	rw	Whether to use the default action when no specific action is found
1129	ModuleTemplate	rw	Template used for content generation
1128	OnGetAction	rw	Event called to determine which action to execute
1129	OnGetParam	rw	Event called to resolve template parameters
1128	OnRequest	rw	Event called for request processing
1129	OnTemplateContent	rw	Event called for template content processing
1129	Request	r	The current HTTP request being processed
1130	Response	r	The current HTTP response being generated

33.5.4 TCustomFPWebModule.CreateNew

Synopsis: Creates a new web module instance

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; CreateMode: Integer)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new web module and initializes the actions collection, template, and template variables. This constructor is used instead of the standard Create constructor to support the component creation mode.

See also: Destroy ([1126](#))

33.5.5 TCustomFPWebModule.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the web module instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the web module and frees all associated resources including template variables, template, and actions collection.

See also: CreateNew ([1126](#))

33.5.6 TCustomFPWebModule.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Processes an incoming HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Main request handling method that processes incoming HTTP requests. This method coordinates session management, action execution, template processing, and response generation.

The method calls various hooks in sequence: `BeforeRequest`, `OnRequest`, action processing, template processing, and `AfterResponse`.

Errors: May raise `EFPWebError` ([1125](#)) if the request cannot be handled.

See also: `BeforeRequest` ([1127](#)), `OnRequest` ([1128](#)), `AfterResponse` ([1128](#))

33.5.7 TCustomFPWebModule.Actions

Synopsis: Collection of web actions for this module

Declaration: `Property Actions : TFPWebActions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Contains the collection of web actions that can be executed by this web module. Actions are selected based on request parameters and executed to handle specific requests.

See also: `TFPWebActions` ([1132](#)), `ActionVar` ([1127](#))

33.5.8 TCustomFPWebModule.ActionVar

Synopsis: Name of the request parameter used to identify actions

Declaration: `Property ActionVar : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Specifies the name of the request parameter that contains the action name to execute. This is typically a URL parameter like 'action' or 'command'.

See also: `Actions` ([1127](#))

33.5.9 TCustomFPWebModule.BeforeRequest

Synopsis: Event called before request processing

Declaration: `Property BeforeRequest : TRequestEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event triggered before the main request processing begins. This can be used for request preprocessing, authentication, or logging.

See also: `TRequestEvent` ([1124](#)), `AfterResponse` ([1128](#))

33.5.10 TCustomFPWebModule.OnRequest

Synopsis: Event called for request processing

Declaration: Property OnRequest : TWebActionEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event triggered during request processing. If this event handles the request and sets the Handled parameter to `True`, no further processing occurs.

See also: TWebActionEvent ([1124](#)), BeforeRequest ([1127](#))

33.5.11 TCustomFPWebModule.AfterResponse

Synopsis: Event called after response processing

Declaration: Property AfterResponse : TResponseEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event triggered after the response has been generated and sent. This can be used for cleanup, logging, or response postprocessing.

See also: TResponseEvent ([1124](#)), BeforeRequest ([1127](#))

33.5.12 TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetAction

Synopsis: Event called to determine which action to execute

Declaration: Property OnGetAction : TGetActionEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event that allows custom logic for determining which action should be executed for a given request. This provides more flexibility than the standard action variable lookup.

See also: TGetActionEvent ([1124](#)), ActionVar ([1127](#))

33.5.13 TCustomFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown

Synopsis: Whether to use the default action when no specific action is found

Declaration: Property DefActionWhenUnknown : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Determines whether the default action should be executed when no action name is specified in the request or when the specified action cannot be found.

See also: Actions ([1127](#))

33.5.14 TCustomFPWebModule.ModuleTemplate

Synopsis: Template used for content generation

Declaration: `Property ModuleTemplate : TFPTemplate`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Template object used for dynamic content generation when no action handles the request. The template can contain variables that are substituted during processing.

See also: [TFPTemplate \(1124\)](#), [OnGetParam \(1129\)](#)

33.5.15 TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetParam

Synopsis: Event called to resolve template parameters

Declaration: `Property OnGetParam : TGetParamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event triggered when a template parameter needs to be resolved during template processing. This allows dynamic parameter value generation.

See also: [TGetParamEvent \(1124\)](#), [ModuleTemplate \(1129\)](#)

33.5.16 TCustomFPWebModule.OnTemplateContent

Synopsis: Event called for template content processing

Declaration: `Property OnTemplateContent : TGetParamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event triggered for template content processing. This is an alias for the `OnGetParam` event and provides the same functionality.

See also: [OnGetParam \(1129\)](#), [TGetParamEvent \(1124\)](#)

33.5.17 TCustomFPWebModule.Request

Synopsis: The current HTTP request being processed

Declaration: `Property Request : TRequest`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Provides access to the HTTP request currently being processed. This property is only valid during request processing and is set to `nil` when no request is active.

See also: [TRequest \(1124\)](#), [Response \(1130\)](#)

33.5.18 TCustomFPWebModule.Response

Synopsis: The current HTTP response being generated

Declaration: `Property Response : TResponse`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Provides access to the HTTP response currently being generated. This property is only valid during request processing and is set to `nil` when no request is active.

See also: `TResponse` ([1124](#)), `Request` ([1129](#))

33.6 TFPWebAction

33.6.1 Description

`TFPWebAction` extends `TCustomWebAction` ([1124](#)) with support for direct content assignment and template processing. This class allows actions to serve static content from string lists or process dynamic content through templates.

The action can handle requests through the `OnRequest` event and provides built-in content serving capabilities.

See also: `TFPWebActions` ([1132](#)), `TCustomWebAction` ([1124](#)), `TFPTemplate` ([1124](#))

33.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1131	<code>Assign</code>	Assigns properties from another object
1130	<code>create</code>	Creates a new <code>TFPWebAction</code> instance
1131	<code>destroy</code>	Destroys the <code>TFPWebAction</code> instance

33.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1131	<code>Contents</code>	<code>rw</code>	Static content to serve when the action is executed
1131	<code>OnRequest</code>	<code>rw</code>	Event handler called when this action is executed
1132	<code>Template</code>	<code>rw</code>	Template for dynamic content generation

33.6.4 TFPWebAction.create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TFPWebAction` instance

Declaration: `constructor create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new `TFPWebAction` instance and initializes the internal template object. The action is added to the specified collection.

See also: `destroy` ([1131](#))

33.6.5 TFPWebAction.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TFPWebAction` instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the `TFPWebAction` instance and frees the associated content strings and template objects.

See also: `create` ([1130](#))

33.6.6 TFPWebAction.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns properties from another object

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Copies all properties from the source `TFPWebAction` object to this instance. This includes name, events, content, and template settings.

33.6.7 TFPWebAction.Contents

Synopsis: Static content to serve when the action is executed

Declaration: `Property Contents : TStrings`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Contains static text content that will be served when this action is executed. If the action's `OnRequest` event does not handle the request, this content will be returned to the client.

See also: `OnRequest` ([1131](#)), `Template` ([1132](#))

33.6.8 TFPWebAction.OnRequest

Synopsis: Event handler called when this action is executed

Declaration: `Property OnRequest : TWebActionEvent`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Event that is triggered when this web action is executed. The event handler receives the request and response objects and can set the `Handled` parameter to `True` to indicate that the request has been processed.

See also: `TWebActionEvent` ([1124](#)), `Contents` ([1131](#))

33.6.9 TFPWebAction.Template

Synopsis: Template for dynamic content generation

Declaration: `Property Template : TFPTemplate`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Template object used for processing dynamic content. The template can contain variable substitutions that are resolved at runtime to generate the final output.

See also: `TFPTemplate` ([1124](#)), `Contents` ([1131](#))

33.7 TFPWebActions

33.7.1 Description

`TFPWebActions` extends `TCustomWebActions` ([1124](#)) to provide a collection of `TFPWebAction` ([1130](#)) objects. It handles request routing to appropriate actions and provides content generation capabilities.

The collection maintains a reference to the currently executing action and can route requests based on URL parameters.

See also: `TFPWebAction` ([1130](#)), `TCustomWebActions` ([1124](#))

33.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1133	<code>ActionByName</code>	Returns the action with the specified name
1132	<code>Add</code>	Adds a new web action to the collection
1133	<code>FindAction</code>	Searches for an action with the specified name

33.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1133	<code>ActionVar</code>		Name of the request parameter used to identify the action
1134	<code>CurrentAction</code>	<code>r</code>	The currently executing web action
1133	<code>FPWebActions</code>	<code>rw</code>	Array property providing indexed access to web actions

33.7.4 TFPWebActions.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new web action to the collection

Declaration: `function Add : TFPWebAction`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates and adds a new `TFPWebAction` to the collection. The newly created action is returned for further configuration.

See also: `TFPWebAction` ([1130](#)), `FindAction` ([1133](#))

33.7.5 TFPWebActions.ActionByName

Synopsis: Returns the action with the specified name

Declaration: `function ActionByName(const AName: string) : TFPWebAction`

Visibility: public

Description: Finds and returns the web action with the given name. Raises an exception if no action with the specified name is found.

Errors: Raises an exception if the action name is not found.

See also: [FindAction \(1133\)](#)

33.7.6 TFPWebActions.FindAction

Synopsis: Searches for an action with the specified name

Declaration: `function FindAction(const AName: string) : TFPWebAction`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for a web action with the given name. Returns `nil` if no action with the specified name is found.

See also: [ActionByName \(1133\)](#)

33.7.7 TFPWebActions.FPWebActions

Synopsis: Array property providing indexed access to web actions

Declaration: `Property FPWebActions[Index: Integer]: TFPWebAction; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Provides indexed access to the web actions in the collection. This is the default array property for the class.

See also: [TFPWebAction \(1130\)](#)

33.7.8 TFPWebActions.ActionVar

Synopsis: Name of the request parameter used to identify the action

Declaration: `Property ActionVar :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: Specifies the name of the request parameter (usually a URL parameter) that contains the action name to execute. Common values include 'action', 'command', or 'page'.

See also: [FindAction \(1133\)](#)

33.7.9 TFPWebActions.CurrentAction

Synopsis: The currently executing web action

Declaration: `Property CurrentAction : TFPWebAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: References the web action that is currently being executed. This property is set during request processing and is available for the duration of the action execution.

See also: [TFPWebAction \(1130\)](#)

33.8 TFPWebModule

33.8.1 Description

`TFPWebModule` is the complete implementation of a web module that publishes all properties from `TCustomFPWebModule` ([1125](#)). This class is intended for use in visual design environments and provides access to all web module functionality through published properties.

See also: [TCustomFPWebModule \(1125\)](#)

33.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1134	Actions		Collection of web actions for this module
1135	ActionVar		Name of the request parameter used to identify actions
1137	AfterInitModule		Event called after module initialization
1135	AfterResponse		Event called after response processing
1135	BeforeRequest		Event called before request processing
1138	CORS		Cross-Origin Resource Sharing configuration
1136	CreateSession		Whether to automatically create sessions
1136	DefActionWhenUnknown		Whether to use the default action when no specific action is found
1137	Kind		The module kind
1136	OnGetAction		Event called to determine which action to execute
1137	OnNewSession		Event called when a new session is created
1135	OnRequest		Event called for request processing
1137	OnSessionExpired		Event called when a session expires
1136	Session		The current session object

33.8.3 TFPWebModule.Actions

Synopsis: Collection of web actions for this module

Declaration: `Property Actions :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: Published version of TCustomFPWebModule.Actions ([1127](#)).

See also: TCustomFPWebModule.Actions ([1127](#))

33.8.4 TFPWebModule.ActionVar

Synopsis: Name of the request parameter used to identify actions

Declaration: `Property ActionVar :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of TCustomFPWebModule.ActionVar ([1127](#)).

See also: TCustomFPWebModule.ActionVar ([1127](#))

33.8.5 TFPWebModule.BeforeRequest

Synopsis: Event called before request processing

Declaration: `Property BeforeRequest :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of TCustomFPWebModule.BeforeRequest ([1127](#)).

See also: TCustomFPWebModule.BeforeRequest ([1127](#))

33.8.6 TFPWebModule.OnRequest

Synopsis: Event called for request processing

Declaration: `Property OnRequest :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of TCustomFPWebModule.OnRequest ([1128](#)).

See also: TCustomFPWebModule.OnRequest ([1128](#))

33.8.7 TFPWebModule.AfterResponse

Synopsis: Event called after response processing

Declaration: `Property AfterResponse :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of TCustomFPWebModule.AfterResponse ([1128](#)).

See also: TCustomFPWebModule.AfterResponse ([1128](#))

33.8.8 TFPWebModule.OnGetAction

Synopsis: Event called to determine which action to execute

Declaration: `Property OnGetAction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of `TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetAction` ([1128](#)).

See also: `TCustomFPWebModule.OnGetAction` ([1128](#))

33.8.9 TFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown

Synopsis: Whether to use the default action when no specific action is found

Declaration: `Property DefActionWhenUnknown :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Published version of `TCustomFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown` ([1128](#)).

See also: `TCustomFPWebModule.DefActionWhenUnknown` ([1128](#))

33.8.10 TFPWebModule.CreateSession

Synopsis: Whether to automatically create sessions

Declaration: `Property CreateSession :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Determines whether sessions should be automatically created for incoming requests. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

See also: `Session` ([1136](#))

33.8.11 TFPWebModule.Session

Synopsis: The current session object

Declaration: `Property Session :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Provides access to the current session object for the request. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

See also: `CreateSession` ([1136](#))

33.8.12 TFPWebModule.Kind

Synopsis: The module kind

Declaration: `Property Kind :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Specifies the kind of web module. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

33.8.13 TFPWebModule.OnNewSession

Synopsis: Event called when a new session is created

Declaration: `Property OnNewSession :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when a new session is created for a client. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

See also: `OnSessionExpired` ([1137](#))

33.8.14 TFPWebModule.OnSessionExpired

Synopsis: Event called when a session expires

Declaration: `Property OnSessionExpired :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered when a session expires or is explicitly terminated. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

See also: `OnNewSession` ([1137](#))

33.8.15 TFPWebModule.AfterInitModule

Synopsis: Event called after module initialization

Declaration: `Property AfterInitModule :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Event triggered after the module has been initialized. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

33.8.16 TFPWebModule.CORS

Synopsis: Cross-Origin Resource Sharing configuration

Declaration: `Property CORS :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: Configuration object for Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) support. This property is inherited from the parent HTTP module class.

33.9 TTemplateVar

33.9.1 Description

`TTemplateVar` represents a single template variable that can be used in template processing. Each variable has a name and a corresponding value that will be substituted during template processing.

See also: `TTemplateVars` ([1139](#)), `TFPTemplate` ([1124](#))

33.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1138	<code>Assign</code>	Assigns properties from another template variable
1138	<code>GetDisplayName</code>	Returns the display name for this template variable

33.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1139	<code>Name</code>	<code>rw</code>	The name of the template variable
1139	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	The value of the template variable

33.9.4 TTemplateVar.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns properties from another template variable

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Copies the name and value from another `TTemplateVar` instance to this one.

33.9.5 TTemplateVar.GetDisplayName

Synopsis: Returns the display name for this template variable

Declaration: `function GetDisplayName : string; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the variable name as the display name. This is used for displaying the variable in collection editors and similar contexts.

See also: `Name` ([1139](#))

33.9.6 TTemplateVar.Name

Synopsis: The name of the template variable

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The name used to identify this variable in templates. This name is used for variable substitution during template processing.

See also: Value ([1139](#))

33.9.7 TTemplateVar.Value

Synopsis: The value of the template variable

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The text value that will be substituted when the variable name is encountered in template processing.

See also: Name ([1139](#))

33.10 TTemplateVars

33.10.1 Description

`TTemplateVars` manages a collection of `TTemplateVar` ([1138](#)) objects. It provides methods to find variables by name and access them by index.

This collection is used by web modules to maintain template variables that can be referenced during template processing.

See also: `TTemplateVar` ([1138](#))

33.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1140	<code>FindVar</code>	Searches for a variable with the specified name
1140	<code>IndexOfVar</code>	Returns the index of the variable with the specified name
1140	<code>VarByName</code>	Returns the variable with the specified name

33.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1140	<code>Variables</code>	rw	Array property providing indexed access to template variables

33.10.4 TTemplateVars.IndexOfVar

Synopsis: Returns the index of the variable with the specified name

Declaration: `function IndexOfVar (AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for a template variable with the given name and returns its index in the collection. Returns -1 if no variable with the specified name is found.

See also: [VarByName \(1140\)](#), [FindVar \(1140\)](#)

33.10.5 TTemplateVars.VarByName

Synopsis: Returns the variable with the specified name

Declaration: `function VarByName (AName: string) : TTemplateVar`

Visibility: public

Description: Finds and returns the template variable with the given name. Raises an exception if no variable with the specified name is found.

Errors: Raises [EFPWebError \(1125\)](#) if the variable name is not found.

See also: [FindVar \(1140\)](#), [EFPWebError \(1125\)](#)

33.10.6 TTemplateVars.FindVar

Synopsis: Searches for a variable with the specified name

Declaration: `function FindVar (AName: string) : TTemplateVar`

Visibility: public

Description: Searches for a template variable with the given name. Returns `nil` if no variable with the specified name is found.

See also: [VarByName \(1140\)](#)

33.10.7 TTemplateVars.Variables

Synopsis: Array property providing indexed access to template variables

Declaration: `Property Variables[I: Integer]: TTemplateVar; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Provides indexed access to the template variables in the collection. This is the default array property for the class.

See also: [TTemplateVar \(1138\)](#)

Chapter 34

Reference for unit 'gettext'

34.1 Used units

Table 34.1: Used units by unit 'gettext'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

34.2 Overview

The `gettext` unit can be used to hook into the resource string mechanism of Free Pascal to provide translations of the resource strings, based on the GNU `gettext` mechanism. The unit provides a class (`TMOFile` ([1144](#))) to read the `.mo` files with localizations for various languages. It also provides a couple of calls to translate all resource strings in an application based on the translations in a `.mo` file.

34.3 Constants, types and variables

34.3.1 Constants

```
MOFileHeaderMagic = $950412DE
```

This constant is found as the first integer in a `.mo`

34.3.2 Types

```
PLongWordArray = ^TLongWordArray
```

Pointer to a `TLongWordArray` ([1142](#)) array.

```
PMOStringTable = ^TMOStringTable
```

Pointer to a TMOStringTable (1142) array.

```
PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray
```

Pointer to a TPCharArray (1142) array.

```
TLongWordArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(LongWord)] of
    LongWord
```

TLongWordArray is an array used to define the PLongWordArray (1141) pointer. A variable of type TLongWordArray should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The PLongWordArray type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

```
TMOStringTable = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(TMOStringInfo)] of TMOStringInfo
    = packed record
        &length : LongWord;
        &offset : LongWord;
    end
```

TMOStringTable is an array type containing TMOStringInfo (1144) records. It should never be used directly, as it would occupy too much memory.

```
TPCharArray = Array[0..(1 shl 30) div SizeOf(PAnsiChar)] of PAnsiChar
```

TLongWordArray is an array used to define the PPCharArray (1142) pointer. A variable of type TPCharArray should never be directly declared, as it would occupy too much memory. The PPCharArray type can be used to allocate a dynamic number of elements.

```
TTranslationErrorHandler = procedure(const aFileName: string;
    const aUnitName: string;
    aError: Exception;
    out ReRaise: Boolean)
```

34.3.3 Variables

```
OnTranslationError : TTranslationErrorHandler = Nil
```

34.4 Procedures and functions

34.4.1 GetLanguageIDs

Synopsis: Return the current language IDs.

Declaration: `procedure GetLanguageIDs(var Lang: AnsiString;
 var FallbackLang: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetLanguageIDs returns the current language IDs (an ISO string) as returned by the operating system. On windows, the GetUserDefaultLCID and GetLocaleInfo calls are used. On other operating systems, the LC_ALL, LC_MESSAGES or LANG environment variables are examined.

34.4.2 TranslateResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of the application.

Declaration: `procedure TranslateResourceStrings(AFile: TMOFile)`
`procedure TranslateResourceStrings(const AFilename: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateResourceStrings` translates all the resource strings in the application based on the values in the .mo file `AFilename` or `AFile`. The procedure creates an `TMOFile` (1144) instance to read the .mo file if a filename is given.

Errors: If the file does not exist or is an invalid .mo file.

See also: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` (1143), `TMOFile` (1144)

34.4.3 TranslateUnitResourceStrings

Synopsis: Translate the resource strings of a unit.

Declaration: `procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings(const AUnitName: AnsiString;`
`AFile: TMOFile)`
`procedure TranslateUnitResourceStrings(const AUnitName: AnsiString;`
`const AFilename: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateUnitResourceStrings` is identical in function to `TranslateResourceStrings` (1143), but translates the strings of a single unit (`AUnitName`) which was used to compile the application. This can be more convenient, since the resource string files are created on a unit basis.

See also: `TranslateResourceStrings` (1143), `TMOFile` (1144)

34.5 TMOFileHeader

```
TMOFileHeader = packed record
  magic : LongWord;
  revision : LongWord
;
  nstrings : LongWord;
  OrigTabOffset : LongWord;
  TransTabOffset
  : LongWord;
  HashTabSize : LongWord;
  HashTabOffset : LongWord
;
end
```

This structure describes the structure of a .mo file with string localizations.

34.6 TMOStringInfo

```
TMOStringInfo = packed record
    &length : LongWord;
    offset : LongWord
;
end
```

This record is one element in the string tables describing the original and translated strings. It describes the position and length of the string. The location of these tables is stored in the TMOFile-Header (1143) record at the start of the file.

34.7 EMOFileError

34.7.1 Description

EMOFileError is raised in case an TMOFile (1144) instance is created with an invalid .mo.

See also: TMOFile (1144)

34.8 TMOFile

34.8.1 Description

TMOFile is a class providing easy access to a .mo file. It can be used to translate any of the strings that reside in the .mo file. The internal structure of the .mo is completely hidden.

34.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1144	Create	Create a new instance of the TMOFile class.
1145	Destroy	Removes the TMOFile instance from memory.
1145	Translate	Translate a string.

34.8.3 TMOFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the TMOFile class.

Declaration: constructor Create(const AFilename: string)
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream)

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of the MOFile class. It opens the file AFileName or the stream AStream. If a stream is provided, it should be seekable.

The whole contents of the file is read into memory during the Create call. This means that the stream is no longer needed after the Create call.

Errors: If the named file does not exist, then an exception may be raised. If the file does not contain a valid TMOFileHeader (1143) structure, then an EMOFileError (1144) exception is raised.

See also: TMOFile.Destroy (1145)

34.8.4 TMOFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TMOFile` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans the internal structures with the contents of the `.mo`. After this the `TMOFile` instance is removed from memory.

See also: `TMOFile.Create` ([1144](#))

34.8.5 TMOFile.Translate

Synopsis: Translate a string.

Declaration:

```
function Translate(AOrig: PAnsiChar; ALen: Integer; AHash: LongWord)
                : AnsiString
function Translate(const AOrig: AnsiString; AHash: LongWord)
                : AnsiString
function Translate(const AOrig: AnsiString) : AnsiString
```

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Translate` translates the string `AOrig`. The string should be in the `.mo` file as-is. The string can be given as a plain string, as a `PChar` (with length `ALen`). If the hash value (`AHash`) of the string is not given, it is calculated.

If the string is in the `.mo` file, the translated string is returned. If the string is not in the file, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

Chapter 35

Reference for unit 'HTTPDefs'

35.1 Used units

Table 35.1: Used units by unit 'HTTPDefs'

Name	Page
Classes	??
httpprotocol	1220
System	??
sysutils	??
TypeInfo	??
URIParser	1616

35.2 Overview

The `HTTPDefs` unit provides essential types, constants, and classes for HTTP protocol handling. It contains basic HTTP header ([1180](#)) field definitions, request ([1202](#)) and response ([1208](#)) classes, cookie management ([1169](#)), file upload ([1215](#)) support, and MIME ([1198](#)) content handling for web applications.

35.3 Using TRequest and TResponse Classes

The `TRequest` and `TResponse` classes are the foundation of HTTP communication in FCL-Web. `TRequest` represents incoming HTTP requests with methods, headers, parameters, and content. `TResponse` represents outgoing HTTP responses with status codes, headers, and content.

These classes provide comprehensive access to HTTP protocol features including custom headers, content types, query parameters, form data, and file uploads.

```
program RequestResponseExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
```

```
httpdefs, SysUtils, Classes;

procedure ProcessRequest(Request: TRequest; Response: TResponse);
var
  UserAgent, ContentType: String;
  Stream: TStringStream;
begin
  Writeln('=== Processing HTTP Request ===');

  // Read request information
  Writeln('Method: ', Request.Method);
  Writeln('URI: ', Request.URI);
  Writeln('Query String: ', Request.QueryString);
  Writeln('Content Length: ', Request.ContentLength);

  // Read headers
  UserAgent := Request.GetCustomHeader('User-Agent');
  if UserAgent <> '' then
    Writeln('User Agent: ', UserAgent);

  // Read query parameters
  if Request.QueryFields.Values['search'] <> '' then
    Writeln('Search query: ', Request.QueryFields.Values['search']);

  // Read POST data (if any)
  if Request.ContentLength > 0 then
  begin
    Writeln('Request content: ', Request.Content);
    ContentType := Request.ContentType;
    Writeln('Content type: ', ContentType);
  end;

  // Process based on request method
  case Request.Method of
    'GET':
      begin
        Response.Content := '{"message": "GET request processed"}';
        Response.ContentType := 'application/json';
        Response.Code := 200;
      end;
    'POST':
      begin
        // Echo back the posted data
        Response.Content := 'Received: ' + Request.Content;
        Response.ContentType := 'text/plain';
        Response.Code := 201;
      end;
    'PUT':
      begin
        Response.Content := 'Resource updated';
        Response.Code := 200;
      end;
    'DELETE':
      begin
```

```

        Response.Content := '';
        Response.Code := 204; // No Content
    end;
else
    Response.Content := 'Method not allowed';
    Response.Code := 405;
end;

// Set custom response headers
Response.SetCustomHeader('X-Powered-By', 'FreePascal-FCL-Web');
Response.SetCustomHeader('X-Request-ID', 'req-' + IntToStr(Random(99999)));

// Set security headers
Response.SetCustomHeader('X-Content-Type-Options', 'nosniff');
Response.SetCustomHeader('X-Frame-Options', 'DENY');

Writeln('=== Response Generated ===');
Writeln('Status Code: ', Response.Code);
Writeln('Content Type: ', Response.ContentType);
Writeln('Content Length: ', Length(Response.Content));
end;

procedure DemonstrateStreamContent(Response: TResponse);
var
    Stream: TStringStream;
begin
    Writeln;
    Writeln('=== Demonstrating Stream Content ===');

    Stream := TStringStream.Create('{"users": ["alice", "bob", "charlie"]}');
    try
        Response.ContentStream := Stream;
        Response.ContentType := 'application/json';
        Response.FreeContentStream := False; // We manage the stream

        Writeln('Content set via stream');
        Writeln('Stream size: ', Stream.Size, ' bytes');
    finally
        Stream.Free;
    end;
end;

var
    Request: TRequest;
    Response: TResponse;
begin
    Request := TRequest.Create;
    Response := TResponse.Create(Request);
    try
        // Simulate a GET request
        Request.Method := 'GET';
        Request.URI := '/api/users';
        Request.QueryString := 'search=john&limit=10';
        Request.QueryFields.Values['search'] := 'john';
    end;
end;

```

```

Request.QueryFields.Values['limit'] := '10';
Request.SetCustomHeader('User-Agent', 'TestClient/1.0');

ProcessRequest(Request, Response);

// Simulate a POST request
Writeln;
Request.Method := 'POST';
Request.URI := '/api/users';
Request.Content := '{"name": "John Doe", "email": "john@example.com"}';
Request.ContentType := 'application/json';

ProcessRequest(Request, Response);

// Demonstrate stream content
DemonstrateStreamContent(Response);

finally
  Response.Free;
  Request.Free;
end;
end.

```

35.4 Working with HTTP Cookies

HTTP cookies provide a way to store small pieces of data in the client's browser. The `TCookie` class represents individual cookies, while `TCookies` manages collections of cookies. Cookies can have various attributes like expiration time, domain, path, and security settings.

Cookies are automatically sent by browsers with subsequent requests to the same domain, making them useful for session management, user preferences, and tracking.

```

program CookieExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
  httpdefs, SysUtils, DateUtils;

procedure DemonstrateCookies(Response: TResponse);
var
  SessionCookie, PrefCookie, SecureCookie: TCookie;
begin
  // Create a session cookie (expires when browser closes)
  SessionCookie := Response.Cookies.Add;
  SessionCookie.Name := 'session_id';
  SessionCookie.Value := 'abc123xyz789';
  SessionCookie.Path := '/';

  // Create a preference cookie (expires in 30 days)
  PrefCookie := Response.Cookies.Add;
  PrefCookie.Name := 'user_theme';
  PrefCookie.Value := 'dark_mode';

```

```

PrefCookie.Path := '/';
PrefCookie.Domain := 'example.com';
PrefCookie.Expires := Now + 30; // 30 days from now

// Create a secure cookie for sensitive data
SecureCookie := Response.Cookies.Add;
SecureCookie.Name := 'auth_token';
SecureCookie.Value := 'secure_token_here';
SecureCookie.Path := '/admin';
SecureCookie.Secure := True;      // Only sent over HTTPS
SecureCookie.HttpOnly := True;    // Not accessible via JavaScript
SecureCookie.SameSite := ssStrict; // CSRF protection
SecureCookie.Expires := Now + (1/24); // Expires in 1 hour

Writeln('Cookies set in response:');
Writeln('1. Session cookie: ', SessionCookie.AsString);
Writeln('2. Preference cookie: ', PrefCookie.AsString);
Writeln('3. Secure cookie: ', SecureCookie.AsString);
end;

procedure ReadCookiesFromRequest(Request: TRequest);
var
    SessionID, Theme: String;
begin
    // Read cookies from request (simulate browser sending cookies)
    SessionID := Request.CookieFields.Values['session_id'];
    Theme := Request.CookieFields.Values['user_theme'];

    if SessionID <> '' then
        Writeln('Found session ID: ', SessionID)
    else
        Writeln('No session cookie found');

    if Theme <> '' then
        Writeln('User theme preference: ', Theme)
    else
        Writeln('No theme preference found');
end;

var
    Request: TRequest;
    Response: TResponse;
    Cookie: TCookie;
begin
    Request := TRequest.Create;
    Response := TResponse.Create(Request);
    try
        // Demonstrate setting cookies
        DemonstrateCookies(Response);

        // Simulate reading cookies from a request
        Writeln;
        Writeln('=== Simulating cookie reading ===');
        Request.CookieFields.Values['session_id'] := 'abc123xyz789';
    finally
        Request.Free;
        Response.Free;
    end;
end;

```

```

Request.CookieFields.Values['user_theme'] := 'dark_mode';
ReadCookiesFromRequest (Request);

// Demonstrate cookie expiration
Writeln;
Writeln('=== Cookie management ===');
Cookie := Response.Cookies.FindCookie('session_id');
if Cookie <> nil then
begin
    Writeln('Expiring session cookie...');
    Cookie.Expire; // Sets expiration to past date
    Writeln('Cookie after expiration: ', Cookie.AsString);
end;
finally
    Response.Free;
    Request.Free;
end;
end.

```

35.5 Understanding TCORSSupport.HandleRequest Return Value

The `TCORSSupport.HandleRequest` method returns a boolean value that indicates whether the request should continue processing after CORS validation. Understanding this return value is crucial for proper CORS implementation.

True - The request passes CORS validation and should be processed normally. This means the origin is allowed, the method is permitted, and required headers are present.

False - The request fails CORS validation and should be rejected. The method automatically sets appropriate error response headers when returning `False`.

```

program CORSReturnValueExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    httpdefs, SysUtils;

procedure ProcessRequestWithCORS (Request: TRequest; Response: TResponse);
var
    CORS: TCORSSupport;
    AllowRequest: Boolean;
begin
    CORS := TCORSSupport.Create;
    try
        CORS.Enabled := True;
        CORS.AllowedOrigins := 'https://trusted-site.com';
        CORS.AllowedMethods := 'GET,POST';

        // Handle CORS - the return value determines next steps
        AllowRequest := CORS.HandleRequest(Request, Response, []);

        if AllowRequest then
            begin

```



```

    Writeln('[OK] CORS validation passed - processing request');

    // Continue with normal request processing
    if Request.Method = 'GET' then
    begin
        Response.Content := 'Data from server';
        Response.ContentType := 'text/plain';
        Response.Code := 200;
    end
    else if Request.Method = 'POST' then
    begin
        Response.Content := 'Data received';
        Response.Code := 201;
    end
    else if Request.Method = 'OPTIONS' then
    begin
        // Preflight handled by CORS support
        Response.Code := 200;
    end;
end
else
begin
    Writeln('[KO] CORS validation failed - request blocked');

    // Don't process the request - CORS already set error response
    // Response.Code and headers are already set by HandleRequest
    Writeln('Response already configured with CORS error');
end;
finally
    CORS.Free;
end;
end;

var
    Request: TRequest;
    Response: TResponse;
begin
    Request := TRequest.Create;
    Response := TResponse.Create(Request);
    try
        // Test with allowed origin
        Writeln('=== Testing with allowed origin ===');
        Request.Method := 'GET';
        Request.SetCustomHeader('Origin', 'https://trusted-site.com');
        ProcessRequestWithCORS(Request, Response);

        // Reset for next test
        Response.Code := 200;
        Response.Content := '';

        // Test with disallowed origin
        Writeln('=== Testing with disallowed origin ===');
        Request.SetCustomHeader('Origin', 'https://malicious-site.com');
        ProcessRequestWithCORS(Request, Response);
    
```

```

    Writeln('Final response code: ', Response.Code);
finally
    Response.Free;
    Request.Free;
end;
end.

```

35.6 CORS Support Usage

Cross-Origin Resource Sharing (CORS) allows web applications running at one origin to access resources from another origin. The `TCORSSupport` class handles CORS headers and validation.

CORS support includes configuration of allowed origins, methods, and headers, as well as handling preflight `OPTIONS` requests. The `HandleRequest` method processes CORS requests and returns `True` if the request should continue or `False` if it should be blocked.

```

program CORSExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    httpdefs, SysUtils;

procedure HandleCORSRequest(Request: TRequest; Response: TResponse);
var
    CORS: TCORSSupport;
    ContinueProcessing: Boolean;
begin
    CORS := TCORSSupport.Create;
    try
        // Configure CORS settings
        CORS.Enabled := True;
        CORS.AllowedOrigins := 'https://example.com,https://app.example.com';
        CORS.AllowedMethods := 'GET,POST,PUT,DELETE,OPTIONS';
        CORS.AllowedHeaders := 'Content-Type,Authorization,X-Requested-With';
        CORS.MaxAge := 3600; // Cache preflight response for 1 hour

        // Handle the CORS request
        ContinueProcessing := CORS.HandleRequest(Request, Response, []);

        if ContinueProcessing then
            begin
                // Process the actual request
                if Request.Method = 'GET' then
                    begin
                        Response.Content := '{"message": "CORS request handled successfully"}';
                        Response.ContentType := 'application/json';
                    end
                else if Request.Method = 'OPTIONS' then
                    begin
                        // Preflight request - CORS headers already set
                        Response.Code := 204; // No Content
                    end
                end
            end
        else
            // Request blocked
            Response.Code := 403; // Forbidden
        end
    finally
        CORS.Free;
    end
end;

```

```

        end;

        Writeln('CORS request from origin: ', Request.GetCustomHeader('Origin'));
        Writeln('Request processed successfully');
    end
    else
    begin
        // CORS validation failed
        Response.Code := 403; // Forbidden
        Response.Content := 'CORS policy violation';
        Writeln('CORS request blocked');
    end;
finally
    CORS.Free;
end;
end;

var
    Request: TRequest;
    Response: TResponse;
begin
    Request := TRequest.Create;
    Response := TResponse.Create(Request);
    try
        // Simulate a CORS request
        Request.Method := 'GET';
        Request.SetCustomHeader('Origin', 'https://example.com');

        HandleCORSRequest(Request, Response);

        Writeln('Response code: ', Response.Code);
        Writeln('Response content: ', Response.Content);
    finally
        Response.Free;
        Request.Free;
    end;
end.

```

35.7 Working with HTTP Sessions

HTTP sessions provide a way to maintain state across multiple HTTP requests from the same client. The `TCustomSession` class manages session data using session IDs that are typically stored in cookies.

Sessions can be in different states: `ssNew` (newly created), `ssActive` (currently valid), `ssExpired` (timed out), or `ssResponseInitialized` (response has been started). Session variables are accessed using string key-value pairs through the `Variables` property.

```

program SessionExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses

```

```

    httpdefs, SysUtils, Classes;

type
    TMySession = class(TCustomSession)
    private
        FData: TStringList;
    protected
        function GetSessionVariable(const VarName: String): String; override;
        procedure SetSessionVariable(const VarName: String; const AValue: String); overr
    public
        constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override;
        destructor Destroy; override;
    end;

constructor TMySession.Create(AOwner: TComponent);
begin
    inherited Create(AOwner);
    FData := TStringList.Create;
    TimeOutMinutes := 30; // 30 minutes timeout
end;

destructor TMySession.Destroy;
begin
    FData.Free;
    inherited Destroy;
end;

function TMySession.GetSessionVariable(const VarName: String): String;
var
    Index: Integer;
begin
    Index := FData.IndexOfName(VarName);
    if Index >= 0 then
        Result := FData.ValueFromIndex[Index]
    else
        Result := '';
    end;
end;

procedure TMySession.SetSessionVariable(const VarName: String; const AValue: String)
begin
    FData.Values[VarName] := AValue;
end;

var
    Session: TMySession;
begin
    Session := TMySession.Create(nil);
    try
        // Store session data
        Session.Variables['username'] := 'john_doe';
        Session.Variables['last_login'] := DateTimeToStr(Now);

        // Retrieve session data
        Writeln('Username: ', Session.Variables['username']);
    finally
        Session.Free;
    end;
end;

```

```

    Writeln('Last login: ', Session.Variables['last_login']);

    Writeln('Session ID: ', Session.SessionID);
    Writeln('Session cookie: ', Session.SessionCookie);
  finally
    Session.Free;
  end;
end.

```

35.8 Constants, types and variables

35.8.1 Constants

```

DefaultAllowedHeaders =
  'x-requested-with, content-type, authorization'

```

`DefaultAllowedHeaders` contains the default set of HTTP headers allowed in CORS requests. This constant provides a standard list of commonly permitted headers for cross-origin requests.

```

DefaultAllowedMethods = 'GET, PUT, POST, OPTIONS, HEAD'

```

`DefaultAllowedMethods` contains the default set of HTTP methods allowed in CORS requests. This constant provides a standard list of permitted methods for cross-origin resource sharing.

```

DefaultAllowedOrigins = '*'

```

`DefaultAllowedOrigins` contains the default set of origins allowed for CORS requests. This constant provides a standard list of permitted origins for cross-origin resource sharing.

```

DefaultTimeOut = 15

```

`DefaultTimeOut` specifies the default timeout value of 15 seconds for HTTP operations.

```

fieldAccept = HeaderAcceptdeprecated

```

`fieldAccept` contains the HTTP header field name for content type acceptance. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```

FieldAcceptCharset = HeaderAcceptCharsetdeprecated

```

`FieldAcceptCharset` contains the HTTP header field name for character set acceptance. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```

FieldAcceptEncoding = HeaderAcceptEncodingdeprecated

```

`FieldAcceptEncoding` contains the HTTP header field name for encoding acceptance. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```

FieldAcceptLanguage = HeaderAcceptLanguagedeprecated

```

`FieldAcceptLanguage` contains the HTTP header field name for language preference specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldAcceptRanges = HeaderAcceptRangesdeprecated`

`FieldAcceptRanges` contains the HTTP header field name for range request acceptance. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldAge = HeaderAgeddeprecated`

`FieldAge` contains the HTTP header field name for response age specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldAllow = HeaderAllowdeprecated`

`FieldAllow` contains the HTTP header field name for allowed methods specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldAuthorization = HeaderAuthorizationdeprecated`

`FieldAuthorization` contains the HTTP header field name for authorization credentials. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldCacheControl = HeaderCacheControldeprecated`

`FieldCacheControl` contains the HTTP header field name for cache control directives. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldConnection = HeaderConnectiondeprecated`

`FieldConnection` contains the HTTP header field name for connection management. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentEncoding = HeaderContentEncodingdeprecated`

`FieldContentEncoding` contains the HTTP header field name for content encoding specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentLanguage = HeaderContentLanguagedeprecated`

`FieldContentLanguage` contains the HTTP header field name for content language specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentLength = HeaderContentLengthdeprecated`

`FieldContentLength` contains the HTTP header field name for content length specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentLocation = HeaderContentLocationdeprecated`

`FieldContentLocation` contains the HTTP header field name for content location specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentMD5 = HeaderContentMD5deprecated`

`FieldContentMD5` contains the HTTP header field name for content MD5 checksum. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentRange` = `HeaderContentRangedeprecated`

`FieldContentRange` contains the HTTP header field name for content range specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldContentType` = `HeaderContentTypedeprecated`

`FieldContentType` contains the HTTP header field name for content type specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldCookie` = `HeaderCookiedeprecated`

`FieldCookie` contains the HTTP header field name for cookie transmission. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldDate` = `HeaderDatedeprecated`

`FieldDate` contains the HTTP header field name for date specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldETag` = `HeaderETagdeprecated`

`FieldETag` contains the HTTP header field name for entity tag specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldExpect` = `HeaderExpectdeprecated`

`FieldExpect` contains the HTTP header field name for expectation specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldExpires` = `HeaderExpiresdeprecated`

`FieldExpires` contains the HTTP header field name for expiration date specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldFrom` = `HeaderFromdeprecated`

`FieldFrom` contains the HTTP header field name for sender email address specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldHost` = `HeaderHostdeprecated`

`FieldHost` contains the HTTP header field name for host header specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldIfMatch` = `HeaderIfMatchdeprecated`

`FieldIfMatch` contains the HTTP header field name for conditional request matching. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldIfModifiedSince = HeaderIfModifiedSincedepricated`

`FieldIfModifiedSince` contains the HTTP header field name for conditional modification checking. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldIfNoneMatch = HeaderIfNoneMatchdepricated`

`FieldIfNoneMatch` contains the HTTP header field name for conditional request non-matching. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldIfRange = HeaderIfRangedepricated`

`FieldIfRange` contains the HTTP header field name for conditional range request. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldIfUnModifiedSince = HeaderIfUnModifiedSincedepricated`

`FieldIfUnModifiedSince` contains the HTTP header field name for conditional unmodification checking. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldLastModified = HeaderLastModifieddepricated`

`FieldLastModified` contains the HTTP header field name for last modification date specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldLocation = HeaderLocationdepricated`

`FieldLocation` contains the HTTP header field name for resource location specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldMaxForwards = HeaderMaxForwardsdepricated`

`FieldMaxForwards` contains the HTTP header field name for maximum forwards specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldPragma = HeaderPragmadepricated`

`FieldPragma` contains the HTTP header field name for pragma directive specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldProxyAuthenticate = HeaderProxyAuthenticatedepricated`

`FieldProxyAuthenticate` contains the HTTP header field name for proxy authentication specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldProxyAuthorization = HeaderProxyAuthorizationdepricated`

`FieldProxyAuthorization` contains the HTTP header field name for proxy authorization specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldRange = HeaderRangedepricated`

`FieldRange` contains the HTTP header field name for range request specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldReferer = HeaderRefererdeprecated`

`FieldReferer` contains the HTTP header field name for referrer URL specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldRetryAfter = HeaderRetryAfterdeprecated`

`FieldRetryAfter` contains the HTTP header field name for retry delay specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldServer = HeaderServerdeprecated`

`FieldServer` contains the HTTP header field name for server information specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldSetCookie = HeaderSetCookiedeprecated`

`FieldSetCookie` contains the HTTP header field name for setting cookies in responses. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldTE = HeaderTEdeprecated`

`FieldTE` contains the HTTP header field name for transfer encoding preference. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldTrailer = HeaderTrailerdeprecated`

`FieldTrailer` contains the HTTP header field name for trailer header specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldTransferEncoding = HeaderTransferEncodingdeprecated`

`FieldTransferEncoding` contains the HTTP header field name for transfer encoding specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldUpgrade = HeaderUpgradeddeprecated`

`FieldUpgrade` contains the HTTP header field name for protocol upgrade specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldUserAgent = HeaderUserAgentdeprecated`

`FieldUserAgent` contains the HTTP header field name for user agent identification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

`FieldVary = HeaderVarydeprecated`

`FieldVary` contains the HTTP header field name for response variation specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```
FieldVia = HeaderViadeprecated
```

`FieldVia` contains the HTTP header field name for proxy path specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```
FieldWarning = HeaderWarningdeprecated
```

`FieldWarning` contains the HTTP header field name for warning message specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```
FieldWWWAuthenticate = HeaderWWWAuthenticateddeprecated
```

`FieldWWWAuthenticate` contains the HTTP header field name for authentication requirement specification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```
FieldXRequestedWith = HeaderXRequestedWithdeprecated
```

`FieldXRequestedWith` contains the HTTP header field name for request origin identification. This constant is deprecated in favour of using the `httpprotocol` unit constants.

```
HeaderBasedVariables = [hvCookie, hvSetCookie, hvXRequestedWith]
```

`HeaderBasedVariables` contains a set of HTTP variable types that are derived from HTTP headers. This constant identifies which variables correspond to standard HTTP header fields.

```
HTTPDateFmt = httpProtocol.HTTPDateFmt
```

`HTTPDateFmt` contains the standard HTTP date format string used for formatting dates in HTTP headers. This is an alias to the constant in the `httpprotocol` unit.

```
HTTPDays : Array[1..7] of string = string[3] = ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue',
    , 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat')
```

`HTTPDays` is an array containing 3-letter abbreviations for days of the week (Sun, Mon, Tue, etc.) used in HTTP date formatting.

```
HTTPFieldIndexes : THttpIndexes = (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10,
    11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 34, 0, 36
    , 26)deprecated
```

`HTTPFieldIndexes` is an array that maps HTTP variable types to their corresponding field indexes. This provides efficient lookup of header field positions by variable type.

```
HTTPFieldNames : THttpFields = (fieldAccept, fieldAcceptCharset, fieldAcceptEncoding
    , fieldAcceptLanguage, fieldAuthorization, fieldConnection, fieldContentEncoding
    , fieldContentLanguage, fieldContentLength, fieldContentType, fieldCookie
    , fieldDate, fieldExpires, fieldFrom, fieldIfModifiedSince, fieldLastModified
    , fieldLocation, fieldPragma, fieldReferer, fieldRetryAfter, fieldServer
    , fieldSetCookie, fieldUserAgent, fieldWWWAuthenticate, fieldHost
    , fieldCacheControl, fieldXRequestedWith, fieldIfNoneMatch
    )deprecated
```

`HTTPFieldNames` is an array containing the names of standard HTTP header fields. This array provides mapping from field indexes to their string representations.

```
HTTPMonths : Array[1..12] of string = string[3] = ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar',  
    , 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun', 'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec')
```

`HTTPMonths` is an array containing 3-letter abbreviations for months (Jan, Feb, Mar, etc.) used in HTTP date formatting.

```
NoHTTPFields = 28
```

`NoHTTPFields` contains the value 28, representing the number of standard HTTP header fields. This constant is deprecated.

```
SCookieDomain = httpProtocol.SCookieDomain
```

`SCookieDomain` contains the string 'domain' used in cookie domain attributes. This constant specifies the domain scope for cookies.

```
SCookieExpire = httpProtocol.SCookieExpire
```

`SCookieExpire` contains the string 'expires' used in cookie attributes. This is an alias to the constant in the `httpprotocol` unit.

```
SCookieHttpOnly = httpProtocol.SCookieHttpOnly
```

`SCookieHttpOnly` contains the string 'HttpOnly' used in cookie HttpOnly attributes. This constant indicates that cookies should not be accessible via JavaScript.

```
SCookiePath = httpProtocol.SCookiePath
```

`SCookiePath` contains the string 'path' used in cookie path attributes. This constant specifies the path scope for cookies.

```
SCookieSameSite = httpProtocol.SCookieSameSite
```

`SCookieSameSite` contains the string 'SameSite' used in cookie SameSite attributes. This constant controls cross-site request behavior for cookies.

```
SCookieSecure = httpProtocol.SCookieSecure
```

`SCookieSecure` contains the string 'secure' used in cookie secure attributes. This constant indicates that cookies should only be sent over secure connections.

```
SFPWebSession = 'FPWebSession'
```

`SFPWebSession` contains the string 'FPWebSession' which is used as the default name for session cookies in web applications.

35.8.2 Types

```
HTTPError = EHTTP
```

`HTTPError` creates an `EHTTP` (1168) exception with the specified status code and message. It provides a convenient way to raise HTTP-specific errors with proper status information.

```
TCORSOption = (coAllowCredentials, coEmptyDomainToOrigin)
```

Table 35.2: Enumeration values for type `TCORSOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>coAllowCredentials</code>	Allow credentials in CORS requests
<code>coEmptyDomainToOrigin</code>	Convert empty domain to origin in CORS

`TCORSOption` defines individual options for CORS configuration. These options control various aspects of cross-origin resource sharing behavior.

```
TCORSOptions = Set of TCORSOption = (coAllowCredentials, coEmptyDomainToOrigin)
```

`TCORSOptions` is a set of `TCORSOption` (1163) values. It allows combining multiple CORS configuration options for comprehensive control.

```
THandleCORSOption = (hcDetect, hcFull, hcHumanReadable, hcSend)
```

Table 35.3: Enumeration values for type `THandleCORSOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>hcDetect</code>	Detect CORS requests option
<code>hcFull</code>	Full CORS handling option
<code>hcHumanReadable</code>	Human readable CORS handling option
<code>hcSend</code>	Send CORS headers option

`THandleCORSOption` defines options that control how CORS requests are handled. These options affect the processing and response generation for cross-origin requests.

```
THandleCORSOptions = Set of THandleCORSOption = (hcDetect, hcFull, hcHumanReadable, hcSend)
```

`THandleCORSOptions` is a set of `THandleCORSOption` (1163) values. It allows configuring multiple aspects of CORS request handling behavior.

```
THttpFields = Array[1..NoHTTPFields] of String
```

`THttpFields` is an array type containing HTTP header field names. This array maps field indexes to their corresponding header field name strings.

```
THttpIndexes = Array[1..NoHTTPFields] of Integer
```

THttpIndexes is an array type containing HTTP header field index mappings. This array provides reverse lookup from header field names to their indexes.

```
THTTPVariables = Array[THTTPVariableType] of string = string
```

THTTPVariables is an array type that maps HTTP variable types to their corresponding values. This provides indexed access to HTTP request and environment variables.

```
THTTPVariableType = (hvUnknown, hvHTTPVersion, hvMethod, hvCookie,
    hvSetCookie, hvXRequestedWith, hvPathInfo,
    hvPathTranslated, hvRemoteAddress, hvRemoteHost,
    hvScriptName, hvServerPort, hvURL, hvQuery, hvContent
)
```

Table 35.4: Enumeration values for type THTTPVariableType

Value	Explanation
hvContent	Request body content
hvCookie	Cookie header from request
hvHTTPVersion	HTTP protocol version
hvMethod	HTTP request method
hvPathInfo	PATH_INFO environment variable
hvPathTranslated	PATH_TRANSLATED environment variable
hvQuery	QUERY_STRING environment variable
hvRemoteAddress	REMOTE_ADDR environment variable
hvRemoteHost	REMOTE_HOST environment variable
hvScriptName	SCRIPT_NAME environment variable
hvServerPort	SERVER_PORT environment variable
hvSetCookie	Set-Cookie header field variable
hvUnknown	Unknown or unspecified variable type
hvURL	Complete request URL variable
hvXRequestedWith	X-Requested-With header field variable

THTTPVariableType defines the different types of HTTP-related variables that can be handled by the web server. These include request information, headers, and CGI environment variables.

hvUnknown Unknown or unspecified variable type

hvHTTPVersion HTTP protocol version

hvMethod HTTP request method (GET, POST, etc.)

hvCookie Cookie header from request

hvSetCookie Set-Cookie header for response

hvXRequestedWith X-Requested-With header (AJAX indicator)

hvPathInfo Additional path information

hvPathTranslated Translated path information

hvRemoteAddress Client IP address

hvRemoteHost Client hostname

hvScriptName Script name being executed

hvServerPort Server port number

hvURL Request URL

hvQuery Query string parameters

hvContent Request body content

```
THTTPVariableTypes = Set of THTTPVariableType = (hvContent, hvCookie
, hvHTTPVersion, hvMethod,
, hvPathInfo, hvPathTranslated
, hvQuery,
, hvRemoteAddress, hvRemoteHost, hvScriptName
, hvServerPort, hvSetCookie, hvUnknown, hvURL,
hvXRequestedWith)
```

`THTTPVariableTypes` is a set type based on `THTTPVariableType` enumeration. It allows specification of multiple HTTP variable types simultaneously.

```
TMimeItemClass = class of TMimeItem
```

`TMimeItemClass` is a class reference type for creating instances of `TMimeItem` or its descendants. This enables customization of MIME item processing.

```
TMimeItemsClass = class of TMimeItems
```

`TMimeItemsClass` is a class reference type for creating instances of `TMimeItems` or its descendants. This enables customization of MIME items collection handling.

```
TOnUnknownEncodingEvent = procedure(Sender: TRequest;
const ContentType: string;
Stream: TStream) of object
```

`TOnUnknownEncodingEvent` is an event type triggered when unknown content encoding is encountered. It allows custom handling of content with unrecognized encoding through the provided stream.

```
TRequestEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest) of
object
```

`TRequestEvent` is an event type for handling HTTP request processing. It provides access to the request object during various stages of request handling.

```
TResponseEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; AResponse: TResponse)
of object
```

`TResponseEvent` is an event type for handling HTTP response processing. It provides access to the response object during various stages of response generation.

```
TSameSite = (ssEmpty, ssNone, ssStrict, ssLax)
```

Table 35.5: Enumeration values for type `TSameSite`

Value	Explanation
<code>ssEmpty</code>	No SameSite attribute
<code>ssLax</code>	Send with top-level navigation
<code>ssNone</code>	Send with all cross-site requests
<code>ssStrict</code>	Send only with same-site requests

`TSameSite` defines the possible values for the SameSite cookie attribute, which controls when cookies are sent with cross-site requests.

ssEmpty No SameSite attribute specified

ssNone Cookie sent with all cross-site requests

ssStrict Cookie only sent with same-site requests

ssLax Cookie sent with top-level navigation cross-site requests

```
TSessionState = (ssNew, ssExpired, ssActive, ssResponseInitialized)
```

Table 35.6: Enumeration values for type `TSessionState`

Value	Explanation
<code>ssActive</code>	Active session state
<code>ssExpired</code>	Expired session state
<code>ssNew</code>	New session state
<code>ssResponseInitialized</code>	Response initialized session state

`TSessionState` defines the possible states of an HTTP session. This enumeration tracks the lifecycle of user sessions from creation to expiration.

```
TSessionStates = Set of TSessionState = (ssActive, ssExpired, ssNew, ssResponseInitialized)
```

`TSessionStates` represents a set of `TSessionState` (1166) values. It is used to track multiple session states simultaneously during session management.

```
TUploadedFileClass = class of TUploadedFile
```

`TUploadedFileClass` is a class reference type that allows creating instances of `TUploadedFile` or its descendants. This enables customization of uploaded file handling by using derived classes.

```
TUploadedFilesClass = class of TUploadedFiles
```

`TUploadedFilesClass` is a class reference type for creating instances of `TUploadedFiles` or its descendants. This enables customization of uploaded files collection handling.

35.8.3 Variables

```
MimeTypeClass : TMimeTypeClass = Nil
```

`MimeTypeClass` is a global class reference variable for `TMimeType` ([1198](#)). It allows customization of the MIME item class used for individual content items.

```
MimeItemsClass : TMimeItemsClass = TMimeItems
```

`MimeItemsClass` is a global class reference variable for `TMimeItems` ([1201](#)). It allows customization of the MIME items collection class used for content processing.

```
UploadedFileClass : TUploadedFileClass = TUploadedFile
```

`UploadedFileClass` is a global class reference variable for `TUploadedFile` ([1215](#)). It allows customization of the uploaded file class used for individual file uploads.

```
UploadedFilesClass : TUploadedFilesClass = TUploadedFiles
```

`UploadedFilesClass` is a global class reference variable for `TUploadedFiles` ([1217](#)). It allows customization of the uploaded files collection class used throughout the HTTP framework.

35.9 Procedures and functions

35.9.1 HTTPDecode

Synopsis: Decodes URL-encoded string

Declaration: `function HTTPDecode(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `HTTPDecode` converts a URL-encoded string back to its original form, replacing percent-encoded characters with their actual values.

See also: `HTTPEncode` ([1167](#))

35.9.2 HTTPEncode

Synopsis: Encodes string for URL transmission

Declaration: `function HTTPEncode(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `HTTPEncode` converts a string to URL-encoded format, replacing special characters with percent-encoded representations suitable for HTTP transmission.

See also: `HTTPDecode` ([1167](#))

35.9.3 IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Ensures path ends with forward slash

Declaration: `function IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter` appends a forward slash ('/') to the end of a path string if it doesn't already end with one, ensuring proper HTTP path formatting.

35.10 EHTTP

35.10.1 Description

`EHTTP` is an exception class for HTTP-related errors. It includes properties for HTTP status code and status text.

See also: `HTTPError` ([1163](#))

35.10.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1168	<code>StatusCode</code>	rw	HTTP status code of the error
1168	<code>StatusText</code>	rw	HTTP status text of the error

35.10.3 EHTTP.StatusCode

Synopsis: HTTP status code of the error

Declaration: `Property StatusCode : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StatusCode` contains the HTTP status code associated with the error. This numeric code indicates the type of HTTP error that occurred.

35.10.4 EHTTP.StatusText

Synopsis: HTTP status text of the error

Declaration: `Property StatusText : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StatusText` contains the textual description of the HTTP status code. This provides a human-readable explanation of the error condition.

35.11 TCookie

35.11.1 Description

`TCookie` represents an HTTP cookie with all its attributes. It provides properties for name, value, domain, path, expiration, security settings, and other cookie attributes.

See also: `TCookies` ([1172](#)), `TSameSite` ([1166](#))

35.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1169	<code>Assign</code>	Assigns values from another persistent object
1169	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new cookie instance
1170	<code>Expire</code>	Marks the cookie as expired

35.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1172	<code>AsString</code>	<code>r</code>	String representation of the cookie
1170	<code>Domain</code>	<code>rw</code>	Cookie domain restriction
1171	<code>Expires</code>	<code>rw</code>	Expiration date and time of the cookie
1171	<code>HttpOnly</code>	<code>rw</code>	HTTP-only access flag
1170	<code>Name</code>	<code>rw</code>	Cookie name
1171	<code>Path</code>	<code>rw</code>	Path attribute of the cookie
1172	<code>SameSite</code>	<code>rw</code>	SameSite attribute of the cookie
1171	<code>Secure</code>	<code>rw</code>	Cookie security flag
1170	<code>Value</code>	<code>rw</code>	Cookie value

35.11.4 TCookie.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new cookie instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TCookie` instance as part of the specified collection.

See also: `TCookies` ([1172](#))

35.11.5 TCookie.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns values from another persistent object

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies all cookie properties from the source `TCookie` object to this instance.

35.11.6 TCookie.Expire

Synopsis: Marks the cookie as expired

Declaration: `procedure Expire`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expire` sets the cookie's expiration date to a past date, causing the client to delete the cookie.

See also: `Expires` ([1171](#))

35.11.7 TCookie.Name

Synopsis: Cookie name

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` specifies the name of the cookie. This is the identifier used to reference the cookie.

See also: `Value` ([1170](#))

35.11.8 TCookie.Value

Synopsis: Cookie value

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` contains the data stored in the cookie. This is the information that will be sent back by the client.

See also: `Name` ([1170](#))

35.11.9 TCookie.Domain

Synopsis: Cookie domain restriction

Declaration: `Property Domain : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Domain` specifies which domain the cookie applies to. If empty, the cookie applies only to the current domain.

See also: `Path` ([1171](#))

35.11.10 TCookie.Path

Synopsis: Path attribute of the cookie

Declaration: `Property Path : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Path` specifies the URL path that must exist in the requested URL for the browser to send the cookie. If not specified, defaults to the path of the request URL that generated the cookie.

35.11.11 TCookie.Expires

Synopsis: Expiration date and time of the cookie

Declaration: `Property Expires : TDateTime`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Expires` specifies when the cookie should expire. After this date and time, the browser will delete the cookie automatically.

35.11.12 TCookie.Secure

Synopsis: Cookie security flag

Declaration: `Property Secure : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Secure` determines whether the cookie should only be sent over secure (HTTPS) connections. When `True`, the cookie will not be sent over unencrypted HTTP connections.

See also: `HttpOnly` ([1171](#)), `SameSite` ([1172](#))

35.11.13 TCookie.HttpOnly

Synopsis: HTTP-only access flag

Declaration: `Property HttpOnly : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HttpOnly` when `True` prevents client-side scripts from accessing the cookie, reducing the risk of cross-site scripting (XSS) attacks.

See also: `Secure` ([1171](#))

35.11.14 TCookie.SameSite

Synopsis: SameSite attribute of the cookie

Declaration: `Property SameSite : TSameSite`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SameSite` controls whether cookies are sent with cross-site requests. This attribute helps prevent cross-site request forgery attacks.

35.11.15 TCookie.AsString

Synopsis: String representation of the cookie

Declaration: `Property AsString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `AsString` returns the complete cookie as a string formatted according to HTTP cookie specifications. This includes the name, value, and all attributes formatted for transmission in HTTP headers.

35.12 TCookies

35.12.1 Description

`TCookies` is a collection class that manages multiple `TCookie` objects. It provides methods to add, find, and access cookies by name or index.

See also: `TCookie` ([1169](#))

35.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1172	<code>Add</code>	Adds a new cookie to the collection
1173	<code>CookieByName</code>	Finds a cookie by name
1173	<code>FindCookie</code>	Finds a cookie by name
1173	<code>IndexOfCookie</code>	Returns the index of a cookie by name

35.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1173	<code>Items</code>	rw	Cookie at the specified index

35.12.4 TCookies.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new cookie to the collection

Declaration: `function Add : TCookie`

Visibility: public

Description: Add creates and adds a new `TCookie` instance to the collection, returning a reference to it.

See also: `AddFromString` ([1172](#))

35.12.5 `TCookies.CookieByName`

Synopsis: Finds a cookie by name

Declaration: `function CookieByName (AName: string) : TCookie`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CookieByName` searches for and returns a cookie with the specified name. If no cookie is found, it returns `nil`.

See also: `FindCookie` ([1173](#)), `IndexOfCookie` ([1173](#))

35.12.6 `TCookies.FindCookie`

Synopsis: Finds a cookie by name

Declaration: `function FindCookie (AName: string) : TCookie`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindCookie` searches for a cookie with the specified name and returns it. Returns `nil` if no cookie with the given name is found.

35.12.7 `TCookies.IndexOfCookie`

Synopsis: Returns the index of a cookie by name

Declaration: `function IndexOfCookie (AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOfCookie` returns the zero-based index of the cookie with the specified name. Returns `-1` if no cookie with the given name is found.

35.12.8 `TCookies.Items`

Synopsis: Cookie at the specified index

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TCookie; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to cookies in the collection. This is the default array property for the `TCookies` class.

35.13 TCORSSupport

35.13.1 Description

TCORSSupport provides functionality for handling CORS (Cross-Origin Resource Sharing) requests. It manages allowed origins, methods, headers, and other CORS-related settings.

See also: TCORSSupportOptions (1163), THandleCORSOptions (1163)

35.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1175	Assign	Assigns CORS settings from another object
1174	Create	Creates a new CORS support instance
1175	HandleRequest	Handles CORS request processing
1174	ResolvedCORSAllowedOrigins	Resolves allowed origins for CORS requests

35.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1176	AllowedHeaders	rw	Headers allowed for CORS requests
1175	AllowedMethods	rw	HTTP methods allowed for CORS requests
1176	AllowedOrigins	rw	Origins allowed for CORS requests
1175	Enabled	rw	Enables or disables CORS support
1176	MaxAge	rw	Maximum age for CORS preflight cache in seconds
1175	Options	rw	CORS configuration options

35.13.4 TCORSSupport.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new CORS support instance

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Create constructs a new CORS support instance with the specified owner. It initializes the CORS configuration with default values.

35.13.5 TCORSSupport.ResolvedCORSAllowedOrigins

Synopsis: Resolves allowed origins for CORS requests

Declaration: `function ResolvedCORSAllowedOrigins(aRequest: TRequest) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: ResolvedCORSAllowedOrigins resolves the list of allowed origins for the current request. It processes the configured origins and returns the applicable ones based on the request context.

35.13.6 TCORSSupport.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles CORS request processing

Declaration: `function HandleRequest (aRequest: TRequest; aResponse: TResponse;
aOptions: THandleCORSSOptions=[hcDetect]) : Boolean
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `HandleRequest` processes CORS headers and validation for the HTTP request. It returns the appropriate CORS handling result based on the request and configuration.

35.13.7 TCORSSupport.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns CORS settings from another object

Declaration: `procedure Assign (Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` copies CORS configuration settings from another `TCORSSupport` instance. It transfers all CORS options, origins, methods, and headers to the current instance.

35.13.8 TCORSSupport.Enabled

Synopsis: Enables or disables CORS support

Declaration: `Property Enabled : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Enabled` controls whether CORS processing is active. When `True`, CORS headers are processed and validated for cross-origin requests.

35.13.9 TCORSSupport.Options

Synopsis: CORS configuration options

Declaration: `Property Options : TCORSSOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` contains the set of CORS configuration options ([1163](#)). These options control various aspects of CORS behavior such as credential handling.

35.13.10 TCORSSupport.AllowedMethods

Synopsis: HTTP methods allowed for CORS requests

Declaration: `Property AllowedMethods : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AllowedMethods` specifies the HTTP methods permitted for cross-origin requests. Common methods include GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, and OPTIONS.

35.13.11 `TCORSSupport.AllowedOrigins`

Synopsis: Origins allowed for CORS requests

Declaration: `Property AllowedOrigins : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AllowedOrigins` contains the list of origins permitted to make cross-origin requests. Origins can be specific domains or wildcard patterns for broader access.

35.13.12 `TCORSSupport.AllowedHeaders`

Synopsis: Headers allowed for CORS requests

Declaration: `Property AllowedHeaders : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AllowedHeaders` specifies the HTTP headers that are permitted in cross-origin requests. This controls which headers clients can include in their CORS requests.

35.13.13 `TCORSSupport.MaxAge`

Synopsis: Maximum age for CORS preflight cache in seconds

Declaration: `Property MaxAge : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxAge` specifies how long browsers may cache CORS preflight responses. This value is sent in the `Access-Control-Max-Age` header to control preflight caching.

35.14 `TCustomSession`

35.14.1 Description

`TCustomSession` provides the foundation for HTTP session management functionality. It handles session initialization, variable management, state tracking, and cleanup operations.

35.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1177	Create	Creates a new session instance
1177	InitResponse	Initializes the HTTP response for the session
1177	InitSession	Initializes the session from HTTP request
1178	RemoveVariable	Removes a variable from the session
1178	SessionVariableExists	Checks if a session variable exists
1178	Terminate	Terminates and invalidates the session
1178	UpdateResponse	Updates the HTTP response with session information

35.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1180	OnSessionStateChange	rw	Event triggered when session state changes
1179	SessionCookie	rw	Name of the cookie used to store session ID
1179	SessionCookiePath	rw	Path attribute for the session cookie
1179	SessionID	r	Unique identifier for the session
1180	SessionState	r	Current state of the session
1178	TimeoutMinutes	rw	Session timeout period in minutes
1179	Variables	rw	Access to session variables by name

35.14.4 TCustomSession.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new session instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` constructs a new session instance with the specified owner. It initializes the session with default values and prepares it for use.

35.14.5 TCustomSession.InitSession

Synopsis: Initializes the session from HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure InitSession(ARequest: TRequest; OnNewSession: TNotifyEvent;
OnExpired: TNotifyEvent); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `InitSession` initializes the session using data from the HTTP request. It reads session cookies and triggers the new session event handler if needed.

35.14.6 TCustomSession.InitResponse

Synopsis: Initializes the HTTP response for the session

Declaration: `procedure InitResponse(AResponse: TResponse); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `InitResponse` initializes the HTTP response for session handling. It sets up response headers and cookies required for session management.

35.14.7 TCustomSession.UpdateResponse

Synopsis: Updates the HTTP response with session information

Declaration: `procedure UpdateResponse (AResponse: TResponse); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateResponse` updates the HTTP response with current session information. It ensures session cookies and headers are properly set in the response.

35.14.8 TCustomSession.RemoveVariable

Synopsis: Removes a variable from the session

Declaration: `procedure RemoveVariable (VariableName: string); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `RemoveVariable` removes the specified variable from the session storage. The variable name is case-insensitive for removal operations.

35.14.9 TCustomSession.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminates and invalidates the session

Declaration: `procedure Terminate; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Terminate` terminates the current session and cleans up session data. It marks the session for deletion and removes associated cookies from the response.

35.14.10 TCustomSession.SessionVariableExists

Synopsis: Checks if a session variable exists

Declaration: `function SessionVariableExists (VarName: string) : Boolean; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `SessionVariableExists` checks whether a variable with the specified name exists in the session. Returns `True` if the variable exists, `False` otherwise.

35.14.11 TCustomSession.TimeOutMinutes

Synopsis: Session timeout period in minutes

Declaration: `Property TimeOutMinutes : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TimeOutMinutes` specifies the session timeout period in minutes. Sessions that remain inactive longer than this period will expire automatically.

35.14.12 TCustomSession.SessionID

Synopsis: Unique identifier for the session

Declaration: `Property SessionID : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `SessionID` contains the unique identifier for the current session. This identifier is used to track and maintain session state across HTTP requests.

35.14.13 TCustomSession.SessionCookie

Synopsis: Name of the cookie used to store session ID

Declaration: `Property SessionCookie : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SessionCookie` specifies the name of the HTTP cookie used to store the session ID. This cookie name is used for both reading and writing session information.

35.14.14 TCustomSession.SessionCookiePath

Synopsis: Path attribute for the session cookie

Declaration: `Property SessionCookiePath : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SessionCookiePath` defines the path scope for the session cookie. The cookie will only be sent for requests matching this path prefix.

35.14.15 TCustomSession.Variables

Synopsis: Access to session variables by name

Declaration: `Property Variables[VarName: string]: string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Variables` provides access to the session variables collection. It allows storing and retrieving named values that persist across HTTP requests within the session.

35.14.16 TCustomSession.SessionState

Synopsis: Current state of the session

Declaration: Property SessionState : TSessionStates

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: SessionState indicates the current state of the session. It tracks whether the session is new, active, or has been terminated.

35.14.17 TCustomSession.OnSessionStateChange

Synopsis: Event triggered when session state changes

Declaration: Property OnSessionStateChange : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnSessionStateChange is triggered when the session state changes. It allows monitoring and responding to session state transitions.

35.15 THTTPHeader**35.15.1 Description**

THTTPHeader provides common functionality for handling HTTP headers, variables, and content. It serves as the base class for both TRequest and TResponse classes.

See also: TRequest ([1202](#)), TResponse ([1208](#))

35.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1183	Create	Creates an HTTP header instance
1183	Destroy	Destroys the HTTP header instance
1184	GetCustomHeader	Gets a custom header field value by name
1184	GetFieldByName	Gets a header field value by field name
1183	GetHeader	Gets the value of a specific header field
1184	GetVariableHeaderName	Gets the header field name for an HTTP variable type
1183	HeaderIsSet	Checks if a specific header field is set
1185	LoadFromStream	Loads HTTP headers from a stream
1185	LoadFromStrings	Loads HTTP headers from a string list
1184	SetCustomHeader	Sets a custom header field value by name
1184	SetFieldByName	Sets a header field value by field name
1183	SetHeader	Sets the value of a specific header field

35.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1186	Accept	rw	Accept header field value
1186	AcceptCharset	rw	Accept-Charset header field value
1186	AcceptEncoding	rw	Accept-Encoding header field value
1187	AcceptLanguage	rw	Accept-Language header field value
1187	Authorization	rw	Authorization header field value
1187	Connection	rw	Connection header field value
1197	Content	rw	Request content as string
1187	ContentEncoding	rw	Content-Encoding header field value
1198	ContentFields	r	Collection of content form fields
1188	ContentLanguage	rw	Content-Language header field value
1188	ContentLength	rw	Content-Length header field value
1188	ContentType	rw	Content-Type header field value
1194	Cookie	rw	Cookie header field value
1198	CookieFields	rw	Collection of cookie name-value pairs
1198	CustomHeaders	r	Collection of custom header fields
1188	Date	rw	Date header field value
1189	Expires	rw	Expires header field value
1185	FieldCount	r	Number of header fields
1185	FieldNames	r	Name of the header field at the specified index
1185	Fields	r	Header field name and value at the specified index
1186	FieldValues	r	Value of the header field at the specified index
1189	From	rw	From header field value
1189	Host	rw	Host header field value
1192	HTTPAccept	rw	HTTP Accept header accessor property
1192	HTTPAcceptCharset	rw	HTTP Accept-Charset header accessor property
1193	HTTPAcceptEncoding	rw	HTTP Accept-Encoding header accessor property
1193	HTTPIfModifiedSince	rw	HTTP If-Modified-Since header accessor property
1193	HTTPReferer	rw	HTTP Referer header accessor property
1193	HTTPUserAgent	rw	HTTP User-Agent header accessor property
1194	HttpVersion	rw	HTTP protocol version
1194	HTTPXRequestedWith	rw	HTTP X-Requested-With header accessor property
1189	IfModifiedSince	rw	If-Modified-Since header field value
1190	LastModified	rw	Last-Modified header field value
1190	Location	rw	Location header field value
1197	Method	rw	HTTP request method
1195	PathInfo	rw	PATH_INFO environment variable value
1195	PathTranslated	rw	PATH_TRANSLATED environment variable value
1190	Pragma	rw	Pragma header field value
1195	ProtocolVersion	rw	Protocol version string
1197	Query	rw	QUERY_STRING environment variable value
1198	QueryFields	r	Collection of query string name-value pairs
1190	Referer	rw	Referer header field value
1196	RemoteAddr	rw	Alias for RemoteAddress property
1195	RemoteAddress	rw	REMOTE_ADDR environment variable value
1196	RemoteHost	rw	REMOTE_HOST environment variable value
1191	RetryAfter	rw	Retry-After header field value
1196	ScriptName	rw	SCRIPT_NAME environment variable value
1191	Server	rw	Server header field value
1196	ServerPort	rw	SERVER_PORT environment variable value
1194	SetCookie	rw	Set-Cookie header field value
1197	URL	rw	Complete request URL
1191	UserAgent	rw	User-Agent header field value
1192	Via	rw	Via header field value
1191	Warning	rw	Warning header field value
1192	WWWAuthenticate	rw	WWW-Authenticate header field value

35.15.4 THTTPHeader.Create

Synopsis: Creates an HTTP header instance

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new HTTP header instance. This sets up the internal structures for managing HTTP header fields and variables.

35.15.5 THTTPHeader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP header instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up resources used by the HTTP header instance. This includes freeing internal collections and associated objects.

35.15.6 THTTPHeader.HeaderIsSet

Synopsis: Checks if a specific header field is set

Declaration: `function HeaderIsSet(AHeader: THeader) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HeaderIsSet` determines whether a specific HTTP header field has been set. Returns `True` if the header field contains a value, `False` otherwise.

35.15.7 THTTPHeader.GetHeader

Synopsis: Gets the value of a specific header field

Declaration: `function GetHeader(AHeader: THeader) : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetHeader` retrieves the value of a specific HTTP header field. Returns an empty string if the header field is not set.

35.15.8 THTTPHeader.SetHeader

Synopsis: Sets the value of a specific header field

Declaration: `procedure SetHeader(AHeader: THeader; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetHeader` assigns a value to a specific HTTP header field. This method updates the header field with the provided value.

35.15.9 THTTPHeader.SetFieldByName

Synopsis: Sets a header field value by field name

Declaration: `procedure SetFieldByName(const AName: string; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFieldByName` sets a header field value using the field name as a string. This provides a flexible way to set header fields by name rather than by enumerated type.

35.15.10 THTTPHeader.GetFieldByName

Synopsis: Gets a header field value by field name

Declaration: `function GetFieldByName(const AName: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldByName` retrieves a header field value using the field name as a string. Returns an empty string if the field is not found.

35.15.11 THTTPHeader.GetVariableHeaderName

Synopsis: Gets the header field name for an HTTP variable type

Declaration: `class function GetVariableHeaderName(AVariable: THTTPVariableType)
: string`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetVariableHeaderName` returns the HTTP header field name corresponding to a given HTTP variable type. This provides the mapping from enumerated types to header field strings.

35.15.12 THTTPHeader.GetCustomHeader

Synopsis: Gets a custom header field value by name

Declaration: `function GetCustomHeader(const Name: string) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetCustomHeader` retrieves the value of a custom (non-standard) HTTP header field. Custom headers are typically application-specific extensions to the standard HTTP headers.

35.15.13 THTTPHeader.SetCustomHeader

Synopsis: Sets a custom header field value by name

Declaration: `procedure SetCustomHeader(const Name: string; const Value: string)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetCustomHeader` assigns a value to a custom (non-standard) HTTP header field. This allows setting application-specific header extensions beyond standard HTTP headers.

35.15.14 THTTPHeader.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads HTTP headers from a stream

Declaration: `function LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream; IncludeCommand: Boolean)
: Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` parses HTTP header data from a stream and populates the header fields. This method can optionally include parsing of the command line (request/status line).

35.15.15 THTTPHeader.LoadFromStrings

Synopsis: Loads HTTP headers from a string list

Declaration: `function LoadFromStrings(Strings: TStrings; IncludeCommand: Boolean)
: Integer; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStrings` parses HTTP header data from a string list and populates the header fields. Each string in the list represents a header line in standard HTTP format.

35.15.16 THTTPHeader.FieldCount

Synopsis: Number of header fields

Declaration: `Property FieldCount : Integer; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldCount` returns the total number of header fields that have been set. This includes both standard and custom header fields.

35.15.17 THTTPHeader.Fields

Synopsis: Header field name and value at the specified index

Declaration: `Property Fields[AIndex: Integer]: string; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Fields` provides indexed access to header field name-value pairs. Returns the complete field in the format 'Name: Value'.

35.15.18 THTTPHeader.FieldNames

Synopsis: Name of the header field at the specified index

Declaration: `Property FieldNames[AIndex: Integer]: string; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldNames` provides indexed access to header field names only. This returns just the name portion without the value.

35.15.19 `THTTPHeader.FieldValues`

Synopsis: Value of the header field at the specified index

Declaration: `Property FieldValues[AIndex: Integer]: string; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `FieldValues` provides indexed access to header field values only. This returns just the value portion without the field name.

35.15.20 `THTTPHeader.Accept`

Synopsis: Accept header field value

Declaration: `Property Accept : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Accept` contains the `Accept` header field value, which specifies the media types that are acceptable for the response. This indicates what content types the client can process.

35.15.21 `THTTPHeader.AcceptCharset`

Synopsis: Accept-Charset header field value

Declaration: `Property AcceptCharset : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AcceptCharset` contains the `Accept-Charset` header field value, which specifies the character encodings that are acceptable for the response.

35.15.22 `THTTPHeader.AcceptEncoding`

Synopsis: Accept-Encoding header field value

Declaration: `Property AcceptEncoding : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AcceptEncoding` contains the `Accept-Encoding` header field value, which specifies the content encodings that are acceptable for the response. This typically includes compression methods like `gzip` or `deflate`.

35.15.23 THTTPHeader.AcceptLanguage

Synopsis: Accept-Language header field value

Declaration: `Property AcceptLanguage : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AcceptLanguage` contains the `Accept-Language` header field value, which specifies the natural languages that are preferred for the response.

35.15.24 THTTPHeader.Authorization

Synopsis: Authorization header field value

Declaration: `Property Authorization : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Authorization` contains the `Authorization` header field value, which provides authentication credentials for the request. This typically includes the authentication scheme and credentials.

35.15.25 THTTPHeader.Connection

Synopsis: Connection header field value

Declaration: `Property Connection : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Connection` contains the `Connection` header field value, which specifies connection options for the current connection. Common values include 'keep-alive' and 'close'.

35.15.26 THTTPHeader.ContentEncoding

Synopsis: Content-Encoding header field value

Declaration: `Property ContentEncoding : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentEncoding` contains the `Content-Encoding` header field value, which specifies any encoding applied to the entity body. This typically indicates compression methods like gzip or deflate.

35.15.27 THTTPHeader.ContentLanguage

Synopsis: Content-Language header field value

Declaration: `Property ContentLanguage : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentLanguage` contains the `Content-Language` header field value, which specifies the natural language of the content. This indicates what language the content is written in.

35.15.28 THTTPHeader.ContentLength

Synopsis: Content-Length header field value

Declaration: `Property ContentLength : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentLength` contains the `Content-Length` header field value, which indicates the size of the entity body in bytes. This specifies the exact length of the message body.

35.15.29 THTTPHeader.ContentType

Synopsis: Content-Type header field value

Declaration: `Property ContentType : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentType` contains the `Content-Type` header field value, which specifies the media type of the entity body. This indicates the format and nature of the content (e.g., 'text/html', 'application/json').

35.15.30 THTTPHeader.Date

Synopsis: Date header field value

Declaration: `Property Date : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Date` contains the `Date` header field value, which represents the date and time when the message was sent. This is formatted according to RFC 7231 date format.

35.15.31 THTTPHeader.Expires

Synopsis: Expires header field value

Declaration: `Property Expires : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Expires` contains the `Expires` header field value, which specifies when the content expires and should be considered stale. This is used for caching control.

35.15.32 THTTPHeader.From

Synopsis: From header field value

Declaration: `Property From : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `From` contains the `From` header field value, which specifies the email address of the user making the request. This is rarely used in practice due to privacy concerns.

35.15.33 THTTPHeader.Host

Synopsis: Host header field value

Declaration: `Property Host : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Host` contains the `Host` header field value, which specifies the hostname and port of the target server. This is required in HTTP/1.1 requests.

35.15.34 THTTPHeader.IfModifiedSince

Synopsis: If-Modified-Since header field value

Declaration: `Property IfModifiedSince : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IfModifiedSince` contains the `If-Modified-Since` header field value, which allows conditional requests. The server will only return the resource if it has been modified since the specified date.

35.15.35 THTTPHeader.LastModified

Synopsis: Last-Modified header field value

Declaration: `Property LastModified : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LastModified` contains the Last-Modified header field value, which indicates when the resource was last modified. This is used for caching and conditional request processing.

35.15.36 THTTPHeader.Location

Synopsis: Location header field value

Declaration: `Property Location : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Location` contains the Location header field value, which specifies a URI for redirection or location of a newly created resource. This is commonly used in redirect responses.

35.15.37 THTTPHeader.Pragma

Synopsis: Pragma header field value

Declaration: `Property Pragma : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Pragma` contains the Pragma header field value, which provides implementation-specific directives. This is primarily used for backwards compatibility with HTTP/1.0 caches.

35.15.38 THTTPHeader.Referer

Synopsis: Referer header field value

Declaration: `Property Referer : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Referer` contains the Referer header field value, which identifies the URI of the resource from which the request was made. This indicates the previous page that linked to the current request.

35.15.39 THTTPHeader.RetryAfter

Synopsis: Retry-After header field value

Declaration: `Property RetryAfter : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RetryAfter` contains the `Retry-After` header field value, which indicates when the client should retry the request. This is used in responses with 503 (Service Unavailable) or 429 (Too Many Requests) status codes.

35.15.40 THTTPHeader.Server

Synopsis: Server header field value

Declaration: `Property Server : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Server` contains the `Server` header field value, which identifies the server software handling the request. This typically includes the server name and version information.

35.15.41 THTTPHeader.UserAgent

Synopsis: User-Agent header field value

Declaration: `Property UserAgent : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserAgent` contains the `User-Agent` header field value, which identifies the client application making the request. This typically includes browser name, version, and operating system information.

35.15.42 THTTPHeader.Warning

Synopsis: Warning header field value

Declaration: `Property Warning : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Warning` contains the `Warning` header field value, which provides additional information about the status of a message. This is used to convey warnings that might not be reflected in the status code.

35.15.43 THTTPHeader.WWWAuthenticate

Synopsis: WWW-Authenticate header field value

Declaration: `Property WWWAuthenticate : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `WWWAuthenticate` contains the `WWW-Authenticate` header field value, which specifies the authentication schemes and parameters for the requested resource. This is sent in 401 (Unauthorized) responses to challenge the client for authentication.

35.15.44 THTTPHeader.Via

Synopsis: Via header field value

Declaration: `Property Via : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Via` contains the `Via` header field value, which tracks intermediate proxies and gateways. This header is used by proxies to indicate their presence in the request/response chain.

35.15.45 THTTPHeader.HTTPAccept

Synopsis: HTTP Accept header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPAccept : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPAccept` is an alias for the `Accept` property. This provides alternative access to the `Accept` header field value.

35.15.46 THTTPHeader.HTTPAcceptCharset

Synopsis: HTTP Accept-Charset header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPAcceptCharset : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPAcceptCharset` is an alias for the `AcceptCharset` property. This provides alternative access to the `Accept-Charset` header field value.

35.15.47 THTTPHeader.HTTPAcceptEncoding

Synopsis: HTTP Accept-Encoding header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPAcceptEncoding : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPAcceptEncoding` is an alias for the `AcceptEncoding` property. This provides alternative access to the Accept-Encoding header field value.

35.15.48 THTTPHeader.HTTPIfModifiedSince

Synopsis: HTTP If-Modified-Since header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPIfModifiedSince : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPIfModifiedSince` is an alias for the `IfModifiedSince` property. This provides alternative access to the If-Modified-Since header field value.

35.15.49 THTTPHeader.HTTPReferer

Synopsis: HTTP Referer header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPReferer : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPReferer` is an alias for the `Referer` property. This provides alternative access to the Referer header field value.

35.15.50 THTTPHeader.HTTPUserAgent

Synopsis: HTTP User-Agent header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPUserAgent : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HTTPUserAgent` is an alias for the `UserAgent` property. This provides alternative access to the User-Agent header field value.

35.15.51 THTTPHeader.Cookie

Synopsis: Cookie header field value

Declaration: `Property Cookie : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Cookie` contains the `Cookie` header field value sent by the client. This includes all cookies that the client is sending to the server for this request.

35.15.52 THTTPHeader.SetCookie

Synopsis: Set-Cookie header field value

Declaration: `Property SetCookie : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SetCookie` contains the `Set-Cookie` header field value to be sent to the client. This is used by servers to send cookies to the client for storage and future requests.

35.15.53 THTTPHeader.HTTPXRequestedWith

Synopsis: HTTP X-Requested-With header accessor property

Declaration: `Property HTTPXRequestedWith : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HTTPXRequestedWith` contains the `X-Requested-With` header field value. This is commonly used by JavaScript frameworks to identify AJAX requests (typically set to `'XMLHttpRequest'`).

35.15.54 THTTPHeader.HttpVersion

Synopsis: HTTP protocol version

Declaration: `Property HttpVersion : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HttpVersion` contains the HTTP protocol version used in the request or response. This indicates the HTTP version such as `'1.0'`, `'1.1'`, or `'2.0'`.

35.15.55 THTTPHeader.ProtocolVersion

Synopsis: Protocol version string

Declaration: `Property ProtocolVersion : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ProtocolVersion` is an alias for `HttpVersion`. This provides alternative access to the HTTP protocol version information.

35.15.56 THTTPHeader.PathInfo

Synopsis: `PATH_INFO` environment variable value

Declaration: `Property PathInfo : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PathInfo` contains the `PATH_INFO` environment variable value. This represents additional path information following the script name in the URL.

35.15.57 THTTPHeader.PathTranslated

Synopsis: `PATH_TRANSLATED` environment variable value

Declaration: `Property PathTranslated : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `PathTranslated` contains the `PATH_TRANSLATED` environment variable value. This represents the translated path information mapped to the file system.

35.15.58 THTTPHeader.RemoteAddress

Synopsis: `REMOTE_ADDR` environment variable value

Declaration: `Property RemoteAddress : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RemoteAddress` contains the IP address of the client making the request. This corresponds to the `REMOTE_ADDR` environment variable in CGI.

35.15.59 THTTPHeader.RemoteAddr

Synopsis: Alias for RemoteAddress property

Declaration: `Property RemoteAddr : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: RemoteAddr is an alias for the RemoteAddress property. This provides alternative access to the client's IP address information.

35.15.60 THTTPHeader.RemoteHost

Synopsis: REMOTE_HOST environment variable value

Declaration: `Property RemoteHost : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: RemoteHost contains the hostname of the client making the request. This corresponds to the REMOTE_HOST environment variable in CGI.

35.15.61 THTTPHeader.ScriptName

Synopsis: SCRIPT_NAME environment variable value

Declaration: `Property ScriptName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: ScriptName contains the name of the script being executed. This corresponds to the SCRIPT_NAME environment variable in CGI.

35.15.62 THTTPHeader.ServerPort

Synopsis: SERVER_PORT environment variable value

Declaration: `Property ServerPort : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: ServerPort contains the port number on which the server received the request. This corresponds to the SERVER_PORT environment variable in CGI.

35.15.63 THTTPHeader.Method

Synopsis: HTTP request method

Declaration: `Property Method : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Method` contains the HTTP request method used in the request. Common values include GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, HEAD, and OPTIONS.

35.15.64 THTTPHeader.URL

Synopsis: Complete request URL

Declaration: `Property URL : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `URL` contains the complete URL of the current request. This includes the protocol, host, port, path, and query string components.

35.15.65 THTTPHeader.Query

Synopsis: QUERY_STRING environment variable value

Declaration: `Property Query : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Query` contains the query string portion of the request URL. This includes all parameters passed in the URL after the '?' character.

35.15.66 THTTPHeader.Content

Synopsis: Request content as string

Declaration: `Property Content : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Content` contains the request body content as a string. This is typically used for POST requests with text-based content types.

35.15.67 THTTPHeader.CookieFields

Synopsis: Collection of cookie name-value pairs

Declaration: `Property CookieFields : TStringList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `CookieFields` provides access to the parsed cookie values as name-value pairs. This collection contains all cookies sent by the client in the request.

35.15.68 THTTPHeader.ContentFields

Synopsis: Collection of content form fields

Declaration: `Property ContentFields : TStringList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ContentFields` provides access to form field values from the request content. This collection contains parsed form data from POST requests.

35.15.69 THTTPHeader.QueryFields

Synopsis: Collection of query string name-value pairs

Declaration: `Property QueryFields : TStringList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `QueryFields` provides access to parsed query string parameters as name-value pairs. This collection contains all parameters passed in the URL query string.

35.15.70 THTTPHeader.CustomHeaders

Synopsis: Collection of custom header fields

Declaration: `Property CustomHeaders : TStringList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `CustomHeaders` provides access to custom (non-standard) HTTP header fields. This collection contains application-specific headers beyond the standard HTTP headers.

35.16 TMimeItem

35.16.1 Description

`TMimeItem` represents a single part within a MIME multipart message. It encapsulates the content, headers, and metadata for one item in a multipart HTTP request.

35.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1199	Process	Processes MIME data from a stream

35.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1200	ContentType	rw	Content type of the MIME item
1199	Data	rw	Processed MIME item data
1201	DataSize	r	Size of the MIME item data in bytes
1200	Description	rw	Description of the MIME item
1200	Disposition	rw	Content disposition of the MIME item
1200	FileName	rw	Filename attribute of the MIME item
1201	IsFile	r	Indicates whether the MIME item is a file
1199	Name	rw	Name attribute of the MIME item

35.16.4 TMimeItem.Process

Synopsis: Processes MIME data from a stream

Declaration: `procedure Process(Stream: TStream); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Process` reads and parses MIME data from the provided stream. This method processes the entire MIME item content in one operation.

35.16.5 TMimeItem.Data

Synopsis: Processed MIME item data

Declaration: `Property Data : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` contains the processed content of the MIME item. This is the decoded data after applying any content transfer encoding.

35.16.6 TMimeItem.Name

Synopsis: Name attribute of the MIME item

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Name` contains the name attribute from the Content-Disposition header. This typically corresponds to the form field name for form uploads.

35.16.7 TMimeItem.Disposition

Synopsis: Content disposition of the MIME item

Declaration: `Property Disposition : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Disposition` contains the complete Content-Disposition header value. This specifies how the content should be handled (e.g., 'form-data', 'attachment').

35.16.8 TMimeItem.FileName

Synopsis: Filename attribute of the MIME item

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` contains the filename attribute from the Content-Disposition header. This represents the original filename of an uploaded file.

35.16.9 TMimeItem.ContentType

Synopsis: Content type of the MIME item

Declaration: `Property ContentType : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentType` contains the MIME type of the item content. This indicates the format and nature of the data (e.g., 'text/plain', 'image/jpeg').

35.16.10 TMimeItem.Description

Synopsis: Description of the MIME item

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Description` contains the Content-Description header value if present. This provides additional descriptive information about the MIME item content.

35.16.11 TMimeItem.IsFile

Synopsis: Indicates whether the MIME item is a file

Declaration: `Property IsFile : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsFile` returns `True` if the MIME item represents a file upload. This is determined by the presence of a filename attribute in the Content-Disposition header.

35.16.12 TMimeItem.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the MIME item data in bytes

Declaration: `Property DataSize : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `DataSize` indicates the total size of the MIME item data in bytes. This represents the actual size of the content after any decoding.

35.17 TMimeItems

35.17.1 Description

`TMimeItems` manages a collection of `TMimeItem` instances representing the parts of a multipart MIME message. It provides access to the individual items and handles multipart parsing.

35.17.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1201	<code>First</code>	Returns the first MIME item in the collection
1202	<code>Last</code>	Returns the last MIME item in the collection

35.17.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1202	<code>Parts</code>	<code>r</code>	MIME item at the specified index

35.17.4 TMimeItems.First

Synopsis: Returns the first MIME item in the collection

Declaration: `function First : TMimeItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` returns the first `TMimeItem` in the collection. Returns `nil` if the collection is empty.

35.17.5 TMimeItems.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last MIME item in the collection

Declaration: `function Last : TMimeItem`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` returns the last `TMimeItem` in the collection. Returns `nil` if the collection is empty.

35.17.6 TMimeItems.Parts

Synopsis: MIME item at the specified index

Declaration: `Property Parts[AIndex: Integer]: TMimeItem; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Parts` provides indexed access to `TMimeItem` instances in the collection. This is the default array property for the `TMimeItems` class.

35.18 TRequest

35.18.1 Description

`TRequest` represents an HTTP request received by a web server. It extends `THTTPHeader` ([1180](#)) and provides access to request data including headers, query parameters, form data, uploaded files, and other request information.

See also: `TResponse` ([1208](#)), `THTTPHeader` ([1180](#)), `TUploadedFiles` ([1217](#))

35.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1203	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new request instance
1203	<code>destroy</code>	Destroys the HTTP request instance
1203	<code>GetNextPathInfo</code>	Gets the next path info segment

35.18.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1205	Command	r	HTTP command (method and URI)
1204	CommandLine	r	HTTP command line from request
1207	ContentRange	rw	Content-Range header field value
1206	Files	r	Collection of uploaded files
1206	HandleGetOnPost	rw	Whether to handle GET parameters on POST requests
1205	HeaderLine	r	Complete header line from request
1206	IfMatch	rw	If-Match header field value
1207	IfNoneMatch	rw	If-None-Match header field value
1207	IfRange	rw	If-Range header field value
1207	IfUnmodifiedSince	rw	If-Unmodified-Since header field value
1204	LocalPathPrefix	r	Local path prefix for the request
1206	OnUnknownEncoding	rw	Event handler for unknown content encoding
1205	QueryString	rw	Query string portion of the request
1204	ReturnedPathInfo	rw	Path info that was returned from <code>GetNextPathInfo</code>
1204	RouteParams	rw	Route parameter value by name
1208	TE	rw	TE (Transfer-Encoding) header field value
1208	Upgrade	rw	Upgrade header field value
1205	URI	rw	URI of the HTTP request

35.18.4 TRequest.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new request instance

Declaration: `constructor Create; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TRequest` object and allocates a unique request ID.

See also: `RequestID` ([1202](#))

35.18.5 TRequest.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP request instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `destroy` cleans up resources used by the HTTP request instance. This includes releasing uploaded files, form data, and other associated objects.

35.18.6 TRequest.GetNextPathInfo

Synopsis: Gets the next path info segment

Declaration: `function GetNextPathInfo : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNextPathInfo` retrieves the next segment from the path info. This is useful for processing REST-style URLs with multiple path segments.

35.18.7 TRequest.RouteParams

Synopsis: Route parameter value by name

Declaration: `Property RouteParams[AParam: string]: string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RouteParams` provides access to route parameters extracted from the URL path. These are typically used in REST-style routing systems to capture URL segments as parameters.

35.18.8 TRequest.ReturnedPathInfo

Synopsis: Path info that was returned from `GetNextPathInfo`

Declaration: `Property ReturnedPathInfo : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ReturnedPathInfo` contains the path info segment that was most recently returned by `GetNextPathInfo`. This allows tracking of the current position when processing path segments.

35.18.9 TRequest.LocalPathPrefix

Synopsis: Local path prefix for the request

Declaration: `Property LocalPathPrefix : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `LocalPathPrefix` contains the local path prefix that should be prepended to relative paths. This is useful for handling requests in subdirectories or virtual directories.

35.18.10 TRequest.CommandLine

Synopsis: HTTP command line from request

Declaration: `Property CommandLine : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `CommandLine` contains the complete HTTP command line from the request. This includes the method, URI, and HTTP version (e.g., 'GET /path HTTP/1.1').

35.18.11 TRequest.Command

Synopsis: HTTP command (method and URI)

Declaration: `Property Command : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Command` contains the HTTP method and URI portion of the command line. This excludes the HTTP version information.

35.18.12 TRequest.URI

Synopsis: URI of the HTTP request

Declaration: `Property URI : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `URI` contains the URI portion of the HTTP request. This includes the path and query string but excludes the protocol and host information.

35.18.13 TRequest.QueryString

Synopsis: Query string portion of the request

Declaration: `Property QueryString : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `QueryString` contains the query string portion of the request URL. This includes all parameters passed after the '?' character in the URL.

35.18.14 TRequest.HeaderLine

Synopsis: Complete header line from request

Declaration: `Property HeaderLine : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `HeaderLine` contains the complete first line of the HTTP request. This is the request line including method, URI, and HTTP version.

35.18.15 TRequest.Files

Synopsis: Collection of uploaded files

Declaration: `Property Files : TUploadedFiles`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Files` provides access to the collection of files uploaded with the request. This contains all files submitted through multipart form uploads.

35.18.16 TRequest.HandleGetOnPost

Synopsis: Whether to handle GET parameters on POST requests

Declaration: `Property HandleGetOnPost : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `HandleGetOnPost` determines whether GET parameters in the query string should be processed on POST requests. When `True`, both POST form data and GET query parameters are available.

35.18.17 TRequest.OnUnknownEncoding

Synopsis: Event handler for unknown content encoding

Declaration: `Property OnUnknownEncoding : TOnUnknownEncodingEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnUnknownEncoding` is an event that fires when an unknown content encoding is encountered. This allows custom handling of non-standard content encodings.

35.18.18 TRequest.IfMatch

Synopsis: If-Match header field value

Declaration: `Property IfMatch : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `IfMatch` contains the `If-Match` header field value for conditional requests. This specifies entity tags that must match for the request to proceed.

35.18.19 TRequest.IfNoneMatch

Synopsis: If-None-Match header field value

Declaration: `Property IfNoneMatch : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IfNoneMatch` contains the `If-None-Match` header field value for conditional requests. This specifies entity tags that must not match for the request to proceed.

35.18.20 TRequest.IfRange

Synopsis: If-Range header field value

Declaration: `Property IfRange : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IfRange` contains the `If-Range` header field value for conditional range requests. This allows range requests only if the entity matches the specified condition.

35.18.21 TRequest.IfUnmodifiedSince

Synopsis: If-Unmodified-Since header field value

Declaration: `Property IfUnmodifiedSince : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IfUnmodifiedSince` contains the `If-Unmodified-Since` header field value for conditional requests. This specifies that the request should only proceed if the resource has not been modified since the given date.

35.18.22 TRequest.ContentRange

Synopsis: Content-Range header field value

Declaration: `Property ContentRange : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentRange` contains the `Content-Range` header field value. This indicates which part of a resource is being sent in partial content responses.

35.18.23 TRequest.TE

Synopsis: TE (Transfer-Encoding) header field value

Declaration: `Property TE : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: TE contains the TE header field value, which specifies the transfer encodings the client is willing to accept. This is used in HTTP/1.1 for specifying acceptable transfer encodings.

35.18.24 TRequest.Upgrade

Synopsis: Upgrade header field value

Declaration: `Property Upgrade : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Upgrade contains the Upgrade header field value, which is used to upgrade the connection to a different protocol. Commonly used for WebSocket upgrades.

35.19 TResponse

35.19.1 Description

TResponse represents an HTTP response sent back to a client. It extends THTTPHeader and provides methods to set status codes, headers, content, cookies, and send the response data.

See also: TRequest ([1202](#)), THTTPHeader ([1180](#)), TCookies ([1172](#))

35.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1209	Create	Creates an HTTP response instance
1209	destroy	Destroys the HTTP response instance
1209	SendContent	Sends the response content to the client
1210	SendHeaders	Sends the response headers to the client
1210	SendRedirect	Sends a redirect response
1210	SendResponse	Sends the complete HTTP response

35.19.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1211	Age	rw	Age header value indicating response age in seconds
1211	Allow	rw	Allow header value listing permitted HTTP methods
1211	CacheControl	rw	Cache-Control header value for caching directives
1210	Code	rw	HTTP response status code
1211	CodeText	rw	HTTP response status text
1214	Content	rw	Response body content as string
1212	ContentLocation	rw	Content-Location header value for alternate location
1212	ContentMD5	rw	Content-MD5 header value with MD5 digest of content
1212	ContentRange	rw	Content-Range header value for partial content
1214	Contents	rw	String list containing response content lines
1214	ContentSent	r	Indicates whether response content has been sent
1213	ContentStream	rw	Stream containing response body content
1215	Cookies	r	Collection of HTTP cookies to send with response
1212	ETag	rw	ETag header value for entity tag validation
1213	FirstHeaderLine	rw	First line of HTTP response headers
1215	FreeContentStream	rw	Whether to automatically free the content stream
1214	HeadersSent	r	Indicates whether response headers have been sent
1213	ProxyAuthenticate	rw	Proxy-Authenticate header value for proxy authentication
1210	Request	r	Associated HTTP request object
1213	RetryAfter	rw	Retry-After header value indicating when to retry request

35.19.4 TResponse.Create

Synopsis: Creates an HTTP response instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(ARequest: TRequest); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new HTTP response instance associated with the specified request. This sets up the response structure and links it to the corresponding request.

35.19.5 TResponse.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP response instance

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `destroy` cleans up resources used by the HTTP response instance. This includes freeing any associated content streams and releasing memory.

35.19.6 TResponse.SendContent

Synopsis: Sends the response content to the client

Declaration: `procedure SendContent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendContent` transmits the response body content to the client. This method sends the actual data payload of the HTTP response.

35.19.7 TResponse.SendHeaders

Synopsis: Sends the response headers to the client

Declaration: `procedure SendHeaders`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendHeaders` transmits the HTTP headers to the client. This must be called before sending any content and includes the status line and all response headers.

35.19.8 TResponse.SendResponse

Synopsis: Sends the complete HTTP response

Declaration: `procedure SendResponse`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendResponse` sends both headers and content to the client, completing the HTTP response.

See also: `SendHeaders` ([1210](#)), `SendContent` ([1209](#))

35.19.9 TResponse.SendRedirect

Synopsis: Sends a redirect response

Declaration: `procedure SendRedirect(const TargetURL: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendRedirect` sends an HTTP redirect response to the client. This sets the appropriate status code and Location header to redirect the client to a new URL.

35.19.10 TResponse.Request

Synopsis: Associated HTTP request object

Declaration: `Property Request : TRequest`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Request` contains a reference to the HTTP request object that this response is answering. This provides access to the original request data for response generation.

35.19.11 TResponse.Code

Synopsis: HTTP response status code

Declaration: `Property Code : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Code` contains the HTTP status code for the response. Common values include 200 (OK), 404 (Not Found), and 500 (Internal Server Error).

35.19.12 TResponse.CodeText

Synopsis: HTTP response status text

Declaration: `Property CodeText : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CodeText` contains the reason phrase corresponding to the HTTP status code. This provides the descriptive text that accompanies the numeric status code.

35.19.13 TResponse.Age

Synopsis: Age header value indicating response age in seconds

Declaration: `Property Age : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Age` contains the Age header value, indicating how long the response has been cached. This value is measured in seconds since the response was generated.

35.19.14 TResponse.Allow

Synopsis: Allow header value listing permitted HTTP methods

Declaration: `Property Allow : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Allow` contains the Allow header value, which lists the HTTP methods supported by the resource. This is commonly used in response to `OPTIONS` requests or with `405 Method Not Allowed` responses.

35.19.15 TResponse.CacheControl

Synopsis: Cache-Control header value for caching directives

Declaration: `Property CacheControl : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CacheControl` contains the Cache-Control header value with caching directives. This controls how the response should be cached by browsers and intermediate caches.

35.19.16 TResponse.ContentLocation

Synopsis: Content-Location header value for alternate location

Declaration: `Property ContentLocation : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ContentLocation` contains the Content-Location header value. This indicates an alternate location for the content that is being returned.

35.19.17 TResponse.ContentMD5

Synopsis: Content-MD5 header value with MD5 digest of content

Declaration: `Property ContentMD5 : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ContentMD5` contains the Content-MD5 header value with an MD5 digest of the response content. This provides integrity checking for the transmitted content.

35.19.18 TResponse.ContentRange

Synopsis: Content-Range header value for partial content

Declaration: `Property ContentRange : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ContentRange` contains the Content-Range header value for partial content responses. This is used in 206 Partial Content responses to indicate which portion of the resource is being sent.

35.19.19 TResponse.ETag

Synopsis: ETag header value for entity tag validation

Declaration: `Property ETag : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ETag` contains the ETag header value, which is an entity tag for cache validation. This provides a mechanism for efficient cache validation and conditional requests.

35.19.20 TResponse.ProxyAuthenticate

Synopsis: Proxy-Authenticate header value for proxy authentication

Declaration: `Property ProxyAuthenticate : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ProxyAuthenticate` contains the Proxy-Authenticate header value. This is sent in 407 Proxy Authentication Required responses to challenge the client for proxy authentication.

35.19.21 TResponse.RetryAfter

Synopsis: Retry-After header value indicating when to retry request

Declaration: `Property RetryAfter : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `RetryAfter` contains the Retry-After header value, indicating when the client should retry the request. This is used with 503 Service Unavailable and 429 Too Many Requests responses.

35.19.22 TResponse.FirstHeaderLine

Synopsis: First line of HTTP response headers

Declaration: `Property FirstHeaderLine : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FirstHeaderLine` contains the status line of the HTTP response. This includes the HTTP version, status code, and reason phrase.

35.19.23 TResponse.ContentStream

Synopsis: Stream containing response body content

Declaration: `Property ContentStream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ContentStream` contains the response body content as a stream. This allows efficient handling of large responses without loading everything into memory.

35.19.24 TResponse.Content

Synopsis: Response body content as string

Declaration: `Property Content : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Content` contains the response body content as a string. This provides convenient access to the response content for text-based responses.

35.19.25 TResponse.Contents

Synopsis: String list containing response content lines

Declaration: `Property Contents : TStringList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Contents` contains the response body content as a string list. This provides line-based access to the response content, with each line as a separate string.

35.19.26 TResponse.HeadersSent

Synopsis: Indicates whether response headers have been sent

Declaration: `Property HeadersSent : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `HeadersSent` indicates whether the HTTP response headers have already been transmitted to the client. Once `True`, headers can no longer be modified.

35.19.27 TResponse.ContentSent

Synopsis: Indicates whether response content has been sent

Declaration: `Property ContentSent : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ContentSent` indicates whether the response body content has been transmitted to the client. This helps track the completion status of the response.

35.19.28 TResponse.Cookies

Synopsis: Collection of HTTP cookies to send with response

Declaration: `Property Cookies : TCookies`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Cookies` provides access to the collection of cookies that will be sent to the client. These cookies are included in Set-Cookie headers in the HTTP response.

35.19.29 TResponse.FreeContentStream

Synopsis: Whether to automatically free the content stream

Declaration: `Property FreeContentStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FreeContentStream` determines whether the content stream should be automatically freed after use. When `True`, the stream is destroyed when the response is completed.

35.20 TUploadedFile

35.20.1 Description

`TUploadedFile` encapsulates information about a file uploaded through an HTML form using multipart/form-data encoding. It provides access to the file content, metadata, and properties such as filename, size, and content type.

35.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1216	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the uploaded file instance

35.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1217	<code>ContentType</code>	<code>rw</code>	MIME content type of the uploaded file
1217	<code>Description</code>	<code>rw</code>	Description of the uploaded file
1217	<code>Disposition</code>	<code>rw</code>	Content disposition header of the uploaded file
1216	<code>FieldName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Form field name of the uploaded file
1216	<code>FileName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Original filename of the uploaded file
1217	<code>LocalFileName</code>	<code>rw</code>	Local temporary filename where file is stored
1216	<code>Size</code>	<code>rw</code>	Size of the uploaded file in bytes
1216	<code>Stream</code>	<code>r</code>	Stream containing the uploaded file data

35.20.4 TUploadedFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the uploaded file instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up resources used by the uploaded file instance. This includes closing any associated streams and removing temporary files.

35.20.5 TUploadedFile.FieldName

Synopsis: Form field name of the uploaded file

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldName` contains the name of the HTML form field that was used to upload the file. This corresponds to the 'name' attribute of the input element in the form.

35.20.6 TUploadedFile.FileName

Synopsis: Original filename of the uploaded file

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FileName` contains the original filename as specified by the client. This is the name of the file on the client's system before it was uploaded.

35.20.7 TUploadedFile.Stream

Synopsis: Stream containing the uploaded file data

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Stream` provides access to the uploaded file content. The stream can be read to retrieve the file data or written to a local file.

35.20.8 TUploadedFile.Size

Synopsis: Size of the uploaded file in bytes

Declaration: `Property Size : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Size` indicates the total size of the uploaded file content in bytes. This represents the actual size of the data that was uploaded.

35.20.9 TUploadedFile.ContentType

Synopsis: MIME content type of the uploaded file

Declaration: `Property ContentType : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ContentType` contains the MIME type of the uploaded file as specified by the client. This indicates the type of content in the file (e.g., 'image/jpeg', 'text/plain').

35.20.10 TUploadedFile.Disposition

Synopsis: Content disposition header of the uploaded file

Declaration: `Property Disposition : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Disposition` contains the `Content-Disposition` header value from the multipart data. This typically includes information about how the content should be displayed or handled.

35.20.11 TUploadedFile.LocalFileName

Synopsis: Local temporary filename where file is stored

Declaration: `Property LocalFileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `LocalFileName` contains the path to the temporary file where the uploaded content is stored on the server. This file is created during the upload process and should be moved or copied to a permanent location if needed.

35.20.12 TUploadedFile.Description

Synopsis: Description of the uploaded file

Declaration: `Property Description : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Description` contains additional descriptive information about the uploaded file. This may include user-provided descriptions or other metadata associated with the upload.

35.21 TUploadedFiles

35.21.1 Description

`TUploadedFiles` manages a collection of `TUploadedFile` instances. It provides methods to access, search, and manage uploaded files from HTTP requests.

35.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1218	FileByName	Returns an uploaded file by field name
1219	FindFile	Finds an uploaded file by field name
1218	First	Returns the first uploaded file in the collection
1218	IndexOfFile	Returns the index of an uploaded file by field name
1218	Last	Returns the last uploaded file in the collection

35.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1219	Files	rw	Uploaded file at the specified index

35.21.4 TUploadedFiles.First

Synopsis: Returns the first uploaded file in the collection

Declaration: `function First : TUploadedFile`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` returns the first `TUploadedFile` in the collection. Returns `nil` if the collection is empty.

35.21.5 TUploadedFiles.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last uploaded file in the collection

Declaration: `function Last : TUploadedFile`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` returns the last `TUploadedFile` in the collection. Returns `nil` if the collection is empty.

35.21.6 TUploadedFiles.IndexOfFile

Synopsis: Returns the index of an uploaded file by field name

Declaration: `function IndexOfFile (AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOfFile` searches for an uploaded file with the specified field name and returns its index. Returns `-1` if no file with the given field name is found.

35.21.7 TUploadedFiles.FileByName

Synopsis: Returns an uploaded file by field name

Declaration: `function FileByName (AName: string) : TUploadedFile`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FileByName` searches for and returns an uploaded file with the specified field name. Returns `nil` if no file with the given field name is found.

35.21.8 TUploadedFiles.FindFile

Synopsis: Finds an uploaded file by field name

Declaration: `function FindFile(AName: string) : TUploadedFile`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindFile` locates and returns an uploaded file with the specified field name. This method is an alias for `FileByName`.

35.21.9 TUploadedFiles.Files

Synopsis: Uploaded file at the specified index

Declaration: `Property Files[Index: Integer]: TUploadedFile; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Files` provides indexed access to uploaded files in the collection. This is the default array property for the `TUploadedFiles` class.

Chapter 36

Reference for unit 'httpprotocol'

36.1 Used units

Table 36.1: Used units by unit 'httpprotocol'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

36.2 Overview

This unit provides HTTP 1.1 protocol definitions, constants, and utility functions for web applications. It includes:

- HTTP header type definitions and string constants
- URL encoding and decoding functions
- HTTP status code text lookup
- HTTP date/time parsing utilities
- Cookie formatting constants

36.3 Constants, types and variables

36.3.1 Constants

`HeaderAccept` = 'Accept '

Accept header name string.

`HeaderAcceptCharset` = 'Accept-Charset '

Accept-Charset header name string.

HeaderAcceptEncoding = 'Accept-Encoding'

Accept-Encoding header name string.

HeaderAcceptLanguage = 'Accept-Language'

Accept-Language header name string.

HeaderAcceptRanges = 'Accept-Ranges'

Accept-Ranges header name string.

HeaderAge = 'Age'

Age header name string.

HeaderAllow = 'Allow'

Allow header name string.

HeaderAuthorization = 'Authorization'

Authorization header name string.

HeaderCacheControl = 'Cache-Control'

Cache-Control header name string.

HeaderConnection = 'Connection'

Connection header name string.

HeaderContentEncoding = 'Content-Encoding'

Content-Encoding header name string.

HeaderContentLanguage = 'Content-Language'

Content-Language header name string.

HeaderContentLength = 'Content-Length'

Content-Length header name string.

HeaderContentLocation = 'Content-Location'

Content-Location header name string.

HeaderContentMD5 = 'Content-MD5'

Content-MD5 header name string.

HeaderContentRange = 'Content-Range'

Content-Range header name string.

HeaderContentType = 'Content-Type'

Content-Type header name string.

HeaderCookie = 'Cookie'

String constant for the 'Cookie' HTTP header used to send cookies from client to server.

HeaderDate = 'Date'

Date header name string.

HeaderETag = 'ETag'

ETag header name string.

HeaderExpect = 'Expect'

Expect header name string.

HeaderExpires = 'Expires'

Expires header name string.

HeaderFrom = 'From'

From header name string.

HeaderHost = 'Host'

Host header name string.

HeaderIfMatch = 'If-Match'

If-Match header name string.

HeaderIfModifiedSince = 'If-Modified-Since'

If-Modified-Since header name string.

HeaderIfNoneMatch = 'If-None-Match'

If-None-Match header name string.

HeaderIfRange = 'If-Range'

If-Range header name string.

```
HeaderIfUnModifiedSince = 'If-Unmodified-Since'
```

If-Unmodified-Since header name string.

```
HeaderLastModified = 'Last-Modified'
```

Last-Modified header name string.

```
HeaderLocation = 'Location'
```

Location header name string.

```
HeaderMaxForwards = 'Max-Forwards'
```

Max-Forwards header name string.

```
HeaderPragma = 'Pragma'
```

Pragma header name string.

```
HeaderProxyAuthenticate = 'Proxy-Authenticate'
```

Proxy-Authenticate header name string.

```
HeaderProxyAuthorization = 'Proxy-Authorization'
```

Proxy-Authorization header name string.

```
HeaderRange = 'Range'
```

Range header name string.

```
HeaderReferer = 'Referer'
```

Referer header name string.

```
HeaderRetryAfter = 'Retry-After'
```

Retry-After header name string.

```
HeaderServer = 'Server'
```

Server header name string.

```
HeaderSetCookie = 'Set-Cookie'
```

String constant for the 'Set-Cookie' HTTP header used to send cookies from server to client.

```
HeaderTE = 'TE'
```


TE header name string.

HeaderTrailer = 'Trailer'

Trailer header name string.

HeaderTransferEncoding = 'Transfer-Encoding'

Transfer-Encoding header name string.

HeaderUpgrade = 'Upgrade'

Upgrade header name string.

HeaderUserAgent = 'User-Agent'

User-Agent header name string.

HeaderVary = 'Vary'

Vary header name string.

HeaderVia = 'Via'

Via header name string.

HeaderWarning = 'Warning'

Warning header name string.

HeaderWWWAuthenticate = 'WWW-Authenticate'

WWW-Authenticate header name string.

HeaderXRequestedWith = 'X-Requested-With'

X-Requested-With header name string.

HTTPDateFmt = '"%s", dd "%s" yyyy hh:mm:ss'

Format string used with FormatDateTime for creating HTTP-compliant date strings.

HTTPDays : Array[1..7] of string = string[3] = ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat')

Contains standard 3-letter day names (Sun, Mon, Tue, etc.) used in HTTP date formatting.

```
HTTPHeaderDirections : Array[THeader] of THeaderDirections = Set of
  THeaderDirection = (hdRequest,hdResponse) = ([], [hdRequest], [hdRequest
], [hdRequest], [hdRequest], [hdResponse], [hdResponse], [hdResponse
], [hdRequest], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse],
[hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse
], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse
], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdResponse]
, [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest], [hdRequest], [hdRequest],
[hdRequest], [hdRequest], [hdRequest], [hdRequest], [hdRequest],
[hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdResponse], [hdRequest], [hdRequest, hdResponse
], [hdResponse], [hdRequest], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest
], [hdResponse], [hdResponse], [hdRequest], [hdRequest, hdResponse
], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest],
[hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse], [hdRequest, hdResponse
], [hdResponse])
```

Maps each THeader value to its allowed usage directions (request, response, or both). Used to validate proper header usage in HTTP communications.

```
HTTPHeaderNames : THeadersArray = ('', HeaderAccept, HeaderAcceptCharset
, HeaderAcceptEncoding, HeaderAcceptLanguage, HeaderAcceptRanges,
HeaderAge, HeaderAllow, HeaderAuthorization, HeaderCacheControl,
HeaderConnection, HeaderContentEncoding, HeaderContentLanguage, HeaderContentLength
, HeaderContentLocation, HeaderContentMD5, HeaderContentRange, HeaderContentType
, HeaderDate, HeaderETag, HeaderExpires, HeaderExpect, HeaderFrom
, HeaderHost, HeaderIfMatch, HeaderIfModifiedSince, HeaderIfNoneMatch
, HeaderIfRange, HeaderIfModifiedSince, HeaderLastModified, HeaderLocation
, HeaderMaxForwards, HeaderPragma, HeaderProxyAuthenticate, HeaderProxyAuthorizati
, HeaderRange, HeaderReferer, HeaderRetryAfter, HeaderServer, HeaderTE
, HeaderTrailer, HeaderTransferEncoding, HeaderUpgrade, HeaderUserAgent
, HeaderVary, HeaderVia, HeaderWarning, HeaderWWWAuthenticate)
```

Contains the actual HTTP header name strings indexed by THeader enumeration values. Used internally by HeaderName function.

```
HTTPMonths : Array[1..12] of string = string[3] = ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar'
, 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun', 'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec')
```

Contains standard 3-letter month names (Jan, Feb, Mar, etc.) used in HTTP date formatting.

```
SCookieDomain = ' Domain=%s'
```

Format string for cookie domain attribute.

```
SCookieExpire = ' "Expires="' + HTTPDateFmt + ' "GMT"'
```

Format string for cookie expiration date.

```
SCookieHttpOnly = ' HttpOnly'
```

String for cookie HttpOnly attribute.

```
SCookiePath = ' Path=%s'
```

Format string for cookie path attribute.

```
SCookieSameSite = ' SameSite'
```

String for cookie SameSite attribute.

```
SCookieSecure = ' Secure'
```

String for cookie Secure attribute.

36.3.2 Types

```
THeader = (hhUnknown, hhAccept, hhAcceptCharset, hhAcceptEncoding,
    hhAcceptLanguage, hhAcceptRanges, hhAge, hhAllow,
    hhAuthorization, hhCacheControl, hhConnection,
        hhContentEncoding
    , hhContentLanguage, hhContentLength,
        hhContentLocation, hhContentMD5
    , hhContentRange, hhContentType,
        hhDate, hhETag, hhExpires
    , hhExpect, hhFrom, hhHost, hhIfMatch,
        hhIfModifiedSince, hhIfNoneMatch
    , hhIfRange,
        hhIfUnmodifiedSince, hhLastModified, hhLocation
    , hhMaxForwards,
        hhPragma, hhProxyAuthenticate, hhProxyAuthorization
    , hhRange,
        hhReferer, hhRetryAfter, hhServer, hhTE, hhTrailer
    ,
        hhTransferEncoding, hhUpgrade, hhUserAgent, hhVary, hhVia
    ,
        hhWarning, hhWWWAuthenticate)
```

Table 36.2: Enumeration values for type THeader

Value	Explanation
hhAccept	Accept header - specifies acceptable response media types.
hhAcceptCharset	Accept-Charset header - specifies acceptable character encodings.
hhAcceptEncoding	Accept-Encoding header - specifies acceptable content encodings.
hhAcceptLanguage	Accept-Language header - specifies acceptable natural languages.
hhAcceptRanges	Accept-Ranges header - indicates server support for range requests.
hhAge	Age header - indicates response age in seconds.
hhAllow	Allow header - lists supported HTTP methods for resource.
hhAuthorization	Authorization header - contains client authentication credentials.
hhCacheControl	Cache-Control header - specifies caching directives.
hhConnection	Connection header - controls connection persistence.
hhContentEncoding	Content-Encoding header - specifies content compression method.
hhContentLanguage	Content-Language header - specifies content natural language.
hhContentLength	Content-Length header - specifies content size in bytes.
hhContentLocation	Content-Location header - specifies alternative resource location.
hhContentMD5	Content-MD5 header - contains MD5 hash of content.
hhContentRange	Content-Range header - specifies partial content range.
hhContentType	Content-Type header - specifies media type of content.
hhDate	Date header - specifies message origination date and time.
hhETag	ETag header - provides entity tag for caching validation.
hhExpect	Expect header - indicates expected server behaviors.
hhExpires	Expires header - specifies response expiration date and time.
hhFrom	From header - contains user agent email address.
hhHost	Host header - specifies target host and port number.
hhIfMatch	If-Match header - makes request conditional on entity tag.
hhIfModifiedSince	If-Modified-Since header - makes request conditional on modification date.
hhIfNoneMatch	If-None-Match header - makes request conditional on entity tag mismatch.
hhIfRange	If-Range header - makes range request conditional on entity tag or date.
hhIfUnmodifiedSince	If-Unmodified-Since header - makes request conditional on lack of modification.
hhLastModified	Last-Modified header - specifies resource last modification date.
hhLocation	Location header - specifies redirect or resource location.
hhMaxForwards	Max-Forwards header - limits number of proxy forwards.
hhPragma	Pragma header - contains implementation-specific directives.
hhProxyAuthenticate	Proxy-Authenticate header - specifies proxy authentication method.
hhProxyAuthorization	Proxy-Authorization header - contains proxy authentication credentials.
hhRange	Range header - specifies partial content ranges to retrieve.
hhReferer	Referer header - specifies referring page URI.
hhRetryAfter	Retry-After header - specifies delay before retry attempt.
hhServer	Server header - specifies server software information.
hhTE	TE header - specifies acceptable transfer encodings.
hhTrailer	Trailer header - specifies header fields in chunked encoding trailer.
hhTransferEncoding	Transfer-Encoding header - specifies message body encoding method.
hhUnknown	Unknown or unrecognized header type.
hhUpgrade	Upgrade header - specifies protocol upgrade options.
hhUserAgent	User-Agent header - specifies client software information.
hhVary	Vary header - specifies headers affecting response selection.
hhVia	Via header - specifies intermediate proxy information.
hhWarning	Warning header - provides additional warning information.
hhWWWAuthenticate	WWW-Authenticate header - specifies server authentication method.

This enumeration defines all standard HTTP 1.1 headers as defined in RFC 2616, plus some commonly used non-standard headers like X-Requested-With, Cookie, and Set-Cookie.

`THeaderDirection = (hdRequest,hdResponse)`

Table 36.3: Enumeration values for type `THeaderDirection`

Value	Explanation
<code>hdRequest</code>	Header used in HTTP requests.
<code>hdResponse</code>	Header used in HTTP responses.

Indicates whether a header is used in requests, responses, or both.

`THeaderDirections = Set of THeaderDirection = (hdRequest,hdResponse)`

Set of header direction values.

`THeaders = Set of THeader = (hhAccept, hhAcceptCharset, hhAcceptEncoding, hhAcceptLanguage, hhAcceptRanges, hhAge, hhAllow, hhAuthorization, hhCacheControl, hhConnection, hhContentEncoding, hhContentLanguage, hhContentLength, hhContentLocation, hhContentMD5, hhContentRange, hhContentType, hhDate, hhETag, hhExpect, hhExpires, hhFrom, hhHost, hhIfMatch, hhIfModifiedSince, hhIfNoneMatch, hhIfRange, hhIfUnmodifiedSince, hhLastModified, hhLocation, hhMaxForwards, hhPragma, hhProxyAuthenticate, hhProxyAuthorization, hhRange, hhReferer, hhRetryAfter, hhServer, hhTE, hhTrailer, hhTransferEncoding, hhUnknown, hhUpgrade, hhUserAgent, hhVary, hhVia, hhWarning, hhWWWAuthenticate)`

A set type for working with multiple HTTP headers simultaneously.

`THeadersArray = Array[THeader] of string = string`

Array of header name strings indexed by `THeader`.

36.4 Procedures and functions

36.4.1 ExcludeHTTPPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Removes trailing forward slash from a URL path.

Declaration: `function ExcludeHTTPPathDelimiter(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Removes the trailing forward slash from a path string if present. Useful for normalizing file paths in URLs.

See also: IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter ([1230](#))

36.4.2 HeaderName

Synopsis: Returns the string name of an HTTP header.

Declaration: `function HeaderName(AHeader: THeader) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a THeader ([1226](#)) enumeration value to its corresponding HTTP header string.

See also: HeaderType ([1229](#)), THeader ([1226](#))

36.4.3 HeaderType

Synopsis: Returns the header type for a given header string.

Declaration: `function HeaderType(AHeader: string) : THeader`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts an HTTP header string to its corresponding THeader ([1226](#)) enumeration value. Returns hhUnknown if the header is not recognized.

See also: HeaderName ([1229](#)), THeader ([1226](#))

36.4.4 HTTPDecode

Synopsis: Decodes HTTP URL-encoded strings.

Declaration: `function HTTPDecode(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Decodes percent-encoded characters (%XX) and optionally converts plus signs to spaces. The overloaded version without aPlusAsSpaces defaults to treating plus signs as spaces.

See also: HTTPEncode ([1229](#))

36.4.5 HTTPEncode

Synopsis: Encodes strings for HTTP URL transmission.

Declaration: `function HTTPEncode(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts unsafe characters to percent-encoded format (%XX). The overloaded version allows specifying custom unsafe characters and space handling behavior.

See also: HTTPDecode ([1229](#))

36.4.6 IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Ensures a URL path ends with a forward slash.

Declaration: `function IncludeHTTPPathDelimiter(const AStr: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: Adds a trailing forward slash to a path string if it doesn't already have one. Useful for normalizing directory paths in URLs.

See also: `ExcludeHTTPPathDelimiter` ([1228](#))

Chapter 37

Reference for unit 'httproute'

37.1 Used units

Table 37.1: Used units by unit 'httproute'

Name	Page
Classes	??
HTTPDefs	1146
System	??
sysutils	??

37.2 Overview

The `HttpRoute` unit provides HTTP request routing functionality for web applications. It defines the `THTTPRouter` ([1246](#)) class, which allows mapping URL patterns to specific handlers based on HTTP methods and path patterns, with support for callbacks, events, objects, and interfaces as route handlers.

A global instance of the router is available in `HTTPRouter` ([1240](#)), this is where you must register your routes: the rest of the FPC web framework uses this global instance to determine where to route requests to.

37.3 Advanced HTTP Router Handler Examples

Beyond simple procedure callbacks, the HTTP router supports sophisticated handler patterns for complex applications. These examples demonstrate method events, interface handlers, and object class handlers.

```
// Method Event Handler Example
type
  TAPIHandler = class
  private
    FVersion: String;
  public
```



```

        constructor Create(const AVersion: String);
        procedure HandleVersionInfo(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
    end;

constructor TAPIHandler.Create(const AVersion: String);
begin
    inherited Create;
    FVersion := AVersion;
end;

procedure TAPIHandler.HandleVersionInfo(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := Format('{"version": "%s"}', [FVersion]);
    AResponse.ContentType := 'application/json';
end;

// Interface Handler Example
type
    IUserService = interface(IRouteInterface)
        ['{12345678-1234-1234-1234-123456789012}']
    end;

    TUserService = class(TInterfacedObject, IUserService)
    public
        procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
    end;

procedure TUserService.HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := 'User service response';
end;

// Object Class Handler Example
type
    TRequestProcessor = class(TRouteObject)
    public
        procedure HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse); override;
    end;

procedure TRequestProcessor.HandleRequest(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := 'Processed by object instance';
end;

// Registration examples:
var
    APIHandler: TAPIHandler;
    UserService: IUserService;
begin
    APIHandler := TAPIHandler.Create('1.0');
    UserService := TUserService.Create;

    // Register method event
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/version', rmGet, @APIHandler.HandleVersionInfo);

```

```
// Register interface handler
HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/users', rmGet, UserService);

// Register object class handler
HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/process', rmPost, TRequestProcessor);
end.
```

These examples simply demonstrate the core functionality of the HTTP router. An actual implementation would typically integrate with an HTTP server framework like `fpweb` or `fphttp` to handle incoming requests, and would use one of the various request-handling units such as `httpapp` (1231) or `cgiapp` (1231).

37.4 HTTP Router Methods and RESTful APIs

Routes can be configured to handle different HTTP methods (GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, etc.). The same URL pattern can have different handlers for different methods, enabling RESTful API design. This allows implementing CRUD operations on the same resource endpoint.

```
program MethodRouter;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    httproute, httpdefs;

procedure HandleGetUsers(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := '{"users": ["alice", "bob", "charlie"]}';
    AResponse.ContentType := 'application/json';
end;

procedure HandleCreateUser(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := '{"status": "user created", "id": 123}';
    AResponse.ContentType := 'application/json';
    AResponse.Code := 201;
end;

procedure HandleUpdateUser(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := '{"status": "user updated"}';
    AResponse.ContentType := 'application/json';
end;

procedure HandleDeleteUser(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Code := 204; // No Content
end;

begin
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/users', rmGet, @HandleGetUsers, False);
```

```

HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/users', rmPost, @HandleCreateUser, False);
HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/users/:id', rmPut, @HandleUpdateUser, False);
HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/users/:id', rmDelete, @HandleDeleteUser, False);

Writeln('RESTful API routing:');
Writeln('GET /users - List users');
Writeln('POST /users - Create user');
Writeln('PUT /users/:id - Update user');
Writeln('DELETE /users/:id - Delete user');
end.

```

37.5 HTTP Router Interceptors and Middleware

Interceptors allow processing requests before and after route handling. This enables middleware functionality like authentication, logging, CORS, and request validation. Interceptors are implemented as object methods that receive the request, response, and a continuation flag.

Interceptors can run at two different times: `iaBefore` (before route processing) and `iaAfter` (after route processing). The continuation parameter allows interceptors to halt request processing if needed.

```

program MiddlewareRouter;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    httproute, httpdefs, SysUtils;

type
    TMiddlewareHelper = class
    public
        procedure LoggingInterceptor(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse; var aContinue: Boolean);
        procedure CORSInterceptor(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse; var aContinue: Boolean);
    end;

procedure TMiddlewareHelper.LoggingInterceptor(ARequest: TRequest;
    AResponse: TResponse; var aContinue: Boolean);
begin
    Writeln(Format('[%s] %s %s', [FormatDateTime('yyyy-mm-dd hh:nn:ss', Now),
        RouteMethodToString(THTTPRouter.StringToRouteMethod(ARequest.Method)),
        ARequest.PathInfo]));
    aContinue := True;
end;

procedure TMiddlewareHelper.CORSInterceptor(ARequest: TRequest;
    AResponse: TResponse; var aContinue: Boolean);
begin
    AResponse.SetCustomHeader('Access-Control-Allow-Origin', '*');
    AResponse.SetCustomHeader('Access-Control-Allow-Methods', 'GET, POST, PUT, DELETE');
    aContinue := True;
end;

procedure HandleAPI(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);

```

```

begin
  AResponse.Content := '{"message": "API response with middleware"}';
  AResponse.ContentType := 'application/json';
end;

var
  Helper: TMiddlewareHelper;
begin
  Helper := TMiddlewareHelper.Create;
  try
    // Register interceptors (middleware)
    HTTPRouter.RegisterInterceptor('logging', @Helper.LoggingInterceptor, iaBefore);
    HTTPRouter.RegisterInterceptor('cors', @Helper.CORSInterceptor, iaAfter);

    // Register API route
    Router.RegisterRoute('/api/data', rmGet, @HandleAPI, False);

    Writeln('Middleware router with logging and CORS support');
    Writeln('GET /api/data - Returns JSON with proper headers');
  finally
    Helper.Free;
  end;
end.

```

37.6 HTTP Router Parameterized Routes

Routes can include parameters using pattern matching with colon notation. Parameters are extracted from the URL path and made available to handlers through string lists. This enables RESTful URL patterns like `/users/:id` or `/users/:uid/posts/:pid`.

```

program ParameterRouter;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
  httproute, httpdefs, Classes, SysUtils;

procedure HandleUser(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
var
  Params: TStringList;
  UserID: String;
begin
  Params := TStringList.Create;
  try
    // Extract parameters from the route
    if HTTPRouter.GetHTTPRoute(ARequest.PathInfo, rmGet, Params) <> nil then
      begin
        if Params.Count > 0 then
          UserID := Params[0]
        else
          UserID := 'unknown';
        AResponse.Content := 'User ID: ' + UserID;
      end
    else
      AResponse.Content := 'Route not found';
    end
  finally
    Params.Free;
  end;
end;

```

```

        end
    else
        AResponse.Content := 'No route found';
    finally
        Params.Free;
    end;
end;

procedure HandleUserPosts(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
var
    Params: TStringList;
    UserID, PostID: String;
begin
    Params := TStringList.Create;
    try
        if HTTPRouter.GetHTTPRoute(ARequest.PathInfo, rmGet, Params) <> nil then
            begin
                UserID := 'unknown';
                PostID := 'unknown';
                if Params.Count > 0 then UserID := Params[0];
                if Params.Count > 1 then PostID := Params[1];
                AResponse.Content := Format('User %, Post %s', [UserID, PostID]);
            end
        else
            AResponse.Content := 'No route found';
        finally
            Params.Free;
        end;
    end;

begin
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/user/:id', rmGet, @HandleUser, False);
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/user/:uid/post/:pid', rmGet, @HandleUserPosts, False);

    Writeln('Parameter routing examples:');
    Writeln('GET /user/123 - Shows user 123');
    Writeln('GET /user/456/post/789 - Shows post 789 for user 456');
end.

```

37.7 Basic HTTP Router Usage

The simplest way to use the HTTP router is through callback procedures. The router matches incoming requests to registered URL patterns and HTTP methods:

```

program BasicRouter;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
    httproute, httpdefs;

procedure HandleHome(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);

```

```

begin
    AResponse.Content := 'Welcome to the homepage!';
end;

procedure HandleAPI(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse);
begin
    AResponse.Content := 'API endpoint response';
end;

begin
    // Register routes
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/', rmGet, @HandleHome, False);
    HTTPRouter.RegisterRoute('/api', rmGet, @HandleAPI, False);

    Writeln('HTTP Router configured with routes:');
    Writeln('GET / - Homepage');
    Writeln('GET /api - API endpoint');
end.

```

37.8 HTTP Router Handler Types

The HTTP router supports several different types of handlers, providing flexibility in how you structure your application code. Each handler type serves different architectural needs and complexity levels.

Procedure Callbacks - Simple standalone procedures that accept `TRequest` and `TResponse` parameters. This is the most straightforward approach for basic routing needs and stateless operations.

Method Events - Object methods (`TRouteEvent`) that can access instance data and provide better organization for complex applications with state management. These handlers maintain object context between calls.

Interface Handlers - Objects implementing `IRouteInterface` provide clean separation of concerns and enable dependency injection patterns. This approach promotes testability and modularity.

Object Class Handlers - Specify a `TRouteObjectClass` that will be instantiated for each request, providing complete request isolation and automatic memory management. Each request gets a fresh instance.

Extended Callbacks - `TRouteCallBackEx` procedures that accept additional user data pointer, useful for passing configuration or context information to handlers without global variables.

Choose the handler type based on your application's complexity, state management needs, and architectural preferences. Simple applications can use procedure callbacks, while complex systems benefit from interface or object-based handlers.

37.9 HTTP Router Working Principle

The HTTP router operates on a simple principle: you register routes that map URL patterns to handler code, and when an HTTP request arrives, the router finds the best matching route and executes its handler.

The request processing workflow consists of five main steps:

1. **Route Registration:** Use `RegisterRoute` to associate URL patterns with handlers. Each route specifies a URL pattern (like `/users/:id`), an HTTP method (GET, POST, etc.), and a handler

(callback, event, interface, or object class).

2. **Request Processing:** When `RouteRequest` is called with an incoming HTTP request, the router searches through registered routes to find matches based on the request's path and HTTP method.

3. **Pattern Matching:** The router supports parameterized routes using colon notation (like `:id`). Parameters are extracted from the URL and made available to handlers through string lists.

4. **Handler Execution:** Once a matching route is found, its associated handler is executed with the HTTP request and response objects, along with any extracted parameters.

5. **Interceptor Processing:** Before and after route handling, registered interceptors can process the request and response for cross-cutting concerns like logging, authentication, and CORS.

The router prioritizes routes based on specificity, with exact matches taking precedence over parameterized routes, and parameterized routes taking precedence over default routes.

37.10 Constants, types and variables

37.10.1 Constants

```
RouteMethodNames : Array[TRouteMethod] of string = string = ('', ''
    , 'GET', 'POST', 'PUT', 'DELETE', 'OPTIONS', 'HEAD', 'TRACE')
```

`RouteMethodNames` is an array constant that maps `TRouteMethod` enumeration values to their string representations. It provides the standard HTTP method names used for string conversion operations.

37.10.2 Types

```
THTTPRouteClass = class of THTTPRoute
```

`THTTPRouteClass` is a class reference type that points to `THTTPRoute` or its descendants. It enables dynamic creation of route instances.

```
THTTPRouterClass = class of THTTPRouter
```

`THTTPRouterClass` is a class reference type that points to `THTTPRouter` or its descendants. It is used for creating router instances dynamically.

```
THTTPRouteRequestEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; ARequest: TRequest
    ;
    AResponse: TResponse) of
    object
```

`THTTPRouteRequestEvent` defines an event type for handling HTTP route requests with sender context. It provides access to the sender object along with request and response objects.

```
TRouteCallBack = procedure(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse
    )
```

`TRouteCallBack` defines a procedure type for handling HTTP requests in callback-based routes. It receives request and response objects for processing.

```
TRouteCallBackEx = procedure(AData: Pointer; ARequest: TRequest;
    AResponse: TResponse)
```

`TRouteCallBackEx` defines an extended callback procedure type that accepts additional user data. It provides a way to pass custom data to the callback handler.

```
TRouteEvent = procedure(ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
    of object
```

`TRouteEvent` defines an object method type for handling HTTP requests in event-based routes. It provides object-oriented request handling with sender context.

```
TRouteMethod = (rmUnknown, rmAll, rmGet, rmPost, rmPut, rmDelete, rmOptions
    ,
    rmHead, rmTrace)
```

Table 37.2: Enumeration values for type `TRouteMethod`

Value	Explanation
<code>rmAll</code>	Matches all HTTP methods
<code>rmDelete</code>	HTTP DELETE method
<code>rmGet</code>	HTTP GET method
<code>rmHead</code>	HTTP HEAD method
<code>rmOptions</code>	HTTP OPTIONS method
<code>rmPost</code>	HTTP POST method
<code>rmPut</code>	HTTP PUT method
<code>rmTrace</code>	HTTP TRACE method
<code>rmUnknown</code>	Unknown or unspecified HTTP method

`TRouteMethod` defines the HTTP methods that can be matched by routes. It includes common HTTP methods like GET, POST, PUT, DELETE, and others.

```
TRouteObjectClass = class of TRouteObject
```

`TRouteObjectClass` is a class reference type that points to `TRouteObject` or its descendants. It enables dynamic creation of route handler object instances.

```
TRouteOption = (roCaseSensitive, roEmptyMatchesAll)
```

Table 37.3: Enumeration values for type `TRouteOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>roCaseSensitive</code>	Enable case-sensitive pattern matching
<code>roEmptyMatchesAll</code>	Allow empty patterns to match all requests

`TRouteOption` defines options that control how routes are matched against incoming requests. These options affect case sensitivity and empty pattern behavior.


```
TRouteOptions = Set of TRouteOption = (roCaseSensitive, roEmptyMatchesAll
)
```

`TRouteOptions` is a set type containing `TRouteOption` values. It allows combining multiple route matching options for flexible route configuration.

37.11 Procedures and functions

37.11.1 HTTPRouter

Synopsis: Returns the global HTTP router instance

Declaration: `function HTTPRouter : THTTPRouter`

Visibility: default

Description: `HTTPRouter` provides access to the global HTTP router service instance. It creates the router if it doesn't exist and returns the singleton instance.

37.11.2 RouteMethodToString

Synopsis: Converts route method enumeration to string

Declaration: `function RouteMethodToString(R: TRouteMethod) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `RouteMethodToString` converts a `TRouteMethod` enumeration value to its string representation. It returns standard HTTP method names like "GET", "POST", etc.

37.12 EHTTPRoute

37.12.1 Description

`EHTTPRoute` is an exception class for HTTP routing errors. It extends `EHTTP` to provide specific error handling for routing operations.

See also: `EHTTP` ([1231](#))

37.13 IRouteInterface

37.13.1 Description

`IRouteInterface` defines an interface for objects that can handle HTTP requests. It provides a standardized way to implement route handlers using interface-based design.

37.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1241	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles an HTTP request

37.13.3 IRouteInterface.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles an HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest (ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `HandleRequest` processes an incoming HTTP request and generates an appropriate response. This method must be implemented by classes that support the `IRouteInterface` interface.

37.14 THTTPRoute

37.14.1 Description

`THTTPRoute` is the base class for all HTTP routes in the routing system. It provides pattern matching functionality and request handling infrastructure for specific route implementations.

See also: `THTTPRouter` ([1246](#)), `TRouteMethod` ([1239](#)), `TRouteOptions` ([1240](#))

37.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1241	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the HTTP route instance
1241	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles an HTTP request
1242	<code>Matches</code>	Checks if route matches pattern and method
1242	<code>MatchMethod</code>	Checks if route matches HTTP method
1242	<code>MatchPattern</code>	Matches URL pattern against request path

37.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1242	<code>Default</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indicates if this is a default route
1243	<code>Method</code>	<code>rw</code>	HTTP method handled by this route
1243	<code>URLPattern</code>	<code>rw</code>	URL pattern for route matching

37.14.4 THTTPRoute.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP route instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` performs cleanup when the route instance is destroyed. It ensures proper resource cleanup for the route.

37.14.5 THTTPRoute.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles an HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest (ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HandleRequest` processes an incoming HTTP request and generates an appropriate response. This method delegates to `DoHandleRequest` for actual request processing.

37.14.6 THttpRequestRoute.Matches

Synopsis: Checks if route matches pattern and method

Declaration: `function Matches(const APattern: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod;
Options: TRouteOptions) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Matches` determines whether this route matches the specified URL pattern and HTTP method. It combines pattern and method matching to determine route eligibility.

37.14.7 THttpRequestRoute.MatchPattern

Synopsis: Matches URL pattern against request path

Declaration: `function MatchPattern(const Path: string; L: TStrings;
Options: TRouteOptions) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MatchPattern` performs pattern matching between the route's URL pattern and an incoming request path. It supports parameterized routes and extracts path parameters.

37.14.8 THttpRequestRoute.MatchMethod

Synopsis: Checks if route matches HTTP method

Declaration: `function MatchMethod(const AMethod: TRouteMethod) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `MatchMethod` determines whether this route handles the specified HTTP method. It compares the route's method against the request method.

37.14.9 THttpRequestRoute.Default

Synopsis: Indicates if this is a default route

Declaration: `Property Default : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Default` specifies whether this route serves as the default handler for its HTTP method. Default routes are used when no other routes match the request.

37.14.10 THTTPRoute.URLPattern

Synopsis: URL pattern for route matching

Declaration: `Property URLPattern : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `URLPattern` defines the URL pattern that this route matches. It can include parameter placeholders and supports pattern-based routing.

37.14.11 THTTPRoute.Method

Synopsis: HTTP method handled by this route

Declaration: `Property Method : TRouteMethod`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Method` specifies which HTTP method this route handles. Routes can be configured to handle specific methods like GET, POST, etc.

37.15 THTTPRouteCallback

37.15.1 Description

`THTTPRouteCallback` implements a route that handles requests using a callback procedure. It executes the assigned callback when the route is matched.

37.15.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1243	<code>CallBack</code>	<code>rw</code>	Callback procedure for handling requests

37.15.3 THTTPRouteCallback.CallBack

Synopsis: Callback procedure for handling requests

Declaration: `Property CallBack : TRouteCallBack`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CallBack` is the procedure that gets executed when this route handles a request. It implements the actual request processing logic.

37.16 THTTPRouteCallbackEx

37.16.1 Description

`THTTPRouteCallbackEx` implements a route that handles requests using an extended callback procedure. It supports passing custom data to the callback handler.

37.16.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1244	CallBack	rw	Extended callback procedure for handling requests
1244	Data	rw	User data passed to callback

37.16.3 THttpRequestCallbackEx.CallBack

Synopsis: Extended callback procedure for handling requests

Declaration: `Property CallBack : TRouteCallBackEx`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CallBack` is the extended callback procedure that gets executed when this route handles a request. It receives additional user data along with request and response objects.

37.16.4 THttpRequestCallbackEx.Data

Synopsis: User data passed to callback

Declaration: `Property Data : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Data` contains user-defined data that is passed to the callback procedure. It allows passing context or configuration data to the handler.

37.17 THttpRequestEvent

37.17.1 Description

`THttpRequestEvent` implements a route that handles requests using an object method event. It provides object-oriented request handling capabilities.

37.17.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1244	Event	rw	Event handler for processing requests

37.17.3 THttpRequestEvent.Event

Synopsis: Event handler for processing requests

Declaration: `Property Event : TRouteEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Event` is the object method that gets executed when this route handles a request. It provides access to the sender object context during request processing.

37.18 THttpRequestInterface

37.18.1 Description

`THttpRequestInterface` implements a route that handles requests using an interface-based handler. It delegates request processing to an object implementing `IRouteInterface`.

37.18.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1245	Intf	rw	Interface handler for processing requests

37.18.3 THttpRequestInterface.Intf

Synopsis: Interface handler for processing requests

Declaration: `Property Intf : IRouteInterface`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Intf` is the interface object that handles requests for this route. It must implement the `IRouteInterface` interface to process HTTP requests.

37.19 THttpRequestList

37.19.1 Description

`THttpRequestList` maintains a collection of `THttpRequest` objects. It provides indexed access to routes and manages the route collection.

See also: `THttpRequest` ([1241](#)), `THttpRequester` ([1246](#))

37.19.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1245	Routes	rw	Provides indexed access to routes

37.19.3 THttpRequestList.Routes

Synopsis: Provides indexed access to routes

Declaration: `Property Routes[AIndex: Integer]: THttpRequest; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Routes` allows accessing individual routes in the collection by index. It provides both read and write access to route objects.

37.20 THttpRequestObject

37.20.1 Description

`THttpRequestObject` implements a route that handles requests by creating instances of a specified object class. It instantiates the object class for each request to provide isolated request handling.

37.20.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1246	<code>ObjectClass</code>	rw	Object class for handling requests

37.20.3 THttpRequestObject.ObjectClass

Synopsis: Object class for handling requests

Declaration: `Property ObjectClass : TRouteObjectClass`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ObjectClass` specifies the class that will be instantiated to handle requests for this route. The class must descend from `TRouteObject` and implement the `HandleRequest` method.

37.21 THTTPRouter

37.21.1 Description

`THTTPRouter` provides HTTP request routing functionality for web applications. It manages a collection of routes and matches incoming HTTP requests to appropriate handlers based on URL patterns and HTTP methods.

37.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1247	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new HTTP router instance
1247	<code>DeleteRoute</code>	Removes a route from the collection
1247	<code>DeleteRouteByID</code>	Removes a route by its ID
1247	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the HTTP router instance
1249	<code>FindHTTPRoute</code>	Finds a route matching path and method
1249	<code>GetHTTPRoute</code>	Gets the best matching route for path and method
1249	<code>RegisterRoute</code>	Registers a new route with the router
1250	<code>RouteRequest</code>	Routes an HTTP request to appropriate handler
1248	<code>SanitizeRoute</code>	Sanitizes a route path string
1248	<code>Service</code>	Returns the global router service instance
1248	<code>ServiceClass</code>	Returns the router service class
1248	<code>SetServiceClass</code>	Sets the router service class
1248	<code>StringToRouteMethod</code>	Converts string to route method enumeration

37.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1251	AfterRequest	rw	Event triggered after processing requests
1250	BeforeRequest	rw	Event triggered before processing requests
1250	RouteCount	r	Returns the number of registered routes
1251	RouteOptions	rw	Global options for route matching
1250	Routes	r	Provides indexed access to routes

37.21.4 THTTPRouter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new HTTP router instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new HTTP router with default settings. It sets up the internal route collection and interceptor management.

37.21.5 THTTPRouter.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the HTTP router instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` performs cleanup when the router is destroyed. It releases all routes, interceptors, and associated resources.

37.21.6 THTTPRouter.DeleteRoute

Synopsis: Removes a route from the collection

Declaration: `procedure DeleteRoute(AIndex: Integer)`
`procedure DeleteRoute(ARoute: THTTPRoute)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DeleteRoute` removes the specified route from the router's route collection. It can delete by index or by route object reference.

37.21.7 THTTPRouter.DeleteRouteByID

Synopsis: Removes a route by its ID

Declaration: `procedure DeleteRouteByID(AID: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DeleteRouteByID` removes a route from the collection using its unique identifier. It searches for the route with the specified ID and removes it.

37.21.8 THTTPRouter.SanitizeRoute

Synopsis: Sanitizes a route path string

Declaration: `class function SanitizeRoute(const Path: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `SanitizeRoute` cleans and normalizes a route path string to ensure proper format. It removes invalid characters and applies standard formatting rules.

37.21.9 THTTPRouter.Service

Synopsis: Returns the global router service instance

Declaration: `class function Service : THTTPRouter`

Visibility: public

Description: `Service` provides access to the global router service instance. It implements a singleton pattern for router access across the application.

37.21.10 THTTPRouter.ServiceClass

Synopsis: Returns the router service class

Declaration: `class function ServiceClass : THTTPRouterClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ServiceClass` returns the class used for creating router service instances. It allows customization of the router implementation.

37.21.11 THTTPRouter.SetServiceClass

Synopsis: Sets the router service class

Declaration: `class procedure SetServiceClass(AClass: THTTPRouterClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetServiceClass` configures the class to use for creating router service instances. It allows replacing the default router implementation with a custom one.

37.21.12 THTTPRouter.StringToRouteMethod

Synopsis: Converts string to route method enumeration

Declaration: `class function StringToRouteMethod(const S: string) : TRouteMethod`

Visibility: public

Description: `StringToRouteMethod` parses a string representation of an HTTP method and returns the corresponding `TRouteMethod` enumeration value. It supports standard HTTP method names like "GET", "POST", etc.

37.21.13 THTTPRouter.RegisterRoute

Synopsis: Registers a new route with the router

Declaration: `function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AEvent: TRouteEvent; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod; AEvent: TRouteEvent; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; const AIntf: IRouteInterface; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod; const AIntf: IRouteInterface; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; const AObjectClass: TRouteObjectClass; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod; const AObjectClass: TRouteObjectClass; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AData: Pointer; ACallBack: TRouteCallBackEx; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AData: Pointer; AMethod: TRouteMethod; ACallBack: TRouteCallBackEx; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; ACallBack: TRouteCallBack; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`
`function RegisterRoute(const APattern: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod; ACallBack: TRouteCallBack; IsDefault: Boolean=False) : THTTPRoute; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `RegisterRoute` adds a new route to the router with the specified pattern and handler. It supports various handler types including callbacks, events, interfaces, and object classes.

37.21.14 THTTPRouter.FindHTTPRoute

Synopsis: Finds a route matching path and method

Declaration: `function FindHTTPRoute(const Path: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod; Params: TStrings; out MethodMismatch: Boolean) : THTTPRoute`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindHTTPRoute` searches for a route that matches the specified path and HTTP method. It extracts parameters and provides information about method mismatches.

37.21.15 THTTPRouter.GetHTTPRoute

Synopsis: Gets the best matching route for path and method

Declaration: `function GetHTTPRoute(const Path: string; AMethod: TRouteMethod;
Params: TStrings) : THTTPRoute`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetHTTPRoute` finds the best route that matches the specified path and method. It prioritizes exact matches over default routes and extracts path parameters.

37.21.16 THTTPRouter.RouteRequest

Synopsis: Routes an HTTP request to appropriate handler

Declaration: `procedure RouteRequest (ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)`

Visibility: public

Description: `RouteRequest` processes an incoming HTTP request by finding the appropriate route and executing its handler. It includes interceptor processing and error handling for the complete request lifecycle.

37.21.17 THTTPRouter.Routes

Synopsis: Provides indexed access to routes

Declaration: `Property Routes[AIndex: Integer]: THTTPRoute; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Routes` allows accessing individual routes in the router's collection by index. It provides read-only access to route objects for inspection and management.

37.21.18 THTTPRouter.RouteCount

Synopsis: Returns the number of registered routes

Declaration: `Property RouteCount : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `RouteCount` provides the total count of routes currently registered with the router. This includes all route types and can be used for iteration and management purposes.

37.21.19 THTTPRouter.BeforeRequest

Synopsis: Event triggered before processing requests

Declaration: `Property BeforeRequest : THTTPRouteRequestEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BeforeRequest` is an event that fires before any request processing begins. It allows global pre-processing of requests before route matching and handling.

37.21.20 THTTPRouter.AfterRequest

Synopsis: Event triggered after processing requests

Declaration: `Property AfterRequest : THTTPRouteRequestEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `AfterRequest` is an event that fires after request processing completes. It allows global post-processing of requests and responses.

37.21.21 THTTPRouter.RouteOptions

Synopsis: Global options for route matching

Declaration: `Property RouteOptions : TRouteOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `RouteOptions` specifies global options that affect how all routes in the router perform pattern matching. These options control case sensitivity and empty pattern behavior.

37.22 TRouteObject

37.22.1 Description

`TRouteObject` is an abstract base class for objects that can handle HTTP requests. It implements `IRouteInterface` and serves as a foundation for custom route handler classes.

37.22.2 Interfaces overview

Page	Interfaces	Description
1240	<code>IRouteInterface</code>	Interface for route request handlers

37.22.3 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1251	<code>Create</code>	Creates a route object instance
1252	<code>HandleRequest</code>	Handles an HTTP request

37.22.4 TRouteObject.Create

Synopsis: Creates a route object instance

Declaration: `constructor Create; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new route object instance. This constructor can be overridden in descendant classes for custom initialization.

37.22.5 TRouteObject.HandleRequest

Synopsis: Handles an HTTP request

Declaration: `procedure HandleRequest (ARequest: TRequest; AResponse: TResponse)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `HandleRequest` is an abstract method that must be implemented by descendant classes. It processes HTTP requests and generates appropriate responses.

Chapter 38

Reference for unit 'IBConnection'

38.1 Used units

Table 38.1: Used units by unit 'IBConnection'

Name	Page
BufDataset	213
Classes	??
DB	440
dbconst	??
ibase60dyn	??
SQLDB	1492
System	??
sysutils	??

38.2 Constants, types and variables

38.2.1 Constants

`DEFDIALECT` = 3

Default dialect that will be used when connecting to databases. See `TIBConnection.Dialect` ([1258](#)) for more details on dialects.

`MAXBLOBSEGMENTSIZE` = 65535

Maximum size to use when fetching blob segments.

38.2.2 Types

`TStatusVector` = `Array[0..19]` of `ISC_STATUS`

`TStatusVector` is the (opaque) type of the Interbase internal status vector.

38.3 TDatabaseInfo

```
TDatabaseInfo = record
  Dialect : Integer;
  ODSMajorVersion : Integer
  ;
  ServerVersion : string;
  ServerVersionString : string;
end
```

TDatabaseInfo is used internally by TIBConnection to store information about the connected database.

38.4 EIBDatabaseError

38.4.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database error, a descendant of db.EDatabaseError ([1253](#)).

See also: db.EDatabaseError ([1253](#))

38.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1254	GDSErrorCode	r	Firebird/Interbase GDS error code.
1254	StatusVector	rw	Low-level IB API status vector.

38.4.3 EIBDatabaseError.StatusVector

Synopsis: Low-level IB API status vector.

Declaration: `Property StatusVector : TStatusVector`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: StatusVector contains the low-level status information returned by the last firebird/interbase APO call.

38.4.4 EIBDatabaseError.GDSErrorCode

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase GDS error code.

Declaration: `Property GDSErrorCode : Integer; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Firebird/Interbase-specific error code, the GDS error code. From a Firebird perspective: Firebird throws 2 error codes for an exception. The high-level one is the SQLCODE, which is a negative 3-digit code. The lower-level one is the ISC code (or GDSCODE) which has 9 digits. Related ISC error types are grouped under the same SQLCODE. In some cases, each successive gdscode error gives you further information about the error condition. Note: SQLCODE is a deprecated SQL standard; its successor is SQLSTATE.

38.5 TIBConnection

38.5.1 Description

`TIBConnection` is a descendant of `TSQLConnection` ([1253](#)) and represents a connection to a Firebird/Interbase server.

It is designed to work with Interbase 6, Firebird 1 and newer database servers.

`TIBConnection` by default requires the Firebird/Interbase client library (e.g. `gds32.dll`, `libfbclient.so`, `fbclient.dll`, `fbembed.dll`) and its dependencies to be installed on the system. The bitness between library and your application must match: e.g. use 32 bit `fbclient` when developing a 32 bit application on 64 bit Linux.

On Windows, in accordance with the regular Windows way of loading DLLs, the library can also be in the executable directory. In fact, this directory is searched first, and might be a good option for distributing software to end users as it eliminates problems with incompatible DLL versions.

`TIBConnection` is based on FPC Interbase/Firebird code (`ibase60.inc`) that tries to load the client library. If you want to use Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is searched/loaded first. There are several ways to do this:

- Include `ibase60` in your `uses` clause, set `UseEmbeddedFirebird` to `true`
- On Windows, with FPC newer than 2.5.1, put `fbembed.dll` in your application directory
- On Windows, put the `fbembed.dll` in your application directory and rename it to `fbclient.dll`

Pre 2.5.1 versions of FPC did not try to load the `fbembed` library by default. See [FPC bug 17664](#) for more details.

An indication of which DLLs need to be installed on Windows (Firebird 2.5, differs between versions:

- `fbclient.dll` (or `fbembed.dll`)
- `firebird.msg`
- `ib_util.dll`
- `icudt30.dll`
- `icuin30.dll`
- `icuuc30.dll`
- `msvcpr80.dll`
- `msvcr80.dll`

Please see your database documentation for details.

The `TIBConnection` component does not reliably detect computed fields as such. This means that automatically generated update SQL statements will attempt to update these fields, resulting in SQL errors. These errors can be avoided by removing the `pfInUpdate` flag from the `provideroptions` from a field, once it has been created:

```
MyQuery.FieldName('full_name').ProviderFlags:=[];
```

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([1253](#))

38.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1256	Create	Creates a <code>TIBConnection</code> object.
1257	CreateDB	Creates a database on disk.
1257	DropDB	Deletes a database from disk.
1256	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.

38.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1257	BlobSegmentSize	rw	Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment.
1259	CheckTransactionParams	rw	Let <code>StartTransaction</code> check transaction parameters.
1258	DatabaseName		Name of the database to connect to.
1258	Dialect	rws	Database dialect.
1259	KeepConnection		Keep open connection after first query.
1259	LoginPrompt		Switch for showing custom login prompt.
1258	ODSMajorVersion	r	Database On-Disk Structure major version.
1260	OnLogin		Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.
1259	Params		Firebird/Interbase specific parameters.
1260	Port	s	Port at which the server listens.
1260	UseConnectionCharSetIfNone	rw	For string/blob fields with codepage none, use the connection character set when copying data.
1260	WireCompression	rw	Use wire compression when communicating with the server.

38.5.4 TIBConnection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a `TIBConnection` object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a `TIBConnection` object.

38.5.5 TIBConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` overrides `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([1524](#)) to return the relevant information for the Interbase/Firebird connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([1524](#)), `TConnInfoType` ([1502](#))

38.5.6 TIBConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Creates a database on disk.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Instructs the Interbase or Firebird database server to create a new database.

If set, the `TSQLConnection.Params` (1253) (specifically, `PAGE_SIZE`) and `TSQLConnection.CharSet` (1253) properties influence the database creation.

If creating a database using a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before trying to create the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.Password` (1253).

If creating a database using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` (1253) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1253) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` (1253). for details on loading the embedded database library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (1253), `TSQLConnection.DropDB` (1253), `TIBConnection` (1255)

38.5.7 TIBConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Deletes a database from disk.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DropDB` instructs the Interbase/Firebird database server to delete the database that is specified in the `TIBConnection` (1255).

In a client/server environment, the `TIBConnection` code will connect to the database server before telling it to drop the database. Therefore make sure the connection properties are already correctly set, e.g. `TSQLConnection.HostName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.Password` (1253).

When using Firebird embedded, make sure the embedded connection library is loaded, the `TSQLConnection.HostName` (1253) property is empty, and set the `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1253) to e.g. 'SYSDBA'. See `TIBConnection: Firebird/Interbase specific TSQLConnection` (1253). for more details on loading the embedded library.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` (1253), `TSQLConnection.HostName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1253), `TSQLConnection.Password` (1253)

38.5.8 TIBConnection.BlobSegmentSize

Synopsis: Write this amount of bytes per BLOB segment.

Declaration: `Property BlobSegmentSize : Word; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: **Deprecated** since FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659

When sending BLOBs to the database, the code writes them in segments.

Before FPC 2.7.1 revision 19659, these segments were 80 bytes and could be changed using `BlobSegmentSize`. Please set `BlobSegmentSize` to 65535 for better write performance.

In newer FPC versions, the `BlobSegmentSize` property is ignored and segments of 65535 bytes are always used.

38.5.9 TIBConnection.ODSMajorVersion

Synopsis: Database On-Disk Structure major version.

Declaration: `Property ODSMajorVersion : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ODSMajorVersion` is the Database On-Disk Structure major version. It is provided for information purposes only.

38.5.10 TIBConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: Name of the database to connect to.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Name of the Interbase/Firebird database to connect to.

This can be either the path to the database or an alias name. Please see your database documentation for details.

In a client/server environment, the name indicates the location of the database on the server's file system, so if you have a Linux Firebird server, you might have something like `/var/lib/firebird/2.5/data/employee.fdb`

If using an embedded Firebird database, the name is a relative path relative to the `fbembed` library.

Note that the path is specified as an `AnsiString`, meaning that databases residing in directories that rely on Unicode characters will not work. (firebird itself also cannot handle this).

38.5.11 TIBConnection.Dialect

Synopsis: Database dialect.

Declaration: `Property Dialect : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Firebird/Interbase servers since Interbase 6 have a dialect setting for backwards compatibility. It can be 1, 2 or 3, the default is 3.

Note: the dialect for new Interbase/Firebird databases is 3; dialects 1 and 2 are only used in legacy environments. In practice, you can ignore this setting for newly created databases.

38.5.12 TIBConnection.CheckTransactionParams

Synopsis: Let StartTransaction check transaction parameters.

Declaration: `Property CheckTransactionParams : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CheckTransactionParams` can be set to `True` to force the connection component to check the transaction parameters for valid values before starting a transaction.

38.5.13 TIBConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Keep open connection after first query.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Determines whether to keep the connection open once it is established and the first query has been executed.

38.5.14 TIBConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Switch for showing custom login prompt.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: If true, the `OnLogin` ([1253](#)) event will fire, allowing you to handle supplying of credentials yourself.

See also: `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([1253](#))

38.5.15 TIBConnection.Params

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase specific parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` is a `#rtl.classes.TStringList` (??) of name=value combinations that set database-specific parameters.

The following parameter is supported:

- `PAGE_SIZE`: size of database pages (an integer), e.g. 16384.

See your database documentation for more details.

See also: `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.Params` ([1531](#))

38.5.16 TIBConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event triggered when a login prompt needs to be shown.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` is triggered when the connection needs a login prompt when connecting: it is triggered when the `LoginPrompt` (1253) property is `True`, after the `BeforeConnect` (488) event, but before the connection is actually established.

See also: `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.BeforeConnect` (488), `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` (1253), `#fcl.db.TCustomConnection.Open` (485), `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` (1253)

38.5.17 TIBConnection.Port

Synopsis: Port at which the server listens.

Declaration: `Property Port :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Port` can be set to the port that Firebird is listening on. If not specified, the default port of 3050 is used when establishing a connection. This property must be set prior to activating the connection.

38.5.18 TIBConnection.UseConnectionCharSetIfNone

Synopsis: For string/blob fields with codepage none, use the connection character set when copying data.

Declaration: `Property UseConnectionCharSetIfNone : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UseConnectionCharSetIfNone` can be set to `true` to assume that fields which have no code-page set in the database schema, use the connection character set.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Charset` (1528)

38.5.19 TIBConnection.WireCompression

Synopsis: Use wire compression when communicating with the server.

Declaration: `Property WireCompression : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WireCompression` can be set to `True` to force the client to use compression when communicating with the server. This property must be set prior to activating the connection.

38.6 TIBConnectionDef

38.6.1 Description

Child of TConnectionDef ([1253](#)) used to register an Interbase/Firebird connection, so that it is available in "connection factory" scenarios where database drivers/connections are loaded at runtime and it is unknown at compile time whether the required database libraries are present on the end user's system.

See also: TConnectionDef ([1253](#))

38.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1261	ConnectionClass	Firebird/Interbase child of ConnectionClass (1509).
1262	DefaultLibraryName	Default name of the firebird client library.
1261	Description	Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass (1509).
1262	LoadedLibraryName	Actually loaded library name.
1262	LoadFunction	Return Function to call when loading firebird support.
1261	TypeName	Firebird/Interbase child of TConnectionDef.TypeName (1253).
1262	UnLoadFunction	Return Function to call when unloading firebird support.

38.6.3 TIBConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of TConnectionDef.TypeName ([1253](#)).

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; override`

Visibility: default

See also: TConnectionDef.TypeName ([1253](#)), TIBConnection ([1255](#))

38.6.4 TIBConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Firebird/Interbase child of ConnectionClass ([1509](#)).

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; override`

Visibility: default

See also: TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([1253](#)), TIBConnection ([1255](#))

38.6.5 TIBConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Description for the Firebird/Interbase child of #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass ([1509](#)).

Declaration: `class function Description : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: The description identifies this ConnectionDef object as a Firebird/Interbase connection.

See also: #fcl.sqlldb.TConnectionDef.Description ([1509](#)), TIBConnection ([1255](#))

38.6.6 TIBConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default name of the firebird client library.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` returns the library name to use when loading the firebird client library.

38.6.7 TIBConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when loading firebird support.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to dynamically load firebird support.

38.6.8 TIBConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when unloading firebird support.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to unload firebird support.

38.6.9 TIBConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Actually loaded library name.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` returns the actually loaded library name.

See also: `DefaultLibraryName` ([1262](#))

38.7 TIBCursor

38.7.1 Description

A cursor that keeps track of where you are in a Firebird/Interbase dataset. It is a descendent of `TSQLCursor` ([1253](#)).

See also: `TSQLCursor` ([1253](#)), `TIBConnection` ([1255](#))

38.8 TIBTrans

38.8.1 Description

Firebird/Interbase database transaction object. Descendant of TSQLHandle ([1253](#)).

See also: TSQLHandle ([1253](#)), TIBConnection ([1255](#))

Chapter 39

Reference for unit 'idea'

39.1 Used units

Table 39.1: Used units by unit 'idea'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

39.2 Overview

Besides some low level IDEA encryption routines, the IDEA unit also offers 2 streams which offer on-the-fly encryption or decryption: there are 2 stream objects: A write-only encryption stream which encrypts anything that is written to it, and a decryption stream which decrypts anything that is read from it.

39.3 Constants, types and variables

39.3.1 Constants

`IDEABLOCKSIZE = 8`

IDEA block size.

`IDEAKEYSIZE = 16`

IDEA Key size constant.

`KEYLEN = 6 * ROUNDS + 4`

Key length.

`ROUNDS = 8`

Number of rounds to encrypt.

39.3.2 Types

`IdeaCryptData = TideaCryptData`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IdeaCryptKey = TideaCryptKey`

Provided for backward functionality.

`IDEAkey = TIDEAKey`

Provided for backward functionality.

`TideaCryptData = Array[0..3] of Word`

`TideaCryptData` is an internal type, defined to hold data for encryption/decryption.

`TideaCryptKey = Array[0..7] of Word`

The actual encryption or decryption key for IDEA is 64-bit long. This type is used to hold such a key. It can be generated with the `EnKeyIDEA` (1266) or `DeKeyIDEA` (1265) algorithms depending on whether an encryption or decryption key is needed.

`TIDEAKey = Array[0..keylen-1] of Word`

The IDEA key should be filled by the user with some random data (say, a passphrase). This key is used to generate the actual encryption/decryption keys.

39.4 Procedures and functions

39.4.1 CipherIdea

Synopsis: Encrypt or decrypt a buffer.

Declaration: `procedure CipherIdea(Input: TideaCryptData;
out outdata: TideaCryptData; z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CipherIdea` encrypts or decrypts a buffer with data (`Input`) using key `z`. The resulting encrypted or decrypted data is returned in `Output`.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` (1266), `DeKeyIdea` (1265), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (1268), `TIDEADecryptStream` (1266)

39.4.2 DeKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create a decryption key from an encryption key.

Declaration: `procedure DeKeyIdea(z: TIDEAKey; out dk: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeKeyIdea` creates a decryption key based on the encryption key `z`. The decryption key is returned in `dk`. Note that only a decryption key generated from the encryption key that was used to encrypt the data can be used to decrypt the data.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnKeyIdea` ([1266](#)), `CipherIdea` ([1265](#))

39.4.3 EnKeyIdea

Synopsis: Create an IDEA encryption key from a user key.

Declaration: `procedure EnKeyIdea (UserKey: TIDEACryptKey; out z: TIDEAKey)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnKeyIdea` creates an IDEA encryption key from user-supplied data in `UserKey`. The Encryption key is stored in `z`.

Errors: None.

See also: `DeKeyIdea` ([1265](#)), `CipherIdea` ([1265](#))

39.5 EIDEAError

39.5.1 Description

`EIDEAError` is used to signal errors in the IDEA encryption decryption streams.

39.6 TIDEADeCryptStream

39.6.1 Description

`TIDEADeCryptStream` is a stream which decrypts anything that is read from it using the IDEA mechanism. It reads the encrypted data from a source stream and decrypts it using the `CipherIDEA` ([1265](#)) algorithm. It is a read-only stream: it is not possible to write data to this stream.

When creating a `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance, an IDEA decryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream from which encrypted data should be read written.

The encrypted data can be created with a `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([1268](#)) encryption stream.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([1268](#)), `TIDEAStream.Create` ([1270](#)), `CipherIDEA` ([1265](#))

39.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1267	Create	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEADeCryptStream</code> instance.
1267	Read	Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed.
1267	Seek	Set position on the stream.

39.6.3 TIDEADeCryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEADeCryptStream` instance using the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (1265), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (1265) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (1265), `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270), `TIDEAEncryptStream.Create` (1268)

39.6.4 TIDEADeCryptStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream, decrypting it as needed.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` attempts to read `Count` bytes from the stream, placing them in `Buffer` the bytes are read from the source stream and decrypted as they are read. (bytes are read from the source stream in blocks of 8 bytes. The function returns the number of bytes actually read.

Errors: If an error occurs when reading data from the source stream, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Seek` (1267), `TIDEAEncryptStream` (1268)

39.6.5 TIDEADeCryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set position on the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` will only work on a forward seek. It emulates a forward seek by reading and discarding bytes from the input stream. The `TIDEADeCryptStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` (1266) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` (1267)

39.7 TIDEAEncryptStream

39.7.1 Description

`TIDEAEncryptStream` is a stream which encrypts anything that is written to it using the IDEA mechanism, and then writes the encrypted data to the destination stream using the `CipherIDEA` (1265) algorithm. It is a write-only stream: it is not possible to read data from this stream.

When creating a `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance, an IDEA encryption key should be passed to the constructor, as well as the stream to which encrypted data should be written.

The resulting encrypted data can be read again with a `TIDEADecryptStream` (1266) decryption stream.

See also: `TIDEADecryptStream` (1266), `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270), `CipherIDEA` (1265)

39.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1268	<code>Create</code>	Constructor to create a new <code>TIDEAEncryptStream</code> instance.
1268	<code>Destroy</code>	Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.
1269	<code>Flush</code>	Write remaining bytes from the stream.
1269	<code>Seek</code>	Set stream position.
1269	<code>Write</code>	Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted.

39.7.3 TIDEAEncryptStream.Create

Synopsis: Constructor to create a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AKey: string; Dest: TStream); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TIDEAEncryptStream` instance using the string `AKey` to compute the encryption key (1265), which is then passed on to the inherited constructor `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270). It is an easy-access function which introduces no new functionality.

The string is truncated at the maximum length of the `TIdeaCryptKey` (1265) structure, so it makes no sense to provide a string with length longer than this structure.

See also: `TIdeaCryptKey` (1265), `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270), `TIDEADeCryptStream.Create` (1267)

39.7.4 TIDEAEncryptStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Flush data buffers and free the stream instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes any data still remaining in the internal encryption buffer, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`

By default, the destination stream is not freed when the encryption stream is freed.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TIDEAStream.Create` (1270)

39.7.5 TIDEAEncryptStream.Write

Synopsis: Write bytes to the stream to be encrypted.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream, encrypting the bytes as they are written (encryption in blocks of 8 bytes).

Errors: If an error occurs writing to the destination stream, an error may occur.

See also: `Read` ([1267](#))

39.7.6 TIDEAEncryptStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` return the current position if called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments. With all other values, it will always raise an exception, since it is impossible to set the position on an encryption stream.

Errors: An `EIDEAError` ([1266](#)) will be raised unless called with 0 and `soFromCurrent` as arguments.

See also: `Write` ([1269](#)), `EIDEAError` ([1266](#))

39.7.7 TIDEAEncryptStream.Flush

Synopsis: Write remaining bytes from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: public

Description: `Flush` writes the current encryption buffer to the stream. Encryption always happens in blocks of 8 bytes, so if the buffer is not completely filled at the end of the writing operations, it must be flushed. It should never be called directly, unless at the end of all writing operations. It is called automatically when the stream is destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` ([1269](#))

39.8 TIDEAStream

39.8.1 Description

Do not create instances of `TIDEAStream` directly. It implements no useful functionality: it serves as a common ancestor of the `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([1268](#)) and `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([1266](#)), and simply provides some fields that these descendent classes use when encrypting/decrypting. One of these classes should be created, depending on whether one wishes to encrypt or to decrypt.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([1268](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([1266](#))

39.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1270	Create	Creates a new instance of the <code>TIDEAStream</code> class.

39.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1270	Key	r	Key used when encrypting/decrypting.

39.8.4 TIDEAStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TIDEAStream` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AKey: TIDEAKey; Dest: TStream); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` stores the encryption/decryption key and then calls the inherited `Create` to store the `Dest` stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIDEAEncryptStream` ([1268](#)), `TIDEADeCryptStream` ([1266](#))

39.8.5 TIDEAStream.Key

Synopsis: Key used when encrypting/decrypting.

Declaration: `Property Key : TIDEAKey`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Key` is the key as it was passed to the constructor of the stream. It cannot be changed while data is read or written. It is the key as it is used when encrypting/decrypting.

See also: `CipherIdea` ([1265](#))

Chapter 40

Reference for unit 'inicol'

40.1 Used units

Table 40.1: Used units by unit 'inicol'

Name	Page
Classes	??
IniFiles	1281
System	??
sysutils	??

40.2 Overview

`inicol` contains an implementation of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` descendents which cooperate to read and write the collection from and to a `.ini` file. It uses the `TCustomIniFile` ([1283](#)) class for this.

40.3 Constants, types and variables

40.3.1 Constants

```
KeyCount = 'Count'
```

`KeyCount` is used as a key name when reading or writing the number of items in the collection from the global section.

```
SGlobal = 'Global'
```

`SGlobal` is used as the default name of the global section when reading or writing the collection.

40.4 EIniCol

40.4.1 Description

EIniCol is used to report error conditions in the load and save methods of TIniCollection ([1272](#)).

40.5 TIniCollection

40.5.1 Description

TIniCollection is a collection (??) descendent which has the capability to write itself to an .ini file. It introduces some load and save mechanisms, which can be used to write all items in the collection to disk. The items should be descendents of the type TIniCollectionItem ([1276](#)).

All methods work using a TCustomIniFile class, making it possible to save to alternate file formats, or even databases.

An instance of TIniCollection should never be used directly. Instead, a descendent should be used, which sets the FPrefix and FSectionPrefix protected variables.

See also: TIniCollection.LoadFromFile ([1274](#)), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni ([1274](#)), TIniCollection.SaveToIni ([1273](#)), TIniCollection.SaveToFile ([1273](#))

40.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1272	Load	Loads the collection from the default filename.
1274	LoadFromFile	Load collection from file.
1274	LoadFromIni	Load collection from a file in .ini file format.
1273	Save	Save the collection to the default filename.
1273	SaveToFile	Save collection to a file in .ini file format.
1273	SaveToIni	Save the collection to a TCustomIniFile descendent.

40.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1275	FileName	rw	Filename of the collection.
1275	GlobalSection	rw	Name of the global section.
1274	Prefix	r	Prefix used in global section.
1275	SectionPrefix	r	Prefix string for section names.

40.5.4 TIniCollection.Load

Synopsis: Loads the collection from the default filename.

Declaration: procedure Load

Visibility: public

Description: Load loads the collection from the file as specified in the FileName ([1275](#)) property. It calls the LoadFromFile ([1274](#)) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an EIniCol exception will be raised.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` ([1274](#)), `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` ([1274](#)), `TIniCollection.Save` ([1273](#)), `FileName` ([1275](#))

40.5.5 TIniCollection.Save

Synopsis: Save the collection to the default filename.

Declaration: `procedure Save`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Save` writes the collection to the file as specified in the `FileName` ([1275](#)) property, using `GlobalSection` ([1275](#)) as the section. It calls the `SaveToFile` ([1273](#)) method to do this.

Errors: If the collection was not loaded or saved to file before this call, an `EIniCol` exception will be raised.

See also: `TIniCollection.SaveToFile` ([1273](#)), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` ([1273](#)), `TIniCollection.Load` ([1272](#)), `FileName` ([1275](#))

40.5.6 TIniCollection.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Save the collection to a `TCustomIniFile` descendent.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToIni` does the actual writing. It writes the number of elements in the global section (as specified by the `Section` argument), as well as the section name for each item in the list. The item names are written using the `Prefix` ([1274](#)) property for the key. After this it calls the `SaveToIni` ([1276](#)) method of all `TIniCollectionItem` ([1276](#)) instances.

This means that the global section of the .ini file will look something like this:

```
[globalsection]
Count=3
Prefix1=SectionPrefixFirstItemName
Prefix2=SectionPrefixSecondItemName
Prefix3=SectionPrefixThirdItemName
```

This construct allows to re-use an ini file for multiple collections.

After this method is called, the `GlobalSection` ([1275](#)) property contains the value of `Section`, it will be used in the `Save` ([1273](#)) method.

See also: `TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni` ([1276](#)), `TIniCollection.Save` ([1273](#))

40.5.7 TIniCollection.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save collection to a file in .ini file format.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string; const Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SaveToFile` will create a `TMemIniFile` instance with the `AFileName` argument as a filename. This instance is passed on to the `SaveToIni` (1273) method, together with the `Section` argument, to do the actual saving.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the path in `AFileName` does not exist.

See also: `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (1273), `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (1274)

40.5.8 TIniCollection.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Load collection from a file in .ini file format.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromIni` will load the collection from the `Ini` instance. It first clears the collection, and reads the number of items from the global section with the name as passed through the `Section` argument. After this, an item is created and added to the collection, and its data is read by calling the `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (1276) method, passing the appropriate section name as found in the global section.

The description of the global section can be found in the `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (1273) method description.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromFile` (1274), `TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni` (1276), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (1273)

40.5.9 TIniCollection.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load collection from file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string; const Section: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates a `TMemIniFile` instance using `AFileName` as the filename. It calls `LoadFromIni` (1274) using this instance and `Section` as the parameters.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (1274), `TIniCollection.Load` (1272), `TIniCollection.SaveToIni` (1273), `TIniCollection.SaveToFile` (1273)

40.5.10 TIniCollection.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix used in global section.

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prefix` is used when writing the section names of the items in the collection to the global section, or when reading the names from the global section. If the prefix is set to `Item` then the global section might look something like this:

```
[MyCollection]
Count=2
Item1=FirstItem
Item2=SecondItem
```

A descendent of `TIniCollection` should set the value of this property, it cannot be empty.

See also: `TIniCollection.SectionPrefix` ([1275](#)), `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` ([1275](#))

40.5.11 TIniCollection.SectionPrefix

Synopsis: Prefix string for section names.

Declaration: Property `SectionPrefix` : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `SectionPrefix` is a string that is prepended to the section name specified using the `TIniCollectionItem.SectionName` ([1277](#)) property. The two elements form the actual section name where the collection items are stored. The value can be an empty string (") if a Prefix is not needed in the realized `SectionName`.

See also: `TIniCollection.GlobalSection` ([1275](#)), `TIniCollectionItem.SectionName` ([1277](#))

40.5.12 TIniCollection.FileName

Synopsis: Filename of the collection.

Declaration: Property `FileName` : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FileName` is the filename as used in the last `LoadFromFile` ([1274](#)) or `SaveToFile` ([1273](#)) operation. It is used in the `Load` ([1272](#)) or `Save` ([1273](#)) calls.

See also: `Save` ([1273](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([1274](#)), `SaveToFile` ([1273](#)), `Load` ([1272](#))

40.5.13 TIniCollection.GlobalSection

Synopsis: Name of the global section.

Declaration: Property `GlobalSection` : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `GlobalSection` contains the value of the `Section` argument in the `LoadFromIni` ([1274](#)) or `SaveToIni` ([1273](#)) calls. It's used in the `Load` ([1272](#)) or `Save` ([1273](#)) calls.

See also: `Save` ([1273](#)), `LoadFromFile` ([1274](#)), `SaveToFile` ([1273](#)), `Load` ([1272](#))

40.6 TIniCollectionItem

40.6.1 Description

TIniCollectionItem is a #rtl.classes.tcollectionitem (??) descendent which has some extra methods for saving/loading the item to or from an .ini file.

To use this class, a descendent should be made, and the SaveToIni (1276) and LoadFromIni (1276) methods should be overridden. They should implement the actual loading and saving. The loading and saving is always initiated by the methods in TIniCollection (1272), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (1274) and TIniCollection.SaveToIni (1273) respectively.

See also: TIniCollection (1272), TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni (1276), TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni (1276), TIniCollection.LoadFromIni (1274), TIniCollection.SaveToIni (1273)

40.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1277	LoadFromFile	Load item from a file.
1276	LoadFromIni	Method called when the item must be loaded.
1277	SaveToFile	Save item to a file.
1276	SaveToIni	Method called when the item must be saved.

40.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1277	SectionName	rw	Default section name.

40.6.4 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be saved.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); virtual
; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: SaveToIni is called by TIniCollection.SaveToIni (1273) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to save the data they need to save. All write methods of the TCustomIniFile instance passed in Ini can be used, as long as the writing happens in the section passed in Section.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually written to the correct section.

See also: TIniCollection.SaveToIni (1273), LoadFromIni (1276), SaveToFile (1277), LoadFromFile (1277)

40.6.5 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromIni

Synopsis: Method called when the item must be loaded.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromIni(Ini: TCustomIniFile; Section: string); virtual
; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromIni` is called by `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (1274) when it saves this item. Descendent classes should override this method to load the data they need to load. All read methods of the `TCustomIniFile` instance passed in `Ini` can be used, as long as the reading happens in the section passed in `Section`.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether the values are actually read from the correct section.

See also: `TIniCollection.LoadFromIni` (1274), `SaveToIni` (1276), `LoadFromFile` (1277), `SaveToFile` (1277)

40.6.6 TIniCollectionItem.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save item to a file.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: string; const Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` creates an instance of `TIniFile` with the indicated `FileName` calls `SaveToIni` (1276) to save the item to the indicated file in .ini format under the section `Section`

Errors: An exception can occur if the file is not writeable.

See also: `SaveToIni` (1276), `LoadFromFile` (1277)

40.6.7 TIniCollectionItem.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load item from a file.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: string; const Section: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` creates an instance of `TMemIniFile` and calls `LoadFromIni` (1276) to load the item from the indicated file in .ini format from the section `Section`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SaveToFile` (1277), `LoadFromIni` (1276)

40.6.8 TIniCollectionItem.SectionName

Synopsis: Default section name.

Declaration: `Property SectionName : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `SectionName` is the section name under which the item will be saved or from which it should be read. The read/write functions should be overridden in descendents to determine a unique section name within the .ini file.

See also: `SaveToFile` (1277), `LoadFromIni` (1276)

40.7 TNamedIniCollection

40.7.1 Description

TNamedIniCollection is the collection to go with the TNamedIniCollectionItem (1279) item class. it provides some functions to look for items based on the UserData (1278) or based on the Name (1278).

See also: TNamedIniCollectionItem (1279), IndexOfUserData (1278), IndexOfName (1278)

40.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1279	FindByName	Return the item based on its name.
1279	FindByUserData	Return the item based on its UserData.
1278	IndexOfName	Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position.
1278	IndexOfUserData	Search for an item based on it's UserData property.

40.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1279	NamedItems	rw	Indexed access to the TNamedIniCollectionItem items.

40.7.4 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfUserData

Synopsis: Search for an item based on it's UserData property.

Declaration: `function IndexOfUserData(UserData: TObject) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfUserData searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has UserData in its UserData (1278) property. If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfName (1278), TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData (1280)

40.7.5 TNamedIniCollection.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Search for an item, based on its name, and return its position.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const AName: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOfName searches the list of items and returns the index of the item which has name equal to AName (case insensitive). If no such item exists, -1 is returned.

Note that the (linear) search starts at the last element and works it's way back to the first.

Errors: If no item exists, -1 is returned.

See also: IndexOfUserData (1278), TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name (1280)

40.7.6 TNamedIniCollection.FindByName

Synopsis: Return the item based on its name.

Declaration: `function FindByName(const AName: string) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose name matches `AName` (case insensitive match). It calls `IndexOfName` (1278) and returns the item at the found position. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `IndexOfName` (1278), `FindByUserData` (1279)

40.7.7 TNamedIniCollection.FindByUserData

Synopsis: Return the item based on its `UserData`.

Declaration: `function FindByUserData(UserData: TObject) : TNamedIniCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindByName` returns the collection item whose `UserData` (1280) property value matches the `UserData` parameter. If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

Errors: If no item is found, `Nil` is returned.

40.7.8 TNamedIniCollection.NamedItems

Synopsis: Indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` items.

Declaration: `Property NamedItems[Index: Integer]: TNamedIniCollectionItem; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `NamedItem` is the default property of the `TNamedIniCollection` collection. It allows indexed access to the `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (1279) items. The index is zero based.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem` (1279)

40.8 TNamedIniCollectionItem

40.8.1 Description

`TNamedIniCollectionItem` is a `TIniCollectionItem` (1276) descent with a published `name` property. The name is used as the section name when saving the item to the ini file.

See also: `TIniCollectionItem` (1276)

40.8.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1280	<code>Name</code>	rw	Name of the item.
1280	<code>UserData</code>	rw	User-defined data.

40.8.3 TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData

Synopsis: User-defined data.

Declaration: `Property UserData : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserData` can be used to associate an arbitrary object with the item - much like the `Objects` property of a `TStrings`.

40.8.4 TNamedIniCollectionItem.Name

Synopsis: Name of the item.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Name` is the name of this item. It is also used as the section name when writing the collection item to the `.ini` file.

See also: `TNamedIniCollectionItem.UserData` ([1280](#))

Chapter 41

Reference for unit 'IniFiles'

41.1 Used units

Table 41.1: Used units by unit 'IniFiles'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	284
System	??
sysutils	??

41.2 Overview

IniFiles provides support for handling .ini files. It contains an implementation completely independent of the Windows API for handling such files. The basic (abstract) functionality is defined in TCustomIniFile ([1283](#)) and is implemented in TIniFile ([1296](#)) and TMemIniFile ([1305](#)). The API presented by these components is Delphi compatible.

41.3 Constants, types and variables

41.3.1 Constants

```
ifoWriteStringBoolean = ifoStringBoolean
```

41.3.2 Types

```
TIniFileOption = (ifoStripComments, ifoStripInvalid, ifoEscapeLineFeeds  
,  
                  ifoCaseSensitive, ifoStripQuotes,  
                  ifoFormatSettingsActive, ifoStringBoolean)
```

Table 41.2: Enumeration values for type `TIniFileOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>ifoCaseSensitive</code>	Key and section names are case sensitive.
<code>ifoEscapeLineFeeds</code>	Observe backslash as linefeed escape character.
<code>ifoFormatSettingsActive</code>	Observe the values in <code>FormatSettings</code> .
<code>ifoStringBoolean</code>	
<code>ifoStripComments</code>	Strip comments from file.
<code>ifoStripInvalid</code>	Strip invalid lines from file.
<code>ifoStripQuotes</code>	Strip double quotes from values.

`TIniFileOption` enumerates the possible options when creating a new `TCustomIniFile` (1283) instance.

`ifoStripComments` Strip comments from file.

`ifoStripInvalid` Strip invalid lines from file.

`ifoEscapeLineFeeds` Observe backslash as linefeed escape character.

`ifoCaseSensitive` Key and section names are case sensitive.

`ifoStripQuotes` Strip double quotes from values.

`ifoFormatSettingsActive` Observe the values in `FormatSettings`.

```
TIniFileOptions = Set of TIniFileOption = (ifoCaseSensitive,ifoEscapeLineFeeds
,
            ifoFormatSettingsActive,ifoStringBoolean,
            ifoStripComments,ifoStripInvalid,ifoStripQuotes)
```

`TIniFileOptions` is the set for `TIniFileOption` (1281). It is used in the `TCustomIniFile.Create` (1284) constructor and `TCustomIniFile.Options` (1293) property.

```
TSectionValuesOption = (svoIncludeComments,svoIncludeInvalid,
            svoIncludeQuotes)
```

Table 41.3: Enumeration values for type `TSectionValuesOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>svoIncludeComments</code>	Include comment lines.
<code>svoIncludeInvalid</code>	Include invalid lines.
<code>svoIncludeQuotes</code>	Include existing quotes around values.

`TSectionValuesOption` is used to control the behaviour of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (1291)

`svoIncludeComments` Include comment lines.

`svoIncludeInvalid` Include invalid lines.

svoIncludeQuotes Include existing quotes around values.

```
TSectionValuesOptions = Set of TSectionValuesOption = (svoIncludeComments
, svoIncludeInvalid,
svoIncludeQuotes)
```

TSectionValuesOptions is the set for TSectionValuesOptions (1283). It is used in the TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues (1291) call.

41.4 TCustomIniFile

41.4.1 Description

TCustomIniFile implements all calls for manipulating a .ini. It does not implement any of this behaviour, the behaviour must be implemented in a descendent class like TIniFile (1296) or TMemIniFile (1305).

Since TCustomIniFile is an abstract class, it should never be created directly. Instead, one of the TIniFile or TMemIniFile classes should be created.

See also: TIniFile (1296), TMemIniFile (1305)

41.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1284	Create	Instantiate a new instance of TCustomIniFile.
1292	DeleteKey	Delete a key from a section.
1285	Destroy	Remove the TCustomIniFile instance from memory.
1291	EraseSection	Clear a section.
1289	ReadBinaryStream	Read binary data.
1287	ReadBool	
1288	ReadDate	Read a date value.
1288	ReadDateTime	Read a Date/Time value.
1288	ReadFloat	Read a floating point value.
1286	ReadInt64	Read an Int64 value.
1286	ReadInteger	Read an integer value from the file.
1290	ReadSection	Read the key names in a section.
1291	ReadSections	Read the list of sections.
1291	ReadSectionValues	Read names and values of a section.
1285	ReadString	Read a string valued key.
1288	ReadTime	Read a time value.
1285	SectionExists	Check if a section exists.
1285	SetBoolStringValues	Set the boolean string values to use when writing to file.
1292	UpdateFile	Update the file on disk.
1292	ValueExists	Check if a value exists.
1290	WriteBinaryStream	Write binary data.
1287	WriteBool	Write boolean value.
1289	WriteDate	Write date value.
1289	WriteDateTime	Write date/time value.
1290	WriteFloat	Write a floating-point value.
1287	WriteInt64	Write an Int64 value.
1286	WriteInteger	Write an integer value.
1286	WriteString	Write a string value.
1290	WriteTime	Write time value.

41.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1295	BoolFalseStrings	rw	Strings to recognize as boolean <code>False</code> values.
1294	BoolTrueStrings	rw	Strings to recognize as boolean <code>True</code> values.
1293	CaseSensitive	rw	Are key and section names case sensitive.
1292	Encoding	rw	Encoding of the ini file.
1293	EscapeLineFeeds	r	Should linefeeds be escaped ?
1293	FileName	r	Name of the .ini file.
1294	FormatSettingsActive	rw	Is <code>FormatSettings</code> used or not.
1293	Options	rw	Options currently in effect.
1295	OwnsEncoding	r	Does the ini file instance own the encoding ?
1294	StripQuotes	rw	Should quotes be stripped from string values.

41.4.4 TCustomIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of `TCustomIniFile`.

Declaration:

```

constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
                  ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;
                  AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[])
constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
                  ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding; AOwnsEncoding: Boolean;
                  AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[])
constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
                  AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[]); virtual
constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
                  ; virtual

```

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TCustomIniFile` and loads it with the data from `AFileName`, if this file exists. If the `ifEscapeLineFeeds` option is present in `AOptions` or `AEscapeLineFeeds` parameter is `True`, then lines which have their end-of-line markers escaped with a backslash, will be concatenated. This means that the following 2 lines

```
Description=This is a \
line with a long text
```

is equivalent to

```
Description=This is a line with a long text
```

By default, not escaping of linefeeds is performed (for Delphi compatibility)

Default options for the `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([1293](#)) property can be specified in `AOptions`.

A Default string encoding can be specified in `aEncoding`. If `aOwnsEncoding` is `True` the encoding will be freed when the ini file instance is destroyed.

Errors: If the file cannot be read, an exception may be raised.

See also: `Destroy` ([1285](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([1293](#))

41.4.5 TCustomIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TCustomIniFile instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up all internal structures and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: TCustomIniFile ([1283](#))

41.4.6 TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValues

Synopsis: Set the boolean string values to use when writing to file.

Declaration: `procedure SetBoolStringValues(ABoolValue: Boolean;
Values: Array of string = string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetBoolStringValues` Sets the strings to recognize as boolean variable `ABoolValue` to `Values`. When reading boolean values, these values are reported as `ABoolValue` in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` ([1287](#)). The first value in the list is used to write the boolean `ABoolValue` value.

To ensure correct operation, this function should be called with values for both `True` and `False`.

The string values are ignored if `ifoWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options ([1293](#)).

See also: TCustomIniFile.ReadBool ([1287](#)), TCustomIniFile.WriteBool ([1287](#)), TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings ([1294](#)), TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings ([1295](#)), TCustomIniFile.Options ([1293](#))

41.4.7 TCustomIniFile.SectionExists

Synopsis: Check if a section exists.

Declaration: `function SectionExists(const Section: string) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SectionExists` returns `True` if a section with name `Section` exists, and contains keys. (comments are not considered keys)

See also: TCustomIniFile.ValueExists ([1292](#))

41.4.8 TCustomIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string valued key.

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Default: string) : string; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a string. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. Note that if the key exists, but is empty, an empty string will be returned.

See also: `WriteString` ([1286](#)), `ReadInteger` ([1286](#)), `ReadBool` ([1287](#)), `ReadDate` ([1288](#)), `ReadDateTime` ([1288](#)), `ReadTime` ([1288](#)), `ReadFloat` ([1288](#)), `ReadBinaryStream` ([1289](#))

41.4.9 TCustomIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` writes the string `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

Note that it is not possible to write strings with newline characters in them. Newlines can be read from a .ini file, but there is no support for writing them.

See also: `ReadString` (1285), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.10 TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Read an integer value from the file.

Declaration: `function ReadInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: LongInt) : LongInt; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInteger` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as an integer. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `Default` is also returned.

See also: `WriteInteger` (1286), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.11 TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Write an integer value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: LongInt); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteInteger` writes the integer `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: `ReadInteger` (1286), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.12 TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Read an Int64 value.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Int64) : Int64; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt64` reads a signed 64-bit integer value from the ini file. The value is searched in the `Section` section, with key `Ident`.

If the value is not found at the specified `Section`, `Ident` pair, or the value is not a `Int64` value then the `Default` value is returned instead.

This function is needed because `ReadInteger` (1286) reads at most a 32-bit value.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadInteger` (1286), `TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64` (1287)

41.4.13 TCustomIniFile.WriteInt64

Synopsis: Write an `Int64` value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: Int64); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteInt64` writes `Value` as a signed 64-bit integer value to section `Section`, key `Ident`.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.WriteInteger` (1286), `TCustomIniFile.ReadInt64` (1286)

41.4.14 TCustomIniFile.ReadBool

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function ReadBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Default: Boolean) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a boolean (valid values are 0 and 1). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid integer value, `False` is also returned.

See also: `WriteBool` (1287), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.15 TCustomIniFile.WriteBool

Synopsis: Write boolean value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteBool` writes the boolean `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

See also: `ReadBool` (1287), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.16 TCustomIniFile.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date value.

Declaration: `function ReadDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDate` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date.

See also: `WriteDate` (1289), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.17 TCustomIniFile.ReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a Date/Time value.

Declaration: `function ReadDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDateTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a date/time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid date/time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct date/time.

See also: `WriteDateTime` (1289), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.18 TCustomIniFile.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a floating point value.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Double) : Double; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a float (`Double`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid float value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct float.

See also: `WriteFloat` (1290), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.19 TCustomIniFile.ReadTime

Synopsis: Read a time value.

Declaration: `function ReadTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadTime` reads the key `Ident` in section `Section`, and returns the value as a time (`TDateTime`). If the specified key or section do not exist, then the value in `Default` is returned. If the key exists, but contains an invalid time value, `Default` is also returned. The international settings of the `SysUtils` are taken into account when deciding if the read value is a correct time.

See also: `WriteTime` (1290), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadString` (1285), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadBinaryStream` (1289)

41.4.20 TCustomIniFile.ReadBinaryStream

Synopsis: Read binary data.

Declaration: `function ReadBinaryStream(const Section: string; const Name: string; Value: TStream) : Integer; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBinaryStream` reads the key `Name` in section `Section`, and returns the value in the stream `Value`. If the specified key or section do not exist, then the contents of `Value` are left untouched. The stream is not cleared prior to adding data to it.

The data is interpreted as a series of 2-byte hexadecimal values, each representing a byte in the data stream, i.e, it should always be an even number of hexadecimal characters.

See also: `WriteBinaryStream` (1290), `ReadInteger` (1286), `ReadBool` (1287), `ReadDate` (1288), `ReadDateTime` (1288), `ReadTime` (1288), `ReadFloat` (1288), `ReadString` (1285)

41.4.21 TCustomIniFile.WriteDate

Synopsis: Write date value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: TDateTime); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDate` writes the date `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadDate` (1288), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.22 TCustomIniFile.WriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write date/time value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string; Value: TDateTime); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDateTime` writes the date/time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The date/time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadDateTime` (1288), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.23 TCustomIniFile.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Write a floating-point value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Double); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteFloat` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The floating point value is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadFloat` (1288), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.24 TCustomIniFile.WriteTime

Synopsis: Write time value.

Declaration: `procedure WriteTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteTime` writes the time `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist. The time is written using the internationalization settings in the `SysUtils` unit.

See also: `ReadTime` (1288), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteString` (1286), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteBinaryStream` (1290)

41.4.25 TCustomIniFile.WriteBinaryStream

Synopsis: Write binary data.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinaryStream(const Section: string; const Name: string;
Value: TStream); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBinaryStream` writes the binary data in `Value` with the name `Ident` to the section `Section`, overwriting any previous value that may exist there. The section will be created if it does not exist.

The binary data is encoded using a 2-byte hexadecimal value per byte in the data stream. The data stream must be seekable, so it's size can be determined. The data stream is not repositioned, it must be at the correct position.

See also: `ReadBinaryStream` (1289), `WriteInteger` (1286), `WriteBool` (1287), `WriteDate` (1289), `WriteDateTime` (1289), `WriteTime` (1290), `WriteFloat` (1290), `WriteString` (1286)

41.4.26 TCustomIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` will return the names of the keys in section `Section` in `Strings`, one string per key. If a non-existing section is specified, the list is cleared. To return the values of the keys as well, the `ReadSectionValues` (1291) method should be used.

See also: `ReadSections` (1291), `SectionExists` (1285), `ReadSectionValues` (1291)

41.4.27 TCustomIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read the list of sections.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` returns the names of existing sections in `Strings`. It also returns names of empty sections.

See also: `SectionExists` (1285), `ReadSectionValues` (1291), `ReadSection` (1290)

41.4.28 TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis: Read names and values of a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings;
Options: TSectionValuesOptions); virtual
; overload
procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; virtual; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` returns the keys and their values in the section `Section` in `Strings`. They are returned as `Key=Value` strings, one per key, so the `Values` property of the stringlist can be used to read the values. To retrieve just the names of the available keys, `ReadSection` (1290) can be used.

See also: `SectionExists` (1285), `ReadSections` (1291), `ReadSection` (1290)

41.4.29 TCustomIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis: Clear a section.

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes all values from the section named `Section` and removes the section from the ini file. If the section didn't exist prior to a call to `EraseSection`, nothing happens.

See also: `SectionExists` (1285), `ReadSections` (1291), `DeleteKey` (1292)

41.4.30 TCustomIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Delete a key from a section.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the key `Ident` from section `Section`. If the key or section didn't exist prior to the `DeleteKey` call, nothing happens.

See also: `EraseSection` ([1291](#))

41.4.31 TCustomIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Update the file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory image of the ini-file to disk. To speed up operation of the inifile class, the whole ini-file is read into memory when the class is created, and all operations are performed in-memory. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `True`, any changes to the inifile are only in memory, until they are committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. If `CacheUpdates` is set to `False`, then all operations which cause a change in the .ini file will immediately be committed to disk with a call to `UpdateFile`. Since the whole file is written to disk, this may have serious impact on performance.

See also: `CacheUpdates` ([1300](#))

41.4.32 TCustomIniFile.ValueExists

Synopsis: Check if a value exists.

Declaration: `function ValueExists(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
: Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValueExists` checks whether the key `Ident` exists in section `Section`. It returns `True` if a key was found, or `False` if not. The key may be empty.

See also: `SectionExists` ([1285](#))

41.4.33 TCustomIniFile.Encoding

Synopsis: Encoding of the ini file.

Declaration: `Property Encoding : TEncoding`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Encoding` is the encoding specified in the constructor. It cannot be changed during the lifetime of the instance.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.Create` ([1284](#)), `TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding` ([1295](#))

41.4.34 TCustomIniFile.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the .ini file.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FileName` is the name of the ini file on disk. It should be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created. Contrary to the Delphi implementation, if no path component is present in the filename, the filename is not searched in the windows directory.

See also: `Create` ([1284](#))

41.4.35 TCustomIniFile.Options

Synopsis: Options currently in effect.

Declaration: `Property Options : TIniFileOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Options` is the set of options currently in effect. See `TInifileOption` ([1281](#)) for a list of allowed options. The initial value of this property can be specified using the constructor of the class, `TCustomIniFile.Create` ([1284](#)). Not all options can be specified after the ini file object was created.

See also: `TInifileOption` ([1281](#)), `TInifileOptions` ([1282](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Create` ([1284](#))

41.4.36 TCustomIniFile.EscapeLineFeeds

Synopsis: Should linefeeds be escaped ?

Declaration: `Property EscapeLineFeeds : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `EscapeLineFeeds` determines whether escaping of linefeeds is enabled: For a description of this feature, see `Create` ([1284](#)), as the value of this property must be specified when the `TCustomIniFile` instance is created.

By default, `EscapeLineFeeds` is `False`.

See also: `Create` ([1284](#)), `CaseSensitive` ([1293](#))

41.4.37 TCustomIniFile.CaseSensitive

Synopsis: Are key and section names case sensitive.

Declaration: `Property CaseSensitive : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CaseSensitive` determines whether searches for sections and keys are performed case-sensitive or not. By default, they are not case sensitive.

See also: `EscapeLineFeeds` ([1293](#))

41.4.38 TCustomIniFile.StripQuotes

Synopsis: Should quotes be stripped from string values.

Declaration: `Property StripQuotes : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StripQuotes` determines whether quotes around string values are stripped from the value when reading the values from file. By default, quotes are not stripped (this is Delphi and Windows compatible).

41.4.39 TCustomIniFile.FormatSettingsActive

Synopsis: Is `FormatSettings` used or not.

Declaration: `Property FormatSettingsActive : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FormatSettingsActive` can be set to `True` to use the `TCustomIniFile.FormatSettings` (??) field when reading and/or writing values of type date/time or float. If the setting is set to `False` then the defaults specified in the `sysutils` unit are used.

41.4.40 TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings

Synopsis: Strings to recognize as boolean `True` values.

Declaration: `Property BoolTrueStrings : TStringArray`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `BoolTrueStrings` is a list of strings that will be recognized as boolean `True` value in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` ([1287](#)) The first string in the list will be used when writing a `True` boolean value in `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` ([1287](#)).

The string values are ignored if `ifoWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options ([1293](#)).

See also: `TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValue` ([1285](#)), `TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings` ([1295](#)), `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` ([1287](#)), `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` ([1287](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Options` ([1293](#))

41.4.41 TCustomIniFile.BoolFalseStrings

Synopsis: Strings to recognize as boolean `False` values.

Declaration: `Property BoolFalseStrings : TStringArray`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `BoolFalseStrings` is a list of strings that will be recognized as boolean `False` value in `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (1287). The first string in the list will be used when writing a `False` boolean value in `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (1287).

The string values are ignored if `ifWriteStringBoolean` is not in the ini file options (1293).

See also: `TCustomIniFile.SetBoolStringValues` (1285), `TCustomIniFile.BoolTrueStrings` (1294), `TCustomIniFile.ReadBool` (1287), `TCustomIniFile.WriteBool` (1287), `TCustomIniFile.Options` (1293)

41.4.42 TCustomIniFile.OwnsEncoding

Synopsis: Does the ini file instance own the encoding ?

Declaration: `Property OwnsEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `OwnsEncoding` indicates whether the encoding is owned by the ini file instance or not. If it is owned, it will be freed on destroy. The value of this property is set in the constructor.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.Encoding` (1292), `TCustomIniFile.Create` (1284)

41.5 THashedStringList

41.5.1 Description

`THashedStringList` is a `TStringList` (??) descendent which creates hash values for the strings and names (in the case of a name-value pair) stored in it. The `IndexOf` (1296) and `IndexOfName` (1296) functions make use of these hash values to quickly locate a value.

See also: `IndexOf` (1296), `IndexOfName` (1296)

41.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1295	<code>Destroy</code>	Clean up instance.
1296	<code>IndexOf</code>	Returns the index of a string in the list of strings.
1296	<code>IndexOfName</code>	Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs.

41.5.3 THashedStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Clean up instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the hash tables and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

41.5.4 THashedStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a string in the list of strings.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: string) : Integer; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf` (??) method and uses the hash values to look for the location of `S`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStringList.IndexOf` (??), `THashedStringList.IndexOfName` (1296)

41.5.5 THashedStringList.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Return the index of a name in the list of name=value pairs.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: string) : Integer; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfName` overrides the `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName` (??) method and uses the hash values of the names to look for the location of `Name`.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStrings.IndexOfName` (??), `THashedStringList.IndexOf` (1296)

41.6 TIniFile

41.6.1 Description

`TIniFile` is an implementation of `TCustomIniFile` (1283) which does the same as `TMemIniFile` (1305), namely it reads the whole file into memory. Unlike `TMemIniFile` it does not cache updates in memory, but immediately writes any changes to disk.

`TIniFile` introduces no new methods, it just implements the abstract methods introduced in `TCustomIniFile`

See also: `TCustomIniFile` (1283), `TMemIniFile` (1305)

41.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1297	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TIniFile</code> .
1299	<code>DeleteKey</code>	Delete key.
1297	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TIniFile</code> instance from memory.
1299	<code>EraseSection</code>	
1298	<code>ReadSection</code>	Read the key names in a section.
1298	<code>ReadSectionRaw</code>	Read raw section.
1298	<code>ReadSections</code>	Read section names.
1299	<code>ReadSectionValues</code>	
1297	<code>ReadString</code>	Read a string.
1299	<code>UpdateFile</code>	Update the file on disk.
1298	<code>WriteString</code>	Write string to file.

41.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1300	CacheUpdates	rw	Should changes be kept in memory.
1300	Stream	r	Stream from which ini file was read.
1300	WriteBOM	rw	Indicates if a Byte Order Mark (BOM) is written at the start of the .INI file.

41.6.4 TIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TIniFile.

Declaration: constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
 AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[]); override; overload
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[])
 ; overload
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
 ; overload
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream; ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;
 AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[])
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream; ADefaultEncoding: TEncoding;
 AOwnsEncoding: Boolean; AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[])

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TIniFile and initializes the class by reading the file from disk if the filename AFileName is specified, or from stream in case AStream is specified. It also sets most variables to their initial values, i.e. AEscapeLineFeeds is saved prior to reading the file, and Cacheupdates is set to False.

Default options for the TCustomIniFile.Options ([1293](#)) property can be specified in AOptions.

See also: TCustomIniFile ([1283](#)), TMemIniFile ([1305](#)), TCustomIniFile.Options ([1293](#))

41.6.5 TIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TIniFile instance from memory.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy writes any pending changes to disk, and cleans up the TIniFile structures, and then calls the inherited Destroy, effectively removing the instance from memory.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

See also: UpdateFile ([1292](#)), CacheUpdates ([1300](#))

41.6.6 TIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string.

Declaration: function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
 const Default: string) : string; override

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` (1285) abstract method by looking at the in-memory copy of the ini file and returning the string found there.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` (1285)

41.6.7 TIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Write string to file.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` implements the `TCustomIniFile.WriteString` (1286) abstract method by writing the string to the in-memory copy of the ini file. If `CacheUpdates` (1300) property is `False`, then the whole file is immediately written to disk as well.

Errors: If an error happens when the file is written to disk, an exception will be raised.

41.6.8 TIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Read the key names in a section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` reads the key names from `Section` into `Strings`, taking the in-memory copy of the ini file. This is the implementation for the abstract `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (1290)

See also: `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (1290), `TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw` (1298)

41.6.9 TIniFile.ReadSectionRaw

Synopsis: Read raw section.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionRaw(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionRaw` returns the contents of the section `Section` as it is: this includes the comments in the section. (these are also stored in memory)

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (1298), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSection` (1290)

41.6.10 TIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Read section names.

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (1291). It operates on the in-memory copy of the inifile, and places all section names in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (1298), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSections` (1291), `TIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (1299)

41.6.11 TIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings;
 AOptions: TSectionValuesOptions=[svoIncludeInvalid])
 ; override; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` is the implementation of `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (1291). It operates on the in-memory copy of the inifile, and places all key names from `Section` together with their values in `Strings`.

See also: `TIniFile.ReadSection` (1298), `TCustomIniFile.ReadSectionValues` (1291), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (1298)

41.6.12 TIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` deletes the section `Section` from memory, if `CacheUpdates` (1300) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk. This method is the implementation of the abstract `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (1291) method.

See also: `TCustomIniFile.EraseSection` (1291), `TIniFile.ReadSection` (1298), `TIniFile.ReadSections` (1298)

41.6.13 TIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Delete key.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
 ; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` deletes the `Ident` from the section `Section`. This operation is performed on the in-memory copy of the ini file. if `CacheUpdates` (1300) is `False`, then the file is immediately updated on disk.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (1300)

41.6.14 TIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Update the file on disk.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the in-memory data for the ini file to disk. The whole file is written. If the ini file was instantiated from a stream, then the stream is updated. Note that the stream must be seekable for this to work correctly. The ini file is marked as 'clean' after a call to `UpdateFile` (i.e. not in need of writing to disk).

Errors: If an error occurs when writing to stream or disk, an exception may be raised.

See also: `CacheUpdates` (1300)

41.6.15 TIniFile.Stream

Synopsis: Stream from which ini file was read.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Stream` is the stream which was used to create the `IniFile`. The `UpdateFile` ([1299](#)) method will use this stream to write changes to.

See also: `Create` ([1297](#)), `UpdateFile` ([1299](#))

41.6.16 TIniFile.CacheUpdates

Synopsis: Should changes be kept in memory.

Declaration: `Property CacheUpdates : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `CacheUpdates` determines how to deal with changes to the ini-file data: if set to `True` then changes are kept in memory till the file is written to disk with a call to `UpdateFile` ([1299](#)). If it is set to `False` then each call that changes the data of the ini-file will result in a call to `UpdateFile`. This is the default behaviour, but it may adversely affect performance.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([1299](#))

41.6.17 TIniFile.WriteBOM

Synopsis: Indicates if a Byte Order Mark (BOM) is written at the start of the .INI file.

Declaration: `Property WriteBOM : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `WriteBOM` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if a **Byte Order Mark (BOM)** is written at the start of the .INI file. The default value for the property is **False**, and causes the BOM to be omitted when storing the .INI file content.

Setting a new value for the property can cause the sections and section values to be re-written to the `FileName` or `Stream` where the .INI file content is stored. When `CacheUpdates` is **False**, the `UpdateFile` method is called to re-write the values in the storage. When `CacheUpdates` is **True**, the `Dirty` property is set to **True** and the action is deferred until the class instance is freed or update caching is disabled.

The property value is used in the `UpdateFile` method, and is assigned to the `WriteBOM` property in the `TStrings` instance used to write the content for the .INI file.

41.7 TIniFileKey

41.7.1 Description

TIniFileKey is used to keep the key/value pairs in the ini file in memory. It is an internal structure, used internally by the TIniFile ([1296](#)) class.

See also: TIniFile ([1296](#))

41.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1301	Create	Create a new instance of TIniFileKey.

41.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1301	Ident	rw	Key name.
1301	Value	rw	Key value.

41.7.4 TIniFileKey.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TIniFileKey.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AIdent: string; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of TIniFileKey on the heap. It fills Ident ([1301](#)) with AIdent and Value ([1301](#)) with AValue.

See also: Ident ([1301](#)), Value ([1301](#))

41.7.5 TIniFileKey.Ident

Synopsis: Key name.

Declaration: `Property Ident : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Ident is the key value part of the key/value pair.

See also: Value ([1301](#))

41.7.6 TIniFileKey.Value

Synopsis: Key value.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Value` is the value part of the key/value pair.

See also: `Ident` ([1301](#))

41.8 TIniFileKeyList

41.8.1 Description

`TIniFileKeyList` maintains a list of `TIniFileKey` ([1301](#)) instances on behalf of the `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)) class. It stores the keys of one section of the .ini files.

See also: `TIniFileKey` ([1301](#)), `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#))

41.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1302	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list.
1302	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the instance.

41.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1302	<code>Items</code>	<code>r</code>	Indexed access to <code>TIniFileKey</code> items in the list.

41.8.4 TIniFileKeyList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears up the list using `Clear` ([1302](#)) and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

See also: `Clear` ([1302](#))

41.8.5 TIniFileKeyList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TIniFileKey` ([1301](#)) instances from the list, and frees the instances.

See also: `TIniFileKey` ([1301](#))

41.8.6 TIniFileKeyList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to `TIniFileKey` items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileKey; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to the `TIniFileKey` (1301) items in the list. The index is zero-based and runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TIniFileKey` (1301)

41.9 TIniFileSection

41.9.1 Description

`TIniFileSection` is a class which represents a section in the .ini, and is used internally by the `TIniFile` (1296) class (one instance of `TIniFileSection` is created for each section in the file by the `TIniFileSectionList` (1304) list). The name of the section is stored in the `Name` (1304) property, and the key/value pairs in this section are available in the `KeyList` (1304) property.

See also: `TIniFileKeyList` (1302), `TIniFile` (1296), `TIniFileSectionList` (1304)

41.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1303	Create	Create a new section object.
1304	Destroy	Free the section object from memory.
1303	Empty	Is the section empty.

41.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1304	KeyList	r	List of key/value pairs in this section.
1304	Name	r	Name of the section.

41.9.4 TIniFileSection.Empty

Synopsis: Is the section empty.

Declaration: `function Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Empty` returns `True` if the section contains no key values (even if they are empty). It may contain comments.

41.9.5 TIniFileSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new section object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TIniFileSection` class, and sets the name to `AName`. It allocates a `TIniFileKeyList` (1302) instance to keep all the key/value pairs for this section.

See also: `TIniFileKeyList` (1302)

41.9.6 TIniFileSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the section object from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the key list, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, removing the `TIniFileSection` instance from memory.

See also: `Create` ([1303](#)), `TIniFileKeyList` ([1302](#))

41.9.7 TIniFileSection.Name

Synopsis: Name of the section.

Declaration: `Property Name : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Name` is the name of the section in the file.

See also: `TIniFileSection.KeyList` ([1304](#))

41.9.8 TIniFileSection.KeyList

Synopsis: List of key/value pairs in this section.

Declaration: `Property KeyList : TIniFileKeyList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `KeyList` is the `TIniFileKeyList` ([1302](#)) instance that is used by the `TIniFileSection` to keep the key/value pairs of the section.

See also: `TIniFileSection.Name` ([1304](#)), `TIniFileKeyList` ([1302](#))

41.10 TIniFileSectionList

41.10.1 Description

`TIniFileSectionList` maintains a list of `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)) instances, one for each section in an .ini file. `TIniFileSectionList` is used internally by the `TIniFile` ([1296](#)) class to represent the sections in the file.

See also: `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)), `TIniFile` ([1296](#))

41.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1305	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the list.
1305	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the object from memory.

41.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1305	Items	r	Indexed access to all the section objects in the list.

41.10.4 TIniFileSectionList.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the object from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Clear` ([1305](#)) to clear the section list and the calls the inherited `Destroy`

See also: `Clear` ([1305](#))

41.10.5 TIniFileSectionList.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)) items from the list, and frees the items it removes from the list.

See also: `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)), `TIniFileSectionList.Items` ([1305](#))

41.10.6 TIniFileSectionList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to all the section objects in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: TIniFileSection; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Items` provides indexed access to all the section objects in the list. `Index` should run from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `TIniFileSection` ([1303](#)), `TIniFileSectionList.Clear` ([1305](#))

41.11 TMemIniFile

41.11.1 Description

`TMemIniFile` is a simple descendent of `TIniFile` ([1296](#)) which introduces some extra methods to be compatible to the Delphi implementation of `TMemIniFile`. The FPC implementation of `TIniFile` is implemented as a `TMemIniFile`, except that `TIniFile` does not cache its updates, and `TMemIniFile` does.

See also: `TIniFile` ([1296](#)), `TCustomIniFile` ([1283](#)), `CacheUpdates` ([1300](#))

41.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1306	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the data.
1306	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TMemIniFile</code> .
1306	<code>GetStrings</code>	Get contents of ini file as stringlist.
1307	<code>Rename</code>	Rename the ini file.
1307	<code>SetStrings</code>	Set data from a stringlist.

41.11.3 TMemIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMemIniFile`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
 AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[]); override; overload
 constructor Create(const AFileName: string; AEscapeLineFeeds: Boolean)
 ; override; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` simply calls the inherited `Create` ([1297](#)), and sets the `CacheUpdates` ([1300](#)) to `True` so updates will be kept in memory till they are explicitly written to disk.

See also: `TIniFile.Create` ([1297](#)), `CacheUpdates` ([1300](#))

41.11.4 TMemIniFile.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the data.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all sections and key/value pairs from memory. If `CacheUpdates` ([1300](#)) is set to `False` then the file on disk will immediately be emptied.

See also: `SetStrings` ([1307](#)), `GetStrings` ([1306](#))

41.11.5 TMemIniFile.GetStrings

Synopsis: Get contents of ini file as stringlist.

Declaration: `procedure GetStrings(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetStrings` returns the whole contents of the ini file in a single stringlist, `List`. This includes comments and empty sections.

The `GetStrings` call can be used to get data for a call to `SetStrings` ([1307](#)), which can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: `SetStrings` ([1307](#)), `Clear` ([1306](#))

41.11.6 TMemIniFile.Rename

Synopsis: Rename the ini file.

Declaration: `procedure Rename(const AFileName: string; Reload: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Rename` will rename the ini file with the new name `AFileName`. If `Reload` is `True` then the in-memory contents will be cleared and replaced with the contents found in `AFileName`, if it exists. If `Reload` is `False`, the next call to `UpdateFile` will replace the contents of `AFileName` with the in-memory data.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([1299](#))

41.11.7 TMemIniFile.SetStrings

Synopsis: Set data from a stringlist.

Declaration: `procedure SetStrings(List: TStringList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetStrings` sets the in-memory data from the `List` stringlist. The data is first cleared.

The `SetStrings` call can be used to set the data of the ini file to a list of strings obtained with `GetStrings` ([1306](#)). The two calls combined can be used to copy data between 2 in-memory ini files.

See also: `GetStrings` ([1306](#)), `Clear` ([1306](#))

41.12 TStringHash

41.12.1 Description

`TStringHash` is a Delphi compatibility object. It is not used in the `TIniFile` implementation. It implements a bucket list for `Name=Value` pairs, where `Value` is an integer. This enables quick lookup of values based on a name.

See also: `TIniFile` ([1296](#)), `TStringHash.Create` ([1308](#)), `TStringHash.ValueOf` ([1309](#))

41.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1308	<code>Add</code>	Add a new value to the hash.
1308	<code>Clear</code>	Remove all values.
1308	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TStringHash</code> .
1308	<code>Destroy</code>	Free <code>TStringHash</code> instance.
1309	<code>Modify</code>	Try to modify an existing value.
1309	<code>Remove</code>	Remove a key from the hash.
1309	<code>ValueOf</code>	Retrieve value of <code>Key</code> .

41.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1309	<code>AddReplacesExisting</code>	rw	Should Add replace existing values or not.

41.12.4 TStringHash.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TStringHash.

Declaration: constructor Create (ACapacity: Cardinal=256)

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of TStringHash. The ACapacity argument is present for Delphi compatibility, but is otherwise unused.

See also: TStringHash.ValueOf ([1309](#)), TStringHash.Destroy ([1308](#))

41.12.5 TStringHash.Destroy

Synopsis: Free TStringHash instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy clears the internal data structures and removes the TStringHash instance from memory.

See also: TStringHash.Create ([1308](#)), TStringHash.Clear ([1308](#))

41.12.6 TStringHash.Add

Synopsis: Add a new value to the hash.

Declaration: procedure Add(const Key: string; Value: Integer)

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds the value Value with name AKey to the list. The behaviour of Add depends on AddReplacesExisting ([1309](#)). If it is False, then the existing value is left unchanged, and an exception is raised. If AddReplacesExisting is True then an existing value is replaced.

Errors: An exception will be raised if the value already exists and AddReplacesExisting is False

See also: TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting ([1309](#)), TStringHash.Modify ([1309](#)), TStringHash.Remove ([1309](#)), TStringHash.ValueOf ([1309](#))

41.12.7 TStringHash.Clear

Synopsis: Remove all values.

Declaration: procedure Clear

Visibility: public

Description: Clear removes all values from the hash.

See also: TStringHash.Destroy ([1308](#)), TStringHash.Add ([1308](#)), TStringHash.Remove ([1309](#)), TStringHash.ValueOf ([1309](#))

41.12.8 TStringHash.Modify

Synopsis: Try to modify an existing value.

Declaration: `function Modify(const Key: string; Value: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Modify` will replace the value of `Key` with `Value`. `Key` must exist. It returns `True` if the operation was successful. If the value didn't exist, `False` is returned.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (1308), `TStringHash.Clear` (1308), `TStringHash.Remove` (1309), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (1309)

41.12.9 TStringHash.Remove

Synopsis: Remove a key from the hash.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(const Key: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` removes the key `Key` from the hash, if it was present.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (1308), `TStringHash.Clear` (1308), `TStringHash.Modify` (1309), `TStringHash.ValueOf` (1309)

41.12.10 TStringHash.ValueOf

Synopsis: Retrieve value of `Key`.

Declaration: `function ValueOf(const Key: string) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ValueOf` returns the value of `AKey`, if it is present. if the key is not present, `-1` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (1308), `TStringHash.Clear` (1308), `TStringHash.Modify` (1309), `TStringHash.Remove` (1309)

41.12.11 TStringHash.AddReplacesExisting

Synopsis: Should `Add` replace existing values or not.

Declaration: `Property AddReplacesExisting : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AddReplacesExisting` indicates whether `TStringHash.Add` (1308) will replace an existing value (`True`) or will raise an exception when an existing value is added (`False`).

See also: `TStringHash.Add` (1308)

Chapter 42

Reference for unit 'iostream'

42.1 Used units

Table 42.1: Used units by unit 'iostream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

42.2 Overview

The `iostream` implements a descendent of `THandleStream` (??) streams that can be used to read from standard input and write to standard output and standard diagnostic output (`stderr`).

42.3 Constants, types and variables

42.3.1 Types

`TIOSType = (iosInput, iosOutPut, iosError)`

Table 42.2: Enumeration values for type `TIOSType`

Value	Explanation
<code>iosError</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard diagnostic output.
<code>iosInput</code>	The stream can be used to read from standard input.
<code>iosOutPut</code>	The stream can be used to write to standard output.

`TIOSType` is passed to the `Create` (1311) constructor of `TIOStream` (1311), it determines what kind of stream is created.

42.4 EIOStreamError

42.4.1 Description

Error thrown in case of an invalid operation on a TIOStream ([1311](#)).

42.5 TIOStream

42.5.1 Description

TIOStream can be used to create a stream which reads from or writes to the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors. It is a descendent of THandleStream. The type of stream that is created is determined by the TIOSType ([1310](#)) argument to the constructor. The handle of the standard input, output or stderr file descriptors is determined automatically.

The TIOStream keeps an internal Position, and attempts to provide minimal Seek ([1312](#)) behaviour based on this position.

See also: TIOSType ([1310](#)), THandleStream (??)

42.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1311	Create	Construct a new instance of TIOStream (1311).
1311	Read	Read data from the stream.
1312	Seek	Set the stream position.
1312	Write	Write data to the stream.

42.5.3 TIOStream.Create

Synopsis: Construct a new instance of TIOStream ([1311](#)).

Declaration: `constructor Create(aIOSType: TIOSType)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TIOStream ([1311](#)), which can subsequently be used

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether the requested file descriptor is actually open for reading/writing. In that case, subsequent calls to Read or Write or seek will fail.

See also: TIOStream.Read ([1311](#)), TIOStream.Write ([1312](#))

42.5.4 TIOStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read checks first whether the type of the stream allows reading (type is iosInput). If not, it raises a EIOStreamError ([1311](#)) exception. If the stream can be read, it calls the inherited Read to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow reading.

See also: `TIOSType` ([1310](#)), `TIOStream.Write` ([1312](#))

42.5.5 TIOStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` checks first whether the type of the stream allows writing (type is `iosOutput` or `iosError`). If not, it raises a `EIOStreamError` ([1311](#)) exception. If the stream can be written to, it calls the inherited `Write` to actually read the data.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` exception is raised if the stream does not allow writing.

See also: `TIOSType` ([1310](#)), `TIOStream.Read` ([1311](#))

42.5.6 TIOStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the stream position.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, standard input, output and `stderr` are not seekable. The `TIOStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EIOStreamError` exception.

Errors: An `EIOStreamError` ([1311](#)) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EIOStreamError` ([1311](#))

Chapter 43

Reference for unit 'jsonini'

43.1 Used units

Table 43.1: Used units by unit 'jsonini'

Name	Page
Classes	??
DateUtils	??
fpjson	829
IniFiles	1281
jsonparser	1324
jsonscanner	1347
System	??
sysutils	??

43.2 Overview

This unit provides `TJSONIniFile` ([1315](#)), a class that implements the ini file interface using JSON format instead of traditional ini files. It allows applications to store configuration data as JSON objects while maintaining compatibility with the standard `TCustomIniFile` interface.

43.3 Basic usage of the JSON ini file class

`TJSONIniFile` provides a JSON-based alternative to traditional ini files while maintaining the familiar `TCustomIniFile` interface. Configuration data is stored as JSON objects where sections become JSON objects and keys within sections become properties of those objects.

The following example demonstrates basic reading and writing operations:

```
program JsonIniExample;

uses
  JsonIni, SysUtils;
```

```

var
  IniFile: TJSONIniFile;
begin
  // Create or open a JSON ini file
  IniFile := TJSONIniFile.Create('config.json');
  try
    // Write configuration values
    IniFile.WriteString('Database', 'Host', 'localhost');
    IniFile.WriteInteger('Database', 'Port', 5432);
    IniFile.WriteBool('Database', 'UseSSL', True);

    IniFile.WriteString('UI', 'Theme', 'Dark');
    IniFile.WriteInteger('UI', 'Width', 1024);
    IniFile.WriteInteger('UI', 'Height', 768);

    IniFile.UpdateFile;

    // Read configuration values with defaults
    WriteLn('Database Host: ', IniFile.ReadString('Database', 'Host', 'unknown'));
    WriteLn('Database Port: ', IniFile.ReadInteger('Database', 'Port', 0));
    WriteLn('Use SSL: ', IniFile.ReadBool('Database', 'UseSSL', False));

    WriteLn('UI Theme: ', IniFile.ReadString('UI', 'Theme', 'Light'));
    WriteLn('Window Size: ', IniFile.ReadInteger('UI', 'Width', 800), 'x',
            IniFile.ReadInteger('UI', 'Height', 600));

  finally
    IniFile.Free;
  end;
end.

```

The resulting JSON file structure looks like this:

```

{
  "Database": {
    "Host": "localhost",
    "Port": 5432,
    "UseSSL": true
  },
  "UI": {
    "Theme": "Dark",
    "Width": 1024,
    "Height": 768
  }
}

```

For applications that need to control when changes are written to disk, use the `CacheUpdates` property:

```

var
  IniFile: TJSONIniFile;
begin
  IniFile := TJSONIniFile.Create('config.json');

```

```

try
    // Cache changes in memory
    IniFile.CacheUpdates := True;

    // Make multiple changes
    IniFile.WriteString('Section1', 'Key1', 'Value1');
    IniFile.WriteInteger('Section1', 'Key2', 42);
    IniFile.WriteString('Section2', 'Key1', 'Value2');

    // Write all changes to file at once
    IniFile.UpdateFile;

finally
    IniFile.Free;
end;
end.

```

To convert existing traditional ini files to JSON format, use the `ConvertIni` class method:

```

// Convert with type detection
TJSONIniFile.ConvertIni('old.ini', 'new.json', False);

// Convert keeping everything as strings
TJSONIniFile.ConvertIni('old.ini', 'new.json', True);

```

See also: `TCustomIniFile` ([1313](#)), `TMemIniFile` ([1313](#)), `TJSONIniFile` ([1315](#))

43.4 TJSONIniFile

43.4.1 Description

`TJSONIniFile` is a descendant of `TCustomIniFile` ([1313](#)) that stores configuration data in JSON format instead of traditional ini file format. The JSON structure uses objects for sections and key-value pairs within those objects for the actual configuration entries. This allows for more flexible data storage while maintaining full compatibility with the standard ini file interface.

See also: `TCustomIniFile` ([1313](#)), `TMemIniFile` ([1313](#))

43.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1317	<code>ConvertIni</code>	Converts a traditional ini file to JSON format
1316	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new <code>TJSONIniFile</code> instance
1322	<code>DeleteKey</code>	Removes a key from a section
1317	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the <code>TJSONIniFile</code> instance
1322	<code>EraseSection</code>	Removes an entire section from the JSON ini file
1318	<code>ReadBool</code>	Reads a boolean value from the JSON ini file
1318	<code>ReadDate</code>	Reads a date value from the JSON ini file
1318	<code>ReadDateTime</code>	Reads a date-time value from the JSON ini file
1319	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Reads a floating-point value from the JSON ini file
1318	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Reads a 64-bit integer value from the JSON ini file
1317	<code>ReadInteger</code>	Reads an integer value from the JSON ini file
1321	<code>ReadSection</code>	Reads all key names from a section
1321	<code>ReadSections</code>	Reads all section names from the JSON ini file
1322	<code>ReadSectionValues</code>	Reads all key-value pairs from a section
1317	<code>ReadString</code>	Reads a string value from the JSON ini file
1319	<code>ReadTime</code>	Reads a time value from the JSON ini file
1322	<code>UpdateFile</code>	Writes the JSON data to file
1321	<code>WriteBool</code>	Writes a boolean value to the JSON ini file
1319	<code>WriteDate</code>	Writes a date value to the JSON ini file
1320	<code>WriteDateTime</code>	Writes a date-time value to the JSON ini file
1320	<code>WriteFloat</code>	Writes a floating-point value to the JSON ini file
1321	<code>WriteInt64</code>	Writes a 64-bit integer value to the JSON ini file
1320	<code>WriteInteger</code>	Writes an integer value to the JSON ini file
1319	<code>WriteString</code>	Writes a string value to the JSON ini file
1320	<code>WriteTime</code>	Writes a time value to the JSON ini file

43.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1323	<code>CacheUpdates</code>	rw	Controls when changes are written to file
1323	<code>Stream</code>	r	Read-only access to the internal stream

43.4.4 TJSONIniFile.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TJSONIniFile` instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: string;
 AOptions: TIniFileOptions=[]); override; overload
 constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AOptions: TJSONOptions); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TJSONIniFile` instance. The constructor has two overloaded forms:

- `Create(AFileName, AOptions)` - Creates an instance that reads from and writes to the specified file
- `Create(AStream, AOptions)` - Creates an instance that reads from the provided stream

If the file specified in `AFileName` does not exist, a new empty JSON object is created. If the file exists, it is parsed as JSON and loaded into memory.

See also: `UpdateFile` ([1322](#)), `TCustomIniFile.Create` ([1313](#))

43.4.5 TJSONIniFile.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TJSONIniFile instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all allocated resources and destroys the TJSONIniFile instance. The internal JSON object is freed and the inherited destructor is called.

See also: `Create` ([1316](#))

43.4.6 TJSONIniFile.ConvertIni

Synopsis: Converts a traditional ini file to JSON format

Declaration: `class procedure ConvertIni(const AIniFile: string;
const AJSONFile: string;
StringsOnly: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ConvertIni` is a class method that converts an existing traditional ini file to JSON format. The method reads all sections and keys from the source ini file and writes them to a new JSON ini file. If `StringsOnly` is `True`, all values are stored as strings. If `StringsOnly` is `False`, the method attempts to detect the data type and store integers, floats, booleans, and dates in their appropriate JSON types.

See also: `Create` ([1316](#)), `TMemIniFile` ([1313](#))

43.4.7 TJSONIniFile.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Default: string) : string; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadString` reads a string value from the specified section and key. If the key is not found, the `Default` value is returned. For structured JSON values (objects or arrays), the JSON representation is returned as a string. For other values, the string representation is returned.

See also: `WriteString` ([1319](#)), `TCustomIniFile.ReadString` ([1313](#))

43.4.8 TJSONIniFile.ReadInteger

Synopsis: Reads an integer value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInteger` reads an integer value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, it is converted to integer. If the stored value is a string, it attempts to parse it as an integer. If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteInteger` ([1320](#)), `ReadInt64` ([1318](#))

43.4.9 TJSONIniFile.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Reads a 64-bit integer value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Int64) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt64` reads a 64-bit integer value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, it is converted to `Int64`. If the stored value is a string, it attempts to parse it as a 64-bit integer. If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteInt64` ([1321](#)), `ReadInteger` ([1317](#))

43.4.10 TJSONIniFile.ReadBool

Synopsis: Reads a boolean value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Boolean) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBool` reads a boolean value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON boolean, it is returned directly. For other value types, the method attempts to convert them to boolean. If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteBool` ([1321](#))

43.4.11 TJSONIniFile.ReadDate

Synopsis: Reads a date value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDate` reads a date value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, it is interpreted as a `TDateTime` value. If the stored value is a string, it is parsed using the ISO date format (yyyy-mm-dd). If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteDate` ([1319](#)), `ReadDateTime` ([1318](#)), `ReadTime` ([1319](#))

43.4.12 TJSONIniFile.ReadDateTime

Synopsis: Reads a date-time value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadDateTime` reads a date-time value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, it is interpreted as a `TDateTime` value. If the stored value is a string, it is parsed using ISO date-time format (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzz). If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteDateTime` ([1320](#)), `ReadDate` ([1318](#)), `ReadTime` ([1319](#))

43.4.13 TJSONIniFile.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Reads a floating-point value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: Double) : Double; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFloat` reads a floating-point value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, it is converted to `Double`. If the stored value is a string, it attempts to parse it as a floating-point number using both localized and non-localized formats. If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteFloat` ([1320](#))

43.4.14 TJSONIniFile.ReadTime

Synopsis: Reads a time value from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `function ReadTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Default: TDateTime) : TDateTime; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadTime` reads a time value from the specified section and key. If the stored value is a JSON number, the fractional part is extracted as the time component. If the stored value is a string, it is parsed using time format (0000-00-00Thh:nn:ss.zzz). If the key is not found or conversion fails, the `Default` value is returned.

See also: `WriteTime` ([1320](#)), `ReadDate` ([1318](#)), `ReadDateTime` ([1318](#))

43.4.15 TJSONIniFile.WriteString

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
const Value: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteString` writes a string value to the specified section and key. The value is stored as a JSON string in the underlying JSON object. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadString` ([1317](#))

43.4.16 TJSONIniFile.WriteDate

Synopsis: Writes a date value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDate` writes a date value to the specified section and key. The date is formatted as an ISO date string (yyyy-mm-ddT00:00:00.zzz) and stored as a JSON string. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadDate` ([1318](#)), `WriteDateTime` ([1320](#)), `WriteTime` ([1320](#))

43.4.17 TJSONIniFile.WriteDateTime

Synopsis: Writes a date-time value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteDateTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDateTime` writes a date-time value to the specified section and key. The date-time is formatted as an ISO date-time string (yyyy-mm-ddThh:nn:ss.zzz) and stored as a JSON string. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadDateTime` ([1318](#)), `WriteDate` ([1319](#)), `WriteTime` ([1320](#))

43.4.18 TJSONIniFile.WriteFloat

Synopsis: Writes a floating-point value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Double); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteFloat` writes a floating-point value to the specified section and key. The value is stored as a JSON number in the underlying JSON object. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadFloat` ([1319](#))

43.4.19 TJSONIniFile.WriteTime

Synopsis: Writes a time value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteTime(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: TDateTime); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteTime` writes a time value to the specified section and key. The time is formatted as a string (0000-00-00Thh:nn:ss.zzz) and stored as a JSON string. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadTime` ([1319](#)), `WriteDate` ([1319](#)), `WriteDateTime` ([1320](#))

43.4.20 TJSONIniFile.WriteInteger

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: LongInt); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteInteger` writes an integer value to the specified section and key. The value is stored as a JSON number in the underlying JSON object. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadInteger` ([1317](#)), `WriteInt64` ([1321](#))

43.4.21 TJSONIniFile.WriteInt64

Synopsis: Writes a 64-bit integer value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteInt64(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Int64); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteInt64` writes a 64-bit integer value to the specified section and key. The value is stored as a JSON number in the underlying JSON object. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadInt64` ([1318](#)), `WriteInteger` ([1320](#))

43.4.22 TJSONIniFile.WriteBool

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure WriteBool(const Section: string; const Ident: string;
Value: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBool` writes a boolean value to the specified section and key. The value is stored as a JSON boolean (`True` or `False`) in the underlying JSON object. If the section does not exist, it is created automatically.

See also: `ReadBool` ([1318](#))

43.4.23 TJSONIniFile.ReadSection

Synopsis: Reads all key names from a section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSection(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSection` reads all key names from the specified section and adds them to the `Strings` list. Only keys with actual values (not JSON objects or arrays) are included in the list. If the section does not exist, the list remains unchanged.

See also: `ReadSections` ([1321](#)), `ReadSectionValues` ([1322](#))

43.4.24 TJSONIniFile.ReadSections

Synopsis: Reads all section names from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure ReadSections(Strings: TStrings); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSections` reads all section names from the JSON ini file and adds them to the `Strings` list. Only top-level JSON objects are considered sections.

See also: `ReadSection` ([1321](#)), `ReadSectionValues` ([1322](#))

43.4.25 TJSONIniFile.ReadSectionValues

Synopsis: Reads all key-value pairs from a section

Declaration: `procedure ReadSectionValues(const Section: string; Strings: TStrings;
AOptions: TSectionValuesOptions=[svoIncludeInvalid])
; override; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSectionValues` reads all key-value pairs from the specified section and adds them to the `Strings` list in the format "key=value". The `AOptions` parameter controls which types of values are included. If `svoIncludeInvalid` is in `AOptions`, structured JSON values (objects and arrays) are included as their JSON representation.

See also: `ReadSection` ([1321](#)), `ReadSections` ([1321](#))

43.4.26 TJSONIniFile.EraseSection

Synopsis: Removes an entire section from the JSON ini file

Declaration: `procedure EraseSection(const Section: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `EraseSection` removes the specified section and all its key-value pairs from the JSON ini file. If the section does not exist, the method has no effect. The file is automatically updated unless `CacheUpdates` is `True`.

See also: `DeleteKey` ([1322](#))

43.4.27 TJSONIniFile.DeleteKey

Synopsis: Removes a key from a section

Declaration: `procedure DeleteKey(const Section: string; const Ident: string)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `DeleteKey` removes the specified key from the specified section. If the section or key does not exist, the method has no effect. The file is automatically updated unless `CacheUpdates` is `True`.

See also: `EraseSection` ([1322](#))

43.4.28 TJSONIniFile.UpdateFile

Synopsis: Writes the JSON data to file

Declaration: `procedure UpdateFile; override; overload
procedure UpdateFile(const AFileName: string); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `UpdateFile` writes the current JSON data to the file. The method has two overloaded forms:

- `UpdateFile()` - writes to the file specified in the constructor
- `UpdateFile(AFileName)` - writes to the specified file

The JSON data is formatted with proper indentation before writing.

See also: [Create \(1316\)](#), [CacheUpdates \(1323\)](#)

43.4.29 TJSONIniFile.Stream

Synopsis: Read-only access to the internal stream

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Stream` provides read-only access to the internal stream used by the `TJSONIniFile` instance. This property is only available when the instance was created with a stream parameter. For file-based instances, this property returns `nil`.

See also: [Create \(1316\)](#)

43.4.30 TJSONIniFile.CacheUpdates

Synopsis: Controls when changes are written to file

Declaration: `Property CacheUpdates : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `CacheUpdates` controls when changes to the JSON data are written to the file. When `CacheUpdates` is `True`, changes are cached in memory and only written to file when `UpdateFile` is called explicitly or when `CacheUpdates` is set to `False`. When `CacheUpdates` is `False`, changes are written to file immediately.

See also: [UpdateFile \(1322\)](#)

Chapter 44

Reference for unit 'jsonparser'

44.1 Used units

Table 44.1: Used units by unit 'jsonparser'

Name	Page
Classes	??
fpjson	829
jsonreader	1326
jsonscanner	1347
System	??
sysutils	??

44.2 Overview

The `jsonparser` unit provides a parser for data encoded in JSON (JavaScript Object Notation) format. It implements `TJSONParser` class that can parse JSON strings and streams into `TJSONData` objects.

44.3 Constants, types and variables

44.3.1 Types

```
EJSONParser = jsonReader.EJSONParser
```

`EJSONParser` is an alias for the JSON parser exception class defined in the `jsonreader` unit. It is raised when syntax errors or other parsing problems are encountered during JSON parsing.

44.4 TJSONParser

44.4.1 Description

`TJSONParser` is a parser class for reading JSON data from streams or strings. It extends `TBaseJSONReader` and builds a tree of `TJSONData` objects representing the parsed JSON structure.

See also: `TJSONData` ([1324](#)), `TBaseJSONReader` ([1324](#))

44.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1325	<code>Parse</code>	Parses JSON data and returns root object

44.4.3 `TJSONParser.Parse`

Synopsis: Parses JSON data and returns root object

Declaration: `function Parse : TJSONData`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Parse` reads and parses JSON data from the input stream, building a complete tree of JSON objects. It returns the root `TJSONData` object representing the entire parsed JSON structure.

See also: `TJSONData` ([1324](#))

Chapter 45

Reference for unit 'jsonreader'

45.1 Used units

Table 45.1: Used units by unit 'jsonreader'

Name	Page
Classes	??
fpjson	829
jsonscanner	1347
System	??
sysutils	??

45.2 Overview

The `jsonreader` unit provides event-based JSON reading functionality. It offers a SAX-like approach to JSON parsing where events are fired as JSON elements are encountered during parsing. This allows for efficient processing of large JSON documents without loading the entire structure into memory. The unit includes abstract base classes, event-driven readers, and interface-based consumers for flexible JSON processing.

45.3 Using JSON readers with streams and files

Both `TJSONEventReader` ([1341](#)) and `TJSONConsumerReader` ([1340](#)) can read JSON data from various sources including streams, files, and strings.

This flexibility allows you to process JSON data from files, network streams, or any other stream-based source without loading the entire content into memory first.

Here's an example that reads JSON from a file stream:

```
program JSONStreamDemo;  
  
{$mode objfpc}{$H+}  
  
uses
```

```

Classes, SysUtils, jsonreader;

type
  TJSONCounter = class
  private
    FObjectCount: Integer;
    FArrayCount: Integer;
    FStringCount: Integer;
    FNumberCount: Integer;
  public
    procedure OnStartObject(Sender: TObject);
    procedure OnStartArray(Sender: TObject);
    procedure OnStringValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: UTF8String);
    procedure OnIntegerValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Integer);
    procedure OnFloatValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Double);

    property ObjectCount: Integer read FObjectCount;
    property ArrayCount: Integer read FArrayCount;
    property StringCount: Integer read FStringCount;
    property NumberCount: Integer read FNumberCount;
  end;

procedure TJSONCounter.OnStartObject(Sender: TObject);
begin
  Inc(FObjectCount);
end;

procedure TJSONCounter.OnStartArray(Sender: TObject);
begin
  Inc(FArrayCount);
end;

procedure TJSONCounter.OnStringValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: UTF8String);
begin
  Inc(FStringCount);
end;

procedure TJSONCounter.OnIntegerValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Integer);
begin
  Inc(FNumberCount);
end;

procedure TJSONCounter.OnFloatValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Double);
begin
  Inc(FNumberCount);
end;

var
  FileStream: TFileStream;
  Reader: TJSONEventReader;
  Counter: TJSONCounter;
  JSONData: string;
  TempFile: TextFile;
begin

```



```

// Create a sample JSON file
JSONData := '{"users": [{"name": "John", "age": 25}, {"name": "Jane", "age": 30}]';
AssignFile(TempFile, '/tmp/claude/sample.json');
Rewrite(TempFile);
try
  Write(TempFile, JSONData);
finally
  CloseFile(TempFile);
end;

Counter := TJSONCounter.Create;
FileStream := TFileStream.Create('/tmp/claude/sample.json', fmOpenRead);
Reader := TJSONEventReader.Create(FileStream, []);
try
  // Assign counting event handlers
  Reader.OnStartObject := @Counter.OnStartObject;
  Reader.OnStartArray := @Counter.OnStartArray;
  Reader.OnStringValue := @Counter.OnStringValue;
  Reader.OnIntegerValue := @Counter.OnIntegerValue;
  Reader.OnFloatValue := @Counter.OnFloatValue;

  // Parse the JSON file
  Reader.Execute;

  // Display statistics
  Writeln('JSON Statistics:');
  Writeln('  Objects: ', Counter.ObjectCount);
  Writeln('  Arrays: ', Counter.ArrayCount);
  Writeln('  Strings: ', Counter.StringCount);
  Writeln('  Numbers: ', Counter.NumberCount);

finally
  Reader.Free;
  FileStream.Free;
  Counter.Free;

  // Clean up temp file
  DeleteFile('/tmp/claude/sample.json');
end;
end.

```

You can also use the readers with string sources when the JSON data is already in memory:

```

// String source
Reader := TJSONEventReader.Create(JSONString, []);

// Unicode string source
Reader := TJSONEventReader.Create(UnicodeJSONString, []);

// Stream source with options
Reader := TJSONEventReader.Create(MyStream, [joUTF8, joStrict]);

```

The parsing options (TJSONOptions) allow you to control:

- `joUTF8`: Handle UTF-8 encoding properly
- `joStrict`: Use strict JSON parsing rules
- `joIgnoreTrailingComma`: Allow trailing commas in objects and arrays
- `joComments`: Allow JavaScript-style comments in JSON

45.4 Using TJSONConsumerReader with IJSONConsumer interface

TJSONConsumerReader (1340) provides an alternative to event-based parsing by using the IJSONConsumer (1335) interface. Instead of assigning event handlers, you implement the interface methods to process JSON elements.

This approach provides a cleaner object-oriented design and can be easier to maintain for complex JSON processing logic.

The workflow involves:

1. Create a class that implements IJSONConsumer (1335)
2. Create a TJSONConsumerReader (1340) instance
3. Assign your consumer to the Consumer (1341) property
4. Call Execute (1341) to start parsing

Here's an example that builds a simple data structure from JSON:

```
program JSONConsumerDemo;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
  Classes, SysUtils, jsonreader, Generics.Collections;

type
  TJSONDataExtractor = class(TInterfacedObject, IJSONConsumer)
  private
    FStack: TList<string>;
    FCurrentPath: string;
    FData: TStringList;
  public
    constructor Create;
    destructor Destroy; override;

    // IJSONConsumer interface
    procedure NullValue;
    procedure BooleanValue(const AValue: Boolean);
    procedure NumberValue(const AValue: string);
    procedure FloatValue(const AValue: Double);
    procedure Int64Value(const AValue: Int64);
    procedure QWordValue(const AValue: QWord);
    procedure IntegerValue(const AValue: Integer);
```

```
    procedure StringValue(const AValue: UTF8String);
    procedure KeyName(const AKey: UTF8String);
    procedure StartObject;
    procedure EndObject;
    procedure StartArray;
    procedure EndArray;

    property Data: TStringList read FData;
end;

constructor TJSONDataExtractor.Create;
begin
    inherited Create;
    FStack := TList<string>.Create;
    FData := TStringList.Create;
end;

destructor TJSONDataExtractor.Destroy;
begin
    FStack.Free;
    FData.Free;
    inherited Destroy;
end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.KeyName(const AKey: UTF8String);
begin
    if FCurrentPath <> '' then
        FCurrentPath := FCurrentPath + '.' + AKey
    else
        FCurrentPath := AKey;
end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.StringValue(const AValue: UTF8String);
begin
    if FCurrentPath <> '' then
        FData.Values[FCurrentPath] := AValue;
    FCurrentPath := '';
end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.IntegerValue(const AValue: Integer);
begin
    if FCurrentPath <> '' then
        FData.Values[FCurrentPath] := IntToStr(AValue);
    FCurrentPath := '';
end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.BooleanValue(const AValue: Boolean);
begin
    if FCurrentPath <> '' then
        FData.Values[FCurrentPath] := BoolToStr(AValue, True);
    FCurrentPath := '';
end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.StartObject;
```

```

begin
    if FCurrentPath <> '' then
        FStack.Add(FCurrentPath);
    end;

procedure TJSONDataExtractor.EndObject;
begin
    if FStack.Count > 0 then
        begin
            FCurrentPath := FStack[FStack.Count - 1];
            FStack.Delete(FStack.Count - 1);
        end
    else
        FCurrentPath := '';
    end;

// Implement remaining interface methods
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.NullValue; begin FCurrentPath := ''; end;
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.NumberValue(const AValue: UTF8String); begin StringValue(Flo
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.FloatValue(const AValue: Double); begin StringValue(Flo
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.Int64Value(const AValue: Int64); begin StringValue(IntT
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.QWordValue(const AValue: QWord); begin StringValue(IntT
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.StartArray; begin end;
procedure TJSONDataExtractor.EndArray; begin end;

var
    Reader: TJSONConsumerReader;
    Extractor: TJSONDataExtractor;
    JSONData: string;
    i: Integer;
begin
    JSONData := '{"user": {"name": "Bob Jones", "age": 35, "active": true}, "settings"

    Extractor := TJSONDataExtractor.Create;
    Reader := TJSONConsumerReader.Create(JSONData, []);
    try
        Reader.Consumer := Extractor;
        Reader.Execute;

        Writeln('Extracted data:');
        for i := 0 to Extractor.Data.Count - 1 do
            Writeln('  ', Extractor.Data[i]);

    finally
        Reader.Free;
        Extractor.Free;
    end;
end.

```

The consumer interface approach is beneficial when you need to:

- Implement complex parsing logic in a structured way
- Reuse the same parsing logic across different parts of your application

- Build data structures incrementally during parsing
- Keep parsing state in a more organized manner

45.5 Using TJSONEventReader for event-based JSON parsing

TJSONEventReader (1341) provides event-based JSON parsing similar to SAX parsing for XML. As the parser encounters different JSON elements, it fires corresponding events that you can handle to process the data.

This approach is memory-efficient for large JSON documents since it doesn't load the entire structure into memory. You only need to handle the events for the data you're interested in processing.

Basic usage involves:

1. Create a TJSONEventReader (1341) instance with JSON source
2. Assign event handlers for the JSON elements you want to process
3. Call Execute (1342) to start parsing

Here's a complete example that parses JSON and extracts specific values:

```
program JSONEventReaderDemo;

{$mode objfpc}{$H+}

uses
  Classes, SysUtils, jsonreader;

type
  TMyJSONProcessor = class
  private
    FPersonName: string;
    FPersonAge: Integer;
    FInAddress: Boolean;
    FCurrentKey: string;
  public
    procedure OnKeyName(Sender: TObject; const AKey: UTF8String);
    procedure OnStringValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: UTF8String);
    procedure OnIntegerValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Integer);
    procedure OnStartObject(Sender: TObject);
    procedure OnEndObject(Sender: TObject);

    property PersonName: string read FPersonName;
    property PersonAge: Integer read FPersonAge;
  end;

procedure TMyJSONProcessor.OnKeyName(Sender: TObject; const AKey: UTF8String);
begin
  FCurrentKey := AKey;
  FInAddress := (AKey = 'address');
end;
```

```

procedure TMyJSONProcessor.OnStringValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: UTF8String);
begin
    if not FInAddress and (FCurrentKey = 'name') then
        FPersonName := AValue;
end;

procedure TMyJSONProcessor.OnIntegerValue(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Integer);
begin
    if not FInAddress and (FCurrentKey = 'age') then
        FPersonAge := AValue;
end;

procedure TMyJSONProcessor.OnStartObject(Sender: TObject);
begin
    // Object started
end;

procedure TMyJSONProcessor.OnEndObject(Sender: TObject);
begin
    FInAddress := False;
end;

var
    Reader: TJSONEventReader;
    Processor: TMyJSONProcessor;
    JSONData: string;
begin
    JSONData := '{"name": "Alice Smith", "age": 28, "address": {"street": "123 Oak St "

    Processor := TMyJSONProcessor.Create;
    Reader := TJSONEventReader.Create(JSONData, []);
    try
        // Assign event handlers
        Reader.OnKeyName := @Processor.OnKeyName;
        Reader.OnStringValue := @Processor.OnStringValue;
        Reader.OnIntegerValue := @Processor.OnIntegerValue;
        Reader.OnStartObject := @Processor.OnStartObject;
        Reader.OnEndObject := @Processor.OnEndObject;

        // Parse the JSON
        Reader.Execute;

        // Display results
        Writeln('Person Name: ', Processor.PersonName);
        Writeln('Person Age: ', Processor.PersonAge);

    finally
        Reader.Free;
        Processor.Free;
    end;
end.

```

The event-based approach is ideal when you need to:

- Process large JSON files without loading them entirely into memory
- Extract specific values from complex JSON structures
- Transform JSON data during parsing
- Handle JSON streams in real-time

45.6 Constants, types and variables

45.6.1 Types

```
TOnJSONBoolean = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Boolean
)
of object
```

`TOnJSONBoolean` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON boolean value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the boolean value that was found in the JSON data.

```
TOnJSONFloat = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AValue: TJSONFloat
)
of object
```

`TOnJSONFloat` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON floating-point number value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the floating-point value that was found in the JSON data.

```
TOnJSONInt64 = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Int64) of
object
```

`TOnJSONInt64` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON 64-bit integer value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the 64-bit integer value that was found in the JSON data.

```
TOnJSONInteger = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AValue: Integer
)
of object
```

`TOnJSONInteger` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON integer value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the integer value that was found in the JSON data.

```
TOnJSONKey = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AKey: TJSONStringType
)
of object
```

`TOnJSONKey` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON object key name is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the key name that was found in the JSON object data.

```
TOnJSONQWord = procedure(Sender: TObject; const AValue: QWord) of
object
```

`TOnJSONQWord` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON unsigned quadword (64-bit unsigned integer) value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the quadword value that was found in the JSON data.

```
TOnJSONString = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    const AValue: TJSONStringType) of object
```

`TOnJSONString` is an event handler type that is called when a JSON string value is encountered during parsing. The event provides the sender object and the string value that was found in the JSON data.

45.7 EJSONParser

45.7.1 Description

`EJSONParser` is raised when JSON parsing errors are encountered. It inherits from `EParserError` and provides specific error information for JSON syntax violations and parsing problems. The exception includes details about the location of the error in the JSON input, including line and column information.

See also: `TBaseJSONReader` ([1339](#)), `TJSONEventReader` ([1341](#)), `TJSONConsumerReader` ([1340](#))

45.8 IJSONConsumer

45.8.1 Description

`IJSONConsumer` defines a standard interface for objects that consume JSON data during parsing. This interface provides methods that correspond to different JSON element types and structural events. Implementers of this interface can process JSON data as it is parsed without needing to create event handlers. The interface is used with `TJSONConsumerReader` ([1340](#)) for flexible JSON processing.

See also: `TJSONConsumerReader` ([1340](#)), `TJSONEventReader` ([1341](#))

45.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1336	<code>BooleanValue</code>	Processes a JSON boolean value
1339	<code>EndArray</code>	Processes the end of a JSON array
1338	<code>EndObject</code>	Processes the end of a JSON object
1336	<code>FloatValue</code>	Processes a JSON floating-point value
1337	<code>Int64Value</code>	Processes a JSON 64-bit integer value
1337	<code>IntegerValue</code>	Processes a JSON integer value
1338	<code>KeyName</code>	Processes a JSON object key name
1336	<code>NullValue</code>	Processes a JSON null value
1336	<code>NumberValue</code>	Processes a JSON number value as string
1337	<code>QWordValue</code>	Processes a JSON quadword value
1338	<code>StartArray</code>	Processes the start of a JSON array
1338	<code>StartObject</code>	Processes the start of a JSON object
1337	<code>StringValue</code>	Processes a JSON string value

45.8.3 IJSONConsumer.NullValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON null value

Declaration: `procedure NullValue`

Visibility: default

Description: `NullValue` is called when a JSON null value is encountered during parsing. Implementers should handle the null value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.4 IJSONConsumer.BooleanValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON boolean value

Declaration: `procedure BooleanValue(const AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `BooleanValue` is called when a JSON boolean value is encountered during parsing. The method receives the boolean value that was found in the JSON data. Implementers should handle the boolean value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.5 IJSONConsumer.NumberValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON number value as string

Declaration: `procedure NumberValue(const AValue: TJSONStringType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `NumberValue` is called when a JSON number value is encountered during parsing. The method receives the number as its string representation before type conversion. Implementers should handle the number string according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.6 IJSONConsumer.FloatValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON floating-point value

Declaration: `procedure FloatValue(const AValue: TJSONFloat)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatValue` is called when a JSON floating-point number is encountered during parsing. The method receives the floating-point value that was parsed from the JSON data. Implementers should handle the float value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.7 IJSONConsumer.Int64Value

Synopsis: Processes a JSON 64-bit integer value

Declaration: `procedure Int64Value(const AValue: Int64)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Int64Value` is called when a JSON 64-bit integer is encountered during parsing. The method receives the 64-bit integer value that was parsed from the JSON data. Implementers should handle the integer value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.8 IJSONConsumer.QWordValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON quadword value

Declaration: `procedure QWordValue(const AValue: QWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `QWordValue` is called when a JSON unsigned 64-bit integer is encountered during parsing. The method receives the quadword value that was parsed from the JSON data. Implementers should handle the quadword value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.9 IJSONConsumer.IntegerValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON integer value

Declaration: `procedure IntegerValue(const AValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntegerValue` is called when a JSON integer is encountered during parsing. The method receives the integer value that was parsed from the JSON data. Implementers should handle the integer value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.10 IJSONConsumer.StringValue

Synopsis: Processes a JSON string value

Declaration: `procedure StringValue(const AValue: TJSONStringType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringValue` is called when a JSON string is encountered during parsing. The method receives the string value that was parsed from the JSON data. Implementers should handle the string value according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.11 IJSONConsumer.KeyName

Synopsis: Processes a JSON object key name

Declaration: `procedure KeyName(const AKey: TJSONStringType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyName` is called when a JSON object key name is encountered during parsing. The method receives the key name that was parsed from the JSON object data. Implementers should handle the key name according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

45.8.12 IJSONConsumer.StartObject

Synopsis: Processes the start of a JSON object

Declaration: `procedure StartObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartObject` is called when the beginning of a JSON object is encountered during parsing. This corresponds to opening curly braces in the JSON data. Implementers should handle the start of the object according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

See also: `EndObject` ([1338](#))

45.8.13 IJSONConsumer.EndObject

Synopsis: Processes the end of a JSON object

Declaration: `procedure EndObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndObject` is called when the end of a JSON object is encountered during parsing. This corresponds to closing curly braces in the JSON data. Implementers should handle the end of the object according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

See also: `StartObject` ([1338](#))

45.8.14 IJSONConsumer.StartArray

Synopsis: Processes the start of a JSON array

Declaration: `procedure StartArray`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartArray` is called when the beginning of a JSON array is encountered during parsing. This corresponds to opening square brackets in the JSON data. Implementers should handle the start of the array according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

See also: `EndArray` ([1339](#))

45.8.15 IJSONConsumer.EndArray

Synopsis: Processes the end of a JSON array

```
Declaration: procedure EndArray
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EndArray` is called when the end of a JSON array is encountered during parsing. This corresponds to closing square brackets in the JSON data. Implementers should handle the end of the array according to their processing requirements.

Errors: Implementation-specific error handling.

See also: [StartArray \(1338\)](#)

45.9 TBaseJSONReader

45.9.1 Description

`TBaseJSONReader` is the abstract base class for all JSON reading functionality. It provides the core parsing logic and virtual methods that must be implemented by derived classes. The class uses `TJSONScanner` (1326) for tokenization and handles the parsing of JSON objects, arrays, and primitive values. Derived classes must implement abstract methods to handle different JSON element types encountered during parsing.

See also: [TJSEventReader \(1341\)](#), [TJSONConsumerReader \(1340\)](#), [TJSONScanner \(1326\)](#)

45.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1339	Create	Creates a new JSON reader with specified source and options
1340	Destroy	Destroys the JSON reader and frees resources

45.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1340	Options	rw	JSON parsing options that control reader behavior

45.9.4 TBaseJSONReader.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new JSON reader with specified source and options

```
Declaration: constructor Create(Source: TStream; AUseUTF8: Boolean=True); overload
               constructor Create(const Source: RawByteString; AUseUTF8: Boolean=True)
                           ; overload
               constructor Create(Source: TStream; AOptions: TJSONOptions); overload
               constructor Create(const Source: RawByteString; AOptions: TJSONOptions)
                           ; overload
               constructor Create(const Source: UnicodeString; AOptions: TJSONOptions)
                           ; overload
```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `TBaseJSONReader` instance with the specified JSON source and parsing options. The constructor initializes the internal `TJSONScanner` ([1326](#)) with the provided source and options. Multiple overloaded versions are available for different source types and option configurations.

Errors: May raise exceptions if the source cannot be accessed or is invalid.

See also: `Destroy` ([1340](#)), `Options` ([1340](#))

45.9.5 TBaseJSONReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the JSON reader and frees resources

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the `TBaseJSONReader` instance and frees all associated resources. This includes releasing the internal `TJSONScanner` ([1326](#)) and any allocated memory.

See also: `Create` ([1339](#))

45.9.6 TBaseJSONReader.Options

Synopsis: JSON parsing options that control reader behavior

Declaration: `Property Options : TJSONOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: The `Options` property controls various aspects of JSON parsing behavior. This includes UTF-8 handling, strict mode parsing, and other parsing preferences. Changes to options affect how the underlying scanner processes JSON tokens.

See also: `TJSONOptions` ([1326](#)), `TJSONScanner` ([1326](#))

45.10 TJSONConsumerReader

45.10.1 Description

`TJSONConsumerReader` provides JSON reading functionality using the `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#)) interface. It inherits from `TBaseJSONReader` ([1339](#)) and delegates JSON element processing to an assigned consumer object. This approach allows for flexible JSON processing by implementing the `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#)) interface rather than creating event handlers. The consumer pattern provides an alternative to the event-driven approach used by `TJSEventReader` ([1341](#)).

See also: `TBaseJSONReader` ([1339](#)), `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#)), `TJSEventReader` ([1341](#))

45.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1341	<code>Execute</code>	Starts the JSON parsing process using the assigned consumer

45.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1341	Consumer	rw	JSON consumer object that processes parsed elements

45.10.4 TJSONConsumerReader.Execute

Synopsis: Starts the JSON parsing process using the assigned consumer

Declaration: `procedure Execute`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` starts the JSON parsing process. As JSON elements are encountered during parsing, the corresponding methods in the assigned `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#)) are called if a consumer is assigned. The method processes the entire JSON input until completion or until an error is encountered.

Errors: Raises `EJSONParser` ([1335](#)) when invalid JSON syntax is encountered.

See also: `TBaseJSONReader.DoExecute` ([1339](#)), `Consumer` ([1341](#))

45.10.5 TJSONConsumerReader.Consumer

Synopsis: JSON consumer object that processes parsed elements

Declaration: `Property Consumer : IJSONConsumer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Consumer` specifies the `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#)) object that will process JSON elements as they are parsed. When assigned, the consumer's methods are called for each JSON element type encountered during parsing. If no consumer is assigned, the parsing will proceed but no processing will occur.

See also: `IJSONConsumer` ([1335](#))

45.11 TJSEventReader

45.11.1 Description

`TJSEventReader` provides event-based JSON reading functionality. It inherits from `TBaseJSONReader` ([1339](#)) and fires specific events when different JSON elements are encountered during parsing. This allows applications to process JSON data using an event-driven approach similar to SAX parsing for XML. Each JSON element type has a corresponding event property that can be assigned to handle the parsed data.

See also: `TBaseJSONReader` ([1339](#)), `TJSONConsumerReader` ([1340](#))

45.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1342	<code>Execute</code>	Starts the JSON parsing process and fires events

45.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1342	OnBooleanValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON boolean value is encountered
1346	OnEndArray	rw	Event fired when a JSON array ends
1345	OnEndObject	rw	Event fired when a JSON object ends
1343	OnFloatValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON floating-point value is encountered
1344	OnInt64Value	rw	Event fired when a JSON 64-bit integer value is encountered
1343	OnIntegerValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON integer value is encountered
1344	OnKeyName	rw	Event fired when a JSON object key name is encountered
1342	OnNullValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON null value is encountered
1343	OnNumberValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON number value is encountered
1344	OnQWordValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON quadword value is encountered
1345	OnStartArray	rw	Event fired when a JSON array begins
1345	OnStartObject	rw	Event fired when a JSON object begins
1344	OnStringValue	rw	Event fired when a JSON string value is encountered

45.11.4 TJSONEventReader.Execute

Synopsis: Starts the JSON parsing process and fires events

Declaration: `procedure Execute`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` starts the JSON parsing process. As JSON elements are encountered during parsing, the corresponding event handlers are called if they are assigned. The method processes the entire JSON input until completion or until an error is encountered.

Errors: Raises `EJSONParser` ([1335](#)) when invalid JSON syntax is encountered.

See also: `TBaseJSONReader.DoExecute` ([1339](#))

45.11.5 TJSONEventReader.OnNullValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON null value is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnNullValue : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnNullValue` is fired when a JSON null value is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object as parameter. This event corresponds to JSON null values in the input data.

See also: `TNotifyEvent` ([1326](#))

45.11.6 TJSONEventReader.OnBooleanValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON boolean value is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnBooleanValue : TOnJSONBoolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnBooleanValue` is fired when a JSON boolean value is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the boolean value as parameters. This event corresponds to JSON `True` and `False` values in the input data.

See also: `TOnJSONBoolean` ([1334](#))

45.11.7 TJSONEventReader.OnNumberValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON number value is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnNumberValue : TOnJSONString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnNumberValue` is fired when any JSON number value is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the number as a string representation. This event is fired for all numeric values before they are converted to specific numeric types.

See also: `TOnJSONString` ([1335](#))

45.11.8 TJSONEventReader.OnFloatValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON floating-point value is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnFloatValue : TOnJSONFloat`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnFloatValue` is fired when a JSON floating-point number is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the floating-point value as parameters. This event is fired for JSON numbers that contain decimal points or exponential notation.

See also: `TOnJSONFloat` ([1334](#))

45.11.9 TJSONEventReader.OnIntegerValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON integer value is encountered

Declaration: `Property OnIntegerValue : TOnJSONInteger`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnIntegerValue` is fired when a JSON integer value that fits in a standard integer is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the integer value as parameters. This event is fired for JSON numbers that can be represented as 32-bit signed integers.

See also: `TOnJSONInteger` ([1334](#))

45.11.10 TJSONEventReader.OnInt64Value

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON 64-bit integer value is encountered

Declaration: Property OnInt64Value : TOnJSONInt64

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnInt64Value is fired when a JSON integer value that requires 64-bit representation is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the 64-bit integer value as parameters. This event is fired for JSON numbers that exceed the range of 32-bit integers but fit in 64-bit signed integers.

See also: TOnJSONInt64 ([1334](#))

45.11.11 TJSONEventReader.OnQWordValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON quadword value is encountered

Declaration: Property OnQWordValue : TOnJSONQWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnQWordValue is fired when a JSON integer value that requires unsigned 64-bit representation is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the quadword value as parameters. This event is fired for JSON numbers that exceed the range of signed 64-bit integers.

See also: TOnJSONQWord ([1335](#))

45.11.12 TJSONEventReader.OnStringValue

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON string value is encountered

Declaration: Property OnStringValue : TOnJSONString

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnStringValue is fired when a JSON string value is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the string value as parameters. This event corresponds to JSON string literals enclosed in double quotes.

See also: TOnJSONString ([1335](#))

45.11.13 TJSONEventReader.OnKeyName

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON object key name is encountered

Declaration: Property OnKeyName : TOnJSONKey

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnKeyName` is fired when a JSON object key name is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object and the key name as parameters. This event is fired for the key portion of key-value pairs in JSON objects.

See also: `TOnJSONKey` ([1334](#))

45.11.14 `TJSONEventReader.OnStartObject`

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON object begins

Declaration: `Property OnStartObject : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnStartObject` is fired when the start of a JSON object is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object as parameter. This event corresponds to opening curly braces in JSON data.

See also: `OnEndObject` ([1345](#)), `TNotifyEvent` ([1326](#))

45.11.15 `TJSONEventReader.OnEndObject`

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON object ends

Declaration: `Property OnEndObject : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnEndObject` is fired when the end of a JSON object is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object as parameter. This event corresponds to closing curly braces in JSON data.

See also: `OnStartObject` ([1345](#)), `TNotifyEvent` ([1326](#))

45.11.16 `TJSONEventReader.OnStartArray`

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON array begins

Declaration: `Property OnStartArray : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnStartArray` is fired when the start of a JSON array is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object as parameter. This event corresponds to opening square brackets in JSON data.

See also: `OnEndArray` ([1346](#)), `TNotifyEvent` ([1326](#))

45.11.17 TJSONEventReader.OnEndArray

Synopsis: Event fired when a JSON array ends

Declaration: Property `OnEndArray` : `TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `OnEndArray` is fired when the end of a JSON array is encountered during parsing. The event handler receives the sender object as parameter. This event corresponds to closing square brackets in JSON data.

See also: `OnStartArray` ([1345](#)), `TNotifyEvent` ([1326](#))

Chapter 46

Reference for unit 'jsonscanner'

46.1 Used units

Table 46.1: Used units by unit 'jsonscanner'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

46.2 Overview

The `jsonscanner` unit provides a tokenizer for JSON data. It breaks JSON text into discrete tokens for subsequent parsing.

46.3 Constants, types and variables

46.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrInvalidCharacter =  
    'Invalid character at line %d, pos %d: ''%s'''
```

Error message format string for invalid characters encountered during scanning. Contains placeholders for line number, column position, and the invalid character.

```
SErrOpenString = 'string exceeds end of line %d'
```

Error message format string for unclosed strings that exceed the end of a line. Contains a placeholder for the line number where the string begins.

```
SUnterminatedComment =  
    'Unterminated comment at line %d, pos %d: ''%s'''
```

Error message format string for unterminated comments encountered during scanning. Contains placeholders for line number and column position where the unterminated comment begins.

46.3.2 Constants

`DefaultOptions = [joUTF8]`

Default set of options for the JSON scanner. Contains the `joUTF8` (1348) option by default.

```
TokenInfos : Array[TJSONToken] of string = string = ('EOF', 'Whitespace'
, 'String', 'Number', 'True', 'False', 'Null', ',', ':', '{', '}'
, '[', ']', 'identifier', 'comment', '')
```

Array of string descriptions for each `TJSONToken` (1349) type. Provides human-readable names for token types, useful for debugging and error reporting. Indexed by token type enumeration values.

46.3.3 Types

```
TJSONOption = (joUTF8, joStrict, joComments, joIgnoreTrailingComma,
joIgnoreDuplicates, joBOMCheck)
```

Table 46.2: Enumeration values for type `TJSONOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>joBOMCheck</code>	Check byte order mark option
<code>joComments</code>	Allow comments option
<code>joIgnoreDuplicates</code>	Ignore duplicate keys option
<code>joIgnoreTrailingComma</code>	Ignore trailing comma option
<code>joStrict</code>	Strict JSON parsing option
<code>joUTF8</code>	UTF8 string encoding option

Enumeration of options that control the behavior of the JSON scanner. These options can be combined in a `TJSONOptions` (1348) set.

joUTF8 Return strings with UTF8 codepage

joStrict Use strict JSON parsing (require quotes around object member names)

joComments Allow JavaScript-style comments in JSON

joIgnoreTrailingComma Ignore trailing commas in arrays and objects

joIgnoreDuplicates Do not attempt to add duplicate object members

joBOMCheck Check for byte order mark at beginning of stream

joSingle Read only a single JSON value from the stream

```
TJSONOptions = Set of TJSONOption = (joBOMCheck, joComments, joIgnoreDuplicates
,
joIgnoreTrailingComma, joStrict, joUTF8)
```

Set type that combines multiple `TJSONOption` (1348) values. Used to configure the behavior of the JSON scanner.

```

TJSONToken = (tkEOF, tkWhitespace, tkString, tkNumber, tkTrue, tkFalse
,
            tkNull, tkComma, tkColon, tkCurlyBraceOpen, tkCurlyBraceClose
,
            tkSquaredBraceOpen, tkSquaredBraceClose, tkIdentifier
,
            tkComment, tkUnknown)

```

Table 46.3: Enumeration values for type TJSONToken

Value	Explanation
tkColon	Colon separator token
tkComma	Comma separator token
tkComment	Comment token
tkCurlyBraceClose	Closing curly brace token
tkCurlyBraceOpen	Opening curly brace token
tkEOF	End of file token
tkFalse	Boolean false token
tkIdentifier	Identifier token
tkNull	Null value token
tkNumber	Numeric value token
tkSquaredBraceClose	Closing square bracket token
tkSquaredBraceOpen	Opening square bracket token
tkString	String literal token
tkTrue	Boolean true token
tkUnknown	Unknown token
tkWhitespace	Whitespace token

Enumeration of all possible token types that can be encountered during JSON scanning. Each token represents a distinct syntactic element in JSON syntax.

tkEOF End of input stream reached

tkWhitespace Whitespace characters (spaces, tabs)

tkString String literal enclosed in quotes

tkNumber Numeric value (integer or floating-point)

tkTrue Boolean `True` literal

tkFalse Boolean `False` literal

tkNull Null literal value

tkComma Comma separator character

tkColon Colon separator character

tkCurlyBraceOpen Opening curly brace for objects

tkCurlyBraceClose Closing curly brace for objects

tkSquaredBraceOpen Opening square bracket for arrays

tkSquaredBraceClose Closing square bracket for arrays

tkIdentifier Identifier (in non-strict mode)

tkComment Comment content (when comments are enabled)

tkUnknown Unrecognized token

46.4 EScannerError

46.4.1 Description

Exception class raised when errors occur during JSON tokenization. Descends from `EParserError` to provide specific error handling for scanner operations.

See also: `SErrInvalidCharacter` (1347), `SUnterminatedComment` (1347), `SErrOpenString` (1347)

46.5 TJSONScanner

46.5.1 Description

Lexical scanner class that tokenizes JSON text input. Breaks JSON source into discrete tokens for subsequent parsing by higher-level parsers. Supports various scanning options through `TJSONOptions` (1348).

See also: `TJSONToken` (1349), `TJSONOptions` (1348), `EScannerError` (1350)

46.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1350	Create	Create JSON scanner instance
1351	FetchToken	Fetch next token from input

46.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1352	CurColumn	r	Current column number
1351	CurLine	r	Current line content
1351	CurRow	r	Current row number
1352	CurToken	r	Current token type
1352	CurTokenString	r	Current token string value
1353	Options	rw	Scanner options set
1352	Strict	rw	Strict JSON parsing mode
1353	UseUTF8	rw	UTF-8 encoding mode

46.5.4 TJSONScanner.Create

Synopsis: Create JSON scanner instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(Source: TStream; AUseUTF8: Boolean=True); overload
 constructor Create(Source: TStream; AOptions: TJSONOptions); overload
 constructor Create(const aSource: RawByteString; AUseUTF8: Boolean=True)`

```

        ; overload
    constructor Create(const aSource: RawByteString; AOptions: TJSONOptions)
        ; overload

```

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new JSON scanner instance. Can be initialized with either a `TStream` or a raw byte string source. Accepts optional scanning options to control parsing behavior.

Errors: May raise exceptions during source loading from streams.

See also: `TJSONOptions` ([1348](#)), `DefaultOptions` ([1348](#))

46.5.5 TJSONScanner.FetchToken

Synopsis: Fetch next token from input

Declaration: `function FetchToken : TJSONToken`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads and returns the next token from the JSON input stream. Advances the scanner position and updates current token information. The token type and associated string value are available through properties after calling this method.

Errors: Raises `EScannerError` ([1350](#)) when encountering invalid JSON syntax.

See also: `TJSONToken` ([1349](#)), `CurToken` ([1352](#)), `CurTokenString` ([1352](#))

46.5.6 TJSONScanner.CurLine

Synopsis: Current line content

Declaration: `Property CurLine : Ansistring`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the content of the current line being scanned. Useful for error reporting and debugging.

See also: `CurRow` ([1351](#)), `CurColumn` ([1352](#))

46.5.7 TJSONScanner.CurRow

Synopsis: Current row number

Declaration: `Property CurRow : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the current line number in the input stream. Line numbers start from 1.

See also: `CurLine` ([1351](#)), `CurColumn` ([1352](#))

46.5.8 TJSONScanner.Column

Synopsis: Current column number

Declaration: `Property Column : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the current column position within the current line. Column numbers start from 0.

See also: `CurRow` ([1351](#)), `CurLine` ([1351](#))

46.5.9 TJSONScanner.Token

Synopsis: Current token type

Declaration: `Property Token : TJSONToken`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the type of the current token. Updated after each call to `FetchToken` ([1351](#)).

See also: `TJSONToken` ([1349](#)), `FetchToken` ([1351](#)), `CurTokenString` ([1352](#))

46.5.10 TJSONScanner.TokenString

Synopsis: Current token string value

Declaration: `Property TokenString : Ansistring`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Returns the string representation of the current token. For string tokens, contains the unescaped string content. For other tokens, contains the literal text representation.

See also: `CurToken` ([1352](#)), `FetchToken` ([1351](#))

46.5.11 TJSONScanner.Strict

Synopsis: Strict JSON parsing mode

Declaration: `Property Strict : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Controls whether strict JSON parsing is enabled. When `True`, requires quotes around object member names and disallows single quotes. This property is deprecated; use `Options` ([1353](#)) instead.

See also: `joStrict` ([1348](#)), `Options` ([1353](#))

46.5.12 TJSONScanner.UseUTF8

Synopsis: UTF-8 encoding mode

Declaration: `Property UseUTF8 : Boolean; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Controls whether strings are converted to UTF-8 encoding. When `True`, string tokens use UTF-8 codepage instead of system codepage. This property is deprecated; use `Options` ([1353](#)) instead.

See also: `joUTF8` ([1348](#)), `Options` ([1353](#))

46.5.13 TJSONScanner.Options

Synopsis: Scanner options set

Declaration: `Property Options : TJSONOptions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Set of options that control the scanner behavior. Allows combining multiple `TJSONOption` ([1348](#)) values to customize parsing.

See also: `TJSONOptions` ([1348](#)), `TJSONOption` ([1348](#)), `DefaultOptions` ([1348](#))

Chapter 47

Reference for unit 'libtar'

47.1 Used units

Table 47.1: Used units by unit 'libtar'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
Unix	??
UnixType	??

47.2 Overview

The `libtar` units provides 2 classes to read and write `.tar` archives: `TTarArchive` ([1358](#)) class can be used to read a tar file, and the `TTarWriter` ([1360](#)) class can be used to write a tar file. The unit was implemented originally by Stefan Heymann.

47.3 Constants, types and variables

47.3.1 Constants

```
ALL_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner  
    , tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup, tpReadByOther,  
    tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther]
```

`ALL_PERMISSIONS` is a set constant containing all possible permissions (read/write/execute, for all groups of users) for an archive entry.

```
EXECUTE_PERMISSIONS = [tpExecuteByOwner, tpExecuteByGroup, tpExecuteByOther  
    ]
```

`WRITE_PERMISSIONS` is a set constant containing all possible execute permissions set for an archive entry.

```
FILETYPE_NAME : Array[TFileType] of string = string = ('Regular',
  'Link', 'Symbolic Link', 'Char File', 'Block File', 'Directory',
  'FIFO File', 'Contiguous', 'Dir Dump', 'Multivol', 'Volume Header'
)
```

FILETYPE_NAME can be used to get a textual description for each of the possible entry file types.

```
READ_PERMISSIONS = [tpReadByOwner, tpReadByGroup, tpReadByOther]
```

READ_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible read permissions set for an archive entry.

```
WRITE_PERMISSIONS = [tpWriteByOwner, tpWriteByGroup, tpWriteByOther
]
```

WRITE_PERMISSIONS is a set constant containing all possible write permissions set for an archive entry.

47.3.2 Types

```
TFileType = (ftNormal, ftLink, ftSymbolicLink, ftCharacter, ftBlock,
  ftDirectory, ftFifo, ftContiguous, ftDumpDir, ftMultiVolume
  ,
  ftVolumeHeader)
```

Table 47.2: Enumeration values for type TFileType

Value	Explanation
ftBlock	Block device file.
ftCharacter	Character device file.
ftContiguous	Contiguous file.
ftDirectory	Directory.
ftDumpDir	List of files.
ftFifo	FIFO file.
ftLink	Hard link.
ftMultiVolume	Multi-volume file part.
ftNormal	Normal file.
ftSymbolicLink	Symbolic link.
ftVolumeHeader	Volume header, can appear only as first entry in the archive.

TFileType describes the file type of a file in the archive. It is used in the FileType field of the TTarDirRec (1356) record.

```
TTarDirRec = record
public
  Name : AnsiString;
  Size : Int64;
  DateTime : TDateTime;
  Permissions : TTarPermissions;
  FileType
```

```

: TFileType;
LinkName : AnsiString;
UID : Integer;
GID : Integer
;
UserName : AnsiString;
GroupName : AnsiString;
ChecksumOK
: Boolean;
Mode : TTarModes;
Magic : AnsiString;
MajorDevNo
: Integer;
MinorDevNo : Integer;
FilePos : Int64;
end

```

TTarDirRec describes an entry in the tar archive. It is similar to a directory entry as in TSearchRec (??), and is returned by the TTarArchive.FindNext (1359) call.

```
TTarMode = (tmSetUid, tmSetGid, tmSaveText)
```

Table 47.3: Enumeration values for type TTarMode

Value	Explanation
tmSaveText	Bit \$200 is set.
tmSetGid	File has SetGID bit set.
tmSetUid	File has SetUID bit set.

TTarMode describes extra file modes. It is used in the Mode field of the TTarDirRec (1356) record.

```
TTarModes = Set of TTarMode = (tmSaveText, tmSetGid, tmSetUid)
```

TTarModes denotes the full set of permission bits for the file in the field Mode field of the TTarDirRec (1356) record.

```
TTarPermission = (tpReadByOwner, tpWriteByOwner, tpExecuteByOwner,
tpReadByGroup, tpWriteByGroup, tpExecuteByGroup,
tpReadByOther, tpWriteByOther, tpExecuteByOther)
```

Table 47.4: Enumeration values for type `TTarPermission`

Value	Explanation
<code>tpExecuteByGroup</code>	Group can execute the file.
<code>tpExecuteByOther</code>	Other people can execute the file.
<code>tpExecuteByOwner</code>	Owner can execute the file.
<code>tpReadByGroup</code>	Group can read the file.
<code>tpReadByOther</code>	Other people can read the file.
<code>tpReadByOwner</code>	Owner can read the file.
<code>tpWriteByGroup</code>	Group can write the file.
<code>tpWriteByOther</code>	Other people can write the file.
<code>tpWriteByOwner</code>	Owner can write the file.

`TTarPermission` denotes part of a files permission as it stored in the `.tar` archive. Each of these enumerated constants correspond with one of the permission bits from a UNIX file permission.

```
TTarPermissions = Set of TTarPermission = (tpExecuteByGroup, tpExecuteByOther
, tpExecuteByOwner,
      tpReadByGroup, tpReadByOther, tpReadByOwner
,
      tpWriteByGroup, tpWriteByOther, tpWriteByOwner)
```

`TTarPermissions` describes the complete set of permissions that a file has. It is used in the `Permissions` field of the `TTarDirRec` (1356) record.

47.4 Procedures and functions

47.4.1 ClearDirRec

Synopsis: Initialize tar archive entry.

Declaration: `procedure ClearDirRec (var DirRec: TTarDirRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClearDirRec` clears the `DirRec` entry, it basically zeroes out all fields.

See also: `TTarDirRec` (1356)

47.4.2 ConvertFilename

Synopsis: Convert filename to archive format.

Declaration: `function ConvertFilename (const Filename: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConvertFileName` converts the file name `FileName` to a format allowed by the tar archive. Basically, it converts directory specifiers to forward slashes.

47.4.3 FileTimeGMT

Synopsis: Extract filetype.

Declaration: `function FileTimeGMT(const FileName: AnsiString) : TDateTime; overload`
`function FileTimeGMT(SearchRec: TSearchRec) : TDateTime; overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileTimeGMT` returns the timestamp of a filename (`FileName` must exist) or a search rec (`TSearchRec`) to a GMT representation that can be used in a tar entry.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.4.4 PermissionString

Synopsis: Convert a set of permissions to a string.

Declaration: `function PermissionString(Permissions: TTarPermissions) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `PermissionString` can be used to convert a set of `Permissions` to a string in the same format as used by the UNIX 'ls' command.

See also: `TTarPermissions` ([1357](#))

47.5 TTarArchive

47.5.1 Description

`TTarArchive` is the class used to read and examine .tar archives. It can be constructed from a stream or from a filename. Creating an instance will not perform any operation on the stream yet.

See also: `TTarWriter` ([1360](#)), `FindNext` ([1359](#))

47.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1358	Create	Create a new instance of the archive.
1359	Destroy	Destroy <code>TTarArchive</code> instance.
1359	FindNext	Find next archive entry.
1360	GetFilePos	Return current archive position.
1360	ReadFile	Read a file from the archive.
1359	Reset	Reset archive.
1360	SetFilePos	Set position in archive.

47.5.3 TTarArchive.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the archive.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Stream: TStream); overload`
`constructor Create(const Filename: AnsiString;`
`FileMode: Word=fmOpenRead or fmShareDenyWrite)`
`; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` can be used to create a new instance of `TTarArchive` using either a `StreamTStream` (??) descendent or using a name of a file to open: `FileName`. In case of the filename, an open mode can be specified.

Errors: In case a filename is specified and the file cannot be opened, an exception will occur.

See also: `FindNext` ([1359](#))

47.5.4 `TTarArchive.Destroy`

Synopsis: Destroy `TTarArchive` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the archive stream (if it created a stream) and cleans up the `TTarArchive` instance.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([1358](#))

47.5.5 `TTarArchive.Reset`

Synopsis: Reset archive.

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` sets the archive file position on the beginning of the archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Create` ([1358](#))

47.5.6 `TTarArchive.FindNext`

Synopsis: Find next archive entry.

Declaration: `function FindNext(var DirRec: TTarDirRec) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `FindNext` positions the file pointer on the next archive entry, and returns all information about the entry in `DirRec`. It returns `True` if the operation was successful, or `False` if not (for instance, when the end of the archive was reached).

Errors: In case there are no more entries, `False` is returned.

See also: `TTarArchive.ReadFile` ([1360](#))

47.5.7 TTarArchive.ReadFile

Synopsis: Read a file from the archive.

Declaration: `procedure ReadFile(Buffer: POINTER); overload`
`procedure ReadFile(Stream: TStream); overload`
`procedure ReadFile(Filename: string); overload`
`function ReadFile : string; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadFile` can be used to read the current file in the archive. It can be called after the archive was successfully positioned on an entry in the archive. The file can be read in various ways:

- directly in a memory buffer. No checks are performed to see whether the buffer points to enough memory.
- It can be copied to a `Stream`.
- It can be copied to a file with name `FileName`.
- The file content can be copied to a string

Errors: An exception may occur if the buffer is not large enough, or when the file specified in `filename` cannot be opened.

47.5.8 TTarArchive.GetFilesPos

Synopsis: Return current archive position.

Declaration: `procedure GetFilesPos(var Current: Int64; var Size: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFilesPos` returns the position in the tar archive in `Current` and the complete archive size in `Size`.

See also: `TTarArchive.SetFilesPos` ([1360](#)), `TTarArchive.Reset` ([1359](#))

47.5.9 TTarArchive.SetFilesPos

Synopsis: Set position in archive.

Declaration: `procedure SetFilesPos(NewPos: Int64)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetFilesPos` can be used to set the absolute position in the tar archive.

See also: `TTarArchive.Reset` ([1359](#)), `TTarArchive.GetFilesPos` ([1360](#))

47.6 TTarWriter

47.6.1 Description

`TTarWriter` can be used to create `.tar` archives. It can be created using a filename, in which case the archive will be written to the filename, or it can be created using a stream, in which case the archive will be written to the stream - for instance a compression stream.

See also: `TTarArchive` ([1358](#))

47.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1363	AddDir	Add directory to archive.
1362	AddFile	Add a file to the archive.
1363	AddLink	Add hard link to archive.
1362	AddStream	Add stream contents to archive.
1362	AddString	Add string as file data.
1363	AddSymbolicLink	Add a symbolic link to the archive.
1364	AddVolumeHeader	Add volume header entry.
1361	Create	Create a new archive.
1361	Destroy	Close archive and clean up <code>TTarWriter</code> .
1364	Finalize	Finalize the archive.

47.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1365	GID	rw	Archive entry group ID.
1365	GroupName	rw	Archive entry group name.
1366	Magic	rw	Archive entry Magic constant.
1365	Mode	rw	Archive entry mode.
1364	Permissions	rw	Archive entry permissions.
1364	UID	rw	Archive entry user ID.
1365	UserName	rw	Archive entry user name.

47.6.4 TTarWriter.Create

Synopsis: Create a new archive.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TargetStream: TStream); overload`
`constructor Create(const TargetFilename: AnsiString;`
`Mode: Integer=fmCreate); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new `TTarWriter` instance. This will start a new `.tar` archive. The archive will be written to the `TargetStream` stream or to a file with name `TargetFileName`, which will be opened with filemode `Mode`.

Errors: In case `TargetFileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` ([1361](#))

47.6.5 TTarWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Close archive and clean up `TTarWriter`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` will close the archive (i.e. it writes the end-of-archive marker, if it was not yet written), and then frees the `TTarWriter` instance.

See also: `TTarWriter.Finalize` ([1364](#))

47.6.6 TTarWriter.AddFile

Synopsis: Add a file to the archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddFile(const Filename: AnsiString;
TarFilename: AnsiString='')`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFile` adds a file to the archive: the contents is read from `FileName`. Optionally, an alternative filename can be specified in `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. If it is not specified, the name will be computed from `FileName`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

Errors: If `FileName` cannot be opened, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddStream` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddString` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (1364)

47.6.7 TTarWriter.AddStream

Synopsis: Add stream contents to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddStream(Stream: TStream; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddStream` will add the contents of `Stream` to the archive. The `Stream` will not be reset: only the contents of the stream from the current position will be written to the archive. The entry will be written with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddString` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (1364)

47.6.8 TTarWriter.AddString

Synopsis: Add string as file data.

Declaration: `procedure AddString(Contents: Ansistring; TarFilename: AnsiString;
FileDateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddString` adds the string `Contents` as the data of an entry with file name `TarFileName`. This name should contain only forward slash path separators. The entry will be written with timestamp `FileDateGmt`.

The archive entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddStream` (1362), `TTarWriter.AddLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddDir` (1363), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` (1364)

47.6.9 TTarWriter.AddDir

Synopsis: Add directory to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddDir(Dirname: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime;
MaxDirSize: Int64=0)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddDir` adds a directory entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `DirName`, maximum directory size `MaxDirSize` (0 means unlimited) and timestamp `DateGmt`.

Note that this call only adds an entry for a directory to the archive: if `DirName` is an existing directory, it does not write all files in the directory to the archive.

The directory entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddStream` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddLink` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddString` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` ([1364](#))

47.6.10 TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink

Synopsis: Add a symbolic link to the archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddSymbolicLink(Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddSymbolicLink` adds a symbolic link entry to the archive, with name `FileName`, pointing to `LinkName`. The entry is written with timestamp `DateGmt`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddStream` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddLink` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddDir` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddString` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` ([1364](#))

47.6.11 TTarWriter.AddLink

Synopsis: Add hard link to archive.

Declaration: `procedure AddLink(Filename: AnsiString; Linkname: AnsiString;
DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddLink` adds a hard link entry to the archive. The entry has name `FileName`, timestamp `DateGmt` and points to `LinkName`.

The link entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddStream` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddDir` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddString` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader` ([1364](#))

47.6.12 TTarWriter.AddVolumeHeader

Synopsis: Add volume header entry.

Declaration: `procedure AddVolumeHeader (VolumeId: AnsiString; DateGmt: TDateTime)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `AddVolumeHeader` adds a volume header entry to the archive. The entry is written with name `VolumeID` and timestamp `DateGmt`.

The volume header entry is written with the current owner data and permissions.

See also: `TTarWriter.AddFile` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddStream` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddSymbolicLink` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddDir` ([1363](#)), `TTarWriter.AddString` ([1362](#)), `TTarWriter.AddLink` ([1363](#))

47.6.13 TTarWriter.Finalize

Synopsis: Finalize the archive.

Declaration: `procedure Finalize`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Finalize` writes the end-of-archive marker to the archive. No more entries can be added after `Finalize` was called.

If the `TTarWriter` instance is destroyed, it will automatically call `finalize` if `finalize` was not yet called.

See also: `TTarWriter.Destroy` ([1361](#))

47.6.14 TTarWriter.Permissions

Synopsis: Archive entry permissions.

Declaration: `Property Permissions : TTarPermissions`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Permissions` is used for the permissions field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.15 TTarWriter.UID

Synopsis: Archive entry user ID.

Declaration: `Property UID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UID` is used for the `UID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.16 TTarWriter.GID

Synopsis: Archive entry group ID.

Declaration: `Property GID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GID` is used for the `GID` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.17 TTarWriter.UserName

Synopsis: Archive entry user name.

Declaration: `Property UserName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `UserName` is used for the `UserName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.18 TTarWriter.GroupName

Synopsis: Archive entry group name.

Declaration: `Property GroupName : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `GroupName` is used for the `GroupName` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.19 TTarWriter.Mode

Synopsis: Archive entry mode.

Declaration: `Property Mode : TTarModes`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Mode` is used for the `Mode` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

47.6.20 TTarWriter.Magic

Synopsis: Archive entry Magic constant.

Declaration: `Property Magic : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Magic` is used for the `Magic` field of the archive entries.

See also: `TTarDirRec` ([1356](#))

Chapter 48

Reference for unit 'MaskUtils'

48.1 Used units

Table 48.1: Used units by unit 'MaskUtils'

Name	Page
System	??
sysutils	??

48.2 Overview

This unit provides routines to work with edit masks. For this, it provided [FormatMaskText \(1370\)](#), [FormatMaskInput \(1369\)](#) and [MaskDoFormatText \(1370\)](#) functions, as well as the underlying [TMaskUtils \(1370\)](#) class.

48.3 Constants, types and variables

48.3.1 Types

`TEditMask = type string`

`TEditMask` is a string type with different RTTI, this is used to enable registering special property handlers in an IDE.

`TMaskeditTrimType = (metTrimLeft, metTrimRight)`

Table 48.2: Enumeration values for type `TMaskeditTrimType`

Value	Explanation
<code>metTrimLeft</code>	Trim on the left (start) of the string.
<code>metTrimRight</code>	Trim on the right (end) of the string.

TMaskeditTrimType is used when calculating output strings. It is an internal type for the TMaskUtils (1370) class.

metTrimLeft Trimm on the left (start) of the string.

metTrimRight Trim on the right (end) of the string.

```
tMaskedType = (Char_Start, Char_Number, Char_NumberFixed,
  Char_NumberPlusMin, Char_Letter, Char_LetterFixed,
  Char_LetterUpCase, Char_LetterDownCase,
    Char_LetterFixedUpCase
  , Char_LetterFixedDownCase,
    Char_AlphaNum, Char_AlphaNumFixed
  , Char_AlphaNumUpCase,
    Char_AlphaNumDownCase, Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase
  ,
    Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase, Char_All, Char_AllFixed
  ,
    Char_AllUpCase, Char_AllDownCase, Char_AllFixedUpCase
  ,
    Char_AllFixedDownCase, Char_HourSeparator,
  Char_DateSeparator, Char_Stop)
```

Table 48.3: Enumeration values for type tMaskedType

Value	Explanation
Char_All	Any ASCII or space.
Char_AllDownCase	Any lowercase character.
Char_AllFixed	Any ASCII character.
Char_AllFixedDownCase	Any lowercase character, no space.
Char_AllFixedUpCase	Any uppercase character, no space.
Char_AllUpCase	Any uppercase character.
Char_AlphaNum	One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or space.
Char_AlphaNumDownCase	One of a-z, 0-9 or space.
Char_AlphaNumFixed	One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase	One of a-z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase	One of A-Z, 0-9.
Char_AlphaNumUpCase	One of A-Z, 0-9 or space.
Char_DateSeparator	The system locale date separator.
Char_HourSeparator	The system locale hour separator.
Char_Letter	One of A-Z, a-z or a space.
Char_LetterDownCase	One of a-z or space.
Char_LetterFixed	One of A-Z, a-z.
Char_LetterFixedDownCase	One of a-z.
Char_LetterFixedUpCase	One of A-Z.
Char_LetterUpCase	One of A-Z or space.
Char_Number	Numerical character or space.
Char_NumberFixed	Numerical character.
Char_NumberPlusMin	Numerical character, plus or minus or space.
Char_Start	Sentinel value: start of enumerate.
Char_Stop	Sentinel value: end of enumerate.

`tMaskedType` is used internally in `TMaskUtils` (1370) to describe the mask characters.

Char_start Sentinel value: start of enumerate.

Char_Number Numerical character or space.

Char_NumberFixed Numerical character.

Char_NumberPlusMin Numerical character, plus or minus or space.

Char_Letter One of A-Z, a-z or a space.

Char_LetterFixed One of A-Z, a-z.

Char_LetterUpCase One of A-Z or space.

Char_LetterDownCase One of a-z or space.

Char_LetterFixedUpCase One of A-Z.

Char_LetterFixedUpCase One of A-Z.

Char_LetterFixedDownCase One of a-z.

Char_AlphaNum One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumFixed One of A-Z, a-z, 0-9.

Char_AlphaNumUpCase One of A-Z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumDownCase One of a-z, 0-9 or space.

Char_AlphaNumFixedUpCase One of A-Z, 0-9.

Char_AlphaNumFixedDownCase One of a-z, 0-9.

Char_All Any ASCII or space.

Char_AllFixed Any ASCII character.

Char_AllUpCase Any uppercase character.

Char_AllDownCase Any lowercase character.

Char_AllFixedUpCase Any uppercase character, no space.

Char_AllFixedDownCase Any lowercase character, no space.

Char_HourSeparator The system locale hour separator.

Char_DateSeparator The system locale date separator.

48.4 Procedures and functions

48.4.1 FormatMaskInput

Synopsis: Return an input mask text based on the edit mask.

Declaration: `function FormatMaskInput(const EditMask: string) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatMaskInput` returns a text which corresponds to an empty value for `EditMask`. This can e.g. be displayed in an edit box, when the user has not yet typed anything.

See also: `FormatMaskText` (1370), `MaskDoFormatText` (1370), `TMaskUtils` (1370), `TMaskUtils.InputMask` (1372)

48.4.2 FormatMaskText

Synopsis: Format a text according to a given mask.

Declaration: `function FormatMaskText(const EditMask: string; const AValue: string)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatMaskText` formats `aValue` according to the mask placeholders found in `EditMask` and returns the resulting string. It replaces space characters in the format mask with the actual space character. This function uses an `TMaskUtils` (1370) instance to do the actual work.

Errors: None.

See also: `FormatMaskInput` (1369), `MaskDoFormatText` (1370), `TMaskUtils` (1370), `TMaskUtils.ApplyMaskToText` (1370), `TMaskUtils.GetTextWithoutSpaceChar` (1370)

48.4.3 MaskDoFormatText

Synopsis: Return an input mask text without literals or space char.

Declaration: `function MaskDoFormatText(const EditMask: string; const AValue: string;
ASpaceChar: char) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `MaskDoFormatText` formats the `aValue` string using `EditMask`, but enforces the 2d (space char is `aSpaceChar`) and 3d (force use of literals) fields of `EditMask`.

See also: `FormatMaskInput` (1369), `FormatMaskText` (1370), `TMaskUtils` (1370), `TMaskUtils.InputMask` (1372)

48.5 TMaskUtils

48.5.1 Description

`TEditMask` can be used to work with edit masks. It is used in the `FormatMaskInput` (1369), `FormatMaskText` (1370) and `MaskDoFormatText` (1370) calls to do the actual work.

In general, the work is done by setting the `Mask` (1371) and `Values` (1371) properties, and reading the `InputMask` (1371) property or calling one of `ValidateInput` (1371) or `TryValidateInput` (1371).

See also: `Mask` (1371), `Values` (1371), `InputMask` (1371), `ValidateInput` (1371), `TryValidateInput` (1371)

48.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1371	<code>TryValidateInput</code>	
1371	<code>ValidateInput</code>	Check that the <code>Value</code> text is valid for the given mask.

48.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1372	<code>InputMask</code>	r	Text to be used as input mask.
1371	<code>Mask</code>	rw	The edit mask to use.
1371	<code>Value</code>	rw	(input) String value to validate.

48.5.4 TMaskUtils.ValidateInput

Synopsis: Check that the `Value` text is valid for the given mask.

Declaration: `function ValidateInput : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ValidateInput` checks that the text in `Value` (1371) satisfies the given mask in `Mask` (1371) and returns the value with the mask applied to it. If `Value` does not satisfy the mask, an exception is raised. If you don't want an exception, use `TryValidateInput` (1371) instead.

Errors: If `Value` does not satisfy the mask, an `Exception` (1367) is raised.

See also: `TryValidateInput` (1371), `Value` (1371), `Mask` (1371), `Exception` (1367)

48.5.5 TMaskUtils.TryValidateInput

Synopsis:

Declaration: `function TryValidateInput(out ValidatedString: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TryValidateInput` checks that the text in `Value` (1371) satisfies the given mask in `Mask` (1371) and returns `True` if it does, `False` otherwise. It returns `Value` with the mask applied to it in `ValidatedString`.

See also: `ValidateInput` (1371), `Value` (1371), `Mask` (1371)

48.5.6 TMaskUtils.Mask

Synopsis: The edit mask to use.

Declaration: `Property Mask : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Mask` is the edit mask which must be used when validating `Value` (1371).

See also: `Value` (1371), `InputMask` (1372)

48.5.7 TMaskUtils.Value

Synopsis: (input) String value to validate.

Declaration: `Property Value : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Value` is the string value which is being validated with `Mask` (1371).

See also: `Mask` (1371), `InputMask` (1372)

48.5.8 TMaskUtils.InputMask

Synopsis: Text to be used as input mask.

Declaration: `Property InputMask : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `InputMask` is a text that can be used as text in an edit value when there is no input: this is the input mask.

See also: `Mask` ([1371](#)), `Value` ([1371](#))

Chapter 49

Reference for unit 'memds'

49.1 Used units

Table 49.1: Used units by unit 'memds'

Name	Page
Classes	??
DB	440
System	??
sysutils	??
Types	??

49.2 Overview

memds.pp contains classes, types, and routines needed to implement TMemDataset, an in-memory dataset. Ideas implemented in TMemDataset were taken from the THKMemTab component by Harri Kasulke. (Hamburg/Germany)

49.3 Constants, types and variables

49.3.1 Constants

```
MarkerSize = SizeOf(Integer)
```

MarkerSize is a constant that indicates the size for markers used in TMemDataset. Markers are read from and written to the internal TMemoryStream for the in-memory dataset, and separates field definitions from the record data in the stream. A marker is also used to indicate the end of the stream.

MarkerSize is defined as the size for the Integer data type.

```
smData = 2
```

smData is an Integer constant that contains the marker used to signify the start of record data for an in-memory dataset. smData is used in TMemDataset methods which read or write record values using the stream for the in-memory dataset. The value for smData is 2.

`smEOF = 0`

`smEOF` is an Integer constant that contains the marker used as the End-of-File marker for an in-memory dataset. `smEOF` is used in `TMemDataset` methods which read or write data using a file or a stream. The value for `smEOF` is 0 (zero).

`smFieldDefs = 1`

`smFieldDefs` is an Integer constant that contains the marker used to signify the start of field definitions for an in-memory dataset. `smFieldDefs` is used in `TMemDataset` methods which read or write field definitions for the in-memory dataset. The value for `smFieldDefs` is 1.

49.4 MDSError

49.4.1 Description

`MDSError` is an Exception type raised when an error occurs while reading or writing values for an in-memory dataset. `MDSError` is raised in the `TMemDataset.RaiseError` method and uses messages defined in resource strings in the implementation for the unit, including:

- Fieldtype of Field "%s" not supported
- Bookmark %d not found
- Error in data stream at position %d
- Wrong data stream marker at position %d. Got %d, expected %d'
- Filename must not be empty

An `MDSError` exception will be raised when a field definition uses a data type not supported in `TMemDataset`. The exception will be raised for the following field types:

- `ftADT`
- `ftCursor`
- `ftDataSet`
- `ftDBaseOle`
- `ftFmtMemo`
- `ftGraphic`
- `ftIDispatch`
- `ftInterface`
- `ftOraBlob`
- `ftOraClob`
- `ftParadoxOle`
- `ftReference`
- `ftTimeStamp`

- ftTypedBinary
- ftVariant
- ftUnknown

See also: TMemDataset.FieldDefs ([1384](#)), TField.DataType ([564](#))

49.5 TMemDataset

49.5.1 Description

TMemDataset is a TDataset descendant which implements an in-memory dataset. TMemDataset is a performant, single user dataset for non-mission critical use cases that do not require transactions. All record and field processing is done in memory; no data is read from or written to disk unless explicitly requested.

TMemDataset implements common facilities defined in the TDataset ancestor class. This includes using the FieldDefs property to define the structure for the dataset. Most (but not all) field types are supported in TMemDataset, including:

- ftString
- ftGuid
- ftFixedChar
- ftBoolean
- ftCurrency
- ftFloat
- ftBCD
- ftLargeInt
- ftSmallInt
- ftWord
- ftInteger
- ftAutoInc (behave like ftInteger i.e. no auto-increment functionality)
- ftDateTime
- ftDate
- ftTime
- ftFmtBCD
- ftWideString
- ftFixedWideChar
- ftBytes
- ftVarBytes

- `ftBlob`
- `ftMemo`
- `ftWideMemo`

TMemDataset implements common data manipulation methods such as: Append, AppendRecord, Insert, InsertRecord, Delete, Clear, and Refresh. TMemDataset implements Bookmarks and common navigation methods like: First, Next, Prior, Last, Locate, BOF, and EOF. Methods are provided that allow loading and saving both structure and data from a file, a stream, or another TDataset descendent.

TMemDataset provides methods to filter records, but they are implemented in a different manner than in TDataset. The Filter property is ignored; use the OnFilterRecord method and the Filtered property for this functionality.

One notable missing feature is Indexes. Index definitions are not implemented in TMemDataset.

TMemDataset uses ideas taken from the THKMemTab component by Harri Kasulke. (Hamburg/Germany)

See also: TDataset ([498](#))

49.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1378	BookmarkValid	Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid.
1380	Clear	Clears the content in the in-memory dataset.
1378	CompareBookmarks	Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.
1382	CopyFromDataset	Loads field definitions and optional data from the specified TDataset.
1377	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1378	CreateBlobStream	Creates a stream used to read or write Blob field data in the in-memory dataset.
1379	CreateTable	Creates the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset.
1380	DataSize	Size of the internal TMemoryStream used in the in-memory dataset.
1377	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1381	LoadFromFile	Loads the content for the dataset from the specified file name.
1381	LoadFromStream	Loads the content for the dataset from the specified stream.
1379	Locate	Locates a record with the specified values in the in-memory dataset.
1379	Lookup	Searches for a record with the specified values, and returns a list of values.
1380	SaveToFile	Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified file name.
1381	SaveToStream	Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified stream.

49.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1384	Active		Indicates if the in-memory dataset is Active.
1386	AfterCancel		
1385	AfterClose		
1386	AfterDelete		
1385	AfterEdit		
1385	AfterInsert		
1384	AfterOpen		
1386	AfterPost		
1387	AfterScroll		
1386	BeforeCancel		
1385	BeforeClose		
1386	BeforeDelete		
1385	BeforeEdit		
1385	BeforeInsert		
1384	BeforeOpen		
1386	BeforePost		
1387	BeforeScroll		
1384	FieldDefs		Field definitions for the in-memory dataset.
1383	FileModified	r	Indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified.
1383	FileName	rw	File name used to read or write field definitions and optional data.
1383	Filter		Filter for the dataset.
1384	Filtered		Indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using OnFilterRecord.
1387	OnDeleteError		
1387	OnEditError		
1388	OnFilterRecord		Event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset.
1387	OnNewRecord		
1388	OnPostError		

49.5.4 TMemDataset.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create is the overridden constructor for the class instance. Create calls the inherited constructor.

Create allocates resources required for internal member variables in the class, such as the TMemoryStream that contains the field definitions and record data and the list used to store Blob data. Other internal member variables are set to their default values. Creates sets the default values for the following published properties:

BookmarkSize `SizeOf(LongInt)`

49.5.5 TMemDataset.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the overridden destructor for the class instance. Destroy frees resources allocated to internal member variables in the class. The list used for Blob data is cleared and freed. Destroy calls the inherited destructor, and frees the internal memory stream for the class.

49.5.6 TMemDataset.BookmarkValid

Synopsis: Determines if the specified Bookmark is valid.

Declaration: `function BookmarkValid(ABookmark: TBookMark) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: BookmarkValid is an overridden Boolean function used to determine if the specified Bookmark is valid. BookmarkValid implements the virtual method defined in the ancestor class.

In TMemDataset, a Bookmark is considered to be valid when it contains an Integer value that represents a record in the in-memory dataset. Bookmarks are zero-based and must be less than the record count for dataset.

The return value is False when ABookmark is unassigned (contains Nil), or True when the preceding conditions are satisfied.

49.5.7 TMemDataset.CompareBookmarks

Synopsis: Gets the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

Declaration: `function CompareBookmarks(Bookmark1: TBookMark; Bookmark2: TBookMark) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: CompareBookmarks is an overridden LongInt function which determines the relative order for the specified Bookmarks.

49.5.8 TMemDataset.CreateBlobStream

Synopsis: Creates a stream used to read or write Blob field data in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function CreateBlobStream(Field: TField; Mode: TBlobStreamMode) : TStream; override`

Visibility: public

Description: CreateBlobStream is an overridden TStream function which creates a TMDSBlobStream for the specified field with the read/write permissions in Mode. CreateBlobStream is called when the specified Field needs to read or write its value (for TBlobField or descendent field types).

Mode indicates the permissions need for the blob stream. When Mode contains bmWrite, the value in the State property must indicate that the editing operation is enabled. An exception is raised using DatabaseErrorFmt if State contains a value other than: dsEdit, dsInsert, dsFilter, or dsCalcFields.

Similarly, the Field must allow editing when not in dsSetKey or dsFilter state. An exception is raised using DatabaseErrorFmt if Field has its ReadOnly property set.

The return value contains the TMDSBlobStream instance created using Field and Mode as arguments. Please note that the Blob stream is not saved as part of the data in the in-memory dataset; in its dynamically created and freed as needed.

See also: TFieldDef.DataType ([582](#)), TDataset.State ([526](#)), TField.ReadOnly ([575](#))

49.5.9 TMemDataset.Locate

Synopsis: Locates a record with the specified values in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function Locate(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
Options: TLocateOptions) : Boolean; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Locate is an overridden Boolean function used to locate a record with the specified values in the specified fields. LocateOptions indicates if case-insensitivity or partial keys searches are used in the method. Locate calls the inherited method to ensure that the dataset is bi-directional. Locate calls CheckActive to ensure that the dataset has been opened prior to searching for values in record data. Locate calls MDSLlocateRecord to get the return value for the method. When the return value is True, the current record for the dataset is updated and Resync is called to update the active record buffer.

See also: TDataset.Locate ([515](#)), TLocateOption ([452](#)), TLocateOptions ([452](#)), TDataset.Resync ([518](#))

49.5.10 TMemDataset.Lookup

Synopsis: Searches for a record with the specified values, and returns a list of values.

Declaration: `function Lookup(const KeyFields: string; const KeyValues: Variant;
const ResultFields: string) : Variant; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Lookup is an overridden Variant function used to search for the first record that matches the specified values. KeyFields is a comma-delimited list of field names to examine in the method. KeyValues is a variant array with values for the specified field names. ResultFields is a comma-delimited list of field names to include in the return values for the method.

Lookup calls MDSLlocateRecord to search for the specified values in the record data for the in-memory dataset. If a record is located that matches the search criteria, calculated or lookup fields in the dataset are recalculated. The return value is a variant array with values for the fields specified in ResultFields. The return value is set to Null if a record with the specified search values is not found.

Please note that Lookup does not change the active record in the dataset.

For example:

```
var AResultVals: Variant;  
    AResultVals := AMemDS.Lookup('lastname, firstname', VarArrayCreate('Franks', 'Pete'))
```

See also: TMemDataset.Locate ([1379](#))

49.5.11 TMemDataset.CreateTable

Synopsis: Creates the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `procedure CreateTable`

Visibility: public

Description: CreateTable is used to create the internal storage for records in the in-memory dataset. CreateTable calls CheckInactive to ensure that the dataset is not already opened or Active. CreateTable calls Clear to remove any existing record data in the in-memory dataset. Field definitions are retained. CreateTable calls CalcRecordLayout to determine the record size including Bookmark and BookmarkFlag values. Sets the internal TableIsCreated member to True.

See also: TDataset.Active ([528](#)), TMemDataset.Clear ([1380](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([523](#)), CreateTable ([1379](#))

49.5.12 TMemDataset.DataSize

Synopsis: Size of the internal TMemoryStream used in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `function DataSize : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: DataSize is an Integer function used to get the size of the internal stream in the in-memory dataset.

49.5.13 TMemDataset.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the content in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `procedure Clear(ClearDefs: Boolean)
procedure Clear`

Visibility: public

Description: Clear is an overloaded procedure used to clear record data, Blob streams, and optionally Field definitions in the in-memory dataset. Clear removes any Blob streams allocated for memo fields in the dataset. Clear removes any memory allocated to the internal TMemoryStream used for record data in the dataset. If the dataset is Active, the Resync method is called to refresh values in the active record buffer.

ClearDefs indicates if the FieldDefs for the dataset are also cleared. When ClearDefs is True, the Close method is called to deactivate the dataset. All field definitions in FieldDefs are removed. The internal member TableIsCreated is set to False.

See also: TDataset.Active ([528](#)), TDataset.Close ([507](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([523](#))

49.5.14 TMemDataset.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified file name.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string)
procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string; SaveData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: SaveToFile is an overloaded procedure used to store field definitions and optional record data in the dataset to the specified file name. AFileName is the file name on the local file system used to store values from the dataset. SaveData indicates if record data is included in the values stored to the file. When SaveData contains False, only the field definitions for the dataset are stored in the file.

AFileName must contain a file name for the local file system. SaveToFile calls RaiseError to raise an exception if the value in AFileName is an empty string (""). SaveToFile creates a TFileStream for the specified file name, and calls SaveToStream to store the content from the dataset.

SaveToFile reimplements the method defined in the ancestor class.

49.5.15 TMemDataset.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Saves field definitions and optional record data to the specified stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(F: TStream)`
`procedure SaveToStream(F: TStream; SaveData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` is used to save field definitions and optional record data for the in-memory dataset to the specified stream. `SaveToStream` calls `SaveFieldDefsToStream` to save the field definitions in `FieldDefs` to the stream specified in `F`.

`SaveData` indicates if record data is included in the values written to the stream. When `SaveData` contains `True`, the `SaveDataToStream` method is called to save record data to the stream. No record data is written when `SaveData` is `False`. `SaveToStream` calls `WriteMarker` to write the `smEOF` marker value that signifies the end of record data in the stream.

Use `LoadFromStream` to load field definitions and record data for the in-memory dataset.

See also: `TMemDataset.LoadFromStream` ([1381](#))

49.5.16 TMemDataset.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the content for the dataset from the specified stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(F: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` is used to load the content for the dataset from the specified stream. `F` is a `TStream` descendent that is used to load the field definitions and record data for the in-memory dataset. `LoadFromStream` calls `Close` to ensure that the dataset saves its existing content (when `FileName` has been assigned) and clears any default `Fields` created when the dataset was opened.

`LoadFromStream` calls `ReadFieldDefsFromStream` to load field definitions from the stream in `F`. `CreateTable` is called to initialize storage for record data in the dataset. `LoadDataFromStream` is called to load any record data present in the stream. `CheckMarker` is called to ensure that the stream is positioned on the `smEOF` marker that signals the end of record data in the stream. An exception is raised if the stream was truncated or does not contain the value `smEOF` at the current position in the stream. `LoadFromStream` sets the value in the `FileModified` property to `False`.

Use `SaveToStream` to write the field definitions and record data in the dataset to a stream.

See also: `TMemDataset.SaveToStream` ([1381](#))

49.5.17 TMemDataset.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads the content for the dataset from the specified file name.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` is used to load the content for the dataset from the specified file name. `LoadFromFile` creates a `TFileStream` for the file name specified in `AFileName`. The file stream is passed to `LoadFromStream` to load the contents of the file into the in-memory dataset. The file stream is freed prior to exiting from the method.

Use `SaveToFile` to save the contents of an in-memory dataset to a file on the local file system.

See also: `TMemDataset.LoadFromStream` ([1381](#)), `TMemDataset.SaveToFile` ([1380](#))

49.5.18 TMemDataset.CopyFromDataset

Synopsis: Loads field definitions and optional data from the specified TDataset.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFromDataset (DataSet: TDataSet)`
`procedure CopyFromDataset (DataSet: TDataSet; CopyData: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: CopyFromDataset is used to load field definitions and optional record data from the specified TDataset descendent. Dataset contains the TDataset used as the source for the structure and optional record data loaded in the method. CopyData indicates if record data is loaded in the method. When CopyData contains False, only the structure from Dataset is loaded in method.

CopyFromDataset removes any existing field definitions in FieldDefs, and any record data stored in the in-memory dataset. CopyFromDataset uses the Fields in the DataSet argument to determine the new structure for the in-memory dataset. This is done because the visible Fields in the dataset may differ from the actual field definitions. CopyFromDataset creates and adds a TFieldDef instance to FieldsDefs for each of the Fields in DataSet.

CopyFromDataset calls CreateTable to allocated record storage for the new field definitions in FieldDefs.

When CopyData contains True, record data from the DataSet argument is added to the in-memory dataset. When CopyData contains False, record data in the DataSet argument is ignored.

The Open method is called to activate both datasets. DisableControls is called for both TDatasets to prevent updates during record navigation. All records in DataSet are loaded into the in-memory dataset by calling Append and setting the value for each of the field definitions in the target. Field definitions with the following data types are loaded using the native type for the field:

- ftFixedChar
- ftString
- ftBoolean
- ftFloat
- ftLargeInt
- ftSmallInt
- ftInteger
- ftDate
- ftTime
- ftDateTime

All other field values are loaded using their AsString representation.

CopyFromDataset calls Post after adding each record in the dataset. If an exception occurs, the Cancel method is called and the exception is re-raised.

CopyFromDataset calls the EnableControls method in both datasets when record data has been loaded in the method. Please note that the record position in the DataSet argument is restored after loading record data.

See also: TDataset.Fields ([526](#)), TDataset.FieldDefs ([523](#)), TMemDataset.CreateTable ([1379](#)), TDataset.Append ([505](#)), TDataset.Post ([517](#))

49.5.19 TMemDataset.FileModified

Synopsis: Indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified.

Declaration: `Property FileModified : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: FileModified is a read-only Boolean property which indicates if the in-memory dataset has been modified. The value in FileModified is updated in methods that write record buffers to the internal memory stream for the dataset, such as:

- MDSWriteRecord
- MDSAppendRecord
- InternalDelete

The value in FileModified is also updated in methods called when opening or closing the in-memory dataset, such as:

- LoadFromStream
- SaveDataToStream
- InternalClose

49.5.20 TMemDataset.Filter

Synopsis: Filter for the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Filter : ; unimplemented;`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: Filter is not implemented in TMemDataset. Values assigned to the Filter property are silently discarded. Use OnFilterRecord and Filtered instead.

See also: TMemDataset.Filtered ([1384](#)), TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord ([1388](#))

49.5.21 TMemDataset.FileName

Synopsis: File name used to read or write field definitions and optional data.

Declaration: `Property FileName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: FileName is a String property that specifies the file used to load field definitions and optional data when the dataset is opened. When FileName is assigned, and the dataset has been modified, it indicates the file name used to store field definitions and data in the local file system.

49.5.22 TMemDataset.Filtered

Synopsis: Indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using OnFilterRecord.

Declaration: `Property Filtered :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Filtered is a published Boolean property that indicates if records in the dataset are filtered using the OnFilterRecord event handler. Filtered is used methods that retrieve record buffers or perform record searches, and determines if records are visible in the dataset.

When Filtered contains True, the MDSFilterRecord method is called to perform filtering for records in the dataset. Unlike the ancestor class, the Filter property is not used in TMemDataset. Values assigned to the Filter property are silently discarded. Use the OnFilterRecord event handler to implement comparisons need to determine record visibility.

See also: TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord ([1388](#)), TDataset.Filter ([527](#))

49.5.23 TMemDataset.Active

Synopsis: Indicates if the in-memory dataset is Active.

Declaration: `Property Active :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.24 TMemDataset.FieldDefs

Synopsis: Field definitions for the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.25 TMemDataset.BeforeOpen

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.26 TMemDataset.AfterOpen

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.27 TMemDataset.BeforeClose

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.28 TMemDataset.AfterClose

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.29 TMemDataset.BeforeInsert

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.30 TMemDataset.AfterInsert

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.31 TMemDataset.BeforeEdit

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.32 TMemDataset.AfterEdit

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.33 TMemDataset.BeforePost

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforePost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.34 TMemDataset.AfterPost

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterPost` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.35 TMemDataset.BeforeCancel

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.36 TMemDataset.AfterCancel

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterCancel` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.37 TMemDataset.BeforeDelete

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.38 TMemDataset.AfterDelete

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterDelete` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.39 TMemDataset.BeforeScroll

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property BeforeScroll` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.40 TMemDataset.AfterScroll

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property AfterScroll` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.41 TMemDataset.OnDeleteError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnDeleteError` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.42 TMemDataset.OnEditError

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnEditError` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description:

See also: (??)

49.5.43 TMemDataset.OnNewRecord

Synopsis:

Declaration: `Property OnNewRecord` :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.44 TMemDataset.OnPostError

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

49.5.45 TMemDataset.OnFilterRecord

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset.

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: OnFilterRecord is a published TFilterRecordEvent property which provides the event handler signalled to include or exclude records in the in-memory dataset. OnFilterRecord provides a way for the application to decide whether a record is visible in the dataset on a record-by-record basis. Applications must assign a procedure to the event handler that performs any comparison needed to determine record visibility. The procedure must set the value in Accept to True to make the record visible in the in-memory dataset.

Set the Filtered property to True to enable the OnFilterRecord event handler during record navigation.

OnFilterRecord is used as an alternative filtering mechanism; TMemDataset does not implement the Filter property. Values assigned to the Filter property are silently discarded.

See also: TDataSet.OnFilterRecord ([536](#)), TFilterRecordEvent ([451](#)), TDataSet.Filtered ([527](#)), TDataSet.Resync ([518](#))

Chapter 50

Reference for unit 'MSSQLConn'

50.1 Used units

Table 50.1: Used units by unit 'MSSQLConn'

Name	Page
BufDataset	213
Classes	??
DB	440
dblib	??
SQLDB	1492
System	??
sysutils	??

50.2 Overview

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases. Needs FreeTDS dblib library.

50.3 Constants, types and variables

50.3.1 Variables

`DBLibLibraryName : string = DBLIBDLL`

`DBLibLibraryName` is the name of the library to load when dynamically loading support for MS SQL or Sybase. It must be set before the first connection is made.

50.4 EMSSQLDatabaseError

50.4.1 Description

Sybase/MS SQL Server specific error.

50.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1390	DBErrorCode	r	Sybase/MS SQL Server error code.

50.4.3 EMSSQLDatabaseError.DBErrorCode

Synopsis: Sybase/MS SQL Server error code.

Declaration: `Property DBErrorCode : Integer; deprecated;`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Error code as generated by the database server.

50.5 TMSSQLConnection

50.5.1 Description

Connector to Microsoft SQL Server databases.

Requirements:

MS SQL Server Client Library is required (ntwdblib.dll)

- or -

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)
[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 1433 or instance = ... (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

Known problems:

- CHAR/VARCHAR data truncated to column length when encoding to UTF-8 (use NCHAR/NVARCHAR instead or CAST char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar)

- Multiple result sets (MARS) are not supported (for example when SP returns more than 1 result set only 1st is processed)

- DB-Library error 10038 "Results Pending": set TSQLQuery.PacketRecords=-1 to fetch all pending rows

- BLOB data (IMAGE/TEXT columns) larger than 16MB are truncated to 16MB: (set TMSSQL-Connection.Params: 'TEXTSIZE=2147483647' or execute 'SET TEXTSIZE 2147483647')

50.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1391	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TMSSQLConnection</code> .
1391	CreateDB	Create a new MS SQL database.
1392	DropDB	Drop a MS SQL database.
1391	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.

50.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1393	CharSet		
1393	Connected		Is the connection active.
1394	DatabaseName		
1393	HostName		Host and optionally port or instance.
1394	KeepConnection		Keep connection alive.
1394	LoginPrompt		Show login prompt.
1395	OnLogin		Called when logging in.
1394	Params		
1392	Password		
1393	Role		Role for user.
1392	Transaction		Default transaction.
1392	UserName		

50.5.4 `TMSSQLConnection.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TMSSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the default constructor for the `TMSSQLConnection` class. It calls the inherited constructor and sets some defaults.

50.5.5 `TMSSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo`

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` overrides `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([1524](#)) to return the relevant information for the Interbase/Firebird connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo` ([1524](#)), `TConnInfoType` ([1502](#))

50.5.6 `TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB`

Synopsis: Create a new MS SQL database.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDB` creates a database on the server with given `DatabaseName`.

See also: `TMSSQLConnection.DropDB` ([1392](#))

50.5.7 `TMSSQLConnection.DropDB`

Synopsis: Drop a MS SQL database.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DropDB` drops a database on the server with given `DatabaseName`

See also: `TMSSQLConnection.CreateDB` ([1391](#))

50.5.8 `TMSSQLConnection.Password`

Declaration: `Property Password :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

50.5.9 `TMSSQLConnection.Transaction`

Synopsis: Default transaction.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Transaction` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.Transaction` ([1389](#))

See also: `TSQLConnection.Transaction` ([1389](#))

50.5.10 `TMSSQLConnection.UserName`

Declaration: `Property UserName :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: if you don't enter a `UserName` and `Password`, the connector will try to use Trusted Authentication/SSPI (on Windows only).

50.5.11 TMSSQLConnection.CharSet

Declaration: `Property CharSet :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: Character Set - if you use Microsoft DB-Lib and set to 'UTF-8' then char/varchar fields will be UTF8Encoded/Decoded.

If you use FreeTDS DB-Lib, then you must compile with iconv support (requires libiconv2.dll) or cast char/varchar to nchar/nvarchar in SELECTs.

50.5.12 TMSSQLConnection.HostName

Synopsis: Host and optionally port or instance.

Declaration: `Property HostName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `TMSSQLConnection` specific: you can specify an instance or a port after the host name itself.

Instance should be specified with a backslash e.g.: 127.0.0.1\SQLEXPRESS. Port should be specified with a colon, e.g. BIGBADSERVER:1433

See <http://www.freetds.org/userguide/PortOverride.html>

50.5.13 TMSSQLConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is the connection active.

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Connected` can be set to `True` to activate the connection, or to `False` to close the connection.

50.5.14 TMSSQLConnection.Role

Synopsis: Role for user.

Declaration: `Property Role :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Role` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.Role` ([1389](#))

50.5.15 TMSSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Declaration: Property DatabaseName :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: TMSSQLConnection specific: the master database should always exist on a server.

50.5.16 TMSSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Keep connection alive.

Declaration: Property KeepConnection :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: KeepConnection is redeclared from TSQLConnection.KeepConnection ([1389](#))

See also: TSQLConnection.KeepConnection ([1389](#))

50.5.17 TMSSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Show login prompt.

Declaration: Property LoginPrompt :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: LoginPrompt is redeclared from TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt ([1389](#))

See also: TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt ([1389](#))

50.5.18 TMSSQLConnection.Params

Declaration: Property Params :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: TMSSQLConnection specific:

set "AutoCommit=true" if you don't want to explicitly commit/rollback transactions

set "TextSize=16777216" - to set maximum size of blob/text/image data returned. Otherwise, these large fields may be cut off when retrieving/setting data.

50.5.19 TMSSQLConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Called when logging in.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` is redeclared from `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([1389](#))

See also: `TSQLConnection.OnLogin` ([1389](#))

50.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef

50.6.1 Description

Describes the MS SQL connection properties for `TSQLConnector` ([1389](#))

See also: `TMSSQLConnection` ([1390](#)), `TSQLConnector` ([1389](#))

50.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1395	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Connection class to use.
1396	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default name of the MSSQL client library.
1396	<code>Description</code>	Short description of connection.
1396	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Actually loaded library name.
1396	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when loading MS-SQL support.
1395	<code>TypeName</code>	Connection type name.
1396	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return Function to call when unloading MS-SQL support.

50.6.3 TMSSQLConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Connection type name.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; override`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `TypeName` returns the unique name of the MS-SQL connection.

50.6.4 TMSSQLConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Connection class to use.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; override`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ConnectionClass` returns `TMSSQLConnection` ([1390](#))

See also: `TMSSQLConnection` ([1390](#))

50.6.5 TMSSQLConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Short description of connection.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` describes the MS SQL connector type.

50.6.6 TMSSQLConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default name of the MSSQL client library.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` returns the library name to use when loading the MSSQL client library.

50.6.7 TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when loading MS-SQL support.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to dynamically load MS-SQL support.

50.6.8 TMSSQLConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return Function to call when unloading MS-SQL support.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` is used by the connector logic to get the function to unload MS-SQL support.

50.6.9 TMSSQLConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Actually loaded library name.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` returns the actually loaded library name.

See also: `DefaultLibraryName` ([1396](#))

50.7 TSybaseConnection

50.7.1 Description

Connector to Sybase Adaptive Server Enterprise (ASE) database servers.

Requirements:

FreeTDS (dblib.dll)

Older FreeTDS libraries may require freetds.conf: (<http://www.freetds.org/userguide/freetdsconf.htm>)

[global]

tds version = 7.1

client charset = UTF-8

port = 5000 (optional)

dump file = freetds.log (optional)

text size = 2147483647 (optional)

50.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1397	Create	Create a Sybase database connection.

50.7.3 TSybaseConnection.Create

Synopsis: Create a Sybase database connection.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` is the default constructor for the `TSybaseConnection` class. It calls the inherited constructor and sets some defaults.

50.8 TSybaseConnectionDef

50.8.1 Description

Describes the MS SQL connection properties for `TSQLConnector` ([1389](#))

See also: `TSybaseConnection` ([1397](#)), `TSQLConnector` ([1389](#))

50.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1398	ConnectionClass	Connection class to use.
1398	Description	Short description of connection.
1397	TypeName	Connection type name.

50.8.3 TSybaseConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Connection type name.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeName` returns the unique name of the Sybase connection.

50.8.4 TSybaseConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Connection class to use.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConnectionClass` returns `TSybaseConnection` ([1397](#))

See also: `TSybaseConnection` ([1397](#))

50.8.5 TSybaseConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: Short description of connection.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; override`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` describes the Sybase connector type.

Chapter 51

Reference for unit 'nullstream'

51.1 Used units

Table 51.1: Used units by unit 'nullstream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

51.2 Overview

The `nullstream` unit implements `TNullStream` ([1399](#)), a stream which acts more or less as the `/dev/null` device on unix: all read and write operations will succeed, but the data is discarded on write, or null bytes are read.

51.3 `ENullStreamError`

51.3.1 Description

`ENullStreamError` is the exception raised when `TNullStream.Seek` ([1400](#)) results in an invalid position.

See also: `TNullStream.Seek` ([1400](#))

51.4 `TNullStream`

51.4.1 Description

`TNullStream` discards any data written to it (but keeps a virtual size) and returns 0 bytes when read from. It emulates a `#rtl.classes.TMemoryStream` ([??](#)): When writing to the stream, the size is increased as needed. When reading, the maximum number of returned bytes is limited to the size of the stream.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` ([1400](#)), `TNullStream.Write` ([1400](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` ([??](#))

51.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1401	Create	Create a new instance.
1400	Read	Read null bytes from the stream.
1400	Seek	Set current position in the stream.
1400	Write	Write to stream.

51.4.3 TNullStream.Read

Synopsis: Read null bytes from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads `Count` null bytes from the stream. `Count` can be at most `Size`. The `Buffer` will be filled with null bytes, effectively zeroing out the memory. The size can be increased using `Write` or by explicitly setting `Size`.

See also: `TNullStream.Write` ([1400](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` (??)

51.4.4 TNullStream.Write

Synopsis: Write to stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` simulates a write operation: no data is actually written from `Buffer`, but the size of the stream is enlarged if the amount of bytes `Count` and current position in the stream make this necessary.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` ([1400](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size` (??)

51.4.5 TNullStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the current position in the stream. It simulates this operation by keeping a "virtual" position. See `#rtl.classes.TStream.Seek` (??) for more info about the arguments.

Errors: If the requested operation would cause the position to fall outside of the allowed range (0 to `Size`) then a `ENullStreamError` ([1399](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TNullStream.Read` ([1400](#)), `TNullStream.Write` ([1400](#)), `#rtl.classes.TStream.Seek` (??)

51.4.6 TNullStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes the size and position of the stream to zero.

See also: `#rtl.classes.TStream.Position (??)`, `#rtl.classes.TStream.Size (??)`

Chapter 52

Reference for unit 'pascodegen'

52.1 Used units

Table 52.1: Used units by unit 'pascodegen'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

52.2 Overview

`pascodegen` is a unit with a class that can be used to generate pascal code. it offers the `TPascalCodeGenerator` ([1403](#)) class which has some utility methods for indenting code, offers logging and automatic handling of code sections or blocks (variable, constant etc.) The resulting code is available in a stringlist.

52.3 Constants, types and variables

52.3.1 Types

```
TCodeGeneratorLogEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;  
    LogType: TCodegenLogType;  
    const Msg: string) of object
```

`TCodeGeneratorLogEvent` is an event handler type used for logging messages from the code generator. It receives the sender object, log type and message text.

```
TCodegenLogType = (cltInfo)
```

Table 52.2: Enumeration values for type TCodegenLogType

Value	Explanation
cltInfo	Informational log message

TCodegenLogType defines the types of log messages that can be generated by the code generator.

cltInfo Informational message

cltWarning Warning message

TCodegenLogTypes = Set of TCodegenLogType = (cltInfo)

TCodegenLogTypes is a set type based on TCodegenLogType (1402) enumeration. It allows specifying which types of log messages should be processed.

TCodeSection = (csUnknown, csConst, csType, csVar, csResourcestring, csDeclaration)

Table 52.3: Enumeration values for type TCodeSection

Value	Explanation
csConst	Constants section
csDeclaration	General declarations section
csResourcestring	Resource strings section
csType	Types section
csUnknown	Unknown section type
csVar	Variables section

TCodeSection defines the different types of sections that can appear in Pascal code.

csUnknown Unknown or unspecified section type

csConst Const section for constants

csType Type section for type definitions

csVar Var section for variables

csResourcestring Resourcestring section for localizable strings

csDeclaration General declaration section

52.4 TPascalCodeGenerator

52.4.1 Description

TPascalCodeGenerator is a class that provides functionality for generating Pascal code. It offers utility methods for code indentation, section management, logging and automatic handling of code blocks. The resulting generated code is available in a string list accessible through the TPascalCodeGenerator.Source (1409) property. The class supports dotted unit names and provides configurable keyword escaping.

See also: TCodeSection ([1403](#)), TCodeGeneratorLogEvent ([1402](#))

52.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1408	AddLn	Add line to source code with current indentation
1408	ClassHeader	Add class header comment (deprecated)
1408	Comment	Add comment to source code
1404	Create	Create new Pascal code generator instance
1406	CreateHeader	Create unit header section
1406	CreateUnitClause	Create unit clause
1405	Destroy	Destroy Pascal code generator instance
1405	EnsureSection	Ensure code is in specified section
1407	EscapeKeyWord	Escape Pascal keyword if needed
1406	Indent	Increase indentation level
1407	IsKeyWord	Check if string is Pascal keyword
1407	MakePascalString	Convert string to Pascal string literal
1405	PopSection	Pop section from section stack
1407	PrettyPrint	Format string with proper capitalization
1405	PushSection	Push section onto section stack
1409	SaveToFile	Save generated source code to file
1409	SaveToStream	Save generated source code to stream
1408	SimpleMethodBody	Generate simple method body
1406	Undent	Decrease indentation level

52.4.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1411	AddTimeStamp	rw	Whether to include timestamp in header
1409	CurrentSection	rw	Current code section type
1410	ExtraUnits	rw	Additional units for uses clause
1411	KeywordPrefix	rw	Prefix for escaped keywords
1411	KeywordSuffix	rw	Suffix for escaped keywords
1410	LicenseText	rw	License text for header comment
1411	OnLog	rw	Event handler for log messages
1410	OutputUnitName	rw	Name of the output unit
1409	Source	r	Generated source code string list
1410	Switches	rw	Compiler switches for the unit

52.4.4 TPascalCodeGenerator.Create

Synopsis: Create new Pascal code generator instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new `TPascalCodeGenerator` instance. It creates internal string lists for source code, license text and compiler switches. The default compiler switches `MODE ObjFPC` and `H+` are automatically added.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.Destroy` ([1405](#))

52.4.5 TPascalCodeGenerator.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy Pascal code generator instance

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees all internal string lists and cleans up the `TPascalCodeGenerator` instance.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.Create` ([1404](#))

52.4.6 TPascalCodeGenerator.EnsureSection

Synopsis: Ensure code is in specified section

Declaration: `procedure EnsureSection(aSection: TCodeSection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnsureSection` ensures that the current code section is set to the specified section type. If the current section is different from the requested section, it outputs the appropriate section keyword (`Const`, `Type`, `Var`, `Resourcestring`) and updates the current section.

See also: `TCodeSection` ([1403](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.CurrentSection` ([1409](#))

52.4.7 TPascalCodeGenerator.PushSection

Synopsis: Push section onto section stack

Declaration: `procedure PushSection(ASection: TCodeSection=csUnknown)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PushSection` pushes a section onto the internal section stack. This allows nesting of sections and later restoration using `TPascalCodeGenerator.PopSection` ([1405](#)).

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.PopSection` ([1405](#)), `TCodeSection` ([1403](#))

52.4.8 TPascalCodeGenerator.PopSection

Synopsis: Pop section from section stack

Declaration: `function PopSection : TCodeSection`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PopSection` pops the topmost section from the internal section stack and returns it. If the stack is empty, it returns `csUnknown`.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.PushSection` ([1405](#)), `TCodeSection` ([1403](#))

52.4.9 TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader

Synopsis: Create unit header section

Declaration: `procedure CreateHeader; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateHeader` generates the interface header section of a Pascal unit. This includes the license text comment, optional timestamp, compiler switches, interface keyword and uses clause with support for dotted unit names.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateUnitClause` ([1406](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.LicenseText` ([1410](#))

52.4.10 TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateUnitClause

Synopsis: Create unit clause

Declaration: `procedure CreateUnitClause; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateUnitClause` generates the unit clause at the beginning of a Pascal unit. It handles dotted unit support by conditionally generating the appropriate unit name.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.OutputUnitName` ([1410](#))

52.4.11 TPascalCodeGenerator.Indent

Synopsis: Increase indentation level

Declaration: `procedure Indent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Indent` increases the current indentation level by adding two spaces to the internal indentation string. Subsequent calls to `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` ([1408](#)) will use this increased indentation.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.Undent` ([1406](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` ([1408](#))

52.4.12 TPascalCodeGenerator.Undent

Synopsis: Decrease indentation level

Declaration: `procedure Undent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Undent` decreases the current indentation level by removing two spaces from the internal indentation string. If the indentation string is empty, no action is taken.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.Indent` ([1406](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` ([1408](#))

52.4.13 TPascalCodeGenerator.IsKeyWord

Synopsis: Check if string is Pascal keyword

Declaration: `function IsKeyWord(const S: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `IsKeyWord` checks if the given string is a Pascal language keyword. It performs a case-insensitive comparison against a complete list of Pascal keywords including reserved words, operators and built-in identifiers.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord` ([1407](#))

52.4.14 TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord

Synopsis: Escape Pascal keyword if needed

Declaration: `function EscapeKeyWord(const S: string; ForceAmpersand: Boolean=False)
: string`

Visibility: public

Description: `EscapeKeyWord` escapes a string if it is a Pascal keyword by adding prefix and suffix characters. If the string is a keyword, it adds the configured `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordPrefix` ([1411](#)) and `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordSuffix` ([1411](#)) or an ampersand (&) if `ForceAmpersand` is `True`.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.IsKeyWord` ([1407](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordPrefix` ([1411](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordSuffix` ([1411](#))

52.4.15 TPascalCodeGenerator.MakePascalString

Synopsis: Convert string to Pascal string literal

Declaration: `function MakePascalString(const S: string; AddQuotes: Boolean=False)
: string`

Visibility: public

Description: `MakePascalString` converts a string to a proper Pascal string literal by escaping single quotes. All single quotes in the input string are doubled to create valid Pascal string syntax. Optionally, the result can be wrapped in quotes.

52.4.16 TPascalCodeGenerator.PrettyPrint

Synopsis: Format string with proper capitalization

Declaration: `function PrettyPrint(const S: string) : string`

Visibility: public

Description: `PrettyPrint` formats a string by capitalizing the first character and leaving the rest unchanged. If the input string is empty, it returns an empty string.

52.4.17 TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn

Synopsis: Add line to source code with current indentation

Declaration: `procedure AddLn(const aLine: string)`
`procedure AddLn(const TheLines: Array of string = string)`
`procedure AddLn(const TheLines: TStrings)`
`procedure AddLn(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddLn` adds one or more lines to the generated source code with the current indentation level applied. It supports adding single lines, arrays of strings, string lists or formatted strings. Each line is prefixed with the current indentation.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.Indent` (1406), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Undent` (1406), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Source` (1409)

52.4.18 TPascalCodeGenerator.Comment

Synopsis: Add comment to source code

Declaration: `procedure Comment(const AComment: string; Curly: Boolean=False)`
`procedure Comment(const AComment: Array of string = string)`
`procedure Comment(const AComment: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Comment` adds comments to the generated source code. It supports single line comments (using `//` or `{ }`) and multi-line comments using curly braces. For single strings, the `Curly` parameter determines the comment style. For arrays of strings or string lists, multi-line curly brace comments are generated.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` (1408)

52.4.19 TPascalCodeGenerator.ClassHeader

Synopsis: Add class header comment (deprecated)

Declaration: `procedure ClassHeader(const AClassName: string); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassHeader` adds a class header comment. This method is deprecated in favor of `TPascalCodeGenerator.ClassComment` (1403).

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.ClassComment` (1403)

52.4.20 TPascalCodeGenerator.SimpleMethodBody

Synopsis: Generate simple method body

Declaration: `procedure SimpleMethodBody(Lines: Array of string = string); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SimpleMethodBody` generates a complete method body with begin/end block and proper indentation. It adds an empty line, then 'begin', indents and adds the provided lines, undents and adds 'end;', followed by another empty line.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` (1408), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Indent` (1406), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Undent` (1406)

52.4.21 TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save generated source code to stream

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(const AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the generated source code to the specified stream. The entire content of the `TPascalCodeGenerator.Source` (1409) string list is written to the stream.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToFile` (1409), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Source` (1409)

52.4.22 TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save generated source code to file

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` saves the generated source code to the specified file. If no output unit name is set and the source is empty, it automatically sets the output unit name based on the filename.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToStream` (1409), `TPascalCodeGenerator.OutputUnitName` (1410), `TPascalCodeGenerator.Source` (1409)

52.4.23 TPascalCodeGenerator.Source

Synopsis: Generated source code string list

Declaration: `Property Source : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Source` contains the generated source code as a read-only string list. Each line in the list represents one line of generated Pascal code. This property provides access to the complete generated output.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.AddLn` (1408), `TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToFile` (1409), `TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToStream` (1409)

52.4.24 TPascalCodeGenerator.CurrentSection

Synopsis: Current code section type

Declaration: `Property CurrentSection : TCodeSection`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `CurrentSection` indicates the current section type being generated. Reading this property returns the section type at the top of the section stack. Writing to this property changes the current section without affecting the stack.

See also: `TCodeSection` (1403), `TPascalCodeGenerator.EnsureSection` (1405), `TPascalCodeGenerator.PushSection` (1405), `TPascalCodeGenerator.PopSection` (1405)

52.4.25 TPascalCodeGenerator.OutputUnitName

Synopsis: Name of the output unit

Declaration: `Property OutputUnitName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OutputUnitName` specifies the name of the Pascal unit being generated. This name is used in the unit clause and can be automatically derived from the filename when saving.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateUnitClause` ([1406](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.SaveToFile` ([1409](#))

52.4.26 TPascalCodeGenerator.ExtraUnits

Synopsis: Additional units for uses clause

Declaration: `Property ExtraUnits : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ExtraUnits` contains additional units to include in the uses clause for non-dotted unit support. These units are added to the base units when generating the interface uses clause.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.DottedExtraUnits` ([1403](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#))

52.4.27 TPascalCodeGenerator.LicenseText

Synopsis: License text for header comment

Declaration: `Property LicenseText : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LicenseText` contains the license text that will be included as a comment at the beginning of the generated unit. This text is output by `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#)).

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#))

52.4.28 TPascalCodeGenerator.Switches

Synopsis: Compiler switches for the unit

Declaration: `Property Switches : TStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Switches` contains a list of compiler switches that will be included in the generated unit header. By default, it includes `MODE ObjFPC` and `H+` switches.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#))

52.4.29 TPascalCodeGenerator.OnLog

Synopsis: Event handler for log messages

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TCodeGeneratorLogEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnLog` is an event that is triggered when the code generator wants to log information or warnings. Assign an event handler to receive these messages for debugging or user feedback.

See also: `TCodeGeneratorLogEvent` ([1402](#)), `TCodegenLogType` ([1402](#))

52.4.30 TPascalCodeGenerator.AddTimeStamp

Synopsis: Whether to include timestamp in header

Declaration: `Property AddTimeStamp : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AddTimeStamp` determines whether a timestamp comment is added to the generated unit header. When `True`, `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#)) includes a 'Generated on:' comment with the current date and time.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.CreateHeader` ([1406](#))

52.4.31 TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordSuffix

Synopsis: Suffix for escaped keywords

Declaration: `Property KeywordSuffix : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeywordSuffix` specifies the suffix string to append to escaped Pascal keywords. This is used by `TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord` ([1407](#)) when `ForceAmpersand` is `False`.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord` ([1407](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordPrefix` ([1411](#))

52.4.32 TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordPrefix

Synopsis: Prefix for escaped keywords

Declaration: `Property KeywordPrefix : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `KeywordPrefix` specifies the prefix string to prepend to escaped Pascal keywords. By default, this is set to '&' and is used by `TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord` ([1407](#)) when `ForceAmpersand` is `False`.

See also: `TPascalCodeGenerator.EscapeKeyWord` ([1407](#)), `TPascalCodeGenerator.KeywordSuffix` ([1411](#))

Chapter 53

Reference for unit 'Pipes'

53.1 Used units

Table 53.1: Used units by unit 'Pipes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

53.2 Overview

The Pipes unit implements streams that are wrappers around the OS's pipe functionality. It creates a pair of streams, and what is written to one stream can be read from another.

53.3 Constants, types and variables

53.3.1 Constants

`ENoSeekMsg = 'Cannot seek on pipes'`

Constant used in `EPipeSeek` ([1413](#)) exception.

`EPipeMsg = 'Failed to create pipe.'`

Constant used in `EPipeCreation` ([1413](#)) exception.

53.4 Procedures and functions

53.4.1 CreatePipeHandles

Synopsis: Function to create a set of pipe handles.

Declaration: `function CreatePipeHandles (var InHandle: THandle;
 var OutHandle: THandle;
 APipeBufferSize: Cardinal=1024) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeHandles` provides an OS-independent way to create a set of pipe filehandles. These handles are inheritable to child processes. The reading end of the pipe is returned in `InHandle`, the writing end in `OutHandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreatePipeStreams` ([1413](#))

53.4.2 CreatePipeStreams

Synopsis: Create a pair of pipe stream.

Declaration: `procedure CreatePipeStreams (var InPipe: TInputPipeStream;
 var OutPipe: TOutputPipeStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreatePipeStreams` creates a set of pipe file descriptors with `CreatePipeHandles` ([1412](#)), and if that call is successful, a pair of streams is created: `InPipe` and `OutPipe`.

On some systems (notably: windows) the size of the buffer to be used for communication between 2 ends of the buffer can be specified in the `APipeBufferSize` ([1412](#)) parameter. This parameter is ignored on systems that do not support setting the buffer size.

Errors: If no pipe handles could be created, an `EPipeCreation` ([1413](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `CreatePipeHandles` ([1412](#)), `TInputPipeStream` ([1414](#)), `TOutputPipeStream` ([1416](#))

53.5 EPipeCreation

53.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurred during the creation of a pipe pair.

53.6 EPipeError

53.6.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid operation is performed on a pipe stream.

53.7 EPipeSeek

53.7.1 Description

Exception raised when an invalid seek operation is attempted on a pipe.

53.8 TInputPipeStream

53.8.1 Description

`TInputPipeStream` is created by the `CreatePipeStreams` (1413) call to represent the reading end of a pipe. It is a `TStream` (??) descendent which does not allow writing, and which mimics the seek operation.

See also: `TStream` (??), `CreatePipeStreams` (1413), `TOutputPipeStream` (1416)

53.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1414	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy this instance of the input pipe stream.
1415	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
1415	<code>Seek</code>	Set the current position of the stream.
1414	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream.

53.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1415	<code>NumBytesAvailable</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of bytes available for reading.

53.8.4 TInputPipeStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of the input pipe stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` overrides the destructor to close the pipe handle, prior to calling the inherited destructor.

See also: `TInputPipeStream.Create` (1414)

53.8.5 TInputPipeStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` overrides the parent implementation of `Write`. On a `TInputPipeStream` will always raise an exception, as the pipe is read-only.

Errors: An `EStreamError` (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: `Read` (1415), `Seek` (1415)

53.8.6 TInputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set the current position of the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. Normally, pipe streams stderr are not seekable. The `TInputPipeStream` stream tries to provide seek capabilities for the following limited number of cases:

Origin=soFromBeginning If `Offset` is larger than the current position, then the remaining bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them.

Origin=soFromCurrent If `Offset` is zero, the current position is returned. If it is positive, then `Offset` bytes are skipped by reading them from the stream and discarding them, if the stream is of type `iosInput`.

All other cases will result in a `EPipeSeek` exception.

Errors: An `EPipeSeek` (1413) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `EPipeSeek` (1413), `Seek` (??)

53.8.7 TInputPipeStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a buffer.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` calls the inherited read and adjusts the internal position pointer of the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `Write` (1414), `Seek` (1415)

53.8.8 TInputPipeStream.NumBytesAvailable

Synopsis: Number of bytes available for reading.

Declaration: `Property NumBytesAvailable : DWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `NumBytesAvailable` is the number of bytes available for reading. This is the number of bytes in the OS buffer for the pipe. It is not a number of bytes in an internal buffer.

If this number is nonzero, then reading `NumBytesAvailable` bytes from the stream will not block the process. Reading more than `NumBytesAvailable` bytes will block the process, while it waits for the requested number of bytes to become available.

See also: `TInputPipeStream.Read` (1415)

53.9 TOutputPipeStream

53.9.1 Description

TOutputPipeStream is created by the CreatePipeStreams (1413) call to represent the writing end of a pipe. It is a TStream (??) descendent which does not allow reading.

See also: TStream (??), CreatePipeStreams (1413), TInputPipeStream (1414)

53.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1416	Destroy	Destroy this instance of the output pipe stream.
1416	Read	Read data from the stream.
1416	Seek	Sets the position in the stream.

53.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1417	DontClose	rw	

53.9.4 TOutputPipeStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of the output pipe stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy overrides the destructor to close the pipe handle, prior to calling the inherited destructor.

See also: THandleStream.Create (??)

53.9.5 TOutputPipeStream.Seek

Synopsis: Sets the position in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Seek is overridden in TOutputPipeStream. Calling this method will always raise an exception: an output pipe is not seekable.

Errors: An EPipeSeek (1413) exception is raised if this method is called.

53.9.6 TOutputPipeStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Read overrides the parent Read implementation. It always raises an exception, because a output pipe is write-only.

Errors: An EStreamError (??) exception is raised when this function is called.

See also: Seek ([1416](#))

53.9.7 TOutputPipeStream.DontClose

Declaration: Property DontClose : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 54

Reference for unit 'pooledmm'

54.1 Used units

Table 54.1: Used units by unit 'pooledmm'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??

54.2 Overview

`pooledmm` is a memory manager class which uses pools of blocks. Since it is a higher-level implementation of a memory manager which works on top of the FPC memory manager, It also offers more debugging and analysis tools. It is used mainly in the LCL and Lazarus IDE.

54.3 Constants, types and variables

54.3.1 Types

`PPooledMemManagerItem` = `^TPooledMemManagerItem`

`PPooledMemManagerItem` is a pointer type, pointing to a `TPooledMemManagerItem` (1419) item, used in a linked list.

`TEnumItemsMethod` = `procedure(Item: Pointer) of object`

`TEnumItemsMethod` is a prototype for the callback used in the `TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems` (1420) call. The parameter `Item` will be set to each of the pointers in the item list of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` (1419).

54.4 TPooledMemManagerItem

`TPooledMemManagerItem` = `record`

```

    Next : PPooledMemManagerItem;
end

```

`TPooledMemManagerItem` is used internally by the `TPooledMemManager` ([1421](#)) class to maintain the free list block. It simply points to the next free block.

54.5 TNonFreePooledMemManager

54.5.1 Description

`TNonFreePooledMemManager` keeps a list of fixed-size memory blocks in memory. Each block has the same size, making it suitable for storing a lot of records of the same type. It does not free the items stored in it, except when the list is cleared as a whole.

It allocates memory for the blocks in an exponential way, i.e. each time a new block of memory must be allocated, its size is the double of the last block. The first block will contain 8 items.

54.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1419	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the memory.
1419	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code> .
1420	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes the <code>TNonFreePooledMemManager</code> instance from memory.
1420	<code>EnumerateItems</code>	Enumerate all items in the list.
1420	<code>NewItem</code>	Return a pointer to a new memory block.

54.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1420	<code>ItemSize</code>	<code>r</code>	Size of an item in the list.

54.5.4 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the memory.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears all blocks from memory, freeing the allocated memory blocks. None of the pointers returned by `NewItem` ([1420](#)) is valid after a call to `Clear`

See also: `NewItem` ([1420](#))

54.5.5 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(TheItemSize: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TNonFreePooledMemManager` and sets the item size to `TheItemSize`.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize` ([1420](#))

54.5.6 TNonFreePooledMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes the `TNonFreePooledMemManager` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the list, clears the internal structures, and then calls the inherited `Destroy`. `Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([1419](#)), `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([1419](#))

54.5.7 TNonFreePooledMemManager.NewItem

Synopsis: Return a pointer to a new memory block.

Declaration: `function NewItem : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NewItem` returns a pointer to an unused memory block of size `ItemSize` ([1420](#)). It will allocate new memory on the heap if necessary.

Note that there is no way to mark the memory block as free, except by clearing the whole list.

Errors: If no more memory is available, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Clear` ([1419](#))

54.5.8 TNonFreePooledMemManager.EnumerateItems

Synopsis: Enumerate all items in the list.

Declaration: `procedure EnumerateItems(const Method: TEnumItemsMethod)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EnumerateItems` will enumerate over all items in the list, passing the items to `Method`. This can be used to execute certain operations on all items in the list. (for example, simply list them)

54.5.9 TNonFreePooledMemManager.ItemSize

Synopsis: Size of an item in the list.

Declaration: `Property ItemSize : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ItemSize` is the size of a single block in the list. It's a fixed size determined when the list is created.

See also: `TNonFreePooledMemManager.Create` ([1419](#))

54.6 TPooledMemManager

54.6.1 Description

`TPooledMemManager` is a class which maintains a linked list of blocks, represented by the `TPooledMemManagerItem` (1419) record. It should not be used directly, but should be descended from and the descendent should implement the actual memory manager.

See also: `TPooledMemManagerItem` (1419)

54.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1421	<code>Clear</code>	Clears the list.
1421	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of the <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class.
1422	<code>Destroy</code>	Removes an instance of <code>TPooledMemManager</code> class from memory.

54.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1423	<code>AllocatedCount</code>	r	Total number of allocated items in the list.
1422	<code>Count</code>	r	Number of items in the list.
1423	<code>FreeCount</code>	r	Number of free items in the list.
1423	<code>FreedCount</code>	r	Total number of freed items in the list.
1422	<code>MaximumFreeCountRatio</code>	rw	Maximum ratio of free items over total items.
1422	<code>MinimumFreeCount</code>	rw	Minimum count of free items in the list.

54.6.4 TPooledMemManager.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the list, it disposes all items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` ([1423](#))

54.6.5 TPooledMemManager.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TPooledMemManager` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes all necessary properties and then calls the inherited `create`.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Destroy` ([1422](#))

54.6.6 TPooledMemManager.Destroy

Synopsis: Removes an instance of `TPooledMemManager` class from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` calls `Clear` (1421) and then calls the inherited `destroy`.

`Destroy` should never be called directly. Instead `Free` should be used, or `FreeAndNil`

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Create` (1421)

54.6.7 TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount

Synopsis: Minimum count of free items in the list.

Declaration: `Property MinimumFreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MinimumFreeCount` is the minimum number of free items in the linked list. When disposing an item in the list, the number of items is checked, and only if the required number of free items is present, the item is actually freed.

The default value is 100000

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio` (1422)

54.6.8 TPooledMemManager.MaximumFreeCountRatio

Synopsis: Maximum ratio of free items over total items.

Declaration: `Property MaximumFreeCountRatio : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `MaximumFreeCountRatio` is the maximum ratio (divided by 8) of free elements over the total amount of elements: When disposing an item in the list, if the number of free items is higher than this ratio, the item is freed.

The default value is 8.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.MinimumFreeCount` (1422)

54.6.9 TPooledMemManager.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the total number of items allocated from the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` (1423), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` (1423), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` (1423)

54.6.10 TPooledMemManager.FreeCount

Synopsis: Number of free items in the list.

Declaration: `Property FreeCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreeCount` is the current total number of free items in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([1422](#)), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` ([1423](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` ([1423](#))

54.6.11 TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount

Synopsis: Total number of allocated items in the list.

Declaration: `Property AllocatedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `AllocatedCount` is the total number of newly allocated items on the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([1422](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` ([1423](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreedCount` ([1423](#))

54.6.12 TPooledMemManager.FreedCount

Synopsis: Total number of freed items in the list.

Declaration: `Property FreedCount : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FreedCount` is the total number of elements actually freed in the list.

See also: `TPooledMemManager.Count` ([1422](#)), `TPooledMemManager.FreeCount` ([1423](#)), `TPooledMemManager.AllocatedCount` ([1423](#))

Chapter 55

Reference for unit 'process'

55.1 Used units

Table 55.1: Used units by unit 'process'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Math	??
Pipes	1412
System	??
sysutils	??

55.2 Overview

The `Process` unit contains the code for the `TProcess` ([1430](#)) component, a cross-platform component to start and control other programs, offering also access to standard input and output for these programs.

`TProcess` does not handle wildcard expansion, does not support complex pipelines as in Unix. If this behaviour is desired, the shell can be executed with the pipeline as the command it should execute.

55.3 Constants, types and variables

55.3.1 Types

```
TOnRunCommandEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Context: TObject;  
    Status: TRunCommandEventCode;  
    const Message: string) of object
```

`TOnRunCommandEvent` is the event handler prototype for the various events emitted by the `TProcess` ([1430](#)) class during the `RunCommandLoop` ([1436](#)) call.

```
TprocessChar = char
```

TProcessChar is a single-byte character in the single-byte version of TProcess, but is a 2-byte character in the unicode version of TProcess.

```
TProcessClass = class of TProcess
```

Class of TProcess.

```
TProcessForkEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject) of object
```

TProcessForkEvent is the prototype for TProcess.OnForkEvent (1441). It is a simple procedure, as the idea is that only process-global things should be performed in this event handler.

```
TProcessOption = (poRunSuspended, poWaitOnExit, poUsePipes,
  poStderrToOutPut, poNoConsole, poNewConsole,
  poDefaultErrorMode, poNewProcessGroup, poDebugProcess,
  poDebugOnlyThisProcess, poDetached, poPassInput,
  poRunIdle)
```

Table 55.2: Enumeration values for type TProcessOption

Value	Explanation
poDebugOnlyThisProcess	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only).
poDebugProcess	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only).
poDefaultErrorMode	Use default error handling.
poDetached	Runs a process using the DETACHED_PROCESS creation flag on Windows.
poNewConsole	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only).
poNewProcessGroup	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only).
poNoConsole	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only).
poPassInput	Pass standard input handle on to new process.
poRunIdle	Signals an event handler to wait for output in the run loop for a process.
poRunSuspended	Start the process in suspended state.
poStderrToOutPut	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
poUsePipes	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
poWaitOnExit	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.

When a new process is started using TProcess.Execute (1433), these options control the way the process is started. Note that not all options are supported on all platforms.

```
TProcessOptions = Set of TProcessOption = (poDebugOnlyThisProcess
  , poDebugProcess,
  poDefaultErrorMode, poDetached, poNewConsole
  ,
  poNewProcessGroup, poNoConsole, poPassInput, poRunIdle
  ,
  poRunSuspended, poStderrToOutPut, poUsePipes,
  poWaitOnExit)
```

Set of TProcessOption (1425).

```
TProcessPriority = (ppHigh, ppIdle, ppNormal, ppRealTime, ppBelowNormal
,
                    ppAboveNormal)
```

Table 55.3: Enumeration values for type TProcessPriority

Value	Explanation
ppAboveNormal	Above normal priority.
ppBelowNormal	Below normal priority.
ppHigh	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
ppIdle	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do).
ppNormal	The process runs at normal priority.
ppRealTime	The process runs at real-time priority.

This enumerated type determines the priority of the newly started process. It translates to default platform specific constants. If finer control is needed, then platform-dependent mechanism need to be used to set the priority.

```
TProcessString = String
```

TProcessString is a single-byte string in the single-byte version of TProcess, but is a 2-byte (unicode) string in the unicode version of TProcess.

```
TProcessStringList = TStringList
```

TProcessStringList is an alias for TProcessStrings (1426) in unicode code, or an alias for the TStringList (??) class in single-byte string mode.

```
TProcessStrings = TStrings
```

TProcessStrings is a simple string list class which, depending on the version (unicode or not) contains unicode strings or single-byte strings: in the latter case it is an alias for the #rtl.classes.TStrings (??) class.

```
TRunCommandEventCode = (RunCommandIdle, RunCommandReadOutputString
,
                        RunCommandReadOutputStream, RunCommandFinished
,
                        RunCommandException)
```

Table 55.4: Enumeration values for type TRunCommandEventCode

Value	Explanation
RunCommandException	An error happened during reading of the command.
RunCommandFinished	The command finished.
RunCommandIdle	No data was available for reading.
RunCommandReadOutputStream	Output from the command was read.
RunCommandReadOutputString	Output from the command was read as a string.

`TRunCommandEventCode` is an enumerated type indicating the stage at which a process is during the `RunCommandLoop` (1436) call, reported through the `TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent` (1440) event handler.

```
TRunCommandEventCodeSet = Set of TRunCommandEventCode = (RunCommandException
, RunCommandFinished,
, RunCommandIdle, RunCommandReadOutputStream
, RunCommandReadOutputString)
```

`TRunCommandEventCodeSet` is a set of `TRunCommandEventCode` (1426) values.

```
TShowWindowOptions = (swoNone, swoHIDE, swoMaximize, swoMinimize,
swoRestore, swoShow, swoShowDefault,
swoShowMaximized, swoShowMinimized,
swoshowMinNOActive, swoShowNA, swoShowNoActivate,
swoShowNormal)
```

Table 55.5: Enumeration values for type `TShowWindowOptions`

Value	Explanation
<code>swoHIDE</code>	The main window is hidden.
<code>swoMaximize</code>	The main window is maximized.
<code>swoMinimize</code>	The main window is minimized.
<code>swoNone</code>	Allow system to position the window.
<code>swoRestore</code>	Restore the previous position.
<code>swoShow</code>	Show the main window.
<code>swoShowDefault</code>	When showing Show the main window on.
<code>swoShowMaximized</code>	The main window is shown maximized.
<code>swoShowMinimized</code>	The main window is shown minimized.
<code>swoshowMinNOActive</code>	The main window is shown minimized but not activated.
<code>swoShowNA</code>	The main window is shown but not activated.
<code>swoShowNoActivate</code>	The main window is shown but not activated.
<code>swoShowNormal</code>	The main window is shown normally.

This type describes what the new process' main window should look like. Most of these have only effect on Windows. They are ignored on other systems.

```
TStartupOption = (suoUseShowWindow, suoUseSize, suoUsePosition,
suoUseCountChars, suoUseFillAttribute)
```

Table 55.6: Enumeration values for type `TStartupOption`

Value	Explanation
<code>suoUseCountChars</code>	Use the console character width as specified in <code>TProcess</code> (1430).
<code>suoUseFillAttribute</code>	Use the console fill attribute as specified in <code>TProcess</code> (1430).
<code>suoUsePosition</code>	Use the window sizes as specified in <code>TProcess</code> (1430).
<code>suoUseShowWindow</code>	Use the Show Window options specified in <code>TShowWindowOption</code> (1427).
<code>suoUseSize</code>	Use the window sizes as specified in <code>TProcess</code> (1430).

These options are mainly for Win32, and determine what should be done with the application once it's started.

```
TStartupOptions = Set of TStartupOption = (suoUseCountChars, suoUseFillAttribute
    , suoUsePosition,
        suoUseShowWindow, suoUseSize)
```

Set of TStartupOption ([1427](#)).

55.3.2 Variables

```
DefaultTProcess : TProcessClass = TProcess
```

DefaultTProcess is the process class used by the RunCommand ([1429](#)) and RunCommandInDir ([1429](#)) calls. You can set it to customize the process class to use during these calls. By default the TProcess class is used.

```
TryTerminals : Array of string = string
```

TryTerminals is used under UNIX to test for available terminal programs in the DetectXTerm ([1428](#)) function. If XTermProgram ([1428](#)) is empty, each item in this list will be searched in the path, and used as a terminal program if it was found.

```
XTermProgram : string
```

XTermProgram is the terminal program that is used. If empty, it will be set the first time DetectXTerm ([1428](#)) is called.

55.4 Procedures and functions

55.4.1 CommandToList

Synopsis: Convert a command-line to a list of command options.

Declaration: `procedure CommandToList (S: TProcessString; List: TProcessStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: CommandToList splits the string S in command-line arguments that are returned, one per item, in the List stringlist. Command-line arguments are separated by whitespace (space, tab, CR and LF characters). If an argument needs to contain a space character, it can be surrounded in quote characters (single or double quotes).

Errors: There is currently no way to specify a quote character inside a quoted argument.

See also: TProcess.CommandLine ([1442](#))

55.4.2 DetectXTerm

Synopsis: Detect the terminal program.

Declaration: `function DetectXTerm : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectXTerm` checks if `XTermProgram` (1428) is set. if so, it returns that. If `XTermProgram` is empty, the list specified in `TryTerminals` (1428) is tested for existence. If none is found, then the `DESKTOP_SESSION` environment variable is examined:

kde konsole is used if it is found.

gnome gnome-terminal is used if it is found

windowmaker aterm or xterm are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: 'x-terminal-emulator', 'xterm', 'aterm', 'wterm', 'rxvt'

If a terminal program is found, then it is saved in `XTermProgram`, so the next call to `DetectXTerm` will re-use the value. If the search must be performed again, it is sufficient to set `XTermProgram` to the empty string.

See also: `XTermProgram` (1428), `TryTerminals` (1428), `TProcess.XTermProgram` (1449)

55.4.3 RunCommand

Synopsis: Execute a command in the current working directory.

Declaration:

```
function RunCommand(const exename: TProcessString;
                    const commands: Array of TProcessString = String;
                    out outputstring: string;
                    Options: TProcessOptions=[];
                    SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions=swoNone) : Boolean
function RunCommand(const cmdline: TProcessString;
                    out outputstring: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RunCommand` runs `RunCommandInDir` (1429) with an empty current working directory.

The version using `CmdLine` attempts to split the command line in a binary and separate command-line arguments. This version of the function is deprecated.

See also: `RunCommandInDir` (1429)

55.4.4 RunCommandInDir

Synopsis: Run a command in a specific directory.

Declaration:

```
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const exename: TProcessString;
                        const commands: Array of TProcessString = String;
                        out outputstring: string;
                        out exitstatus: Integer;
                        Options: TProcessOptions=[];
                        SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions=swoNone) : Integer
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const exename: TProcessString;
                        const commands: Array of TProcessString = String;
                        out outputstring: string;
                        Options: TProcessOptions=[];
                        SWOptions: TShowWindowOptions=swoNone) : Boolean
```

```
function RunCommandInDir(const curdir: TProcessString;
                        const cmdline: TProcessString;
                        out outputstring: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `RunCommandInDir` will execute binary `exename` with command-line options `commands`, setting `curdir` as the current working directory for the command. The Options (1425) are taken into consideration (`poRunSuspended`, `poWaitOnExit` are removed from the set). The output of the command is captured, and returned in the string `OutputString`. The function waits for the command to finish, and returns `True` if the command was started successfully, `False` otherwise. In the case where the return value is an integer, it is zero for success, and -1 on error.

If a `ExitStatus` parameter is specified the exit status of the command is returned in this parameter.

The version using `cmdline` attempts to split the command line in a binary and separate command-line arguments. This version of the function is deprecated.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `TProcess` (1430), `RunCommand` (1429), `TProcessOptions` (1425)

55.5 EProcess

55.5.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs in a `TProcess` routine.

See also: `TProcess` (1430)

55.6 TProcess

55.6.1 Description

`TProcess` is a component that can be used to start and control other processes (programs/binaries). It contains a lot of options that control how the process is started. Many of these are Win32 specific, and have no effect on other platforms, so they should be used with care.

The simplest way to use this component is to create an instance, set the `CommandLine` (1442) property to the full pathname of the program that should be executed, and call `Execute` (1433). To determine whether the process is still running (i.e. has not stopped executing), the `Running` (1446) property can be checked.

More advanced techniques can be used with the Options (1445) settings.

See also: `Create` (1433), `Execute` (1433), `Running` (1446), `CommandLine` (1442), `Options` (1445)

55.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1434	<code>CloseInput</code>	Close the input stream of the process.
1434	<code>CloseOutput</code>	Close the output stream of the process.
1434	<code>CloseStderr</code>	Close the error stream of the process.
1433	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the <code>TProcess</code> class.
1433	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy this instance of <code>TProcess</code> .
1433	<code>Execute</code>	Execute the program with the given options.
1436	<code>ReadInputStream</code>	Read available data from input stream.
1434	<code>Resume</code>	Resume execution of a suspended process.
1436	<code>RunCommandLoop</code>	Execute command and collect output in strings.
1435	<code>Suspend</code>	Suspend a running process.
1435	<code>Terminate</code>	Terminate a running process.
1435	<code>WaitOnExit</code>	Wait for the program to stop executing.

55.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1441	Active	rw	Start or stop the process.
1441	ApplicationName	rw	Name of the application to start (deprecated).
1442	CommandLine	rw	Command-line to execute (deprecated).
1443	ConsoleTitle	rw	Title of the console window.
1444	CurrentDirectory	rw	Working directory of the process.
1444	Desktop	rw	Desktop on which to start the process.
1444	Environment	rw	Environment variables for the new process.
1442	Executable	rw	Executable name. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> and <code>ApplicationName</code> .
1440	ExitCode	r	Exit code of the process.
1439	ExitStatus	r	Exit status of the process.
1449	FillAttribute	rw	Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only).
1437	Handle	r	Handle of the process.
1440	InheritHandles	rw	Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.
1438	Input	r	Stream connected to standard input of the process.
1441	OnForkEvent	rw	Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux.
1440	OnRunCommandEvent	rw	Event handler, called when <code>RunCommandLoop</code> is executing.
1445	Options	rw	Options to be used when starting the process.
1438	Output	r	Stream connected to standard output of the process.
1443	Parameters	rw	Command-line arguments. Supersedes <code>CommandLine</code> .
1441	PipeBufferSize	rw	Buffer size to be used when using pipes.
1445	Priority	rw	Priority at which the process is running.
1437	ProcessHandle	r	Alias for <code>Handle</code> (1437).
1437	ProcessID	r	ID of the process.
1440	RunCommandSleepTime	rw	Sleep time between attempts to collect data.
1446	Running	r	Determines whether the process is still running.
1447	ShowWindow	rw	Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only).
1446	StartupOptions	rw	Additional (Windows) startup options.
1439	Stderr	r	Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.
1437	ThreadHandle	r	Main process thread handle.
1438	ThreadID	r	ID of the main process thread.
1447	WindowColumns	rw	Number of columns in console window (windows only).
1447	WindowHeight	rw	Height of the process main window.
1448	WindowLeft	rw	X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).
1436	WindowRect	rw	Positions for the main program window.
1448	WindowRows	rw	Number of rows in console window (Windows only).
1448	WindowTop	rw	Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).
1449	WindowWidth	rw	Height of the process main window (Windows only).
1449	XTermProgram	rw	XTerm program to use (UNIX only).

55.6.4 TProcess.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TProcess` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TProcess` class. After calling the inherited constructor, it simply sets some default values.

55.6.5 TProcess.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy this instance of `TProcess`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up this instance of `TProcess`. Prior to calling the inherited destructor, it cleans up any streams that may have been created. If a process was started and is still executed, it is *not* stopped, but the standard input/output/stderr streams are no longer available, because they have been destroyed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([1433](#))

55.6.6 TProcess.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the program with the given options.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` actually executes the program as specified in `CommandLine` ([1442](#)), applying as much as of the specified options as supported on the current platform.

If the `poWaitOnExit` option is specified in `Options` ([1445](#)), then the call will only return when the program has finished executing (or if an error occurred). If this option is not given, the call returns immediately, but the `WaitOnExit` ([1435](#)) call can be used to wait for it to close, or the `Running` ([1446](#)) call can be used to check whether it is still running.

The `TProcess.Terminate` ([1435](#)) call can be used to terminate the program if it is still running, or the `Suspend` ([1435](#)) call can be used to temporarily stop the program's execution.

The `ExitStatus` ([1439](#)) function can be used to check the program's exit status, after it has stopped executing.

Errors: On error a `EProcess` ([1430](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TProcess.Running` ([1446](#)), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` ([1435](#)), `TProcess.Terminate` ([1435](#)), `TProcess.Suspend` ([1435](#)), `TProcess.Resume` ([1434](#)), `TProcess.ExitStatus` ([1439](#)), `TProcess.ExitCode` ([1440](#))

55.6.7 TProcess.CloseInput

Synopsis: Close the input stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseInput; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CloseInput` closes the input file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard input of the process.

See also: [Input \(1438\)](#), [StdErr \(1439\)](#), [Output \(1438\)](#), [CloseOutput \(1434\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(1434\)](#)

55.6.8 TProcess.CloseOutput

Synopsis: Close the output stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseOutput; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CloseOutput` closes the output file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard output of the process.

See also: [Output \(1438\)](#), [Input \(1438\)](#), [StdErr \(1439\)](#), [CloseInput \(1434\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(1434\)](#)

55.6.9 TProcess.CloseStderr

Synopsis: Close the error stream of the process.

Declaration: `procedure CloseStderr; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CloseStdErr` closes the standard error file descriptor of the process, that is, it closes the handle of the pipe to standard error output of the process.

See also: [Output \(1438\)](#), [Input \(1438\)](#), [StdErr \(1439\)](#), [CloseInput \(1434\)](#), [CloseStdErr \(1434\)](#)

55.6.10 TProcess.Resume

Synopsis: Resume execution of a suspended process.

Declaration: `function Resume : Integer; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Resume` should be used to let a suspended process resume its execution. It should be called in particular when the `poRunSuspended` flag is set in [Options \(1445\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [TProcess.Suspend \(1435\)](#), [TProcess.Options \(1445\)](#), [TProcess.Execute \(1433\)](#), [TProcess.Terminate \(1435\)](#)

55.6.11 TProcess.Suspend

Synopsis: Suspend a running process.

Declaration: `function Suspend : Integer; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Suspend` suspends a running process. If the call is successful, the process is suspended: it stops running, but can be made to execute again using the `Resume` (1434) call.

`Suspend` is fundamentally different from `TProcess.Terminate` (1435) which actually stops the process.

Errors: On error, a nonzero result is returned.

See also: `TProcess.Options` (1445), `TProcess.Resume` (1434), `TProcess.Terminate` (1435), `TProcess.Execute` (1433)

55.6.12 TProcess.Terminate

Synopsis: Terminate a running process.

Declaration: `function Terminate(AExitCode: Integer) : Boolean; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Terminate` stops the execution of the running program. It effectively stops the program.

On Windows, the program will report an exit code of `AExitCode`, on other systems, this value is ignored.

Errors: On error, a nonzero value is returned.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (1439), `TProcess.Suspend` (1435), `TProcess.Execute` (1433), `TProcess.WaitForExit` (1435), `TProcess.ExitCode` (1440)

55.6.13 TProcess.WaitForExit

Synopsis: Wait for the program to stop executing.

Declaration: `function WaitForExit : Boolean`
`function WaitForExit(Timeout: DWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `WaitForExit` waits for the running program to exit. It returns `True` if the wait was successful, or `False` if there was some error waiting for the program to exit.

Note that the return value of this function has changed. The old return value was a `DWord` with a platform dependent error code. To make things consistent and cross-platform, a boolean return type was used.

The `TimeOut` argument can be used to specify a timeout in milliseconds. If omitted, the call will wait indefinitely.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned. No extended error information is available, as it is highly system dependent.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (1439), `TProcess.Terminate` (1435), `TProcess.Running` (1446), `TProcess.ExitCode` (1440)

55.6.14 TProcess.ReadInputStream

Synopsis: Read available data from input stream.

Declaration:

```
function ReadInputStream(p: TInputPipeStream; var BytesRead: Integer;
                        var DataLength: Integer; var Data: string;
                        MaxLoops: Integer=10) : Boolean; virtual
function ReadInputStream(p: TInputPipeStream; data: TStream;
                        MaxLoops: Integer=10) : Boolean; virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInputStream` reads data from the given input pipe stream `p` after checking that data is available. It returns `True` if data was successfully read from the file handle. In the variant with a string `data`, the data is placed in the string `Data`, and `DataLength` is updated with the new length, `BytesRead` is updated with the amount of bytes read. `MaxLoop` determines how often an attempt at reading data is made.

In the variant with a stream, the available data is simply written to the stream.

Errors: None.

55.6.15 TProcess.RunCommandLoop

Synopsis: Execute command and collect output in strings.

Declaration:

```
function RunCommandLoop(out outputstring: string;
                        out stderrstring: string;
                        out anexitstatus: Integer) : Integer; virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: `RunCommandLoop` executes the command, and runs a loop to read output of the command: the output of the command is returned in the `outputstring` parameter, and the error output is returned in the `stderrstring` string.

During collection of data or on error, the `TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent` (1440) event handler is called during the various stages of the call. If it is not explicitly set, a sleep period specified by `TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime` (1440) is interjected between the various read calls.

The return value of this call is 1 for error, zero for success.

See also: `TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent` (1440), `TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime` (1440)

55.6.16 TProcess.WindowRect

Synopsis: Positions for the main program window.

Declaration:

```
Property WindowRect : Trect
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRect` can be used to specify the position of

55.6.17 TProcess.Handle

Synopsis: Handle of the process.

Declaration: `Property Handle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` identifies the process. In Unix systems, this is the process ID. On windows, this is the process handle. It can be used to signal the process.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (1433) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (1437), `TProcess.ProcessID` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadID` (1438)

55.6.18 TProcess.ProcessHandle

Synopsis: Alias for `Handle` (1437).

Declaration: `Property ProcessHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ProcessHandle` equals `Handle` (1437) and is provided for completeness only.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (1437), `TProcess.ProcessID` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadID` (1438)

55.6.19 TProcess.ThreadHandle

Synopsis: Main process thread handle.

Declaration: `Property ThreadHandle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ThreadHandle` is the main process thread handle. On Unix, this is the same as the process ID, on Windows, this may be a different handle than the process handle.

The handle is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (1433) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (1437), `TProcess.ProcessID` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadID` (1438)

55.6.20 TProcess.ProcessID

Synopsis: ID of the process.

Declaration: `Property ProcessID : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the process. It is the same as the handle of the process on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the process Handle.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (1433) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.Handle` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadID` (1438)

55.6.21 TProcess.ThreadID

Synopsis: ID of the main process thread.

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ProcessID` is the ID of the main process thread. It is the same as the handle of the main process thread (or the process itself) on Unix systems, but on Windows it is different from the thread Handle.

The ID is only valid after `TProcess.Execute` (1433) has been called. It is not reset after the process stopped.

See also: `TProcess.ProcessID` (1437), `TProcess.Handle` (1437), `TProcess.ThreadHandle` (1437)

55.6.22 TProcess.Input

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard input of the process.

Declaration: `Property Input : TOutputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Input` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard input file handle. Anything written to this stream can be read by the process.

The `Input` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (1445).

Note that writing to the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not reading from it's input, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.OutPut` (1438), `TProcess.StdErr` (1439), `TProcess.Options` (1445), `TProcessOption` (1425)

55.6.23 TProcess.Output

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Output : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Output` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard output file handle. Anything written to standard output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `Output` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (1445).

The `Output` stream also contains any data written to standard diagnostic output (`stderr`) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in `Options` (1445).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (1438), `TProcess.StdErr` (1439), `TProcess.Options` (1445), `TProcessOption` (1425)

55.6.24 TProcess.Stderr

Synopsis: Stream connected to standard diagnostic output of the process.

Declaration: `Property Stderr : TInputPipeStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `StdErr` is a stream which is connected to the process' standard diagnostic output file handle (`StdErr`). Anything written to standard diagnostic output by the created process can be read from this stream.

The `StdErr` stream is only instantiated when the `poUsePipes` flag is used in `Options` (1445).

The `Output` stream equals the `Output` (1438) when the `poStdErrToOutPut` flag is used in `Options` (1445).

Note that reading from the stream may cause the calling process to be suspended when the created process is not writing anything to standard output, or to cause errors when the process has terminated.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (1438), `TProcess.Output` (1438), `TProcess.Options` (1445), `TProcessOption` (1425)

55.6.25 TProcess.ExitStatus

Synopsis: Exit status of the process.

Declaration: `Property ExitStatus : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ExitStatus` contains the exit status as reported by the OS for the process when it stopped executing: Normally, this is the exit code of the process.

The value of this property is only meaningful when the process has finished executing. If it is not yet running then the value is -1. (it was zero in earlier versions of FPC)

See also: `TProcess.Running` (1446), `TProcess.Terminate` (1435), `TProcess.ExitCode` (1440)

55.6.26 TProcess.ExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of the process.

Declaration: `Property ExitCode : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ExitCode` is the actual exit code of the process. On UNIX, this may differ from the `ExitStatus` (1424) value if the process was terminated by a signal: in that case `ExitStatus` is the raw exit status as reported by one of the UNIX `Wait` command, and `ExitCode` is the exit code reported by the program.

See also: `TProcess.ExitStatus` (1439), `TProcess.Running` (1446), `TProcess.WaitOnExit` (1435), `TProcess.Terminate` (1435)

55.6.27 TProcess.InheritHandles

Synopsis: Should the created process inherit the open handles of the current process.

Declaration: `Property InheritHandles : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `InheritHandles` determines whether the created process inherits the open handles of the current process (value `True`) or not (`False`).

On Unix, setting this variable has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.InPut` (1438), `TProcess.Output` (1438), `TProcess.StdErr` (1439)

55.6.28 TProcess.OnRunCommandEvent

Synopsis: Event handler, called when `RunCommandLoop` is executing.

Declaration: `Property OnRunCommandEvent : TOnRunCommandEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnRunCommandEvent` is a progress report callback, called at various stages of the `TProcess.RunCommandLoop` (1436) call and when an exception occurs.

See also: `TProcess.RunCommandLoop` (1436)

55.6.29 TProcess.RunCommandSleepTime

Synopsis: Sleep time between attempts to collect data.

Declaration: `Property RunCommandSleepTime : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Sleep time between attempts to collect data.

55.6.30 TProcess.OnForkEvent

Synopsis: Event triggered after fork occurred on Linux.

Declaration: `Property OnForkEvent : TProcessForkEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnForkEvent` is triggered after the `fpFork` (??) call in the child process. It can be used to e.g. close file descriptors and make changes to other resources before the `fpexecv` (??) call. This event is not used on windows.

See also: `Output` (1438), `Input` (1438), `StdErr` (1439), `CloseInput` (1434), `CloseStdErr` (1434), `TProcessForkEvent` (1425)

55.6.31 TProcess.PipeBufferSize

Synopsis: Buffer size to be used when using pipes.

Declaration: `Property PipeBufferSize : Cardinal`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `PipeBufferSize` indicates the buffer size used when creating pipes (when `soUsePipes` is specified in `Options`). This option is not respected on all platforms (currently only Windows uses this).

See also: `#fcl.pipes.CreatePipeHandles` (1412)

55.6.32 TProcess.Active

Synopsis: Start or stop the process.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Active` starts the process if it is set to `True`, or terminates the process if set to `False`. It's mostly intended for use in an IDE.

See also: `TProcess.Execute` (1433), `TProcess.Terminate` (1435)

55.6.33 TProcess.ApplicationName

Synopsis: Name of the application to start (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property ApplicationName : TProcessString; deprecated;`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ApplicationName` is an alias for `TProcess.CommandLine` (1442). It's mostly for use in the Windows `CreateProcess` call. If `CommandLine` is not set, then `ApplicationName` will be used instead.

`ApplicationName` is deprecated. New code should use `Executable` (1442) instead, and leave `ApplicationName` empty.

See also: `TProcess.CommandLine` (1442), `TProcess.Executable` (1442), `TProcess.Parameters` (1443)

55.6.34 TProcess.CommandLine

Synopsis: Command-line to execute (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property CommandLine : TProcessString; deprecated;`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CommandLine` is deprecated. To avoid problems with command-line options with spaces in them and the quoting problems that this entails, it has been superseded by the properties `TProcess.Executable` (1442) and `TProcess.Parameters` (1443), which should be used instead of `CommandLine`. New code should leave `CommandLine` empty.

`CommandLine` is the command-line to be executed: this is the name of the program to be executed, followed by any options it should be passed.

If the command to be executed or any of the arguments contains whitespace (space, tab character, linefeed character) it should be enclosed in single or double quotes.

If no absolute pathname is given for the command to be executed, it is searched for in the `PATH` environment variable. On Windows, the current directory always will be searched first. On other platforms, this is not so.

Note that either `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` must be set prior to calling `Execute`.

See also: `TProcess.ApplicationName` (1441), `TProcess.Executable` (1442), `TProcess.Parameters` (1443)

55.6.35 TProcess.Executable

Synopsis: Executable name. Supersedes `CommandLine` and `ApplicationName`.

Declaration: `Property Executable : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Executable` is the name of the executable to start. It should not contain any command-line arguments. If no path is given, it will be searched in the `PATH` environment variable.

The extension must be given, none will be added by the component itself. It may be that the OS adds the extension, but this behaviour is not guaranteed.

Arguments should be passed in `TProcess.Parameters` (1443).

`Executable` supersedes the `TProcess.CommandLine` (1442) and `TProcess.ApplicationName` (1441) properties, which have been deprecated. However, if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified, they will be used instead of `Executable`.

See also: `CommandLine` (1442), `ApplicationName` (1441), `Parameters` (1443)

55.6.36 TProcess.Parameters

Synopsis: Command-line arguments. Supersedes `CommandLine`.

Declaration: `Property Parameters : TProcessStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Parameters` contains the command-line arguments that should be passed to the program specified in `Executable` (1442).

Commandline arguments should be specified one per item in `Parameters`: each item in `Parameters` will be passed as a separate command-line item. It is therefor not necessary to quote whitespace in the items. As a consequence, it is not allowed to specify multiple command-line parameters in 1 item in the stringlist. If a command needs 2 options `-t` and `-s`, the following is not correct:

```
With Parameters do
begin
  add('-t -s');
end;
```

Instead, the code should read:

```
With Parameters do
begin
  add('-t');
  Add('-s');
end;
```

Remark Note that `Parameters` is ignored if either of `CommandLine` or `ApplicationName` is specified. It can only be used with `Executable`.

Remark The idea of using `Parameters` is that they are passed unmodified to the operating system. On Windows, a single command-line string must be constructed, and each parameter is surrounded by double quote characters if it contains a space. The programmer must not quote parameters with spaces.

See also: `Executable` (1442), `CommandLine` (1442), `ApplicationName` (1441)

55.6.37 TProcess.ConsoleTitle

Synopsis: Title of the console window.

Declaration: `Property ConsoleTitle : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConsoleTitle` is used on Windows when executing a console application: it specifies the title caption of the console window. On other platforms, this property is currently ignored.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

See also: `TProcess.WindowColumns` (1447), `TProcess.WindowRows` (1448)

55.6.38 TProcess.CurrentDirectory

Synopsis: Working directory of the process.

Declaration: `Property CurrentDirectory : TProcessString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `CurrentDirectory` specifies the initial working directory of the newly started process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect, and if the process or any of its children changes their working directory, it will not reflect this.

See also: `TProcess.Environment` ([1444](#))

55.6.39 TProcess.Desktop

Synopsis: Desktop on which to start the process.

Declaration: `Property Desktop : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Desktop` is used on Windows to determine on which desktop the process' main window should be shown. Leaving this empty means the process is started on the same desktop as the currently running process.

Changing this property after the process was started has no effect.

On UNIX, this parameter is ignored.

See also: `TProcess.Input` ([1438](#)), `TProcess.Output` ([1438](#)), `TProcess.Stderr` ([1439](#))

55.6.40 TProcess.Environment

Synopsis: Environment variables for the new process.

Declaration: `Property Environment : TProcessStrings`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Environment` contains the complete environment for the new process; it is a list of Name=Value pairs, one per line. You must specify all variables, i.e. the variables defined here are *not* added to the environment of the current process.

If it is empty, the environment of the current process is passed on to the new process.

See also: `TProcess.Options` ([1445](#))

55.6.41 TProcess.Options

Synopsis: Options to be used when starting the process.

Declaration: `Property Options : TProcessOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` determine how the process is started. They should be set before the `Execute` (1433) call is made.

Table 55.7:

Option	Meaning
<code>poRunSuspended</code>	Start the process in suspended state.
<code>poWaitOnExit</code>	Wait for the process to terminate before returning.
<code>poUsePipes</code>	Use pipes to redirect standard input and output.
<code>poStderrToOutPut</code>	Redirect standard error to the standard output stream.
<code>poNoConsole</code>	Do not allow access to the console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poNewConsole</code>	Start a new console window for the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDefaultErrorMode</code>	Use default error handling.
<code>poNewProcessGroup</code>	Start the process in a new process group (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugProcess</code>	Allow debugging of the process (Win32 only)
<code>poDebugOnlyThisProcess</code>	Do not follow processes started by this process (Win32 only)

See also: `TProcessOption` (1425), `TProcessOptions` (1425), `TProcess.Priority` (1445), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (1446)

55.6.42 TProcess.Priority

Synopsis: Priority at which the process is running.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TProcessPriority`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Priority` determines the priority at which the process is running.

Table 55.8:

Priority	Meaning
<code>ppHigh</code>	The process runs at higher than normal priority.
<code>ppIdle</code>	The process only runs when the system is idle (i.e. has nothing else to do)
<code>ppNormal</code>	The process runs at normal priority.
<code>ppRealTime</code>	The process runs at real-time priority.

Note that not all priorities can be set by any user. Usually, only users with administrative rights (the root user on Unix) can set a higher process priority.

On UNIX, the process priority is mapped on `Nice` values as follows:

Table 55.9:

Priority	Nice value
<code>ppHigh</code>	20
<code>ppIdle</code>	20
<code>ppNormal</code>	0
<code>ppRealTime</code>	-20

See also: `TProcessPriority` ([1426](#))

55.6.43 TProcess.StartupOptions

Synopsis: Additional (Windows) startup options.

Declaration: `Property StartupOptions : TStartupOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `StartupOptions` contains additional startup options, used mostly on Windows system. They determine which other window layout properties are taken into account when starting the new process.

Table 55.10:

Priority	Meaning
<code>suoUseShowWindow</code>	Use the Show Window options specified in <code>ShowWindow</code> (1447)
<code>suoUseSize</code>	Use the specified window sizes
<code>suoUsePosition</code>	Use the specified window sizes.
<code>suoUseCountChars</code>	Use the specified console character width.
<code>suoUseFillAttribute</code>	Use the console fill attribute specified in <code>FillAttribute</code> (1449).

See also: `TProcess.ShowWindow` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#))

55.6.44 TProcess.Running

Synopsis: Determines whether the process is still running.

Declaration: `Property Running : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read

Description: `Running` can be read to determine whether the process is still running.

See also: `TProcess.Terminate` ([1435](#)), `TProcess.Active` ([1441](#)), `TProcess.ExitStatus` ([1439](#)), `TProcess.ExitCode` ([1440](#))

55.6.45 TProcess.ShowWindow

Synopsis: Determines how the process main window is shown (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property ShowWindow : TShowWindowOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ShowWindow` determines how the process' main window is shown. It is useful only on Windows.

Table 55.11:

Option	Meaning
<code>swoNone</code>	Allow system to position the window.
<code>swoHIDE</code>	The main window is hidden.
<code>swoMaximize</code>	The main window is maximized.
<code>swoMinimize</code>	The main window is minimized.
<code>swoRestore</code>	Restore the previous position.
<code>swoShow</code>	Show the main window.
<code>swoShowDefault</code>	When showing Show the main window on a default position
<code>swoShowMaximized</code>	The main window is shown maximized
<code>swoShowMinimized</code>	The main window is shown minimized
<code>swoshowMinNOActive</code>	The main window is shown minimized but not activated
<code>swoShowNA</code>	The main window is shown but not activated
<code>swoShowNoActivate</code>	The main window is shown but not activated
<code>swoShowNormal</code>	The main window is shown normally

55.6.46 TProcess.WindowColumns

Synopsis: Number of columns in console window (windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowColumns : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowColumns` is the number of columns in the console window, used to run the command in.
This property is only effective if `suoUseCountChars` is specified in `StartupOptions` (1446)

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` (1447), `TProcess.WindowWidth` (1449), `TProcess.WindowLeft` (1448), `TProcess.WindowTop` (1448), `TProcess.WindowRows` (1448), `TProcess.FillAttribute` (1449), `TProcess.StartupOptions` (1446)

55.6.47 TProcess.WindowHeight

Synopsis: Height of the process main window.

Declaration: `Property WindowHeight : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowHeight` is the initial height (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if `suoUseSize` is specified in `StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

See also: `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.48 TProcess.WindowLeft

Synopsis: X-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowLeft : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowLeft` is the initial X coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the left border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.49 TProcess.WindowRows

Synopsis: Number of rows in console window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowRows : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowRows` is the number of rows in the console window, used to run the command in. This property is only effective if `suoUseCountChars` is specified in `StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.50 TProcess.WindowTop

Synopsis: Y-coordinate of the initial window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowTop : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowTop` is the initial Y coordinate (in pixels) of the process' main window, relative to the top border of the desktop. This property is only effective if `suoUsePosition` is specified in `StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.51 TProcess.WindowWidth

Synopsis: Height of the process main window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property WindowWidth : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `WindowWidth` is the initial width (in pixels) of the process' main window. This property is only effective if `suoUseSize` is specified in `StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.FillAttribute` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.52 TProcess.FillAttribute

Synopsis: Color attributes of the characters in the console window (Windows only).

Declaration: `Property FillAttribute : Cardinal`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `FillAttribute` is a WORD value which specifies the background and foreground colors of the console window.

See also: `TProcess.WindowHeight` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowWidth` ([1449](#)), `TProcess.WindowLeft` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowTop` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.WindowColumns` ([1447](#)), `TProcess.WindowRows` ([1448](#)), `TProcess.StartupOptions` ([1446](#))

55.6.53 TProcess.XTermProgram

Synopsis: XTerm program to use (UNIX only).

Declaration: `Property XTermProgram : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `XTermProgram` can be used to specify the console program to use when `poConsole` is specified in `TProcess.Options` ([1445](#)).

If none is specified, `DetectXTerm` ([1428](#)) is used to detect the terminal program to use. the list specified in `TryTerminals` is tried. If none is found, then the `DESKTOP_SESSION` environment variable is examined:

kde konsole is used if it is found.

gnome gnome-terminal is used if it is found

windowmaker atterm or xterm are used if found.

If after all this, no terminal is found, then a list of default programs is tested: 'x-terminal-emulator', 'xterm', 'aterm', 'wterm', 'rxvt'

See also: `TProcess.Options` ([1445](#)), `DetectXTerm` ([1428](#))

Chapter 56

Reference for unit 'RttiUtils'

56.1 Used units

Table 56.1: Used units by unit 'RttiUtils'

Name	Page
Classes	??
StrUtils	??
System	??
sysutils	??
TypeInfo	??

56.2 Overview

The `rttiutils` unit is a unit providing simplified access to the RTTI information from published properties using the `TPropInfoList` ([1453](#)) class. This access can be used when saving or restoring form properties at runtime, or for persisting other objects whose RTTI is available: the `TPropsStorage` ([1455](#)) class can be used for this. The implementation is based on the `apputils` unit from `RXLib` by *AO ROSNO* and *Master-Bank*

56.3 Constants, types and variables

56.3.1 Constants

```
sPropNameDelimiter : string = '_'
```

Separator used when constructing section/key names.

56.3.2 Types

```
TEraseSectEvent = procedure(const ASection: string) of object
```

TEraseSectEvent is used by TPropsStorage (1455) to clear a storage section, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should remove all keys in the section ASection, and remove the section from storage.

```
TFindComponentEvent = function(const Name: string) : TComponent
```

TFindComponentEvent should return the component instance for the component with name path Name. The name path should be relative to the global list of loaded components.

```
TPropStorageOption = (psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount)
```

Table 56.2: Enumeration values for type TPropStorageOption

Value	Explanation
psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount	Always store the count of strings. Default is not to store the count.

TPropStorageOption is the enumeration type used in the TPropsStorage.Options (1458) property of TPropsStorage (1455)

```
TPropStorageOptions = Set of TPropStorageOption = (psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount
)
```

TPropStorageOptions is the set of TPropStorageOption used in TPropsStorage.Options (1458).

```
TReadStrEvent = function(const ASection: string; const Item: string
;
                        const Default: string) : string of
object
```

TReadStrEvent is used by TPropsStorage (1455) to read strings from a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should read the string in ASection with key Item, and if it does not exist, Default should be returned.

```
TWriteStrEvent = procedure(const ASection: string; const Item: string
;
                        const Value: string) of object
```

TWriteStrEvent is used by TPropsStorage (1455) to write strings to a storage mechanism, in a .ini file like fashion: The call should write the string Value in ASection with key Item. The section and key should be created if they didn't exist yet.

56.3.3 Variables

```
FindGlobalComponentCallBack : TFindComponentEvent
```

FindGlobalComponentCallBack is called by UpdateStoredList (1452) whenever it needs to resolve component references. It should be set to a routine that locates a loaded component in the global list of loaded components.

56.4 Procedures and functions

56.4.1 CreateStoredItem

Synopsis: Concatenates component and property name.

Declaration:

```
function CreateStoredItem(const CompName: string;
                           const PropName: string) : string
```

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateStoredItem` concatenates `CompName` and `PropName` if they are both empty. The names are separated by a dot (.) character. If either of the names is empty, an empty string is returned.

This function can be used to create items for the list of properties such as used in `UpdateStoredList` (1452), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (1457) or `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (1457).

See also: `ParseStoredItem` (1452), `UpdateStoredList` (1452), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (1457), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (1457)

56.4.2 ParseStoredItem

Synopsis: Split a property reference to component reference and property name.

Declaration:

```
function ParseStoredItem(const Item: string; var CompName: string;
                           var PropName: string) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseStoredItem` parses the property reference `Item` and splits it in a reference to a component (returned in `CompName`) and a name of a property (returned in `PropName`). This function basically does the opposite of `CreateStoredItem` (1452). Note that both names should be non-empty, i.e., at least 1 dot character must appear in `Item`.

Errors: If an error occurred during parsing, `False` is returned.

See also: `CreateStoredItem` (1452), `UpdateStoredList` (1452), `TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps` (1457), `TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps` (1457)

56.4.3 UpdateStoredList

Synopsis: Update a stringlist with object references.

Declaration:

```
procedure UpdateStoredList (AComponent: TComponent;
                             AStoredList: TStringList; FromForm: Boolean)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `UpdateStoredList` will parse the strings in `AStoredList` using `ParseStoredItem` (1452) and will replace the `Objects` properties with the instance of the object whose name each property path in the list refers to. If `FromForm` is `True`, then all instances are searched relative to `AComponent`, i.e. they must be owned by `AComponent`. If `FromForm` is `False` the instances are searched in the global list of streamed components. (the `FindGlobalComponentCallBack` (1451) callback must be set for the search to work correctly in this case)

If a component cannot be found, the reference string to the property is removed from the stringlist.

Errors: If `AComponent` is `Nil`, an exception may be raised.

See also: [ParseStoredItem \(1452\)](#), [TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps \(1457\)](#), [TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps \(1457\)](#), [FindGlobalComponentCallBack \(1451\)](#)

56.5 TPropInfoList

56.5.1 Description

`TPropInfoList` is a class which can be used to maintain a list with information about published properties of a class (or an instance). It is used internally by [TPropsStorage \(1455\)](#)

See also: [TPropsStorage \(1455\)](#)

56.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1454	Contains	Check whether a certain property is included.
1453	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TPropInfoList</code> .
1454	Delete	Delete property information from the list.
1453	Destroy	Remove the <code>TPropInfoList</code> instance from memory.
1454	Find	Retrieve property information based on name.
1454	Intersect	Intersect 2 property lists.

56.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1455	Count	r	Number of items in the list.
1455	Items	r	Indexed access to the property type pointers.

56.5.4 TPropInfoList.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TPropInfoList`.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AObject: TObject; Filter: TTypeKinds; Sorted: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` allocates and initializes a new instance of `TPropInfoList` on the heap. It retrieves a list of published properties from `AObject`: if `Filter` is empty, then all properties are retrieved. If it is not empty, then only properties of the kind specified in the set are retrieved. Instance should not be `Nil`

See also: [Destroy \(1453\)](#)

56.5.5 TPropInfoList.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TPropInfoList` instance from memory.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the internal structures maintained by `TPropInfoList` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`.

See also: [Create \(1453\)](#)

56.5.6 TPropInfoList.Contains

Synopsis: Check whether a certain property is included.

Declaration: `function Contains(P: PPropInfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Contains` checks whether `P` is included in the list of properties, and returns `True` if it does. If `P` cannot be found, `False` is returned.

See also: [Find \(1454\)](#), [Intersect \(1454\)](#)

56.5.7 TPropInfoList.Find

Synopsis: Retrieve property information based on name.

Declaration: `function Find(const AName: string) : PPropInfo`

Visibility: public

Description: `Find` returns a pointer to the type information of the property `AName`. If no such information is available, the function returns `Nil`. The search is performed case insensitive.

See also: [Intersect \(1454\)](#), [Contains \(1454\)](#)

56.5.8 TPropInfoList.Delete

Synopsis: Delete property information from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Delete` deletes the property information at position `Index` from the list. It's mainly of use in the [Intersect \(1454\)](#) call.

Errors: No checking on the validity of `Index` is performed.

See also: [Intersect \(1454\)](#)

56.5.9 TPropInfoList.Intersect

Synopsis: Intersect 2 property lists.

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(List: TPropInfoList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Intersect` reduces the list of properties to the ones also contained in `List`, i.e. all properties which are not also present in `List` are removed.

See also: [Delete \(1454\)](#), [Contains \(1454\)](#)

56.5.10 TPropInfoList.Count

Synopsis: Number of items in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the number of property type pointers in the list.

See also: `Items` ([1455](#))

56.5.11 TPropInfoList.Items

Synopsis: Indexed access to the property type pointers.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: PPropInfo; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Items` provides access to the property type pointers stored in the list. `Index` runs from 0 to `Count-1`.

See also: `Count` ([1455](#))

56.6 TPropsStorage

56.6.1 Description

`TPropsStorage` provides a mechanism to store properties from any class which has published properties (usually a `TPersistent` descendent) in a storage mechanism.

`TPropsStorage` does not handle the storage by itself, instead, the storage is handled through a series of callbacks to read and/or write strings. Conversion of property types to string is handled by `TPropsStorage` itself: all that needs to be done is set the 3 handlers. The storage mechanism is assumed to have the structure of an `.ini` file : sections with key/value pairs. The three callbacks should take this into account, but they do not need to create an actual `.ini` file.

See also: `TPropInfoList` ([1453](#))

56.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1456	<code>LoadAnyProperty</code>	Load a property value.
1457	<code>LoadObjectsProps</code>	Load a list of component properties.
1457	<code>LoadProperties</code>	Load a list of properties.
1456	<code>StoreAnyProperty</code>	Store a property value.
1457	<code>StoreObjectsProps</code>	Store a list of component properties.
1456	<code>StoreProperties</code>	Store a list of properties.

56.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1458	AObject	rw	Object to load or store properties from.
1460	OnEraseSection	rw	Erase a section in storage.
1459	OnReadString	rw	Read a string value from storage.
1459	OnWriteString	rw	Write a string value to storage.
1458	Options	rw	Options to take into account when saving or loading properties from the storage.
1459	Prefix	rw	Prefix to use in storage.
1459	Section	rw	Section name for storage.

56.6.4 TPropsStorage.StoreAnyProperty

Synopsis: Store a property value.

Declaration: `procedure StoreAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreAnyProperty` stores the property with information specified in `PropInfo` in the storage mechanism. The property value is retrieved from the object instance specified in the AObject ([1458](#)) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or AObject is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([1458](#)), LoadAnyProperty ([1456](#)), LoadProperties ([1457](#)), StoreProperties ([1456](#))

56.6.5 TPropsStorage.LoadAnyProperty

Synopsis: Load a property value.

Declaration: `procedure LoadAnyProperty(PropInfo: PPropInfo)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadAnyProperty` loads the property with information specified in `PropInfo` from the storage mechanism. The value is then applied to the object instance specified in the AObject ([1458](#)) property of `TPropsStorage`.

Errors: If the property pointer is invalid or AObject is invalid, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([1458](#)), StoreAnyProperty ([1456](#)), LoadProperties ([1457](#)), StoreProperties ([1456](#))

56.6.6 TPropsStorage.StoreProperties

Synopsis: Store a list of properties.

Declaration: `procedure StoreProperties(PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreProperties` stores the values of all properties in `PropList` in the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the AObject ([1458](#)) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: AObject ([1458](#)), StoreAnyProperty ([1456](#)), LoadProperties ([1457](#)), LoadAnyProperty ([1456](#))

56.6.7 TPropsStorage.LoadProperties

Synopsis: Load a list of properties.

Declaration: `procedure LoadProperties (PropList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadProperties` loads the values of all properties in `PropList` from the storage mechanism. The list should contain names of published properties of the `AObject` (1458) object.

Errors: If an invalid property name is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `AObject` (1458), `StoreAnyProperty` (1456), `StoreProperties` (1456), `LoadAnyProperty` (1456)

56.6.8 TPropsStorage.LoadObjectsProps

Synopsis: Load a list of component properties.

Declaration: `procedure LoadObjectsProps (AComponent: TComponent; StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadObjectsProps` loads a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to load are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the componentname is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (1452) call.

For example, to load the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

```
CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption
```

and the `AComponent` should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the `AObject` (1458) property.

Errors: If an invalid component is specified, an exception will be raised.

See also: `UpdateStoredList` (1452), `StoreObjectsProps` (1457), `LoadProperties` (1457), `LoadAnyProperty` (1456)

56.6.9 TPropsStorage.StoreObjectsProps

Synopsis: Store a list of component properties.

Declaration: `procedure StoreObjectsProps (AComponent: TComponent;
StoredList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `StoreObjectsProps` stores a list of component properties, relative to `AComponent`: the names of the component properties to store are specified as follows:

```
ComponentName1.PropertyName
ComponentName2.Subcomponent1.PropertyName
```

The component instances will be located relative to `AComponent`, and must therefore be names of components owned by `AComponent`, followed by a valid property of these components. If the componentname is missing, the property name will be assumed to be a property of `AComponent` itself.

The `Objects` property of the stringlist should be filled with the instances of the components the property references refer to: they can be filled with the `UpdateStoredList` (1452) call.

For example, to store the checked state of a checkbox named 'CBCheckMe' and the caption of a button named 'BPressMe', both owned by a form, the following strings should be passed:

```
CBCheckMe.Checked
BPressMe.Caption
```

and the `AComponent` should be the form component that owns the button and checkbox.

Note that this call removes the value of the `AObject` (1458) property.

See also: `UpdateStoredList` (1452), `LoadObjectsProps` (1457), `LoadProperties` (1457), `LoadAnyProperty` (1456)

56.6.10 TPropsStorage.Options

Synopsis: Options to take into account when saving or loading properties from the storage.

Declaration: `Property Options : TPropStorageOptions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to tweak the behaviour of `TPropsStorage` when it loads or saves data to the storage. Currently the following options are available

psoAlwaysStoreStringsCount Always store the count of strings. Default is not to store the count.

See also: `TPropStorageOptions` (1451), `TPropStorageOption` (1451)

56.6.11 TPropsStorage.AObject

Synopsis: Object to load or store properties from.

Declaration: `Property AObject : TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `AObject` is the object instance whose properties will be loaded or stored with any of the methods in the `TPropsStorage` class. Note that a call to `StoreObjectProps` (1457) or `LoadObjectProps` (1457) will destroy any value that this property might have.

See also: `LoadProperties` (1457), `LoadAnyProperty` (1456), `StoreProperties` (1456), `StoreAnyProperty` (1456), `StoreObjectProps` (1457), `LoadObjectProps` (1457)

56.6.12 TPropsStorage.Prefix

Synopsis: Prefix to use in storage.

Declaration: `Property Prefix : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Prefix` is prepended to all property names to form the key name when writing a property to storage, or when reading a value from storage. This is useful when storing properties of multiple forms in a single section.

See also: `TPropsStorage.Section` ([1459](#))

56.6.13 TPropsStorage.Section

Synopsis: Section name for storage.

Declaration: `Property Section : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Section` is used as the section name when writing values to storage. Note that when writing properties of subcomponents, their names will be appended to the value specified here.

See also: `TPropsStorage.Section` ([1459](#))

56.6.14 TPropsStorage.OnReadString

Synopsis: Read a string value from storage.

Declaration: `Property OnReadString : TReadStrEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnReadString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to read a string from storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be loaded, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnWriteString` ([1459](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([1460](#)), `TReadStrEvent` ([1451](#))

56.6.15 TPropsStorage.OnWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to storage.

Declaration: `Property OnWriteString : TWriteStrEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnWriteString` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to write a string to storage. It should be set whenever properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([1459](#)), `OnEraseSection` ([1460](#)), `TWriteStrEvent` ([1451](#))

56.6.16 TPropsStorage.OnEraseSection

Synopsis: Erase a section in storage.

Declaration: `Property OnEraseSection : TEraseSectEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OnEraseSection` is the event handler called whenever `TPropsStorage` needs to clear a complete storage section. It should be set whenever stringlist properties need to be stored, or an exception will be raised.

See also: `OnReadString` ([1459](#)), `OnWriteString` ([1459](#)), `TEraseSectEvent` ([1450](#))

Chapter 57

Reference for unit 'simpleipc'

57.1 Used units

Table 57.1: Used units by unit 'simpleipc'

Name	Page
Classes	??
Contrns	284
syncobjs	1607
System	??
sysutils	??

57.2 Overview

The SimpleIPC unit provides classes to implement a simple, one-way IPC mechanism using string messages. It provides a TSimpleIPCServer ([1478](#)) component for the server, and a TSimpleIPCClient ([1475](#)) component for the client. The components are cross-platform, and should work both on Windows and UNIX-like systems.

The Unix implementation of the SimpleIPC unit uses file-based sockets. It will attempt to clean up any registered server socket files that were not removed cleanly.

It does this in the unit finalization code. It does not install a signal handler by itself, that is the task of the programmer. But program crashes (access violations and such) that are handled by the RTL will be handled gracefully.

This also means that if the process is killed with the KILL signal, it has no chance of removing the files (KILL signals cannot be caught), in which case socket files may remain in the file system. However, the client code attempts to cater for this and will remove the stale sockets if it detects them.

Under Windows, the communication is done through WM_COPYDATA messages. Starting from Windows Vista it is forbidden to send messages between service applications and desktop applications, so a SimpleIPC client in a desktop application cannot connect to a SimpleIPC server in a service application and vice versa.

57.3 Constants, types and variables

57.3.1 Resource strings

```
SErrActive =
    'This operation is illegal when the server is active.'
```

Error message if client/server is active.

```
SErrInactive =
    'This operation is illegal when the server is inactive.'
```

Error message if client/server is not active.

```
SErrMessageQueueOverflow = 'Message queue overflow (limit %s)'
```

Too many messages in the message queue.

```
SErrServerNotActive = 'Server with ID %s is not active.'
```

Error message if server is not active.

```
SErrThreadContext =
    'This operation is illegal outside of IPC thread context.'
```

Thread context error message.

```
SErrThreadFailure = 'IPC thread failure.'
```

Thread failure message.

57.3.2 Constants

```
MsgVersion = 1
```

Current version of the messaging protocol.

```
mtString = 1
```

String message type.

```
mtUnknown = 0
```

Unknown message type.

57.3.3 Types

```
TIPCCClientCommClass = class of TIPCCClientComm
```

`TIPCCClientCommClass` is used by `TSimpleIPCCClient` ([1475](#)) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```
TIPCMessageOverflowAction = (ipcmoaNone, ipcmoaDiscardOld,
    ipcmoaDiscardNew, ipcmoaError)
```

Table 57.2: Enumeration values for type TIPCMessageOverflowAction

Value	Explanation
ipcmoaDiscardNew	Discard the new message.
ipcmoaDiscardOld	Discard the oldest message.
ipcmoaError	Raise an error.
ipcmoaNone	Do nothing, just add the message.

TIPCMessageOverflowAction describes what will happen if the message queue hits the size limit for the queue.

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

```
TIPCServerCommClass = class of TIPCServerComm
```

TIPCServerCommClass is used by TSimpleIPCServer (1478) to decide which kind of communication channel to set up.

```
TMessageQueueEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; Msg: TIPCServerMsg
    )
    of object
```

TMessageQueueEvent is the signature of the event handler that is executed when a new message arrives on the server and the queue is full, and maxaction is ipcmoaError.

```
TMessageType = LongInt
```

TMessageType is provided for backward compatibility with earlier versions of the simpleipc unit.

57.3.4 Variables

```
DefaultIPCClientClass : TIPCCClientCommClass = Nil
```

DefaultIPCCClientClass is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the TSimpleIPCCClient (1475) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the SimpleIPC unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired. (it should match the communication protocol used by the server, obviously).

```
DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction : TIPCMessageOverflowAction = TSimpleIPCServer
    .DefaultMaxAction
```

DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction is the default for the message queue overflow action when a new queue is made.


```
DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit : Integer = TSimpleIPCServer
    .DefaultMaxQueue
```

DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction is the default for the maximum message queue size when a new queue is made. A zero size means no limit.

```
DefaultIPCServerClass : TIPCServerCommClass = Nil
```

DefaultIPCServerClass is filled with a class pointer indicating which kind of communication protocol class should be instantiated by the TSimpleIPCServer (1478) class. It is set to a default value by the default implementation in the SimpleIPC unit, but can be set to another class if another method of transport is desired.

57.4 TMsgHeader

```
TMsgHeader = packed record
    Version : Byte;
    MsgType : TMessageType
    ;
    MsgLen : Integer;
end
```

TMsgHeader is used internally by the IPC client and server components to transmit data. The Version field denotes the protocol version. The MsgType field denotes the type of data (mtString for string messages), and MsgLen is the length of the message which will follow.

57.5 EIPCErrors

57.5.1 Description

EIPCErrors is the exception used by the various classes in the SimpleIPC unit to report errors.

57.6 TIPCCClientComm

57.6.1 Description

TIPCCClientComm is an abstract component which implements the client-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The TSimpleIPCCClient (1475) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of TIPCCClientComm which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The server side of the messaging protocol is handled by the TIPCServerComm (1467) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: TSimpleIPCCClient (1475), TIPCServerComm (1467), TSimpleIPCServer (1478)

57.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1465	Connect	Connect to the server.
1465	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TIPCCClientComm</code> .
1465	Disconnect	Disconnect from the server.
1466	SendMessage	Send a message.
1466	ServerRunning	Check if the server is running.

57.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1466	Owner	r	<code>TSimpleIPCCClient</code> instance for which communication must be handled.

57.6.4 TIPCCClientComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TIPCCClientComm`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCCClient); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TIPCCClientComm` class, and stores the `AOwner` reference to the `TSimpleIPCCClient` ([1475](#)) instance for which it will handle communication. It can be retrieved later using the `Owner` ([1466](#)) property.

See also: `Owner` ([1466](#)), `TSimpleIPCCClient` ([1475](#))

57.6.5 TIPCCClientComm.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Connect; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Connect` must establish a communication channel with the server. The server endpoint must be constructed from the `ServerID` ([1474](#)) and `ServerInstance` ([1477](#)) properties of the owning `TSimpleIPCCClient` ([1475](#)) instance.

`Connect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCClient.Connect` ([1476](#)) call or when the `Active` ([1474](#)) property is set to `True`

Messages can be sent only after `Connect` was called successfully.

Errors: If the connection setup fails, or the connection was already set up, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCClient.Connect` ([1476](#)), `Active` ([1474](#)), `Disconnect` ([1465](#))

57.6.6 TIPCCClientComm.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server.

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Disconnect` closes the communication channel with the server. Any calls to `SendMessage` are invalid after `Disconnect` was called.

`Disconnect` is called by the `TSimpleIPCCClient.Disconnect` (1476) call or when the `Active` (1474) property is set to `False`.

Messages can no longer be sent after `Disconnect` was called.

Errors: If the connection shutdown fails, or the connection was already shut down, then an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCClient.Disconnect` (1476), `Active` (1474), `Connect` (1465)

57.6.7 TIPCCClientComm.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerRunning` returns `True` if the server endpoint for the communication channel can be found, or `False` if not. The server endpoint is obtained from the `ServerID` property in the owning `TSimpleIPCCClient` (1475) component.

See also: `ServerID` (1474), `InstanceID` (1482)

57.6.8 TIPCCClientComm.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message.

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream); virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SendMessage` should deliver the message with type `MsgType` and data in `Stream` to the server. It should not return until the message was delivered.

Errors: If the delivery of the message fails, an exception will be raised.

57.6.9 TIPCCClientComm.Owner

Synopsis: `TSimpleIPCCClient` instance for which communication must be handled.

Declaration: `Property Owner : TSimpleIPCCClient`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Owner` is the `TSimpleIPCCClient` (1475) instance for which the communication must be handled. It cannot be changed, and must be specified when the `TIPCCClientComm` instance is created.

See also: `TSimpleIPCCClient` (1475), `TIPCCClientComm.Create` (1465)

57.7 TIPCTServerComm

57.7.1 Description

`TIPCTServerComm` is an abstract component which implements the server-side communication protocol. The behaviour expected of this class must be implemented in a platform-dependent descendent class.

The `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478) class does not implement the messaging protocol by itself. Instead, it creates an instance of a (platform dependent) descendent of `TIPCTServerComm` which handles the internals of the communication protocol.

The client side of the messaging protocol is handled by the `TIPCClientComm` (1464) component. The descendent components must always be implemented in pairs.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478), `TIPCClientComm` (1464)

57.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1467	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of the communication handler.
1468	<code>PeekMessage</code>	See if a message is available.
1468	<code>ReadMessage</code>	Read message from the channel.
1467	<code>StartServer</code>	Start the server-side of the communication channel.
1468	<code>StopServer</code>	Stop the server side of the communication channel.

57.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1469	<code>InstanceID</code>	r	Unique identifier for the communication channel.
1469	<code>Owner</code>	r	<code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> instance for which to handle transport.

57.7.4 TIPCTServerComm.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the communication handler.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TSimpleIPCServer); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new instance of the communication handler. It simply saves the `AOwner` parameter in the `Owner` (1469) property.

See also: `Owner` (1469)

57.7.5 TIPCTServerComm.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server-side of the communication channel.

Declaration: `procedure StartServer; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartServer` sets up the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can connect to the communication channel, and send messages to the server.

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` (1474) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478) instance is set to `True`.

If `Threaded` is `True` then a background thread is started which will check for new messages periodically (see also `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeOut` (1485)). The arrival of new messages can be acted upon with `TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued` (1483).

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCErrors` (1464) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478), `TSimpleIPC.Active` (1474), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued` (1483), `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeOut` (1485)

57.7.6 TIPCServerComm.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server side of the communication channel.

Declaration: `procedure StopServer; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopServer` closes down the server-side of the communication channel. After `StartServer` was called, a client can no longer connect to the communication channel, or even send messages to the server if it was previously connected (i.e. it will be disconnected).

It is called when the `TSimpleIPC.Active` (1474) property of the `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478) instance is set to `False`.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EIPCErrors` (1464) exception is raised.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478), `TSimpleIPC.Active` (1474)

57.7.7 TIPCServerComm.PeekMessage

Synopsis: See if a message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage(Timeout: Integer) : Boolean; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` can be used to see if a message is available: it returns `True` if a message is available. It will wait maximum `Timeout` milliseconds for a message to arrive. If no message was available after this time, it will return `False`.

If a message was available, it can be read with the `ReadMessage` (1468) call.

See also: `ReadMessage` (1468)

57.7.8 TIPCServerComm.ReadMessage

Synopsis: Read message from the channel.

Declaration: `procedure ReadMessage; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadMessage` reads the message for the channel, and stores the information in the data structures in the `Owner` class.

`ReadMessage` is a blocking call: if no message is available, the program will wait till a message arrives. Use `PeekMessage` (1468) to see if a message is available.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` (1478)

57.7.9 TIPCTServerComm.Owner

Synopsis: TSimpleIPCServer instance for which to handle transport.

Declaration: Property Owner : TSimpleIPCServer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Owner refers to the TSimpleIPCServer (1478) instance for which this instance of TSimpleIPCServer handles the transport. It is specified when the TIPCTServerComm is created.

See also: TSimpleIPCServer (1478)

57.7.10 TIPCTServerComm.InstanceID

Synopsis: Unique identifier for the communication channel.

Declaration: Property InstanceID : string

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: InstanceID returns a textual representation which uniquely identifies the communication channel on the server. The value is system dependent, and should be usable by the client-side to establish a communication channel with this instance.

57.8 TIPCTServerMsg

57.8.1 Description

TIPCTServerMsg is an auxiliary class used in the IPC server class TSimpleIPCServer (1478). It keeps the data for 1 message. The set of messages is managed in TIPCTServerMsgQueue (1471). There should normally be no need to use this class directly.

See also: TIPCTServerMsgQueue (1471)

57.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1470	Create	Create a new instance of a server message.
1470	Destroy	Destroy an instance of a server message.

57.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1470	MsgType	rw	Message type.
1471	OwnsStream	rw	Does the message own the stream.
1470	Stream	r	Stream to store message data.
1471	StringMessage	r	String message sent by client.

57.8.4 TIPCServerMsg.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a server message.

Declaration: `constructor Create`
`constructor Create(AStream: TStream; AOwnsStream: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes the stream used to hold the message data.

See also: `TIPCServerMsg.Destroy` ([1470](#))

57.8.5 TIPCServerMsg.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy an instance of a server message.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the stream used to hold the message data.

See also: `TIPCServerMsg.Create` ([1470](#))

57.8.6 TIPCServerMsg.Stream

Synopsis: Stream to store message data.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Stream` contains the message data as binary data.

See also: `TIPCServerMsg.MsgType` ([1470](#))

57.8.7 TIPCServerMsg.MsgType

Synopsis: Message type.

Declaration: `Property MsgType : TMessageType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `MsgType` simply contains the message type. The possible message types are application defined.

See also: `TIPCServerMsg.Stream` ([1470](#))

57.8.8 TIPCTServerMsg.OwnsStream

Synopsis: Does the message own the stream.

Declaration: `Property OwnsStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OwnsStream` can be set to `true` to signal that the message should release the stream when the message is destroyed. The initial value can be specified in the constructor.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsg.Create` ([1470](#))

57.8.9 TIPCTServerMsg.StringMessage

Synopsis: String message sent by client.

Declaration: `Property StringMessage : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StringMessage` is the message sent by the client as a string.

57.9 TIPCTServerMsgQueue

57.9.1 Description

`TIPCTServerMsgQueue` implements a message queue with FIFO characteristics. It has support for a maximum queue length (`TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` ([1473](#))) and various ways of dealing with overflowing queue (`TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` ([1473](#)))

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` ([1473](#)), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` ([1473](#))

57.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1472	<code>Clear</code>	Clear the message queue.
1472	<code>Create</code>	Create a new message queue instance.
1472	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy server message queue instance.
1473	<code>Pop</code>	Remove the oldest message from the queue.
1472	<code>Push</code>	Add a new message to the queue.

57.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1473	<code>Count</code>	<code>r</code>	Number of messages in the queue.
1473	<code>MaxAction</code>	<code>rw</code>	Action to take when the number of messages will exceed <code>MaxCount</code> .
1473	<code>MaxCount</code>	<code>rw</code>	Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

57.9.4 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Create

Synopsis: Create a new message queue instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a list to contain the messages, and initializes `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (1473) and `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (1473) with their default values (`DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit` (1464) and `DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction` (1463), respectively)

Note that the messages are owned by the queue till they are popped of the queue.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (1473), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (1473), `DefaultIPCMessageQueueLimit` (1464), `DefaultIPCMessageOverflowAction` (1463)

57.9.5 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy server message queue instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` discards the remaining messages in the list and removes the message queue from memory.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Create` (1472), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Clear` (1472)

57.9.6 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Clear

Synopsis: Clear the message queue.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` discards the remaining messages in the list.

57.9.7 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Push

Synopsis: Add a new message to the queue.

Declaration: `procedure Push(AItem: TIPCTServerMsg)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Push` verifies if the message can be added to the queue (discarding old messages depending on the setting of `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (1473)) and adds the message `AItem` to the queue.

The message `AItem` is owned by the queue until it is popped off the queue.

Errors: If the maximum queue length is reached, and the `MaxAction` (1473) is set to `ipcmoaError`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` (1473), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction` (1473), `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Pop` (1473)

57.9.8 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Pop

Synopsis: Remove the oldest message from the queue.

Declaration: `function Pop : TIPCTServerMsg`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pop` removes the oldest message from the queue if there is one, and returns it. If none exists, `Nil` is returned. The caller is responsible for freeing the message instance.

Errors: None.

See also: `TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Push` ([1472](#))

57.9.9 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.Count

Synopsis: Number of messages in the queue.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the current number of messages in the queue.

See also: `MaxCount` ([1473](#))

57.9.10 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxCount

Synopsis: Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

Declaration: `Property MaxCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxCount` is the maximum number of messages in the queue. When this amount is zero, the amount of messages is unlimited.

When a new message is pushed, and the `Count` ([1473](#)) is equal to `MaxCount`, the `MaxAction` ([1473](#)) property is examined to know what to do.

See also: `Count` ([1473](#)), `MaxAction` ([1473](#))

57.9.11 TIPCTServerMsgQueue.MaxAction

Synopsis: Action to take when the number of messages will exceed `MaxCount`.

Declaration: `Property MaxAction : TIPCTMessageOverflowAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `MaxAction` determines what will happen if the current `Count` ([1473](#)) equals `MaxCount` ([1473](#)) and a new message is put in the queue using `Push` ([1472](#)):

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

See also: `TIPCServerMsgQueue.Count` ([1473](#)), `TIPCServerMsgQueue.MaxCount` ([1473](#)), `TIPCServerMsgQueue.Push` ([1472](#)), `TIPCMessageOverflowAction` ([1463](#))

57.10 TSimpleIPC

57.10.1 Description

`TSimpleIPC` is the common ancestor for the `TSimpleIPCServer` ([1478](#)) and `TSimpleIPCClient` ([1475](#)) classes. It implements some common properties between client and server.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer` ([1478](#)), `TSimpleIPCClient` ([1475](#))

57.10.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1474	Active	rw	Communication channel active.
1474	ServerID	rw	Unique server identification.

57.10.3 TSimpleIPC.Active

Synopsis: Communication channel active.

Declaration: `Property Active : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Active` can be set to `True` to set up the client or server end of the communication channel. For the server this means that the server end is set up, for the client it means that the client tries to connect to the server with `ServerID` ([1474](#)) identification.

See also: `ServerID` ([1474](#))

57.10.4 TSimpleIPC.ServerID

Synopsis: Unique server identification.

Declaration: `Property ServerID : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServerID` is the unique server identification: on the server, it determines how the server channel is set up, on the client it determines the server with which to connect.

The `ServerID` is used in filenames on some platforms, therefore you should not use characters that are not allowed or have special meaning (such as `/`) in filenames.

See also: `Active` ([1474](#))

57.11 TSimpleIPCClient

57.11.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCClient` is the client side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The client program should create a `TSimpleIPCClient` instance, set its `ServerID` property to the unique name for the server it wants to send messages to, and then set the `Active` property to `True`.

After the connection with the server was established, messages can be sent to the server with the `SendMessage` (1477) or `SendStringMessage` (1477) calls.

See also: `TSimpleIPCTServer` (1478), `TSimpleIPC` (1474), `TIPCCClientComm` (1464)

57.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1476	<code>Connect</code>	Connect to the server.
1475	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code> .
1475	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCClient</code> instance from memory.
1476	<code>Disconnect</code>	Disconnect from the server.
1477	<code>SendMessage</code>	Send a message to the server.
1477	<code>SendStringMessage</code>	Send a string message to the server.
1477	<code>SendStringMessageFmt</code>	Send a formatted string message.
1476	<code>ServerRunning</code>	Check if the server is running.

57.11.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1477	<code>ServerInstance</code>	rw	Server instance identification.

57.11.4 TSimpleIPCClient.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSimpleIPCClient`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TSimpleIPCClient` class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the client side of the communication.

See also: `Destroy` (1475)

57.11.5 TSimpleIPCClient.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TSimpleIPCClient` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` disconnects the client from the server if need be, and cleans up the internal data structures maintained by `TSimpleIPCClient` and then calls the inherited `Destroy`, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call `Destroy` directly, use the `Free` method instead or the `FreeAndNil` procedure in `SysUtils`.

See also: [Create \(1475\)](#)

57.11.6 TSimpleIPCClient.Connect

Synopsis: Connect to the server.

Declaration: `procedure Connect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Connect` connects to the server indicated in the `ServerID` ([1474](#)) and `InstanceID` ([1482](#)) properties. `Connect` is called automatically if the `Active` ([1474](#)) property is set to `True`.

After a successful call to `Connect`, messages can be sent to the server using `SendMessage` ([1477](#)) or `SendStringMessage` ([1477](#)).

Calling `Connect` if the connection is already open has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPCErr` ([1464](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: `ServerID` ([1474](#)), `InstanceID` ([1475](#)), `Active` ([1474](#)), `SendMessage` ([1477](#)), `SendStringMessage` ([1477](#)), `Disconnect` ([1476](#))

57.11.7 TSimpleIPCClient.Disconnect

Synopsis: Disconnect from the server.

Declaration: `procedure Disconnect`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Disconnect` shuts down the connection with the server as previously set up with `Connect` ([1476](#)). `Disconnect` is called automatically if the `Active` ([1474](#)) property is set to `False`.

After a successful call to `Disconnect`, messages can no longer be sent to the server. Attempting to do so will result in an exception.

Calling `Disconnect` if there is no connection has no effect.

Errors: If creating the connection fails, an `EIPCErr` ([1464](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: `Active` ([1474](#)), `Connect` ([1476](#))

57.11.8 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerRunning

Synopsis: Check if the server is running.

Declaration: `function ServerRunning : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerRunning` verifies if the server indicated in the `ServerID` ([1474](#)) and `InstanceID` ([1482](#)) properties is running. It returns `True` if the server communication endpoint can be reached, `False` otherwise. This function can be called before a connection is made.

See also: `Connect` ([1476](#))

57.11.9 TSimpleIPCClient.SendMessage

Synopsis: Send a message to the server.

Declaration: `procedure SendMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendMessage` sends a message of type `MsgType` and data from `stream` to the server. The client must be connected for this call to work.

Errors: In case an error occurs, or there is no connection to the server, an `EIPCErr` (1464) exception is raised.

See also: `Connect` (1476), `SendStringMessage` (1477)

57.11.10 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessage

Synopsis: Send a string message to the server.

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessage(const Msg: string)`
`procedure SendStringMessage(MsgType: TMessageType; const Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessage` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and data `Msg` to the server. This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendMessage` (1477) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (1477), `Connect` (1476), `SendStringMessageFmt` (1477)

57.11.11 TSimpleIPCClient.SendStringMessageFmt

Synopsis: Send a formatted string message.

Declaration: `procedure SendStringMessageFmt(const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`
`procedure SendStringMessageFmt(MsgType: TMessageType;`
`const Msg: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SendStringMessageFmt` sends a string message with type `MsgType` and message formatted from `Msg` and `Args` to the server. This is a convenience function: a small wrapper around the `SendStringMessage` (1477) method

Errors: Same as for `SendMessage`.

See also: `SendMessage` (1477), `Connect` (1476), `SendStringMessage` (1477)

57.11.12 TSimpleIPCClient.ServerInstance

Synopsis: Server instance identification.

Declaration: `Property ServerInstance : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ServerInstance` should be used in case a particular instance of the server identified with `ServerID` should be contacted. This must be used if the server has its `Global` (1482) property set to `False`, and should match the server's `InstanceID` (1482) property.

See also: `ServerID` (1474), `Global` (1482), `InstanceID` (1482)

57.12 TSimpleIPCServer

57.12.1 Description

`TSimpleIPCServer` is the server side of the simple IPC communication protocol. The server program should create a `TSimpleIPCServer` instance, set its `ServerID` (1474) property to a unique name for the system, and then set the `Active` (1474) property to `True` (or call `StartServer` (1479)).

After the server was started, it can check for availability of messages with the `PeekMessage` (1480) call, and read the message with `ReadMessage` (1480).

See also: `TSimpleIPCClient` (1475), `TSimpleIPC` (1474), `TIPCServerComm` (1467)

57.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1479	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> .
1479	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSimpleIPCServer</code> instance from memory.
1480	GetMessageData	Read the data of the last message in a stream.
1480	PeekMessage	Check if a client message is available.
1480	ReadMessage	Read message from the queue.
1479	StartServer	Start the server.
1480	StopServer	Stop the server.

57.12.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1482	Global	rw	Is the server reachable to all users or not.
1482	InstanceID	r	Instance ID.
1484	MaxAction	rw	Action to take when the number of messages will exceed <code>MaxQueue</code> .
1484	MaxQueue	rw	Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.
1481	Message	r	Last read message.
1481	MsgData	r	Last message data.
1481	MsgType	r	Last message type.
1483	OnMessage	rw	Event triggered when a message arrives.
1483	OnMessageError	rw	Event called when a new message has arrived, and the queue is full.
1483	OnMessageQueued	rw	Event called when a new message has arrived.
1483	OnThreadError	rw	Triggered when a thread reports an error.
1481	StringMessage	r	Last message as a string.
1485	SynchronizeEvents	rw	Should events be run in the main thread ?
1484	Threaded	rw	Is the server running threaded or not ?
1482	ThreadError	r	Last thread error.
1482	ThreadExecuting	r	Is the message thread currently executing ?
1485	ThreadTimeout	rw	Timeout waiting for message.

57.12.4 TSimpleIPCServer.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TSimpleIPCServer.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new instance of the TSimpleIPCServer class. It initializes the data structures needed to handle the server side of the communication.

See also: Destroy ([1479](#))

57.12.5 TSimpleIPCServer.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TSimpleIPCServer instance from memory.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy stops the server, cleans up the internal data structures maintained by TSimpleIPCServer and then calls the inherited Destroy, which will remove the instance from memory.

Never call Destroy directly, use the Free method instead or the FreeAndNil procedure in SysUtils.

See also: Create ([1479](#))

57.12.6 TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer

Synopsis: Start the server.

Declaration: procedure StartServer
procedure StartServer(AThreaded: Boolean)

Visibility: public

Description: StartServer starts the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the Active property is set to True. It creates the internal communication object (a TIPCServerComm ([1467](#)) descendent) and activates the communication channel.

The aThreaded property can be used to force or disable threaded mode: in threaded mode, a thread is started that automatically checks for new messages and puts them on a queue. If the argument is not specified, then the property TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded ([1484](#)) is examined to know whether to start in threaded mode or not.

After this method was called, clients can connect and send messages.

Prior to calling this method, the ServerID ([1474](#)) property must be set.

Errors: If an error occurs a EIPCErrror ([1464](#)) exception may be raised.

See also: TIPCServerComm ([1467](#)), Active ([1474](#)), ServerID ([1474](#)), StopServer ([1480](#)), TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded ([1484](#))

57.12.7 TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer

Synopsis: Stop the server.

Declaration: `procedure StopServer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StopServer` stops the server side of the communication channel. It is called automatically when the `Active` property is set to `False`. It deactivates the communication channel and frees the internal communication object (a `TIPCServerComm` (1467) descendent).

See also: `TIPCServerComm` (1467), `Active` (1474), `ServerID` (1474), `StartServer` (1479)

57.12.8 TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage

Synopsis: Check if a client message is available.

Declaration: `function PeekMessage(Timeout: Integer; DoReadMessage: Boolean) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `PeekMessage` checks if a message from a client is available. It will return `True` if a message is available. The call will wait for `Timeout` milliseconds for a message to arrive: if after `Timeout` milliseconds, no message is available, the function will return `False`.

If `DoReadMessage` is `True` then `PeekMessage` will read the message. If it is `False`, it does not read the message. The message should then be read manually with `ReadMessage` (1480).

See also: `ReadMessage` (1480)

57.12.9 TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage

Synopsis: Read message from the queue.

Declaration: `function ReadMessage : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadMessage` will read the oldest message from the queue, and make it available in `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType` (1481) and `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (1481)

It is safe to call this even if a watch thread is started.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType` (1481), `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (1481)

57.12.10 TSimpleIPCServer.GetMessageData

Synopsis: Read the data of the last message in a stream.

Declaration: `procedure GetMessageData(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetMessageData` reads the data of the last message from `TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData` (1481) and stores it in stream `Stream`. If no data was available, the stream will be cleared.

This function will return valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (1480). It will also not clear the data buffer.

See also: `StringMessage` (1481), `MsgData` (1481), `MsgType` (1481)

57.12.11 TSimpleIPCServer.StringMessage

Synopsis: Last message as a string.

Declaration: `Property StringMessage : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `StringMessage` is the content of the last message as a string.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (1480).

See also: `GetMessageData` (1480)

57.12.12 TSimpleIPCServer.Message

Synopsis: Last read message.

Declaration: `Property Message : TIPCServerMsg`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Message` is the last read message (using `TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage` (1480)) from the message queue.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ReadMessage` (1480)

57.12.13 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgType

Synopsis: Last message type.

Declaration: `Property MsgType : TMessageType`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `MsgType` contains the message type of the last message.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (1480).

See also: `ReadMessage` (1480)

57.12.14 TSimpleIPCServer.MsgData

Synopsis: Last message data.

Declaration: `Property MsgData : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `MsgData` contains the actual data from the last read message. If the data is a string, then `StringMessage` (1481) is better suited to read the data.

This property will contain valid data only after a successful call to `ReadMessage` (1480).

See also: `StringMessage` (1481), `ReadMessage` (1480)

57.12.15 TSimpleIPCServer.InstanceID

Synopsis: Instance ID.

Declaration: `Property InstanceID : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `InstanceID` is the unique identifier for this server communication channel endpoint, and will be appended to the `ServerID` (1474) property to form the unique server endpoint which a client should use.

See also: `ServerID` (1474), `Global` (1482)

57.12.16 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting

Synopsis: Is the message thread currently executing ?

Declaration: `Property ThreadExecuting : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ThreadExecuting` is true if the server is currently running a message loop in a thread and the thread is in an executing state.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError` (1482), `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` (1479), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError` (1483), `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (1484)

57.12.17 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError

Synopsis: Last thread error.

Declaration: `Property ThreadError : string`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ThreadError` is the last error reported by the thread (or none if no error was caught).

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting` (1482), `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` (1479), `TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError` (1483), `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` (1484)

57.12.18 TSimpleIPCServer.Global

Synopsis: Is the server reachable to all users or not.

Declaration: `Property Global : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Global` indicates whether the server is reachable to all users (`True`) or if it is private to the current process (`False`). In the latter case, the unique channel endpoint identification may change: a unique identification of the current process is appended to the `ServerID` name.

See also: `ServerID` (1474), `InstanceID` (1482)

57.12.19 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessage

Synopsis: Event triggered when a message arrives.

Declaration: Property OnMessage : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMessage is called by ReadMessage (1480) when a message has been read. The actual message data can be retrieved with one of the StringMessage (1481), MsgData (1481) or MsgType (1481) properties.

See also: StringMessage (1481), MsgData (1481), MsgType (1481)

57.12.20 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageQueued

Synopsis: Event called when a new message has arrived.

Declaration: Property OnMessageQueued : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMessageQueued is an event handler that is called whenever a new message is pushed on the queue.

See also: TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage (1480), TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError (1483)

57.12.21 TSimpleIPCServer.OnMessageError

Synopsis: Event called when a new message has arrived, and the queue is full.

Declaration: Property OnMessageError : TMessageQueueEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnMessageError is called whenever the message queue is full and a new message arrives on the server, andMaxAction (1473) isipcmoaError.

57.12.22 TSimpleIPCServer.OnThreadError

Synopsis: Triggered when a thread reports an error.

Declaration: Property OnThreadError : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnThreadError is triggered when the server thread reports an error. The actual error message can be examined in TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError (1482)

See also: TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadExecuting (1482), TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer (1479), TSimpleIPC-Server.OnThreadError (1483), TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadError (1482), TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded (1484)

57.12.23 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue

Synopsis: Maximum number of messages in the queue, 0 for unlimited.

Declaration: `Property MaxQueue : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxQueue` is the maximum number of messages in the queue. When this amount is zero, the amount of messages is unlimited.

When a new message is pushed, and the `Count` (1473) is equal to `MaxQueue`, the `MaxAction` (1484) property is examined to know what to do.

See also: `MaxAction` (1484)

57.12.24 TSimpleIPCServer.MaxAction

Synopsis: Action to take when the number of messages will exceed `MaxQueue`.

Declaration: `Property MaxAction : TIPCMessagesOverflowAction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `MaxAction` determines what will happen if the number of messages on the queue equals `MaxQueue` (1484) and a new message is put in the queue during `PeekMessage` (1480):

Do nothing, just add the message.

Discard the oldest message.

Discard the new message.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.MaxQueue` (1484), `TSimpleIPCServer.PeekMessage` (1480), `TIPCMessagesOverflowAction` (1463)

57.12.25 TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded

Synopsis: Is the server running threaded or not ?

Declaration: `Property Threaded : Boolean`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Threaded` indicates whether the server was started in threaded mode or not. It can be set before calling `StartServer` (1479). Trying to set it when the server is started will result in an error.

See also: `StartServer` (1479)

57.12.26 TSimpleIPCServer.ThreadTimeout

Synopsis: Timeout waiting for message.

Declaration: `Property ThreadTimeout : Integer`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ThreadTimeOut` is the time the thread will wait for messages between loop iterations, if the server is started with threading enabled.

When stopping the server, this is also the maximum time the server will be blocked when stopping, because it needs to wait for the thread to stop.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.StartServer` ([1479](#)), `TSimpleIPCServer.StopServer` ([1480](#))

57.12.27 TSimpleIPCServer.SynchronizeEvents

Synopsis: Should events be run in the main thread ?

Declaration: `Property SynchronizeEvents : Boolean`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SynchronizeEvents` can be set to `True` to force execution of events in the main thread, when the server is running in threaded mode. If set to `False`, the events will be triggered in the thread responsible for checking messages. It is ignored when the server is not running threaded. It cannot be set when the server is already started.

See also: `TSimpleIPCServer.Threaded` ([1484](#)), `StartServer` ([1479](#))

Chapter 58

Reference for unit 'singleinstance'

58.1 Used units

Table 58.1: Used units by unit 'singleinstance'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

58.2 Overview

`Singleinstance` contains the basic abstract definition of a class `TBaseSingleInstance` (1487) that, when instantiated, will make sure only 1 instance of your application will be running. It is an abstract instance, you need to instantiate a descendent such as can be found in the `advancedsingleinstance` (1486) unit.

In this document, the first started instance of an application is called the `Server`, any application started later is called a `Client` application.

The single instance functionality also provides a mechanism to communicate parameters from the client to the server. For example, an editor started a second time may wish to pass any filenames to be opened to the server instance.

58.3 Constants, types and variables

58.3.1 Types

```
TBaseSingleInstanceClass = class of TBaseSingleInstance
```

`TBaseSingleInstanceClass` is the class of `TBaseSingleInstance` (1487). It is also the type of the `DefaultSingleInstanceClass` (1487) variable.

```
TSingleInstanceParamsEvent = procedure(Sender: TBaseSingleInstance  
;
```


58.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1489	ClientPostParams	Send parameters to the server.
1488	Create	Create a new instance of the <code>TBaseSingleInstance</code> class.
1488	Destroy	Stop waiting and destroy the instance.
1489	ServerCheckMessages	Check for messages from a client application.
1488	Start	Check if another instance of the application is running.
1489	Stop	Stop the current instance.

58.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1491	IsClient	r	Is this application the client instance ?
1491	IsServer	r	Is this application the server instance ?
1490	OnServerReceivedParams	rw	Event triggered during <code>ServerCheckMessages</code> .
1490	StartResult	r	Contains the result of the last <code>Start</code> call.
1490	TimeoutMessages	rw	Timeout when waiting for messages.
1490	TimeoutWaitForInstances	rw	Timeout when trying to contact server instance.

58.5.4 TBaseSingleInstance.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the `TBaseSingleInstance` class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` calls the inherited constructor and then initializes some properties `TimeoutMessages` ([1490](#)) and `TimeoutWaitForInstances` ([1490](#))

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy` ([1488](#)), `TimeoutMessages` ([1490](#)), `TimeoutWaitForInstances` ([1490](#))

58.5.5 TBaseSingleInstance.Destroy

Synopsis: Stop waiting and destroy the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` calls `Stop` ([1489](#)) and calls the inherited destructor.

See also: `Stop` ([1489](#))

58.5.6 TBaseSingleInstance.Start

Synopsis: Check if another instance of the application is running.

Declaration: `function Start : TSingleInstanceStart; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Start` will check if another instance is running. It returns the result of the check, and the result is also stored in `StartResult` ([1490](#))

siServerThe current instance is the server (first started).

siClientThe current instance is the client (another instance was started earlier).

siNotRespondingThe first instance is not responding.

See also: [StartResult \(1490\)](#), [TSingleInstanceStart \(1487\)](#)

58.5.7 TBaseSingleInstance.Stop

Synopsis: Stop the current instance.

Declaration: `procedure Stop; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Stop` will disable the communication mechanism that ensures only a single instance is running. After it has been called in the server application, if another application calls `Start (1488)`, then it will become the server (i.e. the result is `siServer`). If it is called in a client application, there is no effect.

See also: [Start \(1488\)](#)

58.5.8 TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages

Synopsis: Check for messages from a client application.

Declaration: `procedure ServerCheckMessages; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ServerCheckMessages` must be called at regular intervals by the server application to see if any client application sent messages (using `TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams (1489)`). This is part of the mechanism to communicate parameters from the client to the server. If there are any messages, then the `OnServerReceivedParams (1490)` event will be triggered once for any client that sent parameters.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams (1489)`

58.5.9 TBaseSingleInstance.ClientPostParams

Synopsis: Send parameters to the server.

Declaration: `procedure ClientPostParams; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClientPostParams` must be called to send the client command-line parameters to the server application. The mechanism used to send these parameters depends on the used descendent of the `TBaseSingleInstance (1487)` class.

See also: `TBaseSingleInstance.ServerCheckMessages (1489)`

58.5.10 TBaseSingleInstance.TimeoutMessages

Synopsis: Timeout when waiting for messages.

Declaration: `Property TimeoutMessages : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `TimeoutMessages` is the timeout (in milliseconds) used by `ServerCheckMessages` (1489) when checking for messages sent by client applications.

See also: `ServerCheckMessages` (1489), `TimeoutWaitForInstances` (1490)

58.5.11 TBaseSingleInstance.TimeoutWaitForInstances

Synopsis: Timeout when trying to contact server instance.

Declaration: `Property TimeoutWaitForInstances : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `TimeoutMessages` is the timeout (in milliseconds) used by `Start` (1488) call when checking for another instance of the application.

See also: `Start` (1488), `TimeoutMessages` (1490)

58.5.12 TBaseSingleInstance.OnServerReceivedParams

Synopsis: Event triggered during `ServerCheckMessages`.

Declaration: `Property OnServerReceivedParams : TSingleInstanceParamsEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `OnServerReceivedParams` is the event triggered when `ServerCheckMessages` (1489) is called, and a client sent a message to the server. The `Params` parameter contains the commandline parameters that the client sent, one per string in the list.

58.5.13 TBaseSingleInstance.StartResult

Synopsis: Contains the result of the last `Start` call.

Declaration: `Property StartResult : TSingleInstanceStart`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `StartResult` contains the result of the last `Start` (1488) call.

See also: `Start` (1488)

58.5.14 TBaseSingleInstance.IsServer

Synopsis: Is this application the server instance ?

Declaration: `Property IsServer : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsServer` is a convenience property, it is `True` if `StartResult` ([1490](#)) equals `siServer`.

See also: `IsClient` ([1491](#)), `Start` ([1488](#)), `StartResult` ([1490](#))

58.5.15 TBaseSingleInstance.IsClient

Synopsis: Is this application the client instance ?

Declaration: `Property IsClient : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `IsClient` is a convenience property, it is `True` if `StartResult` ([1490](#)) equals `siClient`.

See also: `IsServer` ([1491](#)), `Start` ([1488](#)), `StartResult` ([1490](#))

Chapter 59

Reference for unit 'SQLDB'

59.1 Used units

Table 59.1: Used units by unit 'SQLDB'

Name	Page
BufDataset	213
Classes	??
DB	440
sqlscript	??
SQLTypes	1569
System	??
sysutils	??

59.2 Overview

The SQLDB unit defines four main classes to handle data in SQL based databases.

1. TSQLConnection ([1520](#)) represents the connection to the database. Here, properties pertaining to the connection (machine, database, user password) must be set. This is an abstract class, which should not be used directly. Per database type (mysql, firebird, postgres, oracle, sqlite) a descendent should be made and used.
2. TSQLQuery ([1535](#)) is a `#fcl.db.TDataset` ([498](#)) descendent which can be used to view and manipulate the result of an SQL select query. It can also be used to execute all kinds of SQL statements.
3. TSQLTransaction ([1564](#)) represents the transaction in which an SQL command is running. SQLDB supports multiple simultaneous transactions in a database connection. For databases that do not support this functionality natively, it is simulated by maintaining multiple connections to the database.
4. TSQLScript ([1551](#)) can be used when many SQL commands must be executed on a database, for example when creating a database.

There is also a unified way to retrieve schema information, and a registration for connector types. More information on how to use these components can be found in UsingSQLDB ([1493](#)).

59.3 Using SQLDB to access databases.

SQLDB can be used to connect to any SQL capable database. It allows to execute SQL statements on any supported database type in a uniform way, and allows to fetch and manipulate result sets (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement) using a standard `TDataset` (498) interface. SQLDB takes care that updates to the database are posted automatically to the database, in a cached manner.

When using SQLDB, 3 components are always needed:

1. A `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent. This represents the connection to the database: the location of the database, and the username and password to authenticate the connection must be specified here. For each supported database type (Firebird, PostgreSQL, MySQL) there is a separate connection component. They all descend from `TSQLConnection`.
2. A `TSQLTransaction` (1564) component. SQLDB allows you to have multiple active but independent transactions in your application. (useful for instance in middle-tier applications). If the native database client library does not support this directly, it is emulated using multiple connections to the database.
3. A `TSQLQuery` (1535) component. This encapsulates an SQL statement. Any kind of SQL statement can be executed. The `TSQLQuery` component is a `TDataset` descendent: If the statement returns a result set, then it can be manipulated using the usual `TDataset` mechanisms.

The 3 components must be linked together: the connection must point to a default transaction (it is used to execute certain queries for metadata), the transaction component must point to a connection component. The `TSQLQuery` component must point to both a transaction and a database.

So in order to view the contents of a table, typically the procedure goes like this:

```
{ $mode objfpc } { $h+ }
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    // Set credentials.
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';
    // Create a transaction.
    T:=TSQLTransaction.Create( C );
    // Point to the database instance
    T.Database:=C;
    // Now we can open the database.
    C.Connected:=True;
    // Create a query to return data
    Q:=TSQLQuery.Create( C );
    // Point to database and transaction.
```

```

Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL select statement
Q.SQL.Text:='SELECT * FROM USERS';
// And now use the standard TDataset methods.
Q.Open;
While not Q.EOF do
begin
  Writeln(Q.FieldName('U_NAME').AsString);
  Q.Next;
end;
Q.Close;
finally
  C.Free;
end;
end.

```

The above code is quite simple. The connection type is `TIBConnection`, which is used for Firebird/Interbase databases. To connect to another database (for instance PostgreSQL), the exact same code could be used, but instead of a `TIBConnection`, a `TPQConnection` component must be used:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, pqconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  // Create a connection.
  C:=TPQConnection.Create( Nil );

```

The rest of the code remains identical.

The above code used an SQL SELECT statement and the `Open` method to fetch data from the database. Almost the same method applies when trying to execute other kinds of queries, such as DDL queries:

```

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}
uses sqlldb, ibconnection;

Var
  C : TSQLConnection;
  T : TSQLTransaction;
  Q : TSQLQuery;

begin
  C:=TIBConnection.Create( Nil );
  try
    C.UserName:='MyUSER';
    C.Password:='Secret';
    C.DatabaseName:='/home/firebird/events.fb';

```

```

T:=TSQLTransaction.Create(C);
T.Database:=C;
C.Connected:=True;
Q:=TSQLQuery.Create(C);
Q.Database:=C;
Q.Transaction:=T;
// Set the SQL statement. SQL is a tstrings instance.
With Q.SQL do
begin
Add('CREATE TABLE USERS ( ');
Add(' U_NAME VARCHAR(50), ');
Add(' U_PASSWORD VARCHAR(50) ');
Add(' ) ');
end;
// And now execute the query using ExecSQL
// There is no result, so Open cannot be used.
Q.ExecSQL;
// Commit the transaction.
T.Commit;
finally
C.Free;
end;
end.

```

As can be seen from the above example, the setup is the same as in the case of fetching data. Note that `TSQLQuery` (1535) can only execute 1 SQL statement during `ExecSQL`. If many SQL statements must be executed, `TSQLScript` (1551) must be used.

There is much more to `TSQLQuery` than explained here: it can use parameters (see `UsingParams` (1497)) and it can automatically update the data that you edit in it (see `UpdateSQLs` (1496)).

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TSQLTransaction` (1564), `TSQLQuery` (1535), `TSQLConnector` (1531), `TSQLScript` (1551), `UsingParams` (1497), `UpdateSQLs` (1496)

59.4 Using the universal `TSQLConnector` type.

The normal procedure when using `SQLDB` is to use one of the `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent components. When the database backend changes, another descendent of `TSQLConnection` must be used. When using a lot of different connection types and components, this may be confusing and a lot of work.

There is a universal connector component `TSQLConnector` (1531) which can connect to any database supported by `SQLDB`: it works as a proxy. Behind the scenes it uses a normal `TSQLConnection` descendent to do the real work. All this happens transparently to the user code, the universal connector acts and works like any normal connection component.

The type of database can be set in its `ConnectorType` (1532) property. By setting the `ConnectorType` property, the connector knows which `TSQLConnection` descendent must be created.

Each `TSQLConnection` descendent registers itself with a unique name in the initialization section of the unit implementing it: this is the name that should be specified in the `ConnectorType` of the universal connection. The list of available connections can be retrieved with the `GetConnectionList` (1506) call.

From this mechanism it follows that before a particular connection type can be used, its definition must be present in the list of connector types. This means that the unit of the connection type

(`ibconnection`, `pqconnection` etc.) must be included in the `uses` clause of the program file: if it is not included, the connection type will not be registered, and it will not be available for use in the universal connector.

The universal connector only exposes the properties common to all connection types (the ones in `TSQLConnection`). It does not expose properties for all the properties available in specific `TSQLConnection` descendents. This means that if connection-specific options must be used, they must be included in the `Params` (1531) property of the universal connector in the form `Name=Value`. When the actual connection instance is created, the connection-specific properties will be set from the specified parameters.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TSQLConnector` (1531)

59.5 Retrieving Schema Information.

Schema Information (lists of available database objects) can be retrieved using some specialized calls in `TSQLConnection` (1520):

- `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (1523) retrieves a list of available tables. The system tables can be requested.
- `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (1523) retrieves a list of available stored procedures.
- `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (1524) retrieves a list of fields for a given table.

These calls are pretty straightforward and need little explanation. A more versatile system is the schema info query: the `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (1513) method can be used to create a result set (dataset) with schema information. The parameter `SchemaType` determines the resulting information when the dataset is opened. The following information can be requested:

stTables Retrieves the list of user Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (1523).

stSysTables Retrieves the list of system Tables in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (1523) when the system tables are requested

stProcedures Retrieves a list of stored procedures in database. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (1523).

stColumns Retrieves the list of columns (fields) in a table. This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` (1524).

stProcedureParams This retrieves the parameters for a stored procedure.

stIndexes Retrieves the indexes for one or more tables. (currently not implemented)

stPackages Retrieves packages for databases that support them. (currently not implemented).

59.6 Automatic generation of update SQL statements.

SQLDB (more in particular, `TSQLQuery` (1535)) can automatically generate update statements for the data it fetches. To this end, it will scan the SQL statement and determine the main table in the query: this is the first table encountered in the `FROM` part of the `SELECT` statement.

For INSERT and UPDATE operations, the SQL statement will update/insert all fields that have `pfInUpdate` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Read-only fields will not be added to the SQL statement. Fields that are NULL will not be added to an insert query, which means that the database server will insert whatever is in the `DEFAULT` clause of the corresponding field definition.

The WHERE clause for update and delete statements consists of all fields with `pfInKey` in their `ProviderFlags` property. Depending on the value of the `UpdateMode` (1548) property, additional fields may be added to the WHERE clause:

upWhereKeyOnly No additional fields are added: only fields marked with `pfInKey` are used in the WHERE clause

upWhereChanged All fields whose value changed are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

upWhereAll All fields are added to the WHERE clause, using their old value.

In order to let SQLDB generate correct statements, it is important to set the `ProviderFlags` (575) properties correct for all fields.

In many cases, for example when only a single table is queried, and no AS field aliases are used, setting `TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (1548) combined with `UpdateMode` equal to `upWhereKeyOnly` is sufficient.

If the automatically generated queries are not correct, it is possible to specify the SQL statements to be used in the `UpdateSQL` (1544), `InsertSQL` (1544) and `DeleteSQL` (1545) properties. The new field values should be specified using params with the same name as the field. The old field values should be specified using the `OLD_` prefix to the field name. The following example demonstrates this:

```
INSERT INTO MYTABLE
  (MYFIELD,MYFIELD2)
VALUES
  (:MYFIELD, :MYFIELD2) ;

UPDATE MYTABLE SET
  MYFIELD=:MYFIELD
  MYFIELD2=:MYFIELD2
WHERE
  (MYFIELD=:OLD_MYFIELD) ;

DELETE FROM MYTABLE WHERE (MyField=:OLD_MYFIELD) ;
```

See also: `UsingParams` (1497), `TSQLQuery` (1535), `UpdateSQL` (1544), `InsertSQL` (1544), `DeleteSQL` (1544)

59.7 Using parameters.

SQLDB implements parameterized queries, simulating them if the native SQL client does not support parameterized queries. A parameterized query means that the SQL statement contains placeholders for actual values. The following is a typical example:

```
SELECT * FROM MyTable WHERE (id=:id)
```

The `:id` is a parameter with the name `id`. It does not contain a value yet. The value of the parameter will be specified separately. In SQLDB this happens through the `TParams` collection, where each

element of the collection is a named parameter, specified in the SQL statement. The value can be specified as follows:

```
Params.ParamByname('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

This will tell SQLDB that the parameter `id` is of type integer, and has value 123.

SQLDB uses parameters for 3 purposes:

1. When executing a query multiple times, simply with different values, this helps increase the speed if the server supports parameterized queries: the query must be prepared only once.
2. Master-Detail relationships between datasets can be established based on a parameterized detail query: the value of the parameters in the detail query is automatically obtained from fields with the same names in the master dataset. As the user scrolls through the master dataset, the detail dataset is refreshed with the new values of the params.
3. Updating of data in the database happens through parameterized update/delete/insert statements: the `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (1544), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (1545), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (1544) properties of `TSQLQuery` (1535) must contain parameterized queries.

An additional advantage of using parameters is that they help to avoid SQL injection: by specifying a parameter type and value, SQLDB will automatically check whether the value is of the correct type, and will apply proper quoting when the native engine does not support parameters directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Params` (1546), `UpdateSQLs` (1496)

59.8 Constants, types and variables

59.8.1 Constants

```
DefaultMacroChar = '%'
```

`DefaultMacroChar` is the default macro delimiter to use in `TSQLQuery` (1535)

```
DefaultSQLFormatSettings : TFormatSettings = (CurrencyFormat: 1; NegCurrFormat
: 5; ThousandSeparator: #0; DecimalSeparator: '.'; CurrencyDecimals
: 2; DateSeparator: '-'; TimeSeparator: ':'; ListSeparator: ' '; CurrencyString
: '$'; ShortDateFormat: 'yyyy-mm-dd'; LongDateFormat: ''; TimeAMString
: ''; TimePMString: ''; ShortTimeFormat: 'hh:nn:ss'; LongTimeFormat
: 'hh:nn:ss.zzz'; ShortMonthNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '', '', ''
, '', '', '', ''); LongMonthNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '', '', ''
, '', '', '', ''); ShortDayNames: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '', ''); LongDayNames
: ('', '', '', '', '', '', '', '')); TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow: 50)
```

`DefaultSQLFormatSettings` contains the default settings used when formatting date/time and other special values in Update SQL statements generated by the various `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendents.

```
detActualSQL = sqltypes.detActualSQL
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detActualSQL`.

```
detCommit = sqltypes.detCommit
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detCommit`.

```
detCustom = sqltypes.detCustom
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detCustom`.

```
detExecute = sqltypes.detExecute
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detExecute`.

```
detFetch = sqltypes.detFetch
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detFetch`.

```
detParamValue = sqltypes.detParamValue
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detParamValue`.

```
detPrepare = sqltypes.detPrepare
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detPrepare`.

```
detRollBack = sqltypes.detRollBack
```

Alias for `sqltypes.detRollBack`.

```
DoubleQuotes : TQuoteChars = ('"', '"')
```

`DoubleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using double quotes for string literals.

```
LogAllEvents = [detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit
, detRollBack]
```

`LogAllEvents` is a constant that contains the full set of available event types. It can be used to set `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` ([1529](#)).

```
LogAllEventsExtra = [detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch,
detCommit, detRollBack, detParamValue, detActualSQL]
```

`LogAllEventsExtra` lists all possible even types that can be reported using the connection logging mechanism.

```
SingleQuotes : TQuoteChars = (''', ''')
```

`SingleQuotes` is the set of delimiters used when using single quotes for string literals.

```
StatementTokens : Array[TStatementType] of string = string = ('(unknown)'
, 'select', 'insert', 'update', 'delete', 'create', 'get', 'put',
'execute', 'start', 'commit', 'rollback', '?')
```

StatementTokens contains an array of string tokens that are used to detect the type of statement, usually the first SQL keyword of the token. The presence of this token in the SQL statement determines the kind of token.

`stColumns = sqltypes.stColumns`

Alias for `sqltypes.stColumns`.

`stCommit = sqltypes.stCommit`

Alias for `sqltypes.stCommit`.

`stDDL = sqltypes.stDDL`

Alias for `sqltypes.stDDL`.

`stDelete = sqltypes.stDelete`

Alias for `sqltypes.stDelete`.

`stExecProcedure = sqltypes.stExecProcedure`

Alias for `sqltypes.stExecProcedure`.

`stGetSegment = sqltypes.stGetSegment`

Alias for `sqltypes.stGetSegment`.

`stIndexes = sqltypes.stIndexes`

Alias for `sqltypes.stIndexes`.

`stInsert = sqltypes.stInsert`

Alias for `sqltypes.stInsert`.

`stNoSchema = sqltypes.stNoSchema`

Alias for `sqltypes.stUnknown`.

`stPackages = sqltypes.stPackages`

Alias for `sqltypes.stPackages`.

`stProcedureParams = sqltypes.stProcedureParams`

Alias for `sqltypes.stProcedureParams`.

`stProcedures = sqltypes.stProcedures`

Alias for `sqltypes.stProcedures`.

```
stPutSegment = sqltypes.stPutSegment
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stPutSegment`.

```
stRollback = sqltypes.stRollback
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stRollback`.

```
stSchemata = sqltypes.stSchemata
```

`stSchemata` is a convenience alias for `#fcl.sqlTypes.stSchemata` ([1569](#)).

```
stSelect = sqltypes.stSelect
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSelect`.

```
stSelectForUpd = sqltypes.stSelectForUpd
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSelectForUpd`.

```
stSequences = sqltypes.stSequences
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSequences`.

```
stStartTrans = sqltypes.stStartTrans
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stStartTrans`.

```
stSysTables = sqltypes.stSysTables
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stSysTables`.

```
stTables = sqltypes.stTables
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stTables`.

```
stUnknown = sqltypes.stUnknown
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stUnknown`.

```
stUpdate = sqltypes.stUpdate
```

Alias for `sqltypes.stUpdate`.

```
TSchemaObjectNames : Array[TSchemaType] of string = string = ('???'
  , 'table_name', '???' , 'procedure_name', 'column_name', 'param_name'
  , 'index_name', 'package_name', 'schema_name', 'sequence')
```

Names of the various types of objects.

59.8.2 Types

```
TCommitRollbackAction = (caNone, caCommit, caCommitRetaining, caRollback
,
                        caRollbackRetaining)
```

Table 59.2: Enumeration values for type TCommitRollbackAction

Value	Explanation
caCommit	Commit transaction.
caCommitRetaining	Commit transaction, retaining transaction context.
caNone	Do nothing.
caRollback	Rollback transaction.
caRollbackRetaining	Rollback transaction, retaining transaction context.

TCommitRollbackAction is currently unused in SQLDB.

```
TConnectionDefClass = class of TConnectionDef
```

TConnectionDefClass is used in the RegisterConnection (1506) call to register a new TConnectionDef (1508) instance.

```
TConnInfoType = (citAll, citServerType, citServerVersion,
citServerVersionString, citClientName, citClientVersion)
```

Table 59.3: Enumeration values for type TConnInfoType

Value	Explanation
citAll	All connection information.
citClientName	Client library name.
citClientVersion	Client library version.
citServerType	Server type description.
citServerVersion	Server version as an integer number.
citServerVersionString	Server version as a string.

Connection information to be retrieved.

```
TConnOption = (sqSupportParams, sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName, sqEscapeSlash
,
                sqEscapeRepeat, sqImplicitTransaction, sqLastInsertID
,
                sqSupportReturning, sqSequences, sqCommitEndsPrepared
,
                sqRollbackEndsPrepared)
```

Table 59.4: Enumeration values for type TConnOption

Value	Explanation
sqCommitEndsPrepared	
sqEscapeRepeat	Escapes in string literals are done by repeating the character.
sqEscapeSlash	Escapes in string literals are done with backslash characters.
sqImplicitTransaction	Does the connection support implicit transaction management.
sqLastInsertID	Does the connection support getting the ID for the last insert operation.
sqRollbackEndsPrepared	
sqSequences	Are sequences supported.
sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName	Does the connection allow empty database names ?
sqSupportParams	The connection type has native support for parameters.
sqSupportReturning	The connection type supports INSERT/UPDATE with RETURNING clause.

This type describes some of the option that a particular connection type supports.

```
TConnOptions = Set of TConnOption = (sqCommitEndsPrepared, sqEscapeRepeat
    , sqEscapeSlash,
        sqImplicitTransaction, sqLastInsertID
    ,
        sqRollbackEndsPrepared, sqSequences,
    sqSupportEmptyDatabaseName, sqSupportParams,
        sqSupportReturning
    )
```

TConnOptions describes the full set of options defined by a database.

```
TDBEventType = sqltypes.TDBEventType
```

TDBEventType describes the type of a database event message as generated by TSQLConnection (1520) through the TSQLConnection.OnLog (1528) event.

```
TDBEventTypes = sqltypes.TDBEventTypes
```

TDBEventTypes is a set of TDBEventType (1503) values, which is used to filter the set of event messages that should be sent. The TSQLConnection.LogEvents (1529) property determines which events a particular connection will send.

```
TDBLogNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TSQLConnection;
    EventType: TDBEventType;
    const Msg: string) of object
```

TDBLogNotifyEvent is the prototype for the TSQLConnection.OnLog (1528) event handler and for the global GlobalDBLogHook (1506) event handling hook. Sender will contain the TSQLConnection (1520) instance that caused the event, EventType will contain the event type, and Msg will contain the actual message: the content depends on the type of the message.

```
TLibraryLoadFunction = function(const S: AnsiString) : Integer
```

TLibraryLoadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically loading a library when the universal connection component is used. It receives the name of the library to load (S), and should return True if the library was successfully loaded. It is used in the connection definition.


```
TLibraryUnloadFunction = procedure
```

TLibraryUnloadFunction is the function prototype for dynamically unloading a library when the universal connection component is used. It has no parameters, and should simply unload the library loaded with TLibraryLoadFunction (1503)

```
TQuoteChars = sqltypes.TQuoteChars
```

TQuoteChars is an array of characters that describes the used delimiters for string values.

```
TRowCount = LargeInt
```

A type to contain a result row count.

```
TSchemaType = sqltypes.TSchemaType
```

TSchemaType describes which schema information to retrieve in the TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo (1513) call. Depending on its value, the result set of the dataset will have different fields, describing the requested schema data. The result data will always have the same structure.

```
TSQLConnectionClass = class of TSQLConnection
```

TSQLConnectionClass is used when registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector TSQLConnector.ConnectorType (1532)

```
TSQLConnectionOption = (scoExplicitConnect,
    scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected)
```

Table 59.5: Enumeration values for type TSQLConnectionOption

Value	Explanation
scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected	ApplyUpdates will check that the RowsAffected is 1 after an update.
scoExplicitConnect	Require explicit connection to the database (default is implicit).

TSQLConnectionOption enumerates several options that can be set for TSQLConnection (1520) instances using TSQLConnection.Options (1529)

```
TSQLConnectionOptions = Set of TSQLConnectionOption = (scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffe
    ,
    scoExplicitConnect)
```

Set of TSQLConnectionOption.

```
TSQLQueryOption = (sqoKeepOpenOnCommit, sqoAutoApplyUpdates,
    sqoAutoCommit, sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh,
    sqoRefreshUsingSelect, sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange)
```

Table 59.6: Enumeration values for type TSQLQueryOption

Value	Explanation
sqoAutoApplyUpdates	Call ApplyUpdates on Post or Delete.
sqoAutoCommit	Call commit after every ApplyUpdates or ExecSQL.
sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh	Cancel any pending updates when refresh is called.
sqoKeepOpenOnCommit	Keep the dataset open after the query was committed (will fetch all records).
sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange	
sqoRefreshUsingSelect	Force a refresh using the provided select instead of using RETURNING clause.

TSQLQueryOption enumerates several options available to control the behaviour of an TSQL-Query (1535) instance.

```
TSQLQueryOptions = Set of TSQLQueryOption = (sqoAutoApplyUpdates, sqoAutoCommit
,
sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh, sqoKeepOpenOnCommit
,
sqoNoCloseOnSQLChange, sqoRefreshUsingSelect)
```

TSQLQueryOptions is the type of the TSQLQuery.Options (1546) property.

```
TSQLSequenceApplyEvent = (saeOnNewRecord, saeOnPost)
```

Table 59.7: Enumeration values for type TSQLSequenceApplyEvent

Value	Explanation
saeOnNewRecord	Fetch an ID when a new record is appended to a dataset.
saeOnPost	Fetch an ID when a new record is posted in the dataset.

TSQLSequenceApplyEvent enumerates the moments when a new ID must be fetched for a sequence field.

```
TSQLTransactionOption = (stoUseImplicit, stoExplicitStart)
```

Table 59.8: Enumeration values for type TSQLTransactionOption

Value	Explanation
stoExplicitStart	Require explicit start of transactions by TSQLQuery.
stoUseImplicit	Use implicit transaction control if the engine allows it.

TSQLTransactionOption enumerates several options that can be used to control the transaction behaviour of TSQLTransaction (1564).

```
TSQLTransactionOptions = Set of TSQLTransactionOption = (stoExplicitStart
, stoUseImplicit)
```

TSQLTransactionOptions is the property type of TSQLTransaction.Options ([1568](#)).

TStatementType = sqltypes.TStatementType

TStatementType describes the kind of SQL statement that was entered in the SQL property of a TSQLQuery ([1535](#)) component.

59.8.3 Variables

GlobalDBLogHook : TDBLogNotifyEvent

GlobalDBLogHook can be set in addition to local TSQLConnection.Onlog ([1528](#)) event handlers. All connections will report events through this global event handler in addition to their OnLog event handlers. The global log event handler can be set only once, so when setting the handler, it is important to set up chaining: saving the previous value, and calling the old handler (if it was set) in the new handler.

59.9 Procedures and functions

59.9.1 GetConnectionDef

Synopsis: Search for a connection definition by name.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionDef(const ConnectorName: string) : TConnectionDef`

Visibility: default

Description: GetConnectionDef will search in the list of connection type definitions, and will return the one definition with the name that matches ConnectorName. The search is case insensitive.

If no definition is found, Nil is returned.

See also: RegisterConnection ([1506](#)), TConnectionDef ([1508](#)), TConnectionDef.TypeName ([1508](#))

59.9.2 GetConnectionList

Synopsis: Return a list of connection definition names.

Declaration: `procedure GetConnectionList(List: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetConnectionList clears List and fills it with the list of currently known connection type names, as registered with RegisterConnection ([1506](#)). The names are the names as returned by TConnectionDef.TypeName ([1508](#))

See also: RegisterConnection ([1506](#)), TConnectionDef.TypeName ([1508](#))

59.9.3 RegisterConnection

Synopsis: Register a new connection type for use in the universal connector.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterConnection` must be called with a class pointer to a `TConnectionDef` (1508) descendent to register the connection type described in the `TConnectionDef` (1508) descendent. The connection type is registered with the name as returned by `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (1508).

The various connection types distributed by Free Pascal automatically call `RegisterConnection` from the `initialization` section of their unit, so simply including the unit with a particular connection type is enough to register it.

Connection types registered with this call can be unregistered with `UnRegisterConnection` (1507).

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (1508), `UnRegisterConnection` (1507)

59.9.4 UnRegisterConnection

Synopsis: Unregister a registered connection type.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterConnection(Def: TConnectionDefClass)`
`procedure UnRegisterConnection(const ConnectionName: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterConnection` will unregister the connection `Def`. If a connection with `ConnectionName` or with name as returned by the `TypeName` (1508) method from `Def` was previously registered, it will be removed from the list of registered connection types.

Errors: if `Def` is `Nil`, access violations will occur.

See also: `TConnectionDef` (1508), `RegisterConnection` (1506)

59.10 TSQLStatementInfo

```
TSQLStatementInfo = record
  StatementType : TStatementType;
  TableName
  : string;
  Updateable : Boolean;
  WhereStartPos : Integer;
  WhereStopPos
  : Integer;
end
```

`TSQLStatementInfo` is a record used to describe an SQL statement. It is used internally by the `TSQLStatement` (1560) and `TSQLQuery` (1535) objects to analyse SQL statements.

It is used to be able to modify the SQL statement (for additional filtering) or to determine the table to update when applying dataset updates to the database.

59.11 ESQLError

59.11.1 Description

`ESQLError` is raised by SQLDB routines if the underlying engine raises an error. The error code returned by the engine is contained in `ESQLError.ErrorCode` (??), and an Ansi SQL compliant SQL state can be passed in `ESQLError.SQLState` (??)

See also: `db.EDatabaseError` ([1492](#)), `ESQLDatabaseError.SQLState` ([??](#)), `ESQLDatabaseError.ErrorCode` ([??](#))

59.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1508	<code>CreateFmt</code>	Create a new instance of <code>ESQLDatabaseError</code> .

59.11.3 ESQLDatabaseError.CreateFmt

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `ESQLDatabaseError`.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const Fmt: string; const Args: Array of const;
Comp: TComponent; AErrorCode: Integer;
const ASQLState: string); overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateFmt` is overloaded in `ESQLDatabaseError` to be able to specify the `ErrorCode` ([??](#)) and `SQLState` ([??](#)).

See also: `ESQLDatabaseError.ErrorCode` ([??](#)), `ESQLDatabaseError.SQLState` ([??](#))

59.12 TConnectionDef

59.12.1 Description

`TConnectionDef` is an abstract class. When registering a new connection type for use in the universal connector, a descendent of this class must be made and registered using `RegisterConnection` ([1506](#)). A descendent class should override at least the `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([1508](#)) and `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` ([1509](#)) methods to return the specific name and connection class to use.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` ([1508](#)), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` ([1509](#)), `RegisterConnection` ([1506](#))

59.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1510	<code>ApplyParams</code>	Apply parameters to an instance of <code>TSQLConnection</code> .
1509	<code>ConnectionClass</code>	Class to instantiate when this connection is requested.
1509	<code>DefaultLibraryName</code>	Default library name.
1509	<code>Description</code>	A descriptive text for this connection type.
1510	<code>LoadedLibraryName</code>	Currently loaded library.
1510	<code>LoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded.
1508	<code>TypeName</code>	Name of the connection type.
1510	<code>UnLoadFunction</code>	Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded.

59.12.3 TConnectionDef.TypeName

Synopsis: Name of the connection type.

Declaration: `class function TypeName : string; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TypeName` is overridden by descendent classes to return the unique name for this connection type. It is what the `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (1532) property should be set to select this connection type for the universal connection, and is the name that the `GetConnectionDef` (1506) call will use when looking for a connection type. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

This name is also returned in the list returned by `GetConnectionList` (1506)

This name can be an arbitrary name, no restrictions on the allowed characters exist.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` (1532), `GetConnectionDef` (1506), `GetConnectionList` (1506), `TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass` (1509)

59.12.4 TConnectionDef.ConnectionClass

Synopsis: Class to instantiate when this connection is requested.

Declaration: `class function ConnectionClass : TSQLConnectionClass; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ConnectionClass` should return the connection class to use when a connection of this type is requested. It must be overridden by descendents of `TConnectionDef`.

It may not be `Nil`.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (1508)

59.12.5 TConnectionDef.Description

Synopsis: A descriptive text for this connection type.

Declaration: `class function Description : string; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Description` should return a descriptive text for this connection type. It is used for display purposes only, so ideally it should be a one-liner. It can be used to provide more information about the particulars of the connection type.

See also: `TConnectionDef.TypeName` (1508)

59.12.6 TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName

Synopsis: Default library name.

Declaration: `class function DefaultLibraryName : string; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultLibraryName` should be set to the default library name for the connection. This can be used to let `SQLDB` automatically load the library needed when a connection of this type is requested.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` (1503), `TConnectionDef` (1508), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` (1504)

59.12.7 TConnectionDef.LoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be loaded.

Declaration: `class function LoadFunction : TLibraryLoadFunction; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be loaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly load the client library when a connection of this type is used.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` ([1503](#)), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` ([1510](#)), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` ([1509](#)), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` ([1510](#))

59.12.8 TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction

Synopsis: Return a function to call when the client library must be unloaded.

Declaration: `class function UnLoadFunction : TLibraryUnLoadFunction; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLoadFunction` must return the function that will be called when the client library for this connection type must be unloaded. This method must be overridden by descendent classes to return a function that will correctly unload the client library when a connection of this type is no longer used.

See also: `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` ([1504](#)), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` ([1510](#)), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` ([1509](#)), `TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName` ([1510](#))

59.12.9 TConnectionDef.LoadedLibraryName

Synopsis: Currently loaded library.

Declaration: `class function LoadedLibraryName : string; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadedLibraryName` must be overridden by descendents to return the filename of the currently loaded client library for this connection type. If no library is loaded, an empty string must be returned.

See also: `TLibraryLoadFunction` ([1503](#)), `TLibraryUnLoadFunction` ([1504](#)), `TConnectionDef.LoadFunction` ([1510](#)), `TConnectionDef.UnLoadFunction` ([1510](#)), `TConnectionDef.DefaultLibraryName` ([1509](#))

59.12.10 TConnectionDef.ApplyParams

Synopsis: Apply parameters to an instance of `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `procedure ApplyParams(Params: TStrings; AConnection: TSQLConnection); virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `ApplyParams` must be overridden to apply any params specified in the `Params` argument to the `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent in `AConnection`. It can be used to convert `Name=Value` pairs to properties of the actual connection instance.

When called, `AConnection` is guaranteed to be of the same type as returned by `TConnection-Def.ConnectionClass` (1509). `Params` contains the contents of the `TSQLConnection.Params` (1531) property of the connector.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Params` (1531)

59.13 TCustomSQLQuery

59.13.1 Description

`TCustomSQLQuery` encapsulates a SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (498) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute SQL statements that do not return data, using the `ExecSQL` (1513) method.

Do not instantiate a `TCustomSQLQuery` class directly, instead use the `TSQLQuery` (1535) descendent.

See also: `TSQLQuery` (1535)

59.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1514	<code>ApplyUpdates</code>	Apply updates and check result.
1511	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code> .
1515	<code>Delete</code>	Delete and optionally apply updates.
1512	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy instance of <code>TCustomSQLQuery</code> .
1513	<code>ExecSQL</code>	Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set.
1514	<code>MacroByName</code>	Convenience for <code>Macros.ParamByName</code> .
1514	<code>ParamByName</code>	Return parameter by name.
1515	<code>Post</code>	Post pending changes and optionally apply updates.
1512	<code>Prepare</code>	Prepare a query for execution.
1513	<code>RowsAffected</code>	Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDDL statement.
1513	<code>SetSchemaInfo</code>	<code>SetSchemaInfo</code> prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.
1512	<code>UnPrepare</code>	Unprepare a prepared query.

59.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1515	<code>Prepared</code>	r	Is the query prepared ?
1515	<code>SQLConnection</code>	rw	Database as <code>TSQLConnection</code> .
1516	<code>SQLTransaction</code>	rw	Transaction as <code>TSQLTransaction</code> .

59.13.4 TCustomSQLQuery.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TCustomSQLQuery`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` allocates a new instance on the heap and will allocate all resources for the SQL statement. After this it calls the inherited constructor.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy` ([1512](#))

59.13.5 TCustomSQLQuery.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy instance of `TCustomSQLQuery`.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the instance, closing the dataset and freeing all allocated resources.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Create` ([1511](#))

59.13.6 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare

Synopsis: Prepare a query for execution.

Declaration: `procedure Prepare; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Prepare` will prepare the SQL for execution. It will open the database connection if it was not yet open, and will start a transaction if none was started yet. It will then determine the statement type. Finally, it will pass the statement on to the database engine if it supports preparing of queries.

Strictly speaking, it is not necessary to call `prepare`, the component will prepare the statement whenever it is necessary. If a query will be executed repeatedly, it is good practice to prepare it once before starting to execute it. This will speed up execution, since resources must be allocated only once.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot prepare the statement, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` ([1538](#)), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` ([1512](#)), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` ([1513](#))

59.13.7 TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare

Synopsis: Unprepare a prepared query.

Declaration: `procedure UnPrepare; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unprepare` will unprepare a prepared query. This means that server resources for this statement are deallocated. After a query was unprepared, any `ExecSQL` or `Open` command will prepare the SQL statement again.

Several actions will unprepare the statement: Setting the `TSQLQuery.SQL` ([1543](#)) property, setting the `Transaction` property or setting the `Database` property will automatically call `UnPrepare`. Closing the dataset will also unprepare the query.

Errors: If the SQL server cannot unprepare the statement, an exception may be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery.StatementType` ([1538](#)), `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` ([1512](#)), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` ([1513](#))

59.13.8 TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL

Synopsis: Execute a SQL statement that does not return a result set.

Declaration: `procedure ExecSQL; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecSQL` will execute the statement in `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), preparing the statement if necessary. It cannot be used to get results from the database (such as returned by a `SELECT` statement): for this, the `Open` (517) method must be used.

The `SQL` property should be a single SQL command. To execute multiple SQL statements, use the `TSQLScript` (1551) component instead.

If the statement is a DML statement, the number of deleted/updated/inserted rows can be determined using `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (1513).

The `Database` and `Transaction` properties must be assigned before calling `ExecSQL`. Executing an empty SQL statement is also an error.

Errors: If the server reports an error, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (1513), `TDataset.Open` (517)

59.13.9 TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo

Synopsis: `SetSchemaInfo` prepares the dataset to retrieve schema info.

Declaration: `procedure SetSchemaInfo(ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
ASchemaObjectName: string;
ASchemaPattern: string); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetSchemaInfo` will prepare the dataset to retrieve schema information from the connection, and represents the schema info as a dataset.

`SetSchemaInfo` is used internally to prepare a query to retrieve schema information from a connection. It will store the 3 passed parameters, which are then used in the `ParseSQL` and `Prepare` stages to optimize the allocated resources. setting the schema type to anything other than `stNoSchema` will also set (or mimic) the SQL statement as soon as the query is prepared. For connection types that support this, the SQL statement is then set to whatever statement the database connection supports to retrieve schema information.

This is used internally by `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (1523) and `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (1523) to get the necessary schema information from the database.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` (1523), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` (1523), `RetrievingSchemaInformation` (1496)

59.13.10 TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected

Synopsis: Return the number of rows (records) affected by the last DML/DDDL statement.

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowsCount; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RowsAffected` returns the number of rows affected by the last statement executed using `ExecSQL` (1513).

Errors: If the connection or database type does not support returning this number, -1 is returned. If the query is not connected to a database, -1 is returned.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` ([1513](#)), `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#))

59.13.11 TCustomSQLQuery.ParamByName

Synopsis: Return parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `ParamByName` is a shortcut for `Params.ParamByName` ([636](#)). The 2 following pieces of code are completely equivalent:

```
Qry.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

and

```
Qry.Params.ParamByName('id').AsInteger:=123;
```

See also: `Params.ParamByName` ([636](#)), `TSQLQuery.Params` ([1546](#))

59.13.12 TCustomSQLQuery.MacroByName

Synopsis: Convenience for `Macros.ParamByName`.

Declaration: `function MacroByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: public

Description: `MacroByName` checks `Macros` ([1511](#)) for the macro named `aParamName` and returns the requested macro.

Errors: If no macro is found, an exception is raised.

See also: `#fcl.db.TParams.ParamByName` ([636](#))

59.13.13 TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates

Synopsis: Apply updates and check result.

Declaration: `procedure ApplyUpdates(MaxErrors: Integer); override; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `ApplyUpdates` is overridden in `TCustomSQLQuery` ([1511](#)) to check the result of the update (using `RowsAffected` ([1513](#))).

See also: `TSQLQuery.Options` ([1505](#)), `TSQLQuery.Options` ([1546](#))

59.13.14 TCustomSQLQuery.Post

Synopsis: Post pending changes and optionally apply updates.

Declaration: `procedure Post; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Post` is overridden from `DB.TDataset.Post` (1492) to implement the auto-applyupdates mechanism: if `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546) contains `sqoAutoApplyUpdates`, then `ApplyUpdates` is called as the last step of the `Post` operation.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546), `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (1514)

59.13.15 TCustomSQLQuery.Delete

Synopsis: Delete and optionally apply updates.

Declaration: `procedure Delete; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` is overridden from `DB.TDataset.Delete` (1492) to implement the auto-applyupdates mechanism: if `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546) contains `sqoAutoApplyUpdates`, then `ApplyUpdates` is called as the last step of the `Post` operation.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546), `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (1514)

59.13.16 TCustomSQLQuery.Prepared

Synopsis: Is the query prepared ?

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prepared` is true if `Prepare` (1512) was called for this query, and an `UnPrepare` (1512) was not done after that (take care: several actions call `UnPrepare` implicitly). Initially, `Prepared` will be `False`. Calling `Prepare` if the query was already prepared has no effect.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.Prepare` (1512), `TCustomSQLQuery.UnPrepare` (1512)

59.13.17 TCustomSQLQuery.SQLConnection

Synopsis: Database as `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `Property SQLConnection : TSQLConnection`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLConnection` equals the `Database` property, but typecasted as a `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction` (1516)

59.13.18 TCustomSQLQuery.SQLTransaction

Synopsis: Transaction as TSQLTransaction.

Declaration: Property SQLTransaction : TSQLTransaction

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SQLTransaction equals the Transaction property, but typecasted as a TSQLTransaction (1564) descendent.

See also: TSQLConnection (1520), TCustomSQLQuery.TSQLConnection (1515)

59.14 TCustomSQLStatement

59.14.1 Description

TCustomSQLStatement is a light-weight object that can be used to execute SQL statements on a database. It does not support result sets, and has none of the methods that a TDataSet (1492) component has. It can be used to execute SQL statements on a database that update data, execute stored procedures and DDL statements etc.

The TCustomSQLStatement is equivalent to TSQLQuery (1535) in that it supports transactions (in the Transaction (1527) property) and parameters (in the Params (1531) property) and as such is a more versatile tool than executing queries using TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect (1522).

To use a TCustomSQLStatement is simple and similar to the use of TSQLQuery (1535): set the Database (1561) property to an existing connection component, and set the Transaction (1563) property. After setting the SQL (1563) property and filling Params (1562), the SQL statement can be executed with the Execute (1517) method.

TCustomSQLStatement is a parent class. Many of the properties are only made public (or published) in the TSQLStatement (1560) class, which should be instantiated instead of the TCustomSQLStatement class.

See also: TSQLStatement (1560), TDataSet (1492), TSQLQuery (1535), TSQLStatement.Transaction (1563), TSQLStatement.Params (1562), TCustomSQLStatement.Execute (1517), TSQLStatement.Database (1561), TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect (1522)

59.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1517	Create	Create a new instance of TCustomSQLStatement.
1517	Destroy	Destroy a TCustomSQLStatement instance.
1517	Execute	Execute the SQL statement.
1518	ParamByName	Find a parameter by name.
1517	Prepare	Prepare the statement for execution.
1518	RowsAffected	Number of rows affected by the SQL statement.
1518	Unprepare	Unprepare a previously prepared statement.

59.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1519	Prepared	r	Is the statement prepared or not.

59.14.4 TCustomSQLStatement.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomSQLStatement.

Declaration: constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a new instance of TCustomSQLStatement and sets the SQL (1563)Params (1562), ParamCheck (1561) and ParseSQL (1563) to their initial values.

See also: TSQLStatement.SQL (1563), TSQLStatement.Params (1562), TSQLStatement.ParamCheck (1561), TSQLStatement.ParseSQL (1563), TSQLStatement.Destroy (1560)

59.14.5 TCustomSQLStatement.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy a TCustomSQLStatement instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy disconnects the TCustomSQLStatement instance from the transaction and database, and then frees the memory taken by the instance and its properties.

See also: TSQLStatement.Database (1561), TSQLStatement.Transaction (1563)

59.14.6 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare

Synopsis: Prepare the statement for execution.

Declaration: procedure Prepare

Visibility: public

Description: Prepare prepares the SQL statement for execution. It is called automatically if Execute (1517) is called and the statement was not yet prepared. Depending on the database engine, it will also allocate the necessary resources on the database server.

Errors: An exception is raised if there is no SQL (1563) statement set or the Database (1561) or Transaction (1563) properties are empty.

See also: TSQLStatement.SQL (1563), TSQLStatement.Database (1561), TSQLStatement.Transaction (1563), TCustomSQLStatement.Execute (1517)

59.14.7 TCustomSQLStatement.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the SQL statement.

Declaration: procedure Execute

Visibility: public

Description: Execute executes the SQL (1563) statement on the database. If necessary, it will first open the connection and start a transaction, followed by a call to Prepare.

Errors: An exception is raised if there is no SQL (1563) statement set or the Database (1561) or Transaction (1563) properties are empty.

If an error occurs at the database level (the SQL failed to execute properly) then an exception is raised as well.

See also: TSQLStatement.SQL (1563), TSQLStatement.Database (1561), TSQLStatement.Transaction (1563)

59.14.8 TCustomSQLStatement.Unprepare

Synopsis: Unprepare a previously prepared statement.

Declaration: `procedure Unprepare`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Unprepare` unprepares a prepared SQL statement. It is called automatically when the SQL statement is changed. Depending on the database engine, it will also de-allocate any allocated resources on the database server. if the statement is not in a prepared state, nothing happens.

Errors: If an error occurs at the database level (the unprepare operation failed to execute properly) then an exception is raised.

See also: TSQLStatement.SQL (1563), TSQLStatement.Database (1561), TSQLStatement.Transaction (1563), TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare (1517)

59.14.9 TCustomSQLStatement.ParamByName

Synopsis: Find a parameter by name.

Declaration: `function ParamByName(const AParamName: string) : TParam`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ParamByName` finds the parameter `AParamName` in the `Params` (1562) property.

Errors: If no parameter with the given name is found, an exception is raised.

See also: TSQLStatement.Params (1562), TParams.ParamByname (1492)

59.14.10 TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected

Synopsis: Number of rows affected by the SQL statement.

Declaration: `function RowsAffected : TRowsCount; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RowsAffected` is set to the number of affected rows after `Execute` (1517) was called. Not all databases may support this.

See also: TCustomSQLStatement.Execute (1517)

59.14.11 TCustomSQLStatement.Prepared

Synopsis: Is the statement prepared or not.

Declaration: `Property Prepared : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Prepared` equals `True` if `Prepare` (1517) was called (implicitly or explicitly), it returns `False` if not. It can be set to `True` or `False` to call `Prepare` (1517) or `UnPrepare` (1518), respectively.

See also: `TCustomSQLStatement.Prepare` (1517), `TCustomSQLStatement.UnPrepare` (1518)

59.15 TServerIndexDefs

59.15.1 Description

`TServerIndexDefs` is a simple descendent of `TIndexDefs` (601) that implements the necessary methods to update the list of definitions using the `TSQLConnection` (1520). It should not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520)

59.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1519	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TServerIndexDefs</code> .
1519	<code>Update</code>	Updates the list of indexes.

59.15.3 TServerIndexDefs.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TServerIndexDefs`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADataset: TDataSet); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` will raise an exception if `ADataset` is not a `TCustomSQLQuery` (1511) descendent.

Errors: An `EDatabaseError` exception will be raised if `ADataset` is not a `TCustomSQLQuery` (1511) descendent.

59.15.4 TServerIndexDefs.Update

Synopsis: Updates the list of indexes.

Declaration: `procedure Update; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` updates the list of indexes, it uses the `TSQLConnection` (1520) methods for this.

59.16 TSQLConnection

59.16.1 Description

`TSQLConnection` is an abstract class for making a connection to a SQL Database. This class will never be instantiated directly, for each database type a descendent class specific for this database type must be created.

Most of common properties to SQL databases are implemented in this class.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)), `TSQLTransaction` ([1564](#))

59.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1521	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TSQLConnection</code> .
1525	CreateDB	Create a new Database on the server.
1521	Destroy	Destroys the instance of the connection.
1525	DropDB	Procedure to drop or remove a Database.
1522	EndTransaction	End the Transaction associated with this connection.
1522	ExecuteDirect	Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified.
1524	GetConnectionInfo	Return some information about the connection.
1524	GetFieldNames	Gets a list of the field names in the specified table.
1525	GetNextValue	Get next value for a sequence.
1523	GetObjectNames	Return a collection of object names for a given type of object.
1523	GetProcedureNames	Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database.
1524	GetSchemaNames	Get database schema names.
1524	GetSequenceNames	Return a list of sequence names.
1525	GetStatementInfo	Get statement information.
1523	GetTableNames	Get a list of the tables in the specified database.
1523	HasTable	
1522	StartTransaction	Start the Transaction associated with this Connection.

59.16.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1528	CharSet	rw	The character set to be used in this database.
1530	Connected		Is a connection to the server active or not.
1526	ConnOptions	r	The set of Connection options being used in the Connection.
1530	DatabaseName		The name of the database to which connection is required.
1526	FieldNameQuoteChars	rw	Characters used to quote field names.
1526	Handle	r	Low level handle used by the connection.
1528	HostName	rw	The name of the host computer where the database resides.
1530	KeepConnection		Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.
1529	LogEvents	rw	Filter for events to log.
1531	LoginPrompt		Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.
1528	OnLog	rw	Event handler for logging events.
1531	OnLogin		Event handler for login process.
1529	Options	rw	Options to observe for this connection.
1531	Params		Extra connection parameters.
1527	Password	rw	Password used when authenticating on the database server.
1529	Role	rw	Role in which the user is connecting to the database.
1527	Transaction	rw	Default transaction to be used for this connection.
1527	UserName	rw	The username for authentication on the database server.

59.16.4 TSQLConnection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initialized a new instance of `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)). After calling the inherited constructor, it will initialize the `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([1526](#)) property and some other fields for internal use.

See also: `FieldNameQuoteChars` ([1526](#))

59.16.5 TSQLConnection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the connection.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` removes the connection from memory. When a connection is removed, all datasets are closed, and all transactions too.

59.16.6 TSQLConnection.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start the Transaction associated with this Connection.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which starts the default transaction (`Transaction (1527)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.StartTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `EndTransaction (1522)`

59.16.7 TSQLConnection.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the Transaction associated with this connection.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` is a convenience method which ends the default transaction (`TSQLConnection.Transaction (1527)`). It is equivalent to

```
Connection.Transaction.EndTransaction
```

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction (1522)`

59.16.8 TSQLConnection.ExecuteDirect

Synopsis: Execute a piece of SQL code directly, using a Transaction if specified.

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string); virtual; overload`
`procedure ExecuteDirect(SQL: string; ATransaction: TSQLTransaction)`
`; virtual; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteDirect` executes an SQL statement directly. If `ATransaction` is `Nil` then the default transaction is used, otherwise the specified transaction is used.

`ExecuteDirect` does not offer support for parameters, so only statements that do not need parsing and parameters substitution can be handled. If parameter substitution is required, use a `TSQLQuery (1535)` component and its `ExecSQL (1513)` method.

Errors: If no transaction is assigned, and no transaction is passed, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TSQLQuery (1535)`, `ExecSQL (1513)`

59.16.9 TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames

Synopsis: Return a collection of object names for a given type of object.

Declaration: `function GetObjectNames (ASchemaType: TSchemaType;
 AList: TSqlObjectIdentifierList) : Integer
 ; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetObjectNames` returns all the names of objects of a given type `ASchemaType` in the database, and returns the number of found objects as a result. The object names are placed in the collection `AList`.

The collection is not cleared.

See also: `#fcl.sqltypes.TSqlObjectIdentifierList` ([1572](#))

59.16.10 TSQLConnection.HasTable

Declaration: `function HasTable (const aTable: string;
 SearchSystemTables: Boolean=False) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

59.16.11 TSQLConnection.GetTableNames

Synopsis: Get a list of the tables in the specified database.

Declaration: `procedure GetTableNames (List: TStrings; SystemTables: Boolean=False)
 ; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetTableNames` will return the names of the tables in the database in `List`. If `SystemTables` is `True` then only the names of system tables will be returned.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Remark Note that the list may depend on the access rights of the user.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` ([1523](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` ([1524](#))

59.16.12 TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of Stored Procedures in the Database.

Declaration: `procedure GetProcedureNames (List: TStrings); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetProcedureNames` will return the names of the stored procedures in the database in `List`.

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` ([1523](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` ([1524](#))

59.16.13 TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames

Synopsis: Gets a list of the field names in the specified table.

Declaration: `procedure GetFieldNames(const TableName: string; List: TStrings)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFieldNames` will return the names of the fields in `TableName` in `list`

`List` is cleared before adding the names.

Errors: If a non-existing tablename is passed, no error will be raised.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` ([1523](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` ([1523](#))

59.16.14 TSQLConnection.GetSchemaNames

Synopsis: Get database schema names.

Declaration: `procedure GetSchemaNames(List: TStrings); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetSchemaNames` returns a list of schemas defined in the database.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` ([1523](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetProcedureNames` ([1523](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetFieldNames` ([1524](#))

59.16.15 TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames

Synopsis: Return a list of sequence names.

Declaration: `procedure GetSequenceNames(List: TStrings); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetSequenceNames` returns the names of all defined sequences (Generators in Firebird) in the databases in `List`, if the database engine supports them: Not all database types support sequences.

This call is a convenience call, a simple wrapper used to call the `GetDBInfo` method.

Errors: None.

59.16.16 TSQLConnection.GetConnectionInfo

Synopsis: Return some information about the connection.

Declaration: `function GetConnectionInfo(InfoType: TConnInfoType) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetConnectionInfo` can be used to return some information about the connection. Which information is returned depends on the `InfoType` parameter. The information is returned as a string. If `citAll` is passed, then the result will be a comma-separated list of values, each of the values enclosed in double quotes.

See also: `TConnInfoType` ([1502](#))

59.16.17 TSQLConnection.GetStatementInfo

Synopsis: Get statement information.

Declaration: `function GetStatementInfo(const ASQL: string) : TSQLStatementInfo
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetStatementInfo` returns information about the ASQL SQL command. To this end, it will partially parse the statement.

See also: `TSQLStatementInfo` ([1507](#))

59.16.18 TSQLConnection.CreateDB

Synopsis: Create a new Database on the server.

Declaration: `procedure CreateDB; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateDB` will create a new database on the server. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection. The name for the new database is taken from the `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` ([1530](#)) property, the user credentials are taken from the `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([1527](#)) and `TSQLConnection.Password` ([1527](#)) properties.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.DropDB` ([1525](#))

59.16.19 TSQLConnection.DropDB

Synopsis: Procedure to drop or remove a Database.

Declaration: `procedure DropDB; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DropDB` does the opposite of `CreateDB` ([1525](#)). It removes the database from the server. The database must be connected before this command may be used. Whether or not this functionality is present depends on the type of the connection.

Errors: If the connection type does not support creating a database, then an `EDatabaseError` exception is raised. Other exceptions may be raised if the operation fails, e.g. when the user does not have the necessary access rights.

See also: `TSQLConnection.CreateDB` ([1525](#))

59.16.20 TSQLConnection.GetNextValue

Synopsis: Get next value for a sequence.

Declaration: `function GetNextValue(const SequenceName: string;
IncrementBy: Integer=1) : Int64; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetNextValue` returns the next value for the sequence `SequenceName`, incrementing the current value with `IncrementBy` (default 1).

Errors: Not all databases support sequences, in that case an SQL error will be raised.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames` ([1524](#))

59.16.21 TSQLConnection.ConnOptions

Synopsis: The set of Connection options being used in the Connection.

Declaration: `Property ConnOptions : TConnOptions`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ConnOptions` is the set of options used by this connection component. It is normally the same value for all connections of the same type

See also: `TConnOption` ([1502](#))

59.16.22 TSQLConnection.Handle

Synopsis: Low level handle used by the connection.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Handle` represents the low-level handle that the `TSQLConnection` component has received from the client library of the database. Under normal circumstances, this property must not be used.

59.16.23 TSQLConnection.FieldNameQuoteChars

Synopsis: Characters used to quote field names.

Declaration: `Property FieldNameQuoteChars : TQuoteChars`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: `FieldNameQuoteChars` can be set to specify the characters that should be used to delimit field names in SQL statements generated by `SQLDB`. It is normally initialized correctly by the `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)) descendent to the default for that particular connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#))

59.16.24 TSQLConnection.Password

Synopsis: Password used when authenticating on the database server.

Declaration: `Property Password : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Password` is used when authenticating the user specified in `UserName` ([1527](#)) when connecting to the database server

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.HostName` ([1528](#))

59.16.25 TSQLConnection.Transaction

Synopsis: Default transaction to be used for this connection.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TSQLTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` should be set to a `TSQLTransaction` ([1564](#)) instance. It is set as the default transaction when a query is connected to the database, and is used in several metadata operations such as `TSQLConnection.GetTableNames` ([1523](#))

See also: `TSQLTransaction` ([1564](#))

59.16.26 TSQLConnection.UserName

Synopsis: The username for authentication on the database server.

Declaration: `Property UserName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UserName` is used to authenticate on the database server when the connection to the database is established.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.HostName` ([1528](#)), `TSQLConnection.Role` ([1529](#)), `TSQLConnection.Charset` ([1528](#))

59.16.27 TSQLConnection.CharSet

Synopsis: The character set to be used in this database.

Declaration: `Property CharSet : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Charset` can be used to tell the user in which character set the data will be sent to the server, and in which character set the results should be sent to the client. Some connection types will ignore this property, and the data will be sent to the client in the encoding used on the server.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

Remark SQLDB will not do anything with this setting except pass it on to the server if a specific connection type supports it. It does not perform any conversions by itself based on the value of this setting.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.HostName` ([1528](#)), `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.Role` ([1529](#))

59.16.28 TSQLConnection.HostName

Synopsis: The name of the host computer where the database resides.

Declaration: `Property HostName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HostName` is the name of the host computer where the database server is listening for connection. An empty value means the local machine is used.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Role` ([1529](#)), `TSQLConnection.Password` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.UserName` ([1527](#)), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` ([1530](#)), `TSQLConnection.Charset` ([1528](#))

59.16.29 TSQLConnection.OnLog

Synopsis: Event handler for logging events.

Declaration: `Property OnLog : TDBLogNotifyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `TSQLConnection` can send events for all the actions that it performs: executing SQL statements, commit and rollback of transactions etc. This event handler must be set to react on these events: they can for example be written to a log file. Only events specified in the `LogEvents` ([1529](#)) property will be logged.

The events received by this event handler are specific for this connection. To receive events from all active connections in the application, set the global `GlobalDBLogHook` ([1506](#)) event handler.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` ([1506](#)), `TSQLConnection.LogEvents` ([1529](#))

59.16.30 TSQLConnection.LogEvents

Synopsis: Filter for events to log.

Declaration: `Property LogEvents : TDBEventTypes`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `LogEvents` can be used to filter the events which should be sent to the `OnLog` (1528) and `GlobalDBLogHook` (1506) event handlers. Only event types that are listed in this property will be sent.

See also: `GlobalDBLogHook` (1506), `TSQLConnection.OnLog` (1528)

59.16.31 TSQLConnection.Options

Synopsis: Options to observe for this connection.

Declaration: `Property Options : TSQLConnectionOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to control the behaviour of SQLDB for this connection. The following options can be set:

scoExplicitConnect When set, the connection must be explicitly made. Default behaviour is for `TSQLQuery` to implicitly open the connection as needed.

scoApplyUpdatesChecksRowsAffected When set, whenever an update SQL Statement is executed during `ApplyOptions` of a dataset, the `RowsAffected` (1518) is checked and must be equal to 1.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (1514), `TCustomSQLStatement.RowsAffected` (1518), `TCustomSQLQuery.RowsAffected` (1513)

59.16.32 TSQLConnection.Role

Synopsis: Role in which the user is connecting to the database.

Declaration: `Property Role : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Role` is used to specify the user's role when connecting to the database user. Not all connection types support roles, for those that do not, this property is ignored.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (1527), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1527), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (1530), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (1528)

59.16.33 TSQLConnection.Connected

Synopsis: Is a connection to the server active or not.

Declaration: `Property Connected :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Connected` indicates whether a connection to the server is active or not. No queries to this server can be activated as long as the value is `False`

Setting the property to `True` will attempt a connection to the database `DatabaseName` (1530) on host `HostName` (1528) using the credentials specified in `UserName` (1527) and `Password` (1527). If the connection or authentication fails, an exception is raised. This has the same effect as calling `Open` (485).

Setting the property to `False` will close the connection to the database. All datasets connected to the database will be closed, all transactions will be closed as well. This has the same effect as calling `Close` (1492)

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (1527), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1527), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (1530), `TSQLConnection.Role` (1529)

59.16.34 TSQLConnection.DatabaseName

Synopsis: The name of the database to which connection is required.

Declaration: `Property DatabaseName :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DatabaseName` is the name of the database to which a connection must be made. Some servers need a complete path to a file, others need a symbolic name (an alias): the interpretation of this name depends on the connection type.

This property must be set prior to activating the connection. Changing it while the connection is active has no effect.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (1527), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1527), `TSQLConnection.Charset` (1528), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (1528)

59.16.35 TSQLConnection.KeepConnection

Synopsis: Attempt to keep the connection open once it is established.

Declaration: `Property KeepConnection :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `KeepConnection` can be used to attempt to keep the connection open once it is established. This property is currently not implemented.

59.16.36 TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt

Synopsis: Should SQLDB prompt for user credentials when a connection is activated.

Declaration: `Property LoginPrompt :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `LoginPrompt` can be set to `True` to force the system to get a username/password pair from the user. How these data are fetched from the user depends on the `OnLogin` (1531) event handler. The `UserName` (1527) and `Password` (1527) properties are ignored in this case.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (1527), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1527), `OnLogin` (1531)

59.16.37 TSQLConnection.Params

Synopsis: Extra connection parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` can be used to specify extra parameters to use when establishing a connection to the database. Which parameters can be specified depends on the connection type.

See also: `TSQLConnection.Password` (1527), `TSQLConnection.UserName` (1527), `TSQLConnection.Hostname` (1528), `TSQLConnection.DatabaseName` (1530)

59.16.38 TSQLConnection.OnLogin

Synopsis: Event handler for login process.

Declaration: `Property OnLogin :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `OnLogin` will be used when `loginPrompt` (1531) is `True`. It will be called, and can be used to present a user with a dialog in which the username and password can be asked.

See also: `TSQLConnection.LoginPrompt` (1531)

59.17 TSQLConnector

59.17.1 Description

`TSQLConnector` implements a general connection type. When switching database backends, the normal procedure is to replace one instance of `TSQLConnection` (1520) with another, and connect all instances of `TSQLQuery` (1535) and `TSQLTransaction` (1564) to the new connection.

Using `TSQLConnector` avoids this: the type of connection can be set using the `ConnectorType` (1532) property, which is a string property. The `TSQLConnector` class will (in the background) create the correct `TSQLConnection` (1520) to handle all actual operations on the database.

In all other respects, `TSQLConnector` acts like a regular `TSQLConnection` instance. Since no access to the actually used `TSQLConnection` descendent is available, connection-specific calls are not available.

See also: `TSQLConnector.ConnectorType` ([1532](#)), `UniversalConnectors` ([1495](#))

59.17.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1532	<code>ConnectorType</code>	rw	Name of the connection type to use.
1532	<code>Port</code>		

59.17.3 TSQLConnector.ConnectorType

Synopsis: Name of the connection type to use.

Declaration: `Property ConnectorType : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ConnectorType` should be set to one of the available connector types in the application. The list of possible connector types can be retrieved using `GetConnectionList` ([1506](#)) call. The `ConnectorType` property can only be set when the connection is not active.

Errors: Attempting to change the `ConnectorType` property while the connection is active will result in an exception.

See also: `GetConnectionList` ([1506](#))

59.17.4 TSQLConnector.Port

Declaration: `Property Port :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.18 TSQLCursor

59.18.1 Description

`TSQLCursor` is an abstract internal object representing a result set returned by a single SQL select statement (`TSQLHandle` ([1534](#))). statement. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) component to handle result sets returned by SQL statements.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)), `TSQLHandle` ([1534](#))

59.19 TSQLDBFieldDef

59.19.1 Description

TSQLDBFieldDef is a SQLDB specific db.TFieldDef (1492) descendent which has room for storing engine-specific data for the result set fields.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData (1533)

59.19.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1533	SQLDBData	rw	Pointer to store engine-specific data for the result field.

59.19.3 TSQLDBFieldDef.SQLDBData

Synopsis: Pointer to store engine-specific data for the result field.

Declaration: `Property SQLDBData : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: SQLDBData can be used by the TSQLConnection (1520) descendents to store additional data about fields in a result set. It is not used by TSQLQuery itself.

See also: TSQLQuery (1535)

59.20 TSQLDBFieldDefs

59.20.1 Description

TSQLDBFieldDefs is a TFieldDefs descendent which creates TSQLDBFieldDef (1533) descendents when a new field is added to the field set, to provide storage for engine-specific field data.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef (1533)

59.21 TSQLDBParam

59.21.1 Description

TSQLDBParam is used to be able to create parameters which can store info about a field on which the parameter is based in the TSQLDBParam.FieldDef (1534) field. This is useful when constructing update or insert queries. It can also store private data needed for the various TSQLConnection (1520) descendents in the TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData (1534) property.

See also: TSQLDBFieldDef (1533), TSQLDBParam.FieldDef (1534), TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData (1534)

59.21.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1534	FieldDef	rw	Field definition for update SQL.
1534	SQLDBData	rw	Private data for TSQLDB descendents.

59.21.3 TSQLDBParam.FieldDef

Synopsis: Field definition for update SQL.

Declaration: `Property FieldDef : TFieldDef`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `FieldDef` is used during generation of update SQL statements to store information about the field to be updated.

See also: `TSQLDBFieldDef` ([1533](#)), `TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData` ([1534](#))

59.21.4 TSQLDBParam.SQLDBData

Synopsis: Private data for TSQLDB descendents.

Declaration: `Property SQLDBData : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLDBData` should not be used by the end-user, it is for internal use by the `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)) descendents.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)), `TSQLDBParam.FieldDef` ([1534](#))

59.22 TSQLDBParams

59.22.1 Description

`TSQLDBParams` is a `TParams` descendent which creates `TSQLDBParams` ([1534](#)) descendents when a new field is added to the field set, to provide storage for engine-specific field data.

See also: `TSQLDBParam` ([1533](#))

59.23 TSQLHandle

59.23.1 Description

`TSQLHandle` is an abstract internal object representing a database client handle. It is used by the various connections to implement the connection-specific functionality, and usually represents a low-level handle. It is used by the `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) component to communicate with the `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)) descendent.

This object must not be used directly.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)), `TSQLCursor` ([1532](#))

59.24 TSQLQuery

59.24.1 Description

`TSQLQuery` exposes the properties and some methods introduced in `TCustomSQLQuery` (1511). It encapsulates a single SQL statement: it implements all the necessary `#fcl.db.TDataset` (498) functionality to be able to handle a result set. It can also be used to execute a single SQL statement that does not return data, using the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (1513) method.

Typically, the `TSQLQuery.Database` (1543) property must be set once, the `TSQLQuery.Transaction` (1543) property as well. Then the `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543) property can be set. Depending on the kind of SQL statement, the `Open` (517) method can be used to retrieve data, or the `ExecSQL` method can be used to execute the SQL statement (this can be used for DDL statements, or update statements).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (1564), `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (1513), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543)

59.24.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1539	Active		
1539	AfterCancel		
1539	AfterClose		
1539	AfterDelete		
1540	AfterEdit		
1540	AfterInsert		
1540	AfterOpen		
1540	AfterPost		
1540	AfterRefresh		Event triggered after refresh.
1540	AfterScroll		
1539	AutoCalcFields		
1540	BeforeCancel		
1541	BeforeClose		
1541	BeforeDelete		
1541	BeforeEdit		
1541	BeforeInsert		
1541	BeforeOpen		
1541	BeforePost		
1541	BeforeRefresh		Event triggered before refresh.
1542	BeforeScroll		
1543	Database		The <code>TSQLConnection</code> instance on which to execute SQL Statements.
1549	DataSource		Source for parameter values for unbound parameters.
1545	DeleteSQL		Statement to be used when deleting a new row in the database.
1538	FieldDefs		List of field definitions.
1539	Filter		
1539	Filtered		
1545	IndexDefs		List of local index Definitions.
1544	InsertSQL		Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database.
1547	MacroChar		Macro delimiter character.
1547	MacroCheck		Check for macros in the SQL statement.
1547	Macros		Set of macros for this SQL statement.
1538	MaxIndexesCount		Maximum allowed number of indexes.
1542	OnCalcFields		
1542	OnDeleteError		
1542	OnEditError		
1542	OnFilterRecord		
1542	OnNewRecord		
1542	OnPostError		
1546	Options		Options controlling the behaviour of the dataset.
1547	ParamCheck		Should the SQL statement be checked for parameters.
1546	Params		Parameters detected in the SQL statement.
1548	ParseSQL		Should the SQL statement be parsed or not.
1543	ReadOnly		
1545	RefreshSQL		Refresh query to re-fetch field values after a DB update.
1538	SchemaType		Schema type.
1549	Sequence		Sequence to use for auto-generating values using a sequence.
1550	ServerFilter		Append server-side filter to SQL statement.
1550	ServerFiltered		Should server-side filter be applied.
1550	ServerIndexDefs		List of indexes on the primary table of the query.
1543	SQL		The SQL statement to execute.
1538	StatementType		SQL statement type.
1543	Transaction		Transaction in which to execute SQL statements.
1548	UpdateMode		How to create update SQL statements.
1544	UpdateSQL		Statement to be used when updating an existing row

59.24.3 TSQLQuery.SchemaType

Synopsis: Schema type.

Declaration: `Property SchemaType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `SchemaType` is the schema type set by `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (1513). It determines what kind of schema information will be returned by the `TSQLQuery` instance.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo` (1513), `RetrievingSchemaInformation` (1496)

59.24.4 TSQLQuery.StatementType

Synopsis: SQL statement type.

Declaration: `Property StatementType :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `StatementType` is determined during the `Prepare` (1512) call when `ParseSQL` (1548) is set to `True`. It gives an indication of the type of SQL statement that is being executed.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (1548), `TSQLQuery.Params` (1546)

59.24.5 TSQLQuery.MaxIndexesCount

Synopsis: Maximum allowed number of indexes.

Declaration: `Property MaxIndexesCount :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MaxIndexesCount` determines the number of index entries that the dataset will reserve for indexes. No more indexes than indicated here can be used. The property must be set before the dataset is opened. The minimum value for this property is 1. The default value is 2.

If an index is added and the current index count equals `MaxIndexesCount`, an exception will be raised.

Errors: Attempting to set this property while the dataset is active will raise an exception.

59.24.6 TSQLQuery.FieldDefs

Synopsis: List of field definitions.

Declaration: `Property FieldDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.7 TSQLQuery.Active

Declaration: Property Active :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.8 TSQLQuery.AutoCalcFields

Declaration: Property AutoCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.9 TSQLQuery.Filter

Declaration: Property Filter :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.10 TSQLQuery.Filtered

Declaration: Property Filtered :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.11 TSQLQuery.AfterCancel

Declaration: Property AfterCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.12 TSQLQuery.AfterClose

Declaration: Property AfterClose :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.13 TSQLQuery.AfterDelete

Declaration: Property AfterDelete :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.14 TSQLQuery.AfterEdit

Declaration: Property AfterEdit :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.15 TSQLQuery.AfterInsert

Declaration: Property AfterInsert :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.16 TSQLQuery.AfterOpen

Declaration: Property AfterOpen :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.17 TSQLQuery.AfterPost

Declaration: Property AfterPost :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.18 TSQLQuery.AfterRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered after refresh.

Declaration: Property AfterRefresh :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.19 TSQLQuery.AfterScroll

Declaration: Property AfterScroll :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.20 TSQLQuery.BeforeCancel

Declaration: Property BeforeCancel :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.21 TSQLQuery.BeforeClose

Declaration: `Property BeforeClose :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.22 TSQLQuery.BeforeDelete

Declaration: `Property BeforeDelete :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.23 TSQLQuery.BeforeEdit

Declaration: `Property BeforeEdit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.24 TSQLQuery.BeforeInsert

Declaration: `Property BeforeInsert :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.25 TSQLQuery.BeforeOpen

Declaration: `Property BeforeOpen :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.26 TSQLQuery.BeforePost

Declaration: `Property BeforePost :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.27 TSQLQuery.BeforeRefresh

Synopsis: Event triggered before refresh.

Declaration: `Property BeforeRefresh :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.28 TSQLQuery.BeforeScroll

Declaration: Property BeforeScroll :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.29 TSQLQuery.OnCalcFields

Declaration: Property OnCalcFields :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.30 TSQLQuery.OnDeleteError

Declaration: Property OnDeleteError :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.31 TSQLQuery.OnEditError

Declaration: Property OnEditError :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.32 TSQLQuery.OnFilterRecord

Declaration: Property OnFilterRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.33 TSQLQuery.OnNewRecord

Declaration: Property OnNewRecord :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.34 TSQLQuery.OnPostError

Declaration: Property OnPostError :

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.35 TSQLQuery.Database

Synopsis: The `TSQLConnection` instance on which to execute SQL Statements.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Database` is the SQL connection (of type `TSQLConnection` (1520)) on which SQL statements will be executed, and from which result sets will be retrieved. This property must be set before any form of SQL command can be executed, just like the `Transaction` (1543) property must be set.

Multiple `TSQLQuery` instances can be connected to a database at the same time.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Transaction` (1543), `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TSQLTransaction` (1564)

59.24.36 TSQLQuery.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction in which to execute SQL statements.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transaction` must be set to a SQL transaction (of type `TSQLTransaction` (1564)) component. All SQL statements (`SQL / InsertSQL / updateSQL / DeleteSQL` etc.) will be executed in the context of this transaction.

The transaction must be connected to the same database instance as the query itself.

Multiple `TSQLQuery` instances can be connected to a transaction at the same time. If the transaction is rolled back, all changes done by all `TSQLQuery` instances will be rolled back.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (1543), `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TSQLTransaction` (1564)

59.24.37 TSQLQuery.ReadOnly

Declaration: `Property ReadOnly :`

Visibility: published

Access:

59.24.38 TSQLQuery.SQL

Synopsis: The SQL statement to execute.

Declaration: `Property SQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `SQL` is the SQL statement that will be executed when `ExecSQL` (1513) is called, or `Open` (517) is called. It should contain a valid SQL statement for the connection to which the `TSQLQuery` (1535) component is connected. `SQLDB` will not attempt to modify the SQL statement so it is accepted by the SQL engine.

Setting or modifying the SQL statement will call `UnPrepare` (1512)

If `ParseSQL` (1548) is `True`, the SQL statement will be parsed and the `Params` (1546) property will be updated with the names of the parameters found in the SQL statement.

See also `Using parameters`.

See also: `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (1548), `TSQLQuery.Params` (1546), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (1513), `TDataset.Open` (517)

59.24.39 TSQLQuery.InsertSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when inserting a new row in the database.

Declaration: Property `InsertSQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `InsertSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `INSERT` statement, which is used when a new record was appended to the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an insert statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the insert can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as :`OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (1544), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (1545), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (1548), `UsingParams` (1497), `UpdateSQLS` (1496)

59.24.40 TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when updating an existing row in the database.

Declaration: Property `UpdateSQL` :

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `UPDATE` statement, which is used when an existing record was modified in the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate an update statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the update can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as :`OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (1544), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (1545), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (1548), `UsingParams` (1497), `UpdateSQLS` (1496)

59.24.41 TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL

Synopsis: Statement to be used when deleting a new row in the database.

Declaration: `Property DeleteSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DeleteSQL` can be used to specify an SQL `DELETE` statement, which is used when an existing record was deleted from the dataset, and the changes must be written to the database. `TSQLQuery` can generate a delete statement by itself for many cases, but in case it fails, the statement to be used for the delete operation can be specified here.

The SQL statement should be parameterized according to the conventions for specifying parameters. Note that old field values can be specified as `:OLD_FIELDNAME`

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (1544), `TSQLQuery.DeleteSQL` (1545), `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (1548), `UsingParams` (1497), `UpdateSQLS` (1496)

59.24.42 TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL

Synopsis: Refresh query to re-fetch field values after a DB update.

Declaration: `Property RefreshSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `RefreshSQL` can be used to specify a SQL statement that is executed after an `UPDATE` or `INSERT` operation. The query will be executed, and the values of all fields in the result set will be copied to the dataset. This SQL statement is only executed during the `ApplyUpdates` operation, not during the `Post` call itself.

A `RefreshSQL` can be constructed automatically by `SQLDB` by setting the `pfRefreshOnUpdate` or `pfRefreshOnInsert` flags in the `ProviderFlags` (1492) of the fields in the dataset, depending on whether the operation was an update or insert.

For SQL engines that support `RETURNING` clauses, the `RETURNING` clause will be used to refresh field values, unless `sqrPreferRefresh` is specified in `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546)

See also: `TField.ProviderFlags` (1492), `TSQLQuery.Options` (1546)

59.24.43 TSQLQuery.IndexDefs

Synopsis: List of local index Definitions.

Declaration: `Property IndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: List of local index Definitions.

See also: `TCustomBufDataset.IndexDefs` (1492)

59.24.44 TSQLQuery.Options

Synopsis: Options controlling the behaviour of the dataset.

Declaration: `Property Options :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Options` controls the behaviour of the dataset. The following options can be specified:

sqoKeepOpenOnCommit The default SQLDB behaviour is to close all datasets connected to a transaction when a transaction is committed or rolled back, which means that transactions must remain active as long as the dataset is open. This can create problems with locking of records etc. With this option set, the dataset will be kept open. Note that setting this option will cause SQLDB to fetch all records in the result set in memory.

sqoAutoApplyUpdates Setting this option will make `TSQLQuery` call `ApplyUpdates` after every `Post` or `Delete` operation.

sqoAutoCommit Setting this option will make `TSQLQuery` call `commit` after every `ApplyUpdates`

sqoCancelUpdatesOnRefresh Setting this option will cause `TSQLQuery` to abandon all pending changes when `Refresh` is called. The default behaviour is to raise an exception when `Refresh` is called and there are pending changes

sqoPreferRefresh If the database engine supports `RETURNING`, then the returning mechanism is used to fetch field values after an update of the database. Setting this option will disable the use of `RETURNING` and will fetch updated or new values instead with the `TSQLQuery.RefreshSQL` (1545) property or a constructed refresh SQL statement.

See also: `TCustomSQLQuery.ApplyUpdates` (1514), `TCustomSQLQuery.Post` (1515), `TCustomSQLQuery.Delete` (1515)

59.24.45 TSQLQuery.Params

Synopsis: Parameters detected in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` contains the parameters used in the SQL statement. This collection is only updated when `ParseSQL` (1548) is `True`. For each named parameter in the SQL (1543) property, a named item will appear in the collection, and the collection will be used to retrieve values from.

When `Open` (517) or `ExecSQL` (1513) is called, and the `Datasource` (1549) property is not `Nil`, then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` (630) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the datasource.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

The Update, delete and insert SQL statements are not scanned for parameters.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.ParseSQL` (1548), `TParam.Bound` (630), `UsingParams` (1497), `UpdateSQLS` (1496)

59.24.46 TSQLQuery.ParamCheck

Synopsis: Should the SQL statement be checked for parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParamCheck` must be set to `False` to disable the parameter check. The default value `True` indicates that the SQL statement should be checked for parameter names (in the form `:ParamName`), and corresponding `TParam` (619) instances should be added to the `Params` (1546) property.

When executing some DDL statements, e.g. a "create procedure" SQL statement can contain parameters. These parameters should not be converted to `TParam` instances.

See also: `TParam` (619), `Params` (1546), `ParamCheck` (1547)

59.24.47 TSQLQuery.Macros

Synopsis: Set of macros for this SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Macros :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Macros` is a collection of named macro values. In difference with `Params` (1546) the macro value is always replaced textually in the SQL statement before it is sent to the SQL engine. This allows you to parametrize parts of the SQL statement that the SQL engine will not let you parametrize: the table name, the order by clause or an IN clause in a SQL select statement. Macros are resolved before parameters are resolved.

See also: `Params` (1546)

59.24.48 TSQLQuery.MacroCheck

Synopsis: Check for macros in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property MacroCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroCheck` is the macro equivalent of `ParamCheck` (1547): if set to `True`, it instructs the query component to check the SQL statement text for macros and add them to the `Macros` (1547) collection.

See also: `ParamCheck` (1547), `Macros` (1547)

59.24.49 TSQLQuery.MacroChar

Synopsis: Macro delimiter character.

Declaration: `Property MacroChar :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroChar` is the macro delimiter character. A macro is delimited by this character on both sides: start and end. The default is the % (percent) sign.

59.24.50 TSQLQuery.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Should the SQL statement be parsed or not.

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParseSQL` can be set to `False` to prevent `TSQLQuery` from parsing the `SQL` (1543) property and attempting to detect the statement type or updating the `Params` (1546) or `StatementType` (1538) properties.

This can be used when `SQLDB` has problems parsing the SQL statement, or when the SQL statement contains parameters that are part of a DDL statement such as a `CREATE PROCEDURE` statement to create a stored procedure.

Note that in this case the statement will be passed as-is to the SQL engine, no parameter values will be passed on.

See also: `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543), `TSQLQuery.Params` (1546)

59.24.51 TSQLQuery.UpdateMode

Synopsis: How to create update SQL statements.

Declaration: `Property UpdateMode :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UpdateMode` determines how the `WHERE` clause of the `UpdateSQL` (1544) and `DeleteSQL` (1545) statements are auto-generated.

upWhereAll Use all old field values.

upWhereChanged Use only old field values of modified fields.

upWhereKeyOnly Only use key fields in the where clause.

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateSQL` (1544), `TSQLQuery.InsertSQL` (1544)

59.24.52 TSQLQuery.UsePrimaryKeyAsKey

Synopsis: Should primary key fields be marked `pfInKey`.

Declaration: `Property UsePrimaryKeyAsKey :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLQuery` fetch all server indexes and if there is a primary key, update the `ProviderFlags` (575) of the fields in the primary key with `pfInKey` (454).

The effect of this is that when `UpdateMode` (1548) equals `upWhereKeyOnly`, then only the fields that are part of the primary key of the table will be used in the update statements. For more information, see `UpdateSQLs` (1496).

Note that this property only takes effect if the fields are the default fields: if persistent fields were created, the providerflags of the fields are not updated.

See also: `TSQLQuery.UpdateMode` (1548), `#fcl.bufdataset.TCustomBufDataset.Unidirectional` (254), `TField.ProviderFlags` (575), `pfInKey` (454), `UpdateSQLs` (1496)

59.24.53 TSQLQuery.DataSource

Synopsis: Source for parameter values for unbound parameters.

Declaration: `Property DataSource :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Datasource` can be set to a dataset which will be used to retrieve values for the parameters if they were not explicitly specified.

When `Open` (517) or `ExecSQL` (1513) is called, and the `Datasource` property is not `Nil` then for each parameter for which no value was explicitly set (its `Bound` (630) property is `False`), the value will be retrieved from the dataset connected to the `datasource`.

For each parameter, a field with the same name will be searched, and its value and type will be copied to the (unbound) parameter. The parameter remains unbound.

See also: `Params` (1546), `ExecSQL` (1513), `UsingParams` (1497), `TParam.Bound` (630)

59.24.54 TSQLQuery.Sequence

Synopsis: Sequence to use for auto-generating values using a sequence.

Declaration: `Property Sequence :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Sequence` allows `TSQLQuery` to automate generation of a new value for a field using a sequence in the database.

To this end, the properties in `TSQLSequence` (1558) must be set to appropriate values, and `TSQLQuery` will automatically generate a new value for the indicated field during insert or post (depending on the value of `TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent` (1560)).

See also: `TSQLSequence` (1558)

59.24.55 TSQLQuery.ServerFilter

Synopsis: Append server-side filter to SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property ServerFilter :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFilter` can be set to a valid `WHERE` clause (without the `WHERE` keyword). It will be appended to the `select` statement in SQL (1543), when `ServerFiltered` (1550) is set to `True`. if `ServerFiltered` (1550) is set to `False`, `ServerFilter` is ignored.

If the dataset is active and `ServerFiltered` (1550) is set to `true`, then changing this property will re-fetch the data from the server.

This property cannot be used when `ParseSQL` (1548) is `False`, because the statement must be parsed in order to know where the `WHERE` clause must be inserted: the `TSQLQuery` class will intelligently insert the clause in an SQL `select` statement.

Errors: Setting this property when `ParseSQL` (1548) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ServerFiltered` (1550)

59.24.56 TSQLQuery.ServerFiltered

Synopsis: Should server-side filter be applied.

Declaration: `Property ServerFiltered :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerFiltered` can be set to `True` to apply `ServerFilter` (1550). A change in the value for this property will re-fetch the query results if the dataset is active.

Errors: Setting this property to `True` when `ParseSQL` (1548) is `False` will result in an exception.

See also: `ParseSQL` (1548), `ServerFilter` (1550)

59.24.57 TSQLQuery.ServerIndexDefs

Synopsis: List of indexes on the primary table of the query.

Declaration: `Property ServerIndexDefs :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ServerIndexDefs` will be filled - during the `Prepare` call - with the list of indexes defined on the primary table in the query if `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (1548) is `True`. If a primary key is found, then the fields in it will be marked

See also: `UsePrimaryKeyAsKey` (1548), `Prepare` (1512)

59.25 TSQLScript

59.25.1 Description

`TSQLScript` is a component that can be used to execute many SQL statements using a `TSQLQuery` (1535) component. The SQL statements are specified in a script `TSQLScript.Script` (1555) separated by a terminator character (typically a semicolon (;)).

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (1564), `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (1513), `TSQLQuery.SQL` (1543)

59.25.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1551	Create	Create a new <code>TSQLScript</code> instance.
1552	Destroy	Remove the <code>TSQLScript</code> instance from memory.
1552	Execute	Execute the script.
1552	ExecuteScript	Convenience function, simply calls <code>Execute</code> .

59.25.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1552	Aborted		True when the script was aborted.
1554	AutoCommit		Automatically commit every statement.
1556	CommentsinSQL		Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?
1553	DataBase	rw	Database on which to execute the script.
1555	Defines		Defined macros.
1555	Directives		List of directives.
1554	DollarStrings		List of alternate string delimiter token sequences.
1553	Line		Current line of execution in the script.
1553	OnDirective	rw	Event handler if a directive is encountered.
1558	OnException		Exception handling event.
1555	Script		The script to execute.
1556	Terminator		Terminator character.
1553	Transaction	rw	Transaction to use in the script.
1557	UseCommit		Control automatic handling of the <code>COMMIT</code> command.
1557	UseDefines		Automatically handle pre-processor defines.
1554	UseDollarString		Enable support for dollarstrings.
1556	UseSetTerm		Should the <code>SET TERM</code> directive be recognized.

59.25.4 TSQLScript.Create

Synopsis: Create a new `TSQLScript` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a `TSQLQuery` (1535) instance which will be used to execute the queries, and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TSQLScript.Destroy` (1552)

59.25.5 TSQLScript.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the TSQLScript instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` frees the TSQLQuery (1535) instance that was created during the `Create` constructor from memory and then calls the inherited destructor.

See also: TSQLScript.Create (1551)

59.25.6 TSQLScript.Execute

Synopsis: Execute the script.

Declaration: `procedure Execute; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Execute` will execute the statements specified in `Script` (1555) one by one, till the last statement is processed or an exception is raised.

If an error occurs during execution, normally an exception is raised. If the TSQLScript.OnException (1558) event handler is set, it may stop the event handler.

Errors: Handle errors using TSQLScript.OnException (1558).

See also: `Script` (1555), TSQLScript.OnException (1558)

59.25.7 TSQLScript.ExecuteScript

Synopsis: Convenience function, simply calls `Execute`.

Declaration: `procedure ExecuteScript`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteScript` is a convenience function, it simply calls `Execute`. The statements in the script will be executed one by one.

59.25.8 TSQLScript.Aborted

Synopsis: True when the script was aborted.

Declaration: `Property Aborted :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

Description: `Aborted` is set to `True` if the SQL script execution is aborted by one of the directives in the script. It is read-only.

59.25.9 TSQLScript.Line

Synopsis: Current line of execution in the script.

Declaration: `Property Line :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `Line` is the line number (0 based) of the currently executed statement in the script. For multiline statements, the last line of the statement is counted as the current line.

59.25.10 TSQLScript.DataBase

Synopsis: Database on which to execute the script.

Declaration: `Property DataBase : TDatabase`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Database` should be set to the `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent. All SQL statements in the `Script` (1555) property will be executed on this database.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520), `TSQLScript.Transaction` (1553), `TSQLScript.Script` (1555)

59.25.11 TSQLScript.Transaction

Synopsis: Transaction to use in the script.

Declaration: `Property Transaction : TDBTransaction`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Transaction` is the transaction instance to use when executing statements. If the SQL script contains any `COMMIT` statements, they will be handled using the `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (1565) method.

See also: `TSQLTransaction` (1564), `TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining` (1565), `TSQLScript.Database` (1553)

59.25.12 TSQLScript.OnDirective

Synopsis: Event handler if a directive is encountered.

Declaration: `Property OnDirective : TSQLScriptDirectiveEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `OnDirective` is called when a directive is encountered. When parsing the script, the script engine checks the first word of the statement. If it matches one of the words in `Directives` (1555) property then the `OnDirective` event handler is called with the name of the directive and the rest of the statement as parameters. This can be used to handle all kind of pre-processing actions such as `Set term \;`

See also: `Directives` (1555)

59.25.13 TSQLScript.AutoCommit

Synopsis: Automatically commit every statement.

Declaration: `Property AutoCommit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `AutoCommit` can be set to `True` to commit every executed statement in the script. By default, this is set to `false`.

See also: `TSQLScript.Transaction` ([1553](#))

59.25.14 TSQLScript.UseDollarString

Synopsis: Enable support for dollarstrings.

Declaration: `Property UseDollarString :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseDollarString` enables support for so-called "DollarString" delimiters for string literals. This means that the normal string literal delimiter (') is enhanced with any string appearing in the `DollarStrings` ([1554](#)) property.

Setting `UseDollarString` to `true` incurs a speed penalty, so it is better not to enable it unless it is really necessary.

This is needed for instance for PostgreSQL, where stored procedure code blocks are enclosed in "\$\$" signs, and are treated as a string literal.

See also: `TSQLScript.DollarStrings` ([1554](#))

59.25.15 TSQLScript.DollarStrings

Synopsis: List of alternate string delimiter token sequences.

Declaration: `Property DollarStrings :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `DollarStrings` contains a list of additional string delimiter tokens. The value of this property is ignored unless `TSQLScript.UseDollarString` ([1554](#)) is also set to `True`.

For PostgreSQL, this should be set to `$$`, as this is the most commonly used string delimiter for stored procedures.

See also: `TSQLScript.UseDollarString` ([1554](#))

59.25.16 TSQLScript.Directives

Synopsis: List of directives.

Declaration: `Property Directives :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Directives` is a stringlist with words that should be recognized as directives. They will be handled using the `OnDirective` (1553) event handler. The list should contain one word per line, no spaces allowed.

See also: `OnDirective` (1553)

59.25.17 TSQLScript.Defines

Synopsis: Defined macros.

Declaration: `Property Defines :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Defines` contains the list of defined macros for use with the `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (1557) property. Each line should contain a macro name. The names of the macros are case insensitive. The `#DEFINE` and `#UNDEFINE` directives will add or remove macro names from this list.

See also: `TSQLScript.UseDefines` (1557)

59.25.18 TSQLScript.Script

Synopsis: The script to execute.

Declaration: `Property Script :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Script` contains the list of SQL statements to be executed. The statements should be separated by the character specified in the `Terminator` (1556) property. Each of the statement will be executed on the database specified in `Database` (1553), using the equivalent of the `TCustomSQLQuery.ExecSQL` (1513) statement. The statements should not return result sets, but other than that all kind of statements are allowed.

Comments will be conserved and passed on in the statements to be executed, depending on the value of the `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (1556) property. If that property is `False`, comments will be stripped prior to executing the SQL statements.

See also: `TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL` (1556), `TSQLScript.Terminator` (1556), `TSQLScript.Database` (1553)

59.25.19 TSQLScript.Terminator

Synopsis: Terminator character.

Declaration: `Property Terminator :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Terminator` is the character used by `TSQLScript` to delimit SQL statements. By default it equals the semicolon (;), which is the customary SQL command terminating character. By itself `TSQLScript` does not recognize complex statements such as `Create Procedure` which can contain terminator characters such as ";". Instead, `TSQLScript` will scan the script for the `Terminator` character. Using directives such as `SET TERM` the terminator character may be changed in the script.

See also: `OnDirective` ([1553](#)), `Directives` ([1555](#))

59.25.20 TSQLScript.CommentsinSQL

Synopsis: Should comments be passed to the SQL engine ?

Declaration: `Property CommentsinSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `CommentsInSQL` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` preserve any comments it finds in the script. The comments will be passed to the `SQLConnection` as part of the commands. If the property is set to `False` the comments are discarded.

By default, `TSQLScript` discards comments.

See also: `TSQLScript.Script` ([1555](#))

59.25.21 TSQLScript.UseSetTerm

Synopsis: Should the SET TERM directive be recognized.

Declaration: `Property UseSetTerm :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseSetTerm` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` automatically handle the `SET TERM` directive and set the `TSQLScript.Terminator` ([1556](#)) character based on the value specified in the `SET TERM` directive. This means that the following directive:

```
SET TERM ^ ;
```

will set the terminator to the caret character. Conversely, the

```
SET TERM ; ^
```

will then switch the terminator character back to the commonly used semicolon (;).

See also: `TSQLScript.Terminator` ([1556](#)), `TSQLScript.Script` ([1555](#)), `TSQLScript.Directives` ([1555](#))

59.25.22 TSQLScript.UseCommit

Synopsis: Control automatic handling of the `COMMIT` command.

Declaration: `Property UseCommit :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseCommit` can be set to `True` to let `TSQLScript` automatically handle the commit command as a directive. If it is set, the `COMMIT` command is registered as a directive, and the `TSQLScript.Transaction` (1553) will be committed and restarted at once whenever the `COMMIT` directive appears in the script.

If this property is set to `False` then the commit command will be passed on to the SQL engine like any other SQL command in the script.

See also: `TSQLScript.Transaction` (1553), `TSQLScript.Directives` (1555)

59.25.23 TSQLScript.UseDefines

Synopsis: Automatically handle pre-processor defines.

Declaration: `Property UseDefines :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `UseDefines` will automatically register the following pre-processing directives:

```
#IFDEF
#IFNDEF
#ELSE
#ENDIF
#DEFINE
#UNDEF
#UNDEFINE
```

Additionally, these directives will be automatically handled by the `TSQLScript` component. This can be used to add conditional execution of the SQL script: they are treated as the conditional compilation statements found in the C macro preprocessor or the FPC conditional compilation features. The initial list of defined macros can be specified in the `Defines` (1555) property, where one define per line can be specified.

In the following example, the correct statement to create a sequence is selected based on the presence of the macro `FIREBIRD` in the list of defines:

```
#IFDEF FIREBIRD
CREATE GENERATOR GEN_MYID;
#ELSE
CREATE SEQUENCE GEN_MYID;
#ENDIF
```

See also: `TSQLScript.Script` (1555), `TSQLScript.Defines` (1555)

59.25.24 TSQLScript.OnException

Synopsis: Exception handling event.

Declaration: `Property OnException :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `OnException` can be set to handle an exception during the execution of a statement or directive when the script is executed. The exception is passed to the handler in the `TheException` parameter. On return, the value of the `Continue` parameter is checked: if it is set to `True`, then the exception is ignored. If it is set to `False` (the default), then the exception is re-raised, and script execution will stop.

See also: `TSQLScript.Execute` ([1552](#))

59.26 TSQLSequence

59.26.1 Description

`TSQLSequence` is an auxiliary class, used to auto-generate numerical values for fields in databases that support sequences; it is used as a property of `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) and its properties determine which field must be auto-generated, and at what moment this value must be generated.

See also: `TSQLConnection.GetSequenceNames` ([1524](#)), `TSQLConnection.GetNextValue` ([1525](#))

59.26.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1559	<code>Apply</code>	Apply a new value to a field.
1559	<code>Assign</code>	Assign one <code>TSQLSequence</code> to another.
1558	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance.
1559	<code>GetNextValue</code>	Get a next value for the sequence.

59.26.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1560	<code>ApplyEvent</code>	rw	When to apply the new value.
1559	<code>FieldName</code>	rw	Field to apply sequence to.
1560	<code>IncrementBy</code>	rw	Value to increment sequence with.
1560	<code>SequenceName</code>	rw	Sequence name to get values from.

59.26.4 TSQLSequence.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AQuery: TCustomSQLQuery)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new sequence. It requires a `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) instance, which it needs to have access to a connection.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#))

59.26.5 TSQLSequence.Assign

Synopsis: Assign one TSQLSequence to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Assign is overridden by TSQLSequence to copy all properties from one instance to another.

Errors: None.

See also: TSQLSequence.FieldName (1559), TSQLSequence.SequenceName (1560), TSQLSequence.IncrementBy (1560)

59.26.6 TSQLSequence.Apply

Synopsis: Apply a new value to a field.

Declaration: `procedure Apply`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Apply applies the new value it gets for TSQLSequence.SequenceName (1560) using TSQLSequence.GetNextValue (1559) to the field TSQLSequence.FieldName (1559) of the dataset it is attached to.

Errors: If the dataset is not attached to a connected database, an exception will be raised.

See also: TSQLSequence.GetNextValue (1559), TSQLSequence.FieldName (1559), TSQLSequence.SequenceName (1560), TSQLSequence.IncrementBy (1560)

59.26.7 TSQLSequence.GetNextValue

Synopsis: Get a next value for the sequence.

Declaration: `function GetNextValue : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: GetNextValue gets a new value for generator TSQLSequence.SequenceName (1560) using TSQLSequence.IncrementBy (1560)

Errors: If the dataset is not attached to a connected database, an exception will be raised.

See also: TSQLSequence.FieldName (1559), TSQLSequence.SequenceName (1560), TSQLSequence.IncrementBy (1560), TSQLSequence.Apply (1559), TSQLConnection.GetNextValue (1525)

59.26.8 TSQLSequence.FieldName

Synopsis: Field to apply sequence to.

Declaration: `Property FieldName : string`

Visibility: `published`

Access: Read,Write

Description: FieldName is the name of the field TSQLSequence will apply the new value to when Apply (1559) is called. It must be a valid fieldname of the dataset that owns the TSQLSequence instance.

See also: Apply (1559), SequenceName (1560), IncrementBy (1560)

59.26.9 TSQLSequence.SequenceName

Synopsis: Sequence name to get values from.

Declaration: `Property SequenceName : string`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `SequenceName` is the name of the sequence `TSQLSequence` will get a new value of when `GetNextValue` (1559) is called.

See also: `TSQLSequence.Apply` (1559), `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (1559), `TSQLSequence.IncrementBy` (1560)

59.26.10 TSQLSequence.IncrementBy

Synopsis: Value to increment sequence with.

Declaration: `Property IncrementBy : Integer`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `IncrementBy` is the value that will be added to the current value of the sequence `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (1560) when `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (1559) is called.

See also: `TSQLSequence.Apply` (1559), `TSQLSequence.GetNextValue` (1559), `TSQLSequence.SequenceName` (1560)

59.26.11 TSQLSequence.ApplyEvent

Synopsis: When to apply the new value.

Declaration: `Property ApplyEvent : TSQLSequenceApplyEvent`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `ApplyEvent` determines when the new value will be applied to a field: On new record (i.e. when `Insert` (514) or `Append` (505) is called) or when a newly inserted record is saved (when `Post` (517) is called).

See also: `TSQLSequenceApplyEvent` (1505)

59.27 TSQLStatement

59.27.1 Description

`TSQLStatement` is a descendent of `TCustomSQLStatement` (1516) which simply publishes the protected properties of that component.

See also: `TCustomSQLStatement` (1516)

59.27.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1561	Database		Database instance to execute statement on.
1561	DataSource		Datasource to copy parameter values from.
1562	MacroCheck		Check for macros in the SQL statement.
1562	Macros		Set of macros for this SQL statement.
1561	ParamCheck		Should SQL be checked for parameters.
1562	Params		List of parameters.
1563	ParseSQL		Parse the SQL statement.
1563	SQL		The SQL statement to execute.
1563	Transaction		The transaction in which the SQL statement should be executed.

59.27.3 TSQLStatement.Database

Synopsis: Database instance to execute statement on.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Database` must be set to an instance of a `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)) descendent. It must be set, together with `Transaction` ([1563](#)) in order to be able to call `Prepare` ([1517](#)) or `Execute` ([1517](#)).

See also: `Transaction` ([1563](#)), `Prepare` ([1517](#)), `Execute` ([1517](#))

59.27.4 TSQLStatement.DataSource

Synopsis: Datasource to copy parameter values from.

Declaration: `Property DataSource :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Datasource` can be set to a `#fcl.db.TDatasource` ([538](#)) instance. When `Execute` ([1517](#)) is called, any unbound parameters remain empty, but if `DataSource` is set, the value of these parameters will be searched in the fields of the associated dataset. If a field with a name equal to the parameter is found, the value of that field is copied to the parameter. No such field exists, an exception is raised.

See also: `#fcl.db.TDatasource` ([538](#)), `Execute` ([1517](#)), `#fcl.db.TParam.Bound` ([630](#))

59.27.5 TSQLStatement.ParamCheck

Synopsis: Should SQL be checked for parameters.

Declaration: `Property ParamCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParamCheck` must be set to `False` to disable the parameter check. The default value `True` indicates that the SQL statement should be checked for parameter names (in the form `:ParamName`), and corresponding `TParam` (619) instances should be added to the `Params` (1562) property.

When executing some DDL statements, e.g. a "create procedure" SQL statement can contain parameters. These parameters should not be converted to `TParam` instances.

See also: `TParam` (619), `TSQLStatement.Params` (1562), `TSQLQuery.ParamCheck` (1547)

59.27.6 TSQLStatement.Params

Synopsis: List of parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Params` contains an item for each of the parameters in the SQL (1563) statement (in the form `:ParamName`). The collection is filled automatically if the `ParamCheck` (1561) property is `True`.

See also: `SQL` (1563), `ParamCheck` (1561), `ParseSQL` (1563)

59.27.7 TSQLStatement.MacroCheck

Synopsis: Check for macros in the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property MacroCheck :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `MacroCheck` is the macro equivalent of `ParamCheck` (1561): if set to `True`, it instructs the query component to check the SQL statement text for macros and add them to the `Macros` (1562) collection.

See also: `ParamCheck` (1561), `Macros` (1562)

59.27.8 TSQLStatement.Macros

Synopsis: Set of macros for this SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property Macros :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Macros` is a collection of named macro values. In difference with `Params` (1562) the macro value is always replaced textually in the SQL statement before it is sent to the SQL engine. This allows you to parametrize parts of the SQL statement that the SQL engine will not let you parametrize: the table name, the order by clause or an IN clause in a SQL select statement. `Macros` are resolved before parameters are resolved.

See also: `Params` (1562)

59.27.9 TSQLStatement.ParseSQL

Synopsis: Parse the SQL statement.

Declaration: `Property ParseSQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `ParseSQL` can be set to `False` to disable parsing of the SQL (1563) property when it is set. The default behaviour (`ParseSQL=True`) is to parse the statement and detect what kind of SQL statement it is.

See also: SQL (1563), `ParamCheck` (1561)

59.27.10 TSQLStatement.SQL

Synopsis: The SQL statement to execute.

Declaration: `Property SQL :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `SQL` must be set to the SQL statement to execute. It must not be a statement that returns a result set. This is the statement that will be passed on to the database engine when `Prepare` (1517) is called.

If `ParamCheck` (1561) equals `True` (the default), the SQL statement can contain parameter names where literal values can occur, in the form `:ParamName`. Keywords or table names cannot be specified as parameters. If the underlying database engine supports it, the parameter support of the database will be used to transfer the values from the `Params` (1562) collection. If not, it will be emulated. The `Params` collection is automatically populated when the SQL statement is set.

Some databases support executing multiple SQL statements in 1 call. Therefore, no attempt is done to ensure that `SQL` contains a single SQL statement. However, error reporting and the `RowsAffected` (1518) function may be wrong in such a case.

See also: `ParseSQL` (1563), `CheckParams` (1560), `Params` (1562), `Prepare` (1517), `RowsAffected` (1518)

59.27.11 TSQLStatement.Transaction

Synopsis: The transaction in which the SQL statement should be executed.

Declaration: `Property Transaction :`

Visibility: published

Access:

Description: `Transaction` should be set to a transaction connected to the instance of the database set in the `Database` (1561) property. This must be set before `Prepare` (1517) is called.

See also: `Database` (1561), `Prepare` (1517), `TSQLTransaction` (1564)

59.28 TSQLTransaction

59.28.1 Description

`TSQLTransaction` represents the transaction in which one or more `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) instances are doing their work. It contains the methods for committing or doing a rollback of the results of query. At least one `TSQLTransaction` must be used for each `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#)) used in an application.

See also: `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)), `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#))

59.28.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1565	<code>Commit</code>	Commit the transaction, end transaction context.
1565	<code>CommitRetaining</code>	Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.
1564	<code>Create</code>	Create a new transaction.
1564	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy transaction component.
1566	<code>EndTransaction</code>	End the transaction.
1565	<code>Rollback</code>	Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.
1566	<code>RollbackRetaining</code>	Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.
1566	<code>StartTransaction</code>	Start a new transaction.

59.28.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1567	<code>Action</code>	rw	Currently unused in SQLDB.
1567	<code>Database</code>		Database for which this component is handling connections.
1567	<code>Handle</code>	r	Low-level transaction handle.
1568	<code>Options</code>	rw	Transaction options.
1568	<code>Params</code>	rw	Transaction parameters.
1567	<code>TSQLConnection</code>	rw	Database as <code>TSQLConnection</code> .

59.28.4 TSQLTransaction.Create

Synopsis: Create a new transaction.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TSQLTransaction` instance, but does not yet start a transaction context.

59.28.5 TSQLTransaction.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy transaction component.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` will close all datasets connected to it, prior to removing the object from memory.

59.28.6 TSQLTransaction.Commit

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, end transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure Commit; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Commit` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversibly written to the database.

After this, the transaction is deactivated and must be reactivated with the `StartTransaction` (1566) method. To commit data while retaining an active transaction, execute `CommitRetaining` (1565) instead.

Errors: Executing `Commit` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (1566). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (1566), `CommitRetaining` (1565), `Rollback` (1565), `RollbackRetaining` (1566)

59.28.7 TSQLTransaction.CommitRetaining

Synopsis: Commit the transaction, retain transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure CommitRetaining; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CommitRetaining` commits an active transaction. The changes will be irreversibly written to the database.

After this, the transaction is still active. To commit data and deactivate the transaction, execute `Commit` (1565) instead.

Errors: Executing `CommitRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (1566). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (1566), `Retaining` (1565), `Rollback` (1565), `RollbackRetaining` (1566)

59.28.8 TSQLTransaction.Rollback

Synopsis: Roll back all changes made in the current transaction.

Declaration: `procedure Rollback; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Rollback` undoes all changes in the database since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is no longer active. To undo changes but keep an active transaction, execute `RollbackRetaining` (1566) instead.

Remark Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `Rollback` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (1566). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (1566), `CommitRetaining` (1565), `Commit` (1565), `RollbackRetaining` (1566)

59.28.9 TSQLTransaction.RollbackRetaining

Synopsis: Roll back changes made in the transaction, keep transaction context.

Declaration: `procedure RollbackRetaining; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RollbackRetaining` undoes all changes in the database since the start of the transaction. It can only be executed in an active transaction.

After this, the transaction is kept in an active state. To undo changes and close the transaction, execute `Rollback` (1565) instead.

Remark Changes posted in datasets that are coupled to this transaction will not be undone in memory: these datasets must be reloaded from the database (using `Close` and `Open` to reload the data as it is in the database).

Errors: Executing `RollbackRetaining` when no transaction is active will result in an exception. A transaction must be started by calling `StartTransaction` (1566). If the database backend reports an error, an exception is raised as well.

See also: `StartTransaction` (1566), `Commit` (1565), `Rollback` (1565), `CommitRetaining` (1565)

59.28.10 TSQLTransaction.StartTransaction

Synopsis: Start a new transaction.

Declaration: `procedure StartTransaction; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `StartTransaction` starts a new transaction context. All changes written to the database must be confirmed with a `Commit` (1565) or can be undone with a `Rollback` (1565) call.

Calling `StartTransaction` is equivalent to setting `Active` to `True`.

Errors: If `StartTransaction` is called while the transaction is still active, an exception will be raised.

See also: `StartTransaction` (1566), `Commit` (1565), `Rollback` (1565), `CommitRetaining` (1565), `EndTransaction` (1566)

59.28.11 TSQLTransaction.EndTransaction

Synopsis: End the transaction.

Declaration: `procedure EndTransaction; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndTransaction` is equivalent to `RollBack` (1565).

See also: `RollBack` (1565)

59.28.12 TSQLTransaction.Handle

Synopsis: Low-level transaction handle.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` is the low-level transaction handle object. It must not be used in application code. The actual type of this object depends on the type of `TSQLConnection` (1520) descendent.

59.28.13 TSQLTransaction.SQLConnection

Synopsis: Database as `TSQLConnection`.

Declaration: `Property SQLConnection : TSQLConnection`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SQLConnection` returns or sets the `Database` property, typecasted to `TSQLConnection`.

See also: `TSQLConnection` (1520)

59.28.14 TSQLTransaction.Action

Synopsis: Currently unused in SQLDB.

Declaration: `Property Action : TCommitRollbackAction`

Visibility: `published`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Action` is currently unused in SQLDB.

59.28.15 TSQLTransaction.Database

Synopsis: Database for which this component is handling connections.

Declaration: `Property Database :`

Visibility: `published`

Access:

Description: `Database` should be set to the particular `TSQLConnection` (1520) instance this transaction is handling transactions in. All datasets connected to this transaction component must have the same value for their `Database` (1543) property.

See also: `TSQLQuery.Database` (1543), `TSQLConnection` (1520)

59.28.16 TSQLTransaction.Params

Synopsis: Transaction parameters.

Declaration: `Property Params : TStringList`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Params` can be used to set connection-specific parameters in the form of `Key=Value` pairs. The contents of this property therefor depends on the type of connection.

See also: `TSQLConnection` ([1520](#))

59.28.17 TSQLTransaction.Options

Synopsis: Transaction options.

Declaration: `Property Options : TSQLTransactionOptions`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Options` can be used to control the behaviour of SQLDB for this transaction.

stoUseImplicit Use the implicit transaction support of the DB engine. This means that no explicit transaction start and stop commands will be sent to the server when the `Commit` or `Rollback` methods are called (effectively making them a no-op at the DB level).

stoExplicitStart When set, whenever an SQL statement is executed, the transaction must have been started explicitly. Default behaviour is that the `TSQLStatement` ([1560](#)) or `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#)) start the transaction as needed.

See also: `TSQLStatement` ([1560](#)), `TSQLQuery` ([1535](#))

Chapter 60

Reference for unit 'SQLTypes'

60.1 Used units

Table 60.1: Used units by unit 'SQLTypes'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

60.2 Constants, types and variables

60.2.1 Types

```
TDBEventType = (detCustom, detPrepare, detExecute, detFetch, detCommit
,
detRollBack, detParamValue, detActualSQL)
```

Table 60.2: Enumeration values for type TDBEventType

Value	Explanation
detActualSQL	Actual SQL as sent to engine message.
detCommit	Transaction Commit message.
detCustom	Custom event message.
detExecute	SQLExecute message.
detFetch	Fetch data message.
detParamValue	Parameter name and value message.
detPrepare	SQL prepare message.
detRollBack	Transaction rollback message.

TDBEventType describes the type of a database event message as generated by TSQLConnection (1520) through the OnLog (1528) event. event.

```
TDBEventTypes = Set of TDBEventType = (detActualSQL, detCommit, detCustom
, detExecute, detFetch,
detParamValue, detPrepare, detRollBack
)
```

TDBEventTypes is a set of TDBEventType (1569) values, which is used to filter the set of event messages that should be sent. The TSQLConnection.LogEvents (1529) property determines which events a particular connection will send.

```
TQuoteChars = Array[0..1] of char
```

TQuoteChars is an array of characters that describes the used delimiters for string values.

```
TSchemaType = (stNoSchema, stTables, stSysTables, stProcedures, stColumns
,
stProcedureParams, stIndexes, stPackages, stSchemata
,
stSequences)
```

Table 60.3: Enumeration values for type TSchemaType

Value	Explanation
stColumns	Columns in a table.
stIndexes	Indexes for a table.
stNoSchema	No schema.
stPackages	Packages (for databases that support them).
stProcedureParams	Parameters for a stored procedure.
stProcedures	Stored procedures in database.
stSchemata	List of schemas in database(s) (for databases that support them).
stSequences	Sequences (for databases that support them).
stSysTables	System tables in database.
stTables	User Tables in database.

TSchemaType describes which schema information to retrieve in the TCustomSQLQuery.SetSchemaInfo (1513) call. Depending on its value, the result set of the dataset will have different fields, describing the requested schema data. The result data will always have the same structure.

```
TStatementType = (stUnknown, stSelect, stInsert, stUpdate, stDelete, stDDL
,
stGetSegment, stPutSegment, stExecProcedure,
stStartTrans, stCommit, stRollback, stSelectForUpd)
```

Table 60.4: Enumeration values for type TStatementType

Value	Explanation
stCommit	The statement commits a transaction.
stDDL	The statement is a SQL DDL (Data Definition Language) statement.
stDelete	The statement is a SQL DELETE statement.
stExecProcedure	The statement executes a stored procedure.
stGetSegment	The statement is a SQL get segment statement.
stInsert	The statement is a SQL INSERT statement.
stPutSegment	The statement is a SQL put segment statement.
stRollback	The statement rolls back a transaction.
stSelect	The statement is a SQL SELECT statement.
stSelectForUpd	The statement selects data for update.
stStartTrans	The statement starts a transaction.
stUnknown	The statement type could not be detected.
stUpdate	The statement is a SQL UPDATE statement.

TStatementType describes the kind of SQL statement that was entered in the SQL property of a TSQLQuery (1535) component.

60.3 TSqlObjectIdentifier

60.3.1 Description

TSqlObjectIdentifier is a class that represents an SQL identifier in a database. It has 2 parts: the schema name and the object name.

See also: TSqlObjectIdentifierList (1569), #fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames (1523)

60.3.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1571	Create	Create a new instance of a TSqlObjectIdentifier class.
1572	FullName	Return the full name of the object.

60.3.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1572	ObjectName	rw	Name of the object in the database.
1572	SchemaName	rw	Schema name.

60.3.4 TSqlObjectIdentifier.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TSqlObjectIdentifier class.

Declaration: constructor Create(ACollection: TSqlObjectIdentifierList;
const AObjectName: string;
const ASchemaName: string='')

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` can be used to create a new `TSqlObjectIdentifier` instance and immediately set the values for the `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (1572) and `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (1572) properties.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (1572), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (1572)

60.3.5 TSqlObjectIdentifier.FullName

Synopsis: Return the full name of the object.

Declaration: `function FullName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FullName` returns the name of the object, prepended with the schema name if there is one. Both parts are separated by a dot (.) character.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (1572), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (1572)

60.3.6 TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName

Synopsis: Schema name.

Declaration: `Property SchemaName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `SchemaName` is the name of the schema in which the object is defined. This is only set if the database actually supports schemas, for other databases, it is empty.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifierList` (1569), `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames` (1523), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName` (1572)

60.3.7 TSqlObjectIdentifier.ObjectName

Synopsis: Name of the object in the database.

Declaration: `Property ObjectName : string`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ObjectName` is the name of the object in the database. If the database supports schemas, then it must be combined with the `SchemaName` (1572) property in order to create a unique name for the object.

See also: `TSqlObjectIdentifierList` (1569), `#fcl.sqlldb.TSQLConnection.GetObjectNames` (1523), `TSqlObjectIdentifier.SchemaName` (1572)

60.4 TSqlObjectIdentifierList

60.4.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1573	<code>AddIdentifier</code>	

60.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1573	Identifiers	rw	

60.4.3 TSqLObjectIdentifierList.AddIdentifier

Declaration: `function AddIdentifier : TSqLObjectIdentifier; overload`
`function AddIdentifier(const AObjectName: string;`
`const ASchemaName: string='') : TSqLObjectIdentifier`
`; overload`

Visibility: public

60.4.4 TSqLObjectIdentifierList.Identifiers

Declaration: `Property Identifiers[Index: Integer]: TSqLObjectIdentifier; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Chapter 61

Reference for unit 'streamcoll'

61.1 Used units

Table 61.1: Used units by unit 'streamcoll'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

61.2 Overview

The `streamcoll` unit contains the implementation of a collection (and corresponding collection item) which implements routines for saving or loading the collection to/from a stream. The collection item should implement 2 routines to implement the streaming; the streaming itself is not performed by the `TStreamCollection` ([1577](#)) collection item.

The streaming performed here is not compatible with the streaming implemented in the `Classes` unit for components. It is independent of the latter and can be used without a component to hold the collection.

The collection item introduces mostly protected methods, and the unit contains a lot of auxiliary routines which aid in streaming.

61.3 Procedures and functions

61.3.1 ColReadBoolean

Synopsis: Read a boolean value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadBoolean(S: TStream) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadBoolean` reads a boolean from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteBoolean` ([1576](#)) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(1575\)](#), [ColWriteBoolean \(1576\)](#), [ColReadString \(1576\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(1575\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(1575\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(1575\)](#)

61.3.2 ColReadCurrency

Synopsis: Read a currency value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadCurrency(S: TStream) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadCurrency` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteCurrency` ([1576](#)) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(1575\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(1574\)](#), [ColReadString \(1576\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(1575\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(1575\)](#), [ColWriteCurrency \(1576\)](#)

61.3.3 ColReadDateTime

Synopsis: Read a `TDateTime` value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadDateTime(S: TStream) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadDateTime` reads a currency value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteDateTime` ([1576](#)) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColWriteDateTime \(1576\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(1574\)](#), [ColReadString \(1576\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(1575\)](#), [ColReadFloat \(1575\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(1575\)](#)

61.3.4 ColReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a floating point value from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadFloat(S: TStream) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadFloat` reads a double value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteFloat` ([1577](#)) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: [ColReadDateTime \(1575\)](#), [ColReadBoolean \(1574\)](#), [ColReadString \(1576\)](#), [ColReadInteger \(1575\)](#), [ColWriteFloat \(1577\)](#), [ColReadCurrency \(1575\)](#)

61.3.5 ColReadInteger

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadInteger(S: TStream) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadInteger` reads a 32-bit integer from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteInteger` (1577) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (1575), `ColReadBoolean` (1574), `ColReadString` (1576), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColReadFloat` (1575), `ColReadCurrency` (1575)

61.3.6 ColReadString

Synopsis: Read a string from a stream.

Declaration: `function ColReadString(S: TStream) : string`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColReadStream` reads a string value from the stream `S` as it was written by `ColWriteString` (1577) and returns the read value. The value cannot be read and written across systems that have different endian values.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (1575), `ColReadBoolean` (1574), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColReadInteger` (1575), `ColReadFloat` (1575), `ColReadCurrency` (1575)

61.3.7 ColWriteBoolean

Synopsis: Write a boolean to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteBoolean(S: TStream; AValue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteBoolean` writes the boolean `AValue` to the stream. `S`.

See also: `ColReadBoolean` (1574), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColWriteCurrency` (1576), `ColWriteDateTime` (1576), `ColWriteFloat` (1577)

61.3.8 ColWriteCurrency

Synopsis: Write a currency value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteCurrency(S: TStream; AValue: Currency)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteCurrency` writes the currency `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (1576), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColWriteDateTime` (1576), `ColWriteFloat` (1577), `ColReadCurrency` (1575)

61.3.9 ColWriteDateTime

Synopsis: Write a `TDateTime` value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteDateTime(S: TStream; AValue: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteDateTime` writes the `TDateTime` `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColReadDateTime` (1575), `ColWriteBoolean` (1576), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColWriteFloat` (1577), `ColWriteCurrency` (1576)

61.3.10 ColWriteFloat

Synopsis: Write floating point value to stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteFloat(S: TStream; AValue: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteFloat` writes the double `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteDateTime` (1576), `ColWriteBoolean` (1576), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColReadFloat` (1575), `ColWriteCurrency` (1576)

61.3.11 ColWriteInteger

Synopsis: Write a 32-bit integer to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteInteger(S: TStream; AValue: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteInteger` writes the 32-bit integer `AValue` to the stream `S`. No endianness is observed.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (1576), `ColWriteString` (1577), `ColReadInteger` (1575), `ColWriteCurrency` (1576), `ColWriteDateTime` (1576)

61.3.12 ColWriteString

Synopsis: Write a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ColWriteString(S: TStream; const AValue: string)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ColWriteString` writes the string value `AValue` to the stream `S`.

See also: `ColWriteBoolean` (1576), `ColReadString` (1576), `ColWriteInteger` (1577), `ColWriteCurrency` (1576), `ColWriteDateTime` (1576), `ColWriteFloat` (1577)

61.4 EStreamColl

61.4.1 Description

Exception raised when an error occurs when streaming the collection.

61.5 TStreamCollection

61.5.1 Description

`TStreamCollection` is a `TCollection` (??) descendent which implements 2 calls `LoadFromStream` (1578) and `SaveToStream` (1578) which load and save the contents of the collection to a stream.

The collection items must be descendents of the `TStreamCollectionItem` (1579) class for the streaming to work correctly.

Note that the stream must be used to load collections of the same type.

See also: `TStreamCollectionItem` (1579)

61.5.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1578	LoadFromStream	Load the collection from a stream.
1578	SaveToStream	Load the collection from the stream.

61.5.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1578	Streaming	r	Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream.

61.5.4 TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from a stream.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the collection from the stream `S`, if the collection was saved using `SaveToStream` ([1578](#)). It reads the number of items in the collection, and then creates and loads the items one by one from the stream.

Errors: An exception may be raised if the stream contains invalid data.

See also: `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([1578](#))

61.5.5 TStreamCollection.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Load the collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(S: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the collection to the stream `S` so it can be read from the stream with `LoadFromStream` ([1578](#)). It does this by writing the number of collection items to the stream, and then streaming all items in the collection by calling their `SaveToStream` method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([1578](#))

61.5.6 TStreamCollection.Streaming

Synopsis: Indicates whether the collection is currently being written to stream.

Declaration: `Property Streaming : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Streaming` is set to `True` if the collection is written to or loaded from stream, and is set again to `False` if the streaming process is finished.

See also: `TStreamCollection.LoadFromStream` ([1578](#)), `TStreamCollection.SaveToStream` ([1578](#))

61.6 TStreamCollectionItem

61.6.1 Description

TStreamCollectionItem is a TCollectionItem (??) descendent which implements 2 abstract routines: LoadFromStream and SaveToStream which must be overridden in a descendent class.

These 2 routines will be called by the TStreamCollection ([1577](#)) to save or load the item from the stream.

See also: TStreamCollection ([1577](#))

Chapter 62

Reference for unit 'streamex'

62.1 Used units

Table 62.1: Used units by unit 'streamex'

Name	Page
Classes	??
RtlConsts	??
System	??
sysutils	??

62.2 Overview

`streamex` implements some extensions to be used together with streams from the `classes` unit.

62.3 Constants, types and variables

62.3.1 Constants

`BUFFER_SIZE = 4096`

Default buffer size for `TStreamReader`.

`FILE_RIGHTS = 438`

Default file rights for `TStreamReader`.

`MIN_BUFFER_SIZE = 128`

Minimum buffer size for `TStreamReader`.

62.4 TBidirBinaryObjectReader

62.4.1 Description

`TBidirBinaryObjectReader` is a class descendent from `TBinaryObjectReader` ([??](#)), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data: the position in the stream (not available in the standard streaming) is emulated.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` ([1581](#)), `TDelphiReader` ([1582](#))

62.4.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1581	Position	rw	Position in the stream.

62.4.3 TBidirBinaryObjectReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the reader for use in the `TDelphiReader` ([1582](#)) class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` ([1582](#))

62.5 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter

62.5.1 Description

`TBidirBinaryObjectReader` is a class descendent from `TBinaryObjectWriter` ([??](#)), which implements the necessary support for BiDi data.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` ([1581](#)), `TDelphiWriter` ([1583](#))

62.5.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1581	Position	rw	Position in the stream.

62.5.3 TBidirBinaryObjectWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Position` exposes the position of the stream in the writer for use in the `TDelphiWriter` (1583) class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (1583)

62.6 TDelphiReader

62.6.1 Description

`TDelphiReader` is a descendent of `TReader` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream reading methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiWriter` (1583), `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581)

62.6.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1582	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectReader</code> (1581) class.
1583	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream.
1582	<code>ReadStr</code>	Overrides the standard <code>ReadStr</code> method.

62.6.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1583	<code>Position</code>	rw	Position in the stream.

62.6.4 TDelphiReader.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581) class.

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectReader`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581)

62.6.5 TDelphiReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Overrides the standard `ReadStr` method.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` makes sure the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581) methods are used, to store additional information about the stream position when reading the strings.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581)

62.6.6 TDelphiReader.Read

Synopsis: Read data from stream.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` reads raw data from the stream. It reads `Count` bytes from the stream and places them in `Buf`. It forces the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581) class when reading.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectReader` (1581), `TDelphiReader.Position` (1583)

62.6.7 TDelphiReader.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: Position in the stream.

See also: `TDelphiReader.Read` (1583)

62.7 TDelphiWriter

62.7.1 Description

`TDelphiWriter` is a descendent of `TWriter` which has support for BiDi Streaming. It overrides the stream writing methods for strings, and makes sure the stream can be positioned in the case of strings. For this purpose, it makes use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) driver class.

See also: `TDelphiReader` (1582), `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581)

62.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1584	<code>FlushBuffer</code>	Flushes the stream buffer.
1584	<code>GetDriver</code>	Return the driver class as a <code>TBidirBinaryObjectWriter</code> (1581) class.
1584	<code>Write</code>	Write raw data to the stream.
1584	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a string to the stream.
1584	<code>WriteValue</code>	Write value type.

62.7.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1585	<code>Position</code>	rw	Position in the stream.

62.7.4 TDelphiWriter.GetDriver

Synopsis: Return the driver class as a `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) class.

Declaration: `function GetDriver : TBidirBinaryObjectWriter`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetDriver` simply returns the used driver and typecasts it as `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) class.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581)

62.7.5 TDelphiWriter.FlushBuffer

Synopsis: Flushes the stream buffer.

Declaration: `procedure FlushBuffer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FlushBuffer` flushes the internal buffer of the writer. It simply calls the `FlushBuffer` method of the driver class.

62.7.6 TDelphiWriter.Write

Synopsis: Write raw data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(const Buf; Count: LongInt); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to the buffer, updating the position as needed.

62.7.7 TDelphiWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(const Value: Ansistring)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteStr` writes a string to the stream, forcing the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) class methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581)

62.7.8 TDelphiWriter.WriteValue

Synopsis: Write value type.

Declaration: `procedure WriteValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteValue` overrides the same method in `TWriter` to force the use of the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) methods, which update the position of the stream.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581)

62.7.9 TDelphiWriter.Position

Synopsis: Position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Position` exposes the position in the stream as exposed by the `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581) instance used when streaming.

See also: `TBidirBinaryObjectWriter` (1581)

62.8 TFileReader

62.8.1 Description

`TFileReader` is a `TTextReader` descendent that takes a file on disk as the source of text data.

See also: `TStreamReader` (1591), `TTextReader` (1599)

62.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1586	<code>Close</code>	Close the file.
1585	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TFileReader</code> for a disk file.
1586	<code>Destroy</code>	Remove the <code>TFileReader</code> instance from memory.
1586	<code>ReadLine</code>	Read a line of text.
1586	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream to its original position.

62.8.3 TFileReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TFileReader` for a disk file.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; AMode: Word;
 ARights: Cardinal; ABufferSize: Integer); virtual
constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; AMode: Word;
 ABufferSize: Integer); virtual
constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName; ABufferSize: Integer)
 ; virtual
constructor Create(const AFileName: TFileName); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a `TFileReader` using the provided `AFileName`. It will allocate a buffer of `ABufferSize` bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, `BUFFER_SIZE` (1580) will be used. If the `ABufferSize` argument is less than `MIN_BUFFER_SIZE` (1580), then `MIN_BUFFER_SIZE` bytes will be used.

The `AMode` can be used to specify the mode in which to open the file. This is one of the `fmOpenRead` and `fmShare*` constants which can be used in a `TFileStream` constructor. The file must be opened for reading.

Errors: If `AStream` is `Nil`, an `#rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException` (??) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStreamReader.Destroy` (1592), `TFileStream` (??), `TFileStream.Create` (??)

62.8.4 TFileReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Remove the `TFileReader` instance from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` closes the file and releases the buffer used to read data.

See also: `TFileReader.Create` ([1585](#))

62.8.5 TFileReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Reset` sets the stream to its original position. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Reset` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `TTextReader.Reset` ([1600](#))

62.8.6 TFileReader.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the text file. Any read operations after `Close` is called will fail. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Close` ([1600](#))

See also: `TTextReader.Close` ([1600](#))

62.8.7 TFileReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: AnsiString); override; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TFileReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `Eof` ([1601](#)), `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#))

62.9 TStreamHelper

62.9.1 Description

TStreamHelper is a TStream (??) helper class which introduces some helper routines to read/write multi-byte integer values in a way that is endianness-safe.

See also: TStream (??)

62.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1590	ReadDouble	Read a double-precision floating point value from the stream.
1589	ReadDWordBE	Read a DWord from the stream, big endian.
1587	ReadDWordLE	Read a DWord from the stream, little endian.
1589	ReadQWordBE	Read a QWord from the stream, big endian.
1588	ReadQWordLE	Read a QWord from the stream, little endian.
1590	ReadSingle	Read a single-precision floating point value from the stream.
1589	ReadWordBE	Read a Word from the stream, big endian.
1587	ReadWordLE	Read a Word from the stream, little endian.
1591	WriteDouble	Write a double-precision floating point value to the stream.
1590	WriteDWordBE	Write a DWord value, big endian.
1588	WriteDWordLE	Write a DWord value, little endian.
1590	WriteQWordBE	Write a QWord value, big endian.
1588	WriteQWordLE	Write a QWord value, little endian.
1591	WriteSingle	Write a single-precision floating point value to the stream.
1589	WriteWordBE	Write a word value, big endian.
1588	WriteWordLE	Write a word value, little endian.

62.9.3 TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE

Synopsis: Read a Word from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadWordLE : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: ReadWordLE reads a word from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an EReadError exception is raised.

See also: TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE ([1587](#)), TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE ([1588](#)), TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE ([1588](#))

62.9.4 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE

Synopsis: Read a DWord from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadDWordLE : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: ReadWordLE reads a DWord from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an EReadError exception is raised.

See also: TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE ([1587](#)), TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE ([1588](#)), TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE ([1588](#))

62.9.5 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE

Synopsis: Read a QWord from the stream, little endian.

Declaration: `function ReadQWordLE : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordLE` reads a QWord from the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE` ([1587](#)), `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE` ([1587](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([1588](#))

62.9.6 TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE

Synopsis: Write a word value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordLE(w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteWordLE` writes a Word-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (2 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordLE` ([1587](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE` ([1588](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([1588](#))

62.9.7 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE

Synopsis: Write a DWord value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordLE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDWordLE` writes a DWord-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (4 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordLE` ([1587](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE` ([1588](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE` ([1588](#))

62.9.8 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordLE

Synopsis: Write a QWord value, little endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordLE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteQWordLE` writes a QWord-sized value to the stream, little-endian (LSB first).

Errors: If not all data (8 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordLE` ([1588](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordLE` ([1588](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordLE` ([1588](#))

62.9.9 TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE

Synopsis: Read a Word from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadWordBE : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a word from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` (1589)

62.9.10 TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE

Synopsis: Read a DWord from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadDWordBE : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a DWord from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` (1590)

62.9.11 TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE

Synopsis: Read a QWord from the stream, big endian.

Declaration: `function ReadQWordBE : QWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadWordBE` reads a QWord from the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not enough data is available an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` (1590)

62.9.12 TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE

Synopsis: Write a word value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWordBE(w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteWordBE` writes a Word-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (2 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadWordBE` (1589), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` (1590), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` (1590)

62.9.13 TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE

Synopsis: Write a DWord value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWordBE(dw: dword)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `WriteDWordBE` writes a DWord-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (4 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDWordBE` ([1589](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` ([1589](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE` ([1590](#))

62.9.14 TStreamHelper.WriteQWordBE

Synopsis: Write a QWord value, big endian.

Declaration: `procedure WriteQWordBE(dq: QWord)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `WriteQWordBE` writes a QWord-sized value to the stream, big-endian (MSB first).

Errors: If not all data (8 bytes) can be written, an `EWriteError` exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadQWordBE` ([1589](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDWordBE` ([1590](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteWordBE` ([1589](#))

62.9.15 TStreamHelper.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single-precision floating point value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ReadSingle` reads a single-precision floating point value from the stream and returns the value.
No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If the end of stream is reached before all necessary bytes can be read, an `EReadError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDouble` ([1590](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteSingle` ([1591](#))

62.9.16 TStreamHelper.ReadDouble

Synopsis: Read a double-precision floating point value from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadDouble : Double`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ReadDouble` reads a double-precision floating point value from the stream and returns the value.
No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If the end of stream is reached before all necessary bytes can be read, an `EReadError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadSingle` ([1590](#)), `TStreamHelper.WriteDouble` ([1591](#))

62.9.17 TStreamHelper.WriteSingle

Synopsis: Write a single-precision floating point value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(s: Single)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteSingle` writes the single-precision floating point value `S` to the stream. No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If not all bytes can be written, an `EWriteError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadSingle` (1590), `TStreamHelper.WriteDouble` (1591)

62.9.18 TStreamHelper.WriteDouble

Synopsis: Write a double-precision floating point value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDouble(d: Double)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteDouble` writes the double-precision floating point value `D` to the stream. No endianness corrections are performed.

Errors: If not all bytes can be written, an `EWriteError` (??) exception is raised.

See also: `TStreamHelper.ReadDouble` (1590), `TStreamHelper.WriteSingle` (1591)

62.10 TStreamReader

62.10.1 Description

`TStreamReader` is a `TTextReader` descendent that takes a stream as the source of text data. It can free the stream and the buffer size to use for reading data can be set.

See also: `TTextReader` (1599)

62.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1593	<code>Close</code>	Close and possibly free the stream.
1592	<code>Create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TStreamReader</code> from a stream.
1592	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroy the <code>TStreamReader</code> instance.
1593	<code>ReadLine</code>	Read a line of text.
1592	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream to its original position.

62.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1593	<code>BaseStream</code>	r	The stream with the text data.
1593	<code>OwnsStream</code>	rw	Should the stream be freed on close.

62.10.4 TStreamReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TStreamReader` from a stream.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AStream: TStream; ABufferSize: Integer; AOwnsStream: Boolean); virtual`
 constructor `Create(AStream: TStream); virtual`
 constructor `Create(const aFilename: string)`
 constructor `Create(const aFilename: string; aDetectBOM: Boolean)`
 constructor `Create(const aFilename: string; aEncoding: TEncoding; aDetectBOM: Boolean; ABufferSize: Integer); overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` initializes a `TStreamReader` using the provided `AStream`. It will allocate a buffer of `ABufferSize` bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, `BUFFER_SIZE` (1580) will be used. If the `ABufferSize` argument is less than `MIN_BUFFER_SIZE` (1580), then `MIN_BUFFER_SIZE` bytes will be used.

If `AOwnsStream` is true, the stream will be freed when the `TStreamReader` instance is freed. If omitted, its value is assumed to be `False`.

Errors: If `AStream` is `Nil`, an `#rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException` (??) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStreamReader.Destroy` (1592), `TStream` (??)

62.10.5 TStreamReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the `TStreamReader` instance.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the resources taken by the buffer, and frees the source stream (`BaseStream` (1593)) if `OwnsStream` is `True`.

See also: `TStreamReader.OwnsStream` (1593), `TStreamReader.Create` (1592), `TStreamReader.BaseStream` (1593)

62.10.6 TStreamReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: procedure `Reset; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Reset` sets the stream to its original position. This is the stream-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Reset` (1600) method.

Errors: If the source stream (`TStreamReader.BaseStream` (1593)) is not seekable, then this method may raise an exception.

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` (1593)

62.10.7 TStreamReader.Close

Synopsis: Close and possibly free the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Close; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closed the text data stream. It will free the source stream if `OwnsStream` is `True`

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` ([1593](#)), `TStreamReader.OwnsStream` ([1593](#))

62.10.8 TStreamReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: Ansistring); override; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TStreamReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `Eof` ([1601](#)), `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#))

62.10.9 TStreamReader.BaseStream

Synopsis: The stream with the text data.

Declaration: `Property BaseStream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `BaseStream` is the stream that was passed to the `TStreamReader` instance in the `TStreamReader.Create` ([1592](#)) call.

Manipulating the stream between calls to `TStreamReader.ReadLine` ([1593](#)) is not allowed, it will lead to wrong data being read from the stream.

See also: `TStreamReader.Create` ([1592](#)), `TStreamReader.OwnsStream` ([1593](#))

62.10.10 TStreamReader.OwnsStream

Synopsis: Should the stream be freed on close.

Declaration: `Property OwnsStream : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `OwnsStream` determines whether the stream `TStreamReader.BaseStream` ([1593](#)) must be freed when `TStreamReader.Close` ([1593](#)) is called or when the `TStreamReader` instance is destroyed.

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` ([1593](#)), `TStreamReader.Close` ([1593](#))

62.11 TStreamWriter

62.11.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1594	Close	
1594	Create	
1594	Destroy	
1594	Flush	
1595	OwnStream	
1595	Write	
1595	WriteLine	

62.11.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1595	AutoFlush	rw	
1596	BaseStream	r	
1596	Encoding	r	
1596	NewLine	rw	

62.11.3 TStreamWriter.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(aStream: TStream); overload
 constructor Create(aStream: TStream; aEncoding: TEncoding;
 aBufferSize: Integer=4096); overload
 constructor Create(const aFilename: string; aAppend: Boolean=False)
 ; overload
 constructor Create(const aFilename: string; aAppend: Boolean;
 aEncoding: TEncoding; aBufferSize: Integer=4096)
 ; overload

Visibility: public

62.11.4 TStreamWriter.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

62.11.5 TStreamWriter.Close

Declaration: procedure Close; override

Visibility: public

62.11.6 TStreamWriter.Flush

Declaration: procedure Flush; override

Visibility: public

62.11.7 TStreamWriter.OwnStream

Declaration: procedure OwnStream

Visibility: public

62.11.8 TStreamWriter.Write

Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); override
 procedure Write(aValue: char); override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Double); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Integer); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Int64); override
 procedure Write(aValue: TObject); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Single); override
 procedure Write(const aValue: string); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); override
 procedure Write(aValue: UInt64); override
 procedure Write(const Fmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
 aCount: Integer); override

Visibility: public

62.11.9 TStreamWriter.WriteLine

Declaration: procedure WriteLine; override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); override
 procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); override
 procedure WriteLine(const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const); override
 procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
 aCount: Integer); override

Visibility: public

62.11.10 TStreamWriter.AutoFlush

Declaration: Property AutoFlush : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

62.11.11 TStreamWriter.NewLine

```
Declaration: Property NewLine : string
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

62.11.12 TStreamWriter.Encoding

```
Declaration: Property Encoding : TEncoding
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read

62.11.13 TStreamWriter.BaseStream

Declaration: `Property BaseStream : TStream`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

62.12 TStringReader

62.12.1 Description

`TStreamReader` is a `TTextReader` descendent that takes a single string as the source of text data.

See also: [TStreamReader \(1599\)](#)

62.12.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1597	Close	Close and possibly free the stream.
1596	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TStreamReader</code> from a string.
1597	Destroy	Free the <code>TStringReader</code> instance.
1597	ReadLine	Read a line of text.
1597	Reset	Reset the stream to its original position.

62.12.3 TStringReader.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TStreamReader` from a string.

```
Declaration: constructor Create(const AString: AnsiString; ABufferSize: Integer)
              ; virtual
              constructor Create(const AString: AnsiString); virtual
```

Visibility: public

Description: Create initializes a TStringReader instance using the provided AString. It will allocate a buffer of ABufferSize bytes for faster reading of data. If no buffer size is specified, BUFFER_SIZE (1580) will be used. If the ABufferSize argument is less than MIN_BUFFER_SIZE (1580), then MIN_BUFFER_SIZE bytes will be used.

Errors: If `AStream` is `Nil`, an `#rtl.sysutils.EArgumentException` (??) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStreamReader.Destroy` ([1592](#)), `TStream` (??)

62.12.4 TStreamReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the `TStreamReader` instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` deallocates all resources for the `TStreamReader` instance.

See also: `TStreamReader.Create` ([1596](#))

62.12.5 TStreamReader.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream to its original position.

Declaration: `procedure Reset; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Reset` sets the stream to its original position. This is the string-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Reset` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `TStreamReader.BaseStream` ([1593](#))

62.12.6 TStreamReader.Close

Synopsis: Close and possibly free the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Close; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Close` closes the text reader. This is the string-specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.Close` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `TTextReader.Close` ([1600](#))

62.12.7 TStreamReader.ReadLine

Synopsis: Read a line of text.

Declaration: `procedure ReadLine(out AString: AnsiString); override; overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadLine` will read a line of text from the text data source. A line of text is delimited by a CRLF character pair, a LF character or a CR character. The line ending characters are not included in the string.

The method exists in 2 versions: one function where the line of text is returned as the function result, one procedure where the line of text is returned in the `AString` parameter.

This is the `TStreamReader` specific implementation of the abstract `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#)) method.

See also: `Eof` ([1601](#)), `TTextReader.ReadLine` ([1600](#))

62.13 TStringWriter

62.13.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1598	Close	
1598	Create	
1598	Destroy	
1598	Flush	
1599	ToString	
1598	Write	
1599	WriteLine	

62.13.2 TStringWriter.Create

Declaration: constructor Create; overload
 constructor Create(aBuilder: TStringBuilder); overload

Visibility: public

62.13.3 TStringWriter.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

62.13.4 TStringWriter.Close

Declaration: procedure Close; override

Visibility: public

62.13.5 TStringWriter.Flush

Declaration: procedure Flush; override

Visibility: public

62.13.6 TStringWriter.Write

Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); override
 procedure Write(aValue: char); override
 procedure Write(aValue: char; aCount: Integer); override
 procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Double); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Integer); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Int64); override
 procedure Write(aValue: TObject); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Single); override
 procedure Write(const aValue: string); override
 procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); override
 procedure Write(aValue: QWord); override
 procedure Write(const aFmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); override

```
procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
               aCount: Integer); override
```

Visibility: public

62.13.7 TStringWriter.WriteLine

Declaration:

```
procedure WriteLine; override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); override
procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); override
procedure WriteLine(const aFmt: string; aArgs: Array of const)
                    ; override
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
                    aCount: Integer); override
```

Visibility: public

62.13.8 TStringWriter.ToString

Declaration:

```
function ToString : string; override
```

Visibility: public

62.14 TTextReader

62.14.1 Description

TTextReader is an abstract class that provides a line-oriented reading API. It allows to read data from streams or memory blocks as if one was using regular pascal Read or ReadLn operations: the ReadLine (1600) procedure. Several descendents of this class exist which implement the reader interface for several sources of text data: TStreamReader (1591), TFileReader (1585), TStringReader (1596).

See also: TStreamReader (1591), TFileReader (1585), TStringReader (1596), ReadLine (1600)

62.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1600	Close	Close the text data stream.
1600	Create	Instantiate a new instance.
1600	ReadLine	Read a line of text.
1600	Reset	Reset the reader to the start position.

62.14.8 TTextReader.Eof

Synopsis: Check whether the end of the text data is returned.

```
Declaration: Property Eof : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Eof` is `True` if no more data is available for reading. If there is still data, then it is `False`.

See also: [TStreamReader.ReadLine \(1600\)](#)

62.14.9 TStreamReader.EndOfStream

Declaration: Property EndOfStream : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

62.15 TTextWriter

62.15.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1601	Close	
1601	Flush	
1601	Write	
1602	WriteLine	

62.15.2 TTextWriter.Close

```
Declaration: procedure Close; virtual; abstract
```

Visibility: public

62.15.3 TTextWriter.Flush

```
Declaration: procedure Flush; virtual; abstract
```

Visibility: public

62.15.4 TTextWriter.Write

```
Declaration: procedure Write(aValue: Boolean); virtual; abstract; overload
              procedure Write(aValue: char); virtual; abstract; overload
              procedure Write(aValue: char; aCount: Integer); virtual; overload
              procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray); virtual; abstract
                    ; overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Double); virtual; abstract; overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Integer); virtual; abstract; overload
              procedure Write(aValue: Int64); virtual; abstract; overload
```

```

procedure Write(aValue: TObject); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure Write(aValue: Single); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure Write(const aValue: string); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure Write(aValue: Cardinal); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure Write(aValue: UInt64); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure Write(const Fmt: string; aArgs: Array of const); virtual
    ; abstract; overload
procedure Write(const aValue: TCharArray; aIndex: Integer;
    aCount: Integer); virtual; abstract; overload

```

Visibility: public

62.15.5 TTextWriter.WriteLine

Declaration:

```

procedure WriteLine; virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Boolean); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: char); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray); virtual; abstract
    ; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Double); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Integer); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Int64); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: TObject); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Single); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: string); virtual; abstract
    ; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: Cardinal); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(aValue: UInt64); virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(const Format: string; Args: Array of const)
    ; virtual; abstract; overload
procedure WriteLine(const aValue: TCharArray; Index: Integer;
    Count: Integer); virtual; abstract; overload

```

Visibility: public

62.16 TWindowedStream

62.16.1 Description

TWindowedStream is a TStream ([1580](#)) descendent that can be used to provide a window on the data of another stream. The position and size of the window can be determined in the constructor, and the stream will behave as a normal stream. The actual reading (or writing) will happen on the source stream.

If the source stream has some limitations (e.g. no Seek (??)) then the TWindowedStream will inherit these limitations.

The TWindowedStream will keep track of the last position it used, and will attempt to restore it if it was modified between calls to Read and Write.

See also: TStream ([1580](#)), TWindowedStream.Create ([1603](#))

62.16.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1603	Create	Initialize a new instance of TWindowedStream.
1603	Destroy	Destroy the TWindowedStream instance.
1603	Read	Read data from the stream.
1604	Seek	Reposition the stream.
1604	Write	Read data to the stream.

62.16.3 TWindowedStream.Create

Synopsis: Initialize a new instance of TWindowedStream.

Declaration: `constructor Create(aStream: TStream; const aSize: Int64;
const aPositionHere: Int64=0)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` will create a new instance of TWindowedStream. The source stream `aStream` must be specified, as well as the start `aPositionHere` position of the window in the source stream and the size of the window `aSize`.

No checks on the validity of `aPositionHere` and `aSize` are done.

62.16.4 TWindowedStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the TWindowedStream instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` simply calls the inherited `destroy`, it removes the TWindowedStream instance from memory. The source stream is not freed.

See also: TWindowedStream.Create ([1603](#))

62.16.5 TWindowedStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Read` attempts to read data from the stream. It will attempt to restore the source stream position if it was changed since the last read, write or seek operation. It then attempts to read `ACount` bytes from the source stream into `ABuffer` and returns the number of actually read bytes. `TWindowedStream.Read` will only read as much data as the window allows, even if the source stream has more data available.

See also: TWindowedStream.Write ([1604](#)), TWindowedStream.Seek ([1604](#))

62.16.6 TWindowedStream.Write

Synopsis: Read data to the stream.

Declaration: `function Write(const aBuffer; aCount: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` attempts to write data to the stream. It will attempt to restore the source stream position if it was changed since the last read, write or seek operation. It then attempts to write `ACount` bytes from `ABuffer` to the source stream and returns the number of actually written bytes.

Errors: `TWindowedStream.Write` will raise an `EWriteError` exception if an attempt is made to write more bytes than will fit in the window, even if the source stream has more room available.

See also: `TWindowedStream.Read` ([1603](#)), `TWindowedStream.Seek` ([1604](#))

62.16.7 TWindowedStream.Seek

Synopsis: Reposition the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const aOffset: Int64; aOrigin: TSeekorigin) : Int64; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` will reposition the windowed stream based on `aOffset` and `aOrigin`. It will interpret `AOrigin` and `aOffset` relative to the position and size of the window, and will then call `Seek` on the source stream. It will return the new position in the windowed stream.

Errors: If the source stream does not support seek operations, an exception may be raised. If the combination of `AOrigin` and `aOffset` falls outside the valid window of the stream, an `EReadError` exception is raised.

See also: `TWindowedStream.Read` ([1603](#)), `TWindowedStream.Write` ([1604](#))

Chapter 63

Reference for unit 'StreamIO'

63.1 Used units

Table 63.1: Used units by unit 'StreamIO'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

63.2 Overview

The `StreamIO` unit implements a call to reroute the input or output of a text file to a descendent of `TStream` (??).

This allows to use the standard pascal `Read` (??) and `Write` (??) functions (with all their possibilities), on streams.

63.3 Procedures and functions

63.3.1 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign a text file to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure AssignStream(var F: Textfile; Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignStream` assigns the stream `Stream` to file `F`. The file can subsequently be used to write to the stream, using the standard `Write` (??) calls.

Before writing, call `Rewrite` (??) on the stream. Before reading, call `Reset` (??).

Errors: if `Stream` is `Nil`, an exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream` (??), `GetStream` ([1606](#))

63.3.2 GetStream

Synopsis: Return the stream, associated with a file.

Declaration: `function GetStream(var F: TTextRec) : TStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetStream` returns the instance of the stream that was associated with the file `F` using `AssignStream` ([1605](#)).

Errors: An invalid class reference will be returned if the file was not associated with a stream.

See also: `AssignStream` ([1605](#)), `TStream` (??)

Chapter 64

Reference for unit 'syncobjs'

64.1 Used units

Table 64.1: Used units by unit 'syncobjs'

Name	Page
System	??
system.timespan	??
sysutils	??

64.2 Overview

The `syncobjs` unit implements some classes which can be used when synchronizing threads in routines or classes that are used in multiple threads at once. The `TCriticalSection` ([1609](#)) class is a wrapper around low-level critical section routines (semaphores or mutexes). The `TEventObject` ([1611](#)) class can be used to send messages between threads (also known as conditional variables in POSIX threads).

64.3 Constants, types and variables

64.3.1 Constants

`INFINITE = Cardinal(- 1)`

Constant denoting an infinite timeout.

64.3.2 Types

`PSecurityAttributes = Pointer`

`PSecurityAttributes` is a dummy type used in non-windows implementations, so the calls remain Delphi compatible.

`TEvent = TEventObject`

`TEvent` is a simple alias for the `TEventObject` (1611) class.

```
TEventHandle = Pointer
```

`TEventHandle` is an opaque type and should not be used in user code.

```
THandleObjectArray = Array of THandleObject = class
end
```

```
TWaitResult = (wrSignaled, wrTimeout, wrAbandoned, wrError)
```

Table 64.2: Enumeration values for type `TWaitResult`

Value	Explanation
<code>wrAbandoned</code>	Wait operation was abandoned.
<code>wrError</code>	An error occurred during the wait operation.
<code>wrSignaled</code>	Event was signaled (triggered).
<code>wrTimeout</code>	Time-out period expired.

`TWaitResult` is used to report the result of a wait operation.

64.4 ELockException

64.4.1 Description

`ELockException` is provided for Delphi compatibility. It is not used in FPC.

See also: `ESyncObjectException` (1608), `ELockRecursionException` (1608)

64.5 ELockRecursionException

64.5.1 Description

`ELockRecursionException` is provided for Delphi compatibility. It is not used in FPC.

See also: `ESyncObjectException` (1608), `ELockException` (1608)

64.6 ESyncObjectException

64.6.1 Description

`ESyncObjectException` is used in the constructor of `TEventObject` (1611) to indicate failure to create a basic event.

See also: `TEventObject` (1611), `ELockRecursionException` (1608), `ELockException` (1608)

64.7 TCriticalSection

64.7.1 Description

TCriticalSection is a class wrapper around the low-level TRTLCriticalSection routines. It simply calls the RTL routines in the system unit for critical section support.

A critical section is a resource which can be owned by only 1 caller: it can be used to make sure that in a multithreaded application only 1 thread enters pieces of code protected by the critical section.

Typical usage is to protect a piece of code with the following code (MySection is a TCriticalSection instance):

```
// Previous code
MySection.Acquire;
Try
  // Protected code
Finally
  MySection.Release;
end;
// Other code.
```

The protected code can be executed by only 1 thread at a time. This is useful for instance for list operations in multithreaded environments.

See also: [Acquire \(1609\)](#), [Release \(1609\)](#)

64.7.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1609	Acquire	Enter the critical section.
1611	Create	Create a new critical section.
1611	Destroy	Destroy the criticalsection instance.
1610	Enter	Alias for Acquire.
1610	Leave	Alias for Release.
1609	Release	Leave the critical section.
1610	TryEnter	Try and obtain the critical section.

64.7.3 TCriticalSection.Acquire

Synopsis: Enter the critical section.

Declaration: `procedure Acquire; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Acquire` attempts to enter the critical section. It will suspend the calling thread if the critical section is in use by another thread, and will resume as soon as the other thread has released the critical section.

See also: [Release \(1609\)](#)

64.7.4 TCriticalSection.Release

Synopsis: Leave the critical section.

Declaration: `procedure Release; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Release` leaves the critical section. It will free the critical section so another thread waiting to enter the critical section will be awakened, and will enter the critical section. This call always returns immediately.

See also: `Acquire` ([1609](#))

64.7.5 `TCriticalSection.Enter`

Synopsis: Alias for `Acquire`.

Declaration: `procedure Enter`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Enter` just calls `Acquire` ([1609](#)).

See also: `Leave` ([1610](#)), `Acquire` ([1609](#))

64.7.6 `TCriticalSection.TryEnter`

Synopsis: Try and obtain the critical section.

Declaration: `function TryEnter : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TryEnter` tries to enter the critical section: it returns at once and does not wait if the critical section is owned by another thread; if the current thread owns the critical section or the critical section was obtained successfully, `true` is returned. If the critical section is currently owned by another thread, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCriticalSection.Enter` ([1610](#))

64.7.7 `TCriticalSection.Leave`

Synopsis: Alias for `Release`.

Declaration: `procedure Leave`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Leave` just calls `Release` ([1609](#))

See also: `Release` ([1609](#)), `Enter` ([1610](#))

64.7.8 TCriticalSection.Create

Synopsis: Create a new critical section.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` initializes a new critical section, and initializes the system objects for the critical section. It should be created only once for all threads, all threads should use the same critical section instance.

See also: `Destroy` ([1611](#))

64.7.9 TCriticalSection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroy the criticalsection instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` releases the system critical section resources, and removes the `TCriticalSection` instance from memory.

Errors: Any threads trying to enter the critical section when it is destroyed, will start running with an error (an exception should be raised).

See also: `Create` ([1611](#)), `Acquire` ([1609](#))

64.8 TEventObject

64.8.1 Description

`TEventObject` encapsulates the `BasicEvent` implementation of the system unit in a class. The event can be used to notify other threads of a change in conditions. (in POSIX terms, this is a conditional variable). A thread that wishes to notify other threads creates an instance of `TEventObject` with a certain name, and posts events to it. Other threads that wish to be notified of these events should create their own instances of `TEventObject` with the same name, and wait for events to arrive.

See also: `TCriticalSection` ([1609](#))

64.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1612	<code>Create</code>	Create a new event object.
1612	<code>ResetEvent</code>	Reset the event.
1612	<code>SetEvent</code>	Set the event.

64.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1612	<code>ManualReset</code>	<code>r</code>	Should the event be reset manually.

64.8.4 TEventObject.Create

Synopsis: Create a new event object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(EventAttributes: PSecurityAttributes;
 AManualReset: Boolean; InitialState: Boolean;
 const Name: string; UseComWait: Boolean=False)
 ; overload`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new event object with unique name `Name` (ignored on non-windows platforms). The object will be created with security attributes `EventAttributes` (this parameters is used on Windows only).

The `AManualReset` indicates whether the event must be reset manually (if it is `False`, the event is reset immediately after the first thread waiting for it is notified). `InitialState` determines whether the event is initially set or not.

See also: `ManualReset` ([1612](#)), `ResetEvent` ([1612](#))

64.8.5 TEventObject.ResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset the event.

Declaration: `procedure ResetEvent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ResetEvent` turns off the event. Any `WaitFor` ([1611](#)) operation will suspend the calling thread.

See also: `SetEvent` ([1612](#)), `WaitFor` ([1611](#))

64.8.6 TEventObject.SetEvent

Synopsis: Set the event.

Declaration: `procedure SetEvent`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetEvent` sets the event. If the `ManualReset` ([1612](#)) is `True` any thread that was waiting for the event to be set (using `WaitFor` ([1611](#))) will resume it's operation. After the event was set, any thread that executes `WaitFor` will return at once. If `ManualReset` is `False`, only one thread will be notified that the event was set, and the event will be immediately reset after that.

See also: `WaitFor` ([1611](#)), `ManualReset` ([1612](#))

64.8.7 TEventObject.ManualReset

Synopsis: Should the event be reset manually.

Declaration: `Property ManualReset : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `ManualReset` indicates whether the event must be reset manually: if it is `False`, the event is reset immediately after the first thread waiting for it is notified. if it is `True`, then the event is never reset automatically, and `ResetEvent` (1612) must be called manually after a thread was notified.

See also: `ResetEvent` (1612)

64.9 THandleObject

64.9.1 Description

`THandleObject` is an abstract parent class for synchronization classes that need to store an operating system handle. It introduces a property `Handle` (1614) which can be used to store the operating system handle. The handle is in no way manipulated by `THandleObject`, only storage is provided.

Do not create an instance of `THandleObject`. It is an abstract class. Recent versions of FPC actually declare the class as abstract.

See also: `Handle` (1614)

64.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1613	<code>Create</code>	
1613	<code>Destroy</code>	Free the instance.
1613	<code>WaitFor</code>	

64.9.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1614	<code>Handle</code>	r	Handle for this object.
1614	<code>LastError</code>	r	Last operating system error.

64.9.4 THandleObject.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(UseComWait: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: `public`

64.9.5 THandleObject.Destroy

Synopsis: Free the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` does nothing in the Free Pascal implementation of `THandleObject`.

64.9.6 THandleObject.WaitFor

Declaration: `function WaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal=INFINITE) : TWaitResult; overload`
`function WaitFor(const Timeout: TTimespan) : TWaitResult; overload`

Visibility: `public`

64.9.7 THandleObject.Handle

Synopsis: Handle for this object.

Declaration: `Property Handle : TEventHandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` provides read-only access to the operating system handle of this instance. The public access is read-only, descendent classes should set the handle by accessing it's protected field `FHandle` directly.

64.9.8 THandleObject.LastError

Synopsis: Last operating system error.

Declaration: `Property LastError : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `LastError` provides read-only access to the last operating system error code for operations on `Handle` (1614).

See also: `Handle` (1614)

64.10 TSimpleEvent

64.10.1 Description

`TSimpleEvent` is a simple descendent of the `TEventObject` (1611) class. It creates an event with no name, which must be reset manually, and which is initially not set.

See also: `TEventObject` (1611), `TSimpleEvent.Create` (1614)

64.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1614	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new <code>TSimpleEvent</code> instance.

64.10.3 TSimpleEvent.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Create` instantiates a new `TSimpleEvent` instance. It simply calls the inherited `Create` (1612) with `Nil` for the security attributes, an empty name, `AManualReset` set to `True`, and `InitialState` to `False`.

See also: `TEventObject.Create` (1612)

64.11 TSynchroObject

64.11.1 Description

TSynchroObject is an abstract synchronization resource object. It implements 2 virtual methods Acquire ([1615](#)) which can be used to acquire the resource, and Release ([1615](#)) to release the resource.

See also: Acquire ([1615](#)), Release ([1615](#))

64.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1615	Acquire	Acquire synchronization resource.
1615	Release	Release previously acquired synchronization resource.

64.11.3 TSynchroObject.Acquire

Synopsis: Acquire synchronization resource.

Declaration: `procedure Acquire; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Acquire does nothing in TSynchroObject. Descendent classes must override this method to acquire the resource they manage.

See also: Release ([1615](#))

64.11.4 TSynchroObject.Release

Synopsis: Release previously acquired synchronization resource.

Declaration: `procedure Release; virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Release does nothing in TSynchroObject. Descendent classes must override this method to release the resource they acquired through the Acquire ([1615](#)) call.

See also: Acquire ([1615](#))

Chapter 65

Reference for unit 'URIParser'

65.1 Used units

Table 65.1: Used units by unit 'URIParser'

Name	Page
System	??

65.2 Overview

The `URIParser` unit contains a basic type (`TURI` ([1622](#))) and some routines for the parsing (`ParseURI` ([1620](#))) and construction (`EncodeURI` ([1619](#))) of Uniform Resource Indicators, commonly referred to as URL: Uniform Resource Location. It is used in various other units, and in itself contains no classes. It supports all protocols, username/password/port specification, query parameters and book-marks etc..

65.3 Basic usage of URI parsing functions

The `URIParser` unit provides simple functions to parse and construct URIs. The main function is `ParseURI` which parses a URI string into a `TURI` record containing all the components.

The following example demonstrates basic URI parsing and reconstruction:

```
program BasicURIExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    URIParser, SysUtils;

procedure ParseAndDisplay(const URIStr: string);
var
    URI: TURI;
begin
```

```

    WriteLn('Original URI: ', URIStr);

    // Parse the URI
    URI := ParseURI(URIStr);

    // Display all components
    WriteLn(' Protocol: ', URI.Protocol);
    WriteLn(' Username: ', URI.Username);
    WriteLn(' Password: ', URI.Password);
    WriteLn(' Host: ', URI.Host);
    WriteLn(' Port: ', URI.Port);
    WriteLn(' Path: ', URI.Path);
    WriteLn(' Document: ', URI.Document);
    WriteLn(' Params: ', URI.Params);
    WriteLn(' Bookmark: ', URI.Bookmark);
    WriteLn(' Has Authority: ', URI.HasAuthority);

    // Reconstruct the URI
    WriteLn(' Reconstructed: ', EncodeURI(URI));
    WriteLn;
end;

begin
    // Parse different types of URIs
    ParseAndDisplay('https://user:pass@www.example.com:8080/path/to/page.html?param1=v');
    ParseAndDisplay('ftp://files.example.org/pub/software/myfile.tar.gz');
    ParseAndDisplay('mailto:user@example.com');
    ParseAndDisplay('file:///home/user/document.txt');
    ParseAndDisplay('/relative/path/file.html');
end.

```

The following example shows how to work with relative URIs and file paths:

```

program URIUtilitiesExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    URIParser, SysUtils;

var
    BaseURI, RelativeURI, AbsoluteURI: string;
    Filename: string;
    URI: string;

begin
    WriteLn('=== Relative URI Resolution ===');
    BaseURI := 'https://www.example.com/docs/manual/';
    RelativeURI := '../images/logo.png';

    if ResolveRelativeURI(BaseURI, RelativeURI, AbsoluteURI) then
    begin
        WriteLn('Base URI: ', BaseURI);
        WriteLn('Relative URI: ', RelativeURI);
    end;
end.

```

```

    WriteLn('Absolute URI: ', AbsoluteURI);
end
else
    WriteLn('Failed to resolve relative URI');

WriteLn;
WriteLn('=== File/URI Conversion ===');

// Convert filename to URI
Filename := '/home/user/documents/readme.txt';
URI := FilenameToURI(Filename);
WriteLn('Filename: ', Filename);
WriteLn('File URI: ', URI);

// Convert URI back to filename
if URIToFilename(URI, Filename) then
begin
    WriteLn('Converted back to filename: ', Filename);
end
else
    WriteLn('Failed to convert URI to filename');

WriteLn;
WriteLn('=== URI Type Checking ===');

// Check if URIs are absolute
URI := 'https://www.example.com/page.html';
WriteLn('URI: ', URI, ' - Is absolute: ', IsAbsoluteURI(URI));

URI := '/relative/path.html';
WriteLn('URI: ', URI, ' - Is absolute: ', IsAbsoluteURI(URI));

URI := 'mailto:test@example.com';
WriteLn('URI: ', URI, ' - Is absolute: ', IsAbsoluteURI(URI));
end.

```

The following example demonstrates URI parsing with default values:

```

program DefaultsURIExample;

{$mode objfpc}{$h+}

uses
    URIParser, SysUtils;

procedure ParseWithDefaults(const URIStr: string; const DefaultProtocol: string;
var
    URI: TURI;
begin
    WriteLn('Parsing: ', URIStr);
    WriteLn('Default protocol: ', DefaultProtocol);
    WriteLn('Default port: ', DefaultPort);

    // Parse with default protocol and port

```

```

URI := ParseURI (URIString, DefaultProtocol, DefaultPort);

WriteLn('Results:');
WriteLn('  Protocol: ', URI.Protocol);
WriteLn('  Host: ', URI.Host);
WriteLn('  Port: ', URI.Port);
WriteLn('  Path: ', URI.Path);
WriteLn('  Document: ', URI.Document);
WriteLn('  Full URI: ', EncodeURI (URI));
WriteLn;
end;

begin
  // Parse URIs with missing protocol/port using defaults
  ParseWithDefaults('www.example.com/index.html', 'http', 80);
  ParseWithDefaults('ftp.example.org/pub/files/', 'ftp', 21);
  ParseWithDefaults('mail.example.com:993/inbox', 'imaps', 993);

  // Parse complete URIs (defaults are ignored)
  ParseWithDefaults('https://secure.example.com:443/login', 'http', 80);
end.

```

Key functions in the `URIParser` unit:

- `ParseURI` - Parses a URI string into components
- `EncodeURI` - Reconstructs a URI string from components
- `ResolveRelativeURI` - Resolves relative URIs against a base URI
- `URIToFilename` - Converts file URIs to local filenames
- `FilenameToURI` - Converts local filenames to file URIs
- `IsAbsoluteURI` - Checks if a URI is absolute (has a protocol)

See also: `ParseURI` ([1620](#)), `EncodeURI` ([1619](#)), `TURI` ([1622](#)), `ResolveRelativeURI` ([1621](#))

65.4 Constants, types and variables

65.4.1 Types

65.5 Procedures and functions

65.5.1 EncodeURI

Synopsis: Form a string representation of the URI.

Declaration: `function EncodeURI(const URI: TURI) : string`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `EncodeURI` will return a valid text representation of the URI in the URI record.

See also: `ParseURI` ([1620](#))

65.5.2 FilenameToURI

Synopsis: Construct a URI from a filename.

Declaration: `function FilenameToURI(const Filename: string; Encode: Boolean=True)
: string`

Visibility: default

Description: `FilenameToURI` takes `Filename` and constructs a `file: protocol` URI from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `URIToFilename` ([1621](#))

65.5.3 IsAbsoluteURI

Synopsis: Check whether a URI is absolute.

Declaration: `function IsAbsoluteURI(const UriReference: string) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsAbsoluteURI` returns `True` if the URI in `UriReference` is absolute, i.e. contains a protocol part.

Errors: None.

See also: `FilenameToURI` ([1620](#)), `URIToFileName` ([1621](#))

65.5.4 ParseURI

Synopsis: Parse a URI and split it into its constituent parts.

Declaration: `function ParseURI(const URI: string; Decode: Boolean=True) : TURI
; overload
function ParseURI(const URI: string; const DefaultProtocol: string;
DefaultPort: Word; Decode: Boolean=True) : TURI
; overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `ParseURI` decodes URI and returns the various parts of the URI in the result record.

The function accepts the most general URI scheme:

```
proto://user:pwd@host:port/path/document?params#bookmark
```

Missing (optional) parts in the URI will be left blank in the result record. If a default protocol and port are specified, they will be used in the record if the corresponding part is not present in the URI.

See also: `EncodeURI` ([1619](#))

65.5.5 ResolveRelativeURI

Synopsis: Return a relative link.

Declaration:

```
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: UnicodeString;
                           const RelUri: UnicodeString;
                           out ResultUri: UnicodeString) : Boolean
; overload
function ResolveRelativeURI(const BaseUri: AnsiString;
                           const RelUri: AnsiString;
                           out ResultUri: AnsiString) : Boolean
; overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ResolveRelativeURI` returns in `ResultUri` an absolute link constructed from a base URI `BaseUri` and a relative link `RelUri`. One of the two URI names must have a protocol specified. If the `RelUri` argument contains a protocol, it is considered a complete (absolute) URI and is returned as the result.

The function returns `True` if a link was successfully returned.

Errors: If no protocols are specified, the function returns `False`

65.5.6 URIToFilename

Synopsis: Convert a URI to a filename.

Declaration:

```
function URIToFilename(const URI: string; out Filename: string)
: Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `URIToFilename` returns a filename (using the correct Path Delimiter character) from URI. The URI must be of protocol `File` or have no protocol.

Errors: If the URI contains an unsupported protocol, `False` is returned.

See also: `ResolveRelativeURI` ([1621](#)), `FilenameToURI` ([1620](#))

65.6 TURI

```
TURI = record
public
  Protocol : string;
  Username : string;
  Password
  : string;
  Host : string;
  Port : Word;
  Path : string;
  Document
  : string;
  Params : string;
  Bookmark : string;
  HasAuthority
```

```

: Boolean;
create;
function ToString : string;
function URI
: string;
procedure Free;
end

```

TURI is the basic record that can be filled by the ParseURI ([1620](#)) call. It contains the contents of a URI, parsed out in it's various pieces.

65.6.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1622	create	
1622	Free	
1622	ToString	
1622	URI	

65.6.2 TURI.create

Declaration: `constructor create(aURI: string; aDecode: Boolean=True)`
`constructor create(const aURI: string; const aDefaultProtocol: string;`
`aDefaultPort: Word; aDecode: Boolean=True)`

Visibility: public

65.6.3 TURI.ToString

Declaration: `function ToString : string`

Visibility: public

65.6.4 TURI.URI

Declaration: `function URI : string`

Visibility: public

65.6.5 TURI.Free

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: public

Chapter 66

Reference for unit 'wformat'

66.1 Used units

Table 66.1: Used units by unit 'wformat'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??

66.2 Overview

The `wformat` unit provides the abstract base class `TFormattingWriter` ([1624](#)) for creating formatted document writers. This class defines a standard interface for generating formatted output in various formats like HTML, LaTeX, or plain text. Descendant classes implement the formatting methods for their specific output format.

66.3 Constants, types and variables

66.3.1 Constants

```
LineFeed = LineEnding
```

`LineFeed` is a constant that contains the platform-specific line ending character sequence. It is defined as `LineEnding` and is used by `DumpLn` ([1626](#)) for consistent line breaks across platforms.

66.3.2 Types

```
TlistType = (ltNumbered, ltOrdered, ltDefinition)
```


Table 66.2: Enumeration values for type `TListType`

Value	Explanation
<code>ItDefinition</code>	Definition list with name-value pairs
<code>ItNumbered</code>	Numbered list with numeric indices
<code>ItOrdered</code>	Ordered list with bullets or markers

`TListType` defines the types of lists that can be created using the `TFormattingWriter` ([1624](#)) class.

66.4 TFormattingWriter

66.4.1 Description

`TFormattingWriter` is an abstract base class that defines the interface for creating formatted documents. It provides methods for document structure (headers, paragraphs), text formatting (bold, italic, underline), tables, and lists. Descendant classes implement the specific formatting for different output formats such as HTML, LaTeX, or plain text.

The class writes output to a stream provided during construction. Most methods are virtual and should be overridden by descendant classes to provide format-specific implementation.

See also: `TListType` ([1623](#))

66.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1629	<code>BoldEnd</code>	Ends bold text formatting
1629	<code>BoldStart</code>	Begins bold text formatting
1632	<code>CellEnd</code>	Ends the current table cell
1632	<code>CellNext</code>	Moves to the next table cell
1632	<code>CellStart</code>	Begins a new table cell
1625	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new formatting writer instance
1635	<code>DefinitionItem</code>	Creates a definition list item with name and description
1627	<code>DocumentEnd</code>	Ends the current document
1627	<code>DocumentStart</code>	Begins a new document
1626	<code>Dump</code>	Writes raw text directly to the output stream
1626	<code>DumpLn</code>	Writes raw text followed by line ending to the output stream
1626	<code>EscapeText</code>	Escapes text for the target format
1627	<code>Header</code>	Writes a complete header at the specified level
1633	<code>HeaderCellEnd</code>	Ends the current table header cell
1633	<code>HeaderCellNext</code>	Moves to the next table header cell
1633	<code>HeaderCellStart</code>	Begins a new table header cell
1628	<code>HeaderEnd</code>	Ends a header at the specified level
1628	<code>HeaderStart</code>	Begins a header at the specified level
1629	<code>ItalicEnd</code>	Ends italic text formatting
1629	<code>ItalicStart</code>	Begins italic text formatting
1628	<code>LineBreak</code>	Inserts a line break
1634	<code>ListEnd</code>	Ends a list of the specified type
1634	<code>ListItem</code>	Creates a complete list item with text
1634	<code>ListItemEnd</code>	Ends the current list item
1634	<code>ListItemStart</code>	Begins a new list item
1633	<code>ListStart</code>	Begins a list of the specified type
1628	<code>ParagraphEnd</code>	Ends the current paragraph
1628	<code>ParagraphStart</code>	Begins a new paragraph
1630	<code>PreformatEnd</code>	Ends preformatted text block
1630	<code>PreformatStart</code>	Begins preformatted text block
1631	<code>RowEnd</code>	Ends the current table row
1632	<code>RowNext</code>	Moves to the next table row
1631	<code>RowStart</code>	Begins a new table row
1629	<code>Rule</code>	Inserts a horizontal rule
1631	<code>TableEnd</code>	Ends the current table
1631	<code>TableStart</code>	Begins a table with specified columns and border
1630	<code>UnderlineEnd</code>	Ends underlined text formatting
1630	<code>UnderlineStart</code>	Begins underlined text formatting
1626	<code>Write</code>	Writes escaped text to the output stream
1627	<code>WriteFmt</code>	Writes formatted text using <code>Format</code> function
1635	<code>WriteList</code>	Writes a complete list from string list

66.4.3 TFormattingWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new formatting writer instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStream: TStream); virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new `TFormattingWriter` instance that will write output to the specified stream. The stream must be valid and remain available for the lifetime of the writer instance.

66.4.4 TFormattingWriter.EscapeText

Synopsis: Escapes text for the target format

Declaration: `function EscapeText(AText: string) : string; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that escapes special characters in text for the target output format. The base implementation returns the text unchanged. Descendant classes should override this method to escape format-specific characters.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.Write` ([1626](#))

66.4.5 TFormattingWriter.Dump

Synopsis: Writes raw text directly to the output stream

Declaration: `procedure Dump(const AText: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes text directly to the output stream without any escaping or formatting. This is used for writing format-specific markup or pre-escaped text.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.DumpLn` ([1626](#)), `TFormattingWriter.Write` ([1626](#))

66.4.6 TFormattingWriter.DumpLn

Synopsis: Writes raw text followed by line ending to the output stream

Declaration: `procedure DumpLn(const AText: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes text directly to the output stream followed by a line ending without any escaping or formatting. This is used for writing format-specific markup or pre-escaped text that should end with a new line.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.Dump` ([1626](#)), `LineFeed` ([1623](#))

66.4.7 TFormattingWriter.Write

Synopsis: Writes escaped text to the output stream

Declaration: `procedure Write(const AText: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes text to the output stream after passing it through `EscapeText` ([1626](#)) for proper formatting. This is the preferred method for writing user content that needs format-specific escaping.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.EscapeText` ([1626](#)), `TFormattingWriter.Dump` ([1626](#)), `TFormattingWriter.WriteFmt` ([1627](#))

66.4.8 TFormattingWriter.WriteFmt

Synopsis: Writes formatted text using Format function

Declaration: `procedure WriteFmt (const Fmt: string; Args: Array of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: Formats the text using the Format function and writes the result through Write (1626). This provides a convenient way to write formatted text with proper escaping.

See also: TFormattingWriter.Write (1626)

66.4.9 TFormattingWriter.DocumentStart

Synopsis: Begins a new document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentStart (const Title: string); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a new document with the specified title. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific document headers or initialization code.

See also: TFormattingWriter.DocumentEnd (1627)

66.4.10 TFormattingWriter.DocumentEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends the current document. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific document footers or cleanup code.

See also: TFormattingWriter.DocumentStart (1627)

66.4.11 TFormattingWriter.Header

Synopsis: Writes a complete header at the specified level

Declaration: `procedure Header (Alevel: Integer; Msg: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a complete header by calling HeaderStart (1628), writing the message text, and calling HeaderEnd (1628). This is a convenience method for writing simple headers.

See also: TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart (1628), TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd (1628)

66.4.12 TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart

Synopsis: Begins a header at the specified level

Declaration: `procedure HeaderStart(Alevel: Integer); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins header formatting at the specified level. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific header opening tags or formatting.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd` ([1628](#)), `TFormattingWriter.Header` ([1627](#))

66.4.13 TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd

Synopsis: Ends a header at the specified level

Declaration: `procedure HeaderEnd(Alevel: Integer); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends header formatting at the specified level. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific header closing tags or formatting.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart` ([1628](#)), `TFormattingWriter.Header` ([1627](#))

66.4.14 TFormattingWriter.ParagraphStart

Synopsis: Begins a new paragraph

Declaration: `procedure ParagraphStart; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins paragraph formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific paragraph opening tags or formatting.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ParagraphEnd` ([1628](#))

66.4.15 TFormattingWriter.ParagraphEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current paragraph

Declaration: `procedure ParagraphEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends paragraph formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific paragraph closing tags or formatting.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ParagraphStart` ([1628](#))

66.4.16 TFormattingWriter.LineBreak

Synopsis: Inserts a line break

Declaration: `procedure LineBreak; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that inserts a line break in the output. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific line break markup.

66.4.17 TFormattingWriter.Rule

Synopsis: Inserts a horizontal rule

Declaration: `procedure Rule; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that inserts a horizontal rule or separator line in the output. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific rule markup.

66.4.18 TFormattingWriter.BoldStart

Synopsis: Begins bold text formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldStart; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that begins bold text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific bold opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.BoldEnd` ([1629](#))

66.4.19 TFormattingWriter.BoldEnd

Synopsis: Ends bold text formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldEnd; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that ends bold text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific bold closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.BoldStart` ([1629](#))

66.4.20 TFormattingWriter.ItalicStart

Synopsis: Begins italic text formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicStart; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that begins italic text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific italic opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ItalicEnd` ([1629](#))

66.4.21 TFormattingWriter.ItalicEnd

Synopsis: Ends italic text formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicEnd; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that ends italic text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific italic closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ItalicStart` ([1629](#))

66.4.22 TFormattingWriter.UnderlineStart

Synopsis: Begins underlined text formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineStart; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that begins underlined text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific underline opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineEnd` ([1630](#))

66.4.23 TFormattingWriter.UnderlineEnd

Synopsis: Ends underlined text formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineEnd; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that ends underlined text formatting. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific underline closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineStart` ([1630](#))

66.4.24 TFormattingWriter.PreformatStart

Synopsis: Begins preformatted text block

Declaration: `procedure PreformatStart; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that begins a preformatted text block where whitespace and line breaks are preserved. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific preformatted opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.PreformatEnd` ([1630](#))

66.4.25 TFormattingWriter.PreformatEnd

Synopsis: Ends preformatted text block

Declaration: `procedure PreformatEnd; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that ends a preformatted text block. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific preformatted closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.PreformatStart` ([1630](#))

66.4.26 TFormattingWriter.TableStart

Synopsis: Begins a table with specified columns and border

Declaration: `procedure TableStart (NoCols: Integer; Border: Boolean); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a table with the specified number of columns and optional border. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific table opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.TableEnd` ([1631](#))

66.4.27 TFormattingWriter.TableEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current table

Declaration: `procedure TableEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends the current table. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific table closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.TableStart` ([1631](#))

66.4.28 TFormattingWriter.RowStart

Synopsis: Begins a new table row

Declaration: `procedure RowStart; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a new table row. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific row opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.RowEnd` ([1631](#)), `TFormattingWriter.RowNext` ([1632](#))

66.4.29 TFormattingWriter.RowEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current table row

Declaration: `procedure RowEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends the current table row. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific row closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.RowStart` ([1631](#)), `TFormattingWriter.RowNext` ([1632](#))

66.4.30 TFormattingWriter.RowNext

Synopsis: Moves to the next table row

Declaration: `procedure RowNext`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Convenience method that calls `RowEnd` ([1631](#)) followed by `RowStart` ([1631](#)) to move to the next table row.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.RowStart` ([1631](#)), `TFormattingWriter.RowEnd` ([1631](#))

66.4.31 TFormattingWriter.CellStart

Synopsis: Begins a new table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellStart; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that begins a new table cell. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific cell opening markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.CellEnd` ([1632](#)), `TFormattingWriter.CellNext` ([1632](#))

66.4.32 TFormattingWriter.CellEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellEnd; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Virtual method that ends the current table cell. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific cell closing markup.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.CellStart` ([1632](#)), `TFormattingWriter.CellNext` ([1632](#))

66.4.33 TFormattingWriter.CellNext

Synopsis: Moves to the next table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellNext`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Convenience method that calls `CellEnd` ([1632](#)) followed by `CellStart` ([1632](#)) to move to the next table cell.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.CellStart` ([1632](#)), `TFormattingWriter.CellEnd` ([1632](#))

66.4.34 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart

Synopsis: Begins a new table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellStart; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a new table header cell. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific header cell opening markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd ([1633](#)), TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellNext ([1633](#))

66.4.35 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends the current table header cell. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific header cell closing markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart ([1633](#)), TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellNext ([1633](#))

66.4.36 TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellNext

Synopsis: Moves to the next table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellNext`

Visibility: public

Description: Convenience method that calls HeaderCellEnd ([1633](#)) followed by HeaderCellStart ([1633](#)) to move to the next table header cell.

See also: TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart ([1633](#)), TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd ([1633](#))

66.4.37 TFormattingWriter.ListStart

Synopsis: Begins a list of the specified type

Declaration: `procedure ListStart(ListType: TListType); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a list of the specified type. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific list opening markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.ListEnd ([1634](#)), TListType ([1623](#))

66.4.38 TFormattingWriter.ListEnd

Synopsis: Ends a list of the specified type

Declaration: `procedure ListEnd(ListType: TlistType); virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends a list of the specified type. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific list closing markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.ListStart ([1633](#)), TListType ([1623](#))

66.4.39 TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart

Synopsis: Begins a new list item

Declaration: `procedure ListItemStart; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that begins a new list item. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific list item opening markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.ListItemEnd ([1634](#)), TFormattingWriter.ListItem ([1634](#))

66.4.40 TFormattingWriter.ListItemEnd

Synopsis: Ends the current list item

Declaration: `procedure ListItemEnd; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that ends the current list item. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific list item closing markup.

See also: TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart ([1634](#)), TFormattingWriter.ListItem ([1634](#))

66.4.41 TFormattingWriter.ListItem

Synopsis: Creates a complete list item with text

Declaration: `procedure ListItem(const AText: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Convenience method that creates a complete list item by calling ListItemStart ([1634](#)), writing the text, and calling ListItemEnd ([1634](#)).

See also: TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart ([1634](#)), TFormattingWriter.ListItemEnd ([1634](#))

66.4.42 TFormattingWriter.DefinitionItem

Synopsis: Creates a definition list item with name and description

Declaration: `procedure DefinitionItem(const Aname: string; const AText: string)
; virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Virtual method that creates a definition list item with a name and its description. Descendant classes should override this method to write format-specific definition item markup.

See also: `TListType.ItDefinition` ([1623](#))

66.4.43 TFormattingWriter.WriteList

Synopsis: Writes a complete list from string list

Declaration: `procedure WriteList(ListType: TListType; List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Convenience method that writes a complete list from a `TStrings` object. For definition lists, strings should contain name=value pairs where the name is separated from the value by an equals sign.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ListStart` ([1633](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ListEnd` ([1634](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ListItem` ([1634](#)), `TFormattingWriter.DefinitionItem` ([1635](#)), `TListType` ([1623](#))

Chapter 67

Reference for unit 'whtml'

67.1 Used units

Table 67.1: Used units by unit 'whtml'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
wformat	1623

67.2 Overview

The `whtml` unit provides `THTMLWriter` ([1636](#)), a concrete implementation of `TFormattingWriter` ([1636](#)) that generates HTML output. This class implements all the abstract formatting methods to produce valid HTML markup for documents, forms, tables, and lists.

67.3 Constants, types and variables

67.3.1 Constants

```
ListTags : Array[TListType] of string = string[2] = ('OL', 'UL', 'DL'
)
```

`ListTags` is an array constant that maps `TListType` ([1636](#)) enumeration values to their corresponding HTML list tags. Contains 'OL' for numbered lists, 'UL' for ordered lists, and 'DL' for definition lists.

67.4 THTMLWriter

67.4.1 Description

`THTMLWriter` is a concrete implementation of `TFormattingWriter` ([1636](#)) that generates HTML output. It implements all formatting methods to produce valid HTML markup including document

structure, text formatting, tables, lists, and HTML forms. The class properly escapes HTML special characters and generates standard HTML tags.

See also: [TFormattingWriter \(1636\)](#), [ListTags \(1636\)](#)

67.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1640	BoldEnd	Ends HTML bold formatting
1640	BoldStart	Begins HTML bold formatting
1643	CellEnd	Ends HTML table cell
1643	CellStart	Begins HTML table cell
1638	Create	Creates a new HTML writer instance
1644	DefinitionItem	Creates HTML definition list item
1639	DocumentEnd	Ends the HTML document
1639	DocumentStart	Begins an HTML document
1646	EmitArea	Emits HTML textarea for multi-line input
1647	EmitButton	Emits HTML button input
1646	EmitCheckBox	Emits HTML checkbox input
1646	EmitComboBox	Emits HTML select dropdown list
1647	EmitHiddenVar	Emits HTML hidden input field
1645	EmitInput	Emits HTML input field
1645	EmitPasswordInput	Emits HTML password input field
1646	EmitRadioButton	Emits HTML radio button input
1647	EmitResetButton	Emits HTML reset button
1647	EmitSubmitButton	Emits HTML submit button
1638	EscapeText	Escapes HTML special characters
1645	FormEnd	Ends HTML form
1645	FormStart	Begins HTML form with action and method
1643	HeaderCellEnd	Ends HTML table header cell
1643	HeaderCellStart	Begins HTML table header cell
1639	HeaderEnd	Ends HTML header tag at specified level
1639	HeaderStart	Begins HTML header tag at specified level
1641	ItalicEnd	Ends HTML italic formatting
1641	ItalicStart	Begins HTML italic formatting
1640	LineBreak	Inserts HTML line break tag
1644	ListEnd	Ends HTML list of specified type
1644	ListItemEnd	Ends HTML list item
1644	ListItemStart	Begins HTML list item
1643	ListStart	Begins HTML list of specified type
1640	ParagraphEnd	Ends HTML paragraph tag
1639	ParagraphStart	Begins HTML paragraph tag
1642	PreformatEnd	Ends HTML preformatted text block
1641	PreformatStart	Begins HTML preformatted text block
1642	RowEnd	Ends HTML table row
1642	RowStart	Begins HTML table row
1640	Rule	Inserts HTML horizontal rule tag
1642	TableEnd	Ends HTML table
1642	TableStart	Begins HTML table with optional border
1638	TagEnd	Writes a closing HTML tag
1638	TagStart	Writes an opening HTML tag with optional attributes
1641	UnderlineEnd	Ends HTML underline formatting
1641	UnderlineStart	Begins HTML underline formatting

67.4.3 THTMLWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new HTML writer instance

Declaration: `constructor Create(AStream: TStream); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new `THTMLWriter` instance that will write HTML output to the specified stream. This constructor calls the inherited constructor to initialize the base formatting writer.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.Create` ([1636](#))

67.4.4 THTMLWriter.TagStart

Synopsis: Writes an opening HTML tag with optional attributes

Declaration: `procedure TagStart(const Name: string; const Attrs: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes an opening HTML tag to the output stream. If attributes are provided, they are included in the tag. This is a utility method used by other formatting methods to generate HTML markup.

See also: `THTMLWriter.TagEnd` ([1638](#))

67.4.5 THTMLWriter.TagEnd

Synopsis: Writes a closing HTML tag

Declaration: `procedure TagEnd(const Name: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes a closing HTML tag to the output stream. This is a utility method used by other formatting methods to generate HTML markup.

See also: `THTMLWriter.TagStart` ([1638](#))

67.4.6 THTMLWriter.EscapeText

Synopsis: Escapes HTML special characters

Declaration: `function EscapeText(AText: string) : string; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Escapes HTML special characters in text to prevent them from being interpreted as markup. Replaces ampersand (&), less-than (<), greater-than (>) characters with their HTML entities, and converts line feeds to HTML line breaks (
).

See also: `TFormattingWriter.EscapeText` ([1636](#))

67.4.7 THTMLWriter.DocumentStart

Synopsis: Begins an HTML document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentStart(const Title: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins an HTML document by writing the HTML, TITLE, and BODY opening tags. The title is written into the HTML TITLE element.

See also: THTMLWriter.DocumentEnd ([1639](#)), TFormattingWriter.DocumentStart ([1636](#))

67.4.8 THTMLWriter.DocumentEnd

Synopsis: Ends the HTML document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends the HTML document by writing the BODY and HTML closing tags.

See also: THTMLWriter.DocumentStart ([1639](#)), TFormattingWriter.DocumentEnd ([1636](#))

67.4.9 THTMLWriter.HeaderStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML header tag at specified level

Declaration: `procedure HeaderStart(Alevel: Integer); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins an HTML header by writing the appropriate H1-H6 tag based on the level. Level 1 generates H1, level 2 generates H2, etc.

See also: THTMLWriter.HeaderEnd ([1639](#)), TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart ([1636](#))

67.4.10 THTMLWriter.HeaderEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML header tag at specified level

Declaration: `procedure HeaderEnd(Alevel: Integer); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends an HTML header by writing the appropriate closing H1-H6 tag based on the level.

See also: THTMLWriter.HeaderStart ([1639](#)), TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd ([1636](#))

67.4.11 THTMLWriter.ParagraphStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML paragraph tag

Declaration: `procedure ParagraphStart; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins an HTML paragraph by writing the P opening tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.ParagraphEnd ([1640](#)), TFormattingWriter.ParagraphStart ([1636](#))

67.4.12 THTMLWriter.ParagraphEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML paragraph tag

Declaration: `procedure ParagraphEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML paragraph by writing the P closing tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.ParagraphStart ([1639](#)), TFormattingWriter.ParagraphEnd ([1636](#))

67.4.13 THTMLWriter.LineBreak

Synopsis: Inserts HTML line break tag

Declaration: `procedure LineBreak; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Inserts an HTML line break by writing the BR tag.

See also: TFormattingWriter.LineBreak ([1636](#))

67.4.14 THTMLWriter.Rule

Synopsis: Inserts HTML horizontal rule tag

Declaration: `procedure Rule; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Inserts an HTML horizontal rule by writing the HR tag.

See also: TFormattingWriter.Rule ([1636](#))

67.4.15 THTMLWriter.BoldStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML bold formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins HTML bold text formatting by writing the B opening tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.BoldEnd ([1640](#)), TFormattingWriter.BoldStart ([1636](#))

67.4.16 THTMLWriter.BoldEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML bold formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends HTML bold text formatting by writing the B closing tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.BoldStart ([1640](#)), TFormattingWriter.BoldEnd ([1636](#))

67.4.17 THTMLWriter.ItalicStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML italic formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins HTML italic text formatting by writing the `I` opening tag.

See also: `THTMLWriter.ItalicEnd` ([1641](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ItalicStart` ([1636](#))

67.4.18 THTMLWriter.ItalicEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML italic formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends HTML italic text formatting by writing the `I` closing tag.

See also: `THTMLWriter.ItalicStart` ([1641](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ItalicEnd` ([1636](#))

67.4.19 THTMLWriter.UnderlineStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML underline formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins HTML underline text formatting by writing the `U` opening tag.

See also: `THTMLWriter.UnderlineEnd` ([1641](#)), `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineStart` ([1636](#))

67.4.20 THTMLWriter.UnderlineEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML underline formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends HTML underline text formatting by writing the `U` closing tag.

See also: `THTMLWriter.UnderlineStart` ([1641](#)), `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineEnd` ([1636](#))

67.4.21 THTMLWriter.PreformatStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML preformatted text block

Declaration: `procedure PreformatStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML preformatted text block by writing the `PRE` opening tag. Text within this block preserves whitespace and line breaks.

See also: `THTMLWriter.PreformatEnd` ([1642](#)), `TFormattingWriter.PreformatStart` ([1636](#))

67.4.22 THTMLWriter.PreformatEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML preformatted text block

Declaration: `procedure PreformatEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML preformatted text block by writing the PRE closing tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.PreformatStart \(1641\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.PreformatEnd \(1636\)](#)

67.4.23 THTMLWriter.TableStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML table with optional border

Declaration: `procedure TableStart(NoCols: Integer; Border: Boolean); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML table by writing the TABLE opening tag. If `border` is `True`, includes the `BORDER=1` attribute.

See also: [THTMLWriter.TableEnd \(1642\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.TableStart \(1636\)](#)

67.4.24 THTMLWriter.TableEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML table

Declaration: `procedure TableEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML table by writing the TABLE closing tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.TableStart \(1642\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.TableEnd \(1636\)](#)

67.4.25 THTMLWriter.RowStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML table row

Declaration: `procedure RowStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML table row by writing the TR opening tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.RowEnd \(1642\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.RowStart \(1636\)](#)

67.4.26 THTMLWriter.RowEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML table row

Declaration: `procedure RowEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML table row by writing the TR closing tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.RowStart \(1642\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.RowEnd \(1636\)](#)

67.4.27 THTMLWriter.CellStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML table cell by writing the TD opening tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.CellEnd \(1643\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.CellStart \(1636\)](#)

67.4.28 THTMLWriter.CellEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML table cell by writing the TD closing tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.CellStart \(1643\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.CellEnd \(1636\)](#)

67.4.29 THTMLWriter.HeaderCellStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML table header cell by writing the TH opening tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.HeaderCellEnd \(1643\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart \(1636\)](#)

67.4.30 THTMLWriter.HeaderCellEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends an HTML table header cell by writing the TH closing tag.

See also: [THTMLWriter.HeaderCellStart \(1643\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd \(1636\)](#)

67.4.31 THTMLWriter.ListStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML list of specified type

Declaration: `procedure ListStart(ListType: TlistType); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins an HTML list by writing the appropriate list tag. Uses OL for numbered lists, UL for ordered lists, and DL for definition lists based on the [ListTags \(1636\)](#) array.

See also: [THTMLWriter.ListEnd \(1644\)](#), [TFormattingWriter.ListStart \(1636\)](#), [ListTags \(1636\)](#)

67.4.32 THTMLWriter.ListEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML list of specified type

Declaration: `procedure ListEnd(ListType: TlistType); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends an HTML list by writing the appropriate closing list tag. Uses the ListTags (1636) array to determine the correct closing tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.ListStart (1643), TFormattingWriter.ListEnd (1636), ListTags (1636)

67.4.33 THTMLWriter.ListItemStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML list item

Declaration: `procedure ListItemStart; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins an HTML list item by writing the LI opening tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.ListItemEnd (1644), TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart (1636)

67.4.34 THTMLWriter.ListItemEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML list item

Declaration: `procedure ListItemEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends an HTML list item by writing the LI closing tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.ListItemStart (1644), TFormattingWriter.ListItemEnd (1636)

67.4.35 THTMLWriter.DefinitionItem

Synopsis: Creates HTML definition list item

Declaration: `procedure DefinitionItem(const Aname: string; const AText: string)
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates an HTML definition list item by writing DT tags around the name and DD tags around the description text.

See also: TFormattingWriter.DefinitionItem (1636)

67.4.36 THTMLWriter.FormStart

Synopsis: Begins HTML form with action and method

Declaration: `procedure FormStart(const Action: string; const Method: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins an HTML form by writing the FORM opening tag with ACTION and optional METHOD attributes.

See also: THTMLWriter.FormEnd ([1645](#))

67.4.37 THTMLWriter.FormEnd

Synopsis: Ends HTML form

Declaration: `procedure FormEnd`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends an HTML form by writing the FORM closing tag.

See also: THTMLWriter.FormStart ([1645](#))

67.4.38 THTMLWriter.EmitInput

Synopsis: Emits HTML input field

Declaration: `procedure EmitInput(const Name: string; const Value: string)`
`procedure EmitInput(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`const Attrs: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with NAME and VALUE attributes. This is an overloaded method that can include additional attributes.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitPasswordInput ([1645](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitCheckBox ([1646](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitRadioButton ([1646](#))

67.4.39 THTMLWriter.EmitPasswordInput

Synopsis: Emits HTML password input field

Declaration: `procedure EmitPasswordInput(const Name: string; const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="password" attribute for secure password entry.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitInput ([1645](#))

67.4.40 THTMLWriter.EmitCheckBox

Synopsis: Emits HTML checkbox input

Declaration: `procedure EmitCheckBox(const Name: string; const Value: string)`
`procedure EmitCheckBox(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`Checked: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="checkbox" attribute. This is an overloaded method that can specify whether the checkbox is initially checked.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitRadioButton ([1646](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitInput ([1645](#))

67.4.41 THTMLWriter.EmitRadioButton

Synopsis: Emits HTML radio button input

Declaration: `procedure EmitRadioButton(const Name: string; const Value: string)`
`procedure EmitRadioButton(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`Checked: Boolean)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="radio" attribute. This is an overloaded method that can specify whether the radio button is initially selected.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitCheckBox ([1646](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitInput ([1645](#))

67.4.42 THTMLWriter.EmitArea

Synopsis: Emits HTML textarea for multi-line input

Declaration: `procedure EmitArea(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`Rows: Integer; Cols: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML TEXTAREA tag with specified rows and columns dimensions. The value is written as the content between opening and closing TEXTAREA tags.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitInput ([1645](#))

67.4.43 THTMLWriter.EmitComboBox

Synopsis: Emits HTML select dropdown list

Declaration: `procedure EmitComboBox(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`Items: TStrings; UseValues: Boolean)`
`procedure EmitComboBox(const Name: string; const Value: string;`
`Items: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML SELECT tag with OPTION elements from the provided string list. This is an overloaded method that can use name=value pairs when UseValues is True.

67.4.44 THTMLWriter.EmitButton

Synopsis: Emits HTML button input

Declaration: `procedure EmitButton(const Name: string; const ButtonType: string;
const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with the specified button type (submit, reset, button, etc.).

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitSubmitButton ([1647](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitResetButton ([1647](#))

67.4.45 THTMLWriter.EmitSubmitButton

Synopsis: Emits HTML submit button

Declaration: `procedure EmitSubmitButton(const Name: string; const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="submit" for form submission.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitButton ([1647](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitResetButton ([1647](#))

67.4.46 THTMLWriter.EmitResetButton

Synopsis: Emits HTML reset button

Declaration: `procedure EmitResetButton(const Name: string; const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="reset" for clearing form fields.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitButton ([1647](#)), THTMLWriter.EmitSubmitButton ([1647](#))

67.4.47 THTMLWriter.EmitHiddenVar

Synopsis: Emits HTML hidden input field

Declaration: `procedure EmitHiddenVar(const Name: string; const Value: string)`

Visibility: public

Description: Emits an HTML INPUT tag with TYPE="hidden" for storing invisible form data.

See also: THTMLWriter.EmitInput ([1645](#))

Chapter 68

Reference for unit 'wtex'

68.1 Used units

Table 68.1: Used units by unit 'wtex'

Name	Page
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
wformat	1623

68.2 Overview

The `wtex` unit provides `TTexWriter` ([1649](#)), a concrete implementation of `TFormattingWriter` ([1648](#)) that generates LaTeX output. This class implements all the abstract formatting methods to produce valid LaTeX markup for documents, tables, and lists using standard LaTeX commands and environments.

68.3 Constants, types and variables

68.3.1 Constants

```
ListNames : Array[TListType] of string = string = ('enumerate', 'itemize', 'definition')
```

`ListNames` is an array constant that maps `TListType` ([1648](#)) enumeration values to their corresponding LaTeX list environment names. Contains 'enumerate' for numbered lists, 'itemize' for ordered lists, and 'definition' for definition lists.

68.4 TTexWriter

68.4.1 Description

`TTexWriter` is a concrete implementation of `TFormattingWriter` (1648) that generates LaTeX output. It implements all formatting methods to produce valid LaTeX markup including document structure, text formatting, tables, and lists. The class properly escapes LaTeX special characters and uses standard LaTeX commands and environments.

See also: `TFormattingWriter` (1648), `ListNames` (1648)

68.4.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1652	<code>BoldEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX bold formatting
1652	<code>BoldStart</code>	Begins LaTeX bold formatting
1654	<code>CellStart</code>	Begins LaTeX table cell
1656	<code>DefinitionItem</code>	Creates LaTeX definition list item
1651	<code>DocumentEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX document
1651	<code>DocumentStart</code>	Begins LaTeX document
1650	<code>EnvironmentEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX environment
1650	<code>EnvironmentStart</code>	Begins LaTeX environment with optional parameters
1650	<code>EscapeText</code>	Escapes LaTeX special characters
1655	<code>HeaderCellEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX table header cell
1655	<code>HeaderCellStart</code>	Begins LaTeX table header cell
1651	<code>HeaderEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX section header
1651	<code>HeaderStart</code>	Begins LaTeX section header
1653	<code>ItalicEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX italic formatting
1652	<code>ItalicStart</code>	Begins LaTeX italic formatting
1652	<code>LineBreak</code>	Inserts LaTeX line break
1655	<code>ListEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX list environment
1656	<code>ListItemStart</code>	Begins LaTeX list item
1655	<code>ListStart</code>	Begins LaTeX list environment
1651	<code>ParagraphEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX paragraph
1653	<code>PreformatEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX verbatim environment
1653	<code>PreformatStart</code>	Begins LaTeX verbatim environment
1654	<code>RowEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX table row
1654	<code>RowStart</code>	Begins LaTeX table row
1652	<code>Rule</code>	Inserts LaTeX horizontal rule
1650	<code>ScopeEnd</code>	Writes LaTeX closing brace
1649	<code>ScopeStart</code>	Writes LaTeX opening brace
1654	<code>TableEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX tabular environment
1654	<code>TableStart</code>	Begins LaTeX tabular environment
1653	<code>UnderlineEnd</code>	Ends LaTeX underline formatting
1653	<code>UnderlineStart</code>	Begins LaTeX underline formatting

68.4.3 TTexWriter.ScopeStart

Synopsis: Writes LaTeX opening brace

Declaration: `procedure ScopeStart`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an opening brace ({} to begin a LaTeX scope or command argument. This is a utility method used by other formatting methods to create properly scoped LaTeX constructs.

See also: `TTexWriter.ScopeEnd` ([1650](#))

68.4.4 `TTexWriter.ScopeEnd`

Synopsis: Writes LaTeX closing brace

Declaration: `procedure ScopeEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a closing brace (}) to end a LaTeX scope or command argument. This is a utility method used by other formatting methods to create properly scoped LaTeX constructs.

See also: `TTexWriter.ScopeStart` ([1649](#))

68.4.5 `TTexWriter.EnvironmentStart`

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX environment with optional parameters

Declaration: `procedure EnvironmentStart(const Name: string; const Opts: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a LaTeX `\begin` command for the specified environment name. If options are provided, they are included before the environment name. This is a utility method for creating LaTeX environments.

See also: `TTexWriter.EnvironmentEnd` ([1650](#))

68.4.6 `TTexWriter.EnvironmentEnd`

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX environment

Declaration: `procedure EnvironmentEnd(const Name: string)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a LaTeX `\end` command for the specified environment name. This is a utility method for properly closing LaTeX environments.

See also: `TTexWriter.EnvironmentStart` ([1650](#))

68.4.7 `TTexWriter.EscapeText`

Synopsis: Escapes LaTeX special characters

Declaration: `function EscapeText(AText: string) : string; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Escapes LaTeX special characters in text to prevent them from being interpreted as commands. Currently replaces underscore (_) characters with escaped underscores (_).

See also: `TFormattingWriter.EscapeText` ([1648](#))

68.4.8 TTexWriter.DocumentStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentStart(const Title: string); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins a LaTeX document by writing the document class, package includes, document environment, and title command. Generates `\documentclass{report}`, `\usepackage{a4}`, `\begin{document}`, and `\title{ }` markup.

See also: `TTexWriter.DocumentEnd` ([1651](#)), `TFormattingWriter.DocumentStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.9 TTexWriter.DocumentEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX document

Declaration: `procedure DocumentEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends a LaTeX document by writing the `\end{document}` command.

See also: `TTexWriter.DocumentStart` ([1651](#)), `TFormattingWriter.DocumentEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.10 TTexWriter.HeaderStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX section header

Declaration: `procedure HeaderStart(Alevel: Integer); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins a LaTeX section header by writing the appropriate sectioning command based on the level. Level 0 generates `\part`, level 1 generates `\chapter`, level 2 generates `\section`, etc.

See also: `TTexWriter.HeaderEnd` ([1651](#)), `TFormattingWriter.HeaderStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.11 TTexWriter.HeaderEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX section header

Declaration: `procedure HeaderEnd(Alevel: Integer); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends a LaTeX section header by writing the closing brace and adding a blank line.

See also: `TTexWriter.HeaderStart` ([1651](#)), `TFormattingWriter.HeaderEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.12 TTexWriter.ParagraphEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX paragraph

Declaration: `procedure ParagraphEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends a LaTeX paragraph by writing two line feeds to create a paragraph break.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ParagraphEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.13 TTexWriter.LineBreak

Synopsis: Inserts LaTeX line break

Declaration: `procedure LineBreak; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Inserts a LaTeX line break by writing the `\` command.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.LineBreak` ([1648](#))

68.4.14 TTexWriter.Rule

Synopsis: Inserts LaTeX horizontal rule

Declaration: `procedure Rule; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Inserts a LaTeX horizontal rule by writing the `\hline` command.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.Rule` ([1648](#))

68.4.15 TTexWriter.BoldStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX bold formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins LaTeX bold text formatting by writing the `\textbf` command and opening brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.BoldEnd` ([1652](#)), `TFormattingWriter.BoldStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.16 TTexWriter.BoldEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX bold formatting

Declaration: `procedure BoldEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends LaTeX bold text formatting by writing the closing brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.BoldStart` ([1652](#)), `TFormattingWriter.BoldEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.17 TTexWriter.ItalicStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX italic formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins LaTeX italic text formatting by writing the `\textit` command and opening brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.ItalicEnd` ([1653](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ItalicStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.18 TTexWriter.ItalicEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX italic formatting

Declaration: `procedure ItalicEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends LaTeX italic text formatting by writing the closing brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.ItalicStart` ([1652](#)), `TFormattingWriter.ItalicEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.19 TTexWriter.UnderlineStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX underline formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins LaTeX underline text formatting by writing the `\textul` command and opening brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.UnderlineEnd` ([1653](#)), `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.20 TTexWriter.UnderlineEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX underline formatting

Declaration: `procedure UnderlineEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends LaTeX underline text formatting by writing the closing brace.

See also: `TTexWriter.UnderlineStart` ([1653](#)), `TFormattingWriter.UnderlineEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.21 TTexWriter.PreformatStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX verbatim environment

Declaration: `procedure PreformatStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins a LaTeX verbatim environment where text is displayed exactly as entered with fixed-width font and preserved formatting.

See also: `TTexWriter.PreformatEnd` ([1653](#)), `TFormattingWriter.PreformatStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.22 TTexWriter.PreformatEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX verbatim environment

Declaration: `procedure PreformatEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends a LaTeX verbatim environment.

See also: `TTexWriter.PreformatStart` ([1653](#)), `TFormattingWriter.PreformatEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.23 TTexWriter.TableStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX tabular environment

Declaration: `procedure TableStart (NoCols: Integer; Border: Boolean); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins a LaTeX tabular environment with column specifications. Generates column specification with left-aligned columns (l) based on the number of columns specified.

See also: `TTexWriter.TableEnd` ([1654](#)), `TFormattingWriter.TableStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.24 TTexWriter.TableEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX tabular environment

Declaration: `procedure TableEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends a LaTeX tabular environment.

See also: `TTexWriter.TableStart` ([1654](#)), `TFormattingWriter.TableEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.25 TTexWriter.RowStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX table row

Declaration: `procedure RowStart; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins a LaTeX table row by resetting the cell counter to zero.

See also: `TTexWriter.RowEnd` ([1654](#)), `TFormattingWriter.RowStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.26 TTexWriter.RowEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX table row

Declaration: `procedure RowEnd; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Ends a LaTeX table row by writing the row terminator (`\`) followed by a line break.

See also: `TTexWriter.RowStart` ([1654](#)), `TFormattingWriter.RowEnd` ([1648](#))

68.4.27 TTexWriter.CellStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX table cell

Declaration: `procedure CellStart; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Begins a LaTeX table cell by writing the column separator (`&`) if this is not the first cell in the row. Increments the internal cell counter.

See also: `TTexWriter.FCellCount` ([??](#)), `TFormattingWriter.CellStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.28 TTexWriter.HeaderCellStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins a LaTeX table header cell by calling `CellStart` (1654). LaTeX does not distinguish between header and regular cells in the tabular environment.

See also: `TTexWriter.CellStart` (1654), `TTexWriter.HeaderCellEnd` (1655), `TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellStart` (1648)

68.4.29 TTexWriter.HeaderCellEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX table header cell

Declaration: `procedure HeaderCellEnd; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends a LaTeX table header cell by calling `CellEnd` (1649). LaTeX does not require special handling for header cell endings in the tabular environment.

See also: `TTexWriter.CellEnd` (1649), `TTexWriter.HeaderCellStart` (1655), `TFormattingWriter.HeaderCellEnd` (1648)

68.4.30 TTexWriter.ListStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX list environment

Declaration: `procedure ListStart(ListType: TlistType); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins a LaTeX list environment based on the list type. Uses `enumerate` for numbered lists, `itemize` for ordered lists, and `definition` for definition lists based on the `ListNames` (1648) array.

See also: `TTexWriter.ListEnd` (1655), `TFormattingWriter.ListStart` (1648), `ListNames` (1648)

68.4.31 TTexWriter.ListEnd

Synopsis: Ends LaTeX list environment

Declaration: `procedure ListEnd(ListType: TlistType); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Ends a LaTeX list environment by writing the appropriate `\end` command. Uses the `ListNames` (1648) array to determine the correct environment name.

See also: `TTexWriter.ListStart` (1655), `TFormattingWriter.ListEnd` (1648), `ListNames` (1648)

68.4.32 TTexWriter.ListItemStart

Synopsis: Begins LaTeX list item

Declaration: `procedure ListItemStart; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Begins a LaTeX list item by writing the `\item` command.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.ListItemStart` ([1648](#))

68.4.33 TTexWriter.DefinitionItem

Synopsis: Creates LaTeX definition list item

Declaration: `procedure DefinitionItem(const Aname: string; const AText: string)
; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a LaTeX definition list item by writing `\item` with the name in square brackets followed by the definition text.

See also: `TFormattingWriter.DefinitionItem` ([1648](#))

Chapter 69

Reference for unit 'Zipper'

69.1 Used units

Table 69.1: Used units by unit 'Zipper'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	??
Classes	??
System	??
sysutils	??
ZStream	1696

69.2 Overview

zipper implements zip compression/decompression compatible with the popular .ZIP format. The zip file format is documented at:

<http://www.pkware.com/documents/casestudies/APPNOTE.TXT>.

The Pascal conversion of the standard zlib library was implemented by Jacques Nomssi Nzali. It is used in the FCL to implement the TCompressionStream class.

69.3 Constants, types and variables

69.3.1 Constants

CENTRAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = \$02014B50

Denotes beginning of a file entry inside the zip directory. A file header follows this marker.

```
Crc_32_Tab : Array[0..255] of LongWord = ($00000000, $77073096, $ee0e612c
, $990951ba, $076dc419, $706af48f, $e963a535, $9e6495a3, $0edb8832
, $79dcb8a4, $e0d5e91e, $97d2d988, $09b64c2b, $7eb17cbd, $e7b82d07
, $90bffd91, $1db71064, $6ab020f2, $f3b97148, $84be41de, $1adad47d
, $6ddde4eb, $f4d4b551, $83d385c7, $136c9856, $646ba8c0, $fd62f97a
```

```

, $8a65c9ec, $14015c4f, $63066cd9, $fa0f3d63, $8d080df5, $3b6e20c8
, $4c69105e, $d56041e4, $a2677172, $3c03e4d1, $4b04d447, $d20d85fd
, $a50ab56b, $35b5a8fa, $42b2986c, $dbbbc9d6, $acbcf940, $32d86ce3
, $45df5c75, $dcd60dcf, $abd13d59, $26d930ac, $51de003a, $c8d75180
, $bfd06116, $21b4f4b5, $56b3c423, $cfba9599, $b8bda50f, $2802b89e
, $5f058808, $c60cd9b2, $b10be924, $2f6f7c87, $58684c11, $c1611dab
, $b6662d3d, $76dc4190, $01db7106, $98d220bc, $efd5102a, $71b18589
, $06b6b51f, $9fbfe4a5, $e8b8d433, $7807c9a2, $0f00f934, $9609a88e
, $e10e9818, $7f6a0dbb, $086d3d2d, $91646c97, $e6635c01, $6b6b51f4
, $1c6c6162, $856530d8, $f262004e, $6c0695ed, $1b01a57b, $8208f4c1
, $f50fc457, $65b0d9c6, $12b7e950, $8bbeb8ea, $fcb9887c, $62dd1ddf
, $15da2d49, $8cd37cf3, $fbd44c65, $4db26158, $3ab551ce, $a3bc0074
, $d4bb30e2, $4adfa541, $3dd895d7, $a4d1c46d, $d3d6f4fb, $4369e96a
, $346ed9fc, $ad678846, $da60b8d0, $44042d73, $33031de5, $aa0a4c5f
, $dd0d7cc9, $5005713c, $270241aa, $be0b1010, $c90c2086, $5768b525
, $206f85b3, $b966d409, $ce61e49f, $5edef90e, $29d9c998, $b0d09822
, $c7d7a8b4, $59b33d17, $2eb40d81, $b7bd5c3b, $c0ba6cad, $edb88320
, $9abfb3b6, $03b6e20c, $74b1d29a, $ead54739, $9dd277af, $04db2615
, $73dc1683, $e3630b12, $94643b84, $0d6d6a3e, $7a6a5aa8, $e40ecf0b
, $9309ff9d, $0a00ae27, $7d079eb1, $f00f9344, $8708a3d2, $1e01f268
, $6906c2fe, $f762575d, $806567cb, $196c3671, $6e6b06e7, $fed41b76
, $89d32be0, $10da7a5a, $67dd4acc, $f9b9df6f, $8ebeeff9, $17b7be43
, $60b08ed5, $d6d6a3e8, $ald1937e, $38d8c2c4, $4fdff252, $d1bb67f1
, $a6bc5767, $3fb506dd, $48b2364b, $d80d2bda, $af0a1b4c, $36034af6
, $41047a60, $df60efc3, $a867df55, $316e8eef, $4669be79, $cb61b38c
, $bc66831a, $256fd2a0, $5268e236, $cc0c7795, $bb0b4703, $220216b9
, $5505262f, $c5ba3bbe, $b2bd0b28, $2bb45a92, $5cb36a04, $c2d7ffa7
, $b5d0cf31, $2cd99e8b, $5bdeae1d, $9b64c2b0, $ec63f226, $756aa39c
, $026d930a, $9c0906a9, $eb0e363f, $72076785, $05005713, $95bf4a82
, $e2b87a14, $7bb12bae, $0cb61b38, $92d28e9b, $e5d5be0d, $7cdcefb7
, $0bdbdf21, $86d3d2d4, $f1d4e242, $68ddb3f8, $1fda836e, $81be16cd
, $f6b9265b, $6fb077e1, $18b74777, $88085ae6, $ff0f6a70, $66063bca
, $11010b5c, $8f659eff, $f862ae69, $616bffd3, $166ccf45, $a00ae278
, $d70dd2ee, $4e048354, $3903b3c2, $a7672661, $d06016f7, $4969474d
, $3e6e77db, $aed16a4a, $d9d65adc, $40df0b66, $37d83bf0, $a9bcae53
, $debb9ec5, $47b2cf7f, $30b5ffe9, $bdbdf21c, $cabac28a, $53b39330
, $24b4a3a6, $bad03605, $cdd70693, $54de5729, $23d967bf, $b3667a2e
, $c4614ab8, $5d681b02, $2a6f2b94, $b40bbe37, $c30c8ea1, $5a05df1b
, $2d02ef8d)

```

Table used in determining CRC-32 values. There are various CRC-32 algorithms in use; please refer to the ZIP file format specifications for details.

EFS_LANGUAGE_ENCODING_FLAG = \$800

Language encoding flag (EFS). When set the file name and comment fields must use UTF-8 encoding.

END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_SIGNATURE = \$06054B50

Marker specifying end of directory within zip file.

FIRSTENTRY = 257

Offset of First entry in table.

INFOZIP_UNICODE_PATH_ID = \$7075

LOCAL_FILE_HEADER_SIGNATURE = \$04034B50

Denotes beginning of a file header within the zip file. A file header follows this marker, followed by the file data proper.

OS_FAT = 0

MS-DOS and OS/2 (FAT/VFAT/FAT32).

OS_NTFS = 10

NTFS.

OS_OS2 = 6

OS/2 HPFS.

OS_OSX = 19

Mac OSX.

OS_UNIX = 3

UNIX-like platforms.

OS_VFAT = 14

VFAT.

TABLESIZE = 8191

Size for the code table used in LZW compression.

UNIX_BLK = \$6000

Unix block device.

UNIX_CHAR = \$2000

Unix character device.

UNIX_DEFAULT = UNIX_RUSR or UNIX_WUSR or UNIX_XUSR or UNIX_RGRP or
UNIX_ROTH

Unix default attributes.

UNIX_DIR = \$4000

Unix directory.

UNIX_FIFO = \$1000

Unix FIFO file type.

UNIX_FILE = \$8000

Unix regular file.

UNIX_LINK = \$A000

Unix symbolic link.

UNIX_MASK = \$F000

Unix permission mask.

UNIX_RGRP = \$0020

Unix group read permission.

UNIX_OTH = \$0004

Unix other users read permission.

UNIX_RUSR = \$0100

Unix user read permission.

UNIX SOCK = \$C000

Unix sockets.

UNIX_WGRP = \$0010

Unix group write permission.

UNIX_WOTH = \$0002

Unix other users write permission.

UNIX_WUSR = \$0080

Unix user write permission.

UNIX_XGRP = \$0008

Unix group execute permission.

UNIX_XOTH = \$0001

Unix other users execute permission.

```
UNIX_XUSR = $0040
```

Unix user execute permission.

```
ZIP64_END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_LOCATOR_SIGNATURE = $07064B50
```

```
ZIP64_END_OF_CENTRAL_DIR_SIGNATURE = $06064B50
```

Marker specifying end of the directory within a 64-bit zip file.

```
ZIP64_HEADER_ID = $0001
```

69.3.2 Types

```
BufPtr = PByte
```

Alias for the PByte type. Used to implement the output buffer in TShrinker.

```
CodeArray = Array[0..TABLESIZE] of CodeRec = packed record
  Child
    : SmallInt;
  Sibling : SmallInt;
  Suffix : Byte;
end
```

Array definition for CodeRec ([1663](#))

```
FreeListArray = Array[FIRSTENTRY..TABLESIZE] of Word
```

Helper type in decoding the zip file.

```
FreeListPtr = ^FreeListArray
```

Pointer to FreeListArray ([1661](#))

```
TablePtr = ^CodeArray
```

Pointer to CodeArray ([1661](#))

```
TCustomInputStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
  var AStream: TStream) of object
```

Specifies an event handler signalled for actions to an input stream.

```
TOnCustomStreamEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; var AStream: TStream
  ;
  AItem: TFullZipFileEntry) of
  object
```

Specifies an event handler signalled for stream actions in TUnZipper.

```
TOnEndOfFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const Ratio: Double
)
                    of object
```

Event procedure for an end of file (de)compression event.

```
TOnStartFileEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
    const AFileName: AnsiString) of object
```

Event procedure for a start of file (de)compression event.

```
TProgressEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject; const Pct: Double) of
    object
```

Event procedure for capturing compression/decompression progress.

```
TProgressEventEx = procedure(Sender: TObject; const ATotPos: Int64
;
                    const ATotSize: Int64) of object
```

TProgressEventEx is an object procedure which implements an event handler signalled to indicate compression/decompression progress. It is very similar to TProgressEvent, but provides separate values for the cumulative number of bytes handled and the total number of bytes to be processed.

TProgressEventEx is the type used to implement the OnProgressEx property in TDeCompressor and TUnZipper.

69.4 Central_File_Header_Type

```
Central_File_Header_Type = packed record
    Signature : LongInt;
    MadeBy_Version : Word;
    Extract_Version_Reqd : Word;
    Bit_Flag
    : Word;
    Compress_Method : Word;
    Last_Mod_Time : Word;
    Last_Mod_Date
    : Word;
    Crc32 : LongWord;
    Compressed_Size : LongWord;
    Uncompressed_Size
    : LongWord;
    Filename_Length : Word;
    Extra_Field_Length : Word
;
    File_Comment_Length : Word;
    Starting_Disk_Num : Word;
    Internal_Attributes
```

```

    : Word;
    External_Attributes : LongWord;
    Local_Header_Offset
    : LongWord;
end

```

This record contains the structure for a file header within the central directory.

69.5 CodeRec

```

CodeRec = packed record
    Child : SmallInt;
    Sibling : SmallInt;
    Suffix : Byte;
end

```

Small LZW compression helper type.

69.6 End_of_Central_Dir_Type

```

End_of_Central_Dir_Type = packed record
    Signature : LongInt;
    Disk_Number
    : Word;
    Central_Dir_Start_Disk : Word;
    Entries_This_Disk : Word
    ;
    Total_Entries : Word;
    Central_Dir_Size : LongWord;
    Start_Disk_Offset
    : LongWord;
    ZipFile_Comment_Length : Word;
end

```

The end of central directory is placed at the end of the zip file. Note that the end of central directory record is distinct from the Zip64 end of central directory record and zip64 end of central directory locator, which precede the end of central directory, if implemented.

69.7 Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type

```

Extensible_Data_Field_Header_Type = packed record
    Header_ID : Word
    ;
    Data_Size : Word;
end

```

Beginning of extra field. Occurs after the local file header and after the central directory header.

69.8 Local_File_Header_Type

```

Local_File_Header_Type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt;
  Extract_Version_Reqd
    : Word;
  Bit_Flag : Word;
  Compress_Method : Word;
  Last_Mod_Time
    : Word;
  Last_Mod_Date : Word;
  Crc32 : LongWord;
  Compressed_Size
    : LongWord;
  Uncompressed_Size : LongWord;
  Filename_Length : Word
;
  Extra_Field_Length : Word;
end

```

Record structure containing local file header.

69.9 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type

```

Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_Locator_type = packed record
  Signature
    : LongInt;
  Zip64_EOCD_Start_Disk : LongWord;
  Central_Dir_Zip64_EOCD_Offset
    : QWord;
  Total_Disks : LongWord;
end

```

Comes after the Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type.

69.10 Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type

```

Zip64_End_of_Central_Dir_type = packed record
  Signature : LongInt
;
  Record_Size : QWord;
  Version_Made_By : Word;
  Extract_Version_Reqd
    : Word;
  Disk_Number : LongWord;
  Central_Dir_Start_Disk : LongWord
;
  Entries_This_Disk : QWord;
  Total_Entries : QWord;
  Central_Dir_Size
    : QWord;

```

```

    Start_Disk_Offset : QWord;
end

```

This record appears at the end of the central directory

69.11 Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type

```

Zip64_Extended_Info_Field_Type = packed record
    Original_Size : QWord
    ;
    Compressed_Size : QWord;
    Relative_Hdr_Offset : QWord;
    Disk_Start_Number
    : LongWord;
end

```

69.12 EZipError

69.12.1 Description

Exception raised for errors in TZipper and TUnZipper.

69.13 TCompressor

69.13.1 Description

This object compresses a stream into a compressed zip stream.

69.13.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1666	Compress	Compresses input stream to output stream.
1666	Create	Creates a TCompressor (1665) object.
1666	Terminate	Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.
1666	ZipBitFlag	Current bit.
1666	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression.
1666	ZipVersionReqd	ZIP version required in the method.

69.13.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1667	BufferSize	r	Size of the buffer used for compression.
1667	Crc32Val	rw	Running CRC32 value.
1667	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers an OnProgress update.
1667	OnProgress	rw	Event handler signalled to indicate the completion percentage for the compressor.
1667	Terminated	r	Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

69.13.4 TCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates a TCompressor ([1665](#)) object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); virtual`

Visibility: public

69.13.5 TCompressor.Compress

Synopsis: Compresses input stream to output stream.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

69.13.6 TCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

69.13.7 TCompressor.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: ZIP version required in the method.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Abstract virtual class function. Must be implemented in a descendent class.

69.13.8 TCompressor.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Current bit.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Abstract virtual function. Must be implemented in a descendent class.

69.13.9 TCompressor.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: public

Description: Halts the compressor by setting the Terminated property to True.

69.13.10 TCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of the buffer used for compression.

Declaration: Property BufferSize : LongWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: BufferSize is a read-only LongWord property with the size of the buffer used for compression. The property is set to the value passed as an argument to the Create constructor.

BufferSize is used in the Compress method (in descendent classes) to allocate a pointer to a memory block with the required size. It also determines the read size used when processing an input file or stream.

See also: TCompressor.Create ([1666](#)), TShrinker.Compress ([1675](#)), TDeflater.Compress ([1670](#))

69.13.11 TCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers an OnProgress update.

Declaration: Property OnPercent : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

69.13.12 TCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to indicate the completion percentage for the compressor.

Declaration: Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

69.13.13 TCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value.

Declaration: Property Crc32Val : LongWord

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Running CRC32 value used when writing zip header.

69.13.14 TCompressor.Terminated

Synopsis: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

Declaration: Property Terminated : Boolean

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

69.14 TDeCompressor

69.14.1 Description

This object decompresses a compressed zip stream.

69.14.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1668	Create	Creates decompressor object.
1668	Decompress	Decompress zip stream.
1668	Terminate	Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.
1669	ZipID	Identifier for type of compression.

69.14.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1669	BufferSize	r	Size of buffer used in decompression.
1669	Crc32Val	rw	Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity.
1669	OnPercent	rw	Percentage of decompression completion.
1669	OnProgress	rw	Event handler for OnProgress procedure.
1669	OnProgressEx	rw	Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.
1670	Terminated	r	Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

69.14.4 TDeCompressor.Create

Synopsis: Creates decompressor object.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); virtual`

Visibility: public

69.14.5 TDeCompressor.Decompress

Synopsis: Decompress zip stream.

Declaration: `procedure Decompress; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

69.14.6 TDeCompressor.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: public

Description: Halts decompression and sets Terminated to True.

69.14.7 TDeCompressor.ZipID

Synopsis: Identifier for type of compression.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; virtual; abstract`

Visibility: public

69.14.8 TDeCompressor.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of buffer used in decompression.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

69.14.9 TDeCompressor.OnPercent

Synopsis: Percentage of decompression completion.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

69.14.10 TDeCompressor.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler for OnProgress procedure.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

69.14.11 TDeCompressor.OnProgressEx

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.

Declaration: `Property OnProgressEx : TProgressEventEx`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler signalled to indicate progress using processed and total byte counts.

69.14.12 TDeCompressor.Crc32Val

Synopsis: Running CRC32 value used for verifying zip file integrity.

Declaration: `Property Crc32Val : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

69.14.13 TDeCompressor.Terminated

Synopsis: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Set to True when the Terminate method is called.

69.15 TDeflater**69.15.1 Description**

Child of `TCompressor` ([1665](#)) that implements the Deflate compression method.

69.15.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1670	<code>Compress</code>	Performs compression using the Deflate algorithm.
1670	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for the class instance.
1671	<code>ZipBitFlag</code>	Bitness flag.
1671	<code>ZipID</code>	Zip algorithm ID.
1671	<code>ZipVersionReqd</code>	Required version.

69.15.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1671	<code>CompressionLevel</code>	<code>rw</code>	Indicates the compression level applied in the <code>Compress</code> method.

69.15.4 TDeflater.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance, and calls the inherited method on entry. `Create` sets the default value for the `CompressionLevel` property to `clNone`.

See also: `TDeflater.CompressionLevel` ([1671](#)), `TCompressor.Create` ([1666](#))

69.15.5 TDeflater.Compress

Synopsis: Performs compression using the Deflate algorithm.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a temporary TCompressionStream instance using the compression level specified in the CompressLevel property. Compress signals the OnProgress event handler (when assigned) when the number of bytes representing the OnPercent threshold are processed in the method.

69.15.6 TDeflater.ZipID

Synopsis: Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip algorithm ID.

69.15.7 TDeflater.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: Required version.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Required version.

69.15.8 TDeflater.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Bitness flag.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Bitness flag.

69.15.9 TDeflater.CompressionLevel

Synopsis: Indicates the compression level applied in the Compress method.

Declaration: `Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: CompressionLevel is a TCompressionLevel property which Indicates the compression level applied in the Compress method. Values include:

clNone Do not use compression, just copy data.

clFastest Use the fast (but less) compression.

clDefault Use the default compression. dd

clMax Use the maximum compression.

See also: TDeflater.Compress ([1670](#)), TCompressionLevel ([1696](#))

69.16 TFullZipFileEntries

69.16.1 Description

Collection of TFullZipFileEntry items.

See also: TFullZipFileEntry ([1672](#))

69.16.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1672	FullEntries	rw	Array access to all entries.

69.16.3 TFullZipFileEntries.FullEntries

Synopsis: Array access to all entries.

Declaration: `Property FullEntries[AIndex: Integer]: TFullZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Array access to all entries.

See also: TFullZipFileEntry ([1672](#))

69.17 TFullZipFileEntry

69.17.1 Description

TFullZipFileEntry is a TZipFileEntry descendant which provides additional information about files in a .ZIP archive. TFullZipFileEntry extends the ancestor class to include properties like:

BitFlags General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

CompressMethod Compression method for the file.

CompressedSize Size after applying the compression method and level.

CRC32 32-bit CRC value for the file.

69.17.2 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1673	BitFlags	r	General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.
1673	CompressedSize	r	Size after applying the compression method and level.
1673	CompressMethod	r	Compression method for the file.
1673	CRC32	rw	32-bit CRC value for the file.

69.17.3 TFullZipFileEntry.BitFlags

Synopsis: General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property BitFlags : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: General purpose bit flag from the Local Header in the .ZIP archive file.

69.17.4 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressMethod

Synopsis: Compression method for the file.

Declaration: `Property CompressMethod : Word`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Compression method for the file.

69.17.5 TFullZipFileEntry.CompressedSize

Synopsis: Size after applying the compression method and level.

Declaration: `Property CompressedSize : QWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Size after applying the compression method and level.

69.17.6 TFullZipFileEntry.CRC32

Synopsis: 32-bit CRC value for the file.

Declaration: `Property CRC32 : LongWord`

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: 32-bit CRC value for the file.

69.18 TInflater

69.18.1 Description

Child of `TDeCompressor` ([1668](#)) that implements the Inflate decompression method.

69.18.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1674	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1674	DeCompress	Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.
1674	ZipID	Zip algorithm ID.

69.18.3 TInflater.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); override`

Visibility: public

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

69.18.4 TInflater.DeCompress

Synopsis: Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.

Declaration: `procedure DeCompress; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Removes compression applied using the deflate algorithm.

69.18.5 TInflater.ZipID

Synopsis: Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip algorithm ID.

69.19 TShrinker**69.19.1 Description**

TShrinker implements the LZW lossless data compression algorithm created by Abraham Lempel, Jacob Ziv, and Terry Welch also known as "shrink" compression.

69.19.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1675	Compress	Compresses input values using LZW (shrink) compression.
1675	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1675	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1675	ZipBitFlag	Zip bitness flag.
1675	ZipID	Return Zip algorithm ID.
1675	ZipVersionReqd	Minimum zip algorithm required.

69.19.3 TShrinker.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AInFile: TStream; AOutFile: TStream;
ABufSize: LongWord); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

69.19.4 TShrinker.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

69.19.5 TShrinker.Compress

Synopsis: Compresses input values using LZW (shrink) compression.

Declaration: `procedure Compress; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Initializes the code table used for LZW compression. Processes buffer-size chunks from the input stream and calls the private Shrink method to generate values written to the output stream.

69.19.6 TShrinker.ZipID

Synopsis: Return Zip algorithm ID.

Declaration: `class function ZipID : Word; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Return Zip algorithm ID.

69.19.7 TShrinker.ZipVersionReqd

Synopsis: Minimum zip algorithm required.

Declaration: `class function ZipVersionReqd : Word; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Minimum zip algorithm required.

69.19.8 TShrinker.ZipBitFlag

Synopsis: Zip bitness flag.

Declaration: `function ZipBitFlag : Word; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Zip bitness flag.

69.20 TUnZipper

69.20.1 Description

Extracts and decompresses files and directories in a .ZIP archive file.

69.20.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1679	Clear	Removes all entries and files from object.
1677	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1677	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1679	Examine	Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).
1679	Terminate	Sets the value in Terminated to True.
1678	Unzip	Unzips the specified .ZIP archive file.
1677	UnZipAllFiles	Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk.
1678	UnZipFile	Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.
1678	UnZipFiles	Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.
1677	UnZipOneFile	

69.20.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1679	BufferSize	rw	Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.
1682	Entries	r	Collection with TFullZipFileEntry instances for files and directories stored in the .ZIP archive.
1682	FileComment	r	Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.
1681	FileName	rw	Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.
1682	Files	r	Files in the zip file (deprecated).
1683	Flat	rw	Extracts files to a single directory.
1680	OnCloseInputStream	rw	Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.
1680	OnCreateStream	rw	Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.
1680	OnDoneStream	rw	Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.
1681	OnEndFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.
1679	OnOpenInputStream	rw	Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.
1680	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.
1680	OnProgress	rw	Progress event handler used when decompressing files.
1681	OnProgressEx	rw	Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.
1681	OnStartFile	rw	Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.
1681	OutputPath	rw	Path where archive files will be unzipped.
1683	Terminated	r	True if the Terminate method has been called.
1682	UseUTF8	rw	Indicates that the UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping entries in the archive.

69.20.4 TUnZipper.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: constructor Create

Visibility: public

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

69.20.5 TUnZipper.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

69.20.6 TUnZipper.UnZipOneFile

Declaration: procedure UnZipOneFile(Item: TFullZipFileEntry); virtual

Visibility: public

69.20.7 TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Unzips all files in a zip file, writing them to disk.

Declaration: procedure UnZipAllFiles; virtual
procedure UnZipAllFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString)

Visibility: public

Description: This procedure unzips all files in a TZipper ([1688](#)) object and writes the unzipped files to disk.

The example below unzips the files into "C:\windows\temp":

```

uses
  Zipper;
var
  UnZipper: TUnZipper;
begin
  UnZipper := TUnZipper.Create;
  try
    UnZipper.FileName := ZipFilePath;
    UnZipper.OutputPath := 'C:\Windows\Temp';
    UnZipper.UnZipAllFiles;
  finally
    UnZipper.Free;
  end;
end.

```

69.20.8 TUnZipper.UnZipFile

Synopsis: Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `procedure UnZipFile(const aExtractFileName: RawByteString)`
`procedure UnZipFile(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aExtractFileName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

Description: Unzips a single file found in the specified .ZIP archive.

69.20.9 TUnZipper.UnZipFiles

Synopsis: Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `procedure UnZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure UnZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: Array of RawBytestring)`
`procedure UnZipFiles(aFileList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Unzips the specified files in a .ZIP archive file.

69.20.10 TUnZipper.Unzip

Synopsis: Unzips the specified .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aExtractFileName: RawByteString)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aExtractFileName: RawByteString;`
`aOutputFileName: AnsiString)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: TStrings)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: Array of RawByteString;`
`aOutputDir: RawByteString; aFlat: Boolean=False)`
`class procedure Unzip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: TStrings; aOutputDir: RawByteString;`
`aFlat: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: public

Description: UnZip is an overloaded class method used to unzip one or more files in the specified .ZIP archive file. Overloaded variants are provided which allow the file or files to be specified using RawByteString, Array, or TStrings data types.

UnZip is a convenience method, and does not require an instance of the class. It uses the default options to perform the unzip operation.

69.20.11 TUnZipper.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all entries and files from object.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Removes all entries and files from object.

69.20.12 TUnZipper.Examine

Synopsis: Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).

Declaration: `procedure Examine`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Opens zip file and reads the directory entries (list of zipped files).

69.20.13 TUnZipper.Terminate

Synopsis: Sets the value in Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Sets the value in Terminated to True.

69.20.14 TUnZipper.BufferSize

Synopsis: Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Size of the buffer used to read and decompress entries in the .ZIP file.

69.20.15 TUnZipper.OnOpenInputStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.

Declaration: `Property OnOpenInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is opened.

69.20.16 TUnZipper.OnCloseInputStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.

Declaration: Property OnCloseInputStream : TCustomInputStreamEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler signalled when the input stream for the .ZIP file is closed.

69.20.17 TUnZipper.OnCreateStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.

Declaration: Property OnCreateStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler signalled when an output stream is created.

69.20.18 TUnZipper.OnDoneStream

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.

Declaration: Property OnDoneStream : TOnCustomStreamEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event handler signalled when an output stream is closed.

69.20.19 TUnZipper.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.

Declaration: Property OnPercent : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Threshold percentage which triggers a progress notification.

69.20.20 TUnZipper.OnProgress

Synopsis: Progress event handler used when decompressing files.

Declaration: Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Progress event handler used when decompressing files.

69.20.21 TUnZipper.OnProgressEx

Synopsis: Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.

Declaration: `Property OnProgressEx : TProgressEventEx`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Extended progress event handler used when decompressing files.

69.20.22 TUnZipper.OnStartFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.

Declaration: `Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Callback procedure that will be called before unzipping a file.

69.20.23 TUnZipper.OnEndFile

Synopsis: Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.

Declaration: `Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Callback procedure that will be called after unzipping a file.

69.20.24 TUnZipper.FileName

Synopsis: Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.

Declaration: `Property FileName : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Path and file name for the .zip file to be unzipped / processed.

69.20.25 TUnZipper.OutputPath

Synopsis: Path where archive files will be unzipped.

Declaration: `Property OutputPath : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Path where archive files will be unzipped.

69.20.26 TUnZipper.FileComment

Synopsis: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property FileComment : AnsiString`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

69.20.27 TUnZipper.Files

Synopsis: Files in the zip file (deprecated).

Declaration: `Property Files : TStrings`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: List of files that should be compressed in the zip file. Deprecated. Use `Entries.AddFileEntry(FileName)` or `Entries.AddFileEntries(List)` instead.

69.20.28 TUnZipper.Entries

Synopsis: Collection with `TFullZipFileEntry` instances for files and directories stored in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries : TFullZipFileEntries`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: `Entries` is a read-only `TFullZipFileEntries` property, and the collection representing the items stored in the .ZIP archive file. `Entries` contains `TFullZipFileEntry` instances which represent the files or directories present in the .ZIP file.

Values in the `Entries` collection are created and stored when file directory in the .ZIP file is read. This can occur when the `Examine` method is called, or when extracting one or more files using the `UnZipAllFiles` / `UnZipFiles` / `UnZipFile` methods.

The items in the `Entries` collection are removed when the `Clear` method is called.

See also: `TUnZipper.Examine` ([1679](#)), `TUnZipper.Clear` ([1679](#)), `TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles` ([1677](#)), `TUnZipper.UnZipFiles` ([1678](#)), `TUnZipper.UnZipFile` ([1678](#)), `TUnZipper.UnZip` ([1678](#)), `TFullZipFileEntries` ([1672](#)), `TFullZipFileEntry` ([1672](#))

69.20.29 TUnZipper.UseUTF8

Synopsis: Indicates that the UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping entries in the archive.

Declaration: `Property UseUTF8 : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UseUTF8` is a `Boolean` property which indicates if UTF-8-encoded names are used when locating and unzipping items stored in the `.ZIP` archive.

Each `TZipFileEntry` instance stored in the `Entries` collection has both UTF-8-encoded and `RawByteString` (same as `AnsiString` with no code page) variants of file or directory names. Set `UseUTF8` to **True** to use the UTF-8-encoded version. The default value is **False**, and causes the `RawByteString` version to be used.

`UseUTF8` is used when methods like `UnZipAllFiles`, `UnZipFiles`, and `UnZipFile` are called.

See also: `TUnZipper.Entries` (1682), `TUnZipper.UnZipAllFiles` (1677), `TUnZipper.UnZipFiles` (1678), `TUnZipper.UnZipFile` (1678), `TZipFileEntries` (1683), `TZipFileEntry` (1685)

69.20.30 TUnZipper.Flat

Synopsis: Extracts files to a single directory.

Declaration: `Property Flat : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: Enables flat extraction; like `-j` (also called junk paths) when using the `unzip` command-line utility. Directory structure(s) in the `.zip` file are not recreated, and files are extracted to the same directory.

69.20.31 TUnZipper.Terminated

Synopsis: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

69.21 TZipFileEntries

69.21.1 Description

`TZipFileEntries` is a `TCollection` descendant which provides support for using `TZipFileEntry` instances as the `Items` in the collection. It provides an indexed `Entries` property used to access the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the collection, and serves as the default property for enumerator access.

`TZipFileEntries` is the type used to implement the `Entries` property in `TZipper`.

See also: `TZipFileEntries.Entries` (1684), `TZipFileEntry` (1685), `TZipper.Entries` (1694), `TUnZipper.Entries` (1682), `TFullZipFileEntries` (1672)

69.21.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1684	<code>AddFileEntries</code>	Adds <code>TZipFileEntry</code> instances in the collection for the file names in List.
1684	<code>AddFileEntry</code>	Adds file to zip directory.

69.21.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1684	Entries	rw	Entries (files) in the zip archive.

69.21.4 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry

Synopsis: Adds file to zip directory.

Declaration: `function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: AnsiString) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const ADiskFileName: AnsiString;`
`const AArchiveFileName: AnsiString) : TZipFileEntry`
`function AddFileEntry(const AStream: TStream;`
`const AArchiveFileName: AnsiString) : TZipFileEntry`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFileEntry` adds a file or directory to the list of entries that will be written out in the .zip file. `AddFileEntry` calls the `Add` method to create the new collection item, and casts it the `TZipFileEntry` type used in `TZipFileEntries`.

Values passed as arguments to the overloaded variants are stored in the corresponding properties in the `TZipFileEntry` instance.

The return value is the `TZipFileEntry` instance added to the collection.

69.21.5 TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntries

Synopsis: Adds `TZipFileEntry` instances in the collection for the file names in `List`.

Declaration: `procedure AddFileEntries(const List: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: `AddFileEntries` is a method used to add a list of files names to the collection. `List` contains the file names added in the method. `AddFileEntries` iterates over the string values in `List`, and calls the `AddFileEntry` method to create new items in the collection.

See also: `TZipFileEntries.AddFileEntry` ([1684](#))

69.21.6 TZipFileEntries.Entries

Synopsis: Entries (files) in the zip archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries[AIndex: Integer]: TZipFileEntry; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Entries` is an indexed `TZipFileEntry` property which provides indexed access to the `Items` in the collection by their ordinal position. The item values are cast to the `TZipFileEntry` type used in `TZipFileEntries`.

`Entries` is the default property in `TZipFileEntries`, and allows an enumerator to be used to access the `TZipFileEntry` values in the collection.

See also: `TZipFileEntry` ([1685](#)), `TCollection.Items` (??)

69.22 TZipFileEntry

69.22.1 Description

`TZipFileEntry` is a `TCollectionItem` descendant which represents a file or directory added to a .ZIP file archive. `TZipFileEntry` is the type used for items in the `Entries` property in the `TZipFileEntries` collection.

`TZipFileEntry` provides properties with metadata for the file or directory, including:

ArchiveFileName Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

UTF8ArchiveFileName Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive using UTF-8 encoding.

DiskFileName Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

UTF8DiskFileName Name of the file or directory using UTF-8 encoding.

Size Size of the compressed file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

DateTime The timestamp for file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

OS Indicates the operating system device type / file system where the file or directory originated.

Attributes File attributes for the entry.

CompressionLevel Compression level applied to the content in the .ZIP archive.

Stream `TStream` instance with the content for the entry.

Use `IsDirectory` to determine if the entry represents a directory.

Use `IsLink` to determine if the entry is a symbolic link on the local file system.

69.22.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1686	<code>Assign</code>	Copies property values from the specified persistent object.
1686	<code>Create</code>	Constructor for the class instance.
1686	<code>IsDirectory</code>	True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.
1686	<code>IsLink</code>	True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

69.22.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1687	<code>ArchiveFileName</code>	rw	Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.
1688	<code>Attributes</code>	rw	File attributes for the file or directory.
1688	<code>CompressionLevel</code>	rw	Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.
1688	<code>DateTime</code>	rw	Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.
1687	<code>DiskFileName</code>	rw	Name of the file or directory on the local file system.
1688	<code>OS</code>	rw	Indication of operating system/file system.
1687	<code>Size</code>	rw	Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.
1686	<code>Stream</code>	rw	Stream with the content for the entry.
1687	<code>UTF8ArchiveFileName</code>	rw	Archive filename as UTF8 string.
1687	<code>UTF8DiskFileName</code>	rw	Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

69.22.4 TZipFileEntry.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create (ACollection: TCollection); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` is the overridden constructor for the class instance. `Create` sets the default values for properties, including:

DateTime Sets to the current date and time for the local computer.

OS Set to `OS_UNIX` for UNIX-like environments, or `OS_VFAT` for all others.

Attributes Set to 0 (no attributes).

CompressionLevel Set to `clDefault`.

`Create` calls the inherited constructor prior to exiting from the method.

69.22.5 TZipFileEntry.IsDirectory

Synopsis: True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.

Declaration: `function IsDirectory : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: True if the entry is a directory on the local file system.

69.22.6 TZipFileEntry.IsLink

Synopsis: True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

Declaration: `function IsLink : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: True if the directory is a symbolic link on the local file system.

69.22.7 TZipFileEntry.Assign

Synopsis: Copies property values from the specified persistent object.

Declaration: `procedure Assign (Source: TPersistent); override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Copies property values from the specified persistent object.

69.22.8 TZipFileEntry.Stream

Synopsis: Stream with the content for the entry.

Declaration: `Property Stream : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Stream with the content for the entry.

69.22.9 TZipFileEntry.ArchiveFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property ArchiveFileName : AnsiString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

69.22.10 TZipFileEntry.UTF8ArchiveFileName

Synopsis: Archive filename as UTF8 string.

Declaration: `Property UTF8ArchiveFileName : UTF8String`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: `UTF8ArchiveFileName` is the filename in UTF8-format. Use this if you need to have filenames with characters not in ASCII range.

69.22.11 TZipFileEntry.DiskFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

Declaration: `Property DiskFileName : AnsiString`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory on the local file system.

69.22.12 TZipFileEntry.UTF8DiskFileName

Synopsis: Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

Declaration: `Property UTF8DiskFileName : UTF8String`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name of the file or directory on the local file system using UTF-8 encoding.

69.22.13 TZipFileEntry.Size

Synopsis: Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.

Declaration: `Property Size : Int64`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Size of the compressed content for the file or directory.

69.22.14 TZipFileEntry.DateTime

Synopsis: Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property DateTime : TDateTime`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Timestamp for the file or directory in the .ZIP archive.

69.22.15 TZipFileEntry.OS

Synopsis: Indication of operating system/file system.

Declaration: `Property OS : Byte`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Currently either OS_UNIX (if UNIX is defined) or OS_FAT.

69.22.16 TZipFileEntry.Attributes

Synopsis: File attributes for the file or directory.

Declaration: `Property Attributes : LongWord`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: File attributes for the file or directory.

69.22.17 TZipFileEntry.CompressionLevel

Synopsis: Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property CompressionLevel : Tcompressionlevel`

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Compression level applied to the content stored in the .ZIP archive.

69.23 TZipper

69.23.1 Description

Creates a .ZIP archive file.

69.23.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1692	Clear	Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.
1689	Create	Constructor for the class instance.
1689	Destroy	Destructor for the class instance.
1690	SaveToFile	Saves the archive to a file with a new name.
1690	SaveToStream	Save the archive to a stream.
1692	Terminate	Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.
1691	Zip	Convenience method used to create a .zip file with the given name containing the specified file(s).
1690	ZipAllFiles	Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk.
1691	ZipFile	Zip one file to a zip file.
1691	ZipFiles	Zip multiple files into an archive.

69.23.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1692	BufferSize	rw	Buffer size used when reading and processing files.
1694	Entries	rw	Collection with the TZipFileEntry instances in the .ZIP archive.
1693	FileComment	rw	Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.
1693	FileName	rw	Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.
1694	Files	r	Provides access to the list of files and directories in the archive.
1694	InMemSize	rw	Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.
1693	OnEndFile	rw	Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.
1692	OnPercent	rw	Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.
1693	OnProgress	rw	Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.
1693	OnStartFile	rw	Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.
1694	Terminated	r	True if the Terminate method has been called.
1695	UseLanguageEncoding	rw	Use language encoding.

69.23.4 TZipper.Create

Synopsis: Constructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Constructor for the class instance.

69.23.5 TZipper.Destroy

Synopsis: Destructor for the class instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destructor for the class instance.

69.23.6 TZipper.ZipAllFiles

Synopsis: Zips all files in object and writes zip to disk.

Declaration: `procedure ZipAllFiles; virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This procedure zips up all files in the TZipper ([1688](#)) object and writes the resulting zip file to disk.

An example of using this procedure:

```
uses
    Zipper;
var
    Zipper: TZipper;
begin
    try
        Zipper := TZipper.Create;
        Zipper.FileName := ParamStr(1); //Use the first parameter on the command line as
        for I := 2 to ParamCount do //Use the other arguments on the command line as fil
            Zipper.Entries.AddFileEntry(ParamStr(I), ParamStr(I));
        Zipper.ZipAllFiles;
    finally
        Zipper.Free;
    end;
end.
```

69.23.7 TZipper.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Saves the archive to a file with a new name.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const AFileName: RawByteString)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Saves a .ZIP file with a new name.

69.23.8 TZipper.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the archive to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(AStream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Save the archive to a stream.

69.23.9 TZipper.ZipFile

Synopsis: Zip one file to a zip file.

Declaration: `procedure ZipFile(const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFile(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zips the specified files into a zip with the name in AFileName.

See also: ZipFiles ([1691](#))

69.23.10 TZipper.ZipFiles

Synopsis: Zip multiple files into an archive.

Declaration: `procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const FileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const aFileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`procedure ZipFiles(FileList: TStrings)`
`procedure ZipFiles(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`Entries: TZipFileEntries)`
`procedure ZipFiles(Entries: TZipFileEntries)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip multiple files into an archive.

See also: ZipFile ([1691](#))

69.23.11 TZipper.Zip

Synopsis: Convenience method used to create a .zip file with the given name containing the specified file(s).

Declaration: `class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`const aFileToBeZipped: RawByteString)`
`class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: Array of RawByteString)`
`class procedure Zip(const AZipFileName: RawByteString;`
`aFileList: TStrings)`

Visibility: public

Description: Zip is a class procedure used to create a .zip file with the name specified in AZipFileName. Overloaded variants are provided that allow one or more file names to be specified using the AFileToBeZipped or AFileList arguments.

For example:

```
var
  SZip, SFile: RawByteString;

  SZip := '/usr/tmp/docbook5-catalog.zip';
  SFile := '/usr/share/xml/docbook/schema/sch/5.0/catalog.xml'
```

```
TZipper.Zip(SZip, SFile);
```

See also: TUnzipper.Unzip ([1678](#))

69.23.12 TZipper.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Removes all values in the Entries and Files properties.

69.23.13 TZipper.Terminate

Synopsis: Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Halts an assigned compressor in the class instance, and sets Terminated to True.

69.23.14 TZipper.BufferSize

Synopsis: Buffer size used when reading and processing files.

Declaration: `Property BufferSize : LongWord`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Buffer size used when reading and processing files.

69.23.15 TZipper.OnPercent

Synopsis: Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.

Declaration: `Property OnPercent : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Threshold percentage which triggers progress notifications when processing files.

69.23.16 TZipper.OnProgress

Synopsis: Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress : TProgressEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled to show a percent complete progress notifications.

69.23.17 TZipper.OnStartFile

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.

Declaration: `Property OnStartFile : TOnStartFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when compression for a file is started.

69.23.18 TZipper.OnEndFile

Synopsis: Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.

Declaration: `Property OnEndFile : TOnEndOfFileEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event handler signalled when compression for a file has been completed.

69.23.19 TZipper.FileName

Synopsis: Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.

Declaration: `Property FileName : RawByteString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Name of the .ZIP archive file where the compressed files and directories are stored.

69.23.20 TZipper.FileComment

Synopsis: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

Declaration: `Property FileComment : AnsiString`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Comment stored in the .ZIP archive file.

69.23.21 TZipper.Files

Synopsis: Provides access to the list of files and directories in the archive.

Declaration: `Property Files : TStrings; deprecated;`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Deprecated. Use the `Entries` property to call its `AddFileEntry` or `AddFileEntries` methods instead.

See also: `TZipper.Entries` ([1694](#)), `TZipperFileEntries.AddFileEntry` ([1657](#)), `TZipperFileEntries.AddFileEntries` ([1657](#))

69.23.22 TZipper.InMemSize

Synopsis: Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.

Declaration: `Property InMemSize : Int64`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Total memory used for the compressed content in the .ZIP file.

69.23.23 TZipper.Entries

Synopsis: Collection with the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the .ZIP archive.

Declaration: `Property Entries : TZipFileEntries`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Collection with the `TZipFileEntry` instances in the .ZIP archive.

69.23.24 TZipper.Terminated

Synopsis: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

Declaration: `Property Terminated : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: True if the `Terminate` method has been called.

69.23.25 TZipper.UseLanguageEncoding

Synopsis: Use language encoding.

Declaration: `Property UseLanguageEncoding : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: EFS/language encoding using UTF-8.

Chapter 70

Reference for unit 'ZStream'

70.1 Used units

Table 70.1: Used units by unit 'ZStream'

Name	Page
Classes	??
gzio	??
System	??
zbase	??

70.2 Overview

The `ZStream` unit implements a `TStream` (??) descendent (`TCompressionStream` ([1697](#))) which uses the deflate algorithm to compress everything that is written to it. The compressed data is written to the output stream, which is specified when the compressor class is created.

Likewise, a `TStream` descendent is implemented which reads data from an input stream (`TDecompressionStream` ([1700](#))) and decompresses it with the inflate algorithm.

70.3 Constants, types and variables

70.3.1 Types

```
Tcompressionlevel = (clnone, clfastest, cldefault, clmax)
```

Table 70.2: Enumeration values for type `Tcompressionlevel`

Value	Explanation
<code>cldefault</code>	Use default compression.
<code>clfastest</code>	Use fast (but less) compression.
<code>clmax</code>	Use maximum compression.
<code>clnone</code>	Do not use compression, just copy data.

Compression level for the deflate algorithm.

`Tgzopenmode = (gzopenread, gzopenwrite)`

Table 70.3: Enumeration values for type `Tgzopenmode`

Value	Explanation
<code>gzopenread</code>	Open file for reading.
<code>gzopenwrite</code>	Open file for writing.

Open mode for gzip file.

70.4 Ecompressionerror

70.4.1 Description

`ECompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TCompressionStream` ([1697](#)) class.

70.5 Edecompressionerror

70.5.1 Description

`EDecompressionError` is the exception class used by the `TDeCompressionStream` ([1700](#)) class.

70.6 Egzfileerror

70.6.1 Description

`Egzfileerror` is the exception class used to report errors by the `Tgzfilestream` ([1703](#)) class.

See also: `Tgzfilestream` ([1703](#))

70.7 Ezliberror

70.7.1 Description

Errors which occur in the `zstream` unit are signaled by raising an `EZLibError` exception descendant.

70.8 Tcompressionstream

70.8.1 Description

`TCompressionStream`

70.8.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1698	<code>create</code>	Create a new instance of the compression stream.
1698	<code>destroy</code>	Flushes data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.
1699	<code>flush</code>	Flush remaining data to the target stream.
1699	<code>get_compressionrate</code>	Get the current compression rate.
1698	<code>write</code>	Write data to the stream.

70.8.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1699	<code>OnProgress</code>		Progress handler.

70.8.4 Tcompressionstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of the compression stream.

Declaration: `constructor create(level: Tcompressionlevel; dest: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the compression stream. It merely calls the inherited constructor with the destination stream `Dest` and stores the compression level.

If `ASkipHeader` is set to `True`, the method will not write the block header to the stream. This is required for deflated data in a zip file.

Note that the compressed data is only completely written after the compression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([1698](#))

70.8.5 Tcompressionstream.destroy

Synopsis: Flushes data to the output stream and destroys the compression stream.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` flushes the output stream: any compressed data not yet written to the output stream are written, and the deflate structures are cleaned up.

Errors: None.

See also: `Create` ([1698](#))

70.8.6 Tcompressionstream.write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `function write(const buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` takes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` and compresses (deflates) them. The compressed result is written to the output stream.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `ECompressionError` (1697) exception is raised.

See also: `Write` (1698), `ECompressionError` (1697)

70.8.7 `Tcompressionstream.flush`

Synopsis: Flush remaining data to the target stream.

Declaration: `procedure flush`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `flush` writes any remaining data in the memory buffers to the target stream, and clears the memory buffer.

70.8.8 `Tcompressionstream.get_compressionrate`

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate.

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of written compressed bytes relative to the number of written bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

70.8.9 `Tcompressionstream.OnProgress`

Synopsis: Progress handler.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: `public`

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever output data is written to the output stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the compression stream instance.

70.9 `Tcustomzlibstream`

70.9.1 `Description`

`TCustomZlibStream` serves as the ancestor class for the `TCompressionStream` (1697) and `TDecompressionStream` (1700) classes.

It introduces support for a progress handler, and stores the input or output stream.

70.9.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1700	create	Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream.
1700	destroy	Clear up instance.

70.9.3 Tcustomzlibstream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of TCustomZlibStream.

Declaration: `constructor create(stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TCustomZlibStream. It stores a reference to the input/output stream, and initializes the deflate compression mechanism so they can be used by the descendents.

See also: TCompressionStream ([1697](#)), TDecompressionStream ([1700](#))

70.9.4 Tcustomzlibstream.destroy

Synopsis: Clear up instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy cleans up the internal memory buffer and calls the inherited destroy.

See also: Tcustomzlibstream.create ([1700](#))

70.10 Tdecompressionstream

70.10.1 Description

TDecompressionStream performs the inverse operation of TCompressionStream ([1697](#)). A read operation reads data from an input stream and decompresses (inflates) the data as it goes along.

The decompression stream reads its compressed data from a stream with deflated data. This data can be created e.g. with a TCompressionStream ([1697](#)) compression stream.

See also: TCompressionStream ([1697](#))

70.10.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1701	create	Creates a new instance of the TDecompressionStream stream.
1701	destroy	Destroys the TDecompressionStream instance.
1702	get_compressionrate	Get the current compression rate.
1701	read	Read data from the compressed stream.
1702	Seek	Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

70.10.3 Property overview

Page	Properties	Access	Description
1702	OnProgress		Progress handler.

70.10.4 TDecompressionStream.create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` stream.

Declaration: `constructor create(Asource: TStream; Askipheader: Boolean=False)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates and initializes a new instance of the `TDecompressionStream` class. It calls the inherited `Create` and passes it the `Source` stream. The source stream is the stream from which the compressed (deflated) data is read.

If `ASkipHeader` is true, then the gzip data header is skipped, allowing `TDecompressionStream` to read deflated data in a .zip file. (this data does not have the gzip header record prepended to it).

Note that the source stream is by default not owned by the decompression stream, and is not freed when the decompression stream is destroyed.

See also: `Destroy` ([1701](#))

70.10.5 TDecompressionStream.destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the `TDecompressionStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` cleans up the inflate structure, and then simply calls the inherited `destroy`.

By default the source stream is not freed when calling `Destroy`.

See also: `Create` ([1701](#))

70.10.6 TDecompressionStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed stream.

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` will read data from the compressed stream until the decompressed data size is `Count` or there is no more compressed data available. The decompressed data is written in `Buffer`. The function returns the number of bytes written in the buffer.

Errors: If an error occurs, an `EDeCompressionError` ([1697](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Write` ([1698](#))

70.10.7 Tdecompressionstream.Seek

Synopsis: Move stream position to a certain location in the stream.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` overrides the standard `Seek` implementation. There are a few differences between the implementation of `Seek` in Free Pascal compared to Delphi:

- In Free Pascal, you can perform any seek. In case of a forward seek, the Free Pascal implementation will read some bytes until the desired position is reached, in case of a backward seek it will seek the source stream backwards to the position it had at the creation time of the `TDecompressionStream` and then again read some bytes until the desired position has been reached.
- In Free Pascal, a seek with `soFromBeginning` will reset the source stream to the position it had when the `TDecompressionStream` was created. In Delphi, the source stream is reset to position 0. This means that at creation time the source stream must always be at the start of the zstream, you cannot use `TDecompressionStream.Seek` to reset the source stream to the begin of the file.

Errors: An `EDecompressionError` ([1697](#)) exception is raised if the stream does not allow the requested seek operation.

See also: `Read` ([1701](#))

70.10.8 Tdecompressionstream.get_compressionrate

Synopsis: Get the current compression rate.

Declaration: `function get_compressionrate : single`

Visibility: public

Description: `get_compressionrate` returns the percentage of the number of read compressed bytes relative to the total number of read bytes.

Errors: If no bytes were written, an exception is raised.

70.10.9 Tdecompressionstream.OnProgress

Synopsis: Progress handler.

Declaration: `Property OnProgress :`

Visibility: public

Access:

Description: `OnProgress` is called whenever input data is read from the source stream. It can be used to update a progress bar or so. The `Sender` argument to the progress handler is the decompression stream instance.

70.11 TGZFileStream

70.11.1 Description

`TGZFileStream` can be used to read data from a gzip file, or to write data to a gzip file.

See also: `TCompressionStream` ([1697](#)), `TDeCompressionStream` ([1700](#))

70.11.2 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1703	<code>create</code>	Create a new instance of <code>TGZFileStream</code> .
1704	<code>destroy</code>	Removes <code>TGZFileStream</code> instance.
1703	<code>read</code>	Read data from the compressed file.
1704	<code>seek</code>	Set the position in the compressed stream.
1704	<code>write</code>	Write data to be compressed.

70.11.3 TGZFileStream.create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TGZFileStream`.

Declaration: `constructor create(filename: ansistring; filemode: Tgzopenmode)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of the `TGZFileStream` class. It opens `FileName` for reading or writing, depending on the `FileMode` parameter. It is not possible to open the file read-write. If the file is opened for reading, it must exist.

If the file is opened for reading, the `TGZFileStream.Read` ([1703](#)) method can be used for reading the data in uncompressed form.

If the file is opened for writing, any data written using the `TGZFileStream.Write` ([1704](#)) method will be stored in the file in compressed (deflated) form.

Errors: If the file is not found, an `EZlibError` ([1697](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `Destroy` ([1704](#)), `TGZOpenMode` ([1697](#))

70.11.4 TGZFileStream.read

Synopsis: Read data from the compressed file.

Declaration: `function read(var buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` overrides the `Read` method of `TStream` to read the data from the compressed file. The `Buffer` parameter indicates where the read data should be stored. The `Count` parameter specifies the number of bytes (*uncompressed*) that should be read from the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to read from the stream if it was opened in write mode.

The function returns the number of uncompressed bytes actually read.

Errors: If `Buffer` points to an invalid location, or does not have enough room for `Count` bytes, an exception will be raised.

See also: `Create` ([1703](#)), `Write` ([1704](#)), `Seek` ([1704](#))

70.11.5 TGZFileStream.write

Synopsis: Write data to be compressed.

Declaration: `function write(const buffer; count: LongInt) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the compressed file. The data is compressed as it is written, so ideally, less than `Count` bytes end up in the compressed file. Note that it is not possible to write to the stream if it was opened in read mode.

The function returns the number of (uncompressed) bytes that were actually written.

Errors: In case of an error, an `EZlibError` (1697) exception is raised.

See also: `Create` (1703), `Read` (1703), `Seek` (1704)

70.11.6 TGZFileStream.seek

Synopsis: Set the position in the compressed stream.

Declaration: `function seek(offset: LongInt; origin: Word) : LongInt; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Offset` bytes, starting from `Origin`. Not all combinations are possible, see `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (1702) for a list of possibilities.

Errors: In case an impossible combination is asked, an `EZlibError` (1697) exception is raised.

See also: `TDecompressionStream.Seek` (1702)

70.11.7 TGZFileStream.destroy

Synopsis: Removes `TGZFileStream` instance.

Declaration: `destructor destroy; override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the file and releases the `TGZFileStream` instance from memory.

See also: `Create` (1703)

70.12 TGZipCompressionStream

70.12.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1704	<code>Create</code>	
1705	<code>Destroy</code>	
1705	<code>Write</code>	

70.12.2 TGZipCompressionStream.Create

Declaration: `constructor Create(ADest: TStream); overload`
`constructor Create(ALevel: Tcompressionlevel; ADest: TStream); overload`

Visibility: public

70.12.3 TGZipCompressionStream.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

70.12.4 TGZipCompressionStream.Write

Declaration: function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override

Visibility: public

70.13 TGZipDecompressionStream

70.13.1 Method overview

Page	Method	Description
1705	Create	
1705	Destroy	
1705	Read	
1705	Seek	

70.13.2 TGZipDecompressionStream.Create

Declaration: constructor Create(ASource: TStream)

Visibility: public

70.13.3 TGZipDecompressionStream.Destroy

Declaration: destructor Destroy; override

Visibility: public

70.13.4 TGZipDecompressionStream.Read

Declaration: function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; override

Visibility: public

70.13.5 TGZipDecompressionStream.Seek

Declaration: function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64
; override

Visibility: public